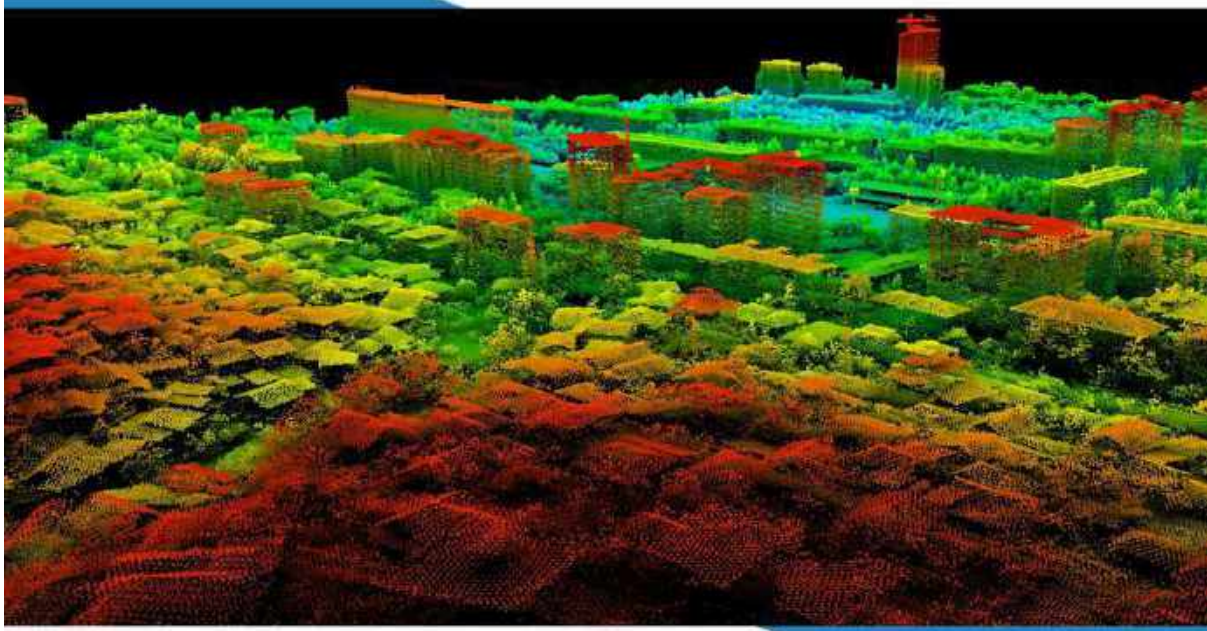




GreenValley International

# LiDAR360 User Guide

————— LiDAR point cloud processing and analyzing software



[www.greenvalleyintl.com](http://www.greenvalleyintl.com)



# Copyright

**GreenValley International**

**LiDAR360 V5.0**

**User Guide**

**Imprint and Version**

Document Version 5.0

Copyright © 2021 GreenValley International, Ltd. All rights reserved. This document may be copied and printed only in accordance with the terms of the Frame License Agreement for End Users of the related LiDAR360 software.

Published by:

GreenValley International, Ltd.

Web: <https://greenvalleyintl.com>

**Dear User,**

Thank you for using LiDAR360 software. We are pleased to be of service to you with LiDAR point cloud manipulation solutions. At GreenValley International, we constantly strive to improve our products. We therefore appreciate all comments and suggestions for improvements concerning our software, training, and documentation. Feel free to contact us via [info@greenvalleyintl.com](mailto:info@greenvalleyintl.com). Thank you.

All rights reserved.

© 2021 GreenValley International, Ltd.

Date printed: 29th Jan. 2021

# Introduction

LiDAR360 is the flagship LiDAR post-processing software, which provides comprehensive LiDAR data management and analysis functions. It has over 10 peer-reviewed point cloud processing algorithms which enables it to process more than 300 GB of LiDAR data simultaneously. The software platform also includes versatile editing tools and automatic strip adjustment for increased workflow productivity in applications of terrain, forestry and power line surveying(See the LiPowerline software).

The Terrain module is a suite of GIS tools used primarily for the generation of industry-standard topographic products. Our point cloud filtering algorithm can precisely extract ground points under complex landscapes and therefore improve the terrain surveying accuracy. The module also generates more advanced topographic products, such as TDOM, through the fusion of LiDAR and photogrammetry.

The Forestry module brings important technological innovations to forest inventory and analysis. It provides a unique toolset for manipulating point cloud collected from aerial and terrestrial LiDAR scanners. Defining individual tree level parameters, such as tree height, DBH, LAI, and crown diameter, are made possible through our segmentation algorithms. A range of regression models for predicting forest structures from LiDAR variables are also provided.

Specifically, LiDAR360 has the following modules:

- **Strip Alignment:** Point clouds from overlapped strips can be automatically aligned based on strict geometric model. The software can display aligned strips in real-time and generate aligned point clouds with high accuracy. The module also provides a series of tools to check and analyze data quality.
- **Data Management:** The module provides management tools for point cloud and raster data, which include format conversion, point cloud de-noising, normalization, raster band calculation and so on.
- **Statistics:** Based on the number, density and elevation of LiDAR points, statistics can be calculated for data quality evaluation.
- **Classify:** The module provides various classification methods for point cloud classification including ground classification, ground key point classification, interactive classification, machine-learning-based classification (for building, vegetation, and custom classes) etc.
- **Terrain:** The module can generate DEM(Digital Elevation Model), DSM(Digital Surface Model), CHM(Canopy Height Model) for geospatial applications. Other related topographic products such as Hillshade, Slope, Aspect, Roughness and Contour are also supported.
- **Vector Editor:** The module provides vectorization functions for DLG (Digital Line Graphics) workflow. The software displays point cloud as a high-contrast base map, in which contours of objects (e.g., building, vegetation, roads, street lamps, water, bridges) can be clearly identified and vectorized.
- **ALS Forest:** Based on ALS(Airborne Laser Scanning) data, the module can extract a series of forestry parameters(Elevation Metrics, Leaf Area Index, Canopy Cover, etc.), segment individual trees and calculate parameters of individual tree(position, height, canopy, etc.). Moreover, various regression functions are also provided which can be used in combination with field measurement to retrieve forest parameters that cannot be directly derived from ALS LiDAR data (such as biomass or stem volume).
- **TLS Forest:** Based on TLS(Terrestrial Laser Scanning) data, the module can estimate the number of trees, extract DBH(Diameter at Breast Height) with batch processing, segment individual tree, and calculate parameters of individual tree(position, height, etc.).

- **Geology:** Extract terrain features, geological structure surface features, etc. based on airborne lidar point cloud data.
- **Powerline:** Obtaining a clearance distance analysis report based on airborne LiDAR point cloud data, including towers positioning, data classification, and danger point detection.

## LiDAR360 Versions

Modules	Free Version	Full-Featured Version
Data Visualization	√	√
Mass Data Support	√	√
Data Management	30 Days Trial	√
Strip Alignment	30 Days Trial	√
Statistics	30 Days Trial	√
Classify	30 Days Trial	√
Terrain	30 Days Trial	√
Vector Editor	30 Days Trial	√
ALS Forest	30 Days Trial	√
TLS Forest	30 Days Trial	√

## Get Started

Please refer to [Installation and License](#) to install the software. The usage is described in [Tutorials](#).

# Installation

Download the latest version of LiDAR360 Suite from [the GreenValley International official website](#) before installation.

## System Requirements

- **RAM:** at least 8G or more.
- **CPU:** Intel® Core™ i5/i7; Dual-core processor.
- **Display Adapter:** NVIDIA graphics card recommended, video memory no less than 2GB.
- **Operating Systems:** Microsoft Windows 7 (64-bit), Microsoft Windows 8 (64-bit), Microsoft Windows 10(64-bit), Microsoft Windows Server 2012 and higher.

Note: Please [enable high-performance graphics mode](#) for running the software.

## Setup

1. Run the LiDAR360 Suite Setup Wizard.
2. Click *Next* button in the Welcome Interface.
3. Click *I Agree* button to continue if you accept the License Agreement.
4. Choose the installation path (or use default path), then click *Install* button.
5. Click *Finish* button after installation.

## License Manager

There are two licensing approaches to activate LiDAR360, by license dongle or license code. For license dongle, users must not format, delete, or copy the license dongle.

### 1) License dongle


Properly insert a license dongle to USB port to activate LiDAR360.

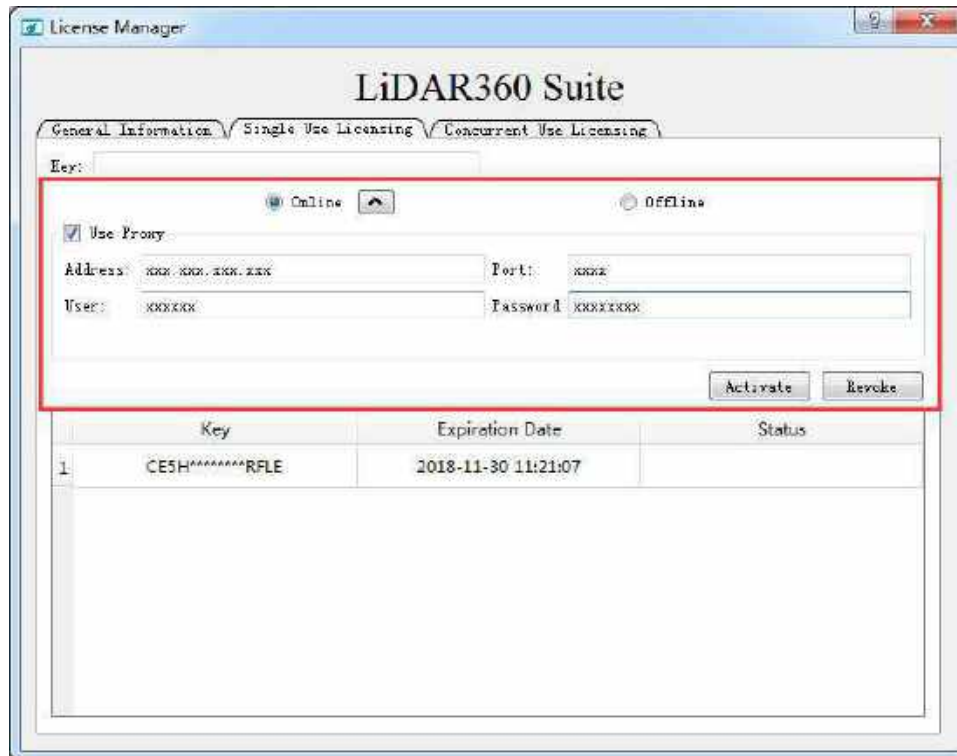
### 2) License code

License code would be generated based on activation information given by LiDAR360 users. After purchasing a license code, please follow the following steps to activate LiDAR360.

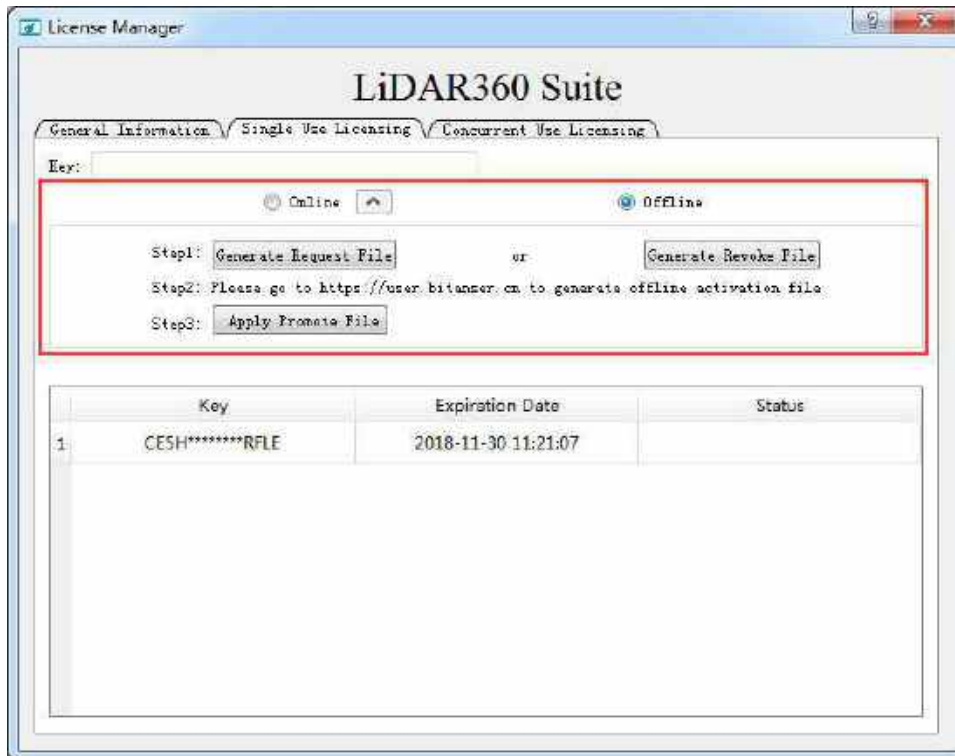
- 1.Run the software.
- 2.Click *File > Activate License*, the License Manager window will pop up.
- 3.Under General Information tab, fill in your name and company name, select the modules you want to activate, and then click *Copy*.
- 4.Email the copied information to [info@greenvalleyintl.com](mailto:info@greenvalleyintl.com).
- 5.There are two licensing modes: single use licensing and concurrent use licensing. After receiving the activation key, activate or revoke the license using online or offline mode.

- Single Use Licensing
  - Activation/Update

Online Activation/Update: When connecting to the internet, under the “Single Use Licensing” tab, enter the authorization key, select “Online”, and click “Activate” to activate or update. Activation information, such as expiration date, will displayed below. Under “General Information” page, you may also check the expiration date for each individual module. If you need to set up proxy to connect to the internet, click  to use proxy, and set up the address, port, user name, and password.




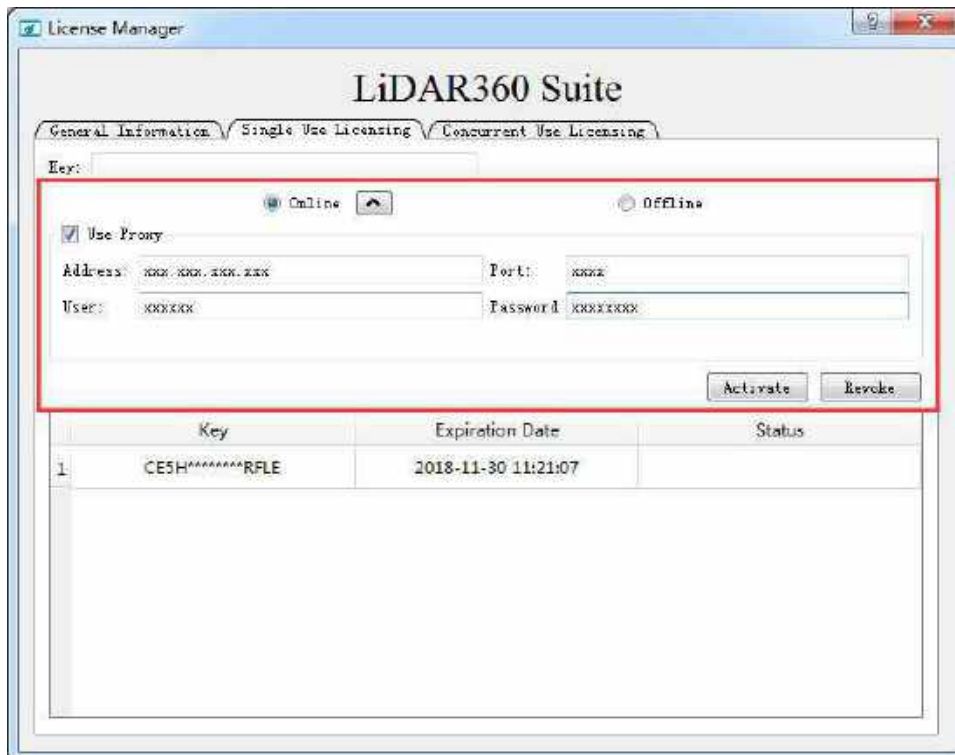
Offline activation: Step 1: Select “Offline” under the “Single Use Licensing” tab; Step 2: Click “Generate Request File” button to generate the request file (.req); Step 3: Use a computer that can connect to the internet to browse to <https://user.bitanswer.cn>, enter the authorization key to log in, click “Update”, upload the request file (.req), and download the generated upgrade file (.upd); Step 4: go back to the License Manager interface, click “Apply Promote File” and select the downloaded .upd file.



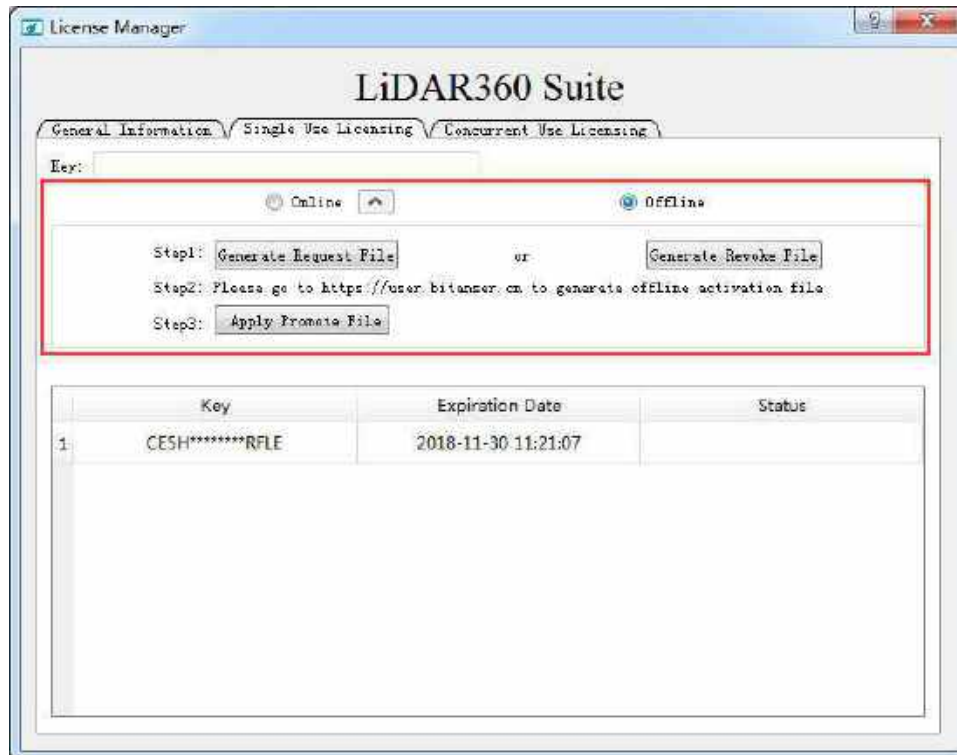
o Revoke

To unbind an activation key from a computer, user could revoke the activation key online or offline. After the authorization key is revoked, it can be reused on the same computer or a different one.

Online Revoke: In “Single Use Licensing” tab, enter the authorization key, select “Online”, and click “Revoke” to revoke the key. If you need to set up proxy to connect to the internet, click  to use proxy and to set up the address, port, user name, and password.



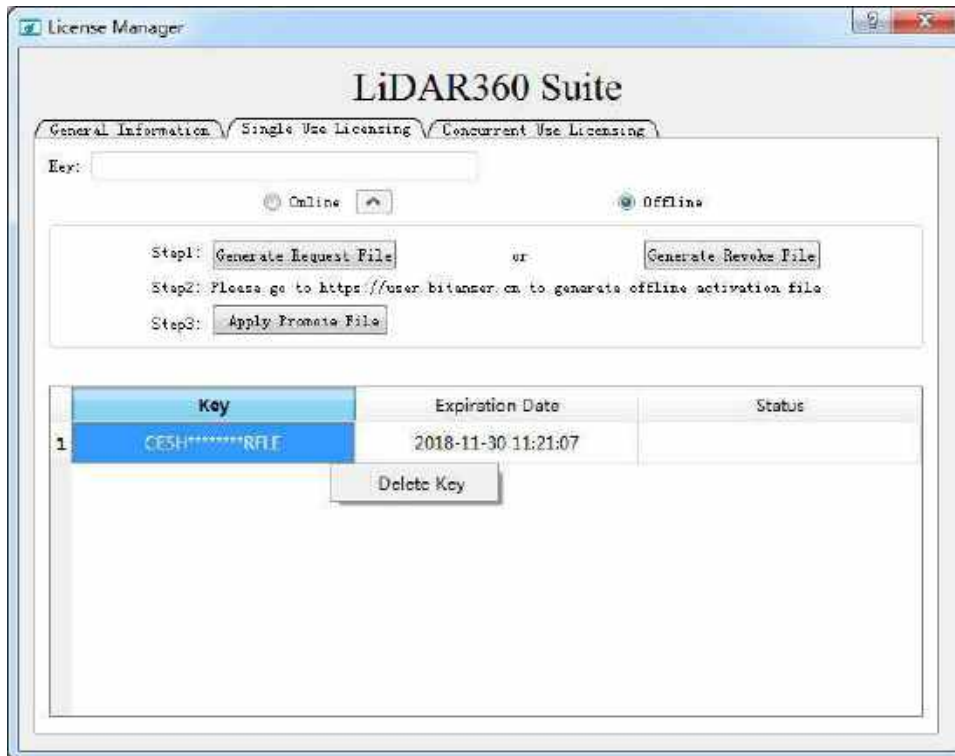
Offline Revoke: Step 1: Select "Offline" under the "Single Use Licensing" tab; Step 2: Click "Generate Revoke File" button to generate the request file (.req); Step 3: Use a computer that can connect to the internet to browse to <https://user.bitanswer.cn>, enter the authorization key to log in, click "Update", upload the request file (.req), and download the generated upgrade file (.upd); Step 4: go back to the License Manager interface, click "Apply Promote File" and select the downloaded .upd file.



- o Delete

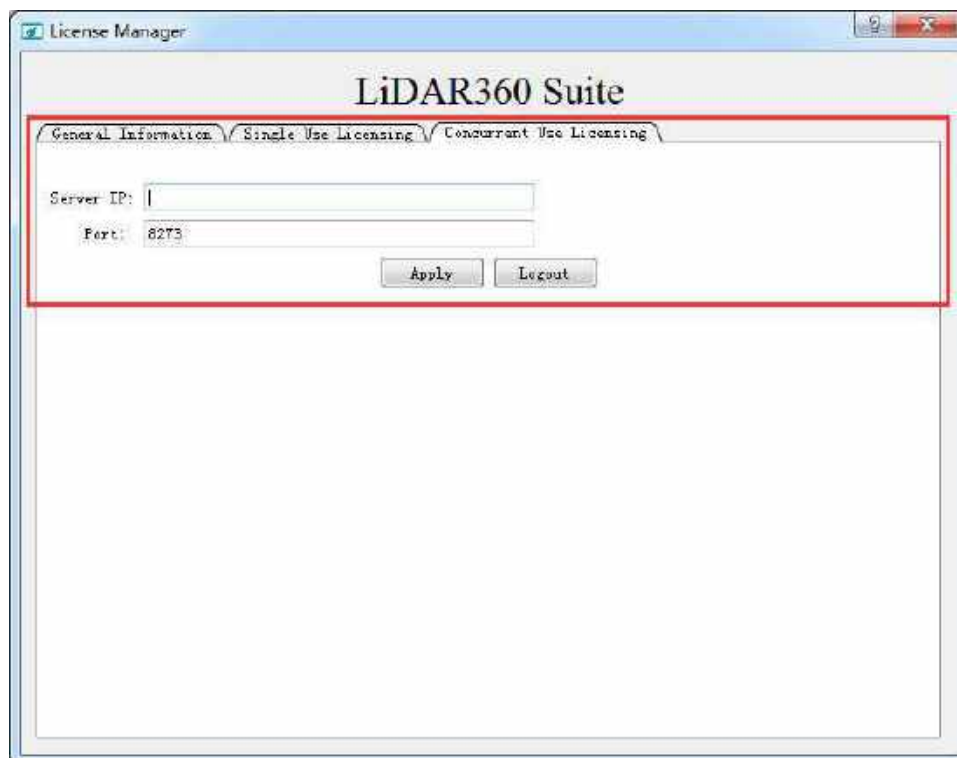
To delete authorization information from the computer, right-click on the authorization key and select "Delete Key". After being deleted, the same activation key can only be used on the same computer.





- Concurrent Use Licensing

Install enterprise activation tool on the server to activate the key online or offline. Other users can use the activation windows to input the server's IP address to activate the software. The default port is 8273. Click "Apply".



6. Click the help button  on the License Manager interface to view the license manager user guide.

Note: If any of the software instance (i.e. LiDAR360, LiMapper, LiGeoreference, LiPowerline) is being opened while updating the license in License Manager, please restart the software to make the license be effective.

Note: If an user would like to move a key from one computer to another, he/she should revoke first, then activate on the other. If the license code has been deleted, the user should reactivate on the same computer first, then revoke and activate this key on the other computer.

Note: Please contact [info@greenvallleyintl.com](mailto:info@greenvallleyintl.com) for inquiry and purchase.

## Languages

Currently, the supported languages are English, Chinese, French, and Japanese. You can switch the menu language in the following way:

1. Click *Display Options*> *System Setting*> *Language* > *English/Chinese/French/Japanese* in the menu bar.
2. Language change needs a restart to be effective. Click *Yes* in the pop-up dialog to restart the software immediately, or click *Cancel* and restart later.

# Tool Reference

This chapter describes the usage of menu bar, toolbar, project management windows and toolbox of LiDAR360 in detail.

- [Start Page](#)
- [Toolbar](#)
- [Quick Toolbar](#)
- [Ribbon Toolbar](#)
- [Project Manager Window](#)

## Ribbon Tab

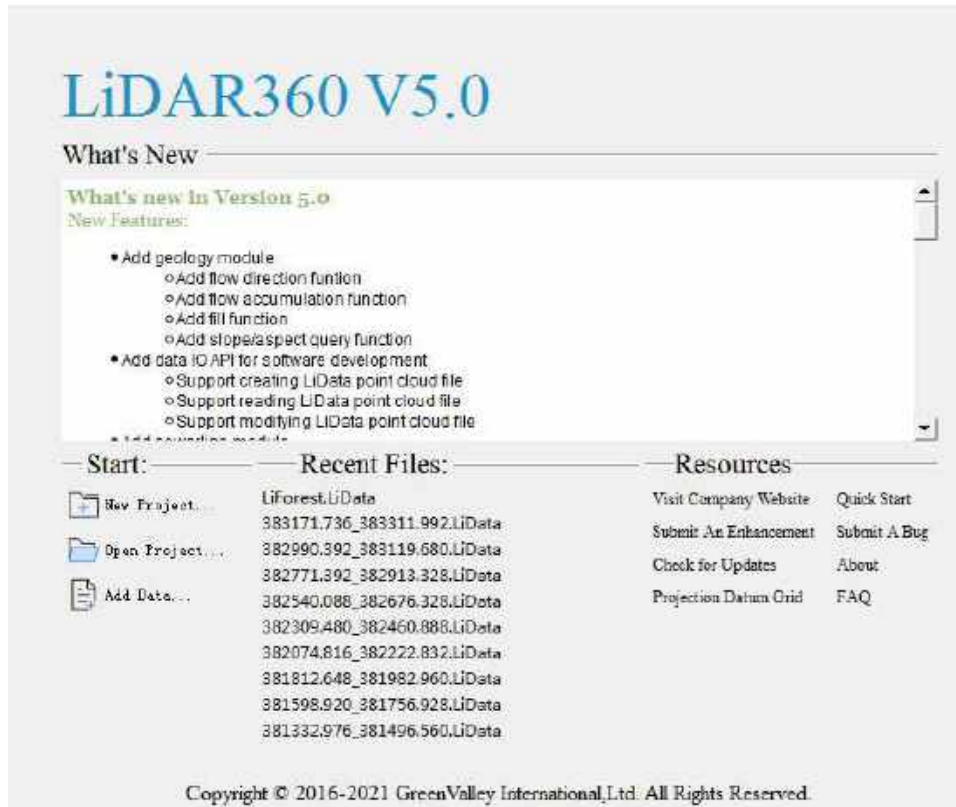
- [File](#)
- [Tools](#)
- [Preprocessing](#)
- [Classification](#)
- [Terrain](#)
- [ALS Forest](#)
- [TLS Forest](#)
- [Power Line](#)
- [Display](#)
- [Profile Editor](#)
- [Profile View](#)

## ToolBox

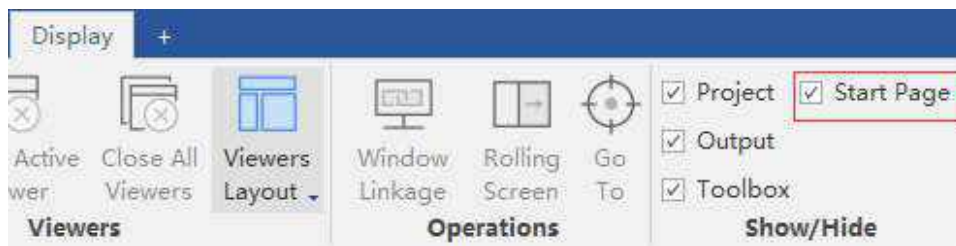
- [Strip Alignment](#)
- [Data Management](#)
- [Statistics](#)
- [Classify](#)
- [Terrain](#)
- [Vector Editor](#)
- [ALS Forest](#)
- [TLS Forest](#)
- [Power Line](#)
- [Geological Analysis](#)

# Start Page

Start page is shown as figure below:



Start page can be closed by the close button. Also, users can set Start or Close Start page by checking the box in [Display]->[Show/Hide]->[Start Page].



## What's New

What's New shows the new features in the new version.

Start includes: [New Project](#), [Open Project](#), [Add Data](#)

## Recent Files

Recent files is shown here. Users can left-click and add the file into viewer.

## Resources

Resources includes: [Visit Company Website](#), [Quick Start](#), [Submit An Enhancement](#), [Submit A BUG](#), [Check for Updates](#), [Projection Datum Grid](#), [About](#).

# Toolbar

This chapter aims to introduce ToolBar of LiDAR360. The toolbar is at left-side by default, including Colorbar, Viewing and Setting.


- [Colorbar Tools](#)
- [Viewing Tools](#)
- [Setting Tools](#)

# Color Tools


With tools in this section, LiDAR360 allows you to visualize vast amounts of point cloud or DEM using the best data representations for your analysis. You can change the coloration of the point cloud displaying by classification( or intensity, GPS time, return of number etc.). You can also enhance the render effect using visualization tools such as EDL, PCV and Glass which are intuitive and helpful for quality check.

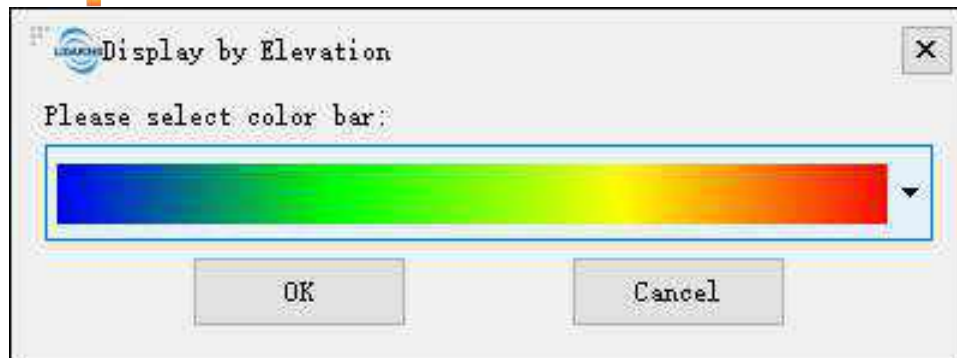
- [Display by Height](#)
- [Display by Intensity](#)
- [Display by Classification](#)
- [Display by RGB](#)
- [Display by Return](#)
- [Display by Time](#)
- [Display by Tree ID](#)
- [Display by Edge Flight Line](#)
- [Display by Number of Returns](#)
- [Display by Point Source ID](#)
- [Display by Scan Angle Rank](#)
- [Display by Scan Direction](#)
- [Display by User Data](#)
- [Display by Scanner Channel](#)
- [Display by Near Infrared](#)
- [Display by Blend](#)
- [Display by Mix](#)
- [Display by File](#)
- [Display by EDL](#)
- [Glass](#)

## Display by Height

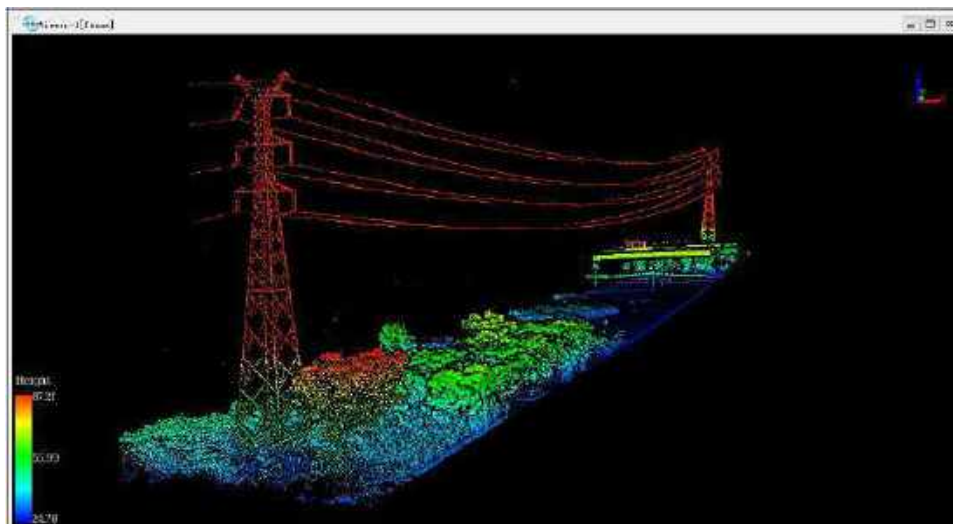
 **E** **Brief:** This tool is used for displaying point cloud data. The elevation values of point cloud data are mapped to several uniformly varying color intervals, so as to display the variation of elevation values more intuitively.

### Steps

1. Click the window that loads point cloud data with the left mouse button and set it as the active window.
2. Click the button  **E** on the toolbar to pop up the dialog "Display by Elevation", as shown below.



3. Select the appropriate color bar in the combo box and click the "OK" button. The color indicator of the window will generate the corresponding color bar according to the elevation range of the point cloud data. At the same time, the data is displayed by elevation in the scene. The visual effects are better with EDL mode, as shown below.



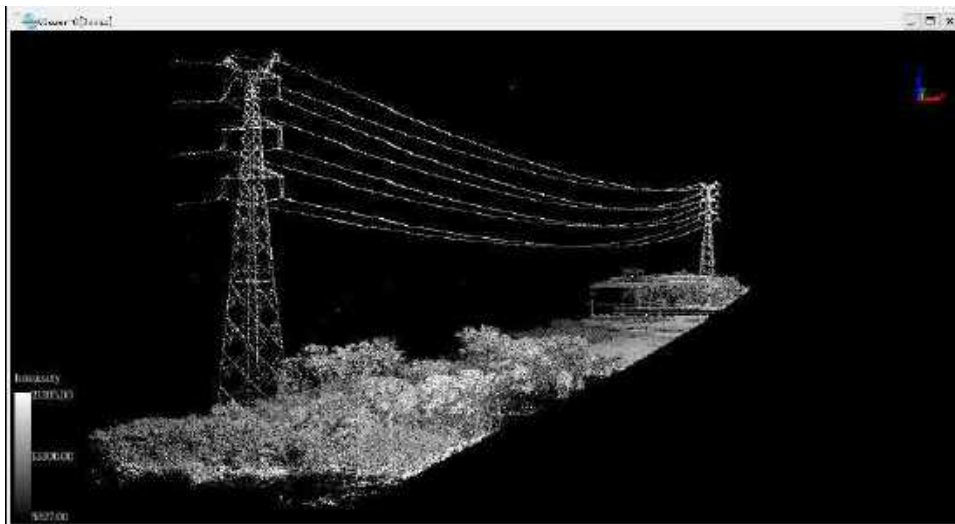
Note: This tool only works with point cloud data.

## Display by Intensity

**I** **Brief:** This tool is used for displaying point cloud data. The intensity values of point cloud data are mapped to several uniformly varying color intervals, so as to display the variation of intensity values more intuitively.

### Steps


1. Click the window that loads point cloud data with the left mouse button and set it as the active window.
2. Click the button **I** on the toolbar. The color indicator of the window will generate the corresponding gray color bar according to the intensity range of the point cloud data. At the same time, the data is displayed by intensity in the scene. The visual effects are better with EDL mode, as shown below.




Note: This tool only works with point cloud data.

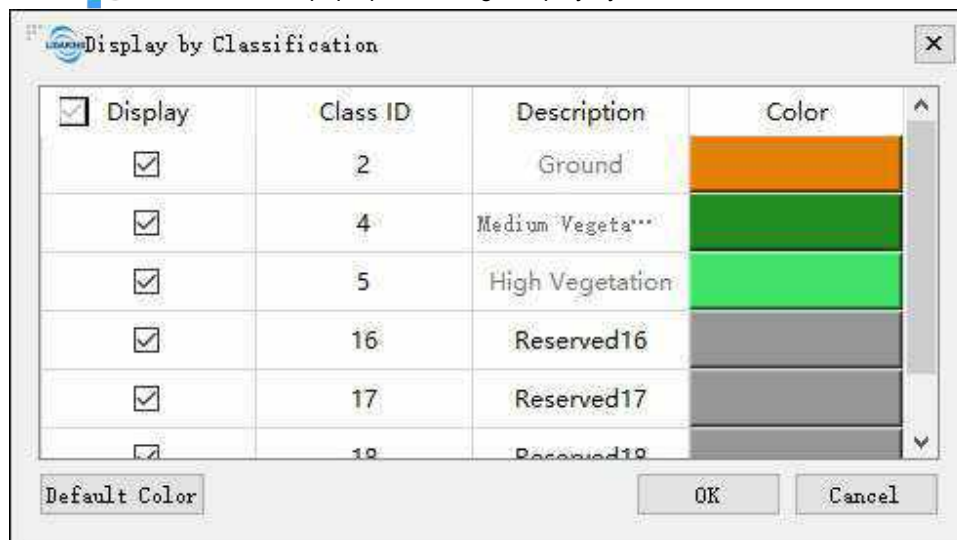


# Display by Classification

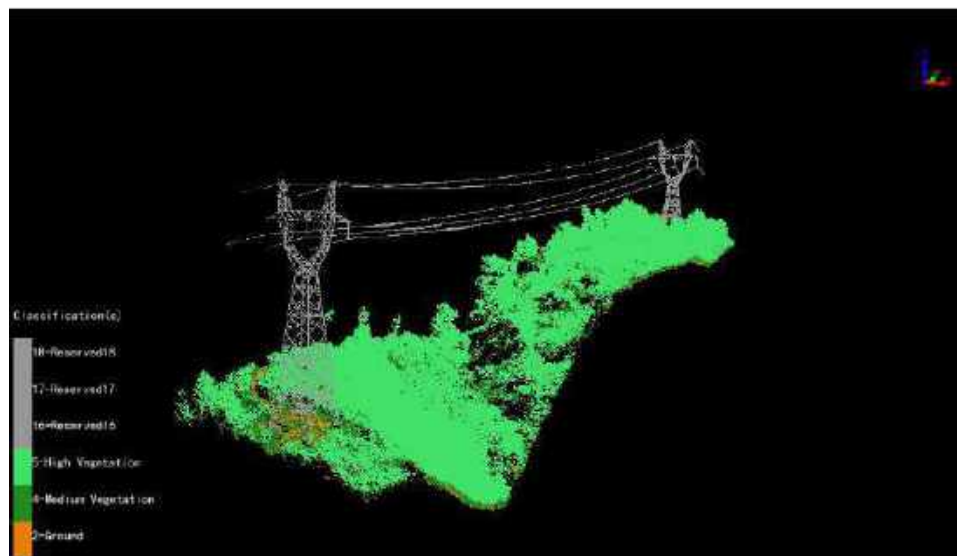
 **Brief:** This tool is used for displaying point cloud data. The classes of point cloud data are mapped to discrete color values, so as to distinguish different classes of point cloud data more intuitively.

## Steps

1. Click the window that loads point cloud data with the left mouse button and set it as the active window.
2. Click the button  C on the toolbar to pop up the dialog "Display by Classification", as shown below.




3. Select the appropriate color for each class and click the "OK" button. The color indicator of the window will generate the corresponding color bar according to the class attribute of the point cloud data. At the same time, the data is displayed by classification in the scene. The visual effects are better with EDL mode, as shown below.




Note: This tool only works with point cloud data.

## Display by RGB

 **Brief:** This tool is used for displaying point cloud data. The point cloud data is displayed according to its own color value.


### Steps

1. Click the window that loads point cloud data with the left mouse button and set it as the active window.
2. Click the button  on the toolbar. The data is displayed according to its own RGB values in the scene, as shown below.




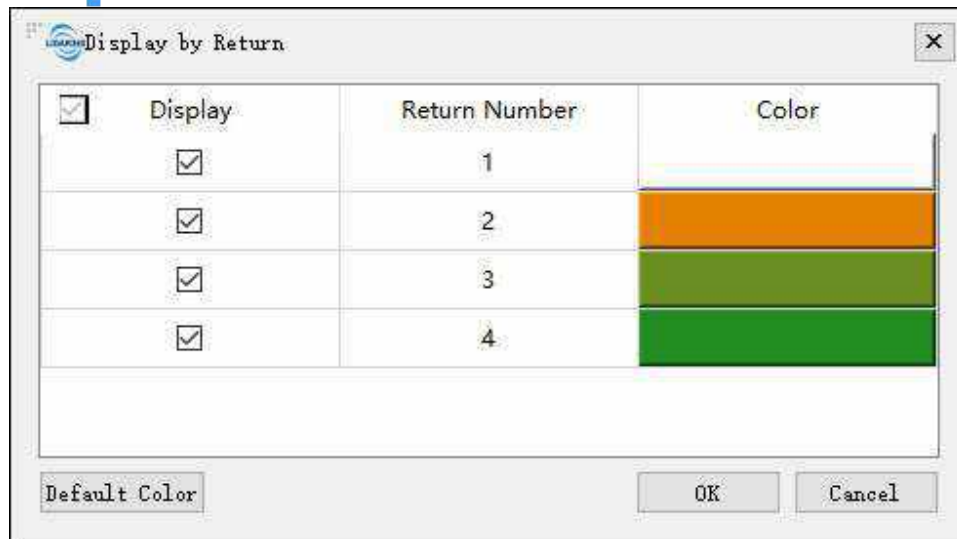
Note: This tool only works with point cloud data contains RGB attributes.

## Display by Return

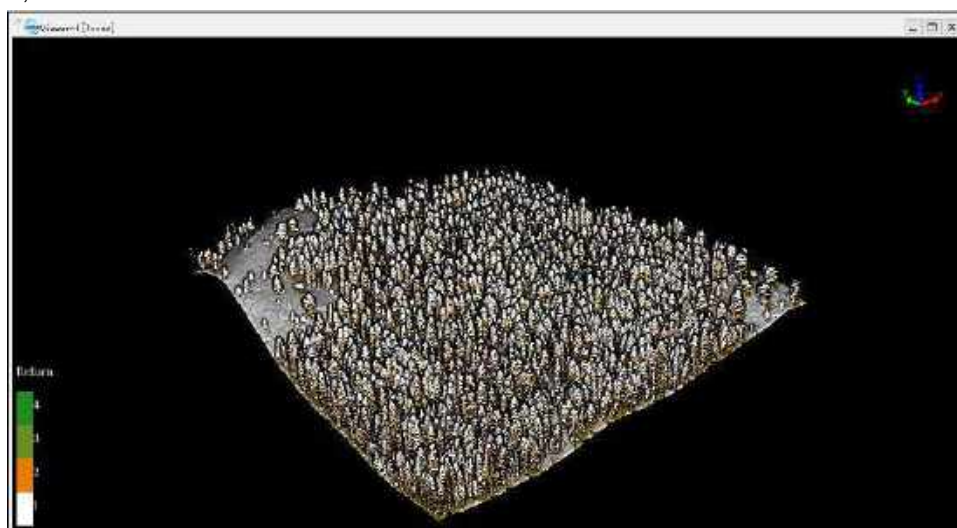
 **Brief:** This tool is used for displaying point cloud data. The return numbers of point cloud data are mapped to discrete color values, so as to distinguish different return numbers of point cloud data more intuitively.

### Steps

1. Click the window that loads point cloud data with the left mouse button and set it as the active window.
2. Click the button  on the toolbar to pop up the dialog "Display by Return", as shown below.




3. Select the appropriate color bar for each return number and click the "OK" button. The color indicator of the window will generate the corresponding color bar according to the return number attribute of the point cloud data. At the same time, the data is displayed by return number in the scene. The visual effects are better with EDL mode, as shown below.




Note: This tool only works with point cloud data.

## Display by Time

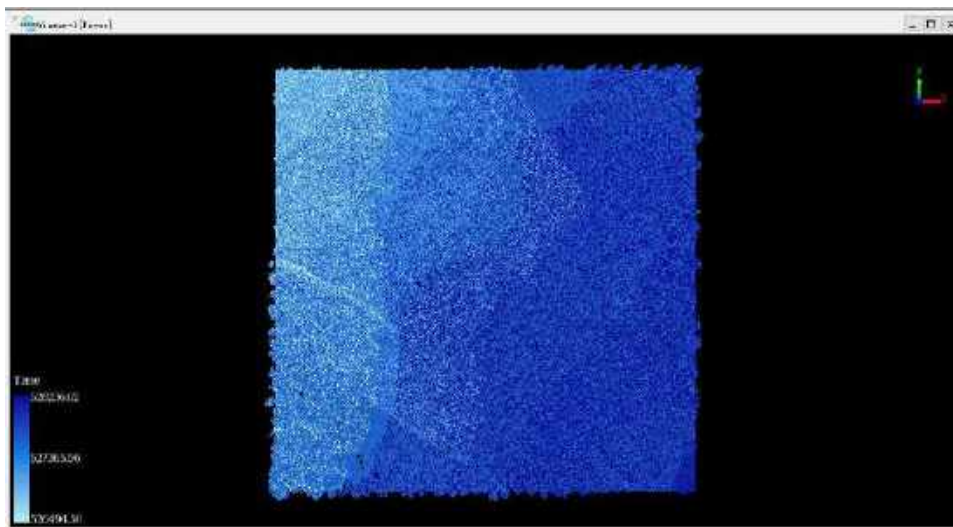
 **T** **Brief:** This tool is used for displaying point cloud data. The GPS time values of point cloud data are mapped to several uniformly varying color intervals, so as to display the variation of GPS time values more intuitively.

### Steps

1. Click the window that loads point cloud data with the left mouse button and set it as the active window.
2. Click the button  **T** on the toolbar to pop up the dialog "Display by Time", as shown below.




3. Select the appropriate color bar in the combo box and click the "OK" button. The color indicator of the window will generate the corresponding color bar according to the GPS time range of the point cloud data. At the same time, the data is displayed by time in the scene. The visual effects are better with EDL mode, as shown below.




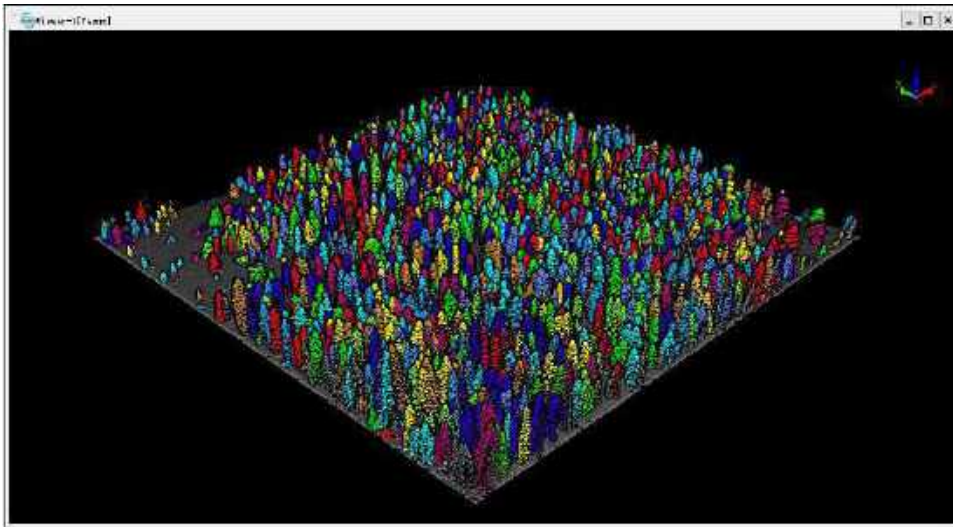
Note: This tool only works with point cloud data.

## Display by Tree ID

 **Brief:** This tool is used for displaying point cloud data after [Point Cloud Segmentation](#). The tree ID's of point cloud data are mapped to discrete color values, so as to distinguish different trees of more intuitively.

### Steps

1. Click the window that loads point cloud data with the left mouse button and set it as the active window.
2. Click the button  on the toolbar. If the point cloud data contains tree ID attribute, then the data will be displayed by tree ID in the scene. The visual effects are better with EDL mode, as shown below.




Note: This tool only works with point cloud data after individual tree segmentation.

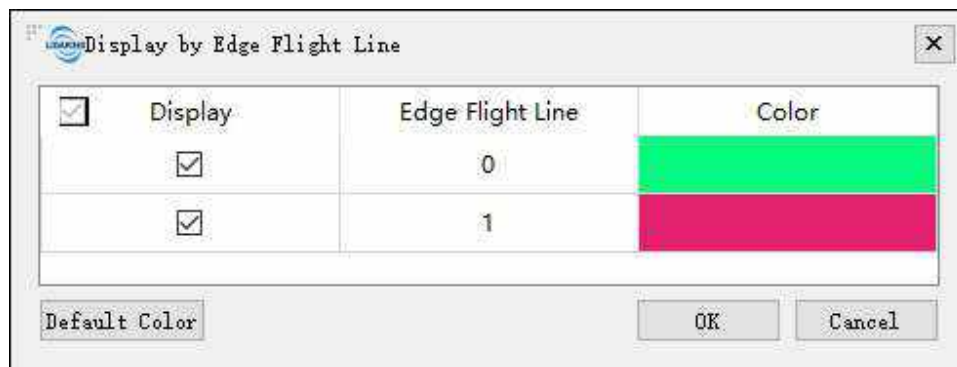
## Display by Edge Flight Line



**Description:** Used to display point cloud files. By mapping the point cloud data's attribute of edge flight line to different color values, intuitively distinguish point cloud data at the edges of different flight line.

### Steps


1. Click to activate the window with point cloud data that need to be displayed by edge flight line.
2. Click the  button in the toolbar, and the window of "display by edge flight line" will popup. The window is shown as follow. It should be noted that when the point cloud is displayed by edge flight line, the edge points are marked as 1.




3. Select different colors for different edges of flight lines and click OK. The color indicator in the lower left corner of the window will automatically map the the point cloud data in different edges of flight lines to the corresponding colors. For a better display effect, please turn on the EDL effect.

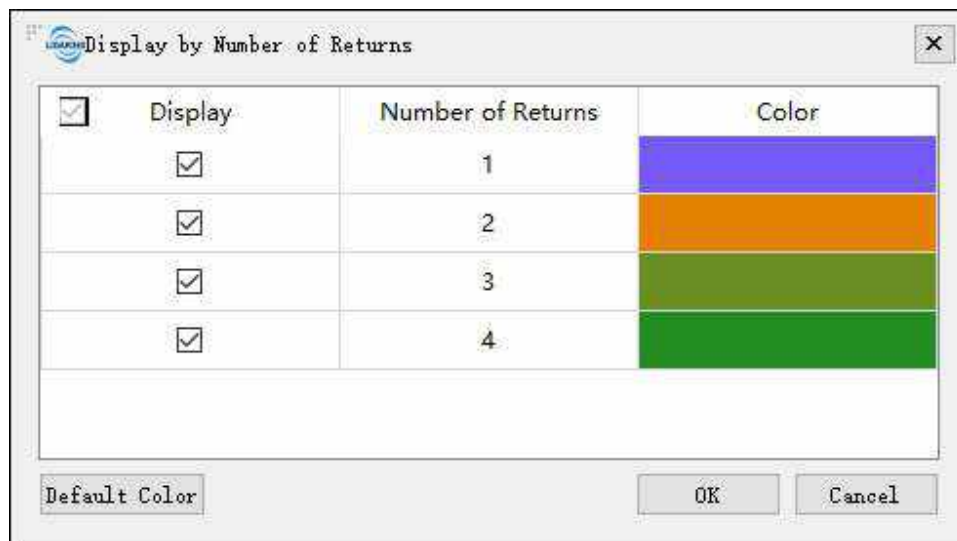
Note: This function is only applicable to point cloud data.

## Display by Number of Returns

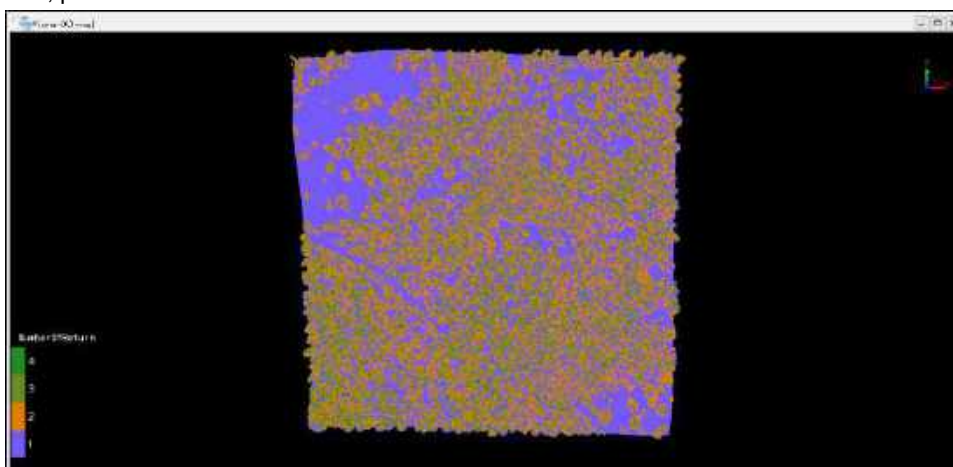
 **Description:** Used to display point cloud data. By mapping the number of returns attribute of point cloud data to different color values, intuitively distinguish point cloud data with different number of returns.

### Steps

1. Click to activate the window with point cloud data that need to be displayed by file.
2. Click the  button in the toolbar, and the window of "display by number of returns" will popup. The window is shown as follow.



3. Select different colors for different number of returns and click the OK button. The color indicator in the lower left corner of the window will automatically map the different number of returns attribute of the point cloud data to the corresponding colors. At the same time, the point cloud data in the window will be displayed according to the number of returns. EDL display is better, the effect is shown in the figure. For a better display effect, please turn on the EDL effect. And the effect is shown as follow.




Note: This function is only applicable to point cloud data.

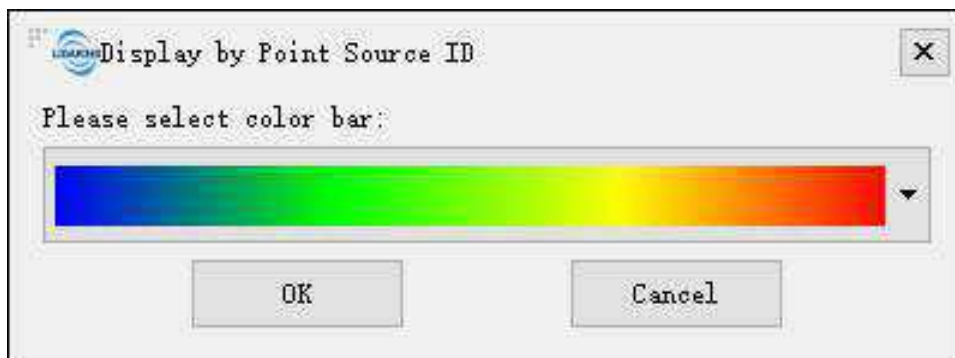
## Display by Point Source ID



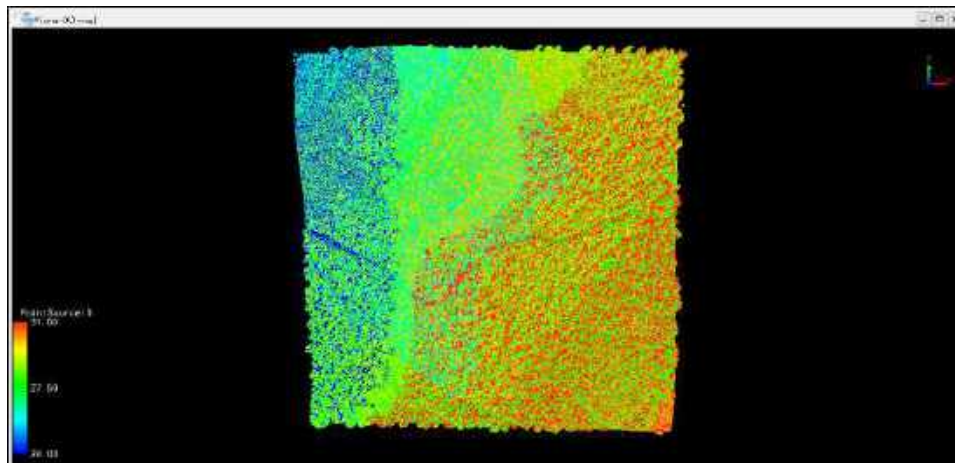
**Description:** Used to display point cloud data. By mapping the point source ID attribute of the point cloud data to several uniformly changing color intervals, intuitively show the changes of the point source ID of the point cloud data.

### Step

1. Click to activate the window with point cloud data that need to be displayed by file.
2. Click the  button in the toolbar, and the window of "display by point source ID" will popup. The window is shown as follow.




3. Select the appropriate color bar in the drop-down box and click the OK button. The color indicator in the lower left corner of the window will automatically map the changes in point source ID values of the point cloud data to the selected color bar. At the same time, the point cloud data in the window will be displayed in point source ID.




Note: This function is only applicable to point cloud data.



## Display by Scan Angle Rank

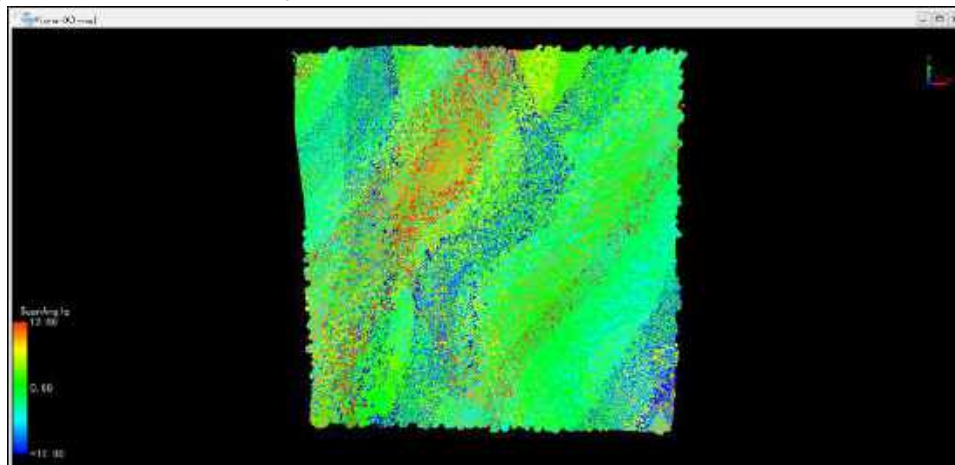
 **S** **Description:** Used to display point cloud data. By mapping the scan angle rank attribute of the point cloud data to several uniformly changing color intervals, intuitively show the changes of the scan angle rank of the point cloud data.

### Step

1. Click to activate the window with point cloud data that need to be displayed by file.
2. Click the  button in the toolbar, and the window of "display by scan angle rank" will popup. The window is shown as follow.



3. Select the appropriate color bar in the drop-down box and click the OK button. The color indicator in the lower left corner of the window will automatically map the changes in scan angle rank values of the point cloud data to the selected color bar. At the same time, the point cloud data in the window will be displayed in scan angle rank. For a better display effect, please turn on the EDL effect.



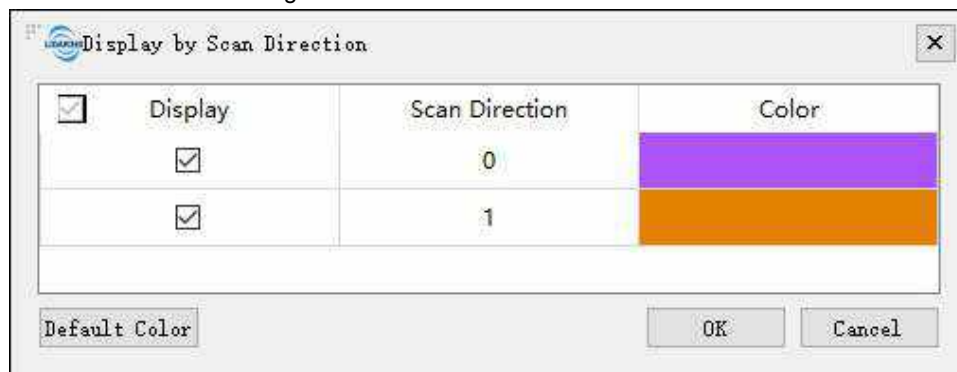
Note: This function is only applicable to point cloud data.

## Display by Scan Direction

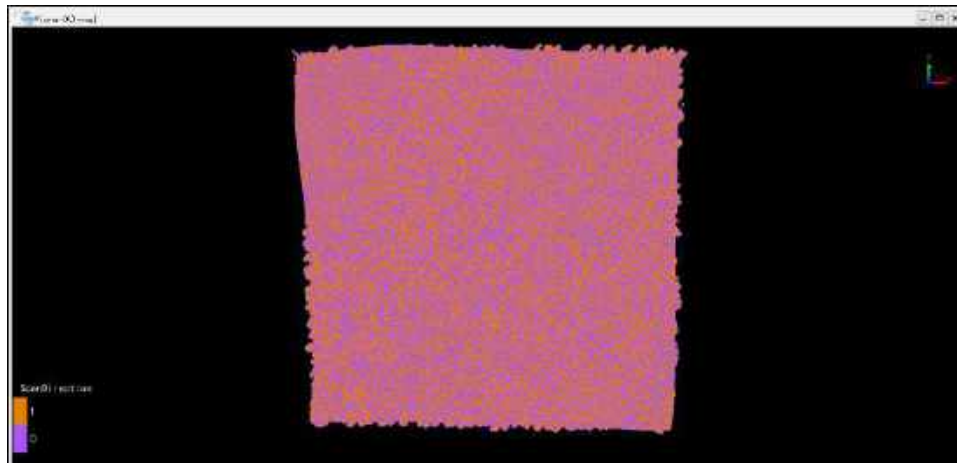
**S** **D** **Description:** Used to display point cloud data. By mapping the scan direction attribute of the point cloud data to different color values, intuitively distinguish the point cloud data with different scan directions.

### Steps

1. Click to activate the window with point cloud data that need to be displayed by edge flight line.
2. Click the **S** **D** button in the toolbar, and the window of "display by scan direction" will popup. The window is shown as follow. It should be noted that when the point cloud is displayed by edge flight line, the positive direction is marked as 1 and the negative scan direction is marked as 0.



3. Select different colors for different scan directions and click OK. The color indicator in the lower left corner of the window will automatically map the the point cloud data in different scan directions to the corresponding colors. For a better display effect, please turn on the EDL effect.




Note: This function is only applicable to point cloud data.

## Display by User Data




**Description:** Used to display point cloud data. By mapping the user data attribute of the point cloud data to several uniformly changing color intervals, intuitively show the changes of the user data of the point cloud data.

### Step


1. Click to activate the window with point cloud data that need to be displayed by file.
2. Click the  button in the toolbar, and the window of "display by user data" will popup.
3. Select the appropriate color bar in the drop-down box and click the OK button. The color indicator in the lower left corner of the window will automatically map the changes in the user data of the point cloud data to the selected color bar. At the same time, the point cloud data in the window will be displayed in user data. For a better display effect, please turn on the EDL effect.

Note: This function is only applicable to point cloud data.

## Display by Scanner Channel

 **Description:** Used to display point cloud data. By mapping the scanner channel attribute of the point cloud data to different color values, intuitively distinguish the point cloud data with different scanner channel.

### Steps

1. Click to activate the window with point cloud data that need to be displayed by edge flight line.
2. Click the  button in the toolbar, and the window of "display by scanner channel" will popup.
3. Select different colors for different scanner channel and click OK. The color indicator in the lower left corner of the window will automatically map the the point cloud data in different scanner channel to the corresponding colors. For a better display effect, please turn on the EDL effect.


Note: This function is only applicable to point cloud data.

## Display by Near Infrared



**Description:** Used to display point cloud data. By mapping the near-infrared attribute of the point cloud data to several uniformly changing color intervals, intuitively show the changes of the near infrared values of the point cloud data.

### Steps


1. Click to activate the window with point cloud data that need to be displayed by file.
2. Click the  button in the toolbar, and the window of "display by near infrared" will popup.
3. Select the appropriate color bar in the drop-down box and click the OK button. The color indicator in the lower left corner of the window will automatically map the changes in near-infrared values of the point cloud data to the selected color bar. At the same time, the point cloud data in the window will be displayed in near-infrared. For a better display effect, please turn on the EDL effect.

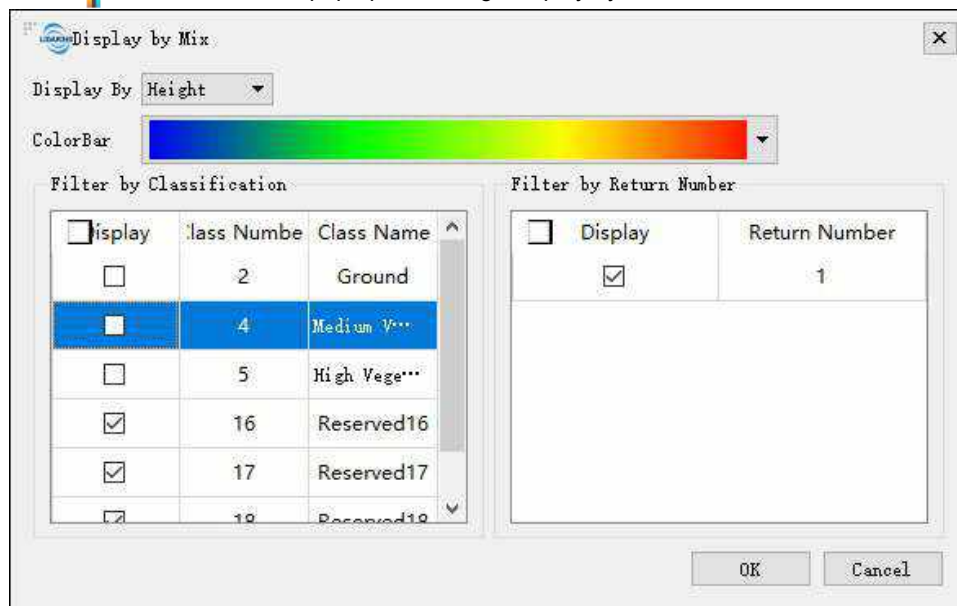
Note: This function is only applicable to point cloud data.

## Display by Mix

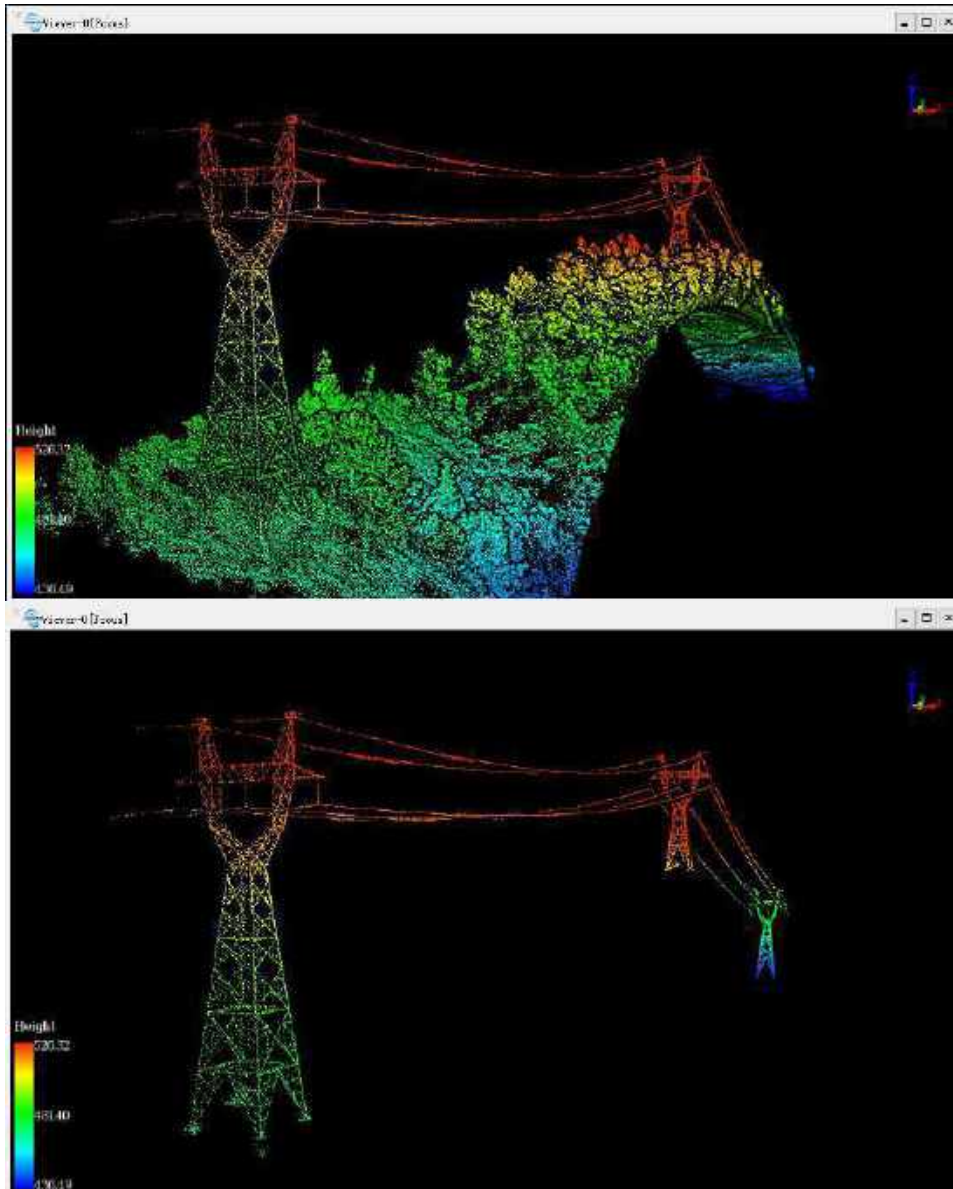
**M** **Brief:** This tool is used for displaying point cloud data. Different attributes of point cloud data are mapped to several uniformly varying color intervals, at the same time different ways of attribute filtering are supported, so as to display the variation of a certain attribute of the filtered point cloud data more intuitively.

### Steps

1. Click the window that loads point cloud data with the left mouse button and set it as the active window.
2. Click the button  on the toolbar to pop up the dialog "Display by Mix", as shown below.



3. Select the attribute for display.
4. Select the appropriate color bar in the combo box.
5. Check the classes and return numbers for filtering.
6. Click the "OK" button. Then the color indicator of the window will generate the corresponding color bar according to the selected attribute range the point cloud data. The data will be filtered by the specified attributes first and then be displayed by the specified attributes in the scene. The visual effects are better with EDL mode, as shown below.



## Settings

- **Display By:** The selected attribute will be mapped to specified color range.
  - **Height(Default):** The elevation attribute of the point cloud data.
  - **Intensity:** The intensity attribute of the point cloud data.
  - **Time:** The GPS Time attribute of the point cloud data.
- **ColorBar:** The color bar supports several uniformly varying color intervals for color mapping.
- **Filter by Classification:** List all the classes users can choose to filter the point cloud data.
- **Filter by Return Number:** List all the return numbers users can choose to filter the point cloud data.

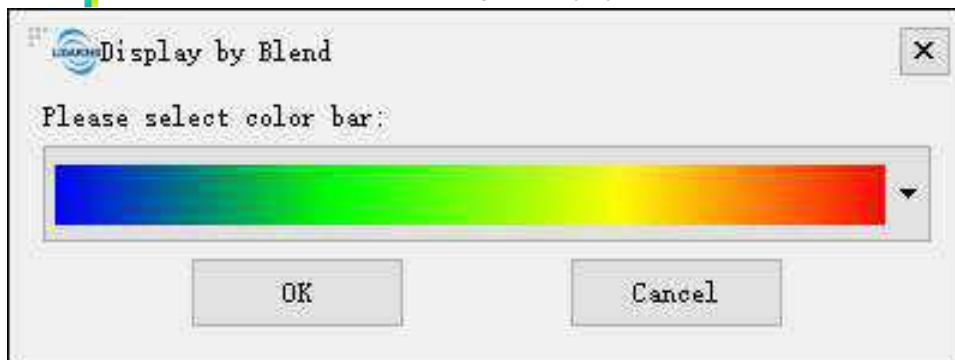
Note: This tool only works with point cloud data.

## Display by Blend

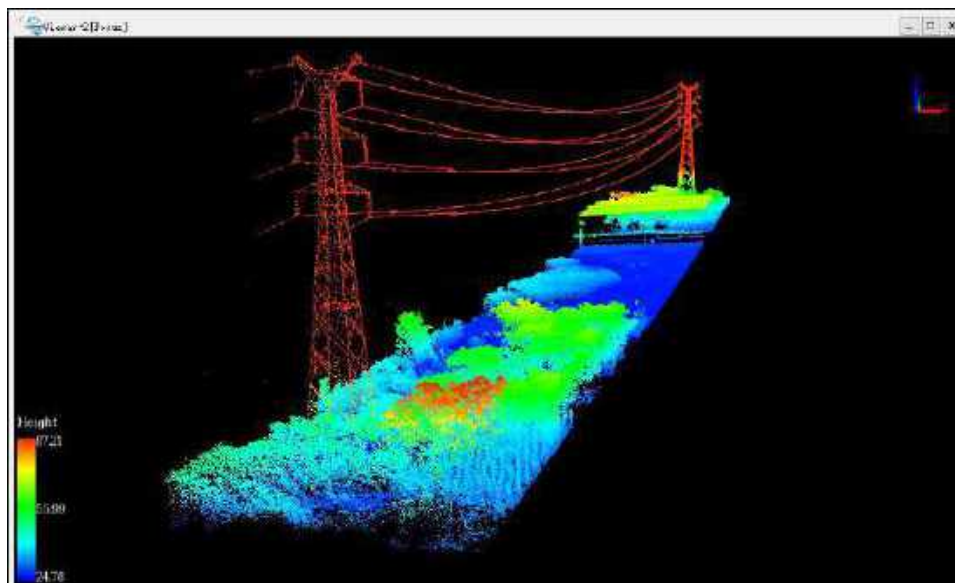
**B** **Brief:** This tool is used for displaying point cloud data. Consider the elevation attribute and intensity attribute, the point cloud data is mapped to several uniformly varying color intervals, so as to reflect the comprehensive variation of elevation/intensity more intuitively, and display the feature class and boundary more explicitly.

### Steps

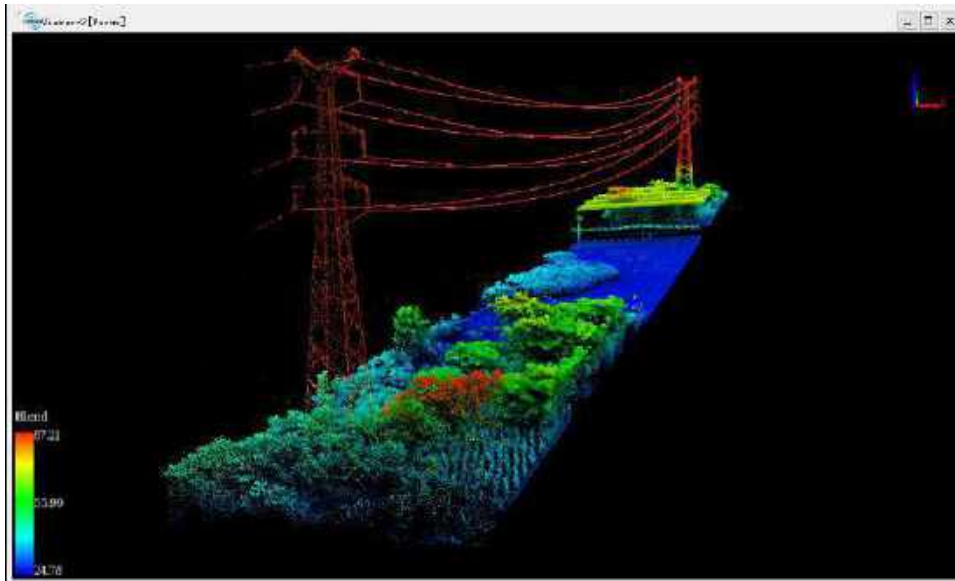
1. Click the window that loads point cloud data with the left mouse button and set it as the active window.
2. (Optional) Process the point cloud data by [PCV](#).
3. Click the button **B** on the toolbar to pop up the dialog "Display by Blend", as shown below.



4. Select the appropriate color bar in the combo box and click the "OK" button. The color indicator of the window will generate the corresponding color bar according to the elevation range of the point cloud data. At the same time, the data is displayed in the scene according to the elevation values and intensity values. The visual effects are better with EDL mode, as shown below.








Note: This tool only works with point cloud data. The visual effects will be better after PCV process for the point cloud data.

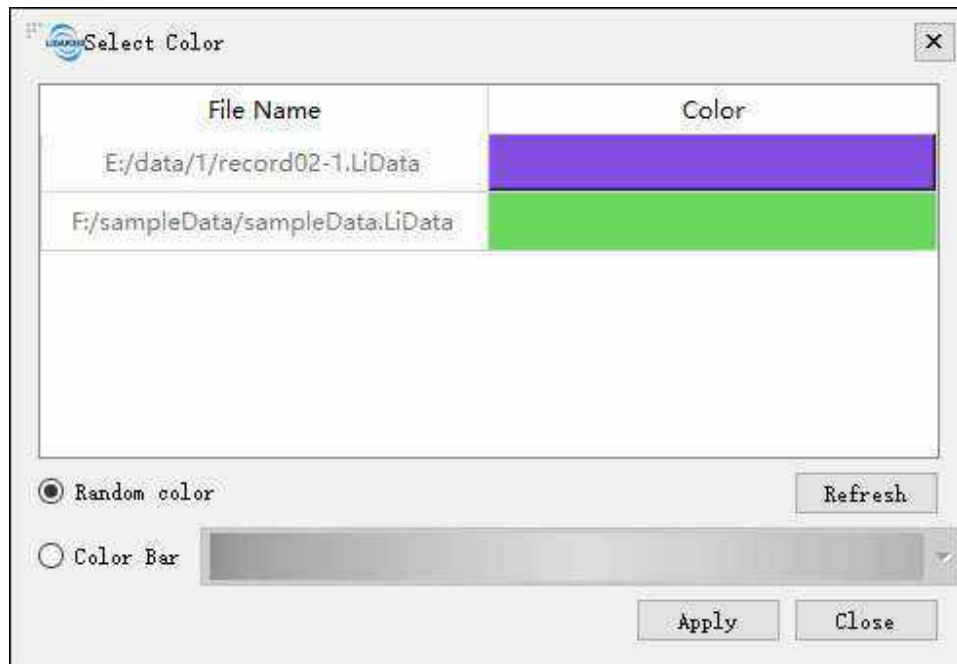
## Display by File



**Description:** Used to display point cloud data. By mapping the point cloud data from different files to different color values, intuitively distinguish point cloud data which are from different point cloud files.

### Steps

1. Click to activate the window with point cloud data that need to be displayed by file.
2. Click the  button in the toolbar, and the window of "display by file" will popup. The window is shown as follow.



3. (Option) Click random color and use refresh button to randomly colorize point cloud from different files.
4. (Option) Click the color bar, select a color bar from the drop-down box, and calculate the corresponding color of each file according to the selected color bar.
5. (Option) Click the button in the file color column to select a specific color for it.
6. Click the OK button, the point cloud data in the window will be displayed in the selected color of the file. For a better display effect, please turn on the EDL effect.

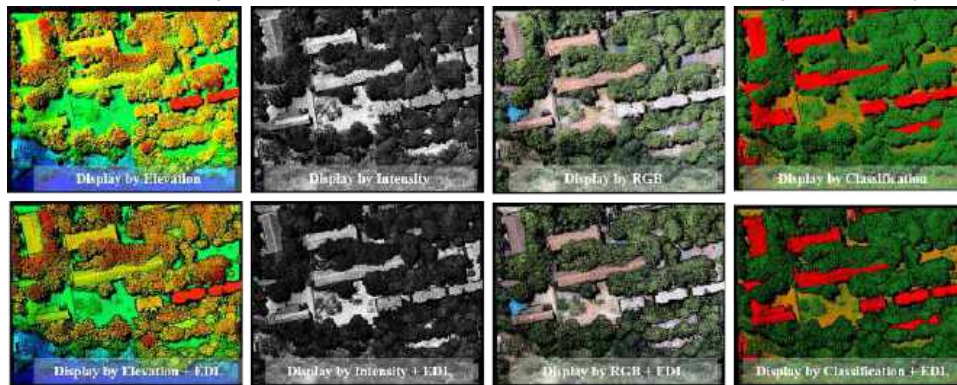
Note: This function is only applicable to point cloud data.

## Display by EDL

**EDL** **Brief:** This tool is used to display the point cloud data and enhance the visual effects of the contour features using the Eye Dome Lighting (EDL) mode. EDL is a shading technique that works with other display mode (e.g. display by height, display by intensity) to improve the depth perception in 3D point cloud visualization.

### Steps

1. Click the window that loads point cloud data with the left mouse button and set it as the active window.
2. Click the button **EDL** on the toolbar. The visual effects of the point cloud data in the scene will be improved with EDL mode. The following picture shows the comparison before and after using EDL display mode.

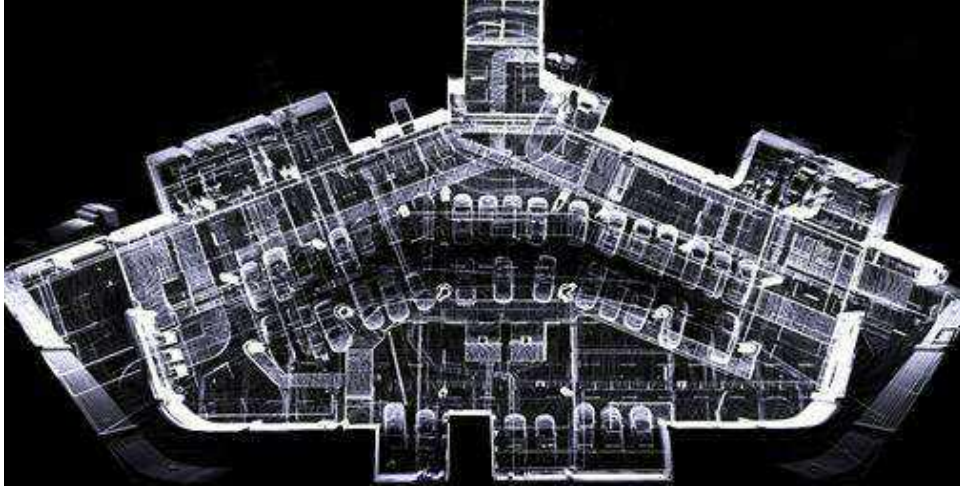


Note: This tool only works with point cloud data.

## Glass Shader

**Brief:** With the glass shader point cloud object appears translucent.

This effect can be enabled/disabled for individual display window. An example is shown as follows.



Note: The Glass Shader is only applicable to point cloud data.

# Viewing Tools

Set current active window to some view.

- [Top View](#)
- [Bottom View](#)
- [Left View](#)
- [Right View](#)
- [Front View](#)
- [Back View](#)
- [Front Isometric View](#)
- [Back Isometric View](#)
- [Set View Mode](#)

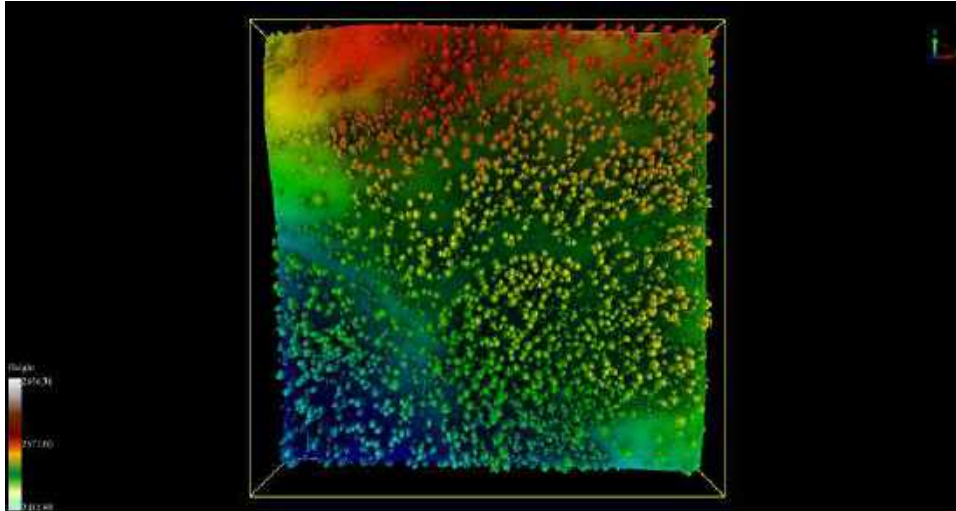
## Top View



**Brief:** Set camera to top view. View data from +z to -z direction. View plane: x-y plane.

## Steps

1. After clicking this button, current active window will be shown:



Note: This tool is only for viewer in 3D mode, and it does not reset the center position of the viewer. If you need to reset to the default view, please click [Full Extent](#).

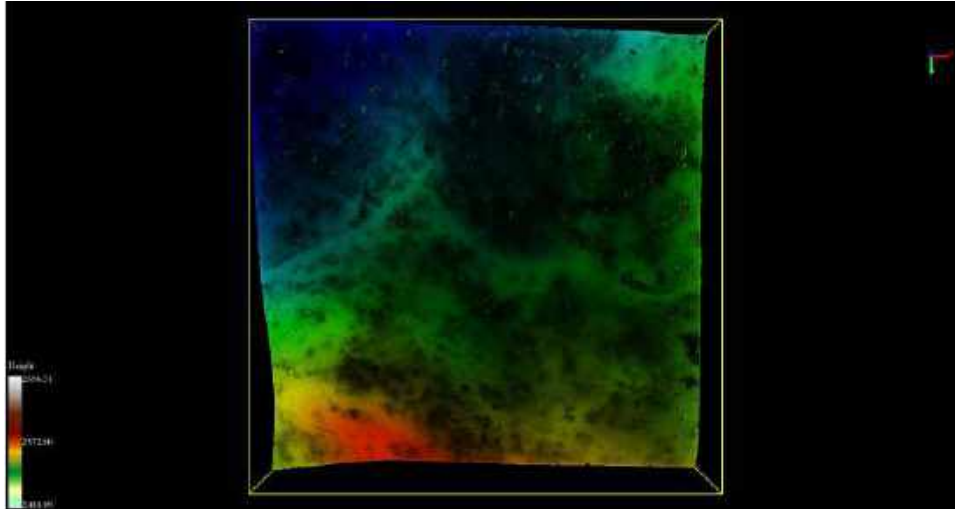
## Bottom View



**Brief:** Set camera to bottom view. View data from -z to +z direction. View plane: x-y plane.

## Steps

1. After clicking this button, current active window will be shown:



Note: This tool is only for viewer in 3D mode, and it does not reset the center position of the viewer. If you need to reset to the default view, please click [Full Extent](#).

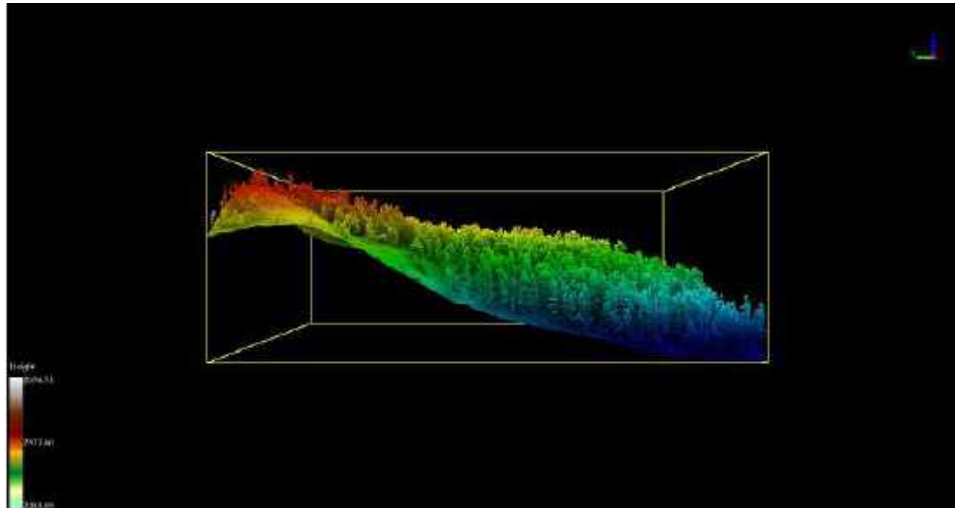
## Left View



**Brief:** Set camera to left view. View data from -x to +x direction. View plane: y-z plane.

## Steps

1. After clicking this button, current active window will be shown:



Note: This tool is only for viewer in 3D mode, and it does not reset the center position of the viewer. If you need to reset to the default view, please click [Full Extent](#).



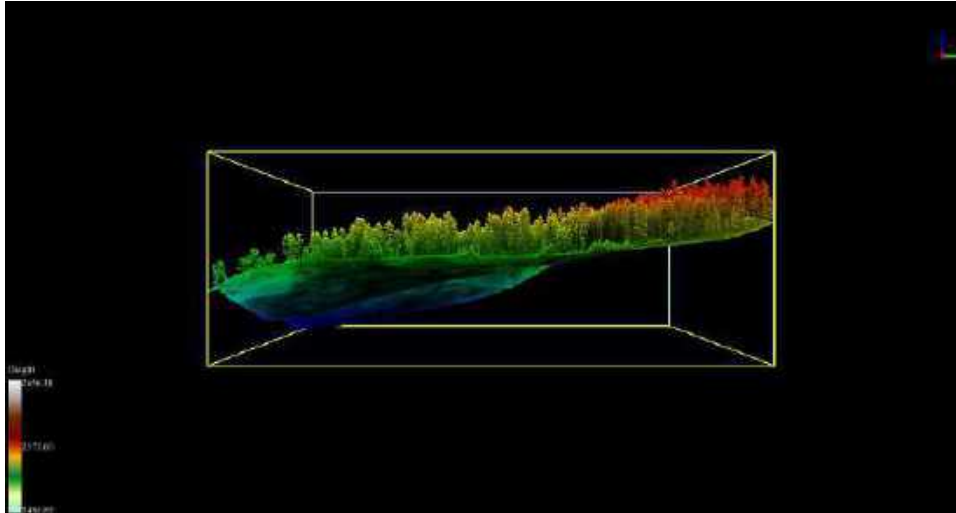
## Right View



**Brief:** Set camera to right view. View data from +x to -x direction. View plane: y-z plane.

## Steps

1. After clicking this button, current active window will be shown:



Note: This tool is only for viewer in 3D mode, and it does not reset the center position of the viewer. If you need to reset to the default view, please click [Full Extent](#).

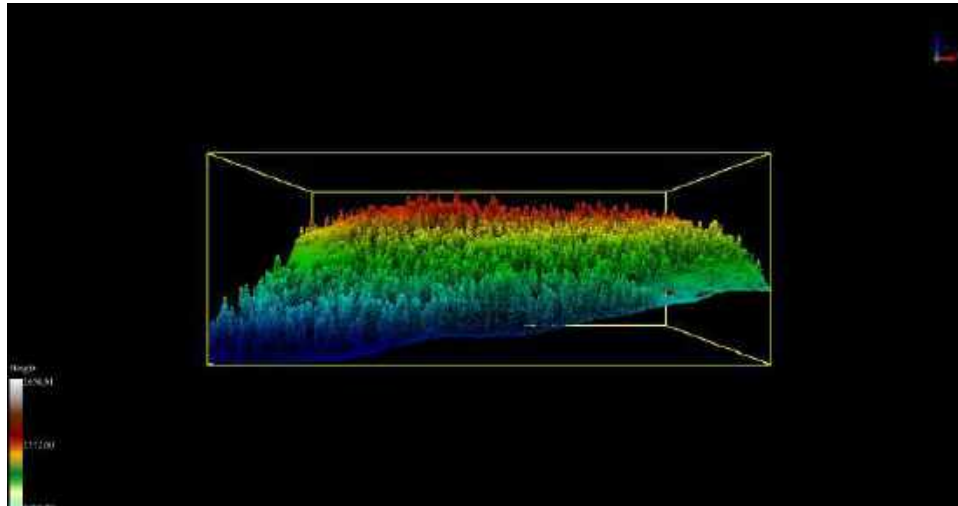
## Front View



**Brief:** Set camera to front view. View data from -y to +y direction. View plane: x-z plane.

## Steps

1. After clicking this button, current active window will be shown:



Note: This tool is only for viewer in 3D mode, and it does not reset the center position of the viewer. If you need to reset to the default view, please click [Full Extent](#).

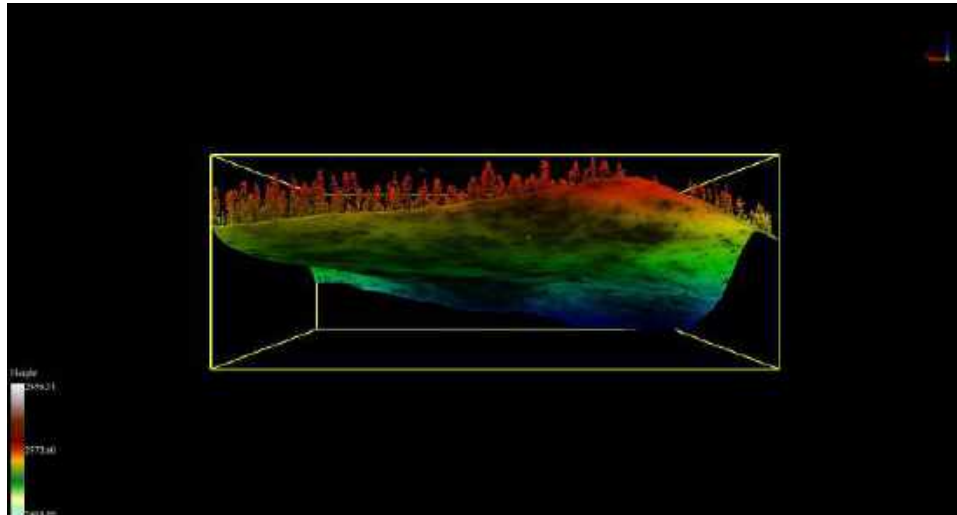
## Back View



**Brief:** Set camera to back view. View data from +y to -y direction. View plane is x-z plane.

## Steps

1. After clicking this button, current active window will be shown:



Note: This tool is only for viewer in 3D mode, and it does not reset the center position of the viewer. If you need to reset to the default view, please click [Full Extent](#).

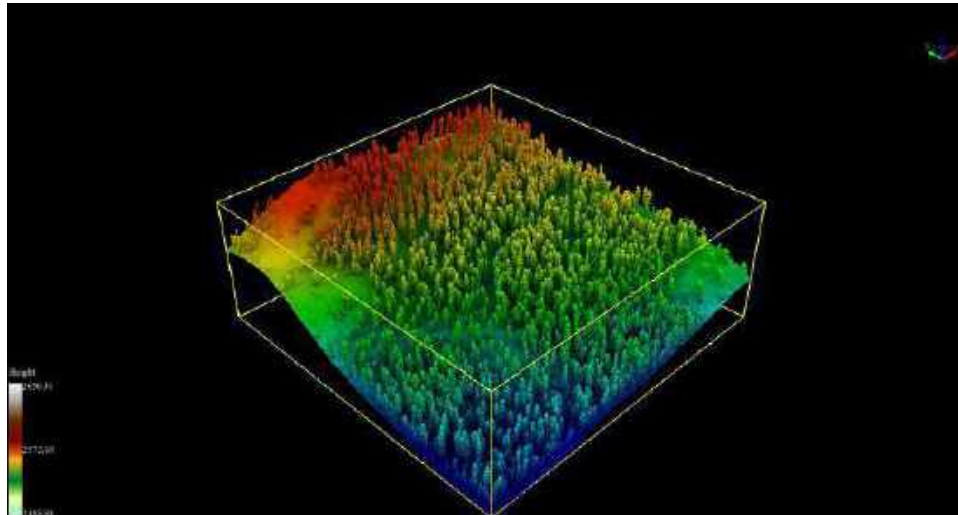
## Front Isometric View



**Brief:** Set camera position to front 45 degrees of X-Y plane.

### Steps

1. After clicking this button, current active window will be shown:



Note: This tool is only for viewer in 3D mode, and it does not reset the center position of the viewer. If you need to reset to the default view, please click [Full Extent](#).

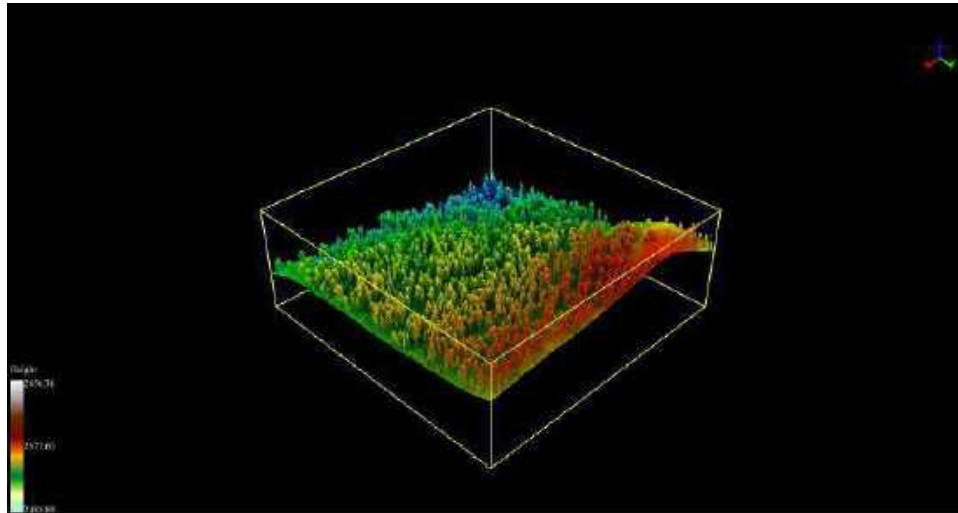
## Back Isometric View



**Brief:** Set camera position to back 45 degrees of X-Y plane.

### Steps

1. After clicking this button, current active window will be shown:



Note: This tool is only for viewer in 3D mode, and it does not reset the center position of the viewer. If you need to reset to the default view, please click [Full Extent](#).

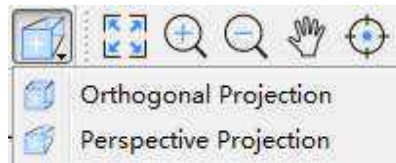
# Set View Mode



**Brief:** Select projection mode(orthographic/perspective).

## Steps

1. After clicking this button, the option of projection mode is popped up. If Orthogonal Projection is selected, current active window will be set in orthogonal projection. If Perspective Projection is selected, current active window will be set in perspective projection.



## Settings

- **Shortcut Key:** F3



Note: This tool is only for viewer in 3D mode.

# Setting Tools


Basic settings for viewers.

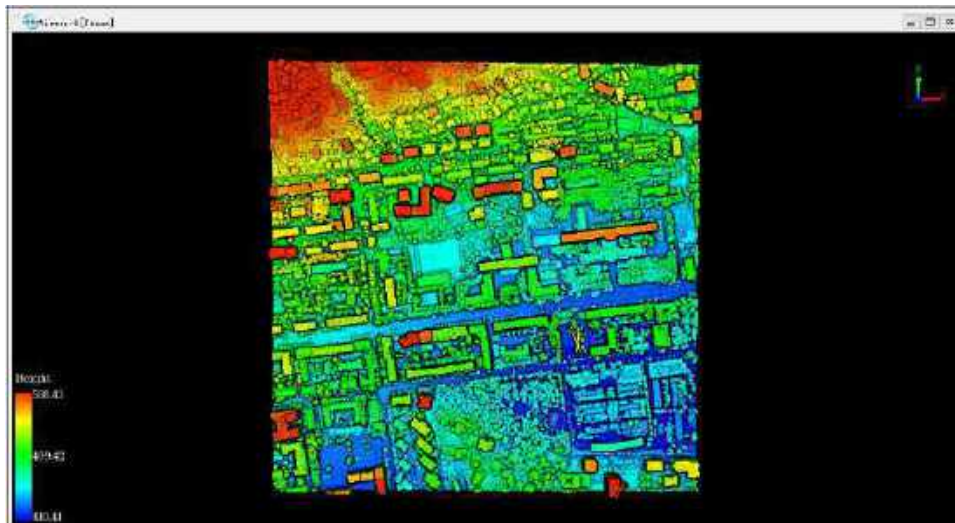
- [Full Extent](#)
- [Cross Selection](#)
- [Configure Point Size and Type](#)
- [Display Options](#)
- [As 2D](#)
- [As 3D](#)
- [New Window](#)
- [Profile View](#)

## Full Extent

 **Brief:** This tool is applicable to all data types supported by LiDAR360. It makes all the data cover the  entire window in top view and provides full view of all the data.

## Steps

1. Click the window that contains data with the left mouse button and set it as the active window.
2. Click the button  on the toolbar. All the data in the active window will be scaled automatically to cover the entire window, as shown below.



Note: When there are multiple windows, this tool only works on the active window.



## Cross Selection



**Brief:** Cross select partial point cloud using ROI. The boundary and the rotation angles of the ROI can be entered in the user-interface, or interactively changed by using the mouse. This function can be used for flood analysis and other applications.

### Steps

1. Click this button to open the dialog shown below:





Translate  Rotate  Scale

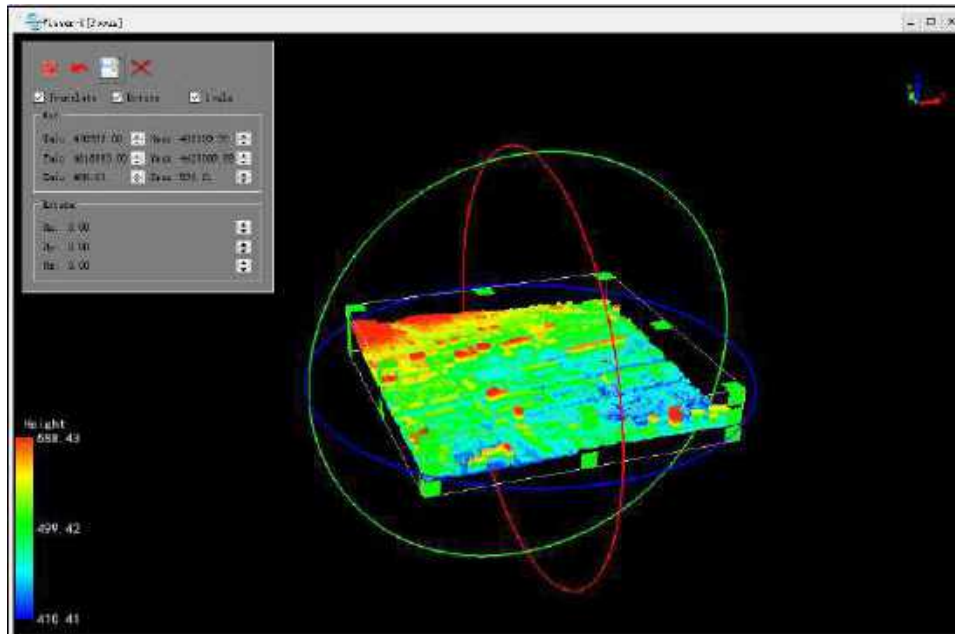
**Box**

Xmin	478990.00	↑ ↓	Xmax	480009.99	↑ ↓
Ymin	4618990.00	↑ ↓	Ymax	4620009.99	↑ ↓
Zmin	408.63	↑ ↓	Zmax	590.21	↑ ↓

**Rotate**

Rx:	0.00	↑ ↓
Ry:	0.00	↑ ↓
Rz:	0.00	↑ ↓

2. The buttons of translation, rotation, and scale ratio control the translation, rotation, and scale ratio of the ROI.
3. Click button  to stop the editing of the ROI and return to the normal interactive user-interface.
4. Click button  to reset ROI.
5. Click button  to export point cloud inside the ROI to a new LiData File.
6. Click button  to exit cross selection.
7. The whole display effect is shown below. Drag any face of the ROI to translate it. And the dragged face will be highlighted. Drag the red, green, or blue track circle to rotate the ROI about the X, Y, or Z axis. The dragged track circle will be highlighted. Drag the green square to rescale the ROI. The dragged square will be highlighted.



## Settings

- **Hot Key:** Not applicable.
- **Prerequisite:** Current viewer contains point cloud.
- **Translation:** Switch of using mouse to translate the ROI.
- **Scale:** Switch of using mouse to rescale the ROI.
- **Rotation:** Switch of using mouse to rotate the ROI.
- **Boundary of ROI:** Precisely control the max. and min. value in X, Y, and Z direction of the ROI.
- **Rotation angles of ROI:** Control the rotation angles of the ROI in X, Y, and Z axis.

Note: This function is for all point clouds in the current viewer.

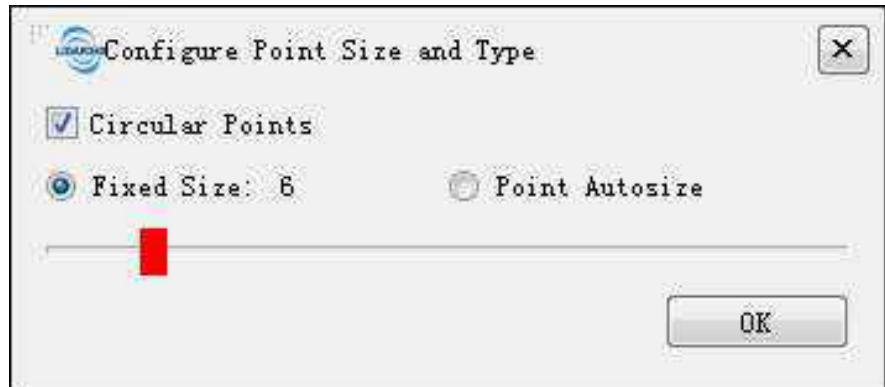
# Configure Point Size and Type



**Brief:** Configure point size and type.

## Steps

1. Click this button to open the dialog shown as below:



2. Configure point size and type.

## Settings

- **Circular Points:** Determine point type. If checked, point will be rendered as circle, otherwise, point will be rendered as square.
- **Fixed Size:** If checked, point size would be fixed. User can adjust point size using the slider below (range 0-50 pixels).
- **Point Autosize:** If checked, point size is auto changing based on the depth of the viewer.

Note: This function is global. If user wants to configure a single point cloud, just right-click it, select Configure Point Size and Type from the context menu.

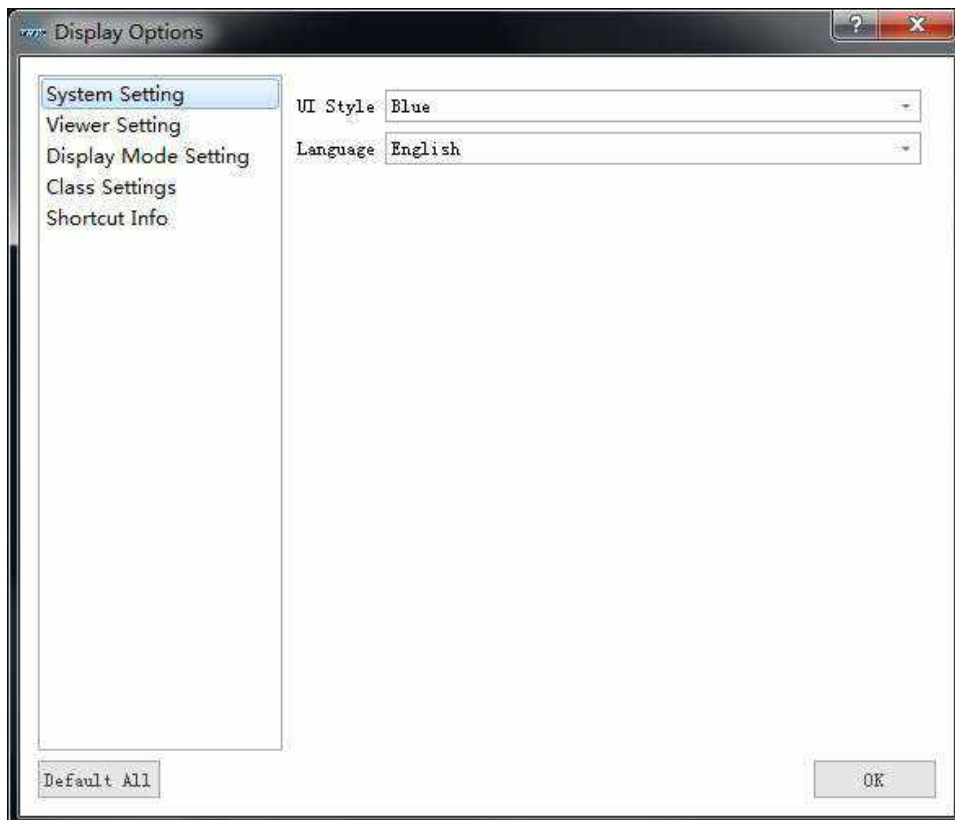
# Display Options



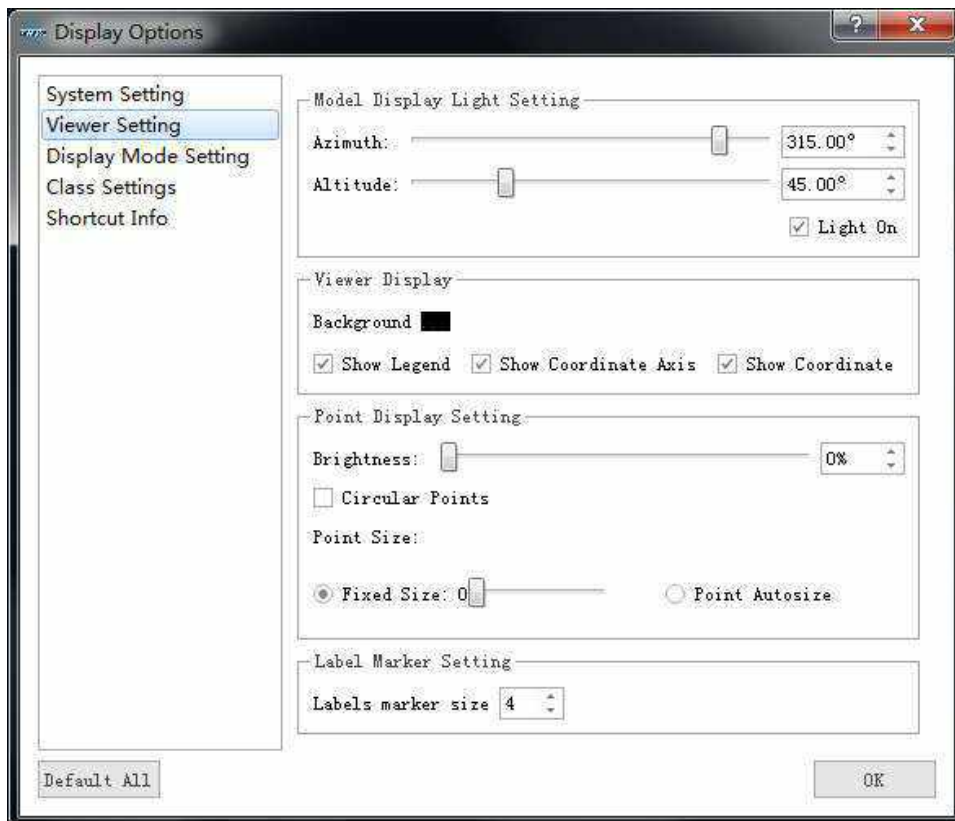
**Brief:** Display options include system setting, viewer setting, display mode setting, class settings, and shortcut info. Class priority list under the class settings sets the priority of the classes in the profile, and will be displayed in order on the classification interface and the profile view. Shortcut info includes shortcut keys for the commonly used functions of the system.

## Steps

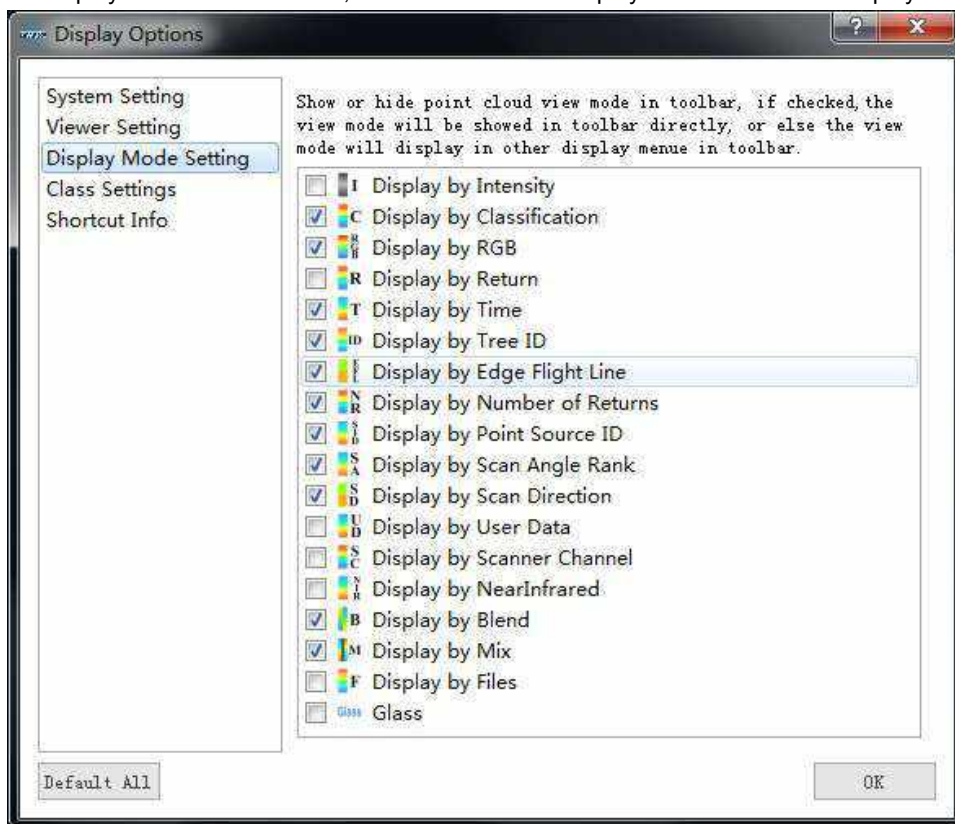
1. Click this button to open the interface shown below. System setting includes UI style setting and language setting. The available styles include scenic, blue, white, and dark gray. Languages include English, Chinese, French, etc.



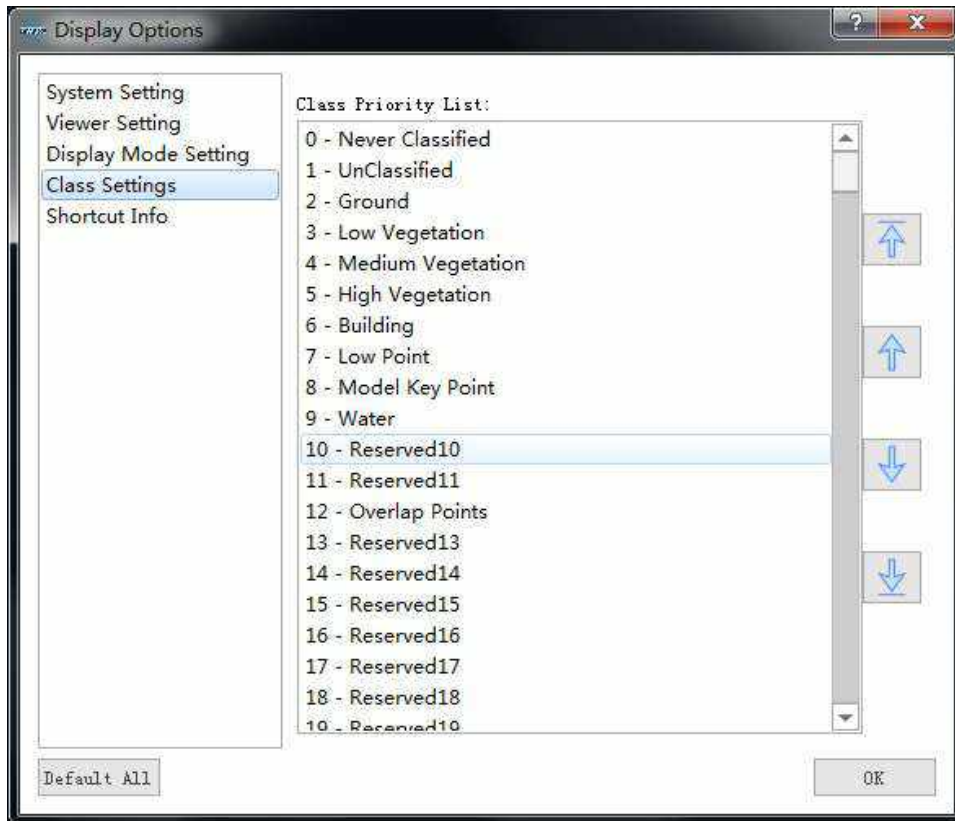
2. Click "Viewer Setting" to switch to the interface shown below. The viewer setting includes model display light setting, viewer display, point display setting, and label marker setting. The model display light setting can only be applied to the model files (such as LiModel, LiTin, OSGB, etc.), and the position of the light source can be changed.



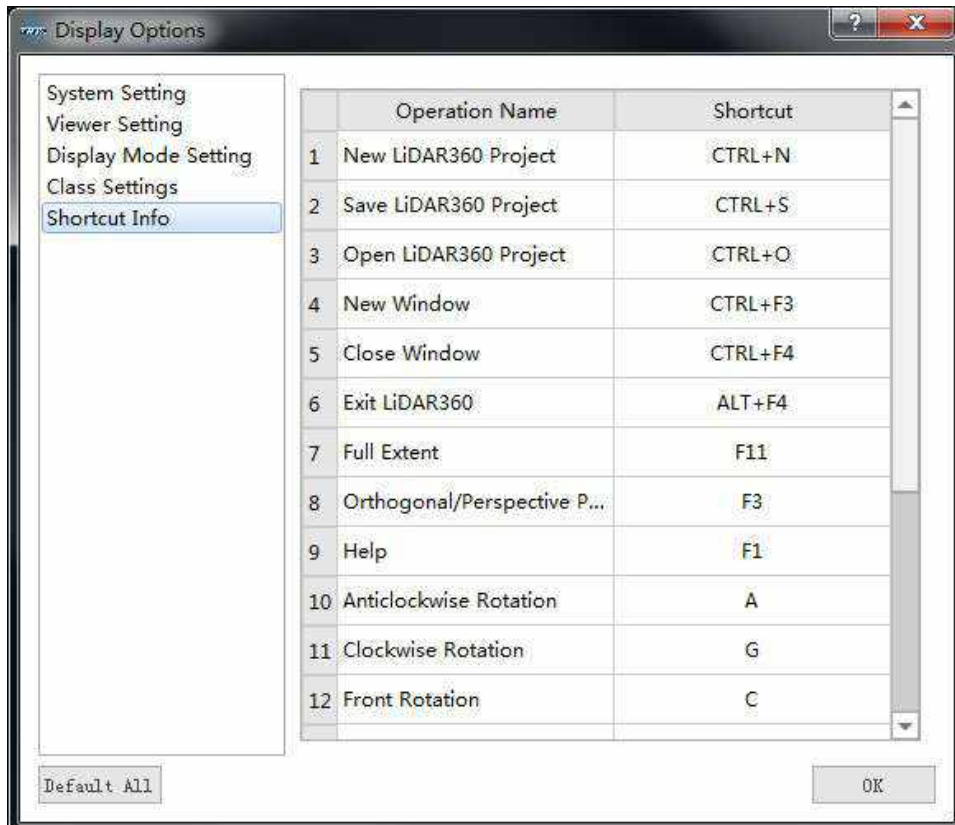
- Click "Display Mode Setting" to switch to the interface shown below. The display mode setting is to display the checked display mode to the ToolBar, and the unchecked display mode to the other display menu:



- Click "Class Settings" to switch to the interface shown below.



5. Click "Shortcut Info" to switch to the interface shown below.



6. Click "Default All" to restore all settings to default values.

## Settings

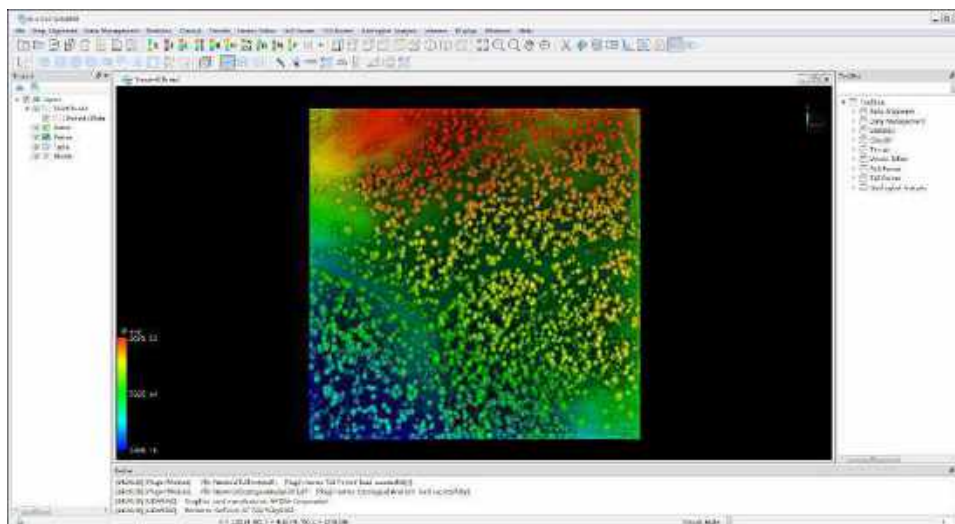
- **Hot Keys:** Press P on keyboard to change the light source position.

## As 2D

**2D** Brief: Switch current active window to 2D mode.

## Steps

1. After clicking this button, current active window will switch to 2D mode, as shown below:



2. When the display mode of the window is switched to 2D, rotation angle setting slider will be displayed in the status bar. Drag the slider to change the rotation angle of that window. The range of the rotation angle is [0°, 360°). Clockwise rotation angle is positive. See details below:

Note: If current active window contains raster data, it can only be set to 2D mode. After removing raster data, it can be set to 3D mode.

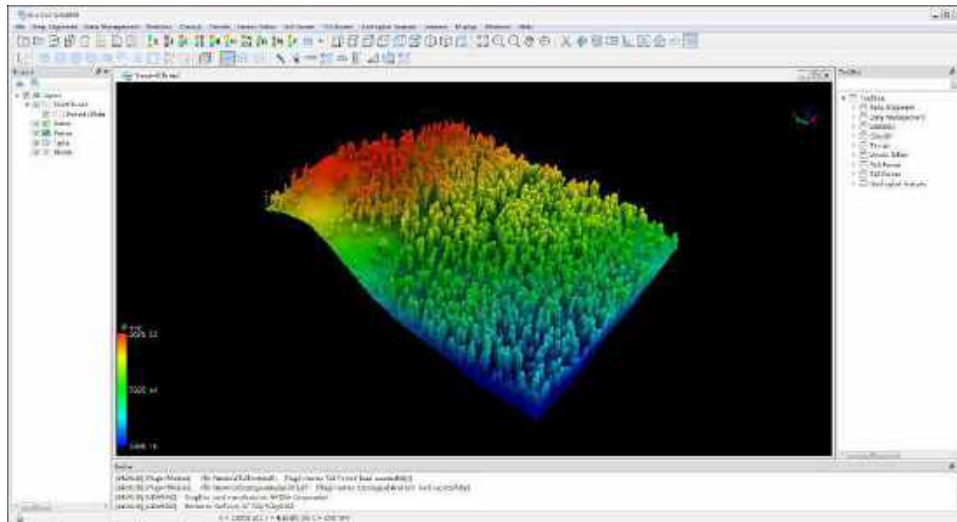


# As 3D

**3D** Brief: Switch current active window to 3D mode

## Steps

1. After clicking this button, current active window will switch to 3D mode, as shown below:



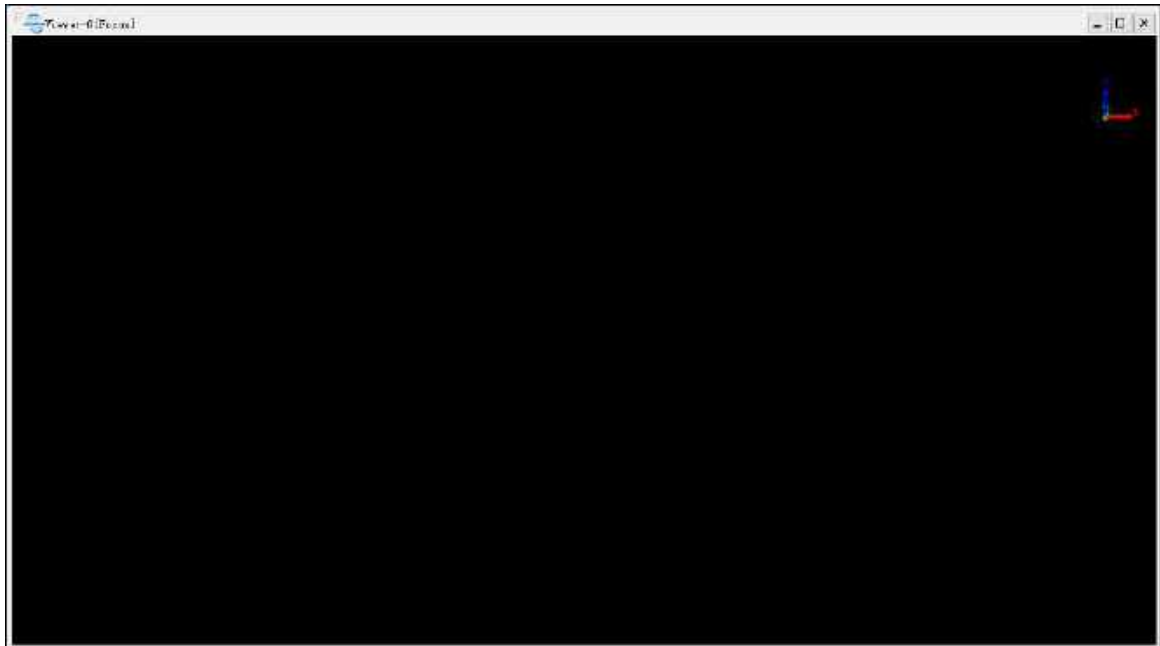
Note: If current active window contains raster data, it can only be set to 2D mode. After removing raster data, it can be set to 3D mode.

# New Window

**Brief:** Create new window in the current project.

## Steps

1. Click the menu *Viewers > Add Window*. The result is as follows.



**Shortcut Key:** Ctrl+F3

## Profile View



**Description:** The section editing function allows the user to display the point cloud data of any rectangular area in the main window in the section window, which is convenient for the user to view, measure, and modify the class.

The use of LiDAR data to produce high-precision terrain products requires manual inspection of the results of automatic classification. In this case, profile viewing tools are required. LiDAR360 provides profile view function starting from V5.0 version, which can complete classification inspection more efficiently.

- [Draw Profile](#)
- [Profile Viewer Tool](#)

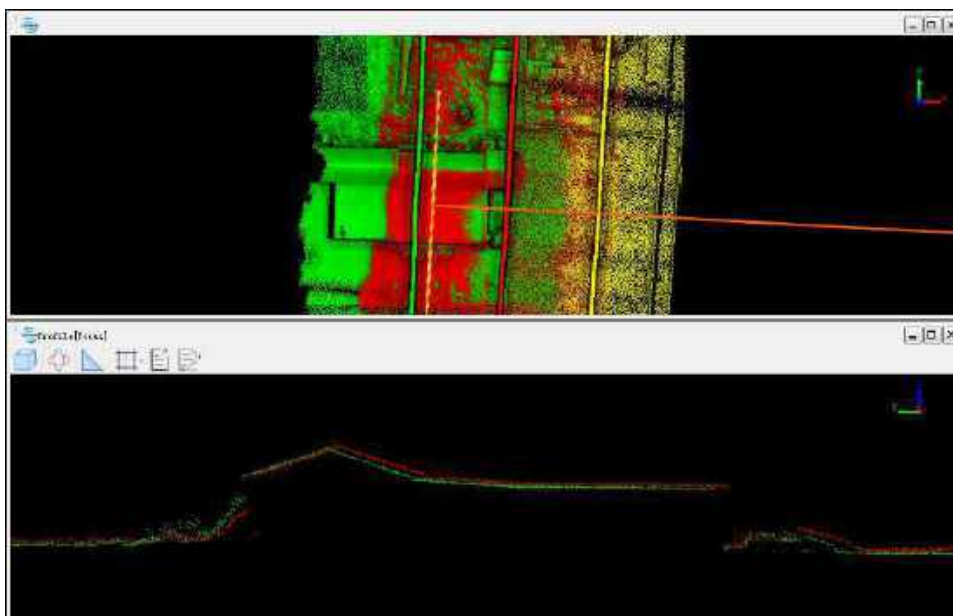


## Profile and Measurement Tools

When the profile is turned on, the point cloud window does not support the measurement function. The profile window supports single-point selection, multi-point selection, length measurement, angle measurement, slope measurement, and height measurement.

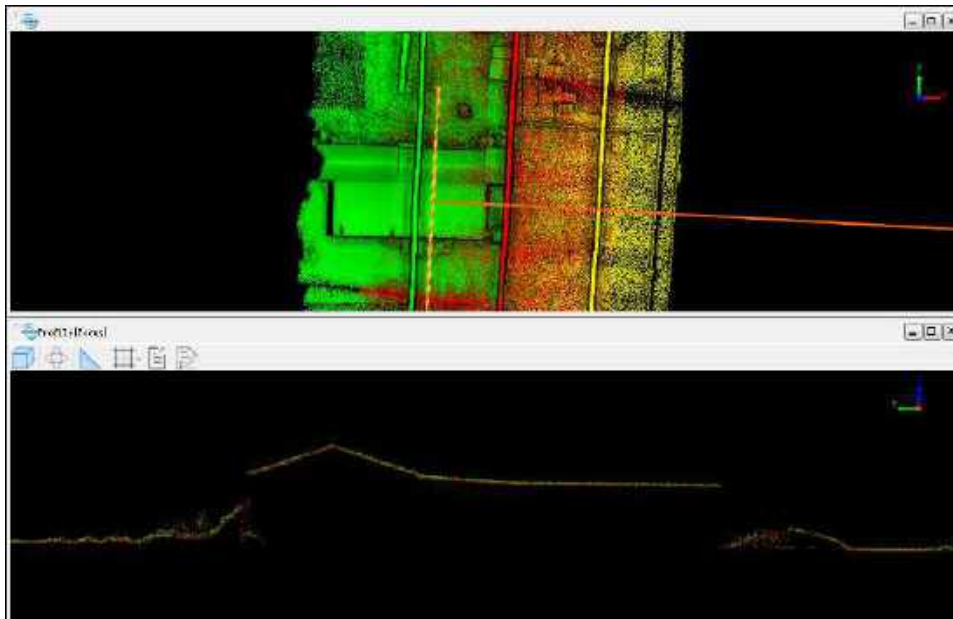
## Section Window and Strip Alignment

In the track stitching function, we need to view the data position difference between different flight belts caused by the set-up angle error in the profile window.



The above picture can clearly see the relative position of the point cloud before splicing.

During the splicing process, you can view the splicing effect of different parameters in real time through the section window:



After ensuring that it is correct, the point cloud can be transformed according to the current parameters and written directly to the disk.

## Profile View and Strip Alignment

The measurement tools of the profile window can also assist in the error estimation of the pitch, roll and heading angles in Strip Alignment function. Please refer to [Strip Alignment](#) for more details.

## Profile View and ALS Editor

When the ALS Editor toolbar is opened, the host window will be set to 2D view. The Profile tool can help to check whether the seed points positions are accurate in 3D. Please refer to [ALS Editor](#) for more details.

Note: ALS Editor has its own profile tools.

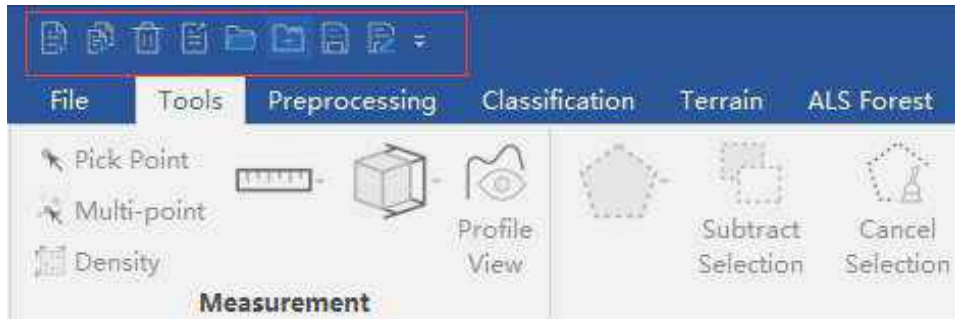
## Profile View and TLS Editor

When the TLS Editor toolbar is opened, the host window will be set to 2D view. The Profile tool can help to check whether the seed points positions are accurate in 3D. Please refer to [TLS Editor](#) for more details.

Note: TLS Editor has its own profile tools.

# Quick ToolBar

Quick Toolbar is at the upper-left corner of interface, includes: [Add Data](#), [Add and Merge Point Cloud Data](#) [Delete Data](#), [Export Data](#), [Open Project](#), [New Project](#), [Save Project](#), [Save As](#).



## Add Data

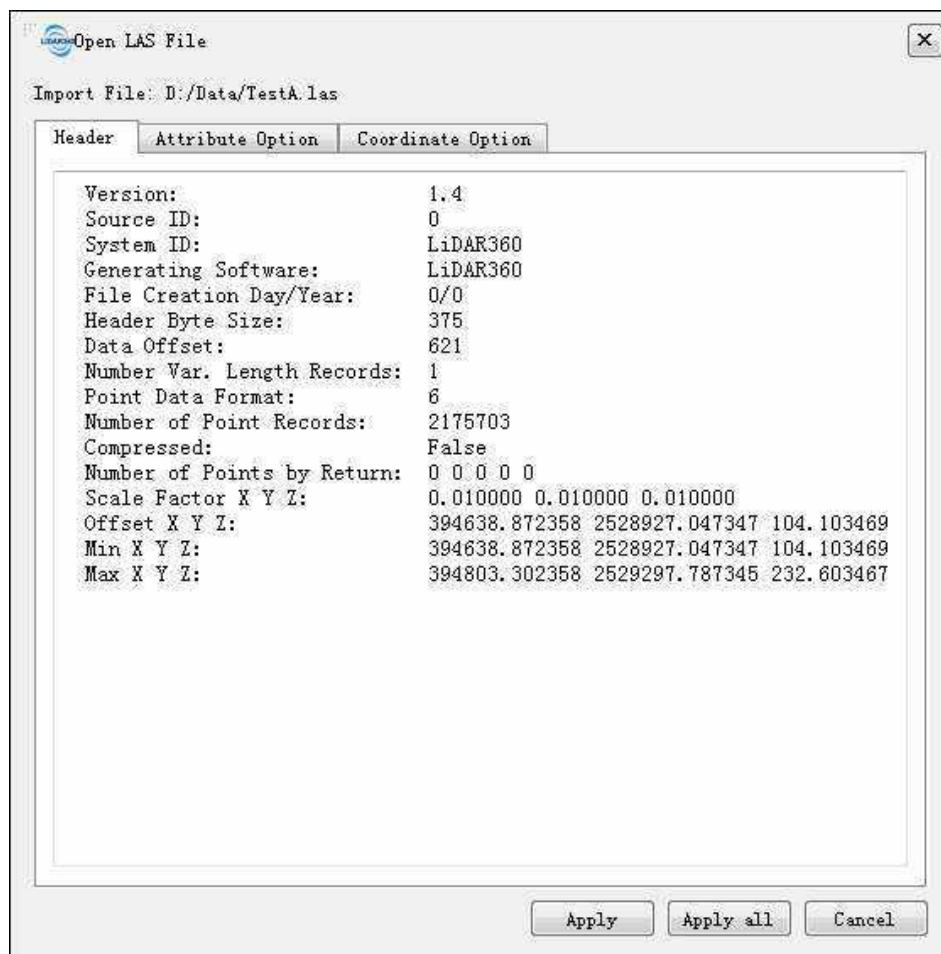


**Brief:** One of the most useful features of LiDAR360 is its ability to interface with data in many file formats. You can import point clouds (LAS/LAZ, TXT, PLY, ASC, NEU, XYZ, PTS, CSV, E57, etc.), tables, images (JPG, TIF), models (OSG, LiModel, LiTin) or vectors into LiDAR360. It allows you to visualize, animate and edit your point cloud as well. Point cloud data will be converted into LiData file at the first time being added. LiData file is the LiDAR360 native file format for point cloud and optimized for viewing.

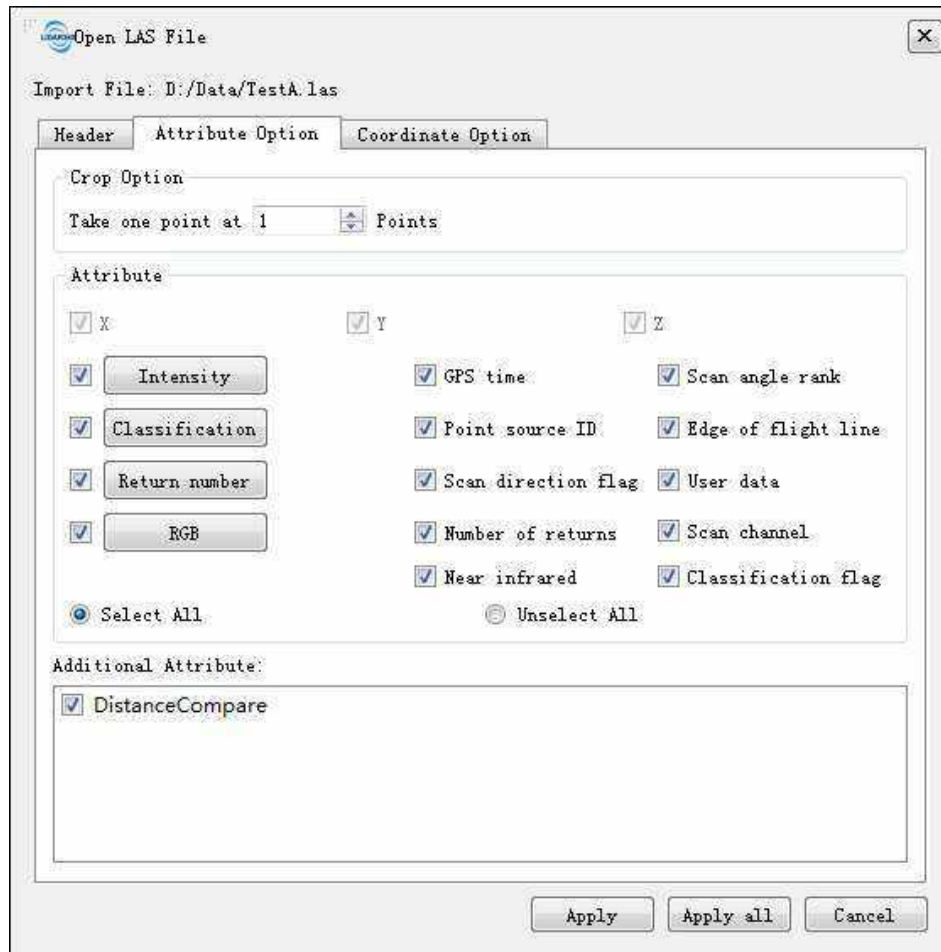
## Import LAS/LAZ File

The LAS file is intended to contain LiDAR point data records. The data will generally be put into this format from software (e.g. provided by LiDAR hardware vendors) which combines GPS, IMU, and laser pulse range data to produce X, Y, and Z point data. The intention of the data format is to provide an open format that allows different LiDAR hardware and software tools to output data in a common format.

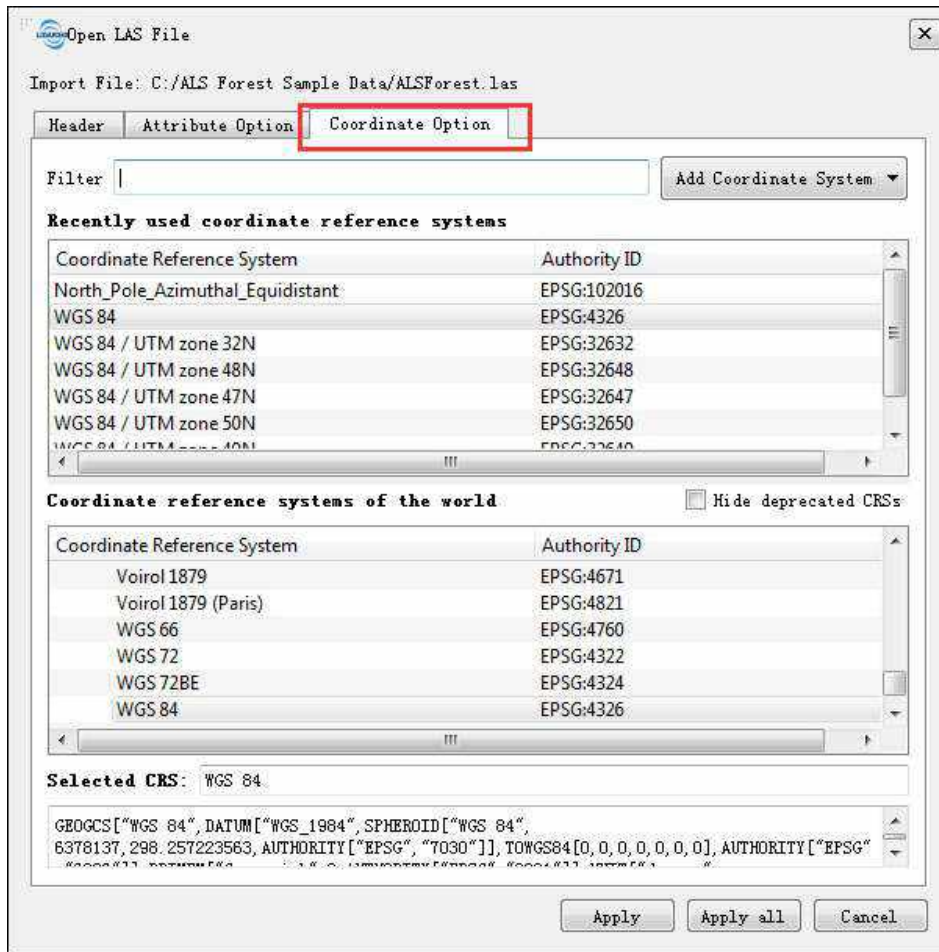
1. Click *File > Data > Add Data* to view the Open Data window.
2. Choose the LAS file you want to import and click *Open* for the Open LAS File window where you can do some initial settings as shown in the figures below:



3. Click tab *Header* to check general LAS file header information such as Version, Source ID, System ID, Generating Software, File Creation Day/Year, Header Byte Size, Data Offset, Number of Point Records etc.
4. Click tab *Attribute Option* to set Crop Option and decide which point attributes you want to import for each point record. LIDAR360 imports all the point attributes by default.

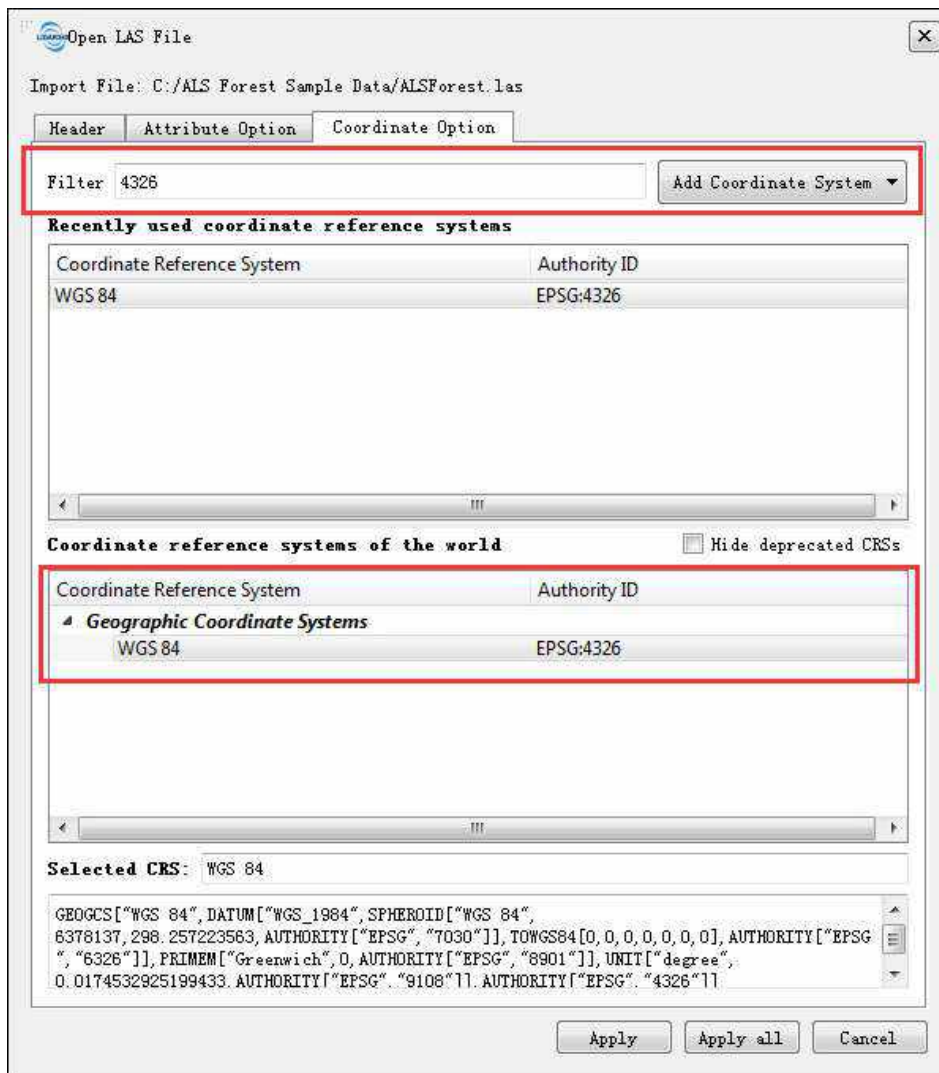


5. Click tab *Coordinate Option* to set the coordinate system for your point records.



You can search the coordinate system much more quickly by using regular expressions. For example, the WGS 84 coordinate system will be displayed instantly when you input EPSG code of WGS 84 system as shown in the figure below:





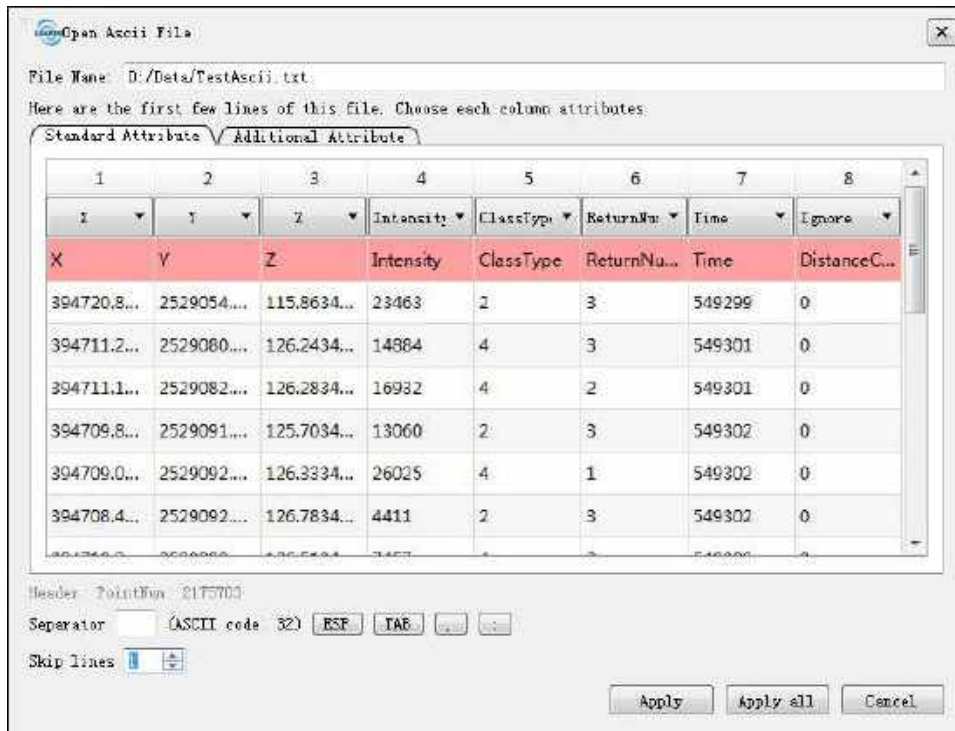
You can also import coordinate system form WKT or PRJ by clicking drop-down menu *Add Coordinate System*. Recently used coordinate reference systems holds a history list.

6. Click *Apply* or *Apply All* when you finish your configuration. *Apply* implies that you want this configuration for current point cloud data only. *Apply All* means all the point cloud data share the same configuration during the LiDAR360's running and it won't show this configuration window again even you add new data.

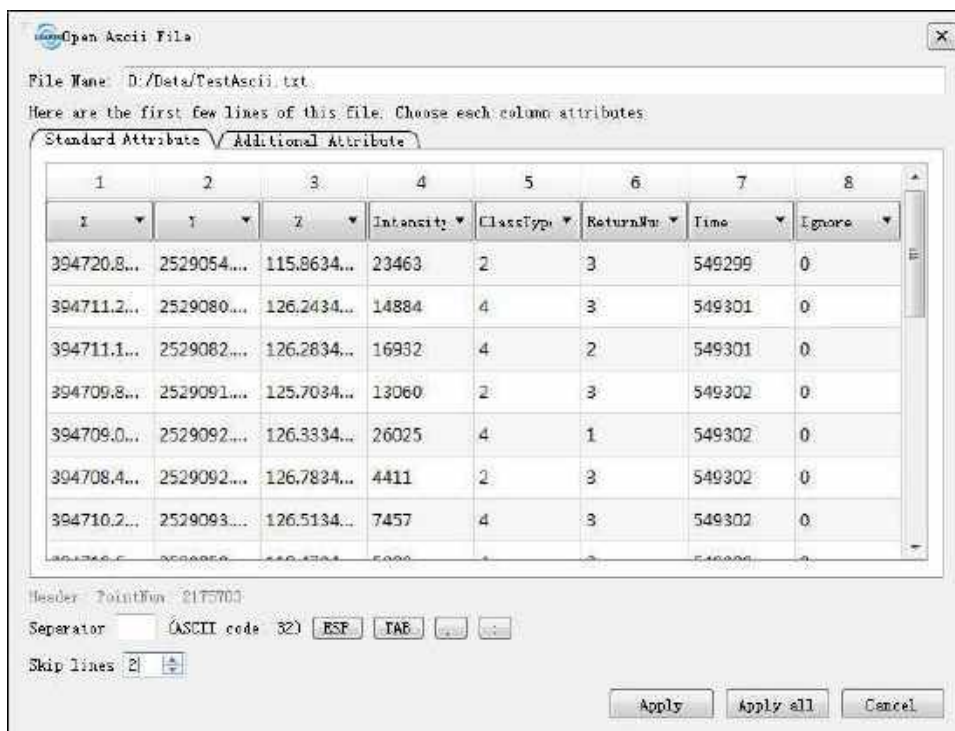
## Import TXT File

A point cloud is a set of vertices in a three-dimensional coordinate system usually defined by X, Y, and Z coordinates and other attributes such as color and normal. These attributes can be simply arranged in one line for each point record and one single TXT file for one-point set.

1. Click *File > Data > Add Data* to view the Open Data window.
2. Choose the TXT file you want to import and click *Open* for the Open Ascii File window where you can do some initial settings as shown in the figures below:



- LiDAR360 can automatically detect the delimiters but you can also specify delimiter manually.
- There are indeed cells that are colored red in the import window if TXT file has a header. Just skip them by setting *Skip line* value to 1.

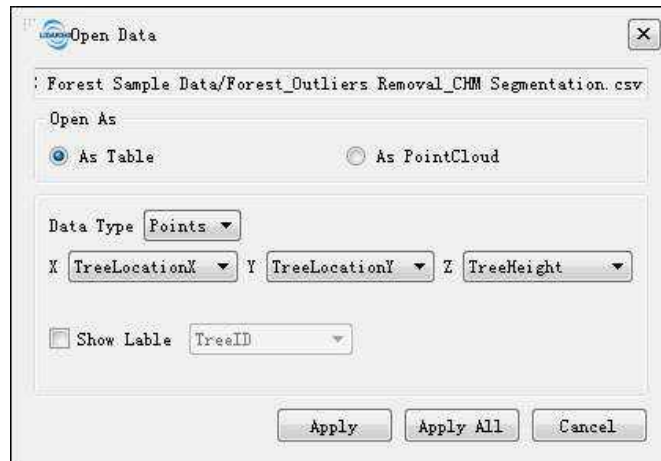


- Use the drop-downs to give the proper form of your point records.

## Import CSV File

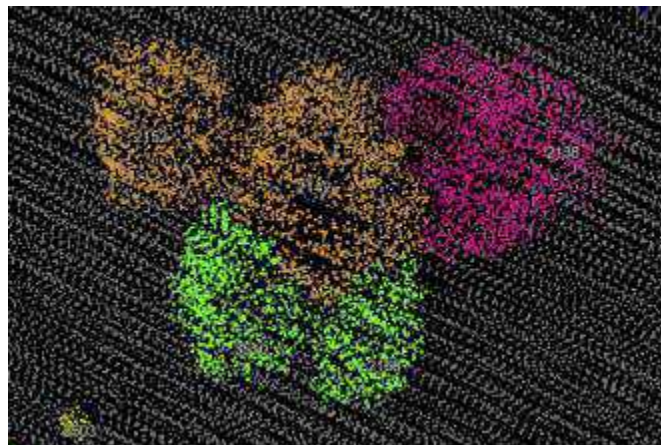
The so-called CSV (Comma Separated Values) format is the most common import and export format for spreadsheets and databases. CSV format was used for many years prior to attempts to describe the format in a standardized way in RFC 4180. The lack of a well-defined standard means that subtle differences often exist in the data produced and consumed by different applications. These differences can make it troublesome to process CSV files from multiple sources. Still, while the delimiters and quoting characters vary, the overall format is similar enough that it is possible to write a single module which can efficiently manipulate such data.

1. Click *File > Data > Add Data* to view the Open Data window.
2. Choose the CSV file you want to import and click *Open* for the Open ASCII File window where you can do some initial settings as shown in the figures below:

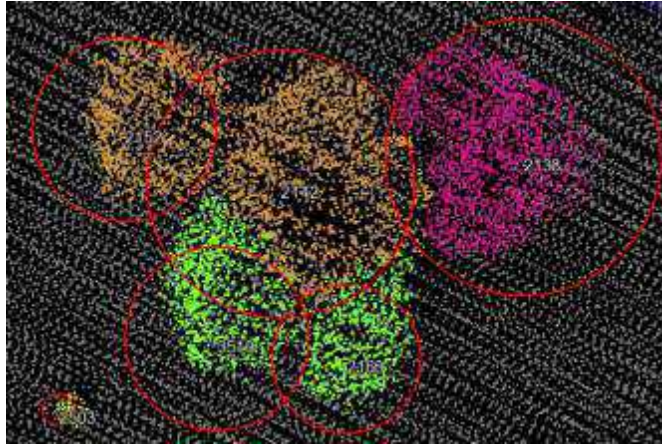


CSV file can be opened as table or point cloud.

3. *Open as Table* is recommended if the CSV file is the resultant product of the Segmentation function. The CSV table contains the ID of each tree, the x, y coordinate locations, the tree height, the crown diameter, and the crown area properties. The data type could be *Point* or *Circle*. If *Point* type was selected, you should specify the X,Y,Z columns additionally.



If *Circle* type was selected, you should specify the center and radius.



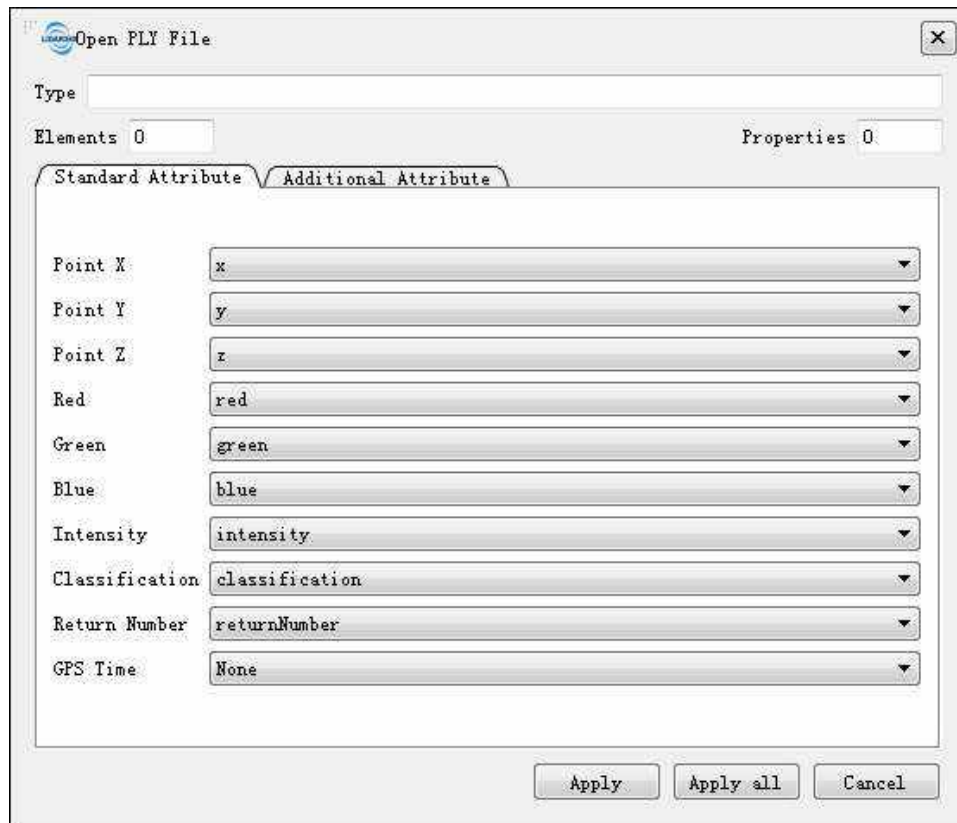
Click *Show Label* radio button to show/hide label for each point or circle.

4. The Import TXT File section has more detailed descriptions if you Open as Point Cloud.

## Import PLY File

The polygon (PLY) file format, also known as the Stanford triangle format stores three-dimensional data from 3-D scanners. It is a format for storing graphical objects that are described as a collection of polygons. A PLY file consists of a header, followed by a list of vertices and then, a list of polygons. The header specifies how many vertices and polygons are in the file. It also states what properties are associated with each vertex, such as (x, y, z) coordinates, normals, and color. The file format has two sub-formats: an ASCII representation and a binary version for compact storage and for rapid saving and loading. The header of both ASCII and binary files is ASCII text.

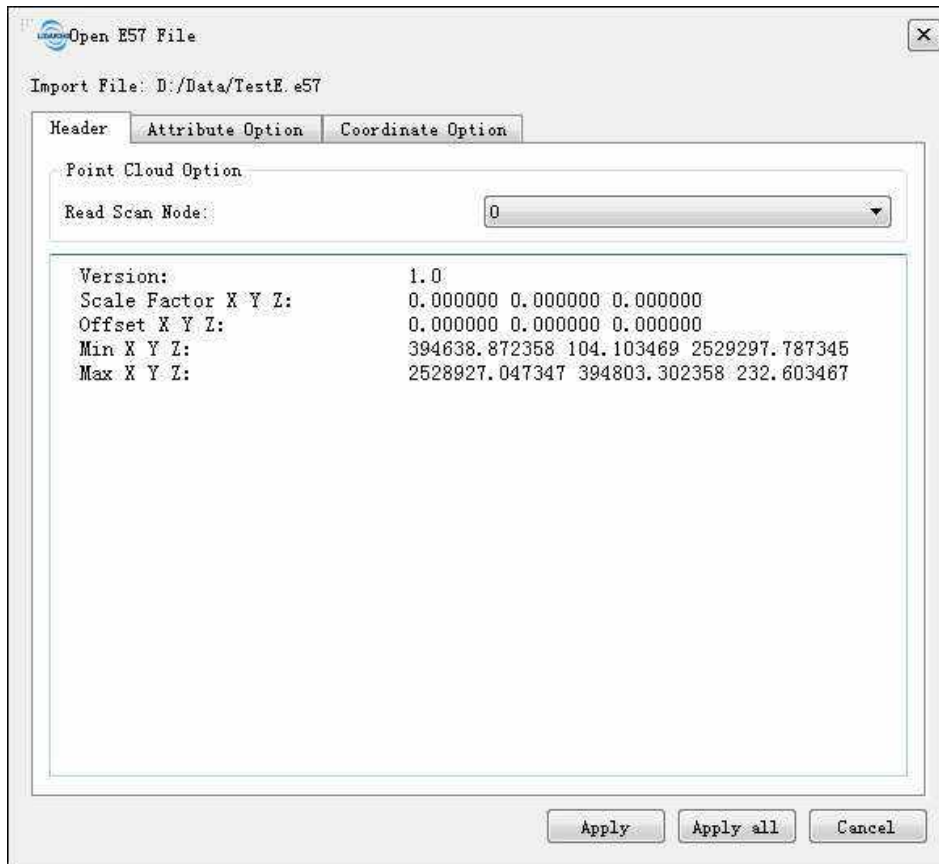
1. Click *File > Data > Add Data* to view the Open Data window.
2. Choose the PLY file you want to import and click *Open* for the Open PLY File window where you can do some initial settings as shown in the figure below:



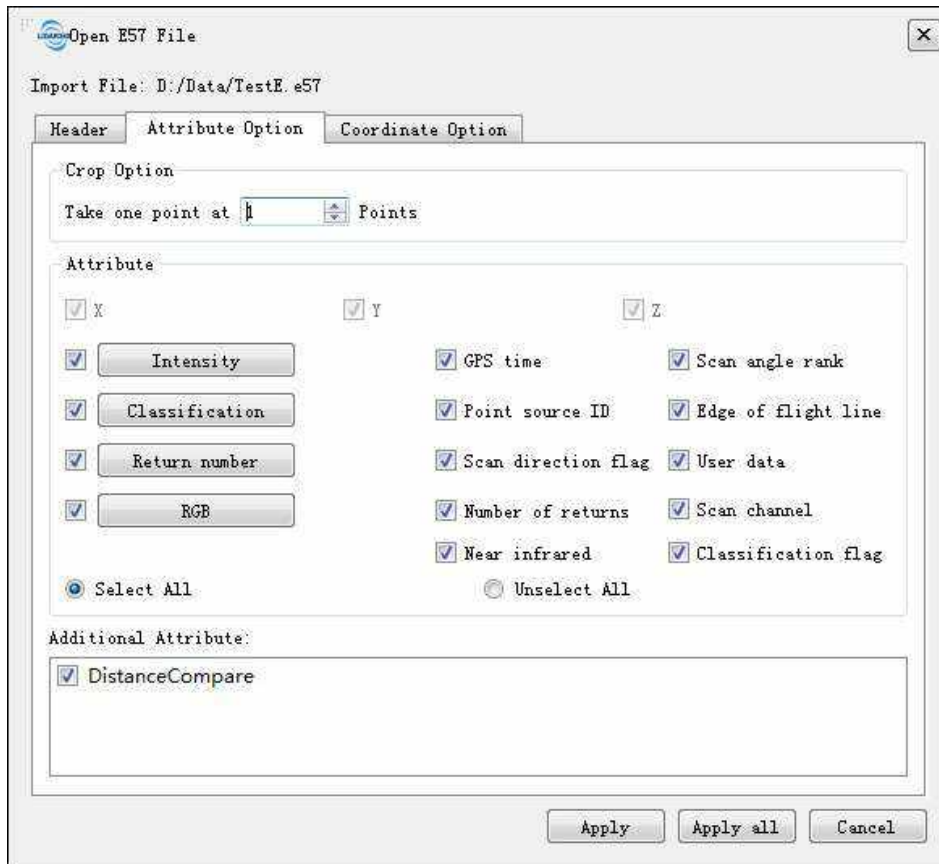
3. Specify properties that associated with each vertex's coordinates(x,y,z).
4. Specify properties that associated with each vertex's color (r,g,b) if they have any. Otherwise, simply choose *None*.
5. Click *Apply* when you complete your configuration.

## Import E57 File

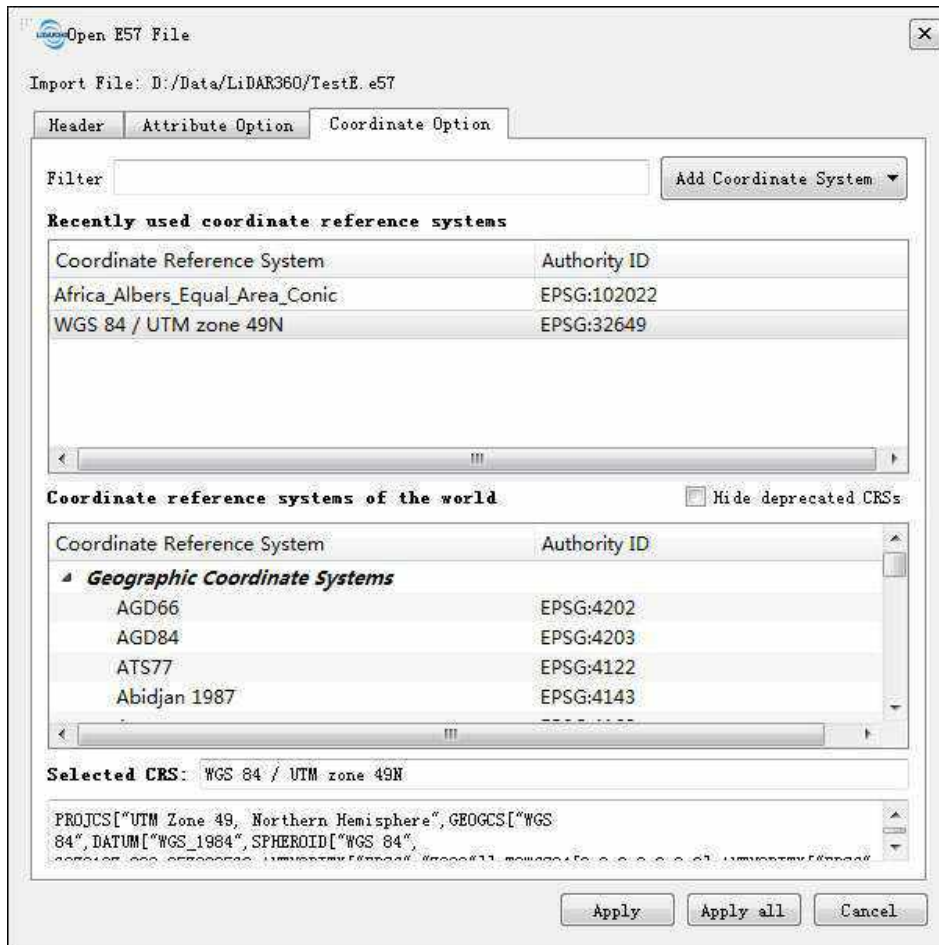
1. Select the e57 file need to load. For the file which is loaded first time, the following window will popup when being loaded. At the top of this window, the following information is displayed: the path of the file, the information in the head of the file. And the head contains the node name, version number, XYZ scaling factor, offset, and bounding box information of the E57 data.



2. In the Attribute Option tab page, users can choose to resample the point cloud when opening it. By default, all points are loaded. Users can also select the attributes of E57 data and additional attributes to be loaded. By default, all attribute information of E57 data is imported.



For example: Enter the EPSG code of WGS84 coordinate: 4326, users can quickly find the WGS84 coordinate system:

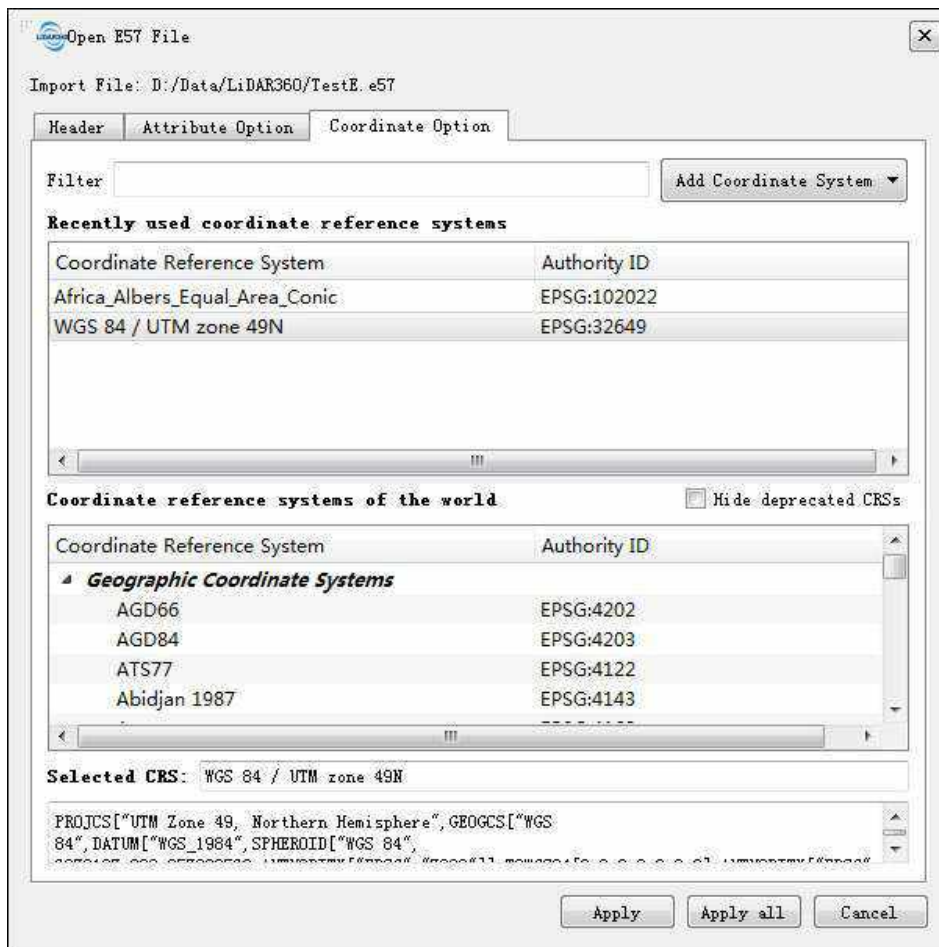


The records of recently used systems will be displayed in **Recently used coordinate reference systems**.

Click *Apply* to import the currently selected E57 data into the software with the current settings and start loading the point cloud. If users select *Apply All*, the data opened this time will adopt the same settings. The dialog box for opening E57 data will not pop up until opening an E57 data again.

1. In the Coordinate Option tab page, users can set the coordinate system of the point cloud data. Enter the keywords of the coordinate system to quickly find the corresponding coordinate system. You can also click the drop-down menu of the Add Coordinate System button and choose to import the coordinate system from WKT or PRJ.





## Import Raster File

A raster data structure is based on a (usually rectangular, square-based) tessellation of the 2D plane into cells. In its simplest form, a raster consists of a matrix of cells (pixels) organized into rows and columns (grid) where each cell contains a value representing information. The geographic location of each cell is implied by its position in the cell matrix. Accordingly, other than an origin point, e.g. bottom left corner, no geographic coordinates are stored. Due to the nature of the data storage technique data analysis is usually easy to program and quick to perform.

1. Click *File > Data > Add Data* to view the Open Data window.
2. Choose the Raster file and click *Open*.

## Import Vector File

Vector data can be represented at its original resolution and form without generalization. Graphic output is usually more aesthetically pleasing (traditional cartographic representation). Since most data is in vector form and no data conversion is required. Accurate geographic location of data is maintained.

1. Click *File > Data > Add Data* to view the Open Data window.
2. Choose the Vector file and click *Open*.

## Import Model File

**LiModel** file is the native file format where LiDAR360 stores triangulated regular network models generated by DEM or DSM. **LiTin** file is generated by the irregular 2.5D triangulation model based on the point cloud.

1. Click *File > Data > Add Data* to view the Open Data window.
2. Choose the Model file and click *Open*.


Note: You can drag file(s) into LiDAR360 directly. If you can't, click [here](#) for more help.

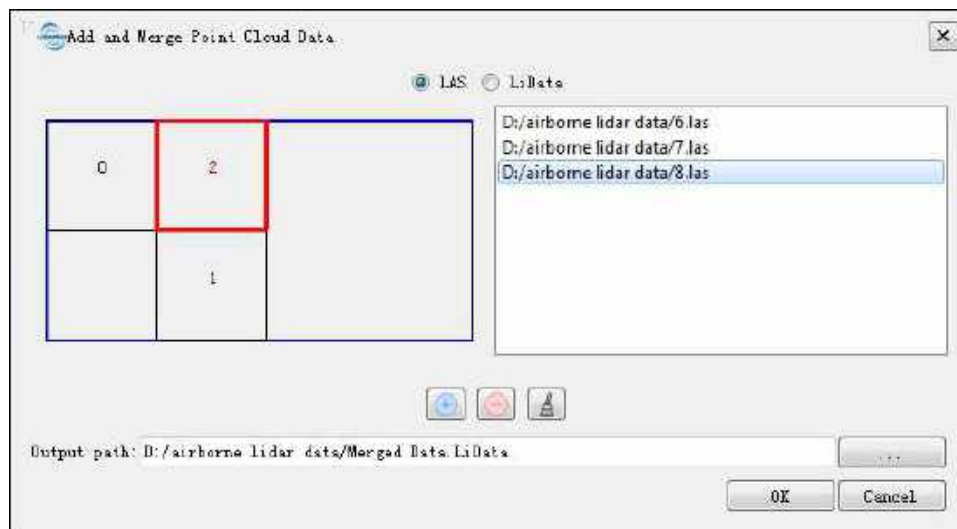
# Add and Merge Point Cloud Data






**Brief:** Merge two or more point clouds in LAS/LAZ or LiData format to one single point cloud in LiData format.

## Steps

1. Click tool button  to open the Add and Merge Data window.



Bounding boxes of point clouds are displayed in the left area. Bounding box of the selected point cloud is highlighted in red.


2. Select LAS or LiData as your data type.
3. Click  to add LAS/LiData file(s).
4. Click  to remove LAS/LiData file(s).
5. Click  to remove all file(s).

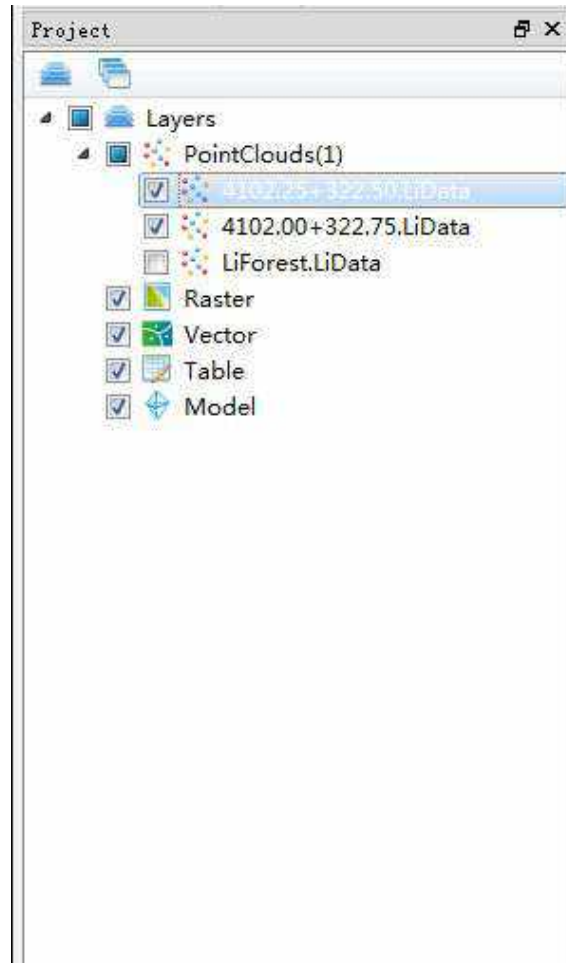
# Delete Data



**Brief:** Remove data.

## Steps


1. Select the data item you want to remove in the tree widget to activate the Remove button .



2. Click .

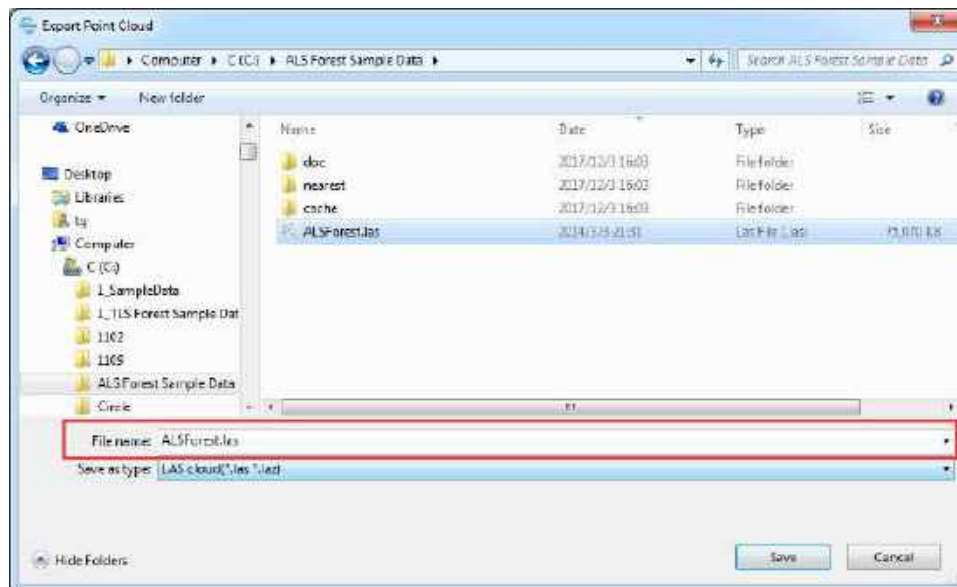
Note: In some cases, it is not allowed to remove data from LiDAR360 when it is busy running some critical functions.

# Export Data

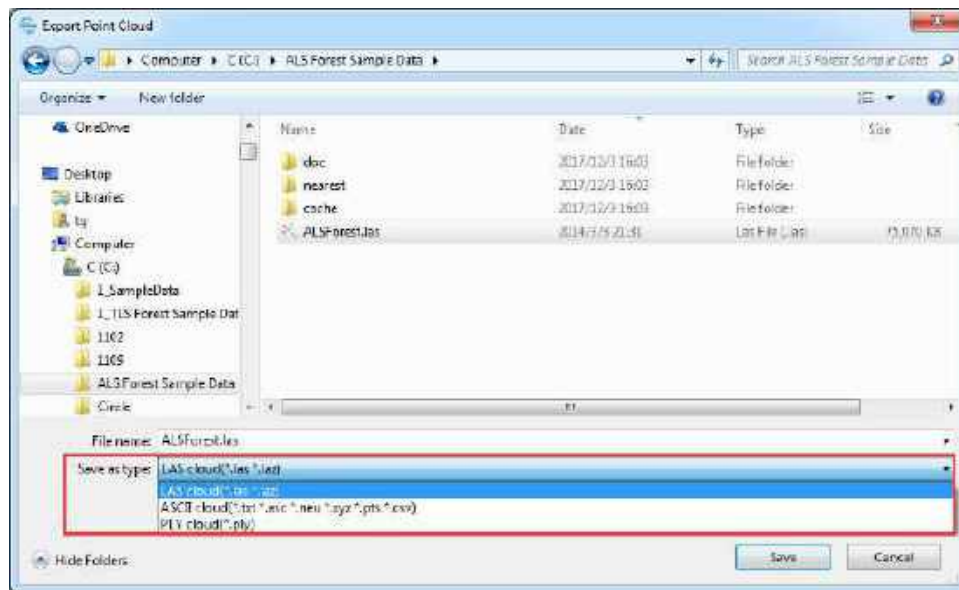
 **Brief:** As described in Import section, you can easily move data into and out of LiDAR360. You can currently export point clouds from LiData to many other formats (LAS/LAZ, TXT, PLY, ASC, NEU, XYZ, PTS, CSV etc.).

## Steps

1. Select the point cloud data you want to export in the tree widget on the left.
2. Move the mouse to that item and right click.
3. Click *Export* to show the Export Point Cloud window.
4. Input file path and name:



5. Set file type:



6. Click Save .

# New Project



**Brief:** Create a new LiDAR360 project.

## Steps

1. Click *File > New Project*.

That gives you a blank project to work on.

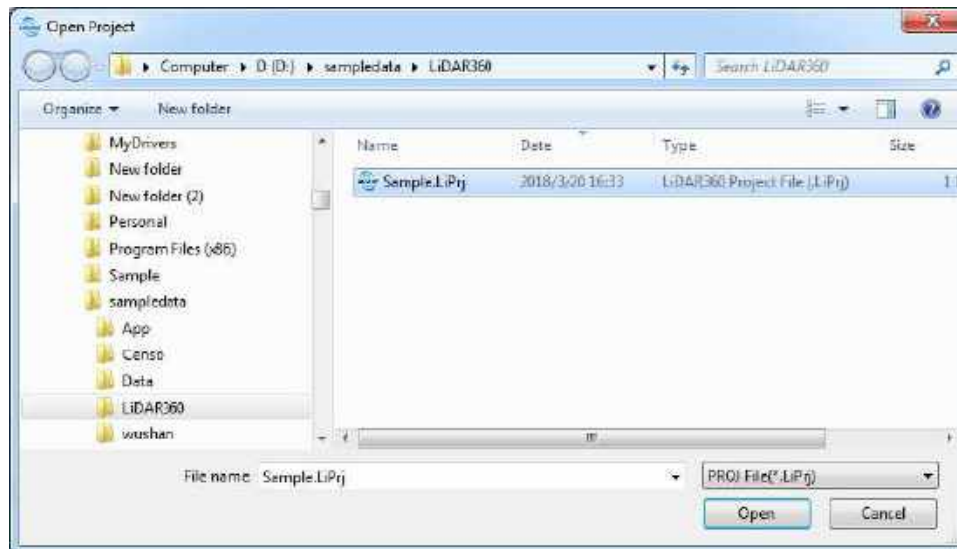
# Open Project



**Brief:** Open a LiDAR360 project file(\*.LiProj).

## Steps

1. Click *File > Open Project* to show Open Project window:



2. Select a LiDAR360 project file and click *Open*.



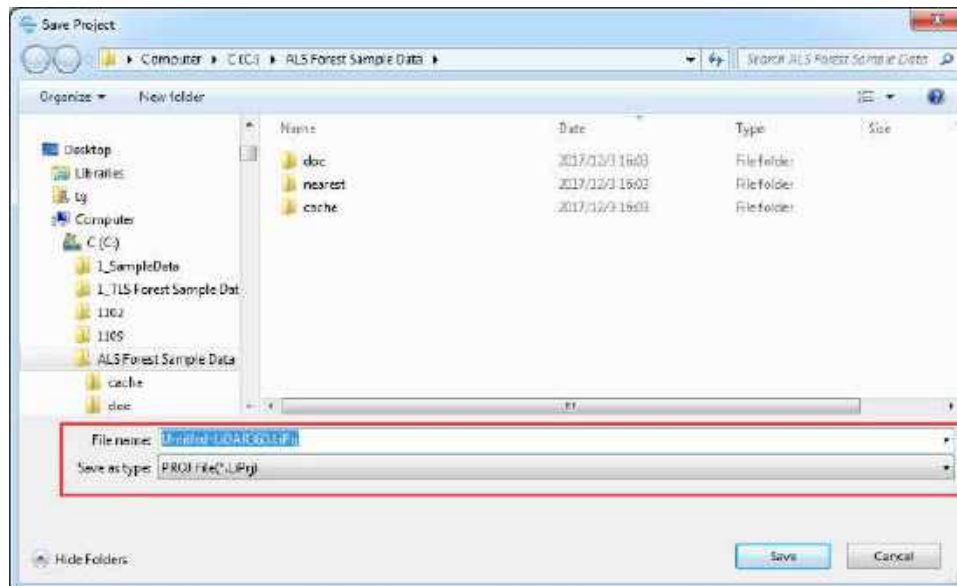
# Save Project



**Brief:** Save project.

## Steps

1. Click the *Save Project* button  on the tool bar, and then click *Save*.



2. If this is the first time that you are saving the project, type a name for it in the file name box, and then click *Save*.
3. You can save a project in the following file format: \*.LiPrj.

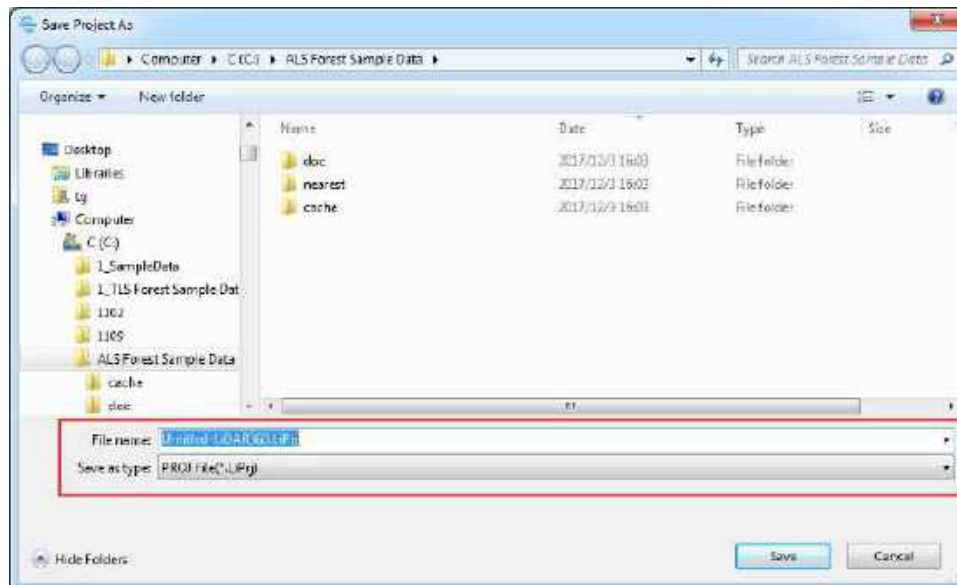
# Save As



**Brief:** Save your project file to another path.

## Steps

1. Click *File* > *Save As*.



2. Type a new name for it in the file name box, and then click *Save*.

# Recent Projects

**Brief:** Quickly open a recent project.

## Steps

1. Click *File > Recent Projects* to check the recent project files.
2. Click the target project file and open it instantly.

# Close Project

**Brief:** Close project.

## Steps

1. Click *File > Close Project*.
2. If you want to save the project as well, type a name for it in the file name box, and then click *Save*.

# Exit

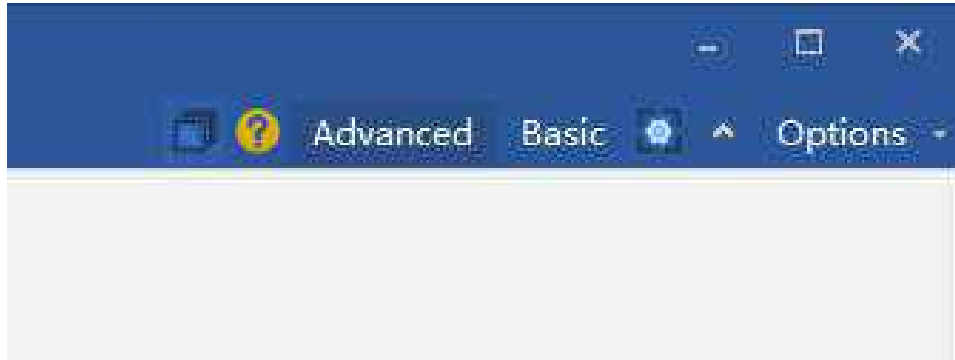
**Brief:** Exit the software.

## Steps

1. **(Optional)** Click *File > Exit* to quit.
2. **(Optional)** Use the hotkey **Alt+F4** to quit.

## Ribbon Toolbar

Ribbon Toolbar is at the upper-right corner of interface, includes: [Batch Processing](#), Help documents, Advanced mode, Basic mode, [Display Option](#) and Options. Options includes [Theme](#), Title Group Visible, Help, Quick Start, FAQ, Visit Company Website, Submit A BUG, Submit An Enhancement, and Check for Updates.



Advanced and Basic modes are available for Terrain, ALS and TLS modules. Advanced mode provides all related tools regarding to each application. Users can decide which tool to use on their demands, based on different datasets. While Basic mode provides a fast way of analyzing. After setting all parameters and click "Run", data can be batch processed and saved to specified output path.

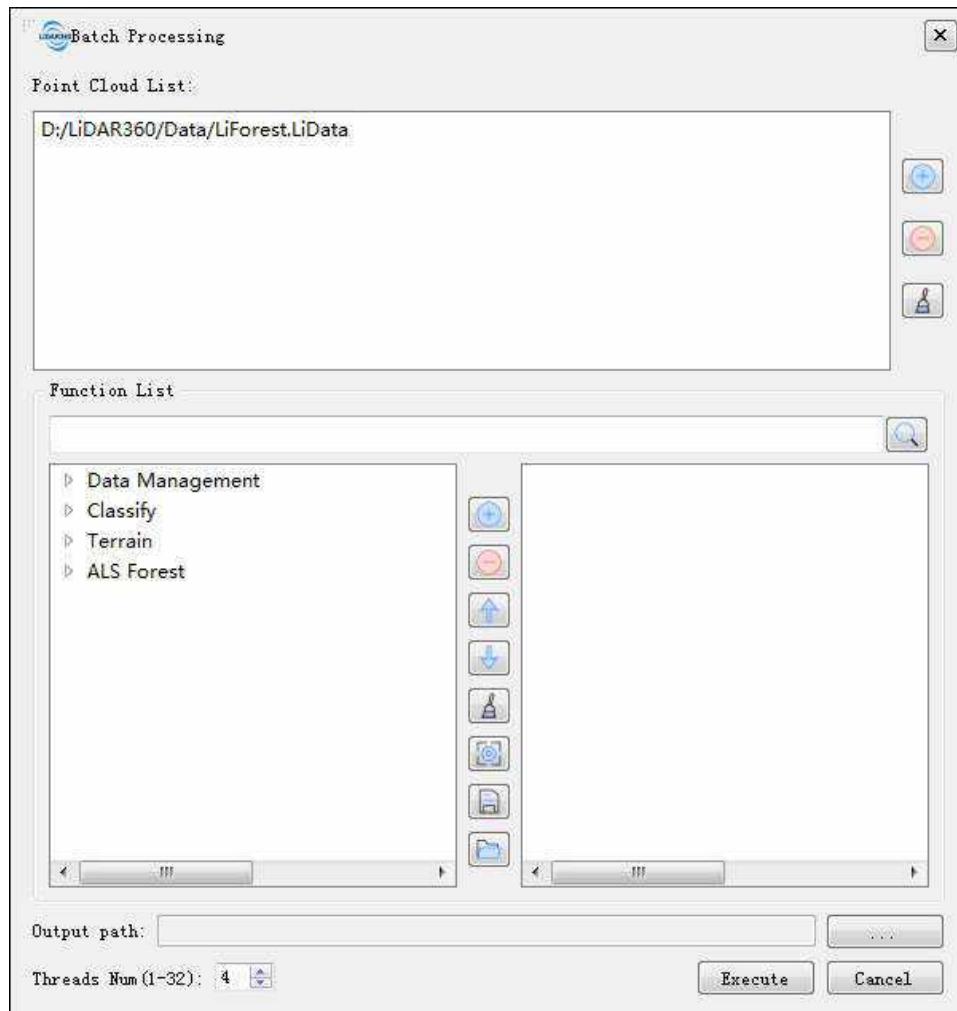
# Batch Processing

## Summary


LiDAR360 users can run multi-threaded batch processing routines for multiple functions on one or more .las or .LiData point cloud datasets. Structured Tool and Command Line function calling modes are supported by the Batch Processing Toolset. The Structured Tool approach allows the user to save a workflow's order of operations and parameter settings for future use.

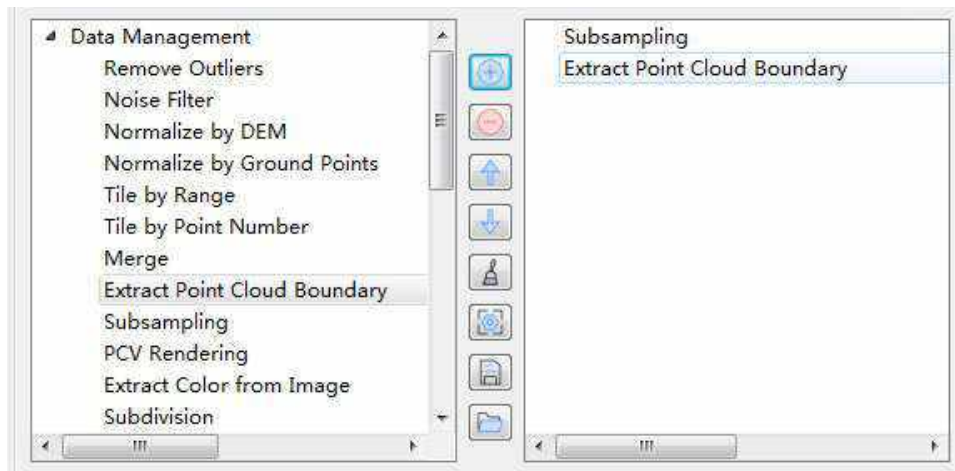
## Structured Tool







1. Click the *Batch Processing* button to display the interface below. Point cloud datasets waiting in the processing queue will be shown in the list on the top. Supported Batch Processing functions are shown on the bottom left. A sequence of functions to be executed will be shown on the bottom right after editing.



2. Edit point cloud files using the buttons on the right side of the file list: Click the button to add point clouds; Click the button to clear the file list; Click the button to remove selected point clouds (.las or .LiData type). Users can select an individual point cloud file by left clicking (hold **Ctrl** to select multiple files).

3. Double click a function in the left list (or select this function and click the  button) to add it into the execution sequence. Users must ensure that all necessary parameters are set in the pop-up window if this function is not parameter-free.



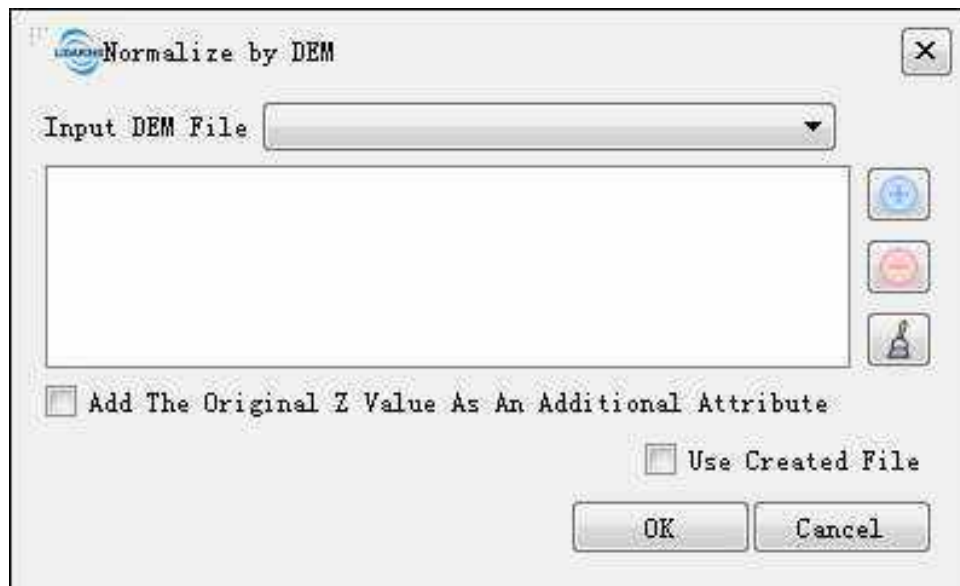
4. **(Optional)** Double click a function in the execution sequence (or select this function and click the  button) to modify the parameters, if any parameter needs to be set.
5. **(Optional)** Select a function in the execution sequence, then click the  or  button to adjust the order of execution.
6. **(Optional)** Click the  button to clear the execution sequence.
7. **(Optional)** Click the  button to save the execution sequence and corresponding parameters to file (\*.LiProcessList).
8. **(Optional)** Click the  button to load execution sequence and corresponding parameters from file (\*.LiProcessList).
9. Set the number of threads for multi-thread batch processing in the thread number box (scale 1-32, default 4). If the number of threads is set to 1, a single thread processing will be performed.
10. Click the *Execute* button after setting the output path. The functions in the sequence will be executed for all point clouds in the file list. Intermediate and final results are saved under the specified path.
11. Type the tool name in the searching bar to search for the tool. Please note the current language version of the software.

Note: This tool is only applicable to point cloud data (.las or .LiData type).

Some functions without parameters(e.g., *PCV*, *Normalization by Ground Class*) can be added directly and freely.

Some functions need extra data as input. For example, the *Normalization* function is based on DEM. Users should either specify an existing DEM file as input, or check the option "*Use Created File*", which suggests that a DEM function must be executed prior to *Normalization*. An improper sequence leads to failure in executing these types of functions.





## Command Line

1. Open cmd.exe the command line window. Then drag LiBatch.exe from the LiDAR360 installation directory directly into the command line window or input the correct path to LiBatch.exe. Then press "Enter". Software information, common command line commands and a list of command-line callable batch functions (in English and Chinese) will appear.

```

Administrator: C:\Windows\system32\cmd.exe
Microsoft Windows [Version 6.1.7601]
Copyright (c) 2009 Microsoft Corporation. All rights reserved.

C:\Users\tg>"C:\Program Files\GreenValley\LiDAR360\LiBatch.exe"

Copyright (C) 2018 Beijing GreenValley Technology Co., Ltd.
Software Name:LiDAR360
Version:2.2

Use -h after function name to view function help
Use -threadNum to set use thread number
Use -i <input LiData file(s)>,input file(s) could be *.LiData or *.las file(s)
Use -ifolder <input folder path,suffix<las,LiData> >,input folder path,and a suffix(default is LiData)
Use -o <output file PATH,just path,not specific data>,NOT NECESSARY
Use -jsonFile<json file>,input a json file,run multi-functions straightly!

You can input next function name list to run specific function,you also could type '-h' to check specific function help!
e.g. Outlier_Removal '-h'/'-H'/'-help'/'-?'
you only can run one function at one time
'Convert_to_LiData' '转换为LiData'
'Convert_to_Las' '转换为Las'
'Outlier_Removal' '去噪'
'Classify_Ground_Points' '地面点分类'
'Extract_Median_Ground_Points' '提取中位地面点'
'Classify_by_Attribute' '按属性分类'
'Classify_Low_Points' '分离低点'
'Classify_by_Below_Surface' '低于地表分类'
'Classify_Isolated_Points' '孤立点分类'
'Classify_Air_Points' '空中噪点分类'
'Classify_by_Height_Above_Ground' '高于地面分类'
'Classify_by_Min_Elevation' '最小高程分类'
'Classify_Buildings' '建筑物分类'
'Classify_Power_Line' '电力线分类'
'Classify_Model_Key_Points' '模型关键点分类'
'DEM' '数字高程模型'
'DSM' '数字表面模型'
'Point_Cloud_to_Contour' '点云生成等高线'

C:\Users\tg>

```

2. The command line allows calling from json files. The data and functions recorded in a json file can be executed in order by inputting -jsonFile plus the file name of json. The result will be saved to the output path. Json files can be generated using the interface batch processing or modified manually. Users must keep in strict accordance with the format of relevant parameters to avoid any parsing errors. For the list of Plugin ID and Action ID used to perform specific functions in the json file, refer to the appendix [ID List of Json Callable Functions for Batch Processing](#).

| -jsonFile BatchProcessList.LiProcessList

```

Administrator: C:\Windows\system32\cmd.exe

C:\Users\tg>"C:\Program Files\GreenValley\LiDAR360\LiBatch.exe" -jsonFile D:\Sample\forest\BatchProcessList.LiProcessList

-----
Copyright (C) 2018 Beijing GreenValley Technology Co., Ltd.
Software Name:LiDAR360
Version:2.2
-----

Use -h after function name to view function help
Use -threadNum to set use thread number
Use -i <input LiData file(s)>,input file(s) could be *.LiData or *.las file(s)
Use -ifolder <input folder path,suffix<las, LiData> >,input folder path,and a suffix(default is LiData)
Use -o <output file PATH,just path,not specific data>,NOT NECESSARY
Use -jsonFile<json file>,input a json file,run multi-functions straightly!

-----
You can input next function name list to run specific function,you also could type '-h' to check specific function help!
e.g. Outlier_Removal '-h'/'-H'/'-help'/'-?'
you only can run one function at one time
'Convert_to_LiData' '转换为LiData'
'Convert_to_Las' '转换为Las'
'Outlier_Removal' '去噪'
'Classify_Ground_Points' '地面点分类'
'Extract_Median_Ground_Points' '提取中位地面点'
'Classify_by_Attribute' '按属性分类'
'Classify_Low_Points' '分离低点'
'Classify_by_Below_Surface' '低于地表分类'
'Classify_Isolated_Points' '孤立点分类'
'Classify_Air_Points' '空中噪点分类'
'Classify_by_Height_Above_Ground' '高于地面分类'
'Classify_by_Min_Elevation' '最小高程分类'
'Classify_Buildings' '建筑物分类'
'Classify_Power_Line' '电力线分类'
'Classify_Model_Key_Points' '模型关键点分类'
'DEM' '数字高程模型'
'DSM' '数字表面模型'
'Point_Cloud_to_Contour' '点云生成等高线'
MSG: [Outlier Removal] Start running!
100%Finish!

C:\Users\tg>

```

3. According to the information prompt, users can enter -i plus the specific data file (full path) as input data. When inputting multiple files, users can enter -i plus multiple files separated by spaces, or -ifolder plus data type for filtering (.las or .LiData, default: .LiData). Users must ensure there is no space in the input file path, otherwise a parsing error will be raised. All parameter commands and specific parameters must be separated by spaces.

```
Outlier_Rmovel -ifolder ..\data\ las
```

4. Users can use -o command to set a folder path, instead of a specific file path. If users do not set this parameter, the output file will be saved in the same directory as the input file by default. Users can use -threadNum command to set the number of threads. Before calling a function, users can enter -h, -H, -help or -? before the function name to check the arguments of the function. Command format: command name(case sensitive)-----parameter introduction. To run a function without setting any parameters, users can use the command -default/-DEFAULT, or leave it blank.

```
Outlier_Rmovel -h
```

5. Only one function can be called at each time. Taking outlier removal as an example, the valid input will be Outlier\_Removal. The exact function name must appear in the parameter list. Input -i plus file name and hit "enter" button to run outlier removal to the input file, using default parameters, and save the output in the same folder as the input.

```
Outlier_Rmovel -i ..\data*.LiData
```

```

Administrator: C:\Windows\system32\cmd.exe

C:\Users\tg>"C:\Program Files\GreenValley\LiDAR360\LiBatch.exe" Outlier_Removal
-i D:\Sample\forest\LiForest.LiData

-----
Copyright (C) 2018 Beijing GreenValley Technology Co., Ltd.
Software Name:LiDAR360
Version:2.2
-----

Use -h after function name to view function help
Use -threadNum to set use thread number
Use -i <input LiData file(s)>,input file(s) could be *.LiData or *.las file(s)
Use -ifolder <input folder path,suffix<las,LiData> >,input folder path,and a suffix(default is LiData)
Use -o <output file PATH,just path,not specific data>,NOT NECESSARY
Use -jsonFile<json file>,input a json file,run multi-functions straightly!

-----
You can input next function name list to run specific function,you also could type '-h' to check specific function help!
e.g. Outlier_Removal '-h'/'-H'/'-help'/'-?'
you only can run one function at one time
'Convert_to_LiData' '转换为LiData'
'Convert_to_Las' '转换为Las'
'Outlier_Removal' '去噪'
'Classify_Ground_Points' '地面点分类'
'Extract_Median_Ground_Points' '提取中位地面点'
'Classify_by_Attribute' '按属性分类'
'Classify_Low_Points' '分离低点'
'Classify_by_Below_Surface' '低于地表分类'
'Classify_Isolated_Points' '孤立点分类'
'Classify_Air_Points' '空中噪点分类'
'Classify_by_Height_Above_Ground' '高于地面分类'
'Classify_by_Min_Elevation' '最小高程分类'
'Classify_Buildings' '建筑物分类'
'Classify_Power_Line' '电力线分类'
'Classify_Model_Key_Points' '模型关键点分类'
'DEM' '数字高程模型'
'DSM' '数字表面模型'
'Point_Cloud_to_Contour' '点云生成等高线'
MSG: [Outlier_Removal] Start running!
100%Finish!

C:\Users\tg>

```

6. Taking classifying ground points as an example for the Classification module, users type in the command for classifying ground points -h, then relevant command line help will appear in the window. For classification, the command -fc stands for the class origin, followed by corresponding class number(s) according to the class list (default: all classes). The command -tc indicates the aimed class, followed by a class number as well.

Classify *Ground Points* -h

```

Administrator: C:\Windows\system32\cmd.exe

Classify Ground Points Options:
-h/-H/-help/?<Help>-----display the help
-default/-DEFAULT<default parameters>-----set default parameters
Next parameter setting format:
-command<parameter name,default value>-----parameter brief introduction
-B/-b<Max Building Size,20>-----the max size of the buildings of data
-IT/-ta<Max Terrain Angle,88>-----the max slope of the terrain shown in the point cloud
-IT/-ia<Iteration Angle,30>-----the allowable range of angles between unclassified points and ground points
-ID/-id<Iteration Distance,1.6>-----the distance threshold between the unclassified points and the triangle in the triangle mesh
-is_sl/-is_sl<whether to set 'Stop Triangulation When Edge Length<',false>-----set 'true' or 'false' to make '-sl' available or not
-is_rl/-is_rl<whether to set 'Reduce Iteration Angle When Edge Length<',false>-----set 'true' or 'false' to make '-rl' available or not
-sl/-sl<Stop Triangulation When Edge Length<,1 >-----when the triangle length is less than the threshold,stop iteration
-rl/-rl<Reduce Iteration Angle When Edge Length<,1 >-----when the triangle length is less than the threshold,reduce the iteration angle
-fc/-FC<from class>-----source class(es),eg,-fc 0,1,2
you can set source class(es) by the next class list options,the default source classes are all classes:
Never_classified      = 0
Unclassified          = 1
Ground                = 2
Low_Vegetation        = 3
Medium_Vegetation     = 4
High_Vegetation       = 5
Building              = 6
Low_Point             = 7
Model_Key_Point       = 8
Water                 = 9
Reserved10            = 10
Reserved11            = 11
... ..
Reserved31            = 31
-tc/-TC<to class>-----target class,eg,-tc 2
you can set target class by the previous class list options,the default target class is set differently by specific function.
ERROR: There are no input files!

C:\Users\tg>

```

- For instance, the command below means: Run the function to classify ground points, in 8 threads, input file path D:\15.LiData, output file folder D:\data4test\ (for classification there will not be an output file generated, however, the input point cloud data will be classified), class origins 1 (unclassified), 2 (ground point), 3 (low vegetation), aimed class ground points, iteration angle 25 degrees, iteration distance 1.2 meters, other unspecified parameters as default.

Classify *Ground Points* -threadNum 8 -i ..\input\*.LiData -o ..\output\ -fc 1,2,3 -tc 2 -ia 25 -id 1.2

# Theme

LiDAR360 provides three GUI themes: Scenic Theme, Blue Theme, White Theme and Dark Gray Theme.

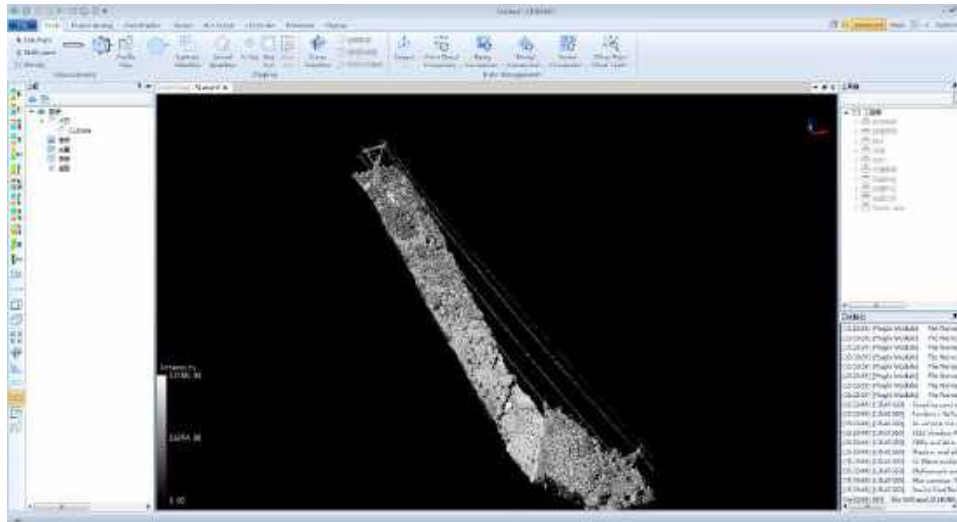
- [Scenic](#)
- [Blue](#)
- [White](#)
- [Dark Gray](#)

# Theme Scenic

**Brief:** The system interface will be displayed in a scenic theme.

## Steps

1. Click on the upper right corner of the software *Options > Style > Scenic*, the software will be displayed in a scenic theme:

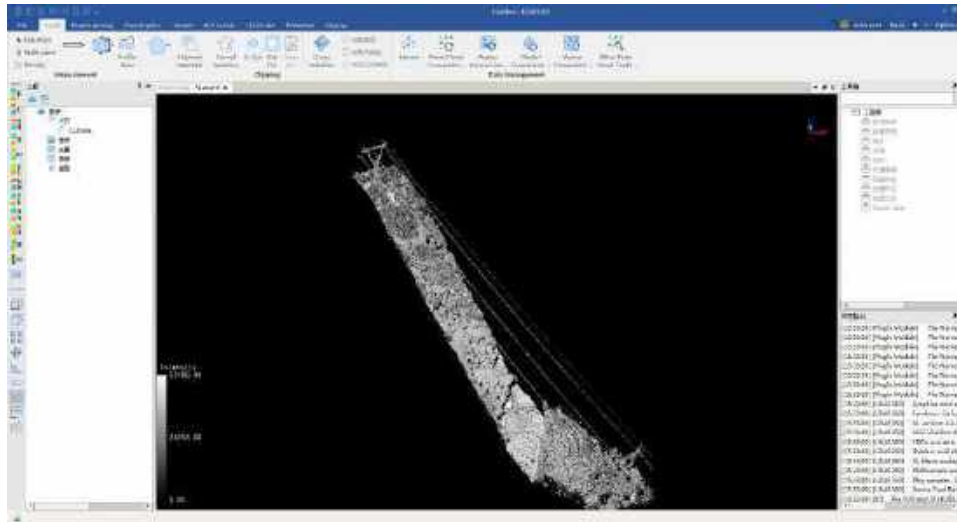


# Theme Blue

**Brief:** The system interface will be displayed in a blue theme.

## Steps

1. Click on the upper right corner of the software *Options > Style > Blue*, the software will display in the blue theme:



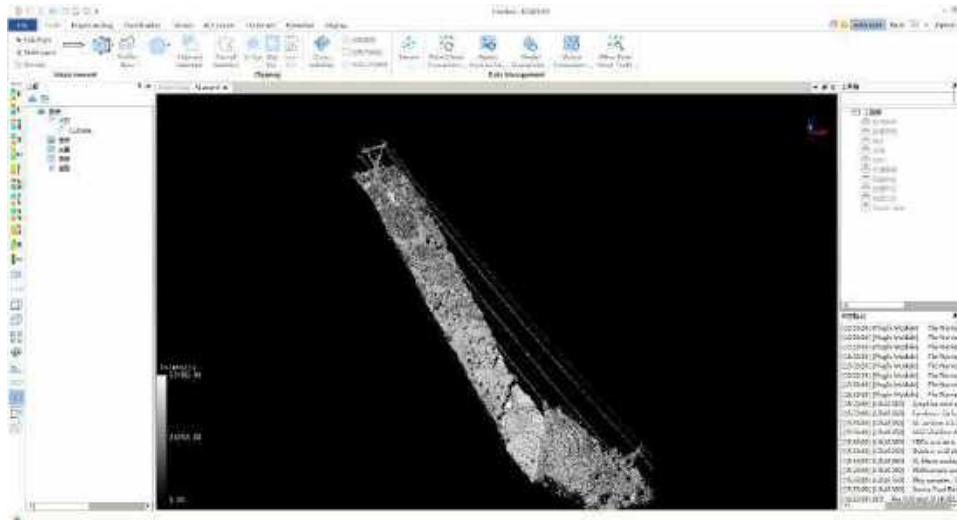


# Theme White

**Brief:** The system interface will be displayed in a white theme.

## Steps

1. Click on the upper right corner of the software *Options > Style > White*, the software will be displayed in a white theme:

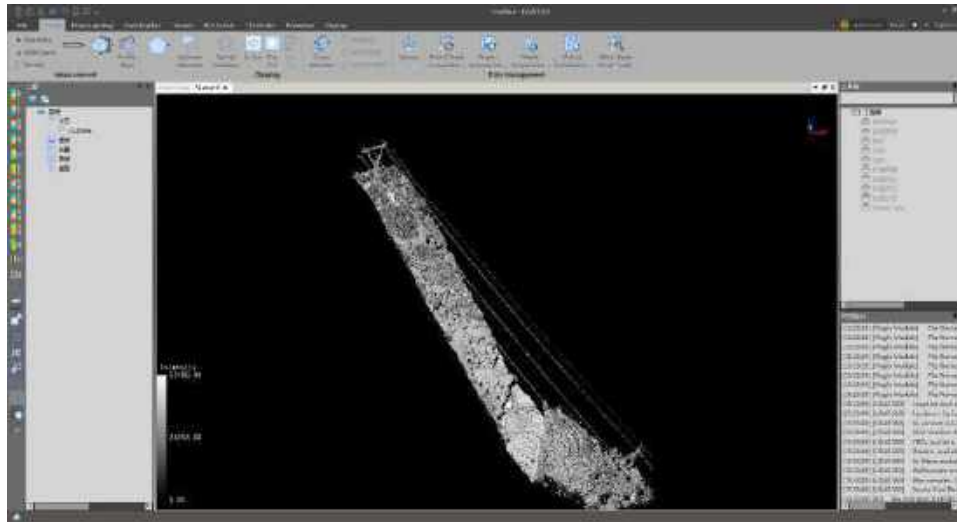


# Theme Dark Gray

**Brief:** The system interface will be displayed in a dark gray theme.

## Steps

1. Click on the upper right corner of the software *Options > Style > Dark Gray*, the software will be displayed in a dark gray theme:



# Project Management Window

The data list in the project is managed by layers and windows separately.

- [Layer Management](#)
  - [Point Cloud](#)
  - [Raster](#)
  - [Vector](#)
  - [Table](#)
  - [Model](#)
- [Window Management](#)

Note: The data loaded into the project can be displayed in single/multiple window(s), or not displayed at all. Please drag data to a certain window for display.


# Layer Management

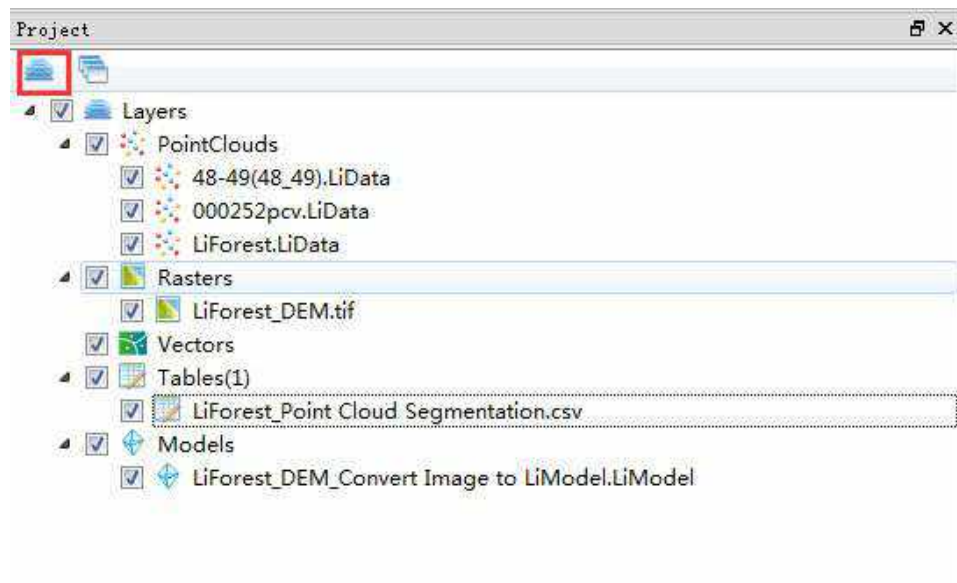
## Summary

The **project layers** manage the data in the software by group, whose types include **Point Cloud**, **Raster**, **Vector**, **Table**, and **Model**.

- **Point Cloud:** Proprietary LiData File(\*.LiData), LAS File (\*.las,\*.laz), ASCII File (\*.txt,\*.asc,\*.neu,\*.xyz,\*.pts,\*.csv), E57 file (\*.e57);
- **Raster:** Image File(\*.tif,\*.jpg);
- **Vector:** Vector File(\*.shp);
- **Table:** Table File(\*.csv);
- **Model:** Proprietary Model File(\*.LiModel), Proprietary TIN File(\*.LiTin), OSG Model File (\*.osgb,\*.ive,\*.desc,\*.obj);

In the **project layers** the user can remove data from the software, show/hide data in all windows by checking/unchecking the box before data node (or data type node). The data can be dragged from data node to different windows for display. The context menu (i.e. right-click menu) of data node, which differs depending on data types, is mainly used for data query, display, statistics, export, and removal, etc.

Click the  button to show the **project layers** as follows:



## Context Menu

Open the context menu by right clicking data type or data.

- [Context menu of point cloud](#)
- [Context menu of raster](#)
- [Context menu of vector](#)
- [Context menu of table](#)
- [Context menu of model](#)

Note: The context menu of layer management is effective on all windows, while the context menu of window management is only effective on specified window.


# Point Cloud Context Menu

## Summary

The context menus are used to for data import, removal, query, display, statistics, export, etc.

## Data Type Context Menu

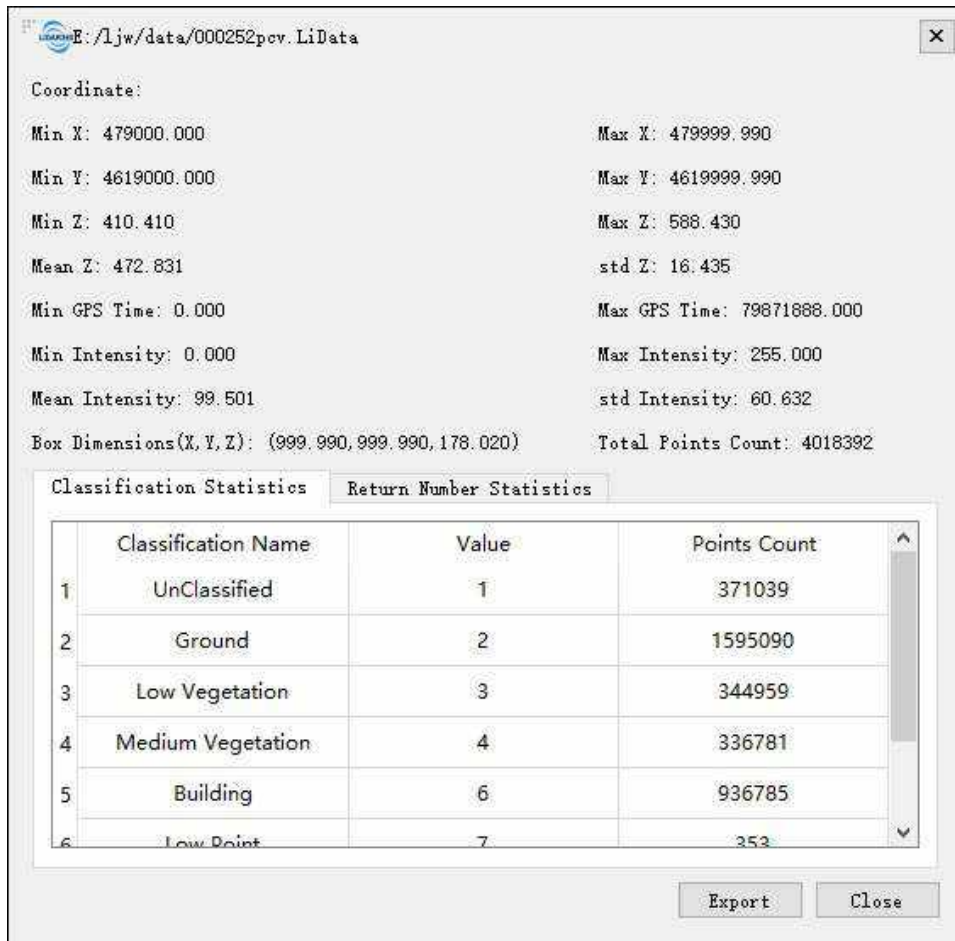
The user can open this menu by right clicking the point cloud data type.

- **Import Data:** The point cloud data formats supported by LiDAR360 include LiData (\*.LiData), LAS (\*.las, \*.laz), ASCII (\*.txt, \*.asc, \*.neu, \*.xyz, \*.pts, \*.csv), PLY (\*.ply), and E57 (\*.e57). The LiData is the proprietary point cloud data format, on which the point cloud processing are based. Other imported formats of LAS, ASCII and PLY will be converted to LiData for subsequent processing. This function is the same as the tool  [Add Data](#).
- **Remove All:** Remove all the point cloud data from the project.

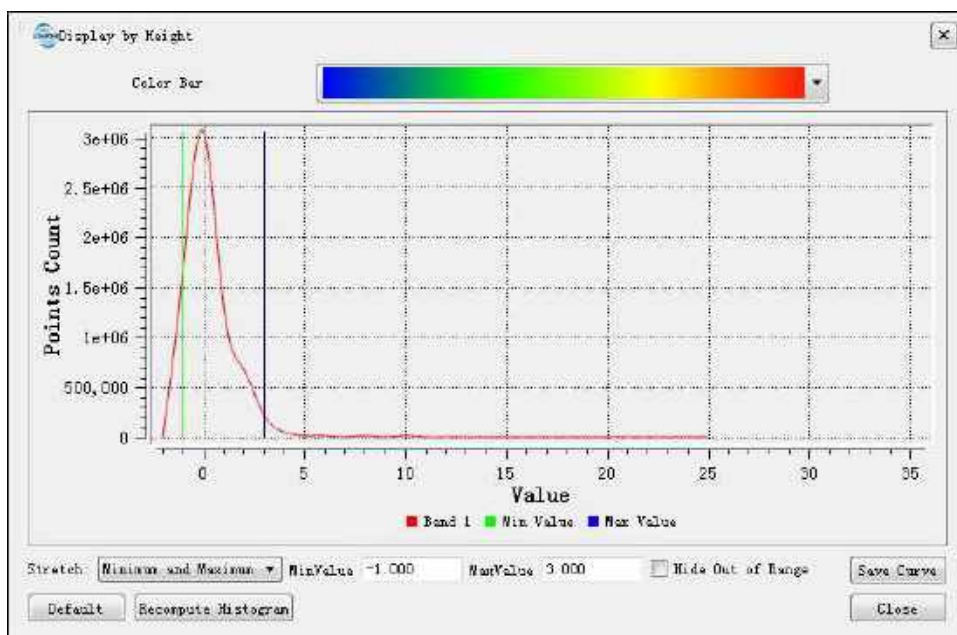
## Data Context Menu

The user can open this menu by right clicking a point cloud data object.

- **Info:** View the basic information of the point cloud, including the path of the data, the coordinate information, the minimum and maximum values of X, Y, and Z coordinates, the average and standard deviation of Z, the minimum and maximum GPS time, the minimum, maximum, and average intensity Value and standard deviation, point cloud bounding box, total points, point cloud category statistics and echo frequency statistics. If additional attribute information is included, the maximum, minimum and type of each additional attribute will be displayed. as the picture shows. Click the "Export" button to export the basic point cloud information as a txt file.



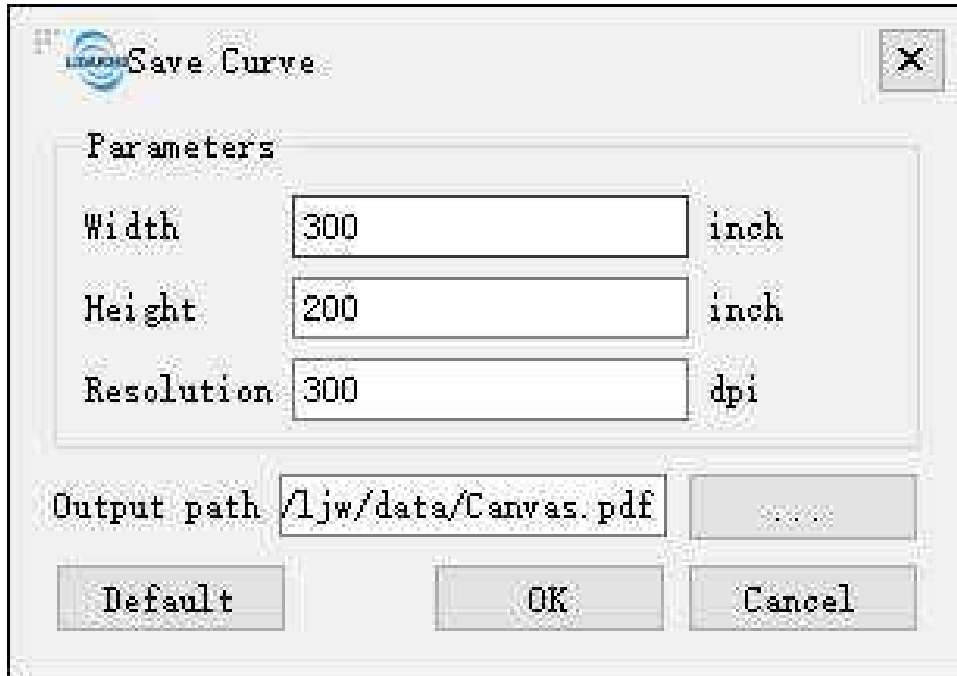
- **View Mode:** Select the display mode of point cloud data between the following types.
  - **Display by Height:** The interface is shown as follows. The value range of display can be stretched by minimum/maximum or standard deviation in order to improve the visual effects.




"Recalculate the histogram" is used to count and generate a histogram of all the points' elevation. When opening this function, the histogram of sampled points' elevation is displayed by default, and the histogram may be inaccurate. The recalculate the histogram function can take all the points' elevation

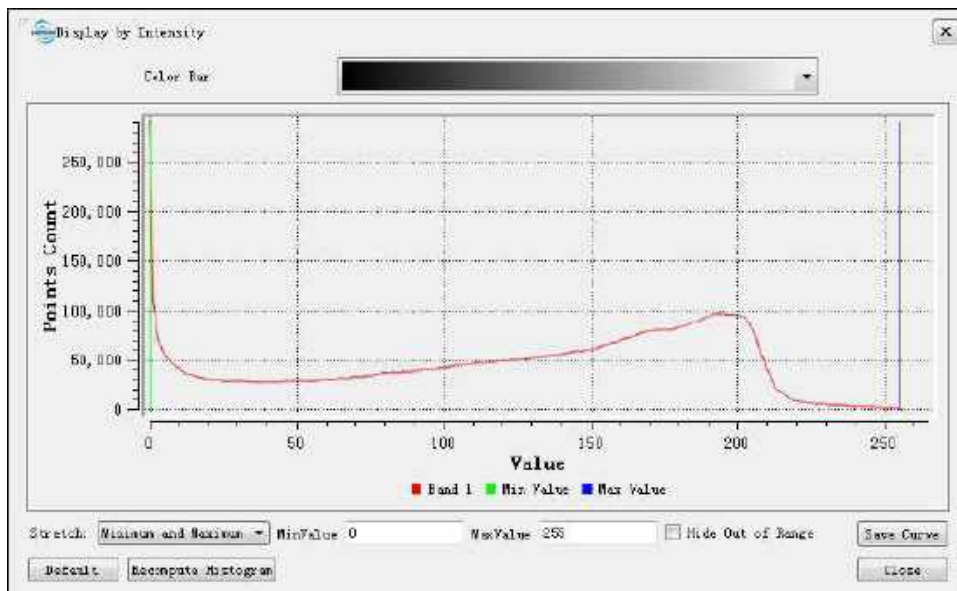
into account, and generate an accurate histogram.

The curve can be saved in pdf files. Click the button **"Save Curve"** to pop up the following interface. Set the width, height, resolution, output path of the curve and click **"OK"** button to save the curve to local disk.



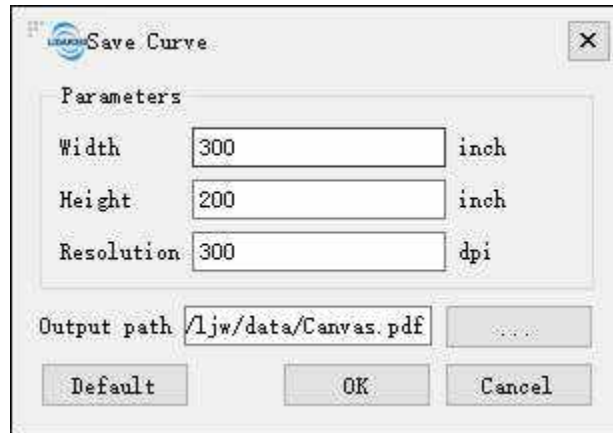
The visual effects are consistent with the tool  **E Display by Height**.


- o **Display by Intensity**: The interface is shown as follows. The value range of display can be stretched by minimum/maximum or standard deviation in order to improve the visual effects.



**"Recalculate the histogram"** is used to count and generate a histogram of all the points' intensity. When opening this function, the histogram of sampled points' intensity is displayed by default, and the histogram may be inaccurate. The recalculate the histogram function can take all the points' intensity into account, and generate an accurate histogram.

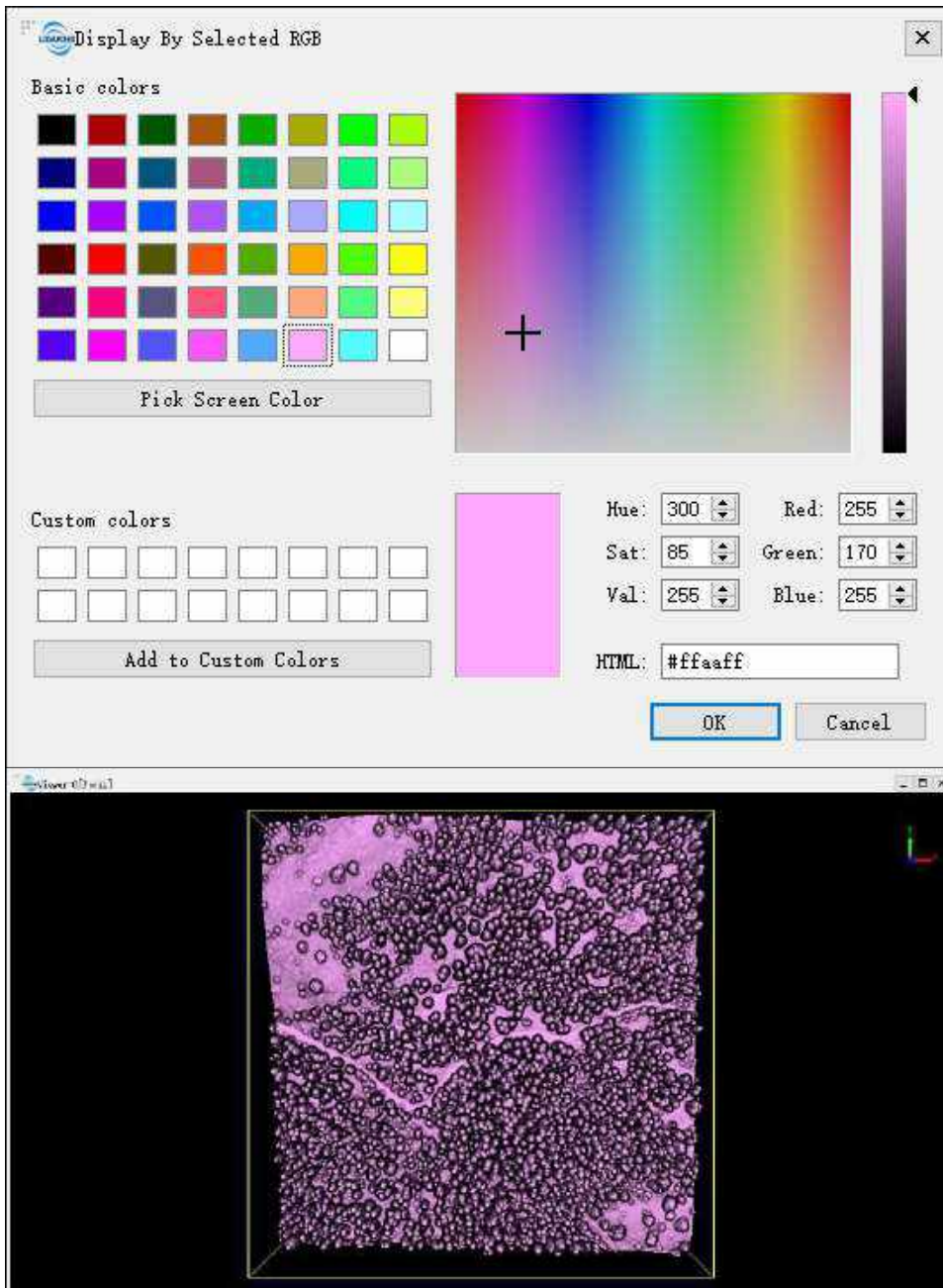
The curve can be saved in pdf files. Click the button **"Save Curve"** to pop up the following interface. Set the width, height, resolution, output path of the curve and click **"OK"** button to save the curve to local disk.



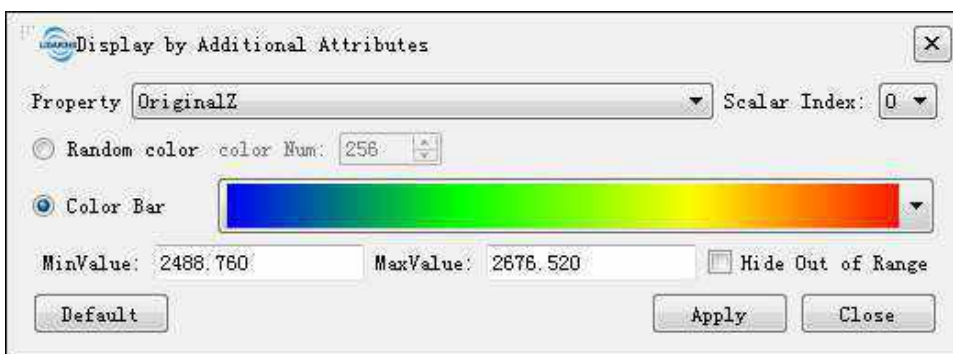
The visual effects are consistent with the tool  **Display by Intensity**.

- **Display by Class:** Please refer to [Display by Class](#) for details.
- **Display by RGB:** Please refer to [Display by RGB](#) for details.
- **Display by Return Number:** Please refer to [Display by Return](#) for details.
- **Display by GPS Time:** Please refer to [Display by Time](#) for details.
- **Display by Tree ID:** Please refer to [Display by TreeID](#) for details.
- **Display by Edge Flight Line:** Please refer to [Display by Edge Flight Line](#) for details.
- **Display by Number of Return:** Please refer to [Display by Number of Return](#) for details.
- **Display by Point Source ID:** Please refer to [Display by Point Source ID](#) for details.
- **Display by Scan Angle Rank:** Please refer to [Display by Scan Angle Rank](#) for details.
- **Display by Scan Direction:** Please refer to [Display by Scan Direction](#) for details.
- **Display by User Data:** Please refer to [Display by User Data](#) for details.
- **Display by Scanner Channel:** Please refer to [Display by Scanner Channel](#) for details.
- **Display by Near Infrared:** Please refer to [Display by Near Infrared](#) for details.
- **Display by Selected:** Select user-defined color to display the point cloud data. The interface and the visual effects are shown below.



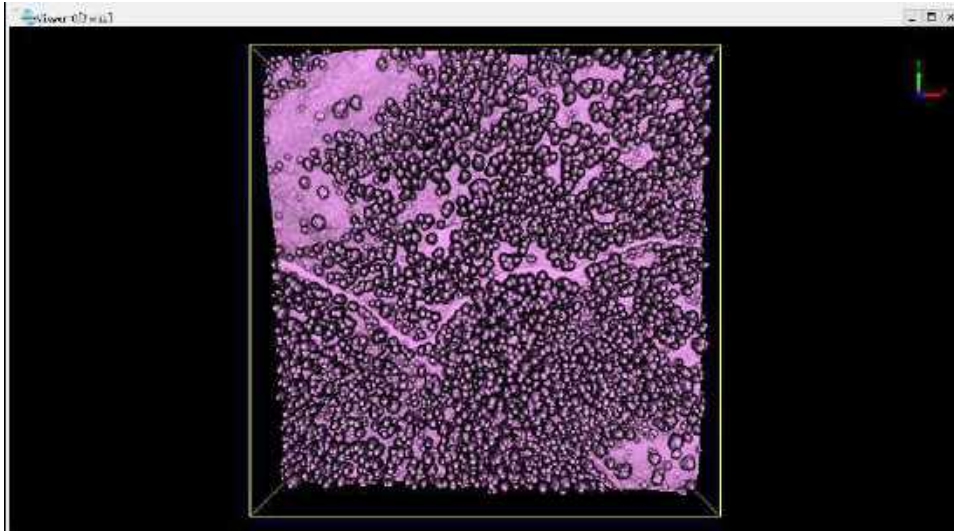



- o **Display by Blend:** Please refer to [Display by Blend](#) for details.
- o **Display by Mix:** Please refer to [Display by Mix](#) for details.
- o **Display by Additional Attributes:** The following window will popup.

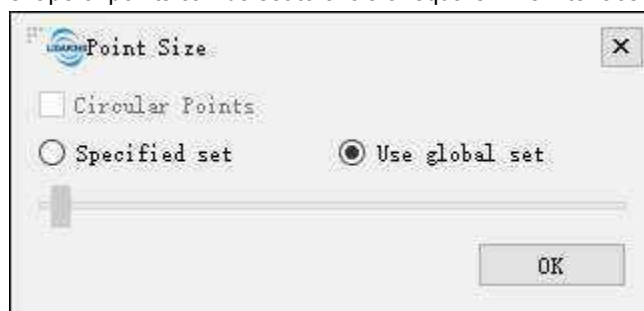



1. (Option) Select the attribute needs to set the color from the attribute drop-down list. 2. (Option) Select

the index of the attribute needs to modify from the scalar index drop-down list box. 3. (Option) Select a random color and set the number of colors to be configured in the Number of Colors box. 4. (Option) Select a color bar from the color bar drop-down list. 5. Set the display range of the additional attribute through the minimum and maximum values (click Default to restore the maximum and minimum values calculated by the corresponding index of the attribute), click the Apply button, and the final display effect is shown in the following figure.

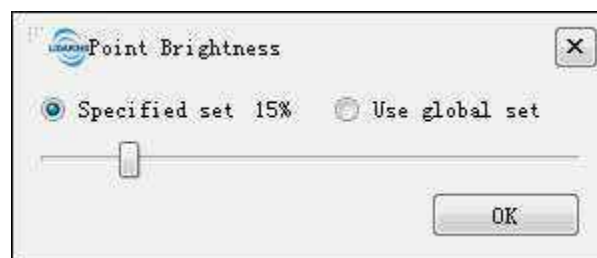



- **Zoom to Layer:** Calculate the bounding box of the current point cloud data. All the windows, in which the data object is loaded, will show full extent of the bounding box.
- **Restatistics:** Recalculate the *Mean Z*, *Std Z*, *Mean Intensity* and *Std Intensity* of point cloud data. This function is used to repair older versions of LiData which may contain incomplete information.
- **Export:** Export the point cloud data to LAS (\*.las, \*.laz), ASCII (\*.txt, \*.asc, \*.neu, \*.xyz, \*.pts, \*.csv), PLY (\*.ply), and E57 (\*.e57) format. The supported LAS version for export are 1.2, 1.3, 1.4, and the default version is 1.4. This function is the same as the tool  [Export](#).
- **PCV:** Process the point cloud data with [PCV](#) to improve the visual effects.
- **Point Size:** The point size of each point cloud data object can be set separately or set uniformly according to the global settings. The shape of points can be set to circle or square. The interface is shown as follows.




For global point size settings, see the usage of the tool  [Configure Point Size](#).

- **Point Brightness:** Set the brightness of a single point cloud data or all the point cloud data, as shown below:



To set the brightness of all point cloud data, users can click the  icon in the settings tool bar. For more details, please refer to [Display Options](#).

- **Remove:** Remove the selected point cloud data from the current project. This function is the same as the tool  [Remove](#).

## Settings

- **Display by Height:**
  - **Color Bar:** The colorbar supports several uniformly varying color intervals for color mapping.
  - **Stretch:** The stretch methods of the histogram.
    - **Minimum and Maximum (Default):** Apply a linear stretch based on the minimum and maximum pixel values, with the minimum and maximum pixel values as the endpoints for the histogram. For example, the minimum and maximum pixel values of the image could be 2488 and 2656 respectively. The values can be stretched linearly between 0 and 255. Distributing pixel values over the entire histogram range, the brightness and contrast of the image are increased and features in the image are easier to distinguish.
    - **Std deviation:** Apply a linear stretch between the pixel values defined by the std deviation (n) value. For example, the minimum and maximum pixel values of the image could be 2488 and 2656 respectively. If the value of standard deviation (n) is defined as 2, then the values beyond 2 standard deviation become 0 or 255, the remaining values stretch between 0 and 255.
- **Display by Intensity:**
  - **Stretch:** The stretch methods of the histogram.
    - **Minimum and Maximum (Default):** Apply a linear stretch based on the minimum and maximum pixel values, with the minimum and maximum pixel values as the endpoints for the histogram. For example, the minimum and maximum pixel values of the image could be 2488 and 2656 respectively. The values can be stretched linearly between 0 and 255. Distributing pixel values over the entire histogram range, the brightness and contrast of the image are increased and features in the image are easier to distinguish.
    - **Std deviation:** Apply a linear stretch between the pixel values defined by the std deviation (n) value. For example, the minimum and maximum pixel values of the image could be 2488 and 2656 respectively. If the value of standard deviation (n) is defined as 2, then the values beyond 2 standard deviation become 0 or 255, the remaining values stretch between 0 and 255.
- **Save Curve:**
  - **Width:** The width of the saved curve.
  - **Height:** The height of the saved curve.
  - **Resolution:** The resolution of the saved curve.
  - **Output path:** The output path of the saved curve.
- **Point Size:**
  - **Circular Points (Optional):** Set the shape of the point to circle or square.
  - **Specified set (Optional):** Set the point size of the specified point cloud data separately.
  - **Use global set (Optional):** Set the point size of the specified point cloud data with global settings.

Note: Except the import data function, other right-click menu functions work on all viewers loaded with the point cloud.


# Raster Context Menu

## Summary

The context menus are used to for data import, removal, query, display, etc.

## Data Type Context Menu

The user can open this menu by right clicking the raster data type.

- **Import Data:** The raster data formats supported by LiDAR360 include TIF and JPG. The function is the same as the tool  [Add Data](#).
- **Remove All:** Remove all the raster data from the project.

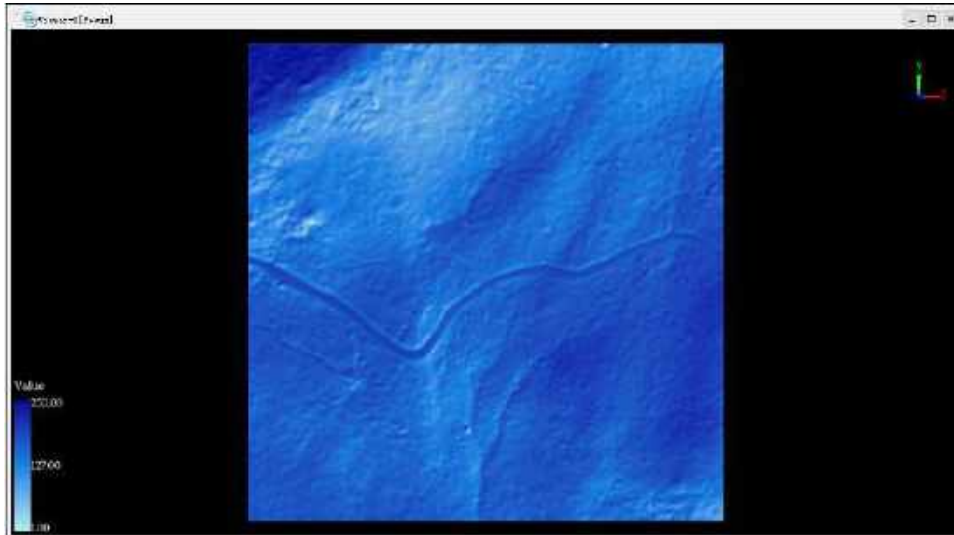
## Data Context Menu

The user can open this menu by right clicking a raster data object.

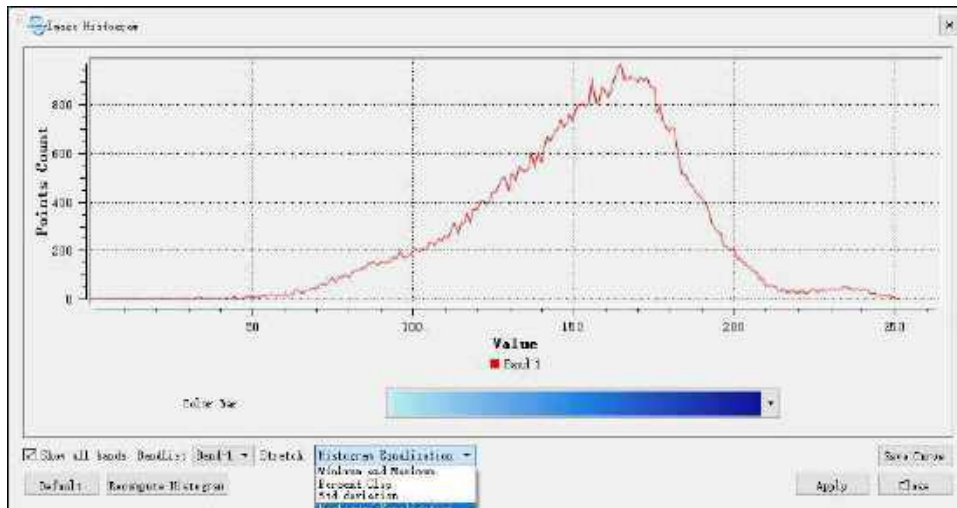
- **Info:** View the basic information of raster data, including file path, description, X size, Y size, bands count, pixel size, invalid value of each band, projection, etc. The interface is shown below.



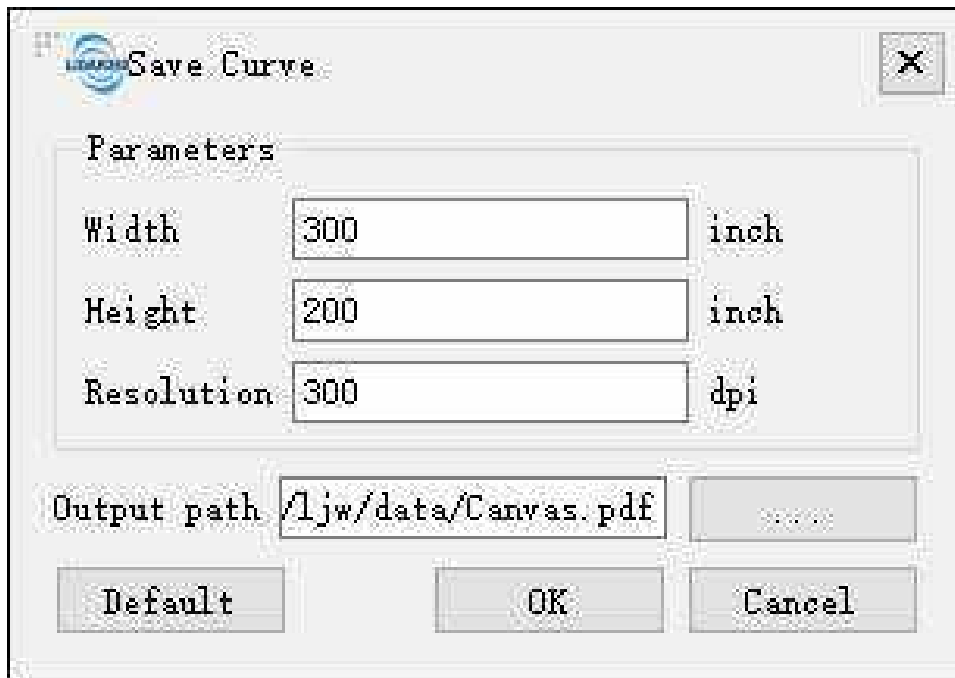
- **Histogram:** View the histogram of the raster data, where the values of each band can be stretched separately. The raster data is displayed in gray color bar by default. Select an appropriate color bar in the combo box. Click the button "Apply", the raster data in the scene will be rendered according to the above settings, as shown below.




Select the stretch method and generate the corresponding histogram, as shown below.



The button "Default" is used to restore the default settings. The button "Recompute Histogram" is used to calculate all the pixel values of the raster data again. The sampling points are 250000 by default. When the pixel size of the raster data exceeds the value, the statistical results may be inaccurate, then this button is needed. The histogram can be saved in \*.pdf format. Click the button "Save Histogram" to pop up the following interface. Set the width, height, resolution, output path of the histogram and click "OK" button to save the result to local disk.



- **Zoom to Layer:** Calculate the bounding box of the current raster data. All the windows, in which the data object is loaded, will show full extent of the bounding box.
- **Zoom to Native Resolution (100%):** Display the raster data in 1:1 ratio according to the resolution of the raster data.
- **Remove:** Remove the selected raster data from the current project. This function is the same as the tool  [Remove](#).

## Settings

- **Histogram:**
  - **Stretch:** The stretch methods of the histogram.
    - **Minimum and Maximum (Default):** Apply a linear stretch based on the minimum and maximum pixel values, with the minimum and maximum pixel values as the endpoints for the histogram. For example, the minimum and maximum pixel values of the image could be 2488 and 2656 respectively. The values can be stretched linearly between 0 and 255. Distributing pixel values over the entire histogram range, the brightness and contrast of the image are increased and features in the image are easier to distinguish.
    - **Percent Clip:** Apply a linear stretch between the pixel values defined by percent clip minimum and percent clip maximum. For example, the minimum and maximum pixel values of the image could be 2488 and 2656 respectively. Percent clip minimum and percent clip maximum values are 0.02 and 0.98, values less than 0.02 mean the values between 2488 and 2492, values more than 0.98 mean the values between 2652 and 2656, values between 2488 and 2492 become 0, values between 2652 and 2656 become 255, the remaining values are between 0 and 255.
    - **Std deviation:** Apply a linear stretch between the pixel values defined by the std deviation (n) value. For example, the minimum and maximum pixel values of the image could be 2488 and 2656 respectively. If the value of standard deviation (n) is defined as 2, then the values beyond 2 standard deviation become 0 or 255, the remaining values stretch between 0 and 255.
    - **Histogram Equalization:** Apply a non-linear stretch between the pixel values, redistribute the pixel values so that the pixel values in a certain range is approximately equal. This method works well when there are a lot of pixel values that are closely grouped together.


- **Color Bar:** The colorbar supports several uniformly varying color intervals for color mapping.
- **BandList:** Select a band from the band list to draw the histogram.
- **Show all bands (Optional):** Whether to show all bands.
- **Save Curve:**
  - **Width:** The width of the saved curve.
  - **Height:** The height of the saved curve.
  - **Resolution:** The resolution of the saved curve.
  - **Output path:** The output path of the saved curve.

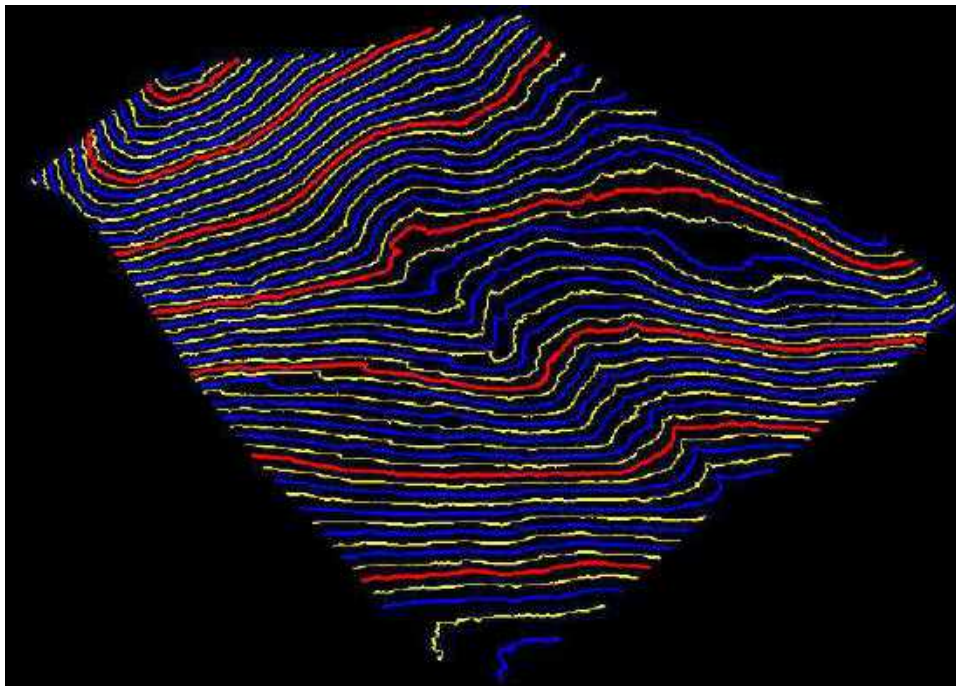
# Vector Context Menu

## Summary

The right button menu of vector data in the layer management tree mainly includes import and export vector data, it also contains display information, display attribute table, zoom to layer, display by elevation, and display by selected color, display by height, and remove operations for single vector data.

## Data Type Context Menu

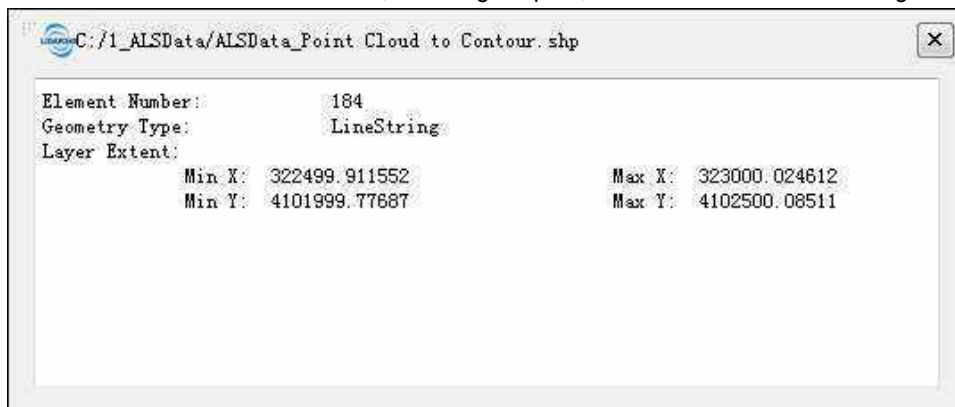
- **Import Data:** The import data format is SHP (\*.shp), the same with the function , see [Add Data](#). Import vector data generate by [Point Cloud to Contour](#), as shown below:



- **Remove All:** Remove all vector data from LiDAR360.

## Data Context Menu

- **Info:** View the basic information of vector file, including file path, elements count and bounding box.

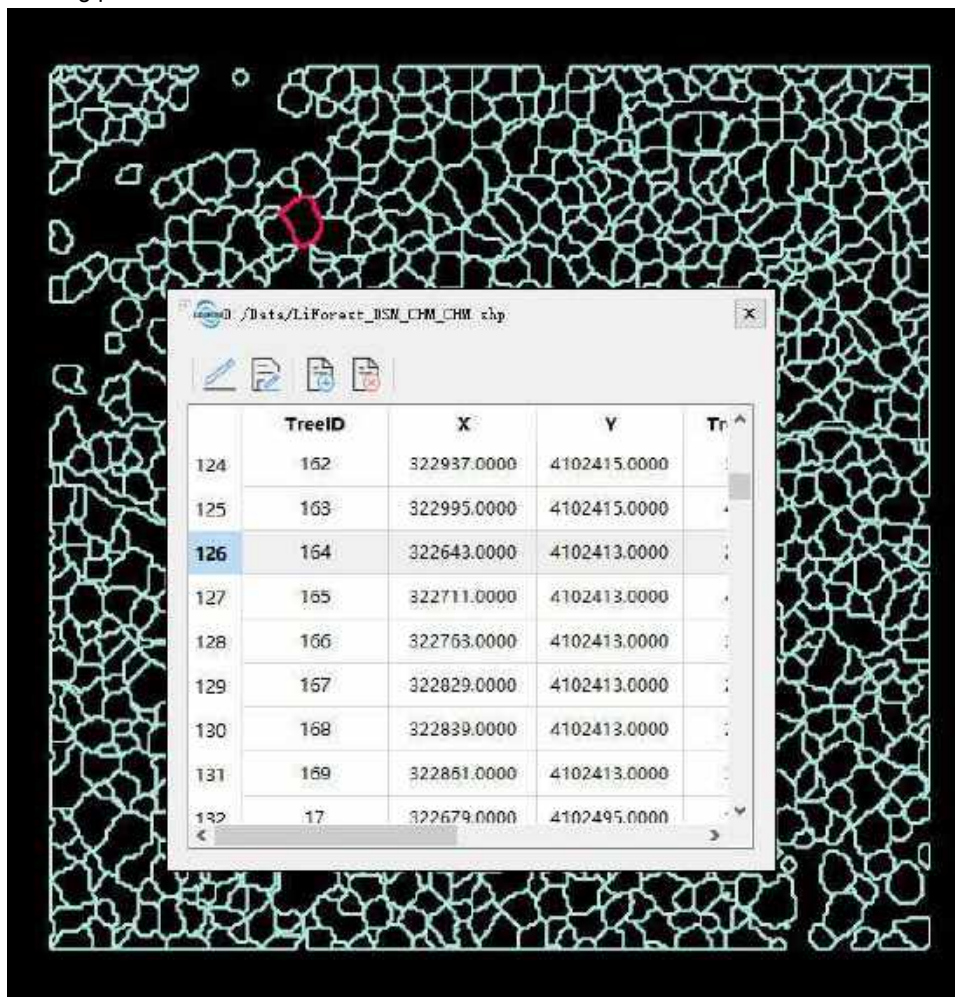


- **Attribute Table:** Displays the property sheet information of the vector data. The result is shown in the figure:

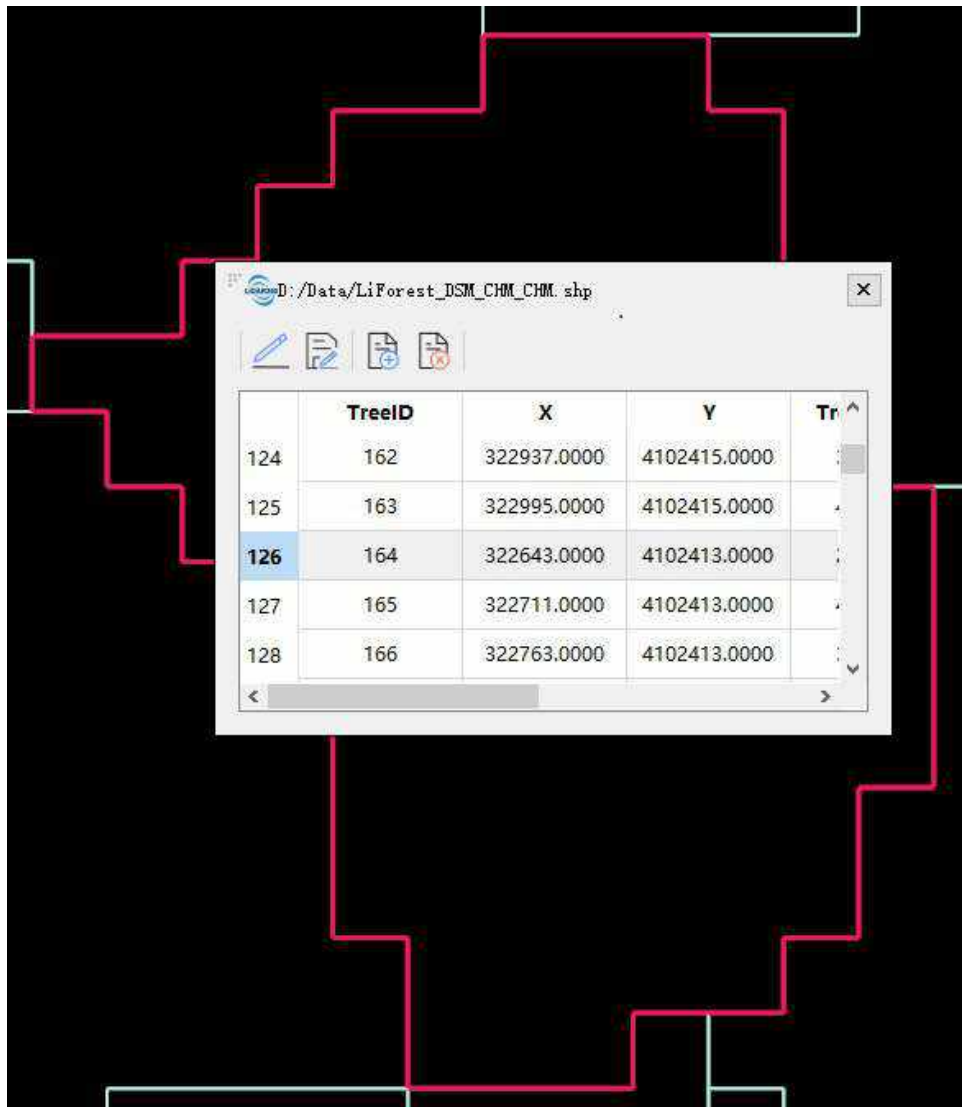


ID	Elevation	LineType	LineWidth	Color R	Color G	Color B
1	2489.0000	major	3	255	0	0
2	2490.0000	minor	1	255	255	0
3	2491.0000	basic	2	0	0	255
4	2492.0000	minor	1	255	255	0
5	2493.0000	basic	2	0	0	255
6	2494.0000	minor	1	255	255	0
7	2495.0000	basic	2	0	0	255
8	2496.0000	minor	1	255	255	0
9	2497.0000	basic	2	0	0	255
10	2498.0000	minor	1	255	255	0
11	2499.0000	major	3	255	0	0

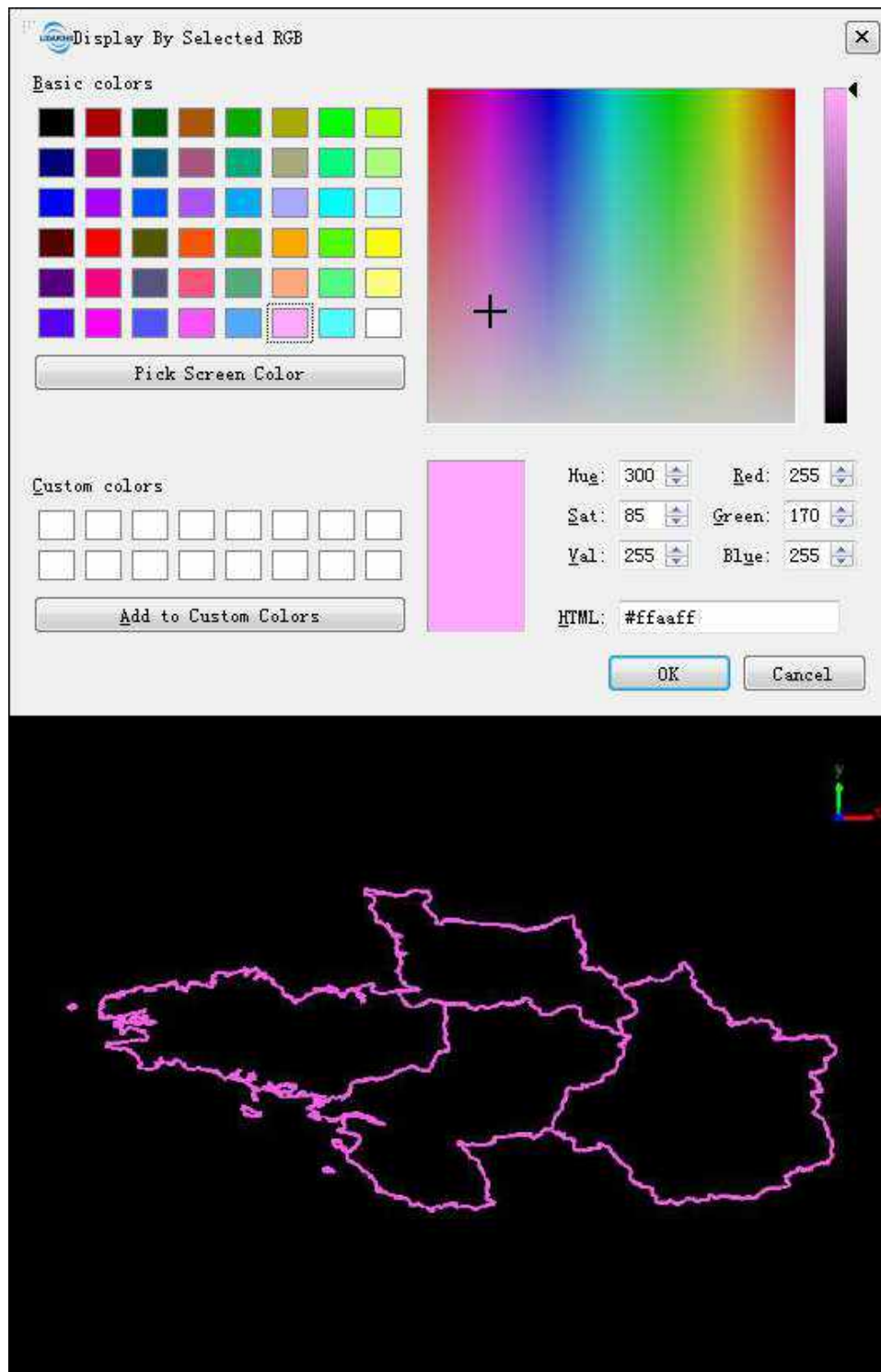
- o Single-click the row or the cell in the attribute table, the corresponding data will be highlighted as shown in the following picture:



- o Double-click the button in front of the row in the attribute table, it will zoom to the corresponding data, as shown in the following picture:



- **Zoom to Layer:** Calculates the bounding box of the current vector data, and all windows that contains this file will display globally in this bounding box range.
- **Display by Height:** Display the vector data by z value based on selected color bar.
- **Display by Selected:** Display the vector data in fixed color, as shown in the following figure:



- **Remove:** Remove vector file from LiDAR360.

Note: Except "Import Data", the other function in context menu work on all windows that contains this vector file.

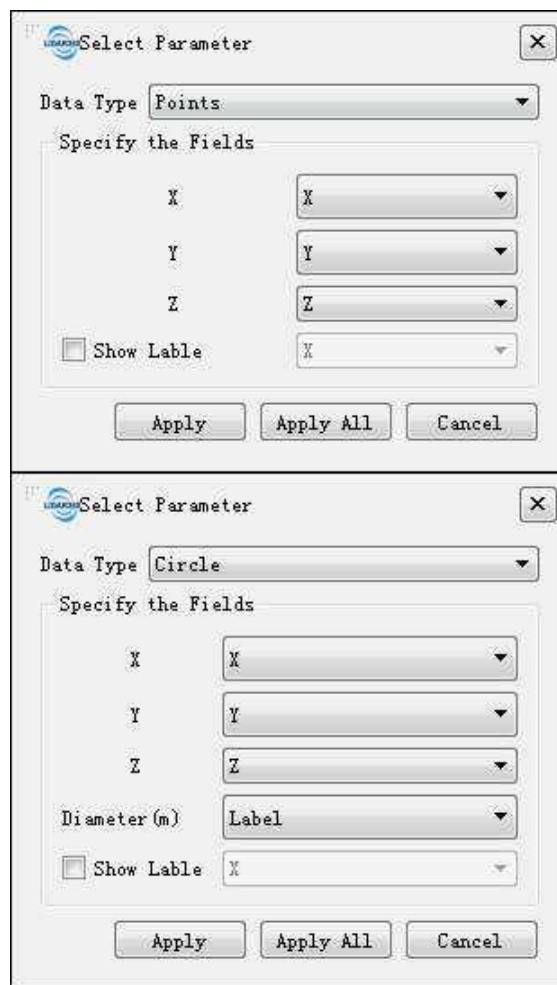
# Tables Context Menu

## Summary

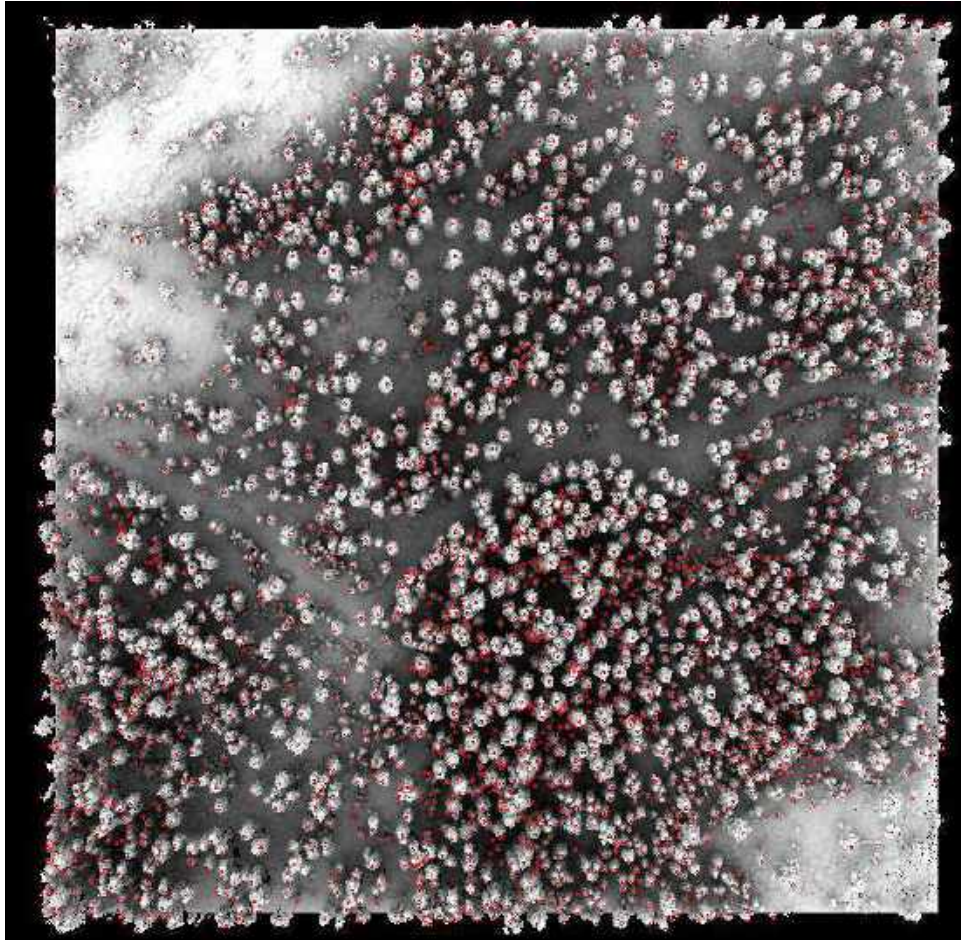
The right button menu of table data in the layer management tree mainly includes import and export table data, it also contains display information, display settings, zoom to layer, display by selected color, display by height, recalculate the statistics, export, and other operations for single model data.

## Data Type Context Menu

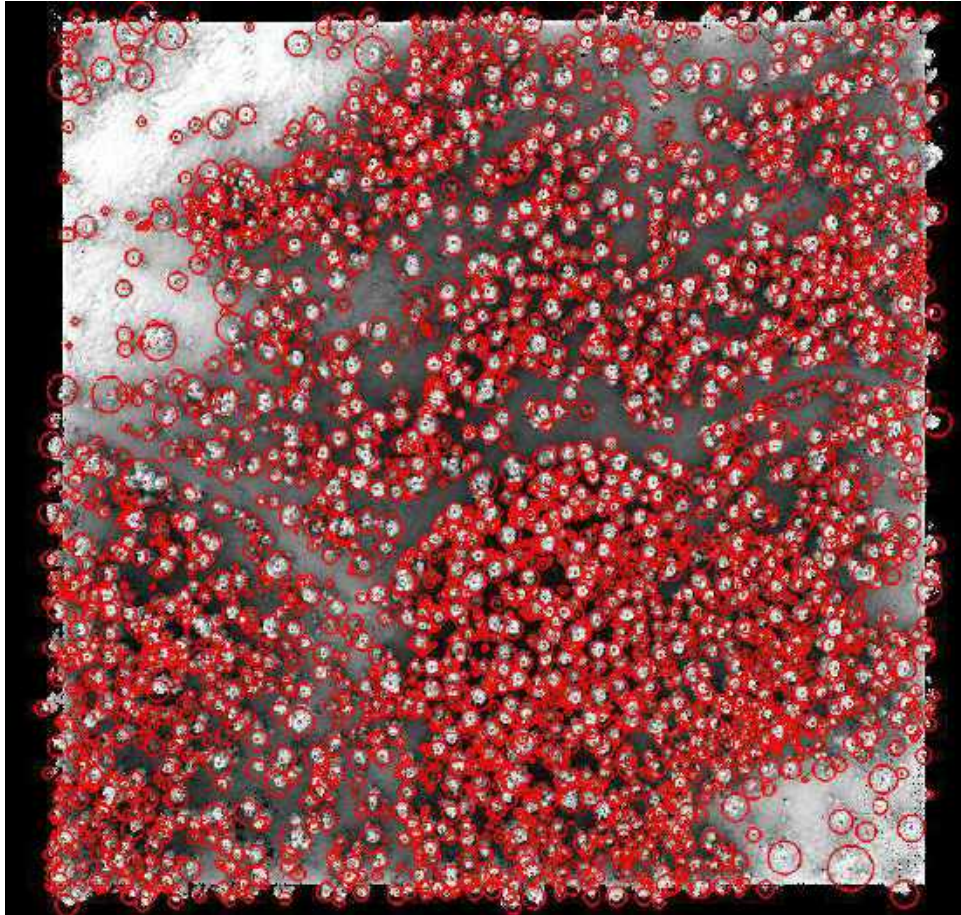
- **Import Data:** The import data format is CSV (\* .csv) . If click this function, pop-up the dialog, select data type as "Point" or "Circle", and set the specified field X, Y, Z, Diameter (if the data type is circle), and check whether to show labels.



Select data type as "Point", the table file displayed as below:



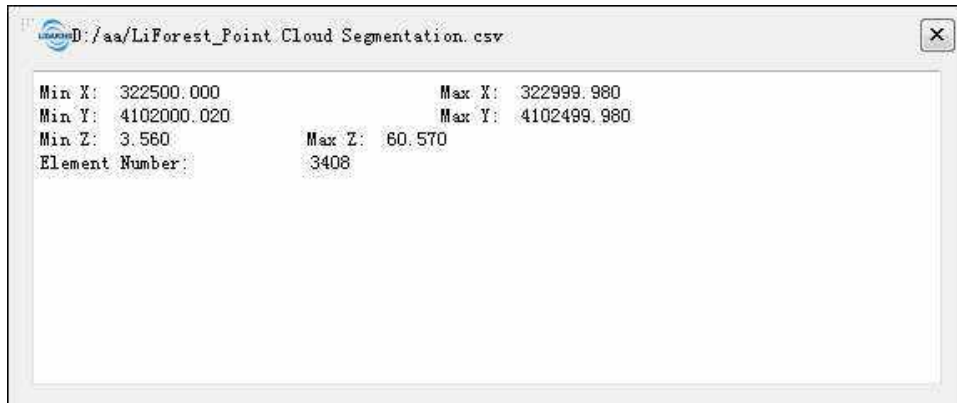
Select data type as "Circle", the table file displayed as below:



- **Remove All:** Remove all table files from LiDAR360.

## Data Context Menu

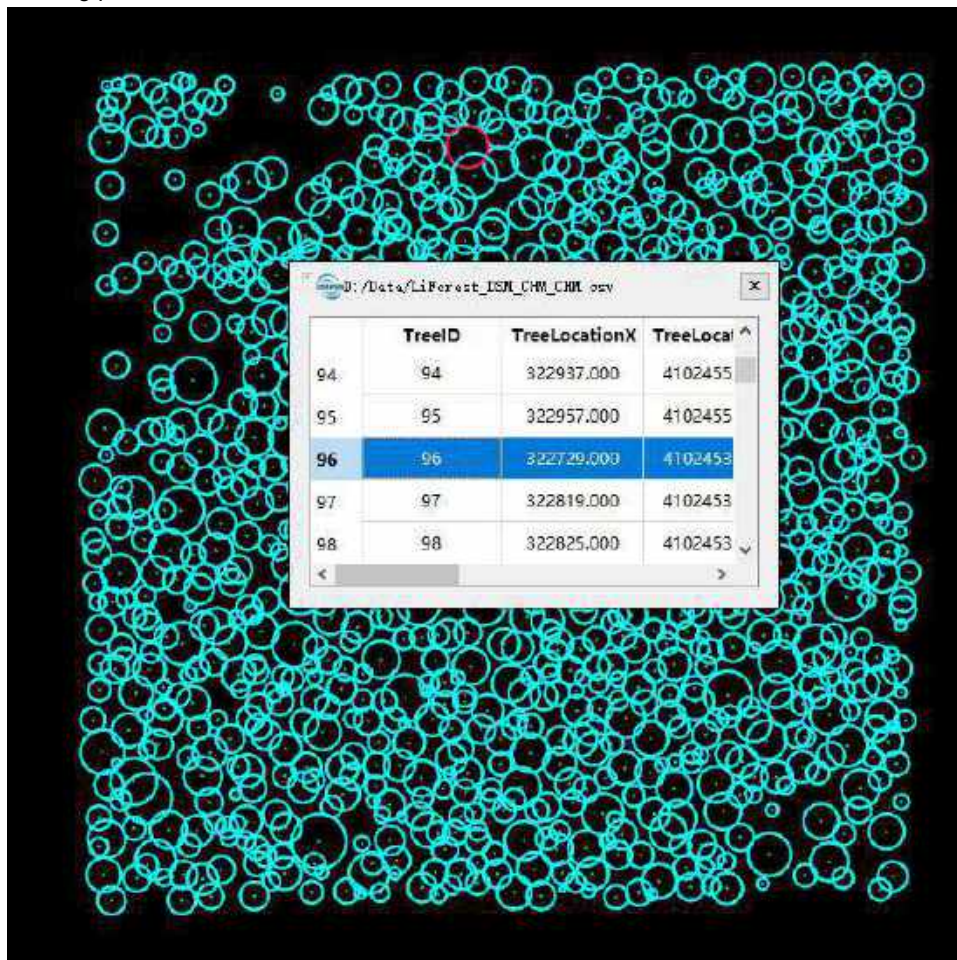
- **Info:** View the table's basic information, including path, the number of elements, the minimum and the maximum of X, Y, Z values.



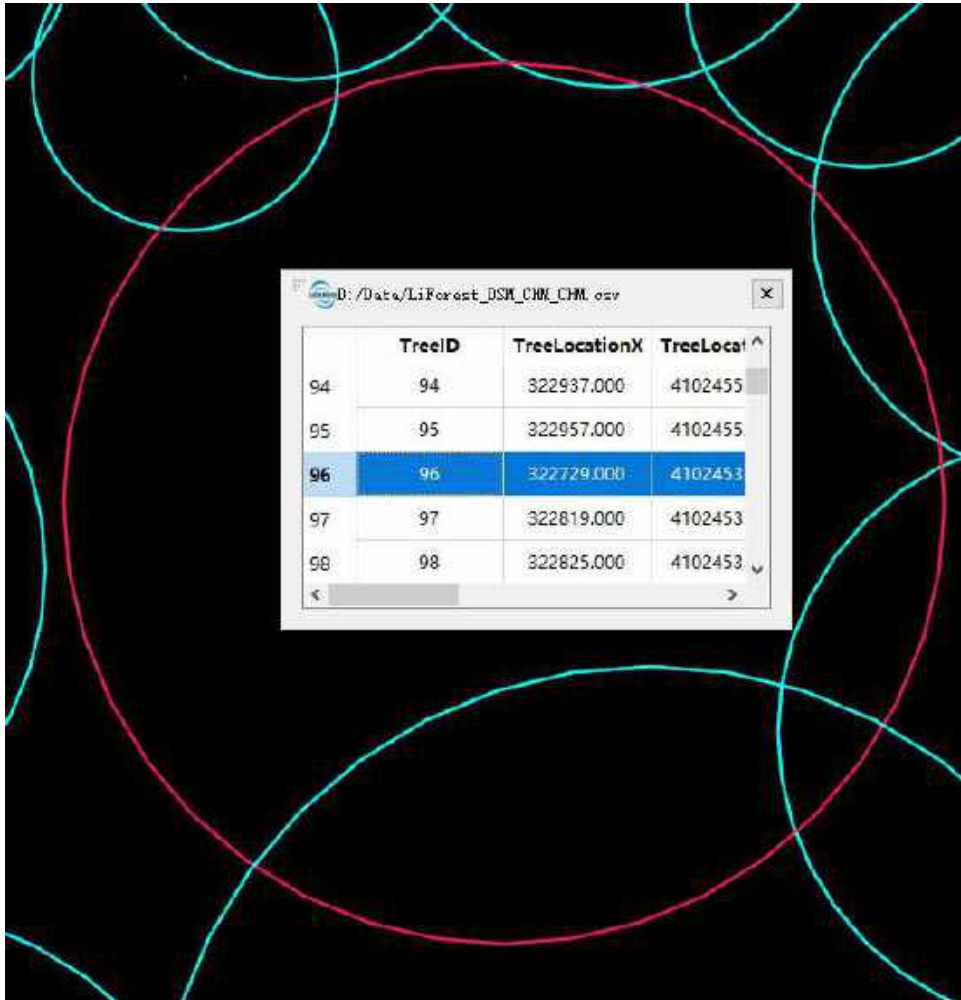
- **Attribute Table:** Display the contents of the table. As shown in the following figure, double click specific row, the window will go to the position.

	TreeID	TreeLocationX	TreeLocationY	TreeHeight	CrownDiameter	CrownArea	CrownVolu
1	1	322511.520	4102089.780	60.570	10.913	93.534	3348.000
2	2	322511.810	4102015.140	57.100	9.670	73.449	2548.500
3	3	322537.430	4102062.510	55.720	11.769	108.782	3763.620
4	4	322529.420	4102073.100	53.850	10.929	93.803	3236.310
5	5	322525.070	4102101.070	53.740	12.906	130.820	3520.820
6	6	322501.160	4102109.680	53.510	7.978	49.989	1399.010
7	7	322522.530	4102143.800	52.390	7.669	46.192	1309.620
8	8	322520.650	4102152.530	52.070	9.612	72.559	1960.910
9	9	322514.280	4102001.290	51.430	11.659	106.756	3493.820
10	10	322533.990	4102053.190	51.070	8.075	51.216	1411.410
11	11	322523.570	4102070.020	50.950	6.626	34.479	929.889
12	12	322619.080	4102017.240	50.010	12.047	113.983	3273.200
13	13	322522.240	4102076.870	49.740	7.524	44.456	1332.910
14	14	322526.700	4102079.520	49.570	3.536	9.820	229.217
15	15	322537.320	4102163.130	49.220	8.669	59.022	1814.000

- o Single-click the row or the cell in the attribute table, the corresponding data will be highlighted as shown in the following picture:

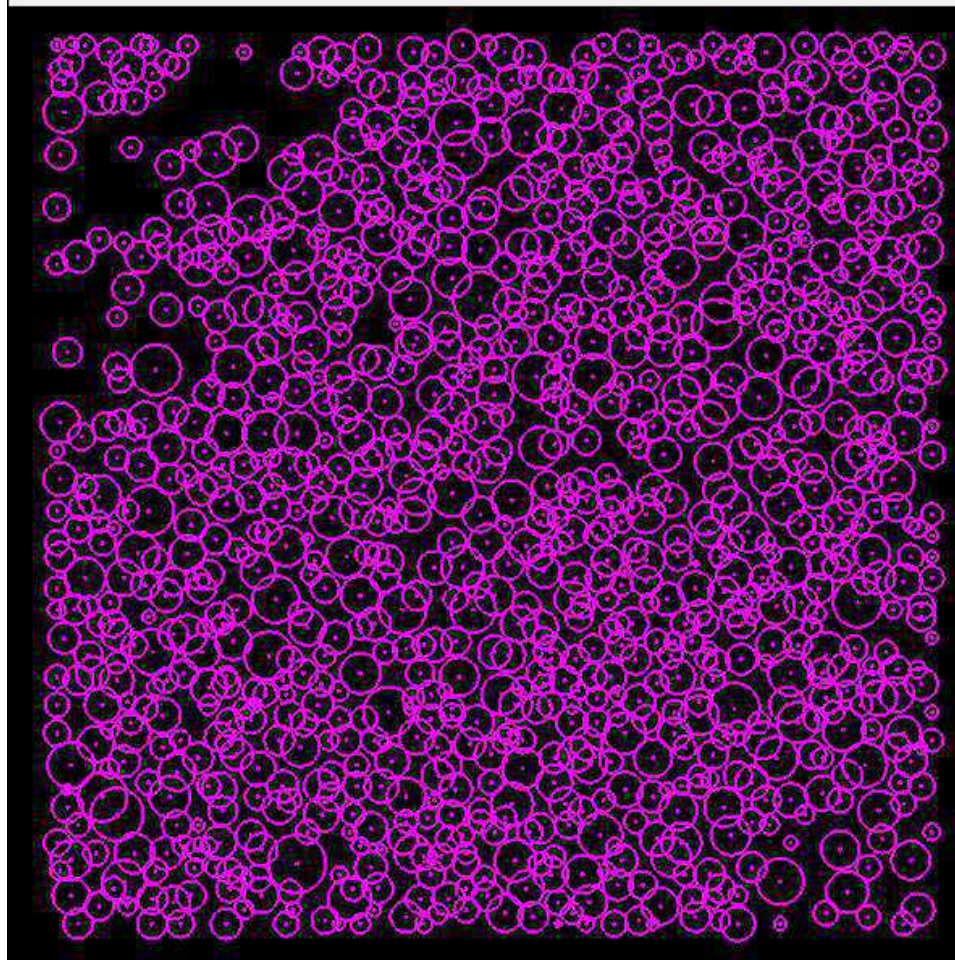
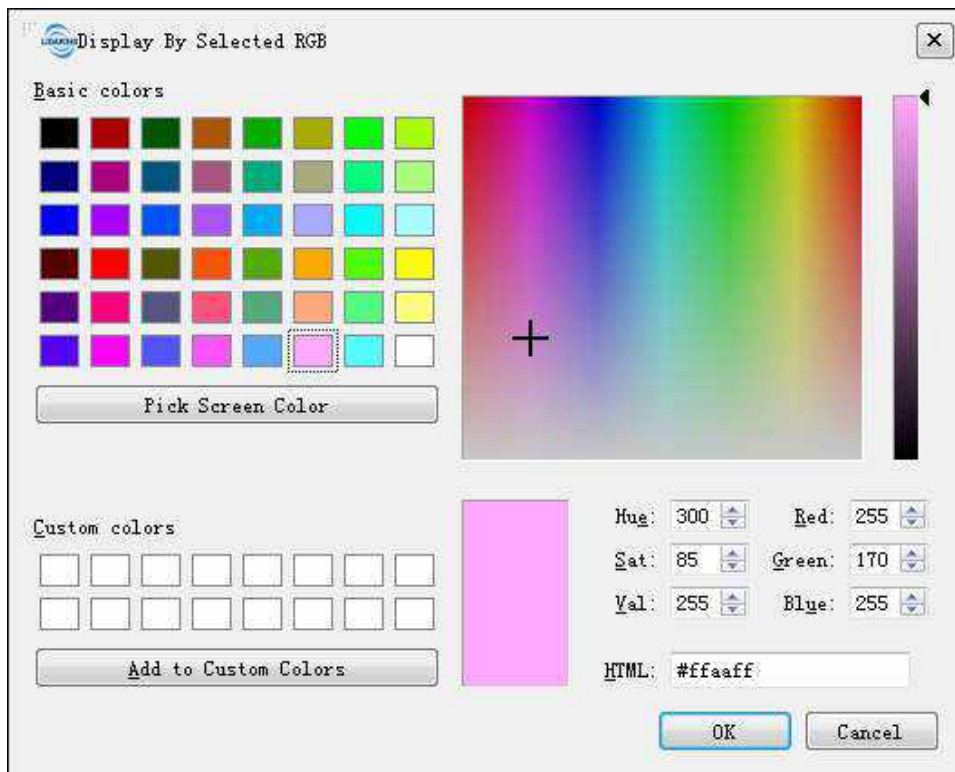


- o Double-click the button in front of the row in the attribute table, it will zoom to the corresponding data, as shown in the following picture:

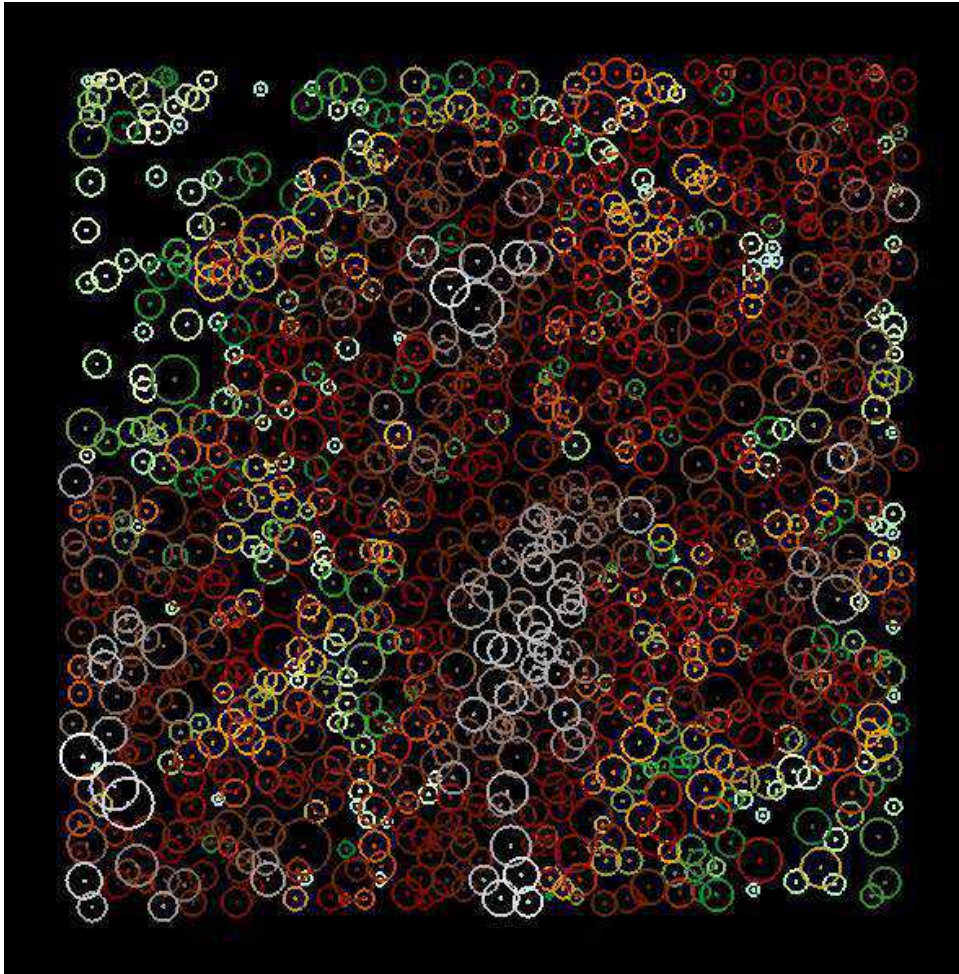


- **Zoom to Layer:** Calculates the bounding box of the current table data, and all windows that contains this file will display globally in this bounding box range.
- **Display by Selected:** Display the table data by selected color, as shown in the following picture:





- **Display by Height:** Correspond the elevation information of the table data to a uniformly changing color band. And display the table data on the screen as shown below:



- **Remove:** Remove the selected file from LiDAR360.


Note: Except "Import Data", the other function in context menu work on all windows that contains this table file.

# Model Context Menu

## Summary

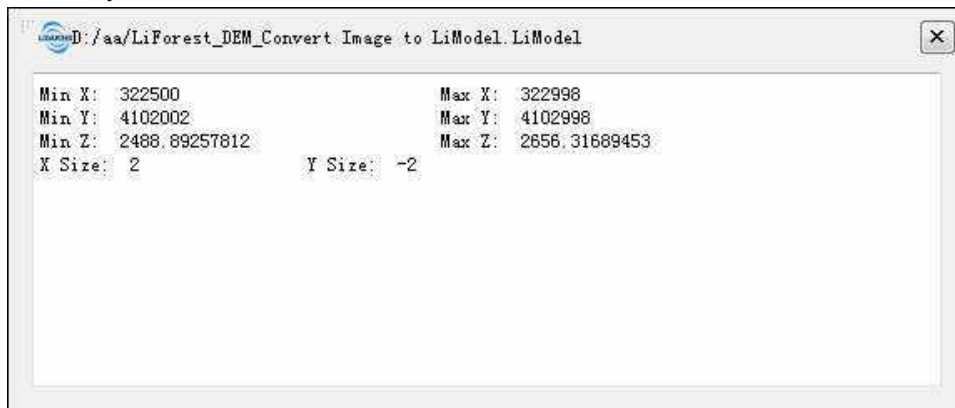
The right button menu of model data in the layer management tree mainly includes import and export table data, it also contains information, display setting, zoom to layer, restatistics, export for single model data.

## Data Type Context Menu

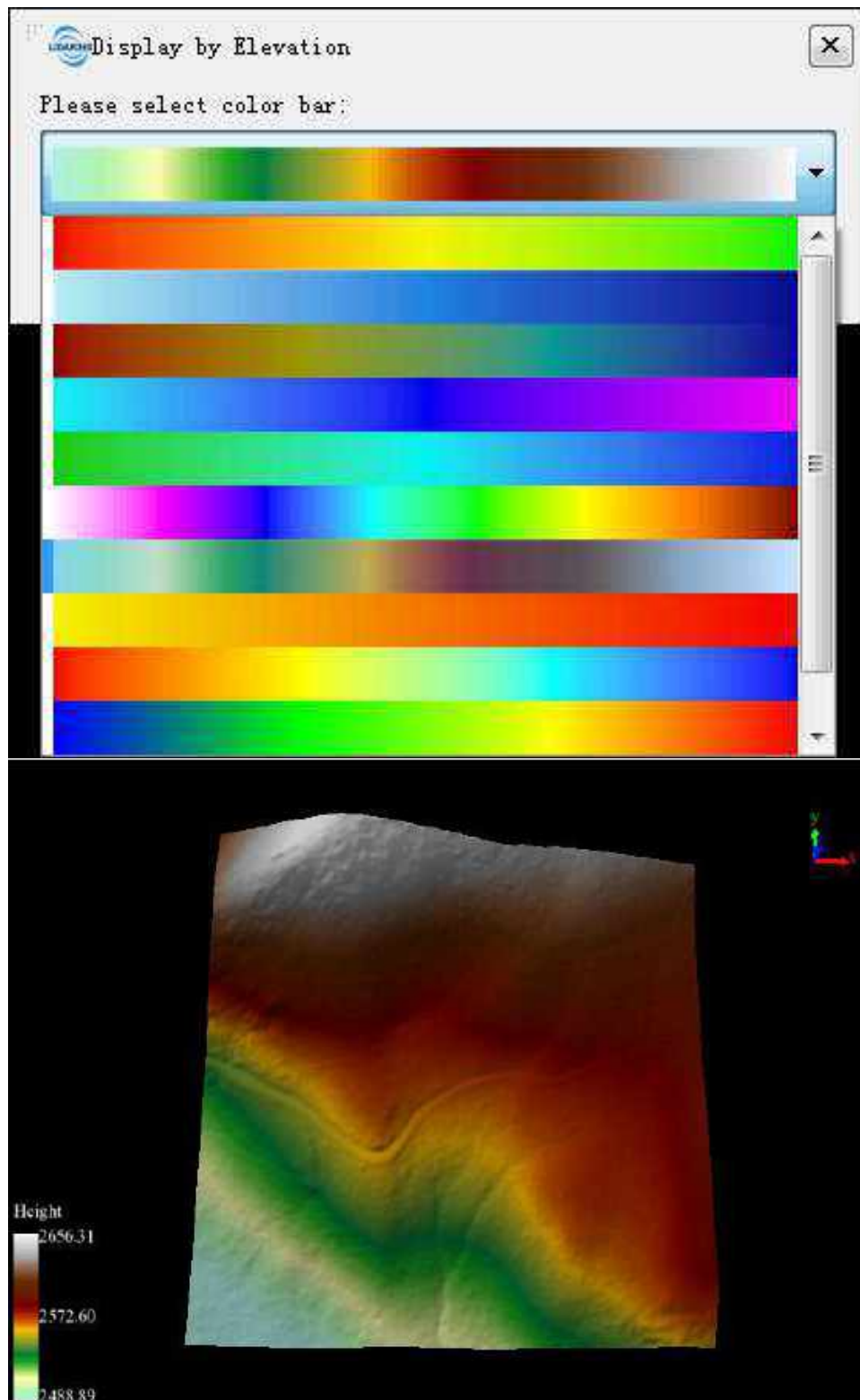
- **Import Data:** The model formats that LiDAR360 supported includes: Model (.LiTin), LiModel (.LiModel), OSG data (.osgb, .ive, .desc, .obj). Among them, the LiTIN format and LiModel format are LiDAR360 defined model format. This function is the same with the function , see [Add Data](#).
- **Remove All:** Remove all model files from LiDAR360.

## Data Context Menu

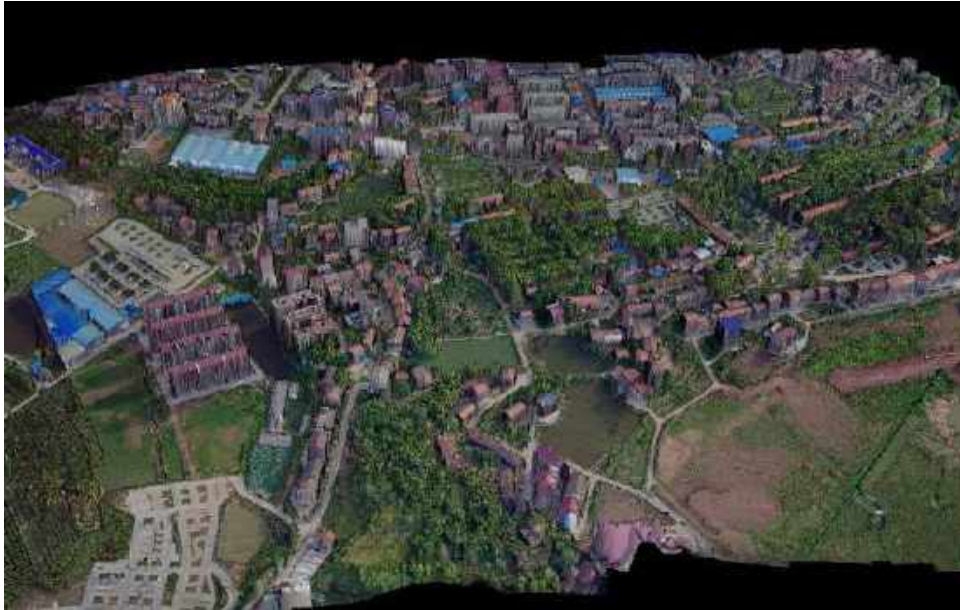
- **Info:** View the basic information of model file, including the path, resolution, the minimum and maximum of X, Y, Z. This function just for LiTin and LiModel file.



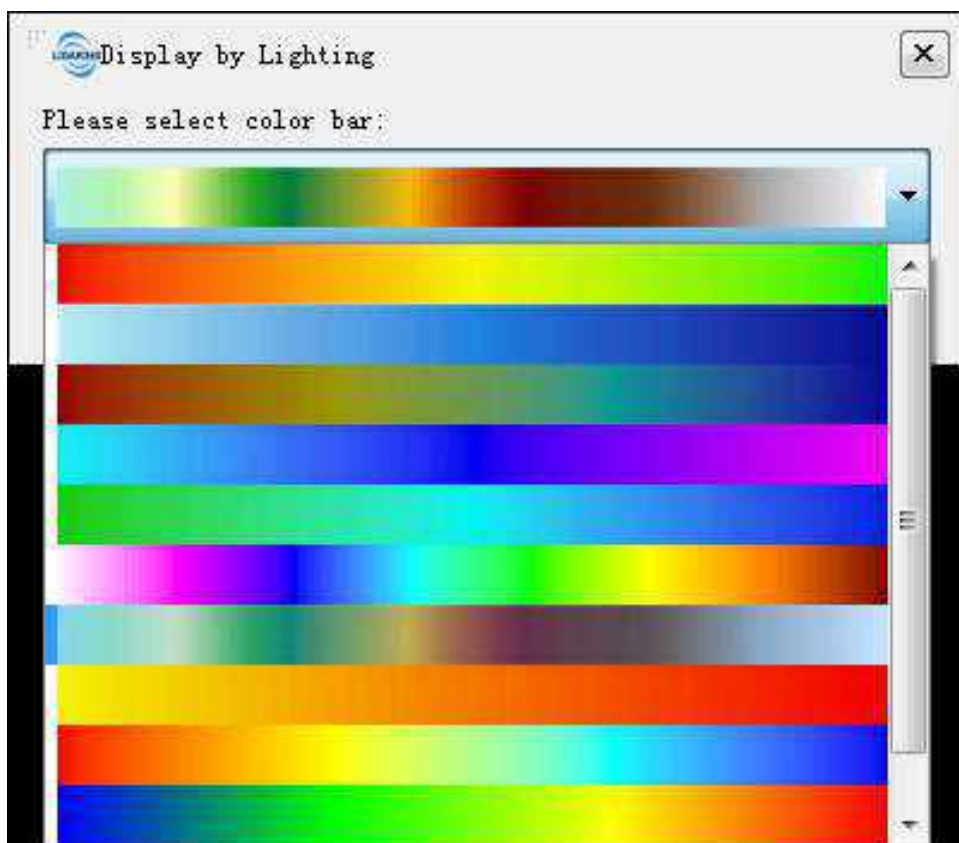
- **View Mode:** Set the model file's display mode, including display by elevation, display by texture, display by light. If the "Display by Elevation" is selected, the color bar selection dialog will be popped up, the display effect as below:

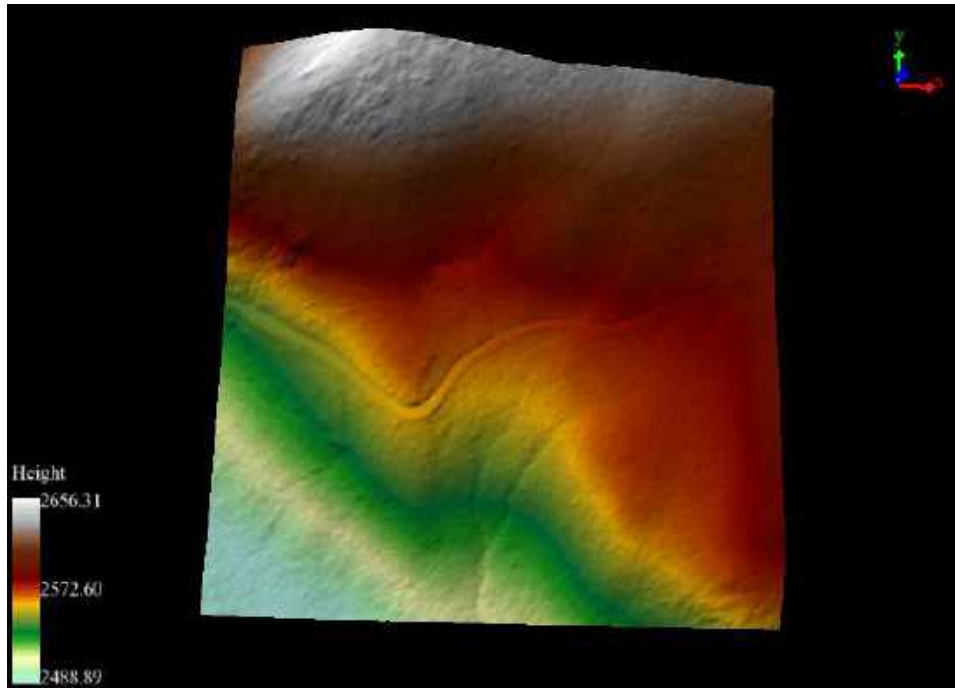


The user can [Convert to Texture LiModel](#). An example of "Display by Texture" is shown below:



If the "Display by Lighting" is selected, the color bar selection dialog will be popped up, the display effect as below:






- **Zoom to Layer:** Calculates the bounding box of the current model data, and all windows that contains this file will display globally in this bounding box range.
- **ReStatistics:** Recalculate basic information such as Min X Y Z and Max X Y Z. In general, if you edit the LiModel data, such as smooth height or repair height, you can use the Restatistics function.
- **Export:** This function is only for LiTin and LiModel file, and the export format is TIF. In General, after 3D visualization editing of LiModel and LiTIN which generated by DEM, it is necessary to convert the editing files to TIF format file.
- **Remove:** Remove the selected model data from viewer window or project.

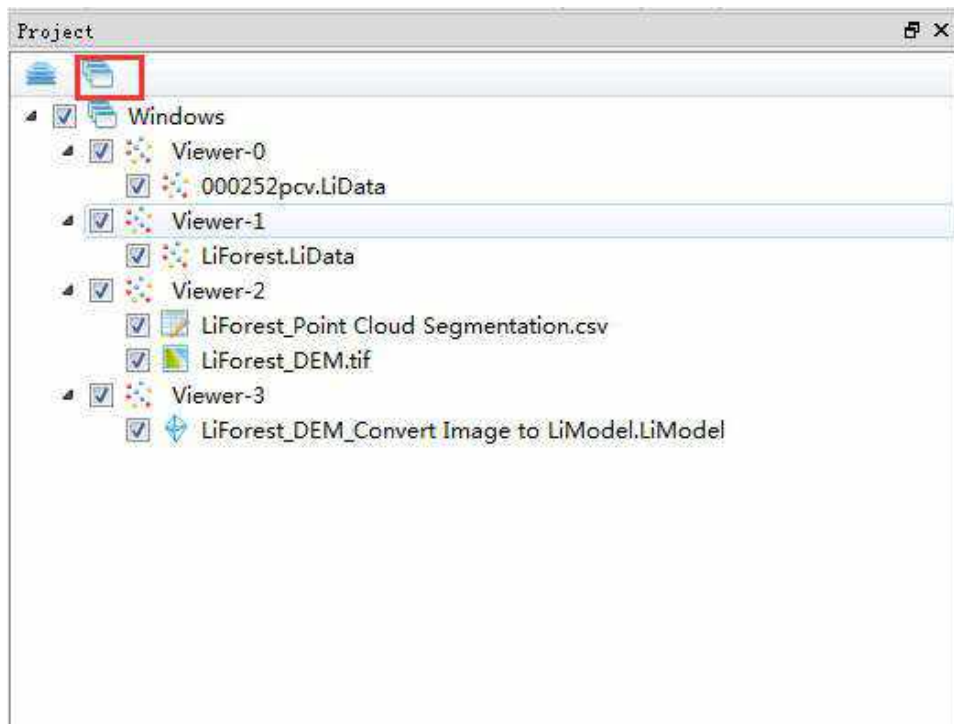
Note: Except "Import Data", the other function in context menu work on all windows that contains this model file.

# Window Management

## Summary

The **project windows** manage all windows(i.e. viewers) and data in windows. The user can remove data from window, edit display order by dragging data node, show/hide data in specified window by checking/unchecking the box before window/data node. The context menu(i.e. right-click menu) of data node, which differs depending on data types, is mainly used for data query, display, statistics, export, and removal, etc. These functions are effective on specified window.

Click the  button to show the **project windows** as follows:



## Context Menu

Open the context menu by right clicking window or data.

## Window Context Menu

- **Remove All:** Remove all data from the selected window.

## Data Context Menu

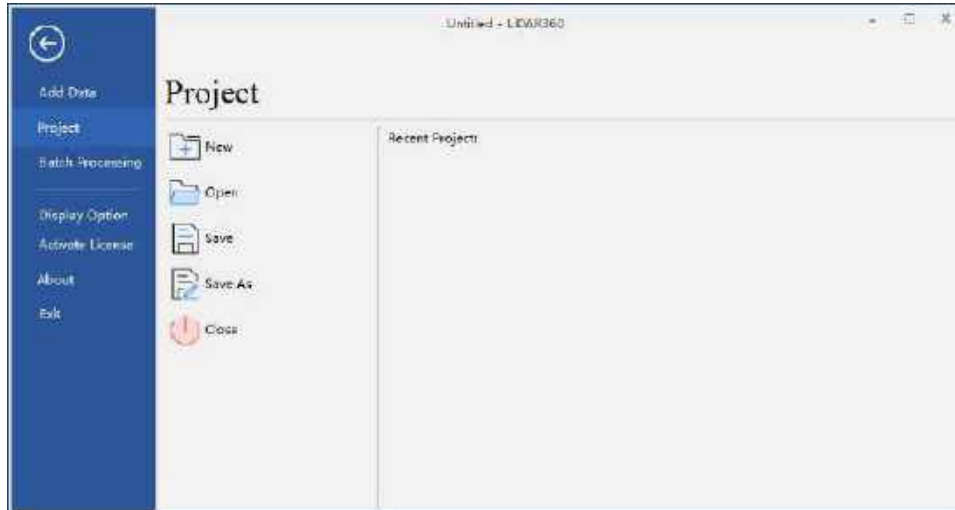
- **Point Cloud Data Context Menu:** Same as [the context menu of point cloud data in layer tree](#).
- **Raster Data Context Menu:** Same as [the context menu of raster data in layer tree](#).
- **Vector Data Context Menu:** Same as [the context menu of vector data in layer tree](#).
- **Table Data Context Menu:** Same as [the context menu of table data in layer tree](#).
- **Model Data Context Menu:** Same as [the context menu of model data in layer tree](#).

Note: The context menu of window management is only effective on specified window, while the context menu of layer management is effective on all windows.



# File

File page includes: [Add Data](#), [Project](#)( [New Project](#), [Open Project](#), [Save Project](#), [Project Save as](#), [Close](#)), [Batch Processing](#), [Display Option](#), [Activate License](#), [About](#) and [Exit](#).



# Tools

This module includes Measurement, Clipping and Data Management.



- [Measurement](#)
- [Clipping](#)
- [DataManagement](#)

# Measure Tools

The measure tools are used to measure geometric information about the data.

- [Pick Point](#)
- [Multi Pick Point](#)
- [Density Measurement](#)
- [Length Measurement](#)
- [Area Measurement](#)
- [Angle Measurement](#)
- [Height Measurement](#)
- [Gradient Measurement](#)
- [Volume Measurement](#)
- [Profile View](#)

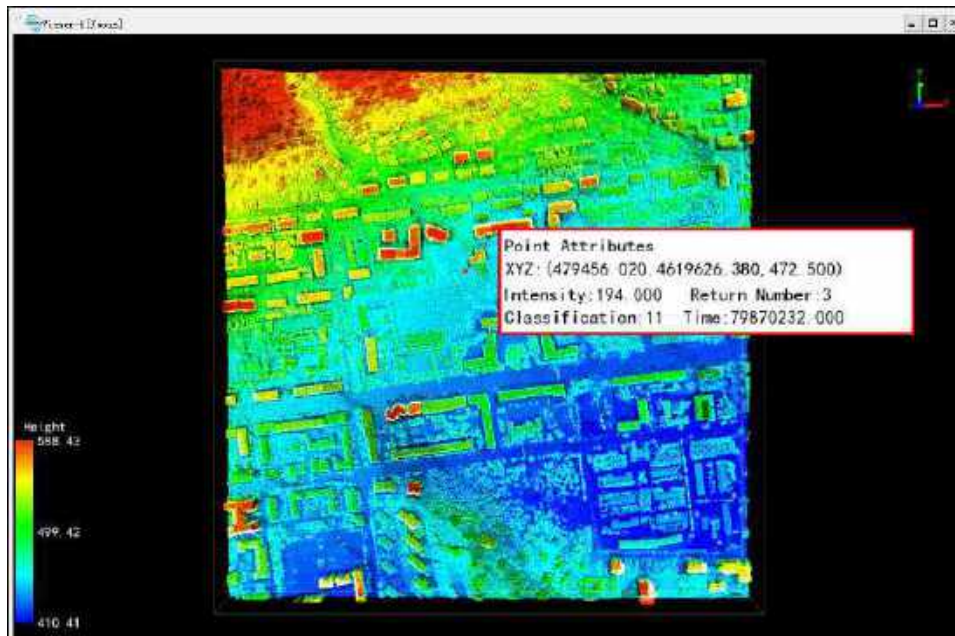
## Pick Point



**Brief:** This tool is applicable to point cloud data, raster data and model data. For point cloud data, the attributes that can be queried contain position, intensity, return number, classification and GPS time. For raster data, the attributes that can be queried contain position, stretched RGB value and pixel value.

## Steps

1. Click a valid point in the scene and a label that displays the point attributes will pop up. If the point belongs to point cloud data, then the label will show the position, intensity, return number, classification and GPS time, as is shown below. If the point belongs to raster data, then the label will show the position, stretched RGB value and pixel value.



Click the right mouse button, two context menus will pop up. The menu "Clear Measure" is used to clear the selection result. The menu "Quit Measure" is used to exit the pick point function.

Note: This tool only works with point cloud data, raster data and model data. It's available in the profile window too. Only if it is specified to do so, will the additional attributes be displayed.

# Multi Pick Point



**Brief:** This tool is applicable to point cloud data, raster data and model data. For point cloud data, the attributes that can be queried contain position, intensity, return number, classification and GPS time. For raster data, the attributes that can be queried contain position, stretched RGB value and pixel value. Different from the pick point tool, this tool allows querying multiple points at the same time, and the selection set can be exported in txt, asc, neu, xyz, pts, or csv file.

## Steps


1. Left-click the points in the scene and the selection results are marked by labels. At the same time, a table that contains the attributes of the selection points will pop up, shown as follows. The attributes of point cloud data shown in the table contain index, position (XYZ), classification, return number, GPS time and intensity. The attributes of raster data shown in the table contain index, position (XY) and band value. The total number of the points is updated real-time above the table.

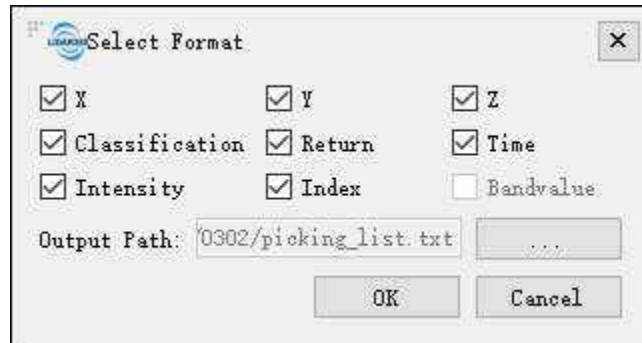
Index	X	Y	Z	Classification	Return	Time	Intensity
1 Point #1	32256.3506	410246.0900	2617.9660	2	1	527230	69
2 Point #2	32263.5606	410246.2600	2613.7500	1	1	527212	76
3 Point #3	32252.6406	410232.2100	2577.9900	1	1	527248	68
4 Point #4	32255.7406	410214.6200	2582.5200	1	1	526232	70
5 Point #5	32268.0306	4102173.6000	2629.2900	1	1	526234	62
6 Point #6	322924.5606	4102381.0200	2594.2000	1	1	526007	77


2. The "marker size" is used to set the point size of the marker in the scene. The "start index" is used to set the start index of the selected points.
3. Select a row of the table by left-clicking and click the button to delete the point.
4. After clicking the "Start Editing" button, the attribute values can be changed by double-clicking the cells in the added attribute columns, and typing in the new values.

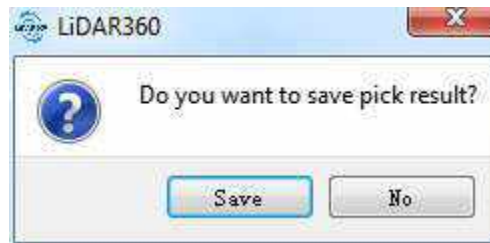
Index	X	Y	Z	Classification	Return	Time	Intensity	TestField	Date
1 Point #1	669078.9...	2719872...	78.8200	4	1	201192	157	666	2019/1/10 16:10
2 Point #2	669088.0...	2719844...	78.2000	4	1	201193	157	Greenval	2019/1/10
3 Point #3	669060.8...	2719853...	79.8000	4	1	201194	157	big	

5. After clicking the "Add Attribute" button, the following dialog will pop-up. Currently, it is supported for the following types of custom attributes: integer, float, text, date, and enum. After click "ok" button, the added field will be displayed in the attributes table.
6. The "Remove Attribute" button is not available when there is no custom attributes added. After adding custom attributes, the custom attributes can be removed by clicking "Remove Attribute" button (only the custom attributes can be removed).

7. The selection set can be exported as txt, asc, neu, xyz, pts, or csv file. Click the drop-down menu  to pop up "Select Format" dialog, as shown below. If the selected points belong to raster data, then the menu "Save 2D points" is available. If the selected points belong to 3D data, then the menu "Save 3D points" is available. If the selected points contain 2D data and 3D data, then the menu "Save all points" is available.



8. Click  to pop up the export dialog. Input the output path, and check the attributes that need to be exported. Click "OK" to complete the export. Click "Cancel" to cancel the export.
9. If the selected points have not been saved before quitting this tool, a message box will pop up as follows. Click "Save" to save the points. Click "Discard" to cancel the selections.



## Settings

- **X:** X component of the coordinate.
- **Y:** Y component of the coordinate.
- **Z:** Z component of the coordinate.
- **Classification:** The class attribute of point cloud data.
- **Return:** The return number attribute of point cloud data.
- **Time:** The GPS time attribute of point cloud data.
- **Intensity:** The intensity attribute of point cloud data.
- **Index:** The index of select point.
- **BandValue:** The band value of raster data.
- **Output Path:** The path of the output file.

Note: This tool only works with point cloud data, raster data and model data. If the center of rotation needs to be changed, hold down the the Ctrl key and select the center of rotation with the left mouse button. This tool is available in the profile window too.

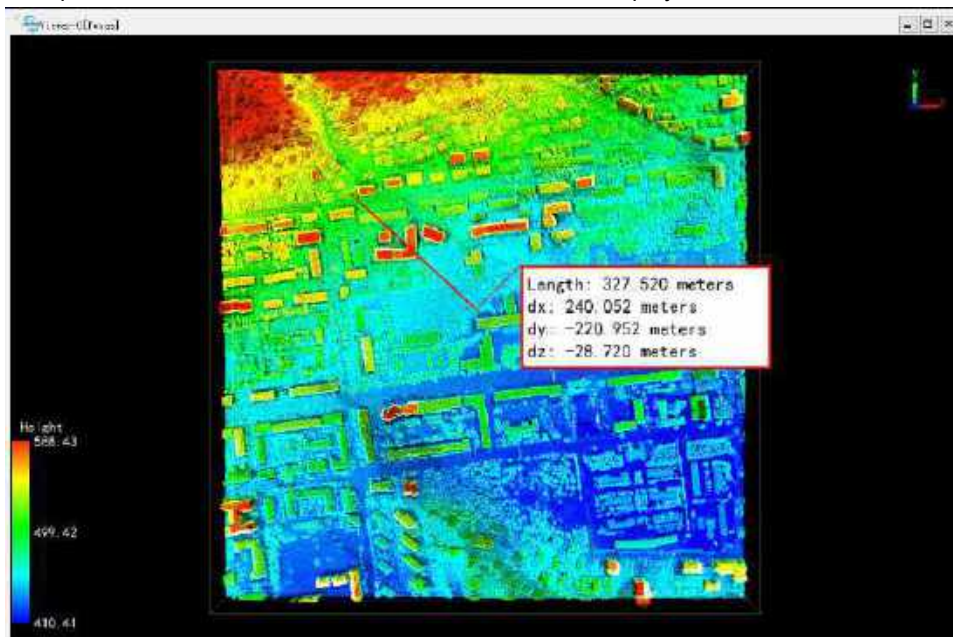
# Length Measurement



**Brief:** This tool is applicable to point cloud data, raster data and model data, which calculates the distance between two consecutive points.


## Steps

1. Left-click at least two points in the scene and the corresponding polyline will be rendered real-time. The measurement result is displayed in a label as follows. Double-clicking the last point will stop the measurement process, and the distance value will continue to be displayed in the label.



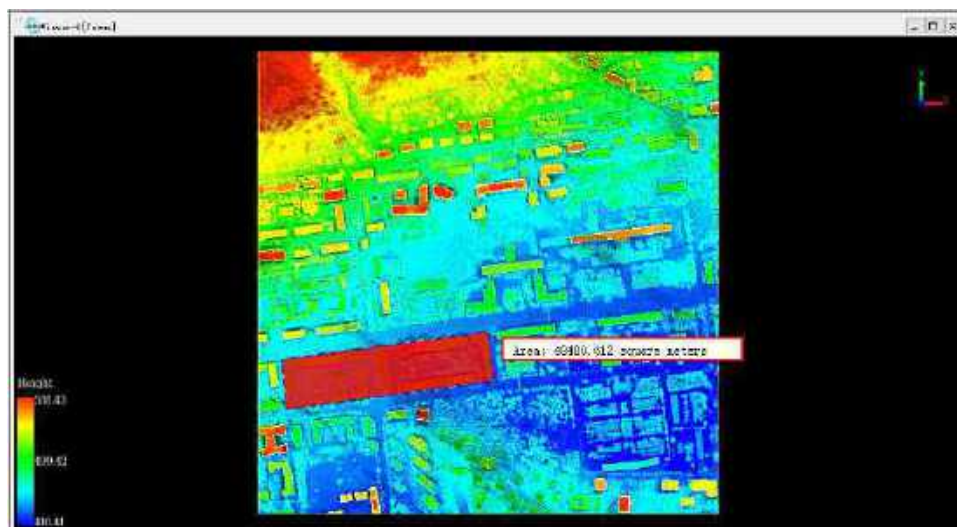
Note: This tool only works with point cloud data, raster data and model data. The "Back One Point" is only available before the measurement is stopped. This tool is available in the profile window, too.

# Area Measurement

 **Brief:** This tool is applicable to all data types supported by LiDAR360, which calculates the projected area within the polygon region. Current window will switch to Orthogonal Projection automatically for 3D data.

## Steps

1. Left-click at least three points in the scene and the corresponding polygon area will be rendered real-time. The measurement result is displayed in a label as follows. Double-clicking the last point will stop the measurement process, and the measurement result will continue to be displayed in the label.



Right-click to go back to the previous point during the measurement.

Note: This tool only works under orthogonal projection. The "Back One Point" is only available before the measurement is stopped.



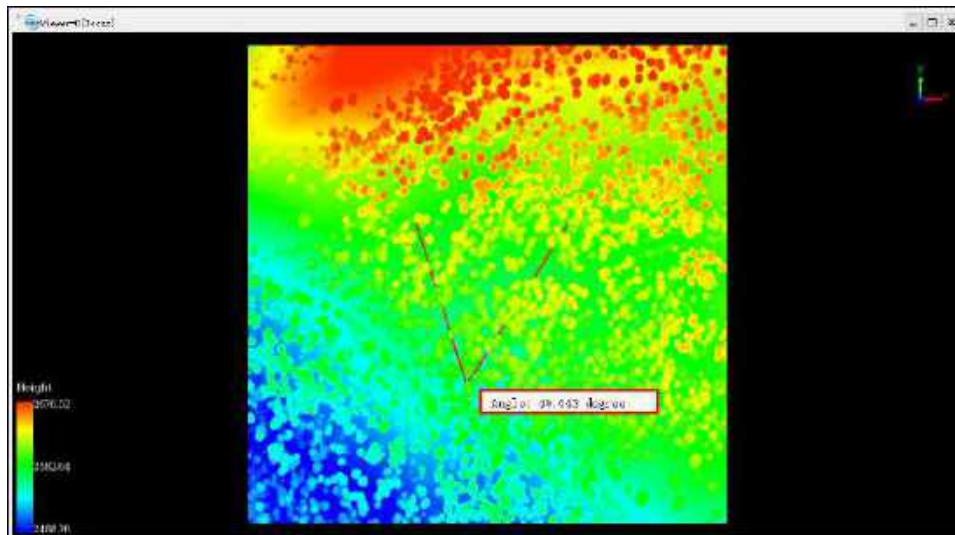
# Angle Measurement



**Brief:** This tool is applicable to point cloud data, raster data and model data, which calculates the angle created by the three picked points in 3D view and calculates the projection angle of three points on the horizontal plane in 2D view.


## Steps

1. Select the first point of angle measurement by left-clicking. 2. Select the second point of angle measurement by left-clicking. 3. Select the third point of angle measurement by double-clicking. The projection angle of the three points on the horizontal plane will be rendered in the scene and the measurement result is displayed in a label as follows.



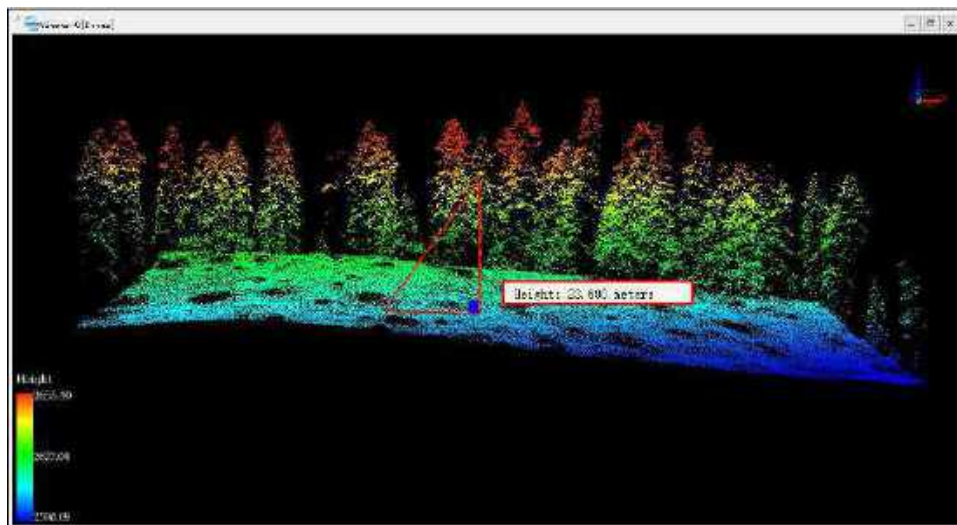
Note: This tool only works with point cloud data, raster data and model data. The "Back One Point" is only available before the measurement is stopped. The tool is available in the profile window too.

# Height Measurement

 **Brief:** This tool is applicable to point cloud data and model data, which calculates the relative height difference between two points.

## Steps

1. Select the reference point of height measurement by left-clicking.
2. Select the measurement point by double-clicking. The relative height difference between the reference point and the measurement point will be rendered in the scene and the measurement result is displayed in a label as follows.



Right-click to go back to the previous point during the measurement.

Note: This tool only works with point cloud data and model data. The "Back One Point" is only available before the measurement is stopped. The tool is available in the profile window too.

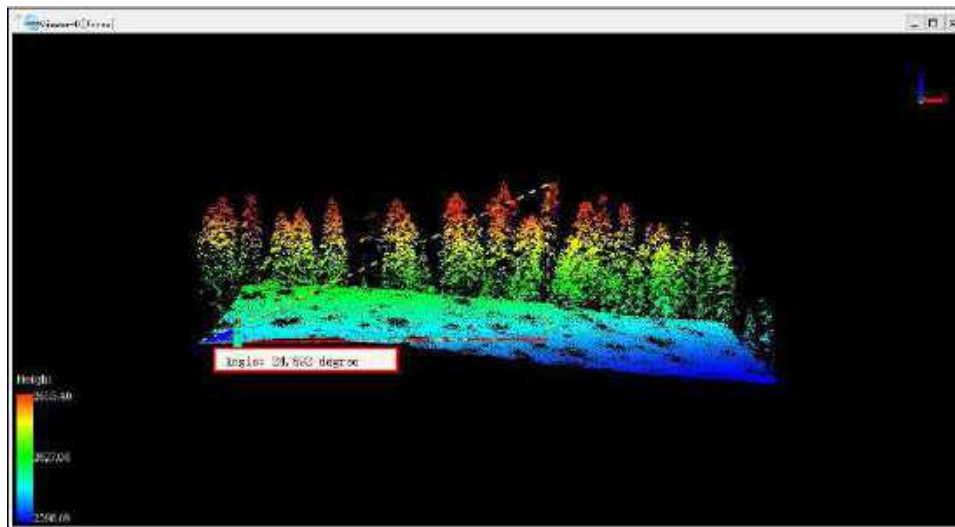
# Gradient Measurement



**Description:** Gradient measurement can be used to measure the gradient on point cloud, raster, or model data. Users can click the mouse to pick the measurement points interactively to measure the vertical angle of the line formed by the selected two points, or the angle between the line formed by the selected two points and the horizon plane.

## Steps

1. Click the single point of the data with the left mouse button and select the reference point for angle measurement. 2. Double-click the left mouse button to determine the measurement point, and the measurement ends. The measurement angle is drawn in real time in the scene, and the measurement result is displayed in the form of a label in real time (as shown).



Note: This function is only for the angle measurement of point cloud data, raster data, and model data. This function can also be used in the profile window. The undo function can only be used before double-clicking the mouse.

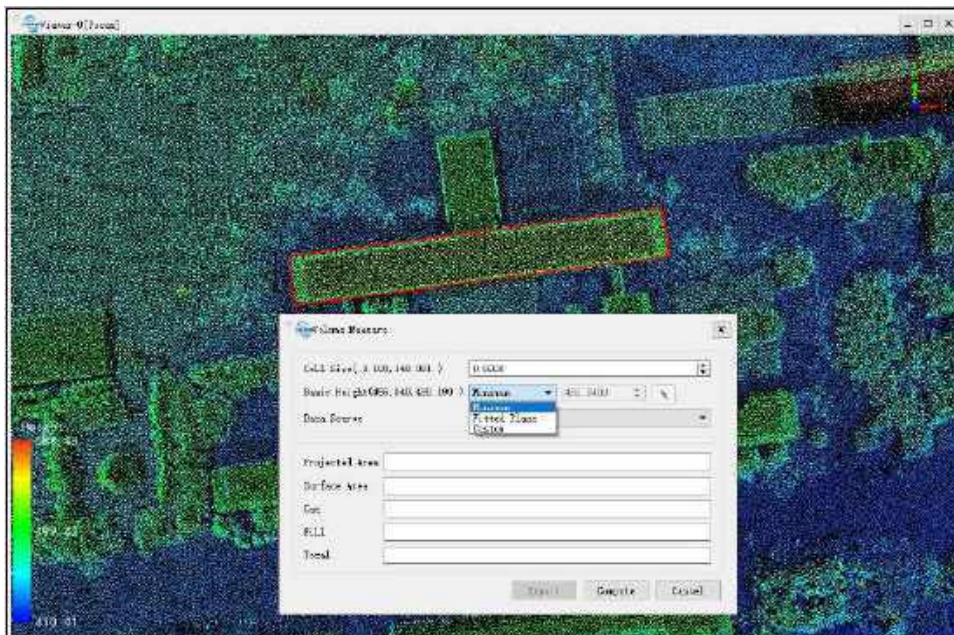
# Volume Measurement



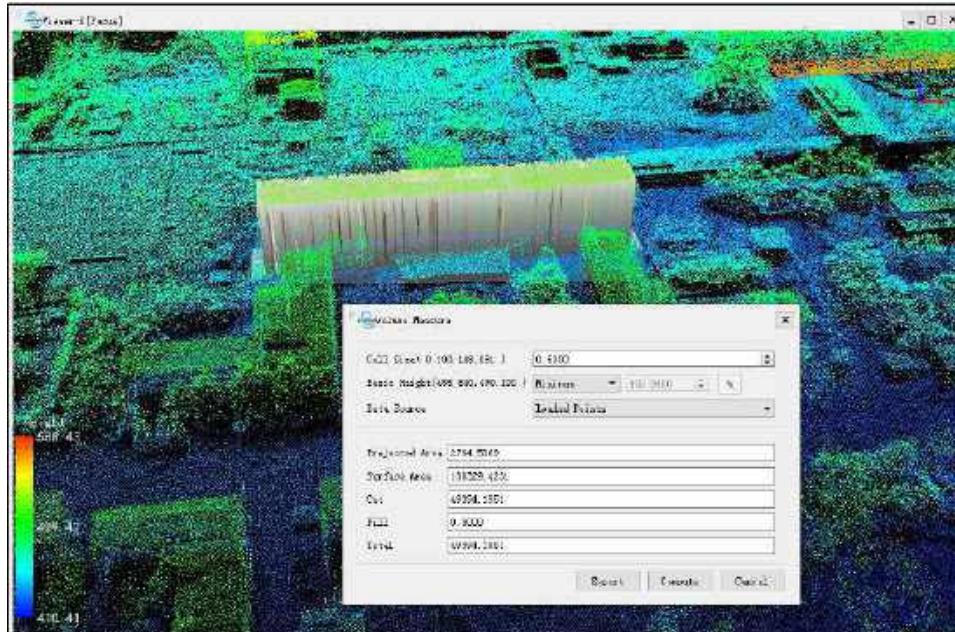
**Brief:** This tool is applicable to point cloud data and model data, which calculates filling, cutting and total amount relative to a reference height. The measurement area can be selected either by interactively selecting polygon vertices or by inputting the vector file of the polygons. It's commonly used in volume measurement of coal pile and hull.

## Steps

1. After open this tool, the options of volume measurement methods will pop up. If volume measurement is selected, users need to select the measurement area by clicking mouse; if measurement area is defined by file, users can load the file with measurement area information to measure the volume of the target object. It is suggested to adjust the window to top view before the tool is used.
2. (Optional) Select at least three points to generate the reference plane for volume calculation by left-clicking. Select the last point by double-clicking. The border of the selected region will be rendered in red and the dialog "Volume Measure" will pop up.



3. (Optional) Select the SHP file which defines the boundary of the measurement area (supporting defining the measurement area with polygon or closed polyline)
4. Set the cell size.
5. Set the reference plane of volume measurement. The options include minimum value, fit plane, and customizing.
6. Set the data source for volume measurement. The data source type includes the loaded point and all points.
7. Click the "Compute" button to generate the measurement result, including Projected area, surface area, cut volume, and fill volume. The corresponding volume will be rendered in the scene, as shown below.



8. Click the "Export" button to export the result in \*.pdf format.

## Settings

- **Cell Size:** It defines the smallest unit size for calculation. The smaller the value is, the more accurate the calculation is.
- **Basic Height:** It defines the reference plane to calculate filling and cutting.
  - **Minimum (Default):** Use the minimum height of the selected points as the height of the reference plane.
  - **Fitted Plane:** Fit the best plane according to the selected points.
  - **Customize:** This value is specified by the user.
- **Data Source:** specify the points used to calculate the volume.
  - **Loaded Points:** Use the points only in the loaded point cloud files in the specified area. The efficiency is high while the accuracy is low.
  - **All Points:** Use the points in all the point cloud files in the specified area. The efficiency is low while the accuracy is high.

Note: This tool only works with point cloud data and model data in 3D view.

# Density Measurement



**Brief:** Point density is an important metric to measure the quality of point cloud data. The average number of points per square meter can be counted with this tool.

## Steps

1. Active window is adjusted to orthogonal projection automatically when this tool is started. Then the dialog "Density" pops up.
2. If the option "Width" is checked, the width value can be manually input, and the height value will be set to the same as the width value, then the area value will be decided by "Width" and "Height". The measurement region can be selected by left-clicking.
3. If the option "Width" is unchecked, the width value and the height value will be decided by the size of the rectangle that is drawn interactively by left-clicking the upper left corner and the lower right corner. The area value will be decided by "Width" and "Height". The rectangle will be rendered in the scene and the measurement result (number of total points and point density) is displayed in a label as follows.



## Settings

- **Width:** It defines the width of the reference rectangle.
- **Height:** It defines the height of the reference rectangle.
- **Area:** It defines the area of the reference rectangle.

Note: This tool only works with point cloud data and model data under orthogonal projection.

# Clipping

Select and save point clouds in interest area.

- [Polygon Selection](#)
- [Rectangle Selection](#)
- [Sphere Selection](#)
- [Circle Selection](#)
- [Lasso Selection](#)
- [Subtract Selection](#)
- [In Cut](#)
- [Out Cut](#)
- [Save Cut Result](#)
- [Cancel Selection](#)
- [Cross Selection](#)
- [Clip](#)

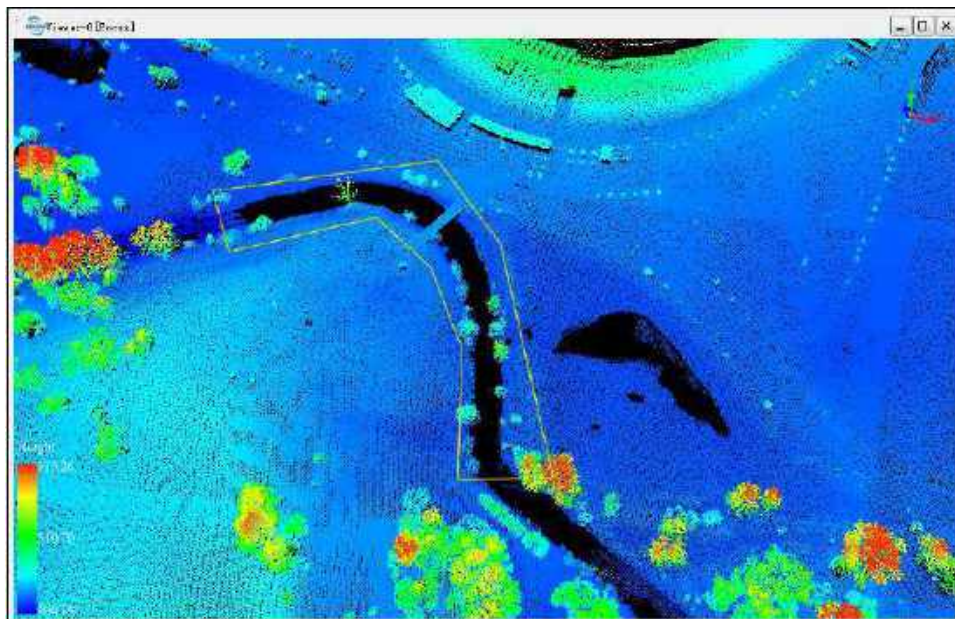
# Polygon Selection



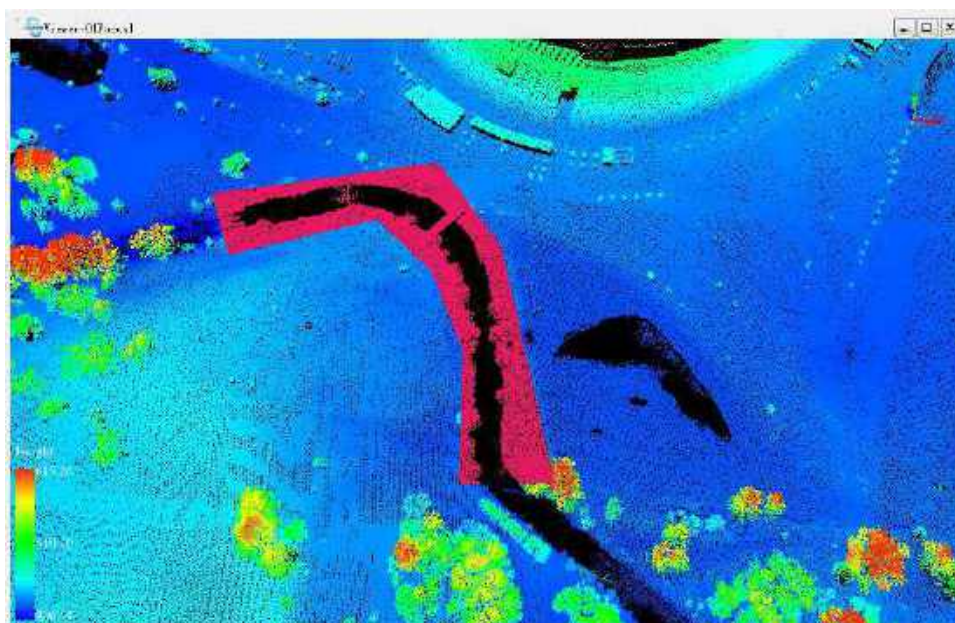
**Brief:** Select point cloud data in polygon area.

## Steps

1. Click the *Polygon Selection* button to activate this function (Click again if you want to deactivate it).
2. Add polygonal vertices by left click. At least 3 vertices are needed to form a closed loop.

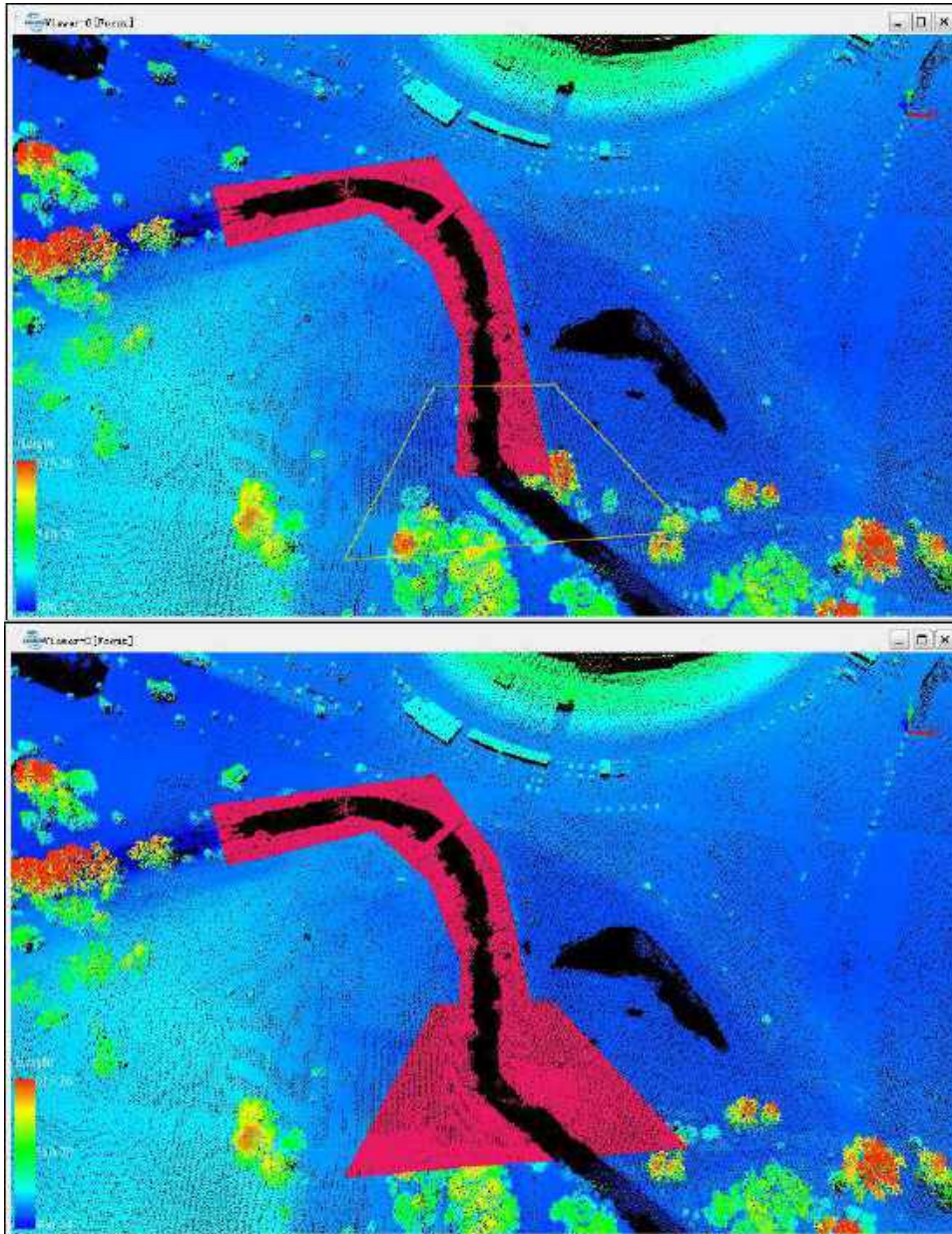


3. **(Optional)** Delete added vertices in reverse order by right click, if some of them are unwanted.
4. Left double click to add the last vertex. The selected points in the polygon area are highlighted.

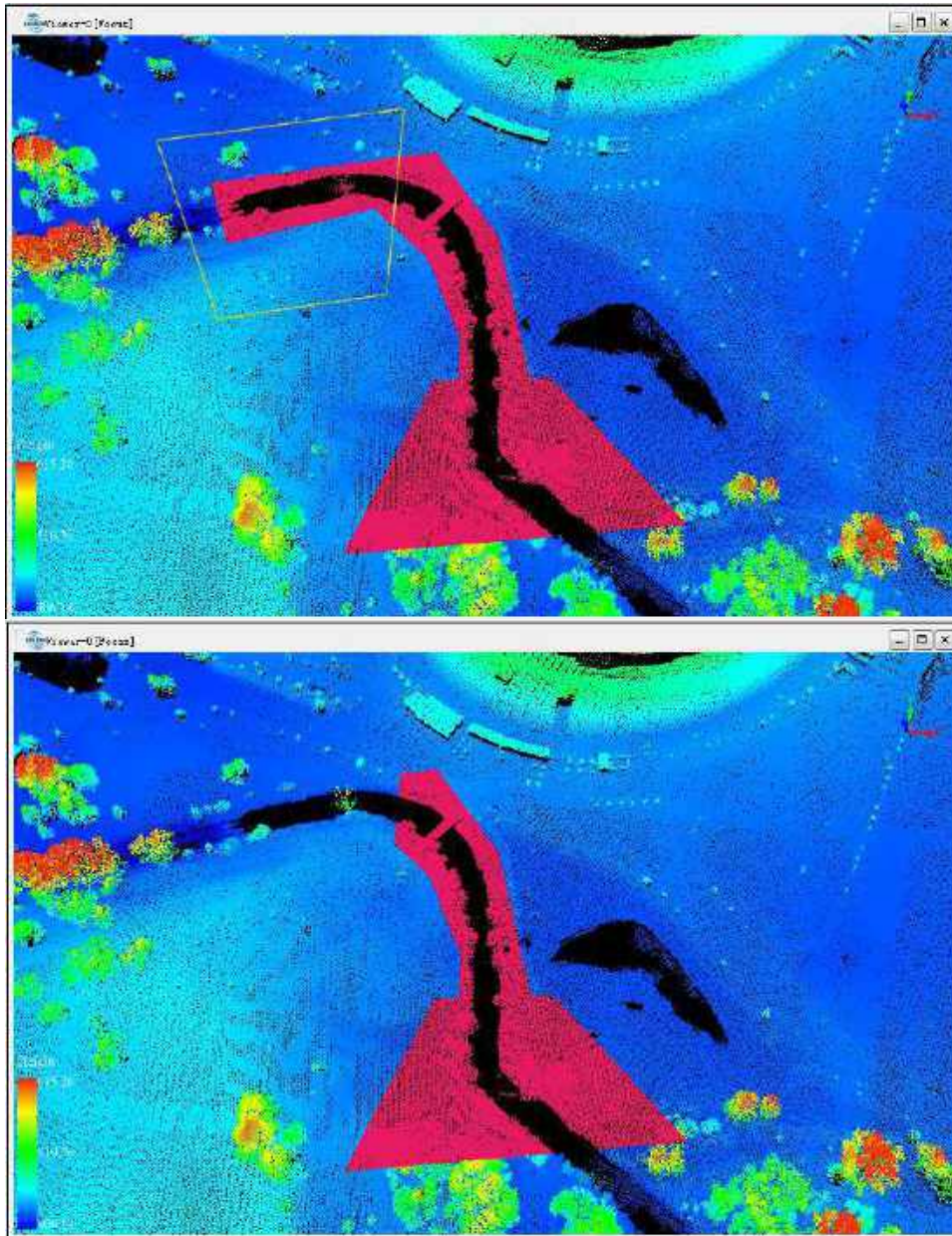


5. **(Optional)** Combine multiple selections.





6. **(Optional)** Remove unwanted points from the selected, if [Subtract Selection](#) is active. The removed points are no more highlighted.



**Shortcut Key:** Press **Ctrl + Z** to undo the selection operation.

**Note:** This function is only applicable to point cloud data.

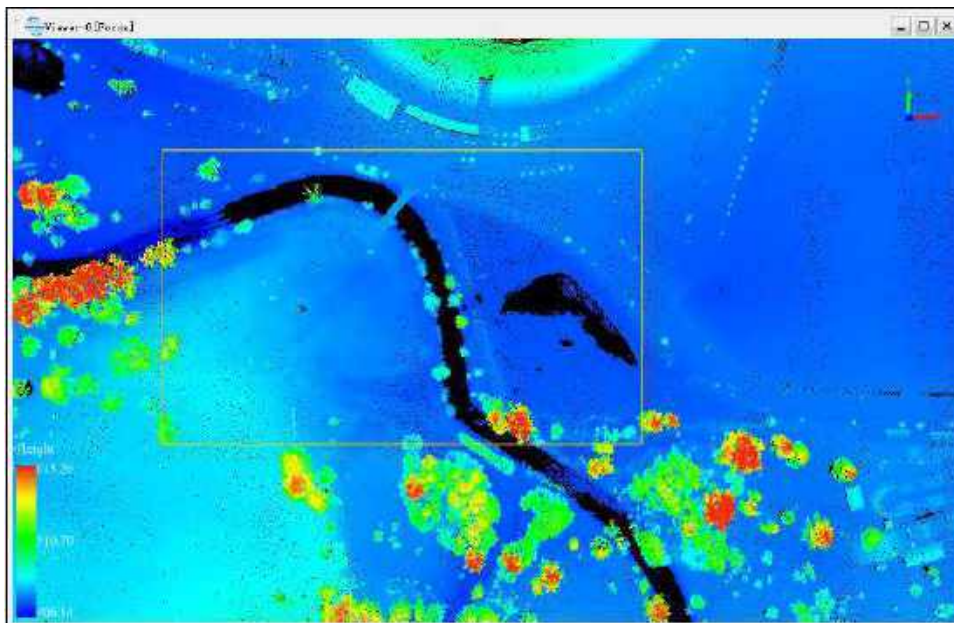
# Rectangle Selection



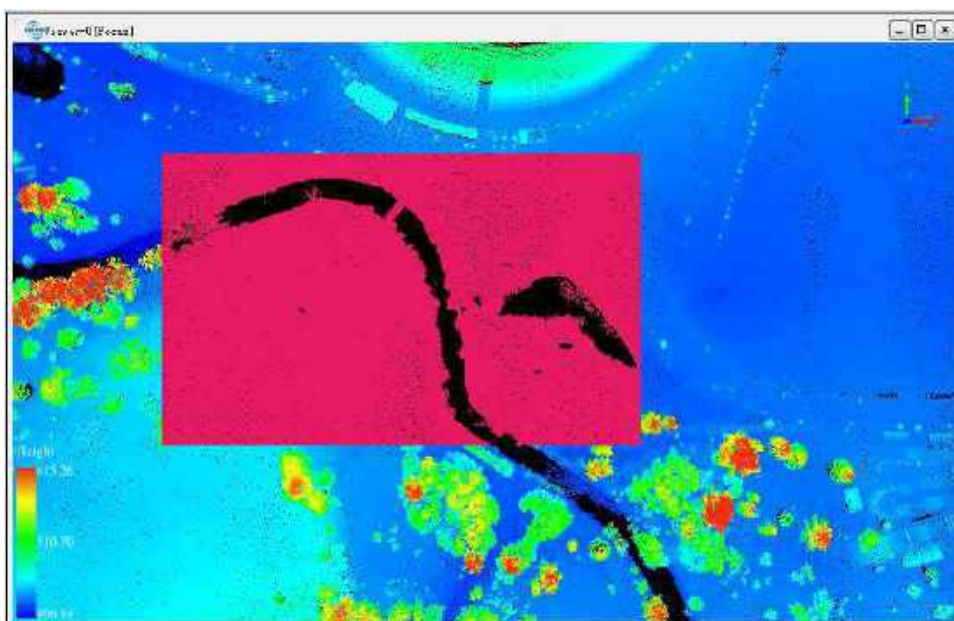
**Brief:** Select point cloud data in rectangle area.

## Steps

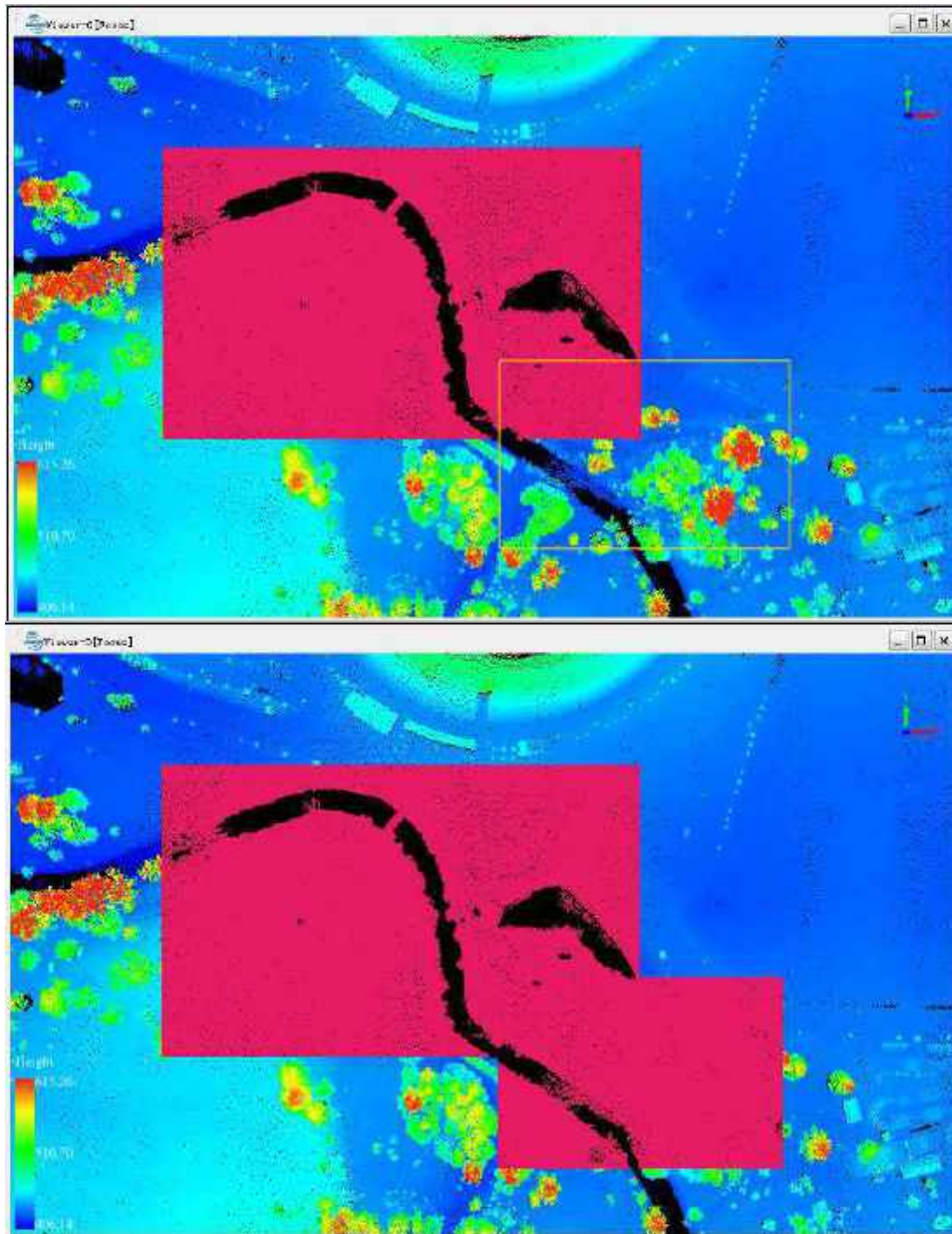
1. Click the *Rectangle Selection* button to activate this function (Click again if you want to deactivate it).
2. Add the first vertex by left click. Then move cursor to adjust rectangle size.



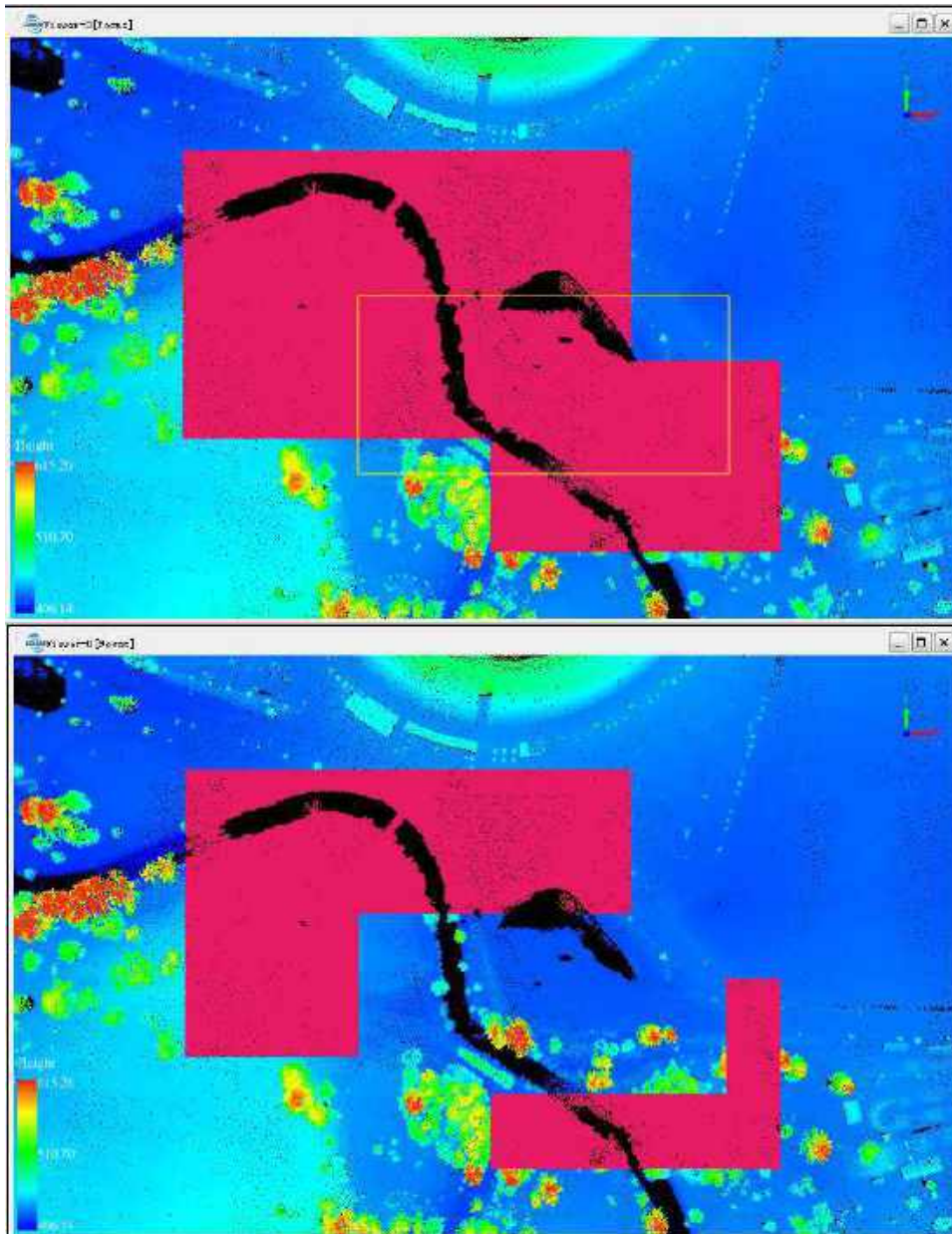
3. **(Optional)** Delete the first vertex by right click, if it's unwanted.
4. Left double click to add the second diagonal vertex. The selected points in the rectangle area are highlighted.



5. **(Optional)** Combine multiple selections.



6. **(Optional)** Remove unwanted points from the selected, if **Subtract Selection** is active. The removed points are no more highlighted.



**Shortcut Key:** Press **Ctrl + Z** to undo the selection operation.

**Note:** This function is only applicable to point cloud data.

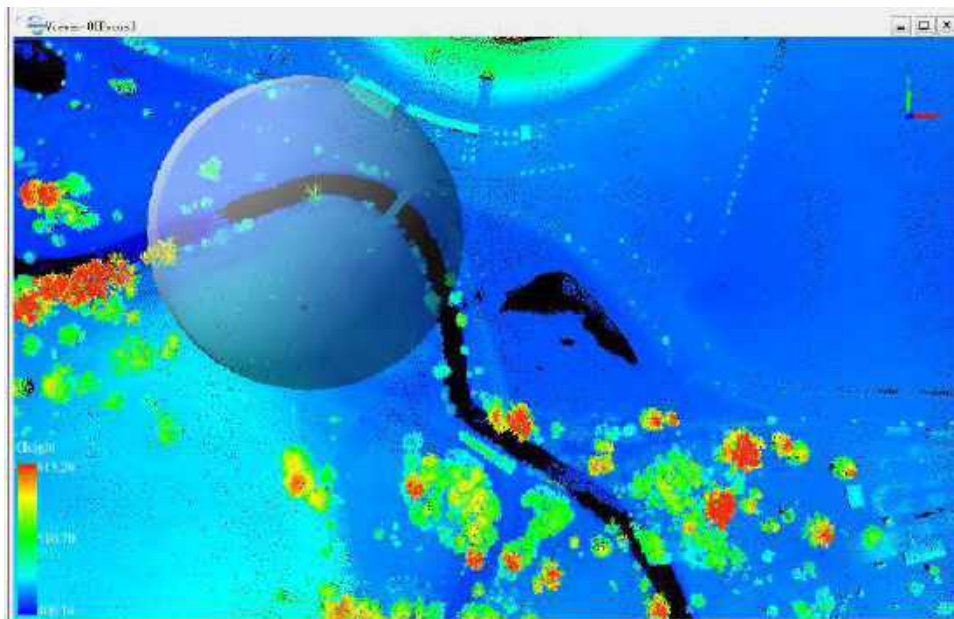
# Sphere Selection



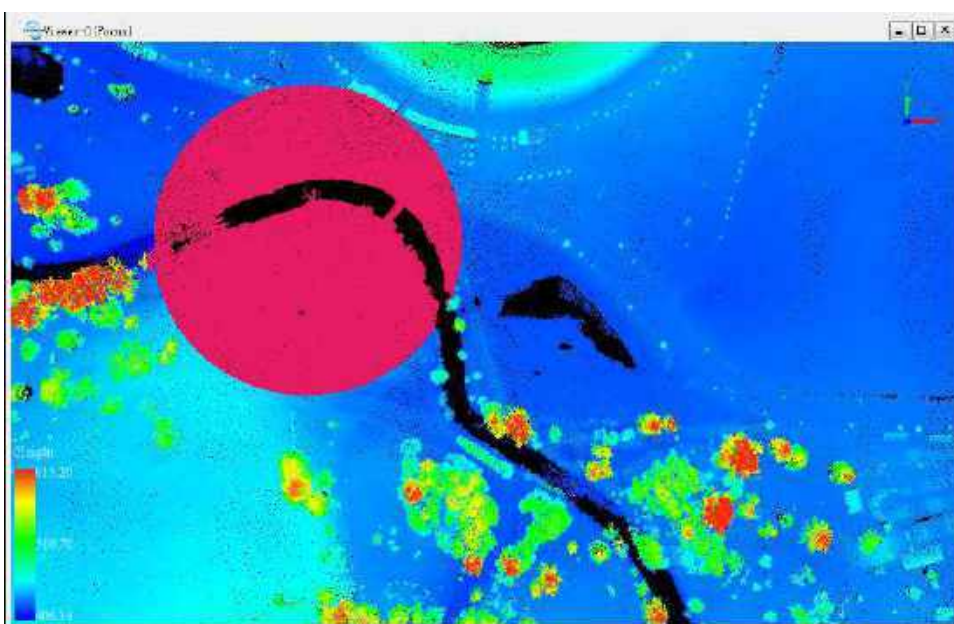
**Brief:** Select point cloud data in sphere.

## Steps

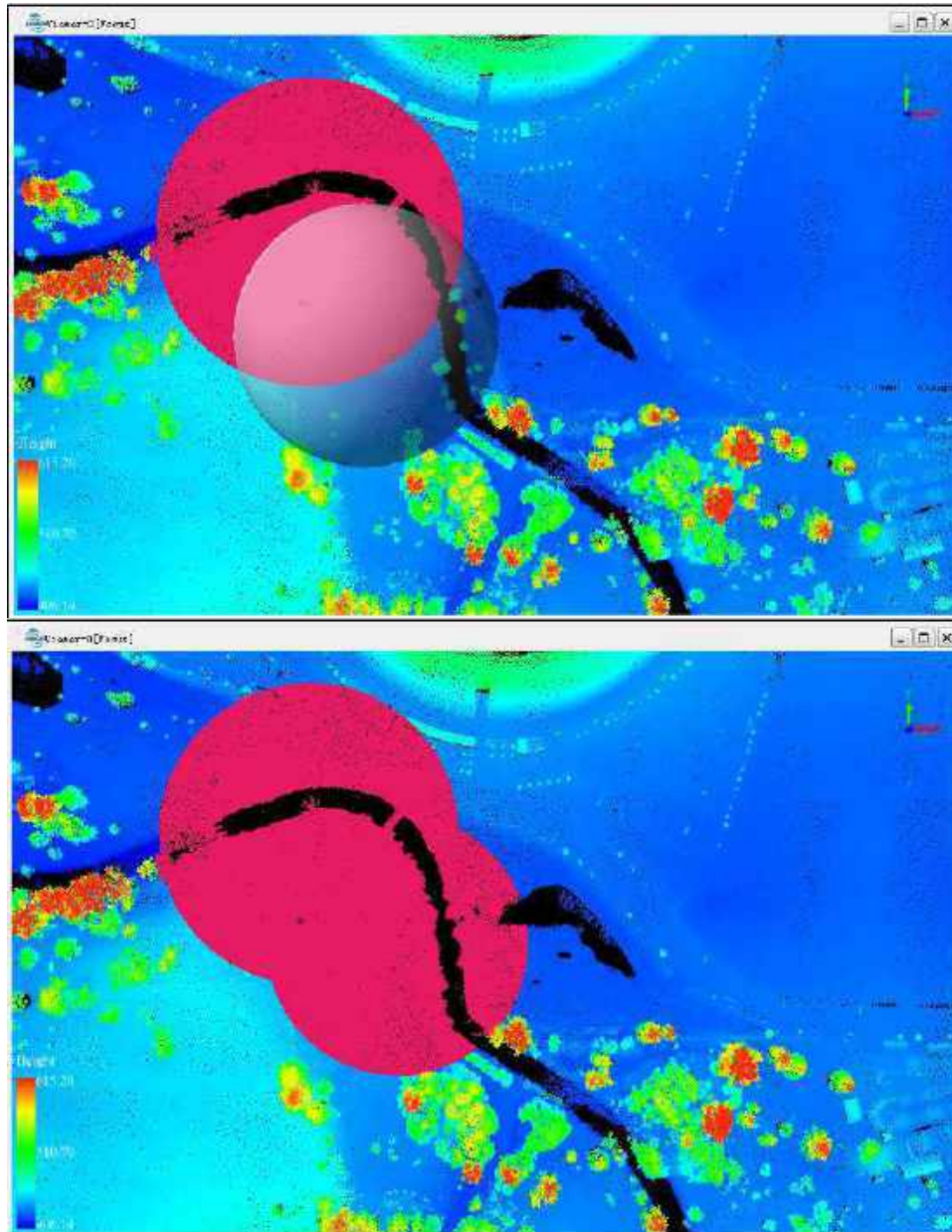
1. Click the *Sphere Selection* button to activate this function (Click again if you want to deactivate it).
2. Add the center point of sphere by left click. Then move cursor to adjust radius.



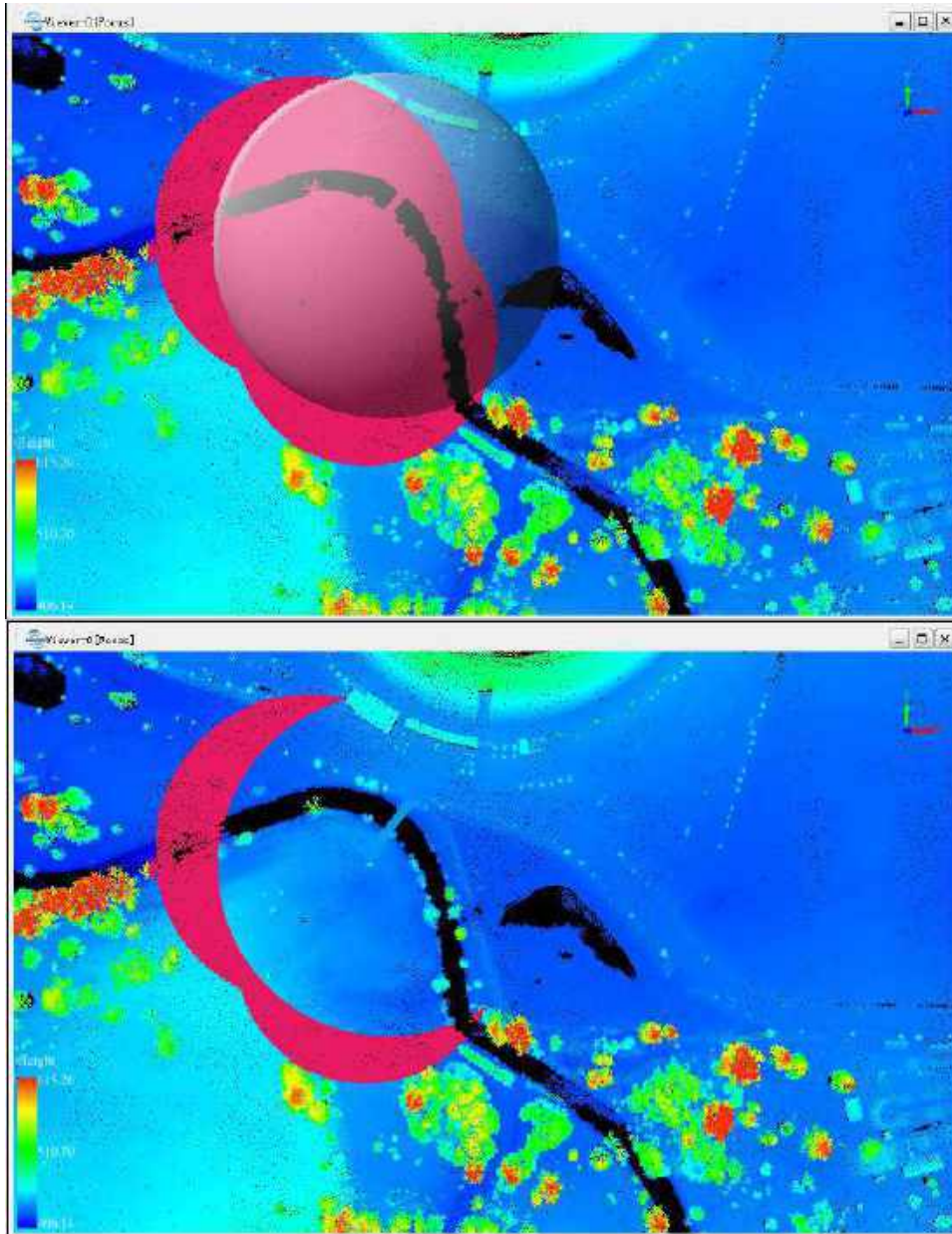
3. **(Optional)** Delete the center point by right click, if it's unwanted.
4. Left double click to confirm the radius. The selected points in the sphere are highlighted.



5. **(Optional)** Combine multiple selections.



6. **(Optional)** Remove unwanted points from the selected, if **Subtract Selection** is active. The removed points are no more highlighted.



**Shortcut Key:** Press **Ctrl + Z** to undo the selection operation.

**Note:** This function is only applicable to point cloud data.



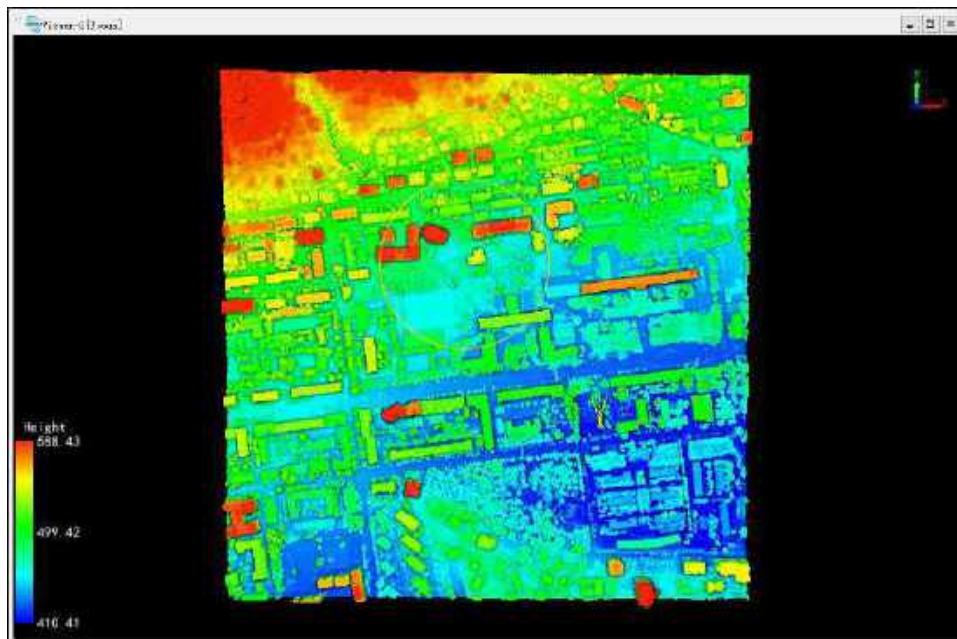
# Circle Selection



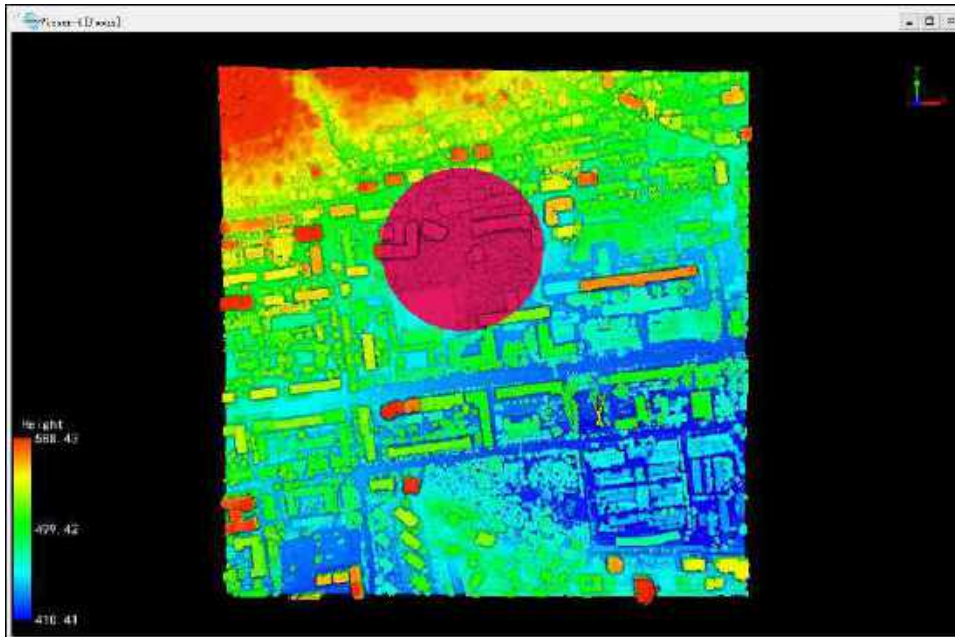
**Brief:** Select point cloud data in circle area.

## Steps

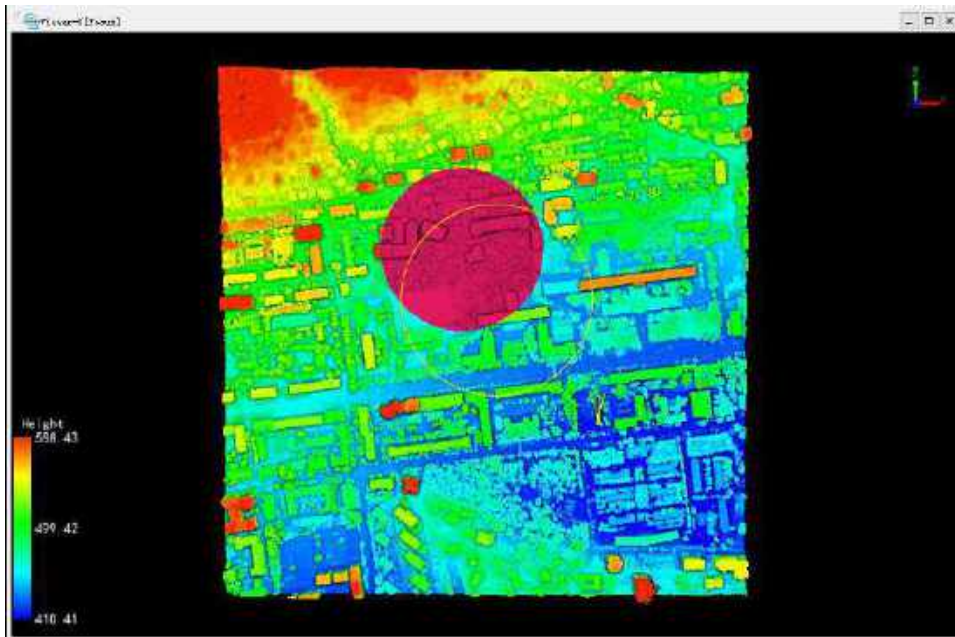
1. Click the *Circle Selection* button to activate this function (Click again if you want to deactivate it).
2. Click to select the center of the circle. Move the mouse, and the position of mouse will be recognized as the boundary of the circle. And the circle will be preview in the window.

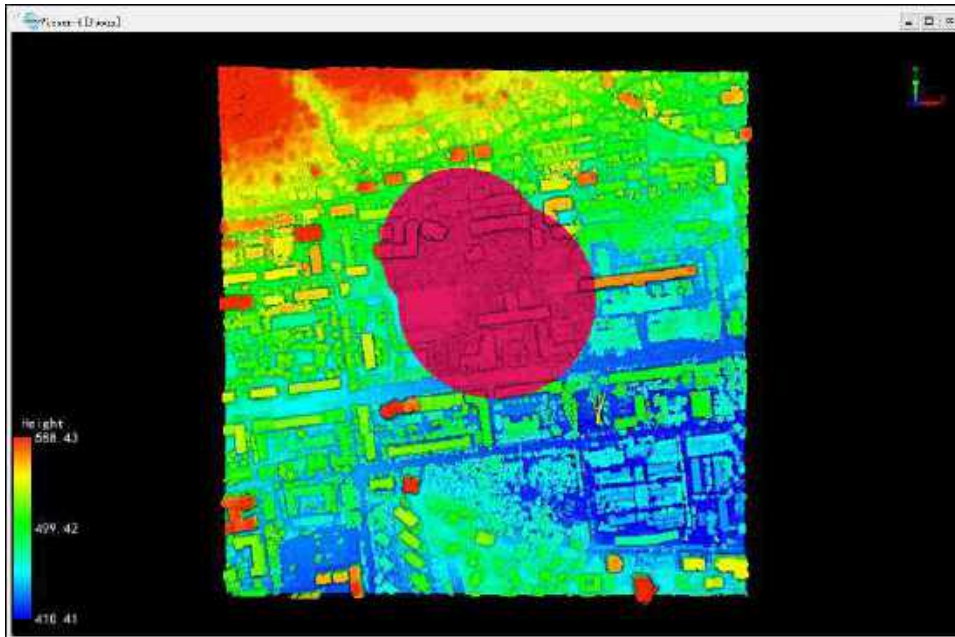


3. Right-click to cancel the circle center selection. Go back to the second step and choose the circle center again.
4. Double-click to define the boundary of the circle. The selected points in the circle area are highlighted.

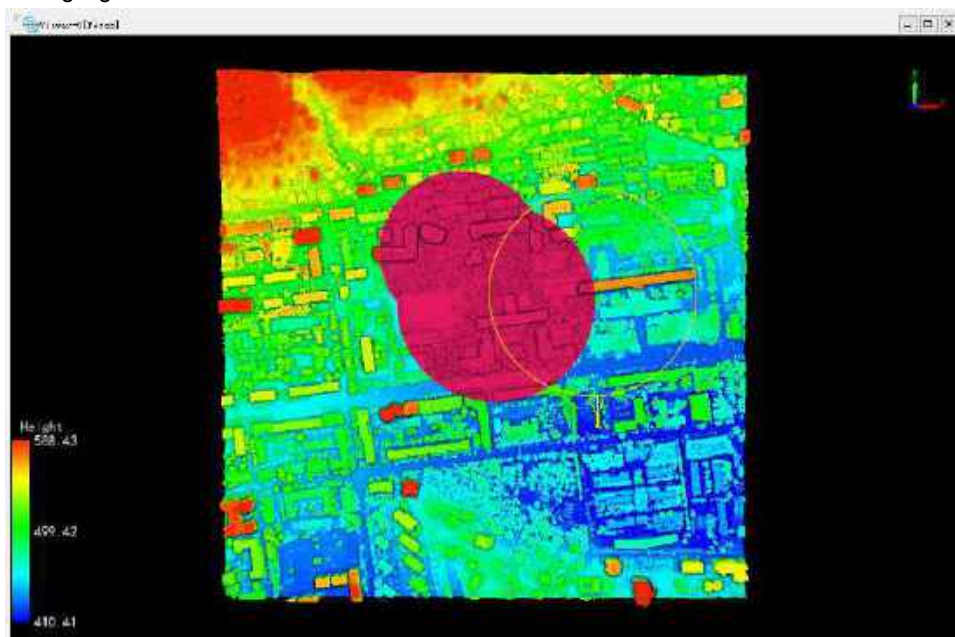


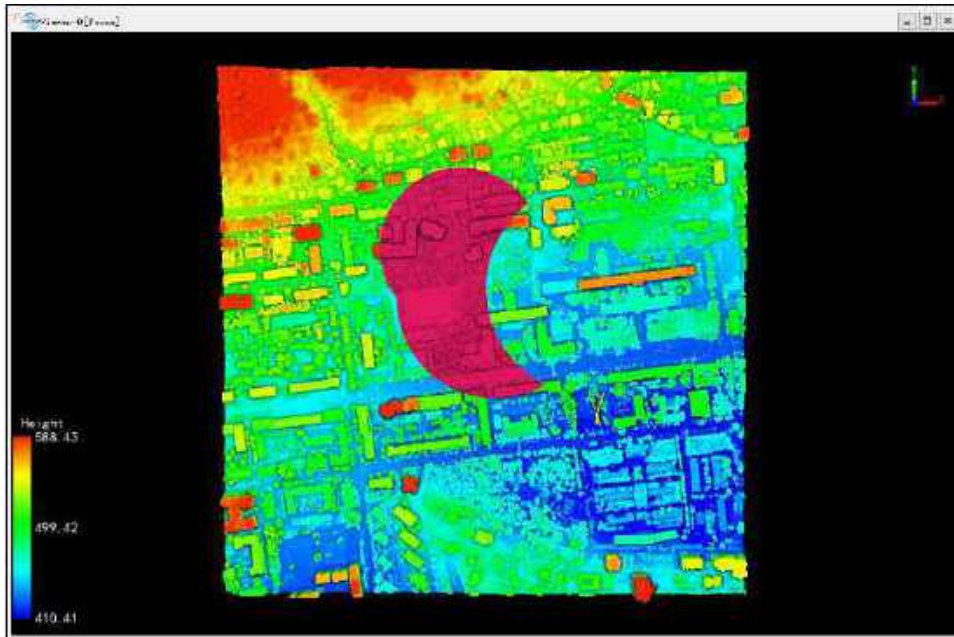
5. (Optional) Combine multiple selections.





6. **(Optional)** Remove unwanted points from the selected, if **Subtract Selection** is active. The removed points are no more highlighted.





**Shortcut Key:** Press **Ctrl + Z** to undo the selection operation.

Note: This function is only applicable to point cloud data.

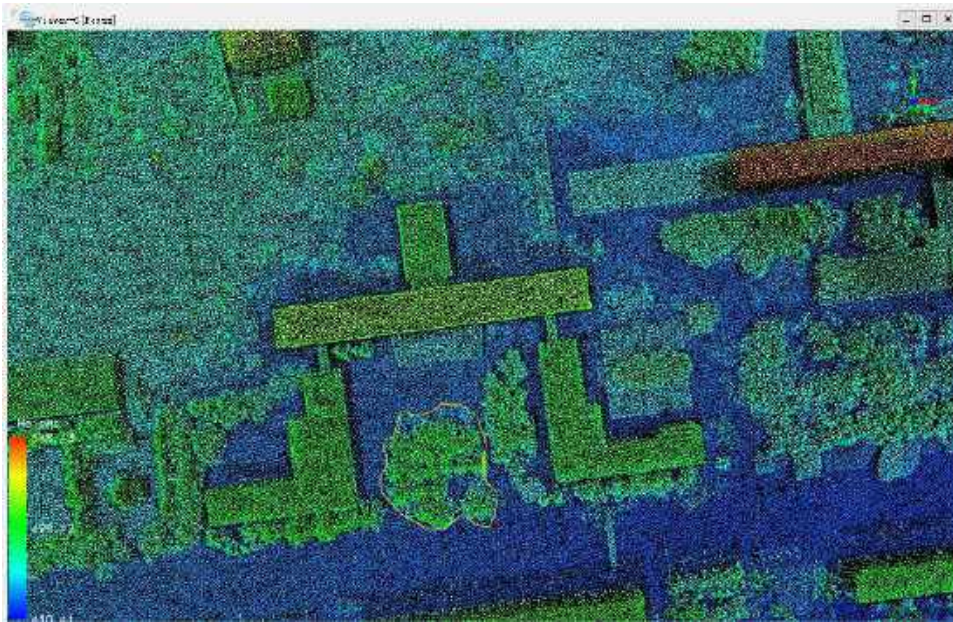
# Lasso Selection



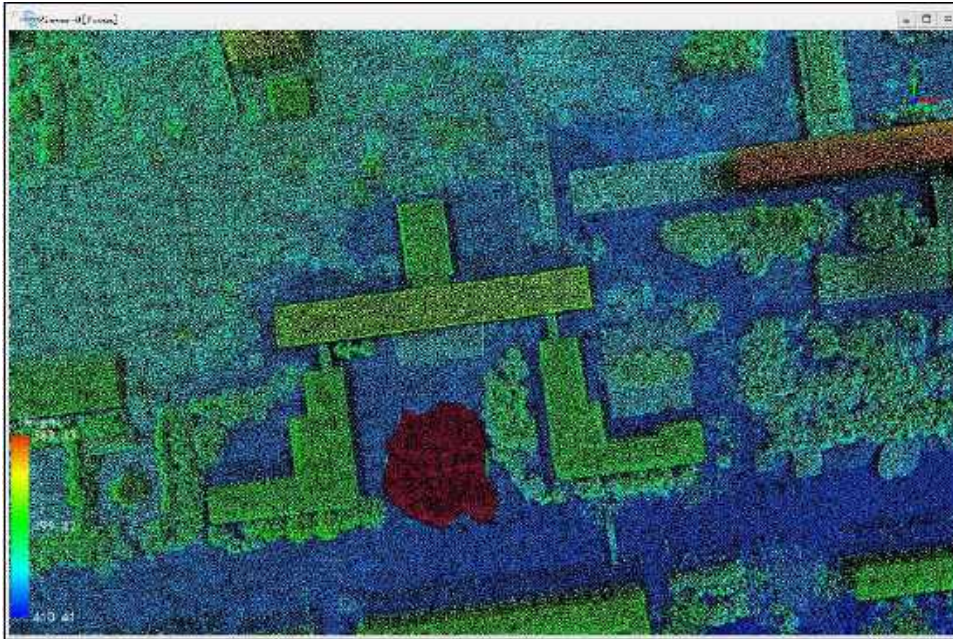
**Brief:** Select point cloud data with a Lasso tool.

## Steps

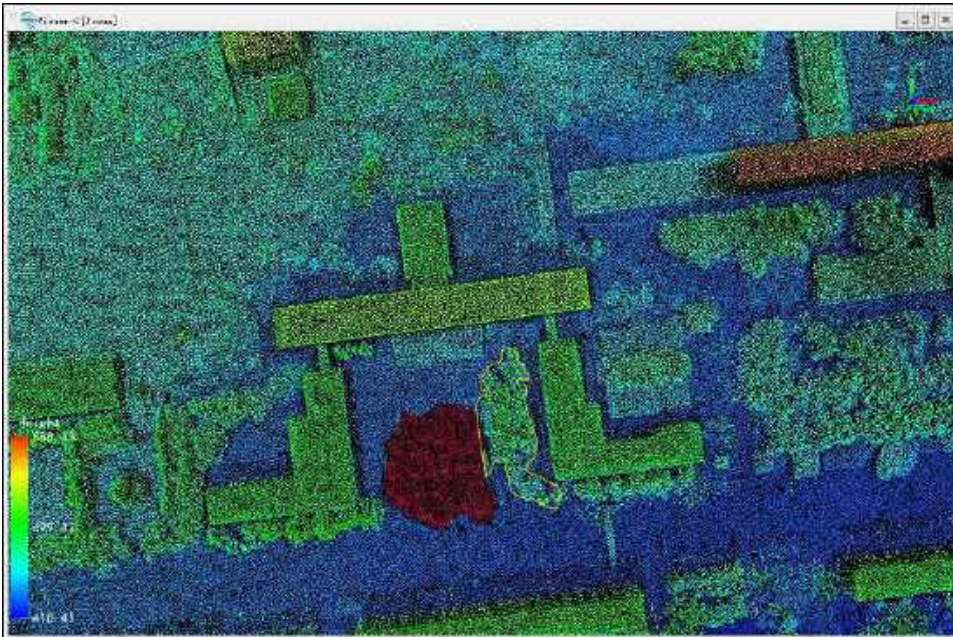
1. Click the *Lasso Selection* button to activate this function (Click again if you want to deactivate it).
2. Click to select the starting point of the ROI. Move the mouse, and the mouse position will be used as a lasso boundary to form a closed area. And the area will be preview in the window.

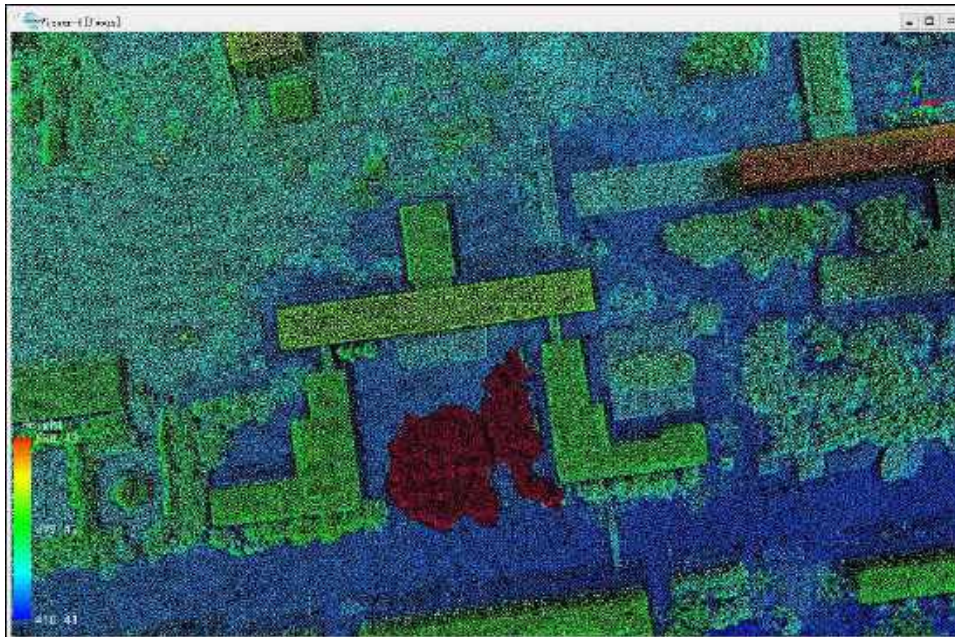


3. Right-click to cancel the selection. Go back to the second step and choose the starting point of ROI again.
4. Double-click to end the boundary selection. The selected points in that area are highlighted.

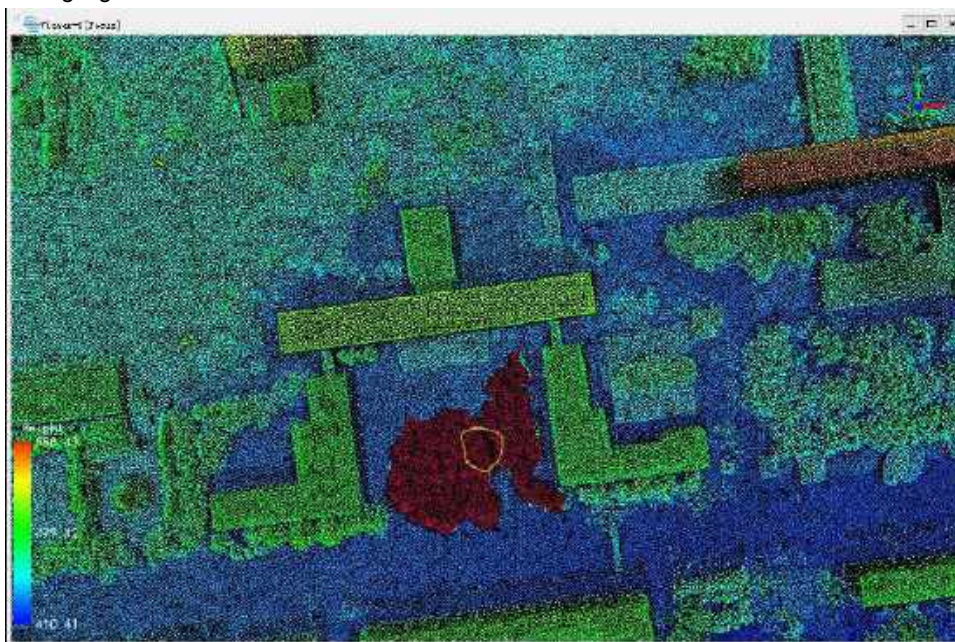


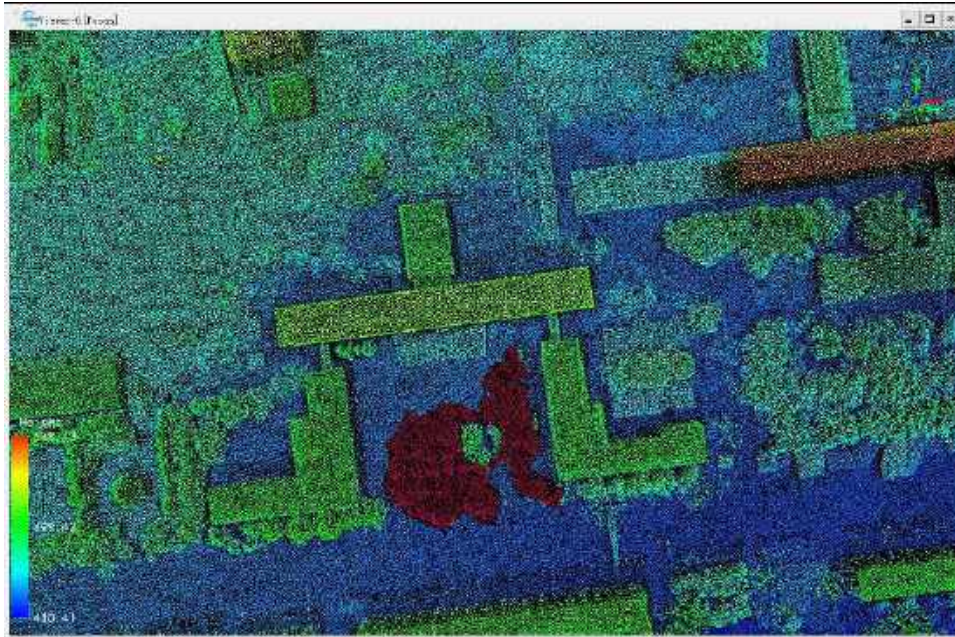
5. (Optional) Combine multiple selections.





6. **(Optional)** Remove unwanted points from the selected, if [Subtract Selection](#) is active. The removed points are no more highlighted.






**Shortcut Key:** Press **Ctrl + Z** to undo the selection operation.

Note: This function is only applicable to point cloud data.

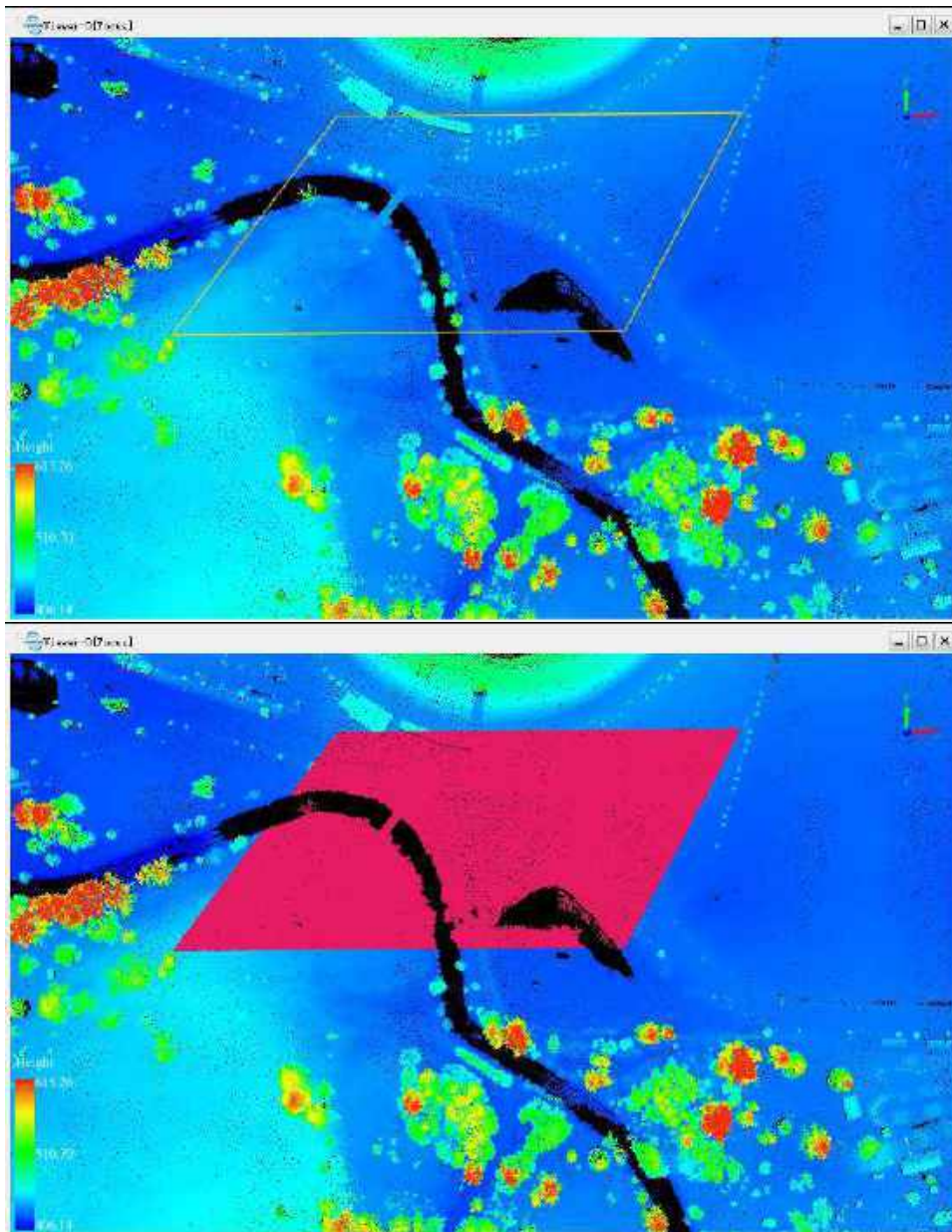


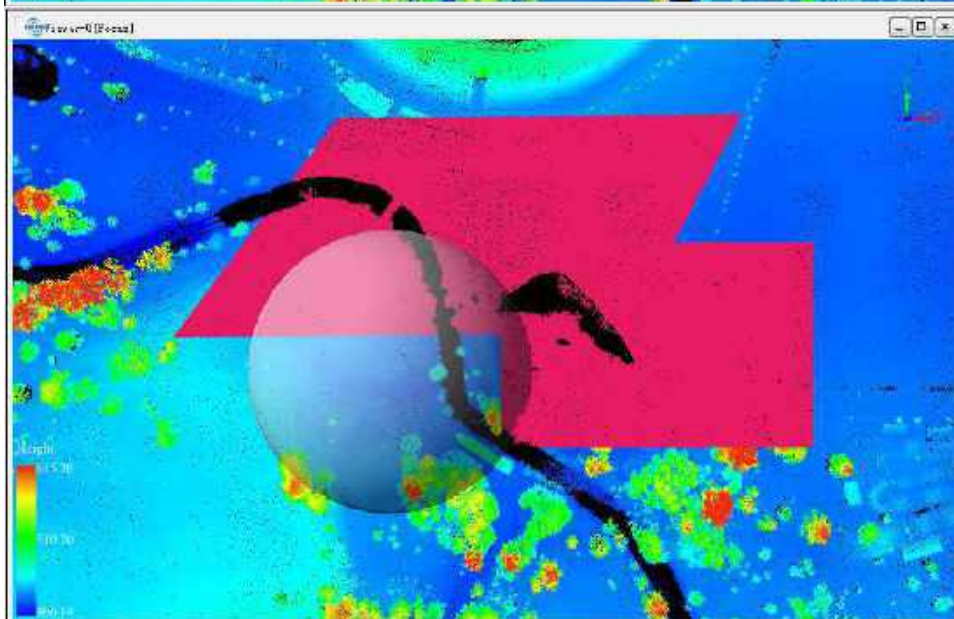
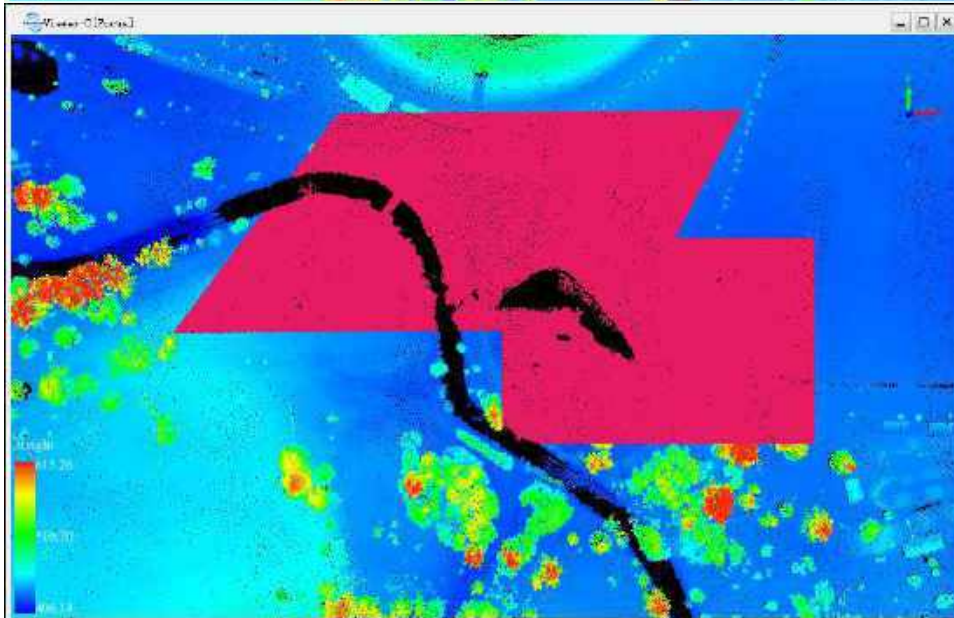
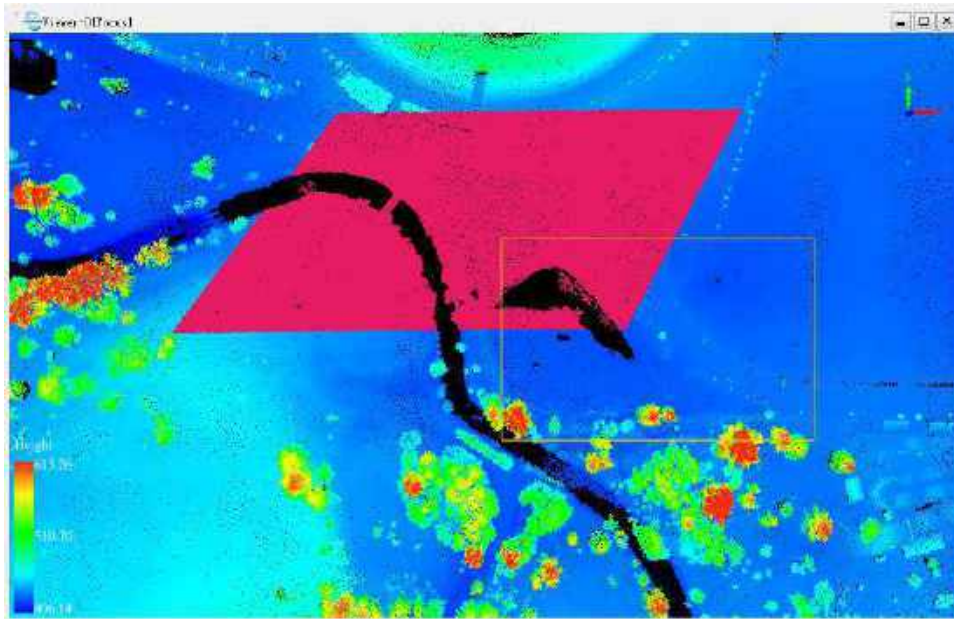
## Subtract Selection

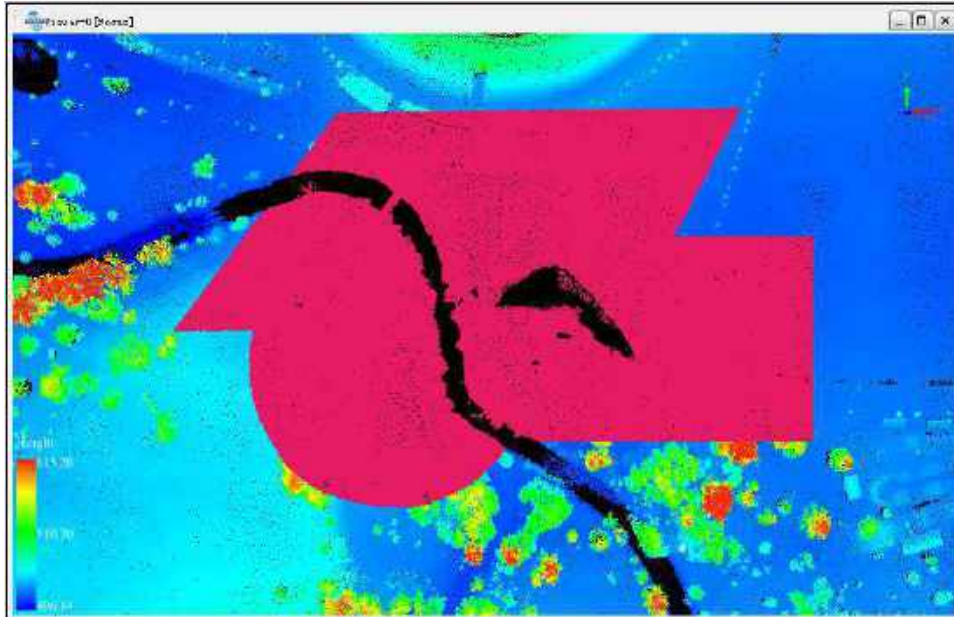
 **Brief:** This function is effective on one of the geometric selection tools ([Polygon Selection](#), [Rectangle Selection](#) or [Sphere Selection](#)). If *Subtract Selection* is **inactive**, more points can be added to the currently selected. If **active**, unwanted points can be removed from the currently selected.

### Steps

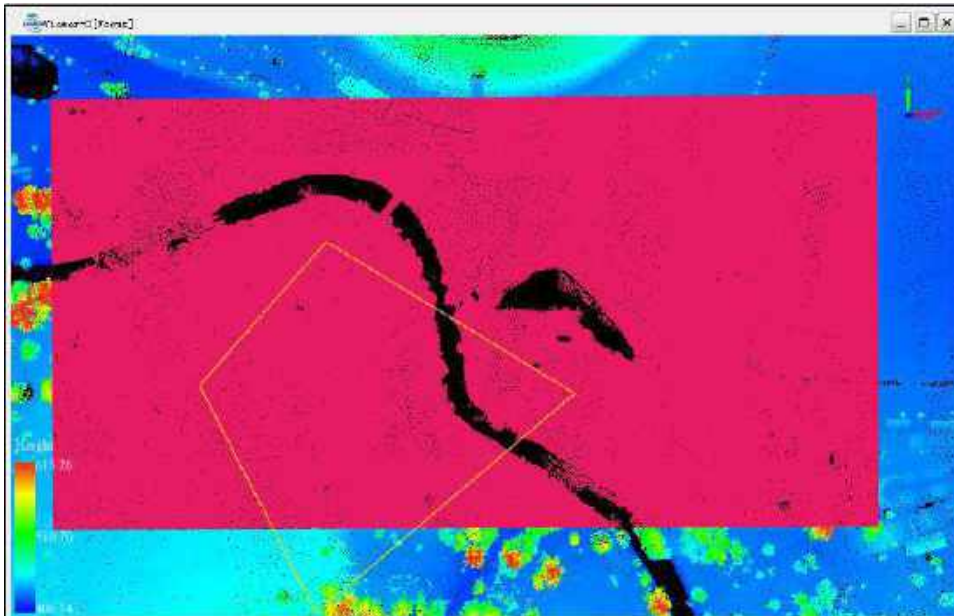
1. Activate one of the geometric selection tools ([Polygon Selection](#), [Rectangle Selection](#) or [Sphere Selection](#)) before using *Subtract Selection*. Then please activate/deactivate *Subtract Selection* by left click.
2. **(Optional)** If *Subtract Selection* is **inactive**, multiple selections can be combined.

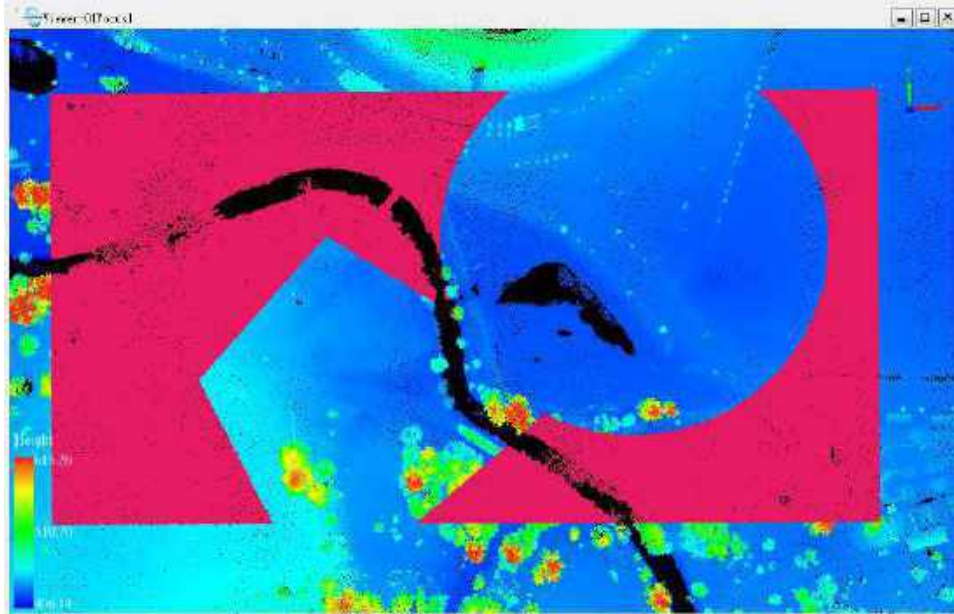
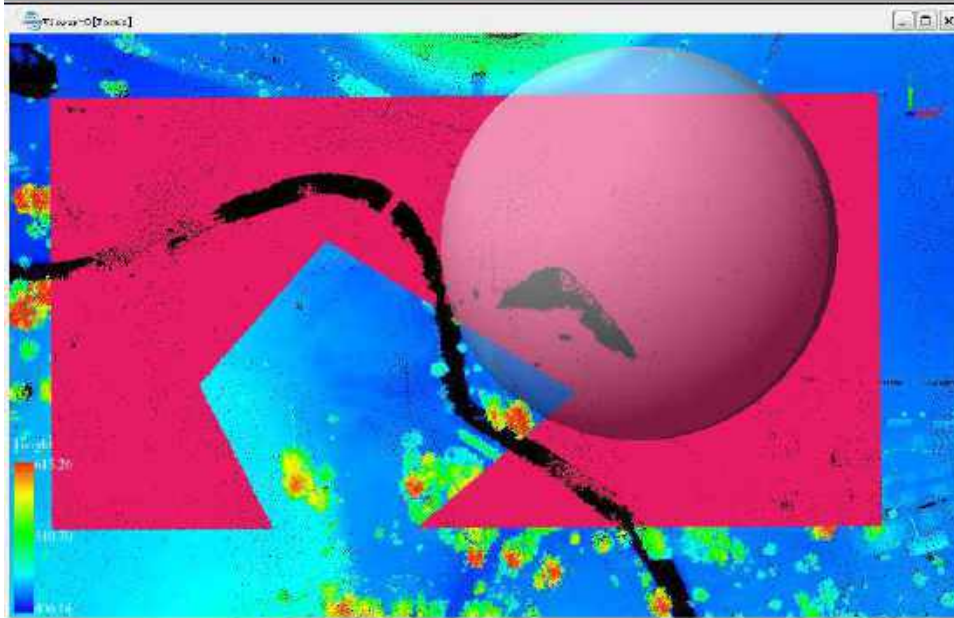
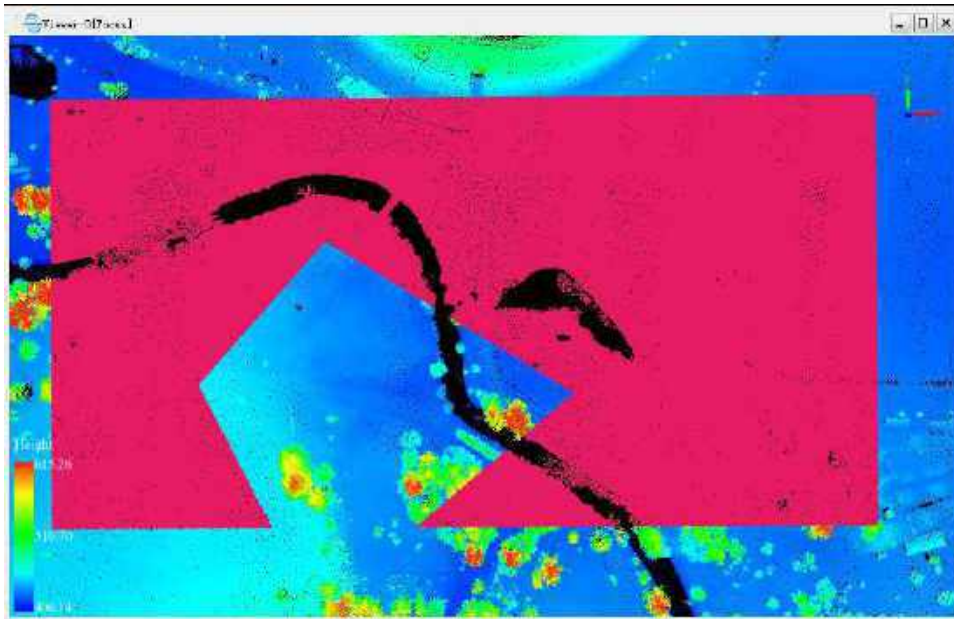






3. (Optional) If *Subtract Selection* is active, unwanted points can be removed from the currently selected.





**Shortcut Key:** Press **Ctrl + Z** to undo the last operation.

Note: This function is only applicable to point cloud data.

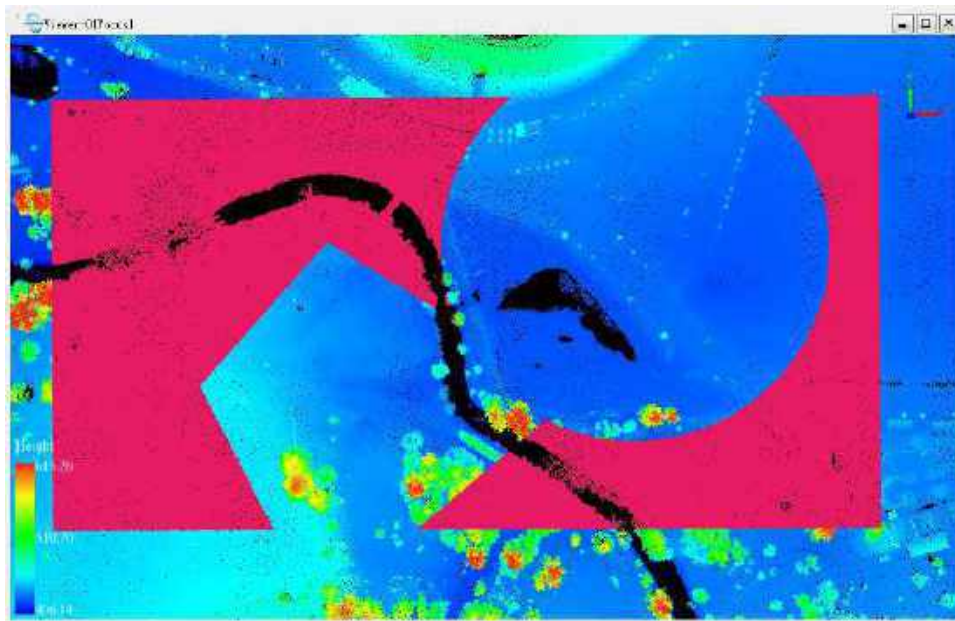
## In Cut



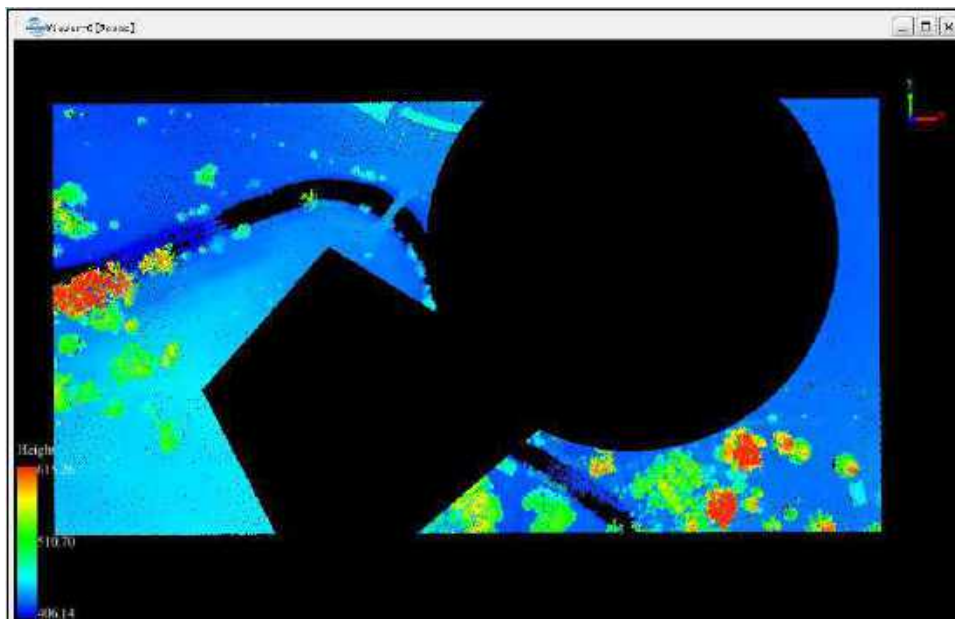
**Brief:** Cut point clouds after selection. The selected points are kept while the unselected are hidden.

## Steps

1. Select points using [Polygon Selection](#), [Rectangle Selection](#) or [Sphere Selection](#). The selected points are highlighted.



2. Click the *In Cut* Button. The result is shown in the following figure.



3. **(Optional)** You can repeat this function several times to get the result you need.

**Shortcut Key:** Press **Ctrl + Z** to undo the cut operation. The corresponding selection is also cancelled.

Note: This function is only applicable to point cloud data.

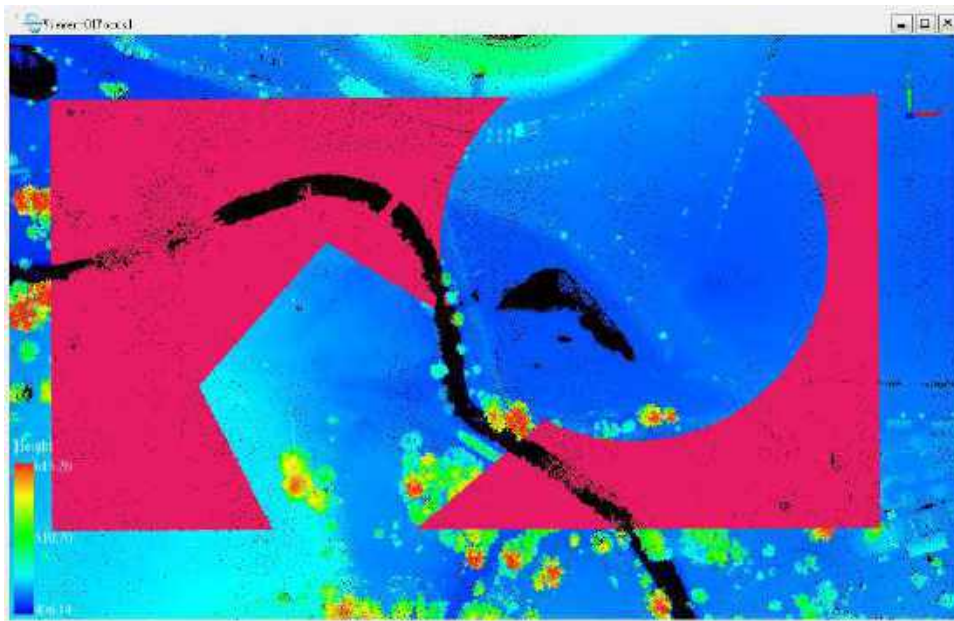
# Out Cut



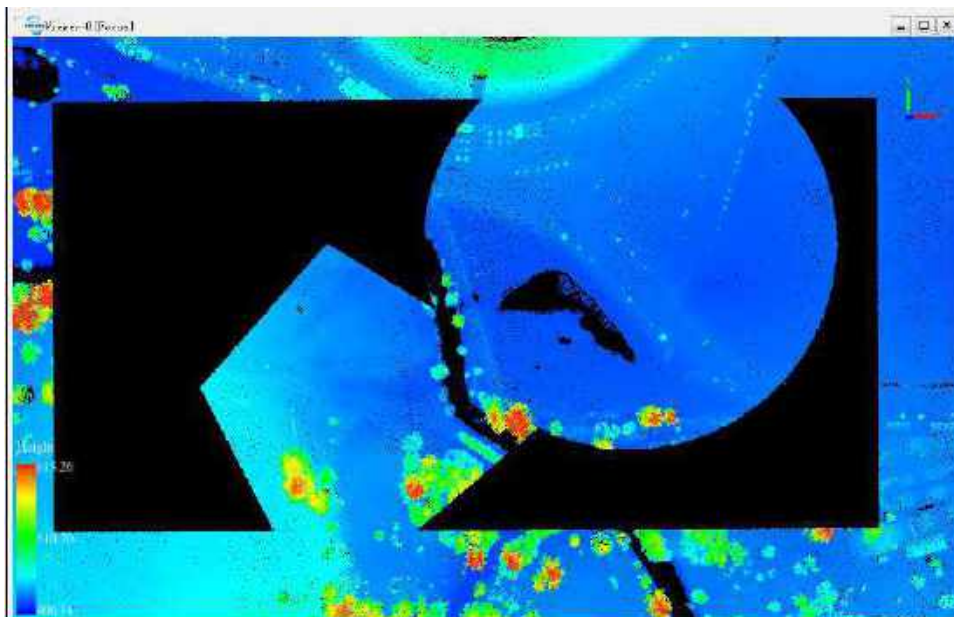
**Brief:** Cut point clouds after selection. The selected points are hidden while the unselected are kept.

## Steps

1. Select points using [Polygon Selection](#), [Rectangle Selection](#) or [Sphere Selection](#). The selected points are highlighted.



2. Click the *Out Cut* Button. The result is shown in the following figure.



3. **(Optional)** You can repeat this function several times to get the result you need.

**Shortcut Key:** Press **Ctrl + Z** to undo the cut operation. The corresponding selection is also cancelled.



Note: This function is only applicable to point cloud data.

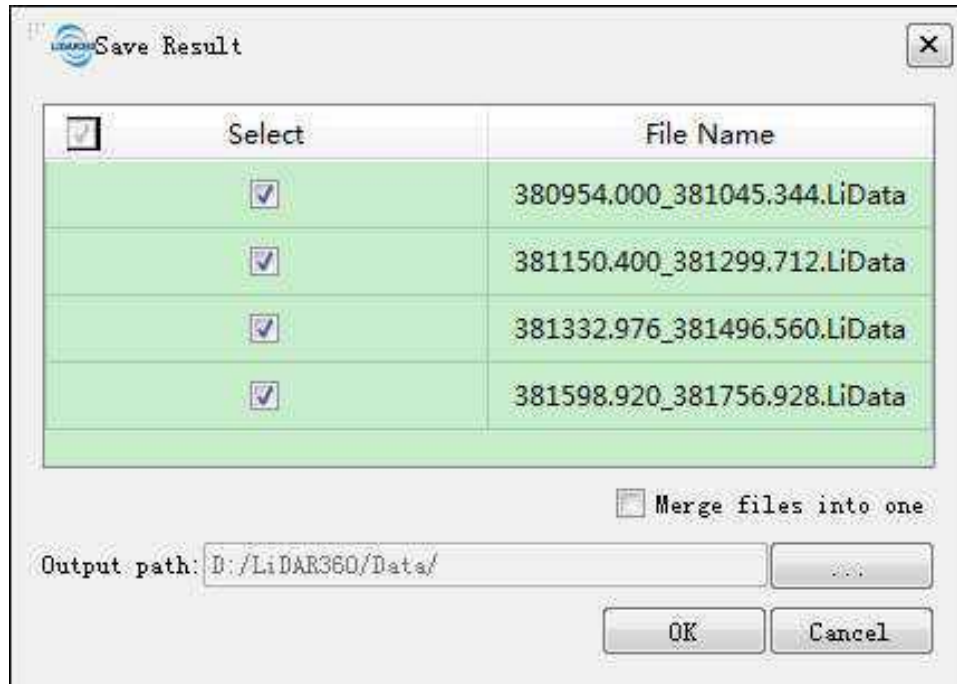
## Save Cut Results



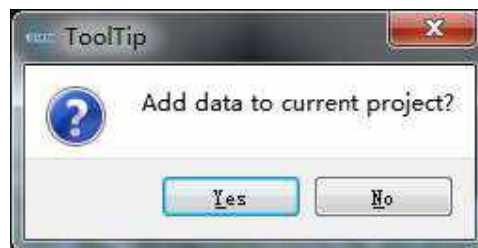
**Brief:** Save results after cut operation as new point cloud files.

### Steps

1. Click this button after successful cut operations([In Cut](#), [Out Cut](#)). An interface is shown as follows.



2. Select source point cloud files, from which new files are generated.
3. **(Optional)** Check/Uncheck the option "Merge files into one" according to demand.
4. Specify the output path. New file names are created based on the source file names and system time. An example of new file name is "SourceFileName\_CutResult\_SystemTime.LiData".
5. After data saving, a dialog will ask if you want to add the new files to current project.



6. Click Yes or No according to demand.

# Cancel Selection



**Brief:** Cancel all the selections and cut operations.

## Steps

1. Click this button after selections([Polygon Selection](#), [Rectangle Selection](#), [Sphere Selection](#)) or cut operations([In Cut](#), [Out Cut](#)). All the selections and cut operations will be cancelled.

Note: This function is only applicable to point cloud data.

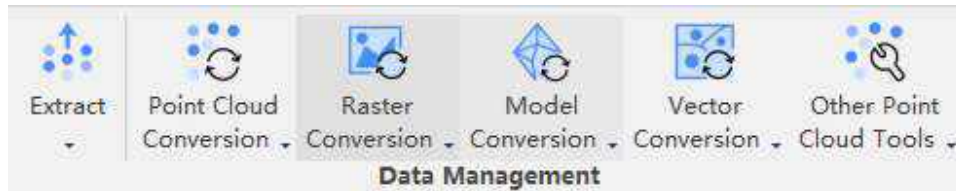
# Clip

The clipping tools include **Clip by Circle**, **Clip by Rectangle** and **Clip by Polygon**.

- [Clip by Circle](#)
- [Clip by Rectangle](#)
- [Clip by Polygon](#)

# Data Management

Data management includes Point Cloud Conversion, Raster Conversion, Model Conversion, Vector Conversion and Other Point Cloud Tools:



## Extract

Extract includes: [Extract by Class](#), [Extract by Elevation](#), [Extract by Intensity](#), [Extract by Return](#), [Extract by Time](#).

## Point Cloud Conversion

Point Cloud Conversion includes: [Convert to ASCII](#), [Convert to TIFF](#), [Convert to Shape](#), [Convert to DXF](#), [Convert to Las](#), [Convert to E57](#), [Conversion LiData to LiData](#), [Convert to LiData](#).

## Raster Conversion

Raster Conversion includes: [Convert TIFF to ddLiModel](#), [Convert to Texture LiModel](#), [Convert TIFF to LiData](#), [Convert TIFF to ASCII](#).

## Model Conversion

Model Conversion includes: [Convert LiModel to TIFF](#), [Convert LiTIN to DXF](#).

## Vector Conversion

Vector Conversion includes: [Convert Shape to KML](#), [Convert KML to Shape](#).

## Other Point Cloud Tools

Other Point Cloud Tools includes: [Remove Outliers](#), [Subsampling](#), [Tile by Range](#), [Tile by Point Number](#), [Merge](#), [Extract Point Cloud Boundary](#), [Extract Color from Image](#), [Noise Filter](#), [Denormalization](#), [PCV](#), [Subdivision](#), [Transform GPS Time](#), [Define Projection](#), [Reproject](#), [Smooth Points](#).

# Preprocessing

Preprocessing page includes: [Calibration](#), [Adjustment](#), [Classify Groud Points](#), [Control Point Report](#), [Quality Inspection](#), [Projections](#) and [Transformations](#).



## Quality Inspection

Quality Inspection includes: [Trajectory Quality Analysis](#), [Elevation Difference Inspection](#), [Strip Overlap Analysis](#), [Density Quality Analysis](#).

## Projections

Projections includes: [Define Projection](#), [Reprojection](#), [Transformation](#), [Elevation Adjustment](#), [Four-Parameters Solution](#), [Seven-Parameters Solution](#), [Convert ASCII to BLH](#).

## Transformation

Transformation includes: [ICP Regression](#), [Manual Registration](#), [Manual Rotation and Translation](#).

# Classification

Classification module is shown as figure below:



Classification Tools includes: [Classify by Attribute](#), [Classify Ground Points](#), [Extract Median Ground Points](#), [Classify Air Points](#), [Classify by Height Above Ground](#), [Classify Model Key Points](#).

Other Classify includes: [Classify Low Points](#), [Classify Below Surface Points](#), [Classify Isolated Points](#),

[Classify Noise Points](#), [Classify by Min Elevation Difference](#), [Classify Closeby Points](#),

[Classify Buildings](#), [Classify by Trained ML Model](#);

Classification Editor includes: [Classify Ground by Selected](#), [Classify by Interactive Editing](#).

# Terrain

Terrain module has two modes: Basic and Advanced. Click the button at upper-right corner to select mode. Basic mode provides one-click processing for terrain products generation.

## Advanced

Tools of Advanced mode is shown as figure below:



Preprocessing includes: [Subsampling](#), [Remove Outliers](#), [Classify Ground Points](#), [Smooth Points](#)

Based on Point Cloud includes: [DEM](#), [DSM](#), [Point Cloud to Contour](#), [Generate TIN](#).

Based on Raster includes: [Hillshade](#), [Slope](#), [Roughness](#), [Aspect](#).

Based on TIN includes: [TIN to Contour](#), [TIN to DEM](#).

Terrain Conversion includes: [Convert TIFF to LiModel](#), [Convert to Texture LiModel](#), [Convert LiModel to TIFF](#)

Analysis Tools includes: [Deviation Analysis](#), [Change Detection](#)

Model Editor includes: [LiModel Editor](#), [LiTin Editor](#).

Other tools include: [Section Analysis](#), [Vector Editor](#), [Query Dip and Strike](#), [Profile Editor](#).

## Basic

Tools of Basic mode is shown as figure below:



Click "Run" and a dialog will pop up. Click "File Selected" and select the point cloud file to be processed. Then, go to Parameter tab and set parameters for functions. After that, click "OK" and batch process the data, results will be saved to the specified Output Path.





Other tools include: [Section Analysis](#), [Vector Editor](#), [Query Dip and Strike](#), [Profile Editor](#).

# ALSForest

ALS Forest module provides two modes: Basic and Advanced.

## Advanced

Advanced mode is showed as figure below:



ALS Preprocessing includes: [Subsampling](#), [Remove Outliers](#), [Classify Ground Points](#), [DEM](#), [DSM](#), [CHM](#), [Normalize](#) ( [Normalize by DEM](#), [Normalize by Ground Points](#) ).

ALS Tools includes: [Calculate Forest Metrics by Grid](#),

Regression Analysis: [Linear Regression](#), [Support Vector Machine](#), [Fast Artificial Neural Network](#), [Random Forest Network](#), [Run Existing Regression Model](#).

Segmentation: [Point Cloud Segmentation](#), [Generate Seeds by Layer Stacking](#), [Generate Seeds by CHM](#), [Point Cloud Segmentation from Seed Points](#), [CHM Segmentation](#).

ALS Tools ( [Clear Tree ID](#), [Extract by Tree ID](#), [Statistic Individual Tree Attributes](#) ), [Denormalization](#).

ALS Forest Editor includes: [ALS Seed Point Editor](#), [Profile Editor](#).

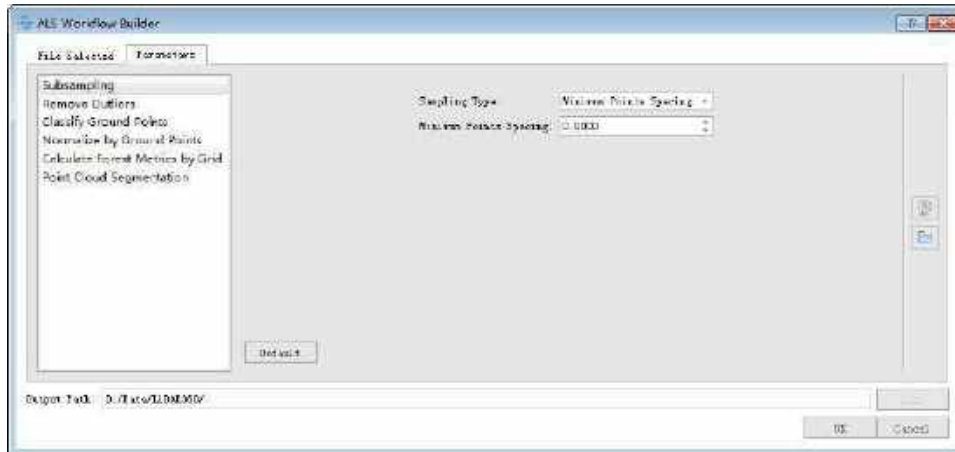
## Basic

Basic mode is showed as figure below:



Click "Run", and a window pop up as figure below. Click "File selected" tab and select the point cloud file. Then, click "Parameter" tab and set parameters for each function. Click "OK" and the functions will batch process. Result data will be saved under "Output Path".





ALS Tools includes: Clear Tree ID, Extract by TreeID, Statistic Individual Tree Attributes, Denormalization.

ALS Forest Editor includes: ALS Seed Point Editor, Profile Editor.

# TLSForest

TLS Forest module has two modes: Basic and Advanced. Click the button at upper-right corner to select mode. Basic mode provides one-click processing for TLS analysis.

## Advanced

Tools of Advanced mode is shown as figure below:



Preprocessing includes: [Subsampling](#), [Removal Outliers](#), [Classify Ground Points](#), [Normalization](#)( [Normalization](#), [Normalization by GroundClass](#)).

TLS Tools include: [Leaf Area Index](#),

Segmentation: [Point Cloud Segmentation](#), [Point Cloud Segmentation from Seed Points](#).

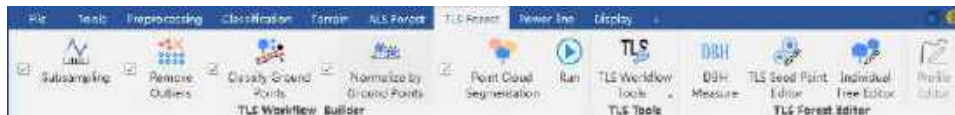
Tree Attribute: [Statistic Individual Tree Attributes](#), [Increase Individual Tree Attributes](#).

Other ALS Tools: [Clear Tree ID](#), [Extract by Tree ID](#), [Denormalization](#).

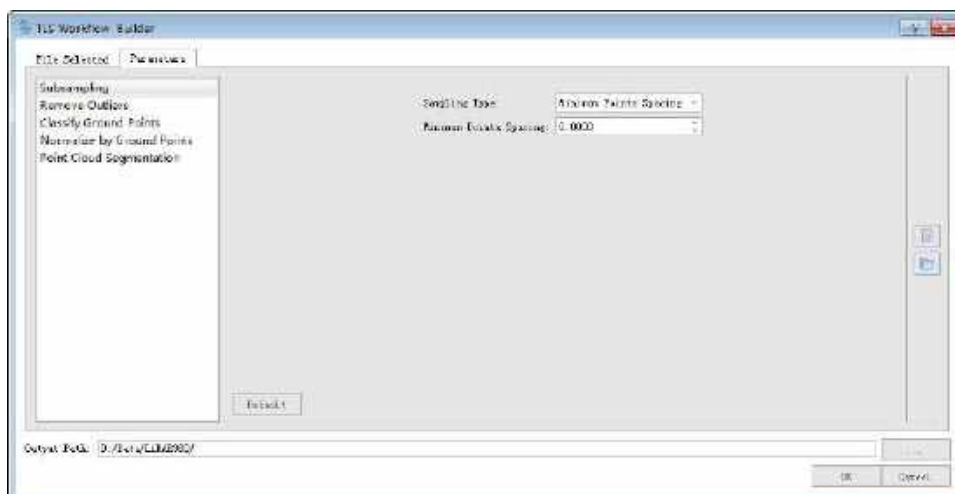
TLS Forest Editor includes: [DBH Measure](#), [TLS Seed Point Editor](#), [Individual Tree Editor](#), [Profile Editor](#).

## Basic

Tools of Basic mode is shown as figure below:



Click "Run" and a dialog will pop up. Click "File Selected" and select the point cloud file to be processed. Then, go to Parameter tab and set parameters for functions. After that, click "OK" and batch process the data, results will be saved to the specified Output Path.



TLS Tools include: [Clear Tree ID](#), [Extract by TreeID](#).

TLS Forest Editor includes: [DBH Measure](#), [TLS Seed Point Editor](#), [Individual Tree Editor](#), [Profile Editor](#).

# Power Line

Powerline page is shown as figure below:



Tools include: [Setting](#), [Mark Tower](#), [Classify](#), [Danger Points](#), [Clear User Data](#), [Profile Editor](#).

# Display

This chapter explains usages of different modules and functions on Display page, includes Display and Record, Viewers and Operations.

- [Display and Record](#)
- [Viewers](#)
- [Operations](#)

# Display

Display menu of the software.

- [Render to Image](#)
- [Capture Image](#)
- [Camera Roam](#)
- [Save to Video](#)
- [Background Grid](#)
- [Camera Setting](#)
- [Display Solid Model](#)
- [Display Wireframe](#)
- [Display Vertices](#)

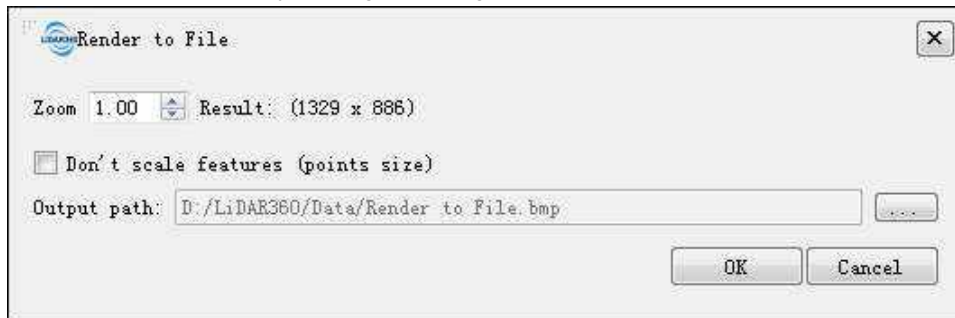


# Render to File

**Brief:** This tool can render the current 3D view as an image file (\*.bmp format is supported). The user can also change the zoom factor, which affects the final image size.

## Steps

1. Adjust the 3D view to get the scene you want to render.
2. Click *Display > Render to File* and you will get a dialog shown as follows.



3. **(Optional)** Set the zoom factor.
4. **(Optional)** Check or uncheck the "Don't scale features (points size)" according to demand.
5. **(Optional)** Set the Output path.
6. Click "OK" to get the rendered image.

## Settings

- **Input:** Current active window.
- **Zoom:** Default value is 1 (original image size). You can increase the rendered image size by setting larger zoom factor (the resulting size is displayed on the right).
- **Don't scale features (points size):** By default unchecked. If it is checked, the rendered point size won't be increased, even if the zoom factor is greater than 1.
- **Output path:** The file path to which the image will be saved.

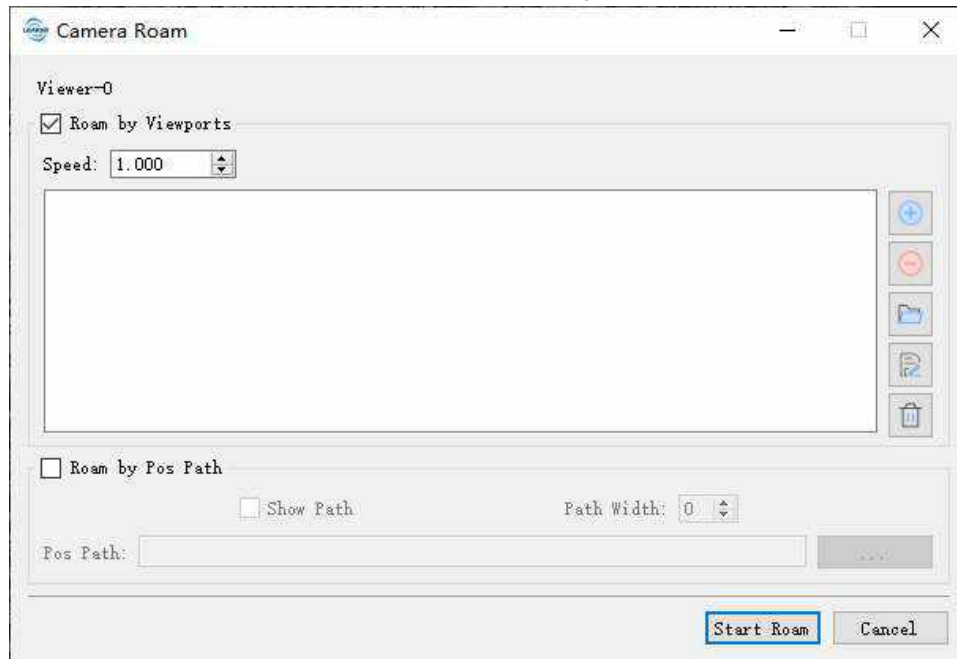
Note: When EDL is on, Render to File tool supports adding the EDL effects to the results.






# Camera Roam

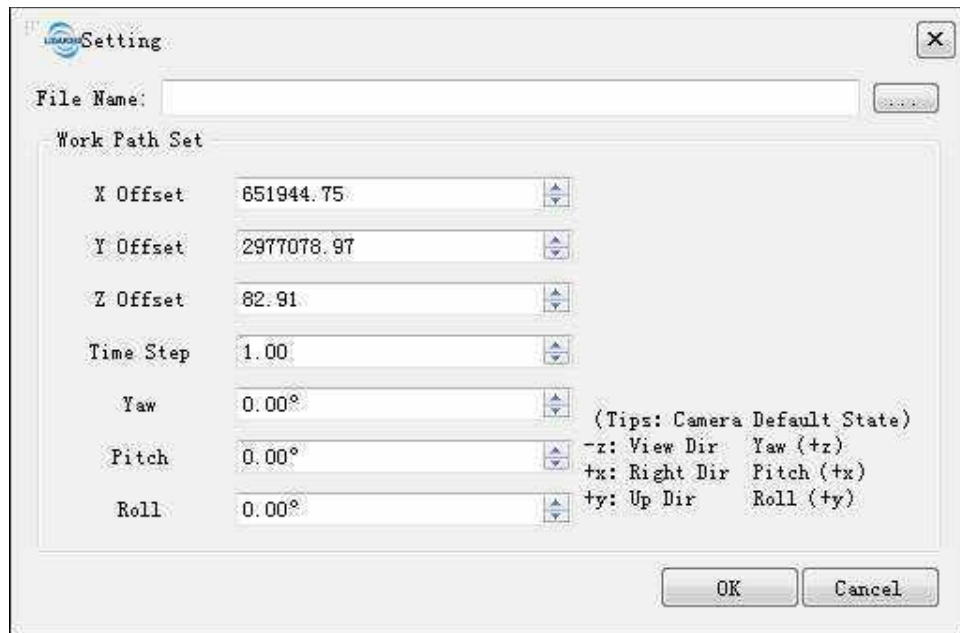
**Brief:** This function can control the scene camera to navigate through a roam path. Two types of roam path are supported including roam path based on viewport and roam path based on POS file. This function can also generate immersive video if cooperated with [Save to Video](#) function.

## Steps

1. Click *Display > Camera Roam* to open Camera Roam Set dialog as bellow.



2. Choose mode as desired(Select "Roam by Viewports" or "Roam by Pos Path").
  - o 2.1 Roam by Viewports
    - Speed: Set the speed of Roam by Viewports.
    -  Add Key Frame: Click this button to add current viewport as a key frame.
    -  Delete Key Frame: Click this button to delete a key frame.
    -  Load Key Frames from File: Click this button to import a key frame file.
    -  Save Key Frames to File: Click this button to export all key frames to file.
    -  Delete All Key Frames: Click this button to delete all key frames.
    - Select a key frame in the list: Scene camera will be adjusted to this key frame.
  - o 2.2 Roam by POS File
    - Check or uncheck "Show Path" as desired.
    - Set the Path Width, which will be activated when "Show Path" is checked.
    - Click Settings to open the following dialog.



- Select a POS File: txt format only, each line of the file represents a key frame. The first three columns are assumed to be XYZ. Column delimiters include comma, semicolon and space.
  - Set parameters: Including offset, time step, yaw, pitch, roll.
  - Click "Ok" to end the roam path setting.
3. Click "Start Roam" to begin roam through current path. After finished, the following dialog will show.



- 4. Click "Ok" to end the camera roam.
- 5. Click "Cancel" to exit this function.

## Settings

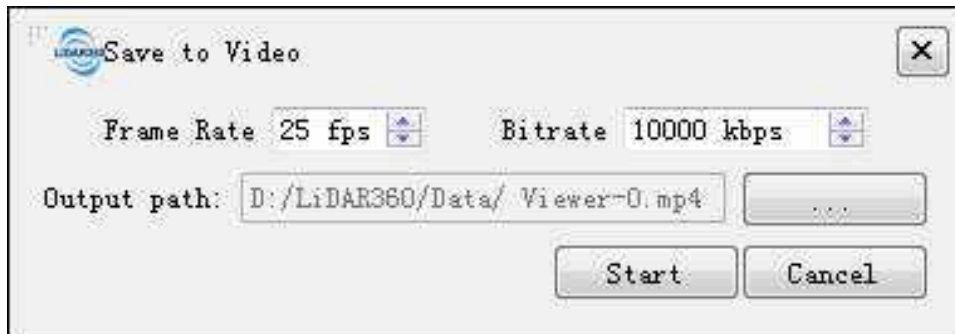
- **Input:** Viewport of current window or POS file.
- **Settings of Roam by POS file:**
  - **Path Width:** Non negative integer only, defines the line width of POS trajectory in the viewer.
  - **X/Y/Z Offset:** The default value will be the offset of scene coordinate to the world coordinate system, as POS data is in the world coordinate system.
  - **Time Step:** real number larger than 0.01 only, defines the time interval between key frames. The smaller this value is, the slower the roaming speed is.
  - **Yaw/Pitch/Roll:** Local roam coordinate is defined that the origin is key frame center, the Y axis points to the motion direction, the X axis is defined based on Y axis and world coordinate Z axis using right-hand coordinate system principle, the Z axis is defined based on X axis and Y axis using right-hand coordinate system principle. By default, the roam camera is towards -Z, the right of camera is +X, the upper of camera is +Y. Yaw means spinning around +Z. Pitch means spinning around +X. Roll means spinning around +Y.

# Save To Video

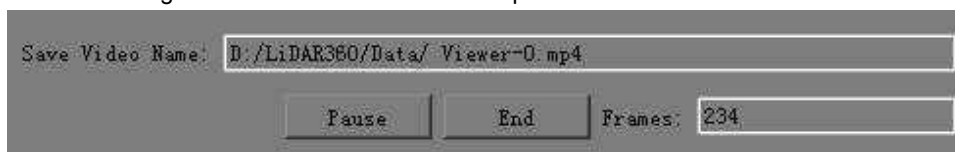
**Brief:** Record the current window screen and save as video (mp4 and avi formats are supported).

## Steps

1. Click *Display > Save To Video*, an interface will show as follows.



2. Set the frame rate (default is 25 frame per second).
3. Set the bit rate.
4. Set the output path of video.
5. Click "OK". The following interface is shown on the left-top corner of the current window.



6. Change the camera to get the scene which you want to record.
7. Click "Stop" or "Start"
  - o Stop: Pause the current record.
  - o Start: Recover the record.
8. Click "End" to finish recording. The video will be saved.

## Settings

- **Input:** the scene of the window for record.
- **Frame Rate:** The frequency (rate) at which consecutive images called frames appear on a display.
- **Bit Rate:** Refers to the number of bits used per unit of playback time to represent the video. Lower bit rate may result in lower resolution of the picture and has mosaics on the picture, and however the higher bit rate may lead a larger video file.
- **Output path:** The file path to which the video will be saved.

Note: When EDL is on, Save to Video tool supports adding the EDL effects to the results.

# Background Grid

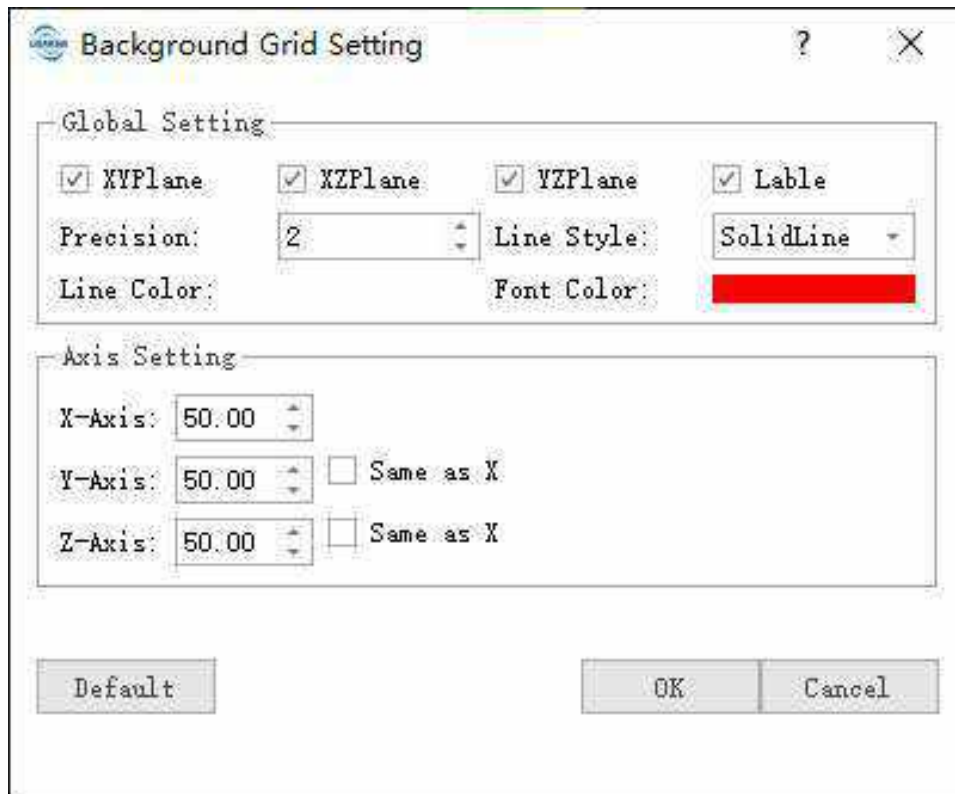
**Summary:** This tool can be used to display the 3D grid in the viewer window. When there are multiple point clouds in the window and the distance between the point clouds is short, the grid range of all point clouds is calculated and displayed. When there are multiple grids in the window and the point cloud is far away, the grid range of the point cloud within the display range of the current window is calculated and displayed.

## Steps

1. Click *Display > Background Grid* to use this function.

## Settings

**Function Summary:** Set the display or hide of grid plane (XY plane, XZ plane, YZ plane), display or hide of grid label, grid line style, line color, and font color.



- **Grid Plane (XY Plane, XZ Plane, YZ Plane) Display or Hide (Default is Display All):** Check or uncheck the checkboxes in front of the three planes to change the display status of the corresponding planes.
- **Grid Label Display or Hide (Default is Display):** Check or uncheck the checkbox before the text to change the display status of the label.
- **Line Style (Default is Solid Line):** Click  , select the grid line style (solid or dot).
- **Line Color (Default is White):** Click  , a color selection interface will pop up, and one of these colors can be selected as the color of the line.
- **Font Color (Default is Red):** Click  , a color selection interface will pop up, and one of these colors can be selected as the color of the font.
- **Axis Setting (X-Axis, Y-Axis, Z-Axis) Cell Size (Default is "50"):** Click  , the value will increase or decrease in steps of 10. User can also directly enter a specific value. The cell size of the Y-axis and Z-axis

can be set to be the same as the X-axis, so that there is no need to set the cell size of the Y-axis and Z-axis separately.

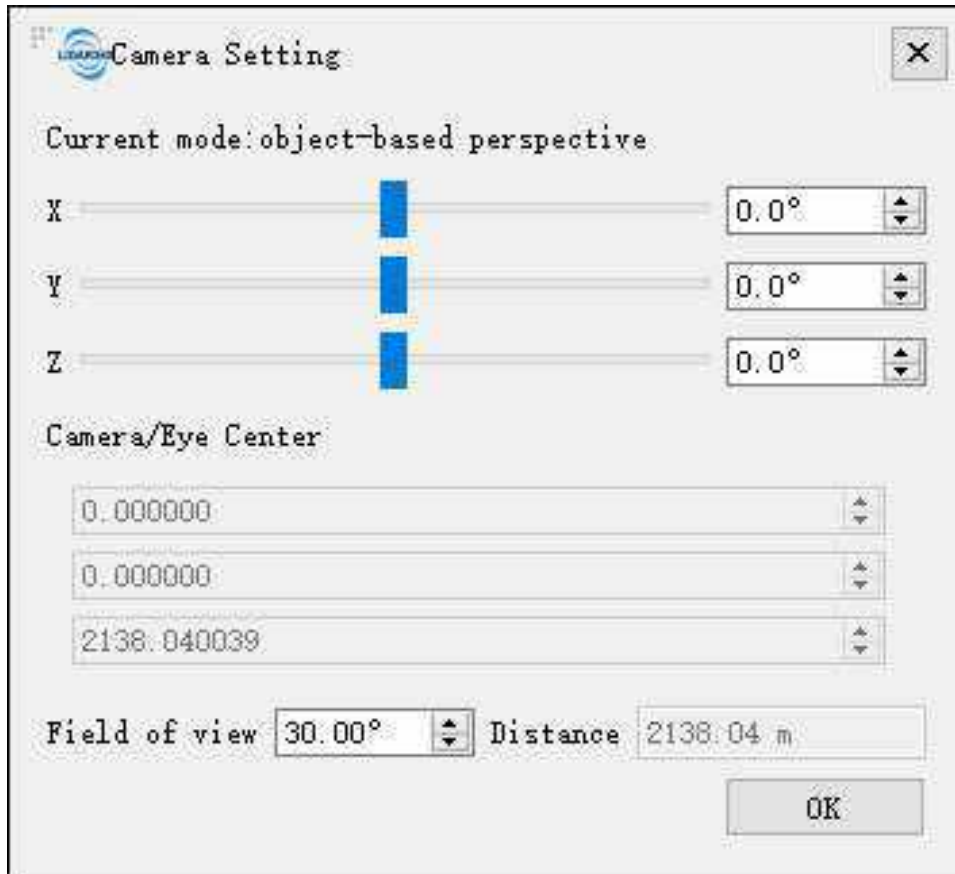
# Camera Setting



**Brief:** Camera settings for current active 3D window.

## Steps

1. After clicking this button, the dialog shown below would pop up:



2. Adjust camera rotation using sliders.

## Settings

- **Prerequisite:** Current active window must be in 3D mode.
- **Current mode:** Show projection type of current active window, including perspective projection and orthogonal projection.
- **X:** Camera rotation around X axis.
- **Y:** Camera rotation around Y axis.
- **Z:** Camera rotation around Z axis.
- **Camera/Eye Center:** Non-editable, computed using rotation.
- **Field of view:** Field of view, default 30 degree.
- **Distance:** Distance to viewpoint. Non-editable.

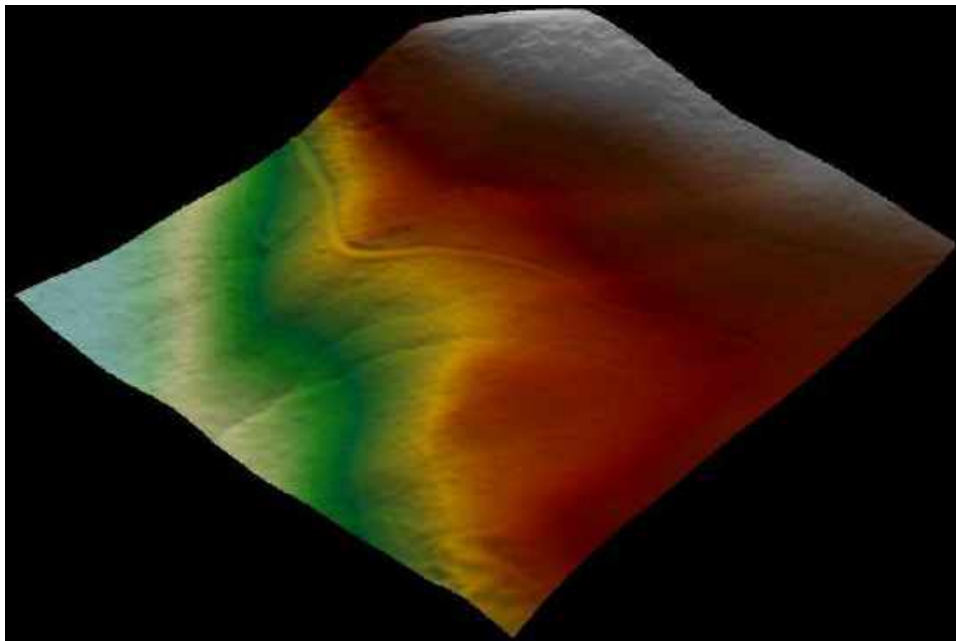
## Display Solid Model



**Brief:** Set model files in the current window to display in model type.

### Steps

1. Click this function, the models in the current active window will display in model, as shown in the figure below:



### Settings

- **Shortcut key:** Press the "W" key to switch the display mode between model, triangle and point.

Note: The model types for this function includes LiTIN, LiModel, IVE and other model types.



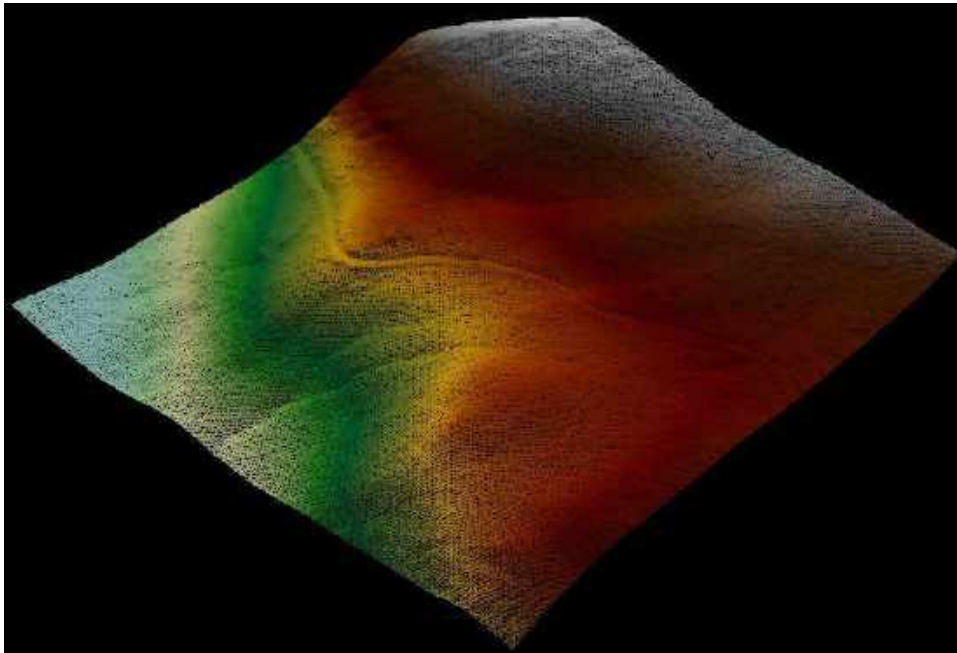
## Display Wireframe



**Brief:** Switch display mode of models in current window to triangle mesh mode.

### Steps

1. Click this button, the models in current active window will display as triangle mesh, as shown in the figure below:



### Settings

- **Shortcut key:** Press the "W" key to switch the display mode between model, triangle and point.

Note: The model types for this function includes LiTIN, LiModel, IVE and other model types.

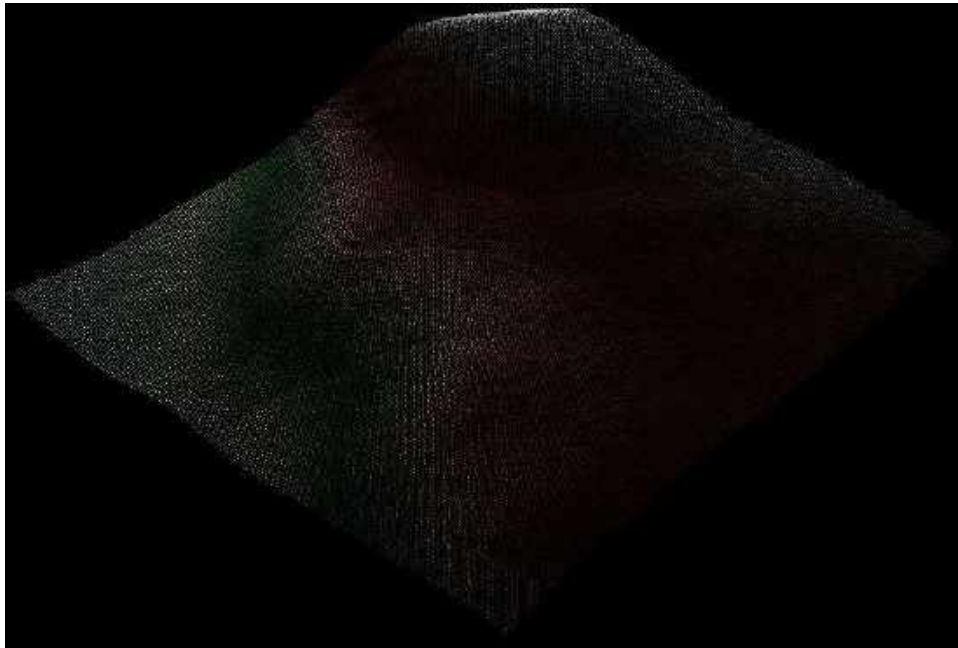
# Display Vertices



**Brief:** Switch display mode of models in current window to point mode.

## Steps

1. Click this button, the models in current active window will display as points, as shown in the figure below:



## Settings

- **Shortcut key:** Press the "W" key to switch the display mode between model, triangle and point.

Note: The model types for this function includes LiTIN, LiModel, IVE and other model types.

# Viewers

This menu provides operations to create, close and arrange windows.

- [New Viewer](#)
- [Close Active Viewer](#)
- [Close All Viewers](#)
- [Viewers Layout](#)

```
* [Tile Viewers](TileWindows.md)
```

```
* [Tab Viewers](TabWindows.md)
```

# Close Active Viewer

**Brief:** Close the active window in the current project.

## Steps

1. Click the menu *Viewers > Close*. The active window will be closed.

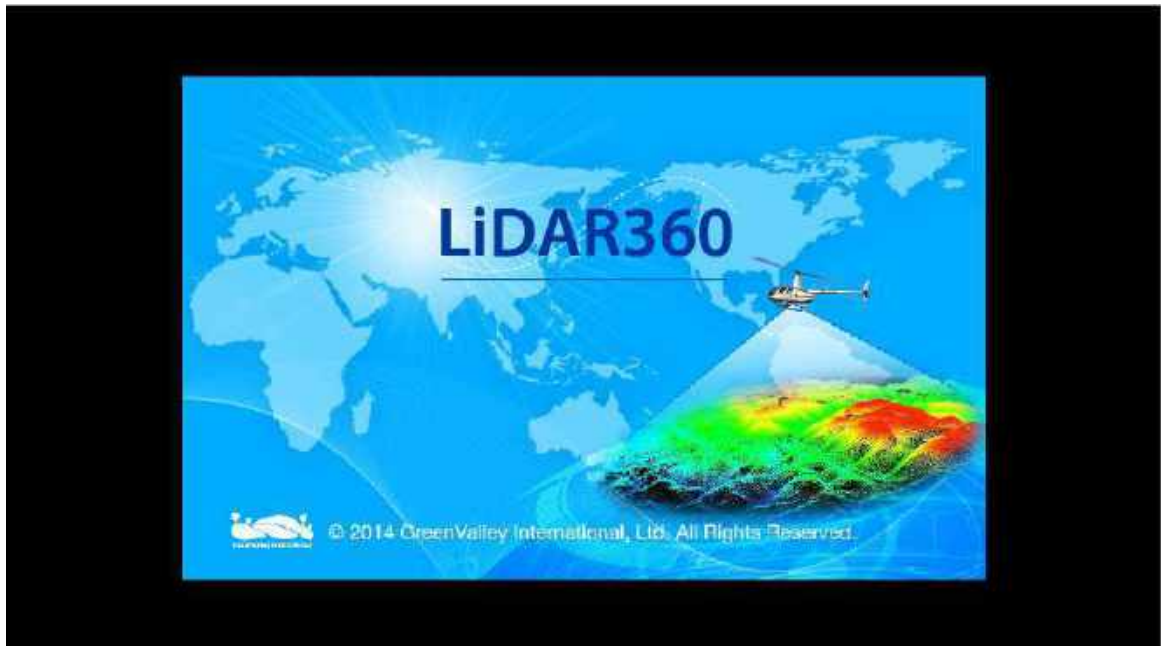
**Shortcut Key:** Ctrl+F4

# Close All

**Brief:** Close all windows in the current project.

## Steps

1. Click the menu *Viewers > Close All*. All windows are closed.



# Viewer Layout

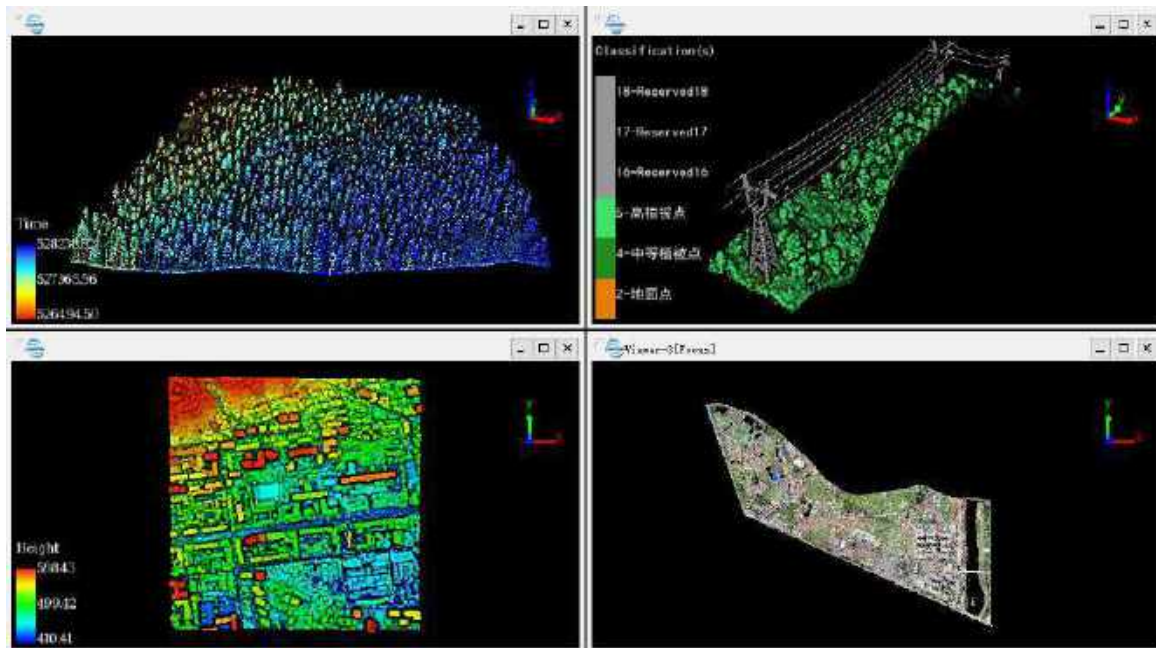
- [Tile Windows](#)
- [Tab Viewers](#)

# Tile Windows

**Brief:** Rearrange all the viewers in tiled fashion.

## Steps

1. Click the menu *Viewers > Viewers Layout > Tile Windows*. The result is as follows.



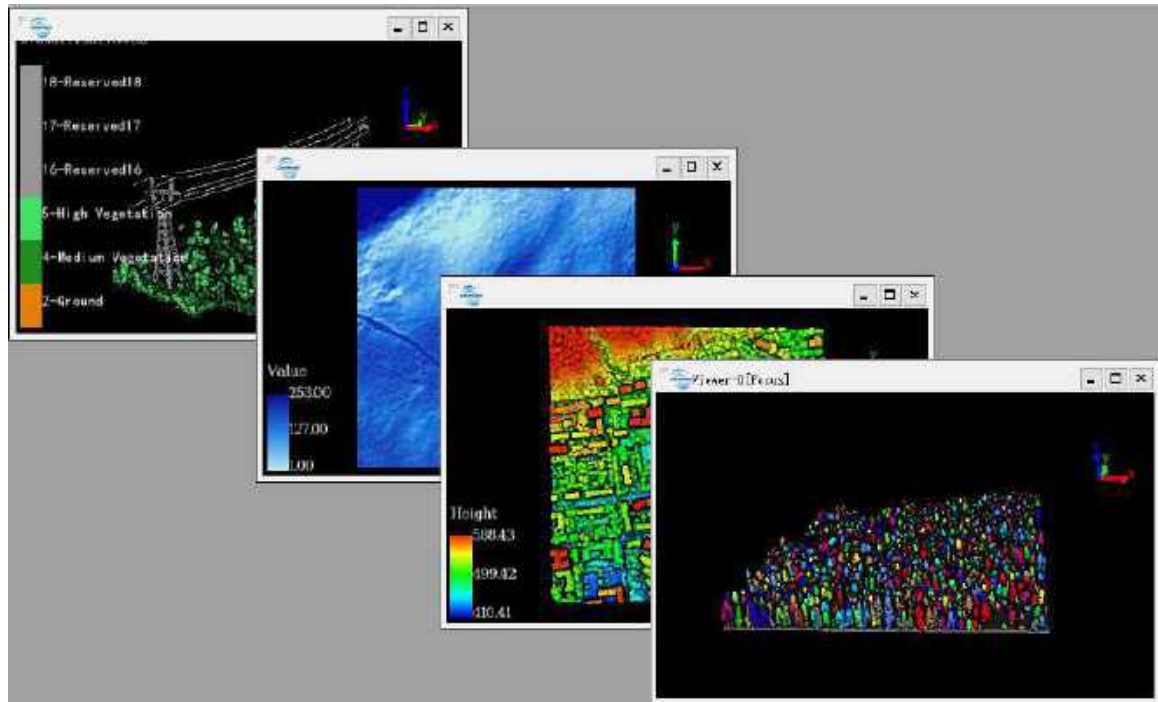
Note: This function needs at least one window in the current project.

# Tab Viewers

**Brief:** Rearrange all the viewers in tab fashion.

## Steps

1. Click the menu *Viewers > Viewers Layout > Tab Viewers*. The result is as follows.



Note: This function needs at least one window in the current project.



# Operations

- [Window Linkage](#)
- [Rolling Screen](#)
- [Go To](#)

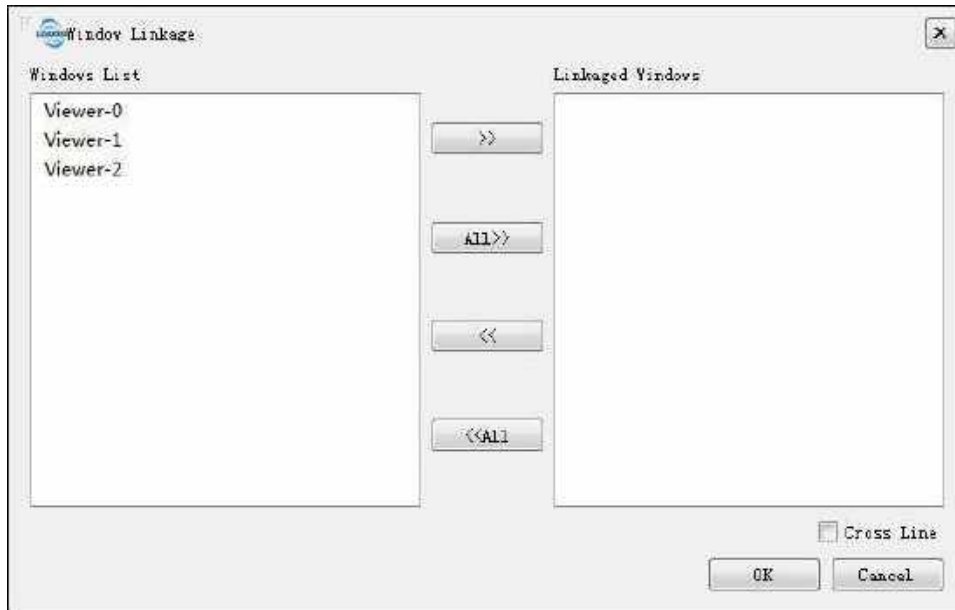
# Window Linkage

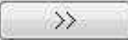





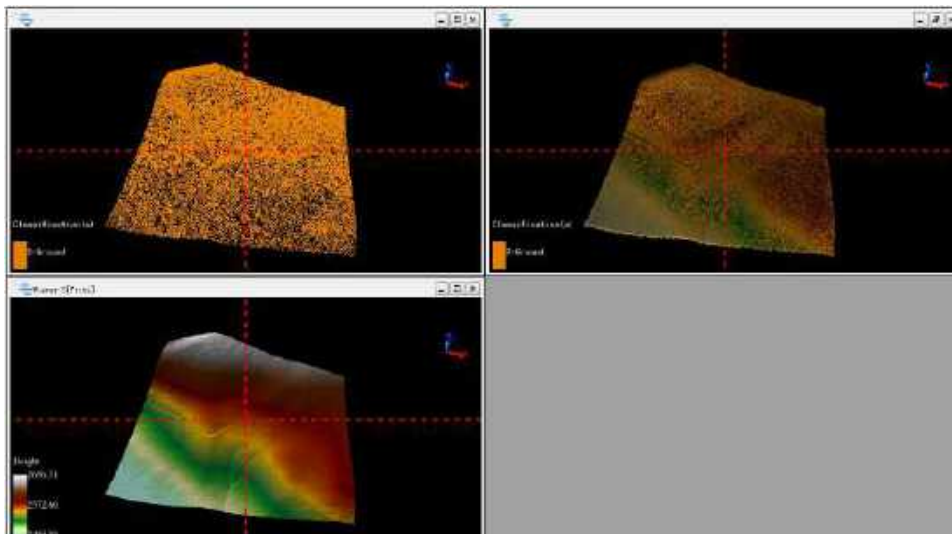
**Brief:** Enable windows linkage of multiple viewers.

## Steps

1. Click this button to open the dialog shown below:



2. The windows list contains all windows in LiDAR360, double-click a window that needed to linkage, or select the window then click button  to add the window. Also, user can click button  to add all windows to linkage windows list. The linkage windows list all windows under linkage, double-click a window to remove, or select the windows and then click button  to remove. Also, user can click button  to remove all linkage windows.
3. If "Cross Line" is checked, cross line will be displayed in the linkage windows. The following figure shows if the cross line is checked:



Note: If the current window contains raster data, it will be displayed in 2D. If the linkage windows contain 3D window and 2D window, the windows will be displayed in 2D mode.

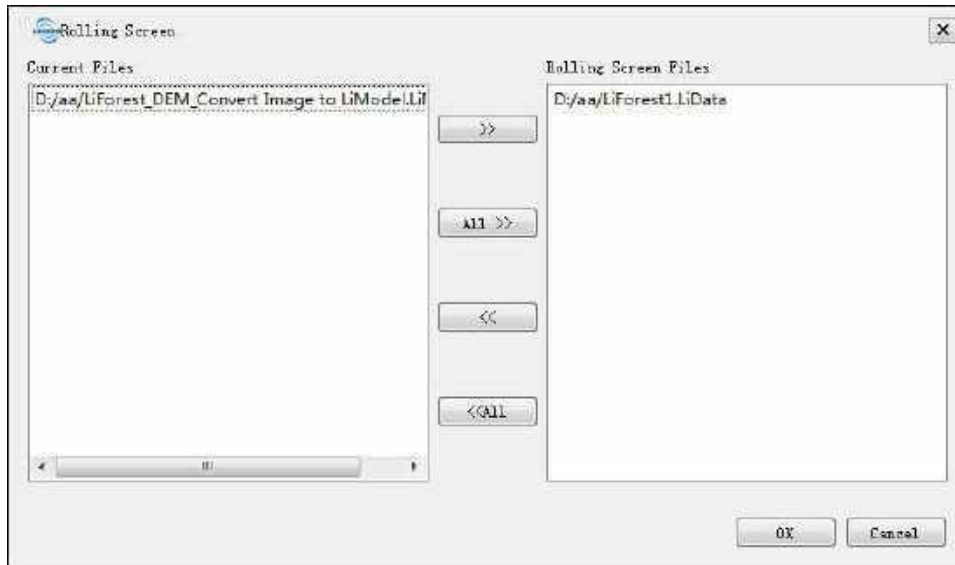
# Rolling Screen




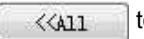


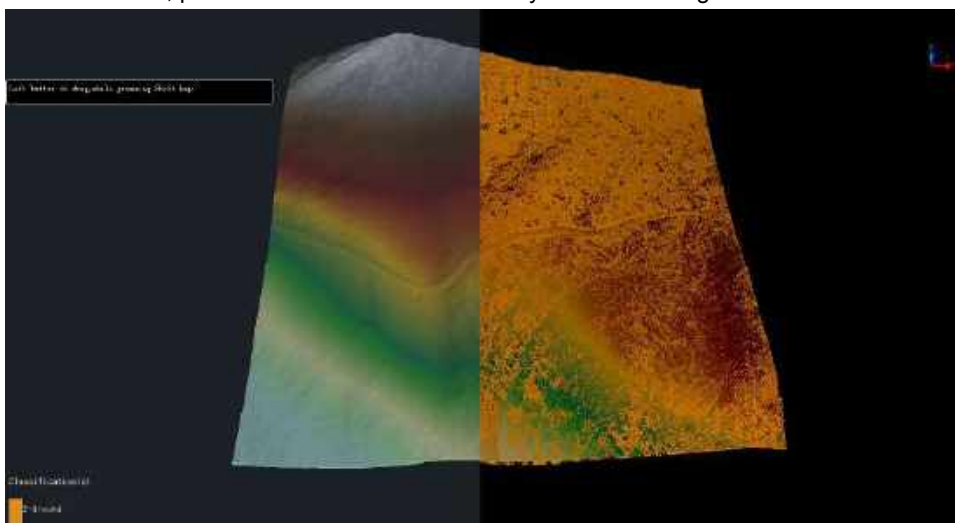
**Brief:** Enable rolling screen for current viewer.

## Steps

1. Click this button to open the dialog shown below:



2. Current files list contains files in current viewer. Double-click a file that needs to be added to rolling screen, or select files and then click , or click button  to add all files to rolling screen files. The rolling screen files list contains files in rolling screen, double-click a file to remove, or select files and then click button , or click button  to remove all files.
3. Click "OK". In the viewer, press the "Shift" button on the keyboard then drag. The window is shown below:



## Settings

- **Prerequisite:** An active viewer.



Note: This function cannot be apply to the profile window. Click this button again to exit.

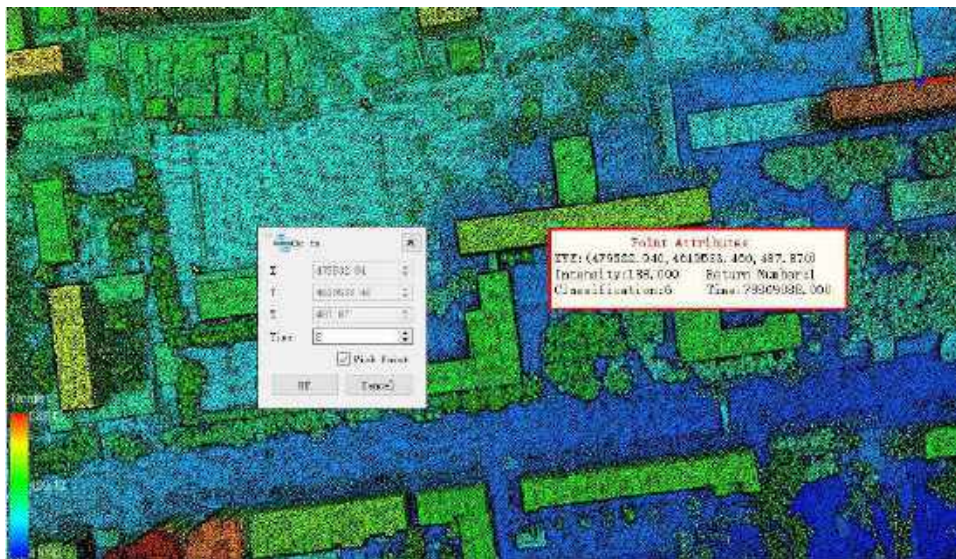
## Go To



**Brief:** This tool is applicable to point cloud data, raster data and model data. It's used to focus to the selected point.

## Steps

1. Click the window that contains data with the left mouse button and set it as the active window.
2. Click the button  on the toolbar and the mouse pointer turns to . Select a particular point in the scene. The attributes of this point will be shown in a label. At the same time, the "Go To" dialog pops up, as shown below.



3. If "Pick Point" is checked, the focus point is selected by mouse click. Otherwise, the coordinates of the focus point are selected by manual input.
4. Set the time to go to the selected point.
5. Click the "OK" button. The label will disappear, and a red dot will start to flash.
6. When it is focused to the selected point, the red dot disappear, as shown below.



## Settings

- **X:** X component of the coordinate.
- **Y:** Y component of the coordinate.
- **Z:** Z component of the coordinate.
- **Time:** Time to go to the selected point.
- **Pick Point (Optional):** If "Pick Point" is checked, the focus point is selected by mouse clicking.

Note: When there are multiple windows, this tool only works on the active window.

# Profile Editor



**Description:** Profile editing tool allows users to view the profile of the point cloud data in the selected rectangle area. Users can view, measure, and edit the data in the profile window. If users want to produce the topographic production with high accuracy, it is necessary to manually check and modify the classification results. And the profile tool is used for that. Starting from version of 3.1, LiDAR 360 offers two methods to modify the result of automatic classification, split the data into blocks or edit the data as a whole, and offers multiple windows to display the data. The profile editing panel in LiDAR 360 offers several tools to edit the point cloud data. It is supported to use Hot Keys in this function. Along with the mouse, users can switch the tools easily and finish the inspection and editing efficiently.

- [Block Editing Tool](#)
- [Draw Profile](#)
- [TIN Tool](#)
- [Select Tools](#)
- [Classify Panel](#)
- [Profile Viewer Tool](#)



## Profile and TIN Tool

TIN tool allows users to generate TIN model as an auxiliary tool for viewing and editing the classification results.

Note: The Hot Key P can help to change the lighting condition, in order to improve display effect.

For detailed information, please refer to [TIN Tool](#).

## Profile and Measuring Tool













When the profile is turned on, the point cloud window and the TIN window do not support the measurement tools. The profile window supports pick point, multi pick point, length measurement, angle measurement and height measurement tools.



# Block Editing Tool

Block editing tool allows users to split the LiData into several tiles, and inspect and edit each block separately. After starting editing, software will load all the points in the current block for inspection and editing according to the block size. At this time, users can choose to [create TIN](#) to view the quality of data classification. And reclassify those areas which are mis-classified.



Icon	Dicription	Hot Key
	Start block editing, split the data into tiles. Inspect and edit them separately	
	Undo	Ctrl+Z
	Redo	Ctrl+Y
	Save	Ctrl+Shift+S
	Settings	
	Hot Key Settings	
	Block Move to the Left	Alt+←
	Block Move to the Right	Alt+→
	Block Move Up	Alt+↑
	Block Move Down	Alt+↓
	Choose the Block	
	Display/Hide the Text	

## Edit Toolbar

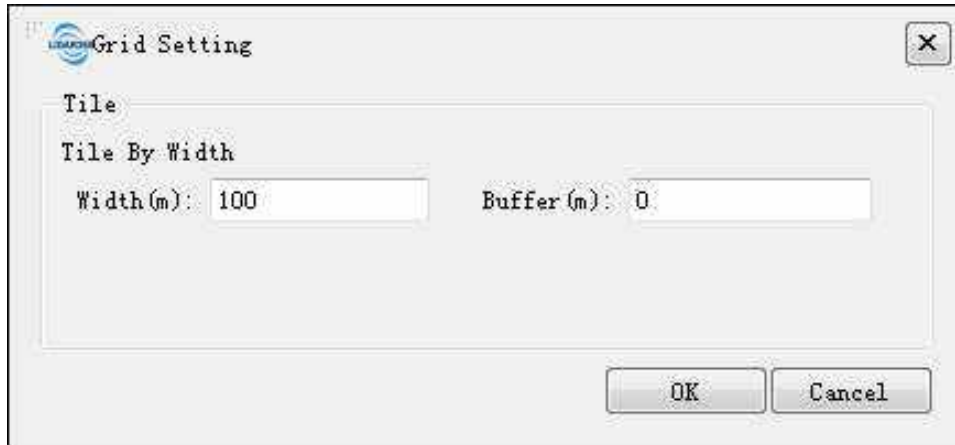
### Start Editing



**Description:** Clicking on the start editing button, the window of "block setting" will pop-up. Set the width and the buffer size of the blocks in the "split by width" option. After setting the parameters and clicking

ok, the all the points in the chosen block will be displayed in the window.

Note: It is recommended that approximate 500k points are in each block in average when choosing the width of each block.



## Undo



**Description:** This function allows users to undo the previous steps. This function will be disabled after saving the data. This function is available when the data is either split into tiles or not.

Note: In each profile editing, the undo and redo functions can only return results within 20 steps before the current result.

## Redo



**Description:** This function allows users to redo the undone steps. This function will be disabled after saving the data. This function is not available if the data are not split into tiles.

Note: In each profile editing, the undo and redo functions can only return results within 20 steps before the current result.

## Save

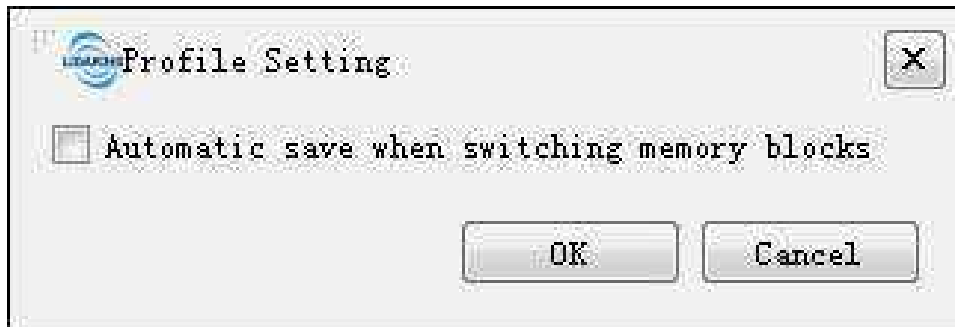


**Description:** Save the changed data to the corresponding LiData.

## Settings



**Description:** Block editing tool allows user to set whether to save the editing for current block when changing the block to be edited.



- **Save when changing the block:** If this option is checked, the software will automatically save the edit when users change the editing block to another one.

## Hot Key Settings

After clicking this function, users can set the hot keys for part of the functions in profile editing. After clicking this function, the popup window is shown as follows:



The hot keys occupied by the framework of LiDAR360 cannot be used here. All the editable operations for the profile are listed in the profile window. Click the hot key column, and press the key on the keyboard, and then click OK to finish the setting.

# Block Change Toolbar

Block Change Toolbar is activated only when the data is split into tiles.

## Move to the Left



**Description:** Change the editing block to the one left to the current editing block. And display it in the main window.

## Move to the Right



**Description:** Change the editing block to the one right to the current editing block. And display it in the main window.

## Move Up



**Description:** Change the editing block to the one above the current editing block. And display it in the main window.

## Move Down



**Description:** Change the editing block to the one below the current editing block. And display it in the main window.

## Select the Block



**Description:** This function is only available when the data are split into tiles. Click this button, and users can select the block to be edited in the main window.







## Display/Hide Blocks



**Description:** This function is only available when the data are split into tiles. Click this button and the numbers of the blocks will be displayed/hidden.

# Draw Profile

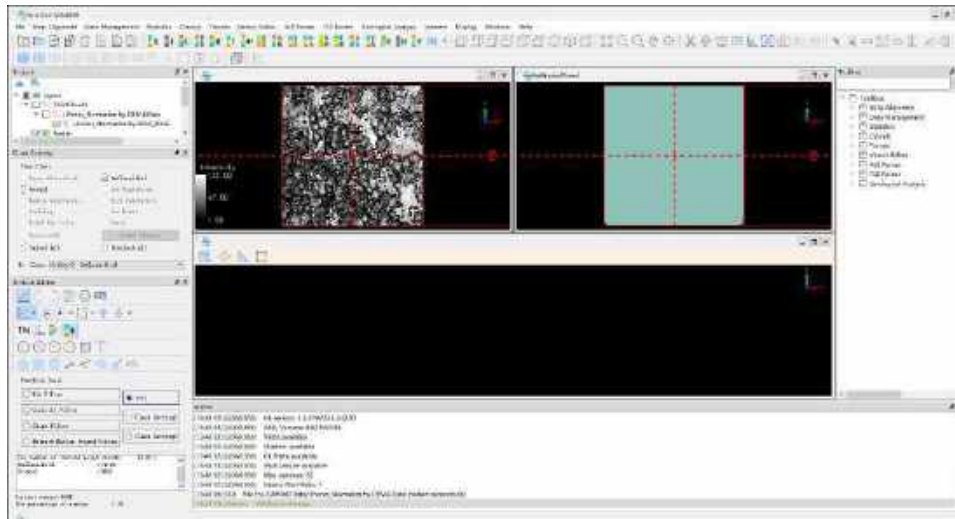


Icon	Description	Hot Key
	Start Profile Editing Tool	Alt+S
	Move Profile	
	Rotate Profile Area	X or ← →
	Expant Profile Area	
	Move up Profile	↑
	Move down Profile	↓

## Profile Tool



**Description:** Used to create a profile view of a certain area when select an area in the main window or TIN window.



## Buffer

**Description:** Click the triangle icon right to the profile icon, and then click the buffer settings button, the buffer settings window will popup. This function can help users to fix the size of the buffer area.

## Move Profile



**Description:** When the move profile tool is activated, move the mouse to the profile area and drag it. The profile area can be moved with the mouse. If the mouse drag outside the profile area, it will not be moved with the mouse.

## Rotate



**Description:** Support to rotate the profile area based on the angle that users enter in the rotate settings window. Click the triangle next to the icon and click the rotate settings button, the rotate settings window will popup.

## Expand



**Description:** Used to expand the width of profile area by the entered number. If the entered number is negative, the profile area will be reduced.

## Move Up the Profile



**Description:** Used to move up the current profile to create a new profile with the same size and right above the current profile.

## Move Down the Profile






**Description:** Used to move down the current profile to create a new profile with the same size and right below the current profile. Click the triangle next to the icon and click the step length settings button, the step length settings window will popup. If the checkbox in front of the step length tag is checked, the step length will be fixed as 1.5 times step length and cannot be changed. If the checkbox is unchecked, users can change the step length based on their needs.

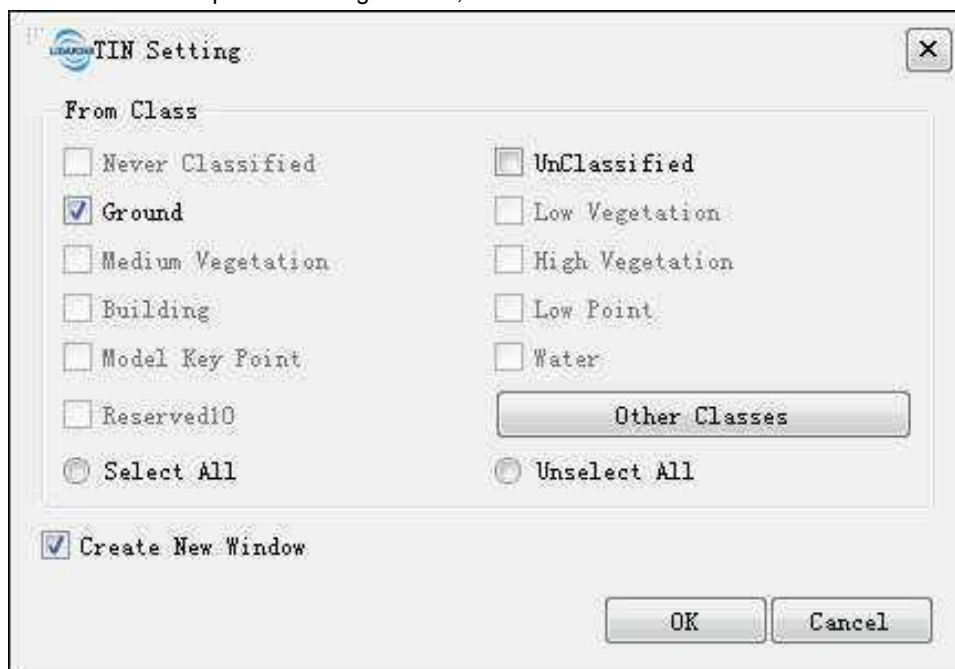
# TIN Tool

TIN tool allows users to generate TIN model and view the change of TIN while editing the point cloud as an auxiliary tool. In order to improve the editing efficiency, it can display different blocks by moving to left, right, up, and down, or selecting the block. The function of this tool actually is to view and edit (adding and deleting points) the LiTin model in the RAM.



Icon	Description	Hot Key
TIN	Generate TIN Model	
	Remove TIN Model	
	Display TIN Model by Class	
	Display TIN Model by Elevation	

>Note: Use the Hot Key P to change the lighting conditions, in order to improve the display of TIN. ### Create TIN Model ### Click \*TIN\* to open the setting window, as shown below:



Parameters Setting:

- **From Class:** Users need to specify the original class to generate the TIN model. E.g., choosing the ground points to generate the TIN model can help with the ground points classification.
- **Create a New Window:** Whether to display the TIN model in a new window.
  - **Checked (default):** Display the TIN model in a new window.
  - **Unchecked:** Display the TIN model in the main window.

## **Remove TIN**

*Remove TIN Model* button will be activated after generating TIN model. If the TIN model is displayed in the newly created window, *Remove TIN Model* function will close that window. If the TIN model is displayed in the main window, *Remove TIN Model* function will remove the TIN model displayed in the main window.

## **Display by Elevation**

Display the TIN by elevation.

## **Display by Class**









Display the TIN by class.



# Select Tool

Select tool supports to choose arbitrarily in the main window, TIN window, and profile window. After selecting the area, it will be classified by the selected method in the classify panel.



Icon	Description	Hot Key
	Polygon Select	Shift+P
	Rectangle Select	Shift+R
	Circle Select	Shift+C
	Above the Polyline Select	L
	Below the Polyline Select	Shift+L
	Lasso Select	Ctrl+Shift+L
	Circular Brush Select	Shift+F
	Detect Plane	Ctrl+Shift+D
	Switch Selecting Tool	Shift+Q

The meanings of the parameters of circular select tool and detect plane are listed as below:

## Circular Brush

- **Selection Radius:** By setting the radius in pixel of the circular brush, control the size of selecting area.

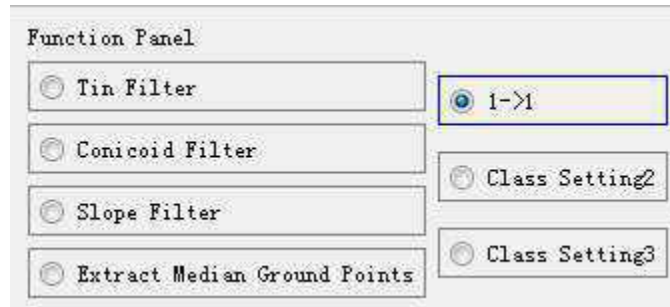
## Detect Plane

Detect plane tool performs the plane growth algorithm by fitting a plane with the points in a selected circle to detect the points within the same plane.

- **Tolerance (meter):** The threshold of the distance from the point to be detected to the fitting plane in the selected area. This threshold is aimed to control the thickness of the detected plane.
- **Range (pixel):** The range of the points used to generate the initial fitting plane. Users should control the range to ensure that the points are in the same plane.
- **Step Length:** The step length of the outward extension of the plane detection.


# Classify Panel

Classify panel consists of four ground points filters and three class to class classification methods. Four ground points filters, including [TIN filter](#), [conicoid filter](#), [slope filter](#), and [extract median ground points](#), are only available when the point cloud data are split into blocks. And three class to class classifications allow users to set the original class and target class, and then choose the area need to be classified. The points in the chosen area of the original class will be classified as target class points.










Description	Hot Key
Switch Class Modification Method	Shift+E
Classify the chosen points as new class. Choose the target class by number key.	0-9

# Profile Viewer Tool

By default, profile view shows the front view of selected rectangle area. Users can change the view mode in the drop-down menu .



Icon	Description	Hot Key
	Front View	
	Rear View	
	Left View	
	Right View	
	Rotate Scene	R
	Measuring Tools	
	Grid	

# Strip Alignment

Airborne LiDAR measurement system is influenced by various error sources, of which the systematic errors (the largest error source) cause the systematic deviation of laser footprint coordinates. Mounting of LiDAR measurement system requires the axis of the scanning reference coordinate system and inertial platform reference coordinate system to be parallel. However, while mounting of system, it is not guaranteed that they are parallel, resulting in the so-called systematic boresight error. In the Strip Alignment module, airborne LiDAR point clouds of overlapping strips can be aligned through boresight calibration.

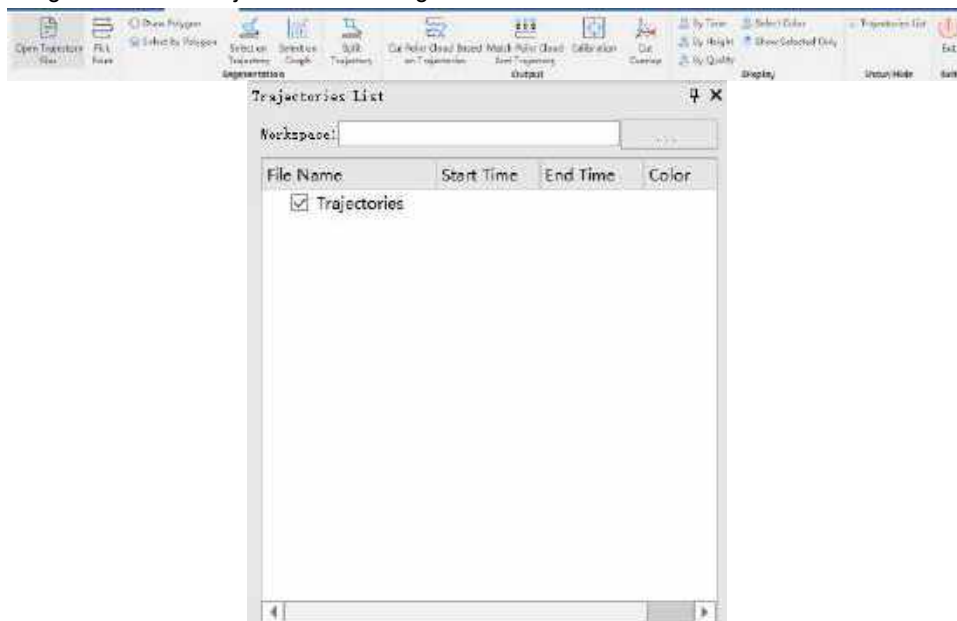
- [Boresight](#)
- [Boresight Error Calculation](#)
- [Trajectory Adjustment](#)
- [Control Point Report](#)
- [Trajectory Quality Analysis](#)
- [Elevation Difference Inspection](#)
- [Strip Overlap Analysis](#)
- [Density Quality Analysis](#)


# Boresight

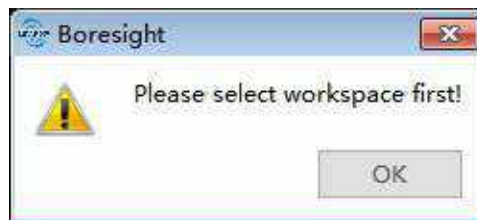
**Brief:** In the Boresight module, airborne LiDAR point clouds of overlapping strips can be aligned through boresight calibration. This module includes the following functions: loading/deleting/splitting trajectories, cutting point cloud according to trajectories, matching trajectory and point cloud, transforming point cloud based on boresight calibration parameters, eliminating point cloud redundancy (cut overlap), etc.

## Usage

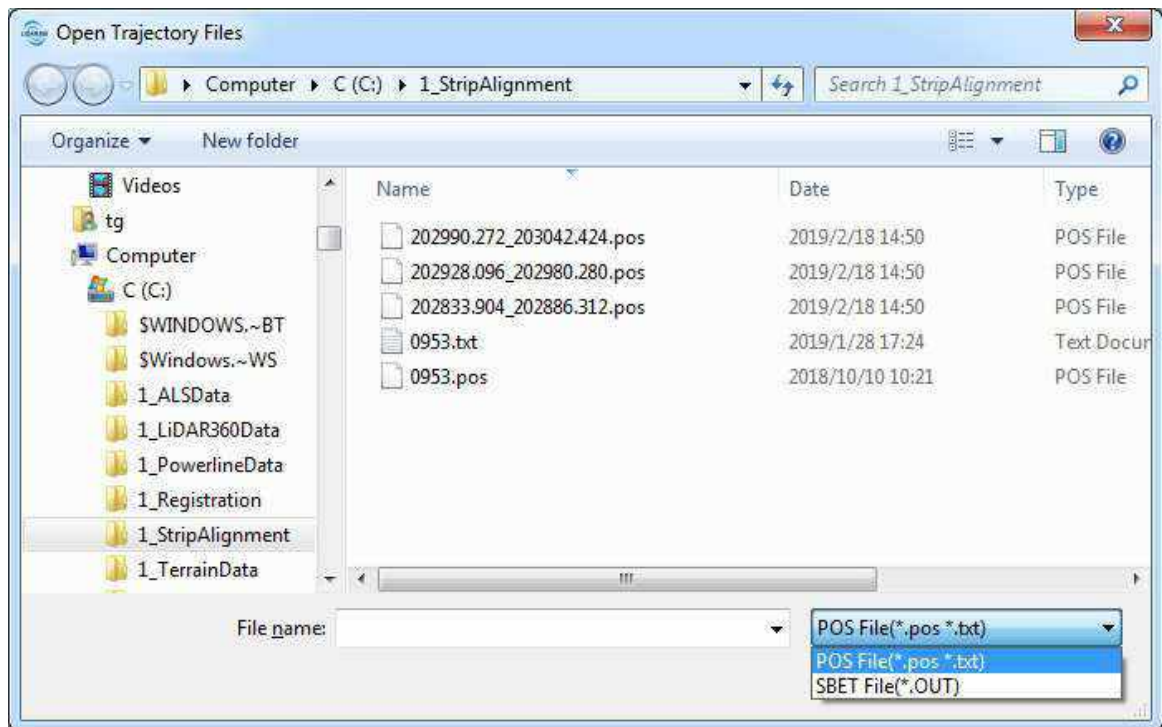
1. Open boresight module. Click *ToolBox > Strip Alignment > Boresight* or *Preprocessing > Boresight*, and the corresponding toolbox and Trajectories List Widget is shown as follows.



2.  Open Trajectory Files: After clicking this button, an interface pops up to ask you to set the workspace.

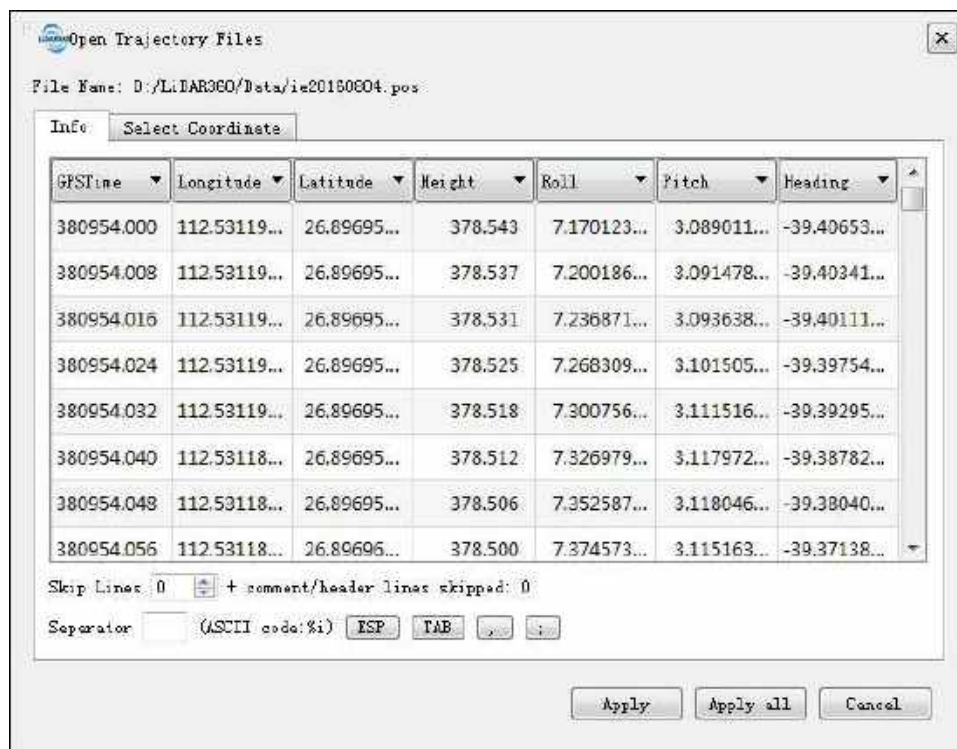


Set the workspace and a dialog for adding trajectories will be shown as follows.

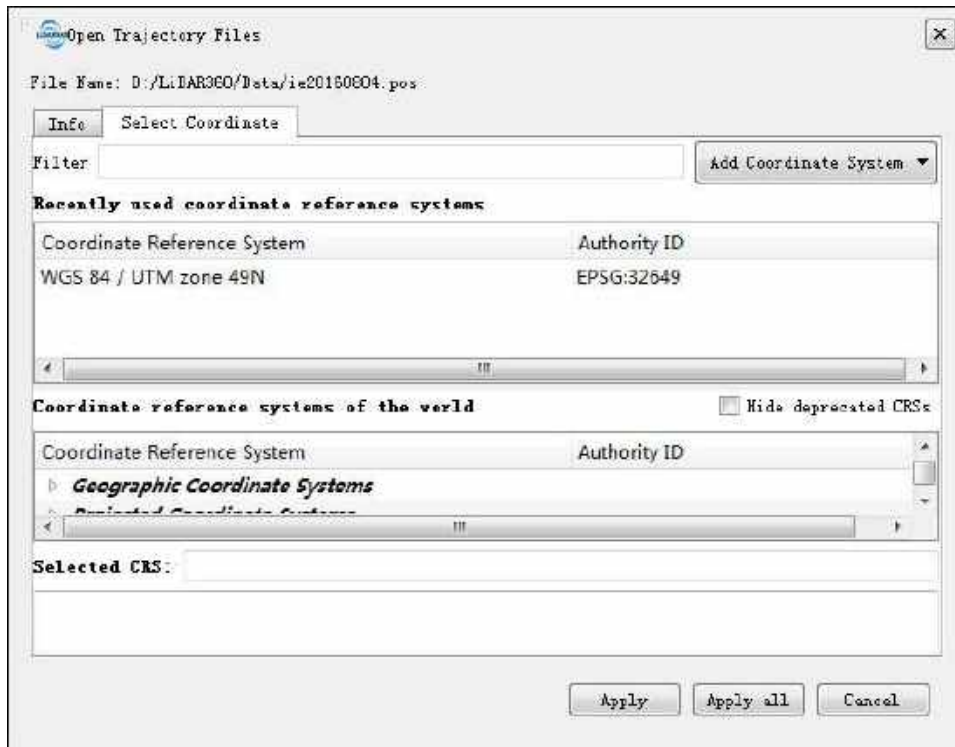


LiDAR360 supports two formats of trajectory files: **POS (\*.pos)** (text format file) and **SBET (\*.out)** (binary format file).

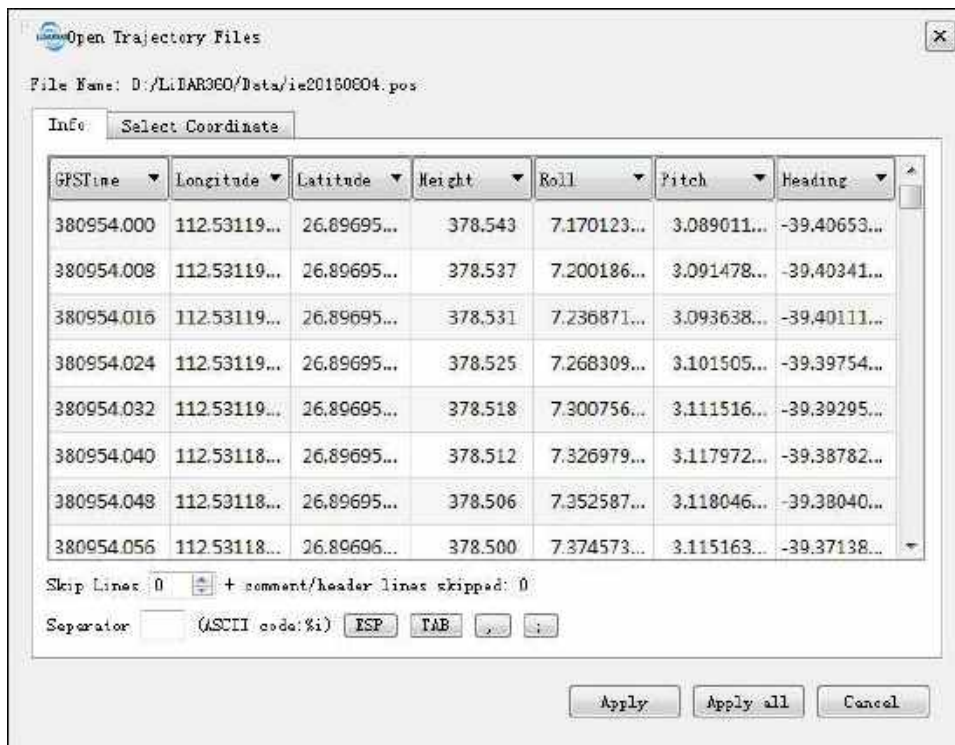
- POS File Example 1: If the POS file does not contain GridX and GridY information, the user has to specify following headers (GPS time, longitude, latitude, height, roll angle, pitch angle and yaw angle) for data columns. An example is shown as follows.



It is required to select the correct projection coordinate system as the following picture.




o POS File Example 2: If the POS file contains GridX and GridY information, the user has to specify following headers (GPS time, longitude, latitude, height, roll angle, pitch angle, yaw angle, GridX and GridY) for data columns. An example is shown as follows.

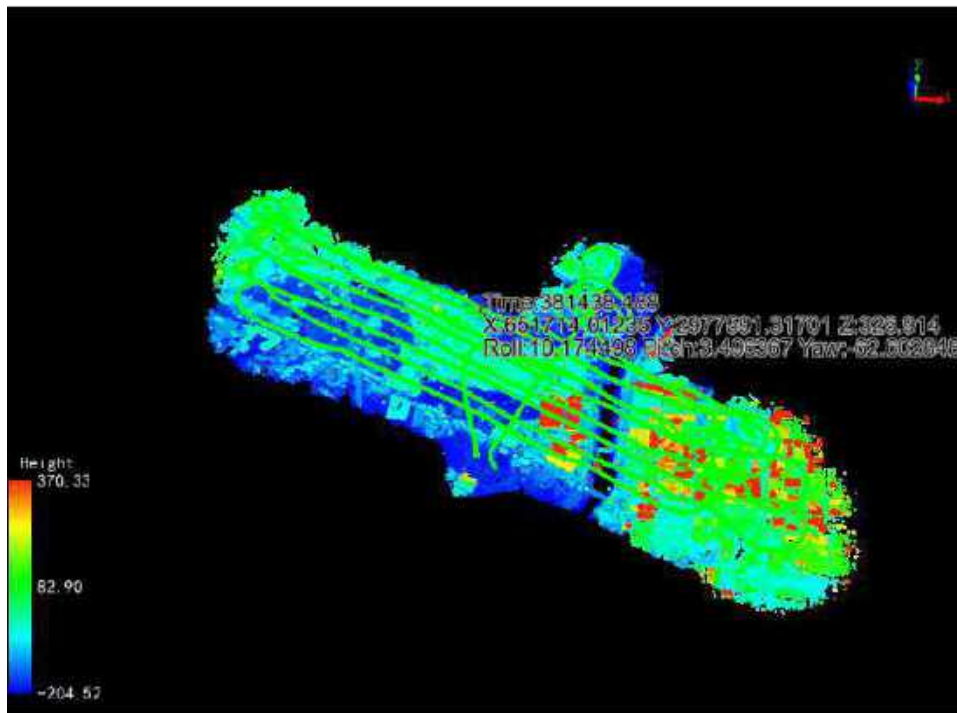


If the information of GridX or GridY is not correct, the [POS File Example 1](#) can be used.

For both of the two examples, click "Apply" to make the current settings apply on current trajectory file, and all the trajectory files will be affected by the current settings if you click "Apply all".



The information of added trajectories will be shown in Trajectories List Widget. (Optional) Click  to set the workspace.

3.  Pick Point: Left click a certain point in the trajectory and the information of this point will be displayed.




#### 4. Segment Select

##### 4.1 Select by Polygon

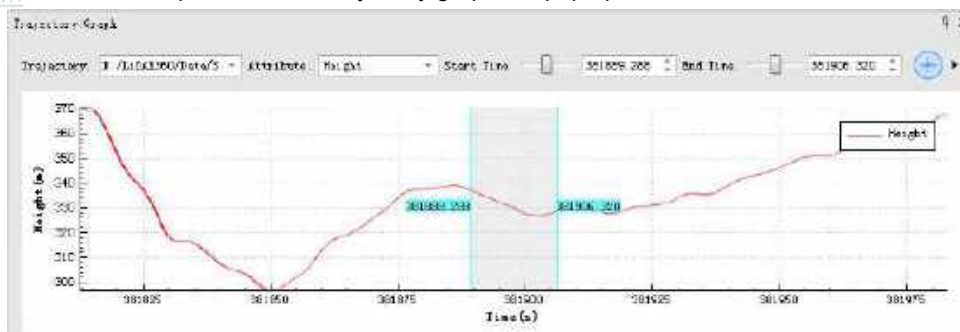
- Click  Draw Polygon button.
- Left click to make an user-defined polygon in the view.
- Click  Select by Polygon button, to select segment in the area of user-defined polygon.

##### 4.2 Select by Bursh

- Click  Select on Trajectory button.
- Left click to select the starting point in the trajectory.
- Along the trajectory, select the ending point, the trajectory between the starting point and the ending point will be selected.



##### 4.3 Select by Trajectory Graph

- Click  Select on Graph button, the trajectory graph will pop up.




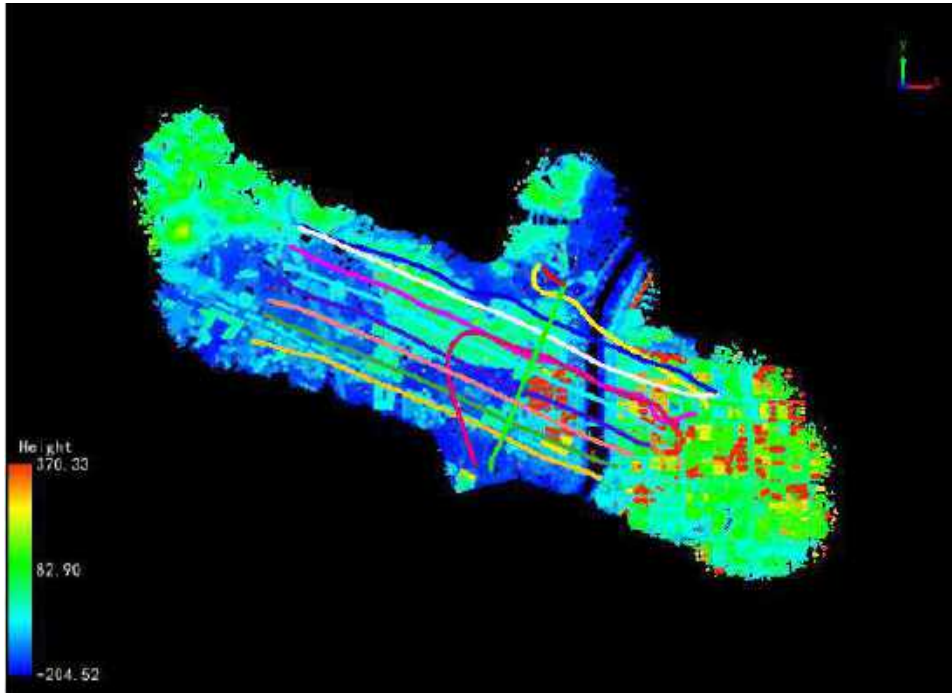
- (Optional) Select an trajectory in trajectory combobox, the selected segment of the trajectory and the trajectory will be shown in the graph.
- (Optional) Select an attribute. Users can select different display mode, including display by height, display by quality factor, display by roll, display by pitch, display by heading and display by velocity.
- Select both Start Time and End Time via scrollbars.




- o Click  to add a new segment.
- o (Optional) Change display range. All the trajectory information at any time will be displayed in trajectory graph as a default. Scroll up and down of mouse wheel to zoom in and out the graph, click  to restore the default display.

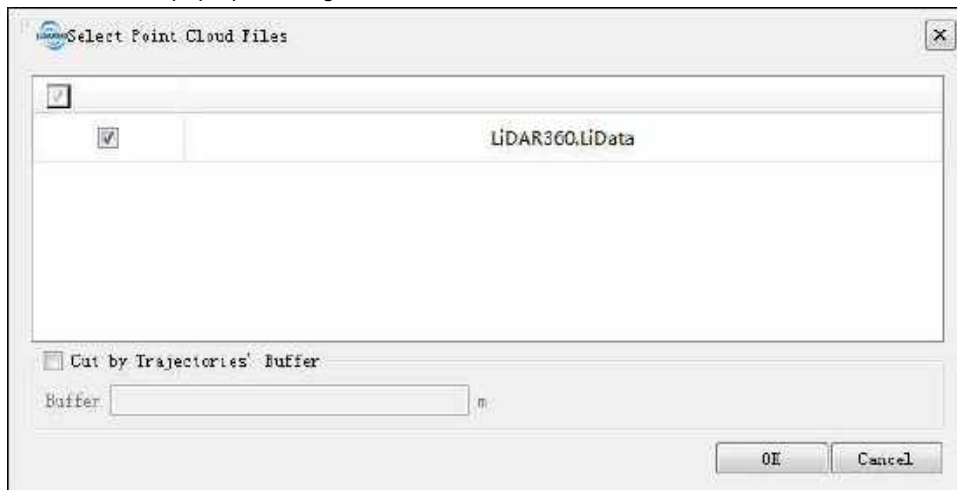
All the selected segment will be shown in Trajectories List Widget.

5.  Split Trajectories: Click this button to split the source trajectories by selected segments. New generated trajectories will be stored as POS file format in the workspace and named by the GPS starting and ending times of the trajectory. An example of new file name is "GPSStartTime\_GPSEndTime.POS". The effect of cutting is shown as follows.




6.  Cut Point Cloud Based on Trajectories.

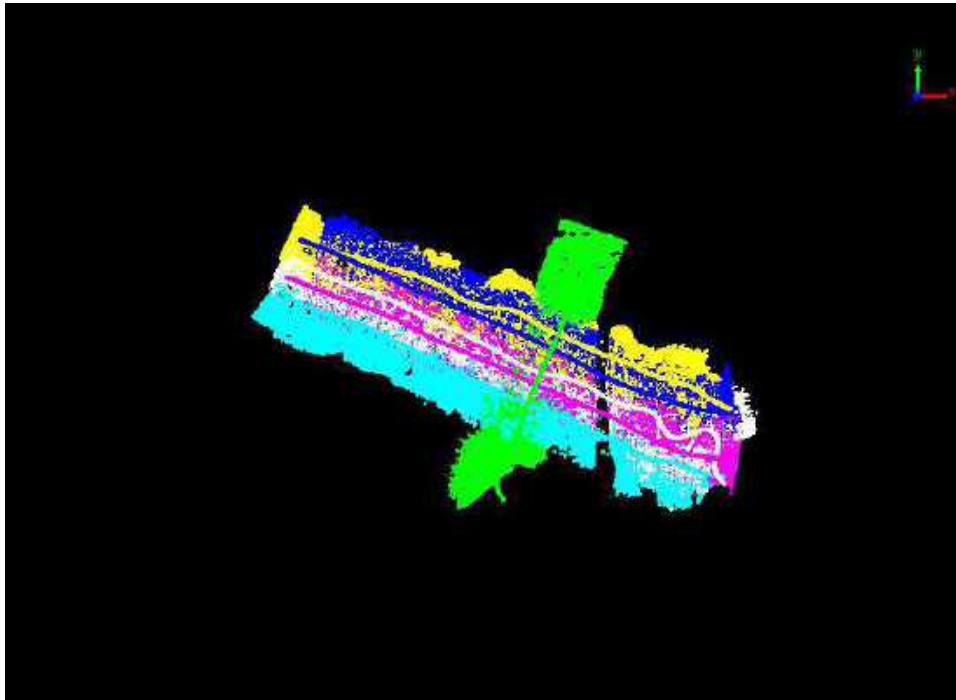
- o 6.1 Click the button to pop up a dialog.




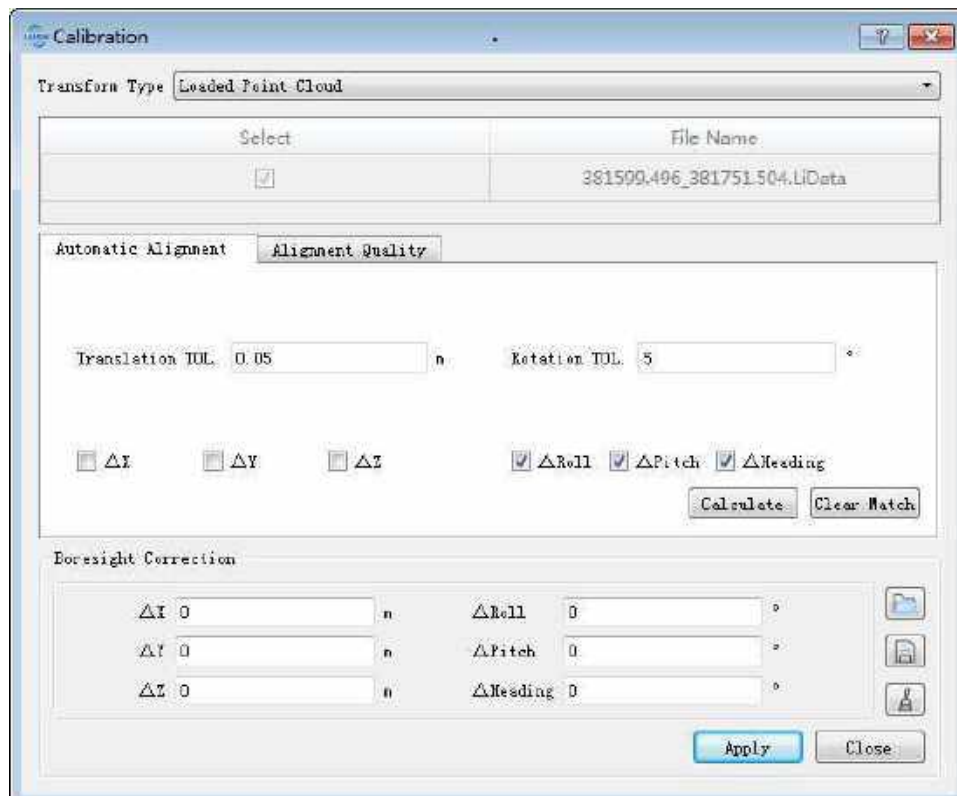
Select the point cloud data files to be cut. Check the “Cut by Trajectories' Buffer” and set the Buffer parameter as desired.

- o 6.2 Click "OK". LiDAR360 will cut the point cloud by the trajectories and show the process speed accordingly. The cutting results will be saved and the name of the point cloud is identical to the corresponding POS file. A dialog pops up to ask the user whether to load the results or not.

7.  Match Point Cloud and Trajectory: Click this button, the point cloud data and the corresponding trajectory will be displayed in the same color.



8.  Calibration: Click this button to pop up a dialog.

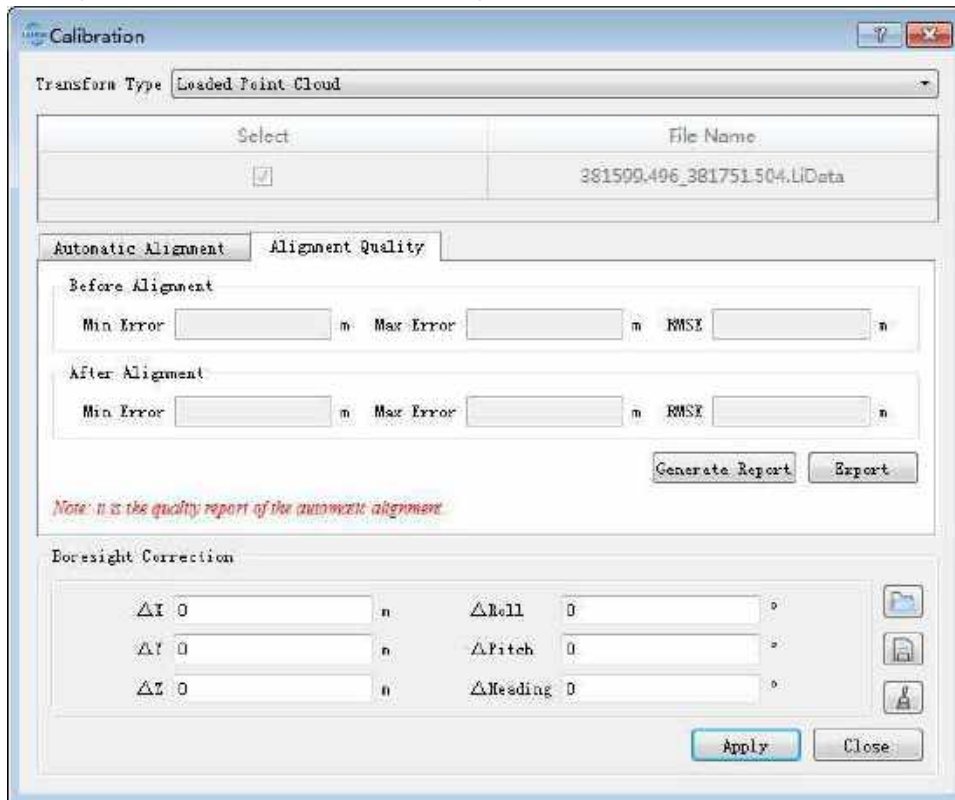


- o 8.1 This function is applied to correct the **Boresight Error**, which can be calculated automatically (Automatic Alignment) or input manually (Manual Alignment).

**Automatic Alignment:**

Select the **boresight error** you want to correct, and set the **Translation TOL** and **Rotation TOL**. Click

"Calculate" to generate the boresight error automatically and the result will be shown in the "Boresight Correction" part of the interface. Click "Clear Matching" to delete the matching information. After modifying relevant parameters, users can calculate the alignment parameters again. After the calculation of automatic alignment, LiDAR360 will figure out the [Alignment Quality](#). The Alignment Quality will be shown in the "Alignment Quality" tab page. Click "Export" button to save the alignment quality information, and Click "Generate Report" button to generate the automatic alignment quality report. ([Theory of correction based on automatic adjustment.](#))

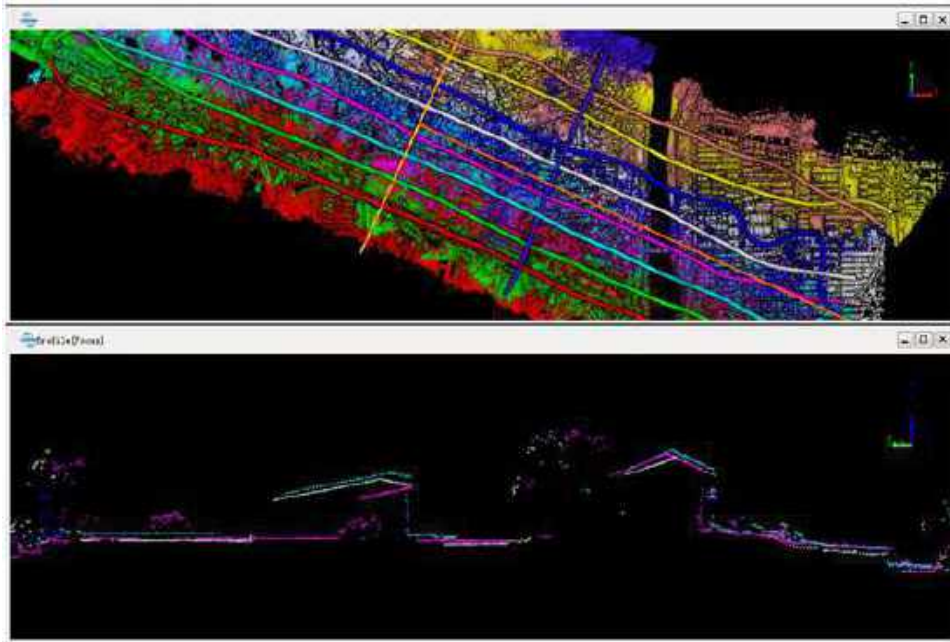


**Manual Alignment:**

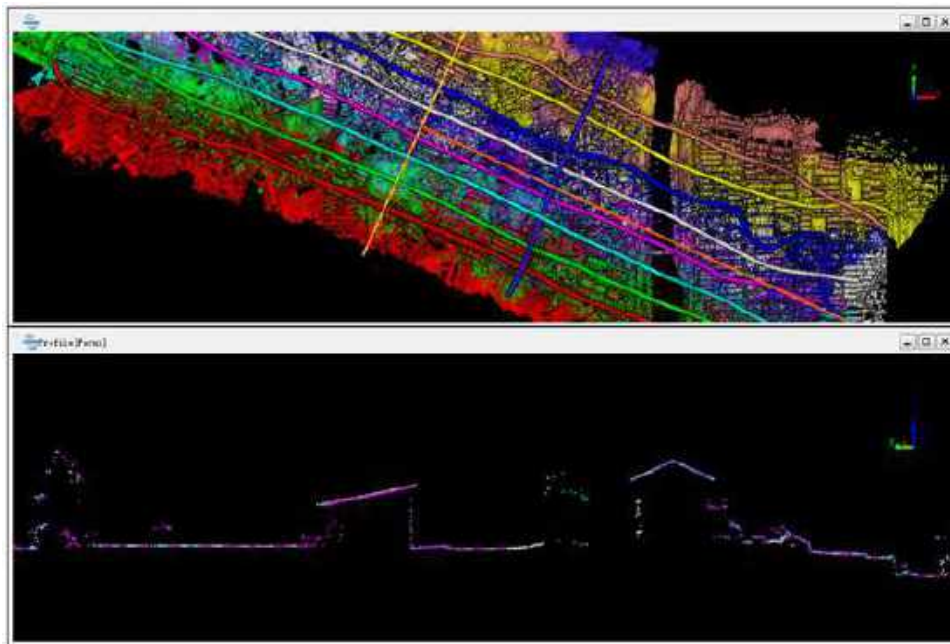
Adjust the [boresight error](#) manually. ([Theory of correction based on manual measurement.](#))

Click "Apply" and the transformation of error correction will be applied on the selected [Transform Type](#).

- o 8.2 For both automatic and manual method, correction result can be checked in the profile window.

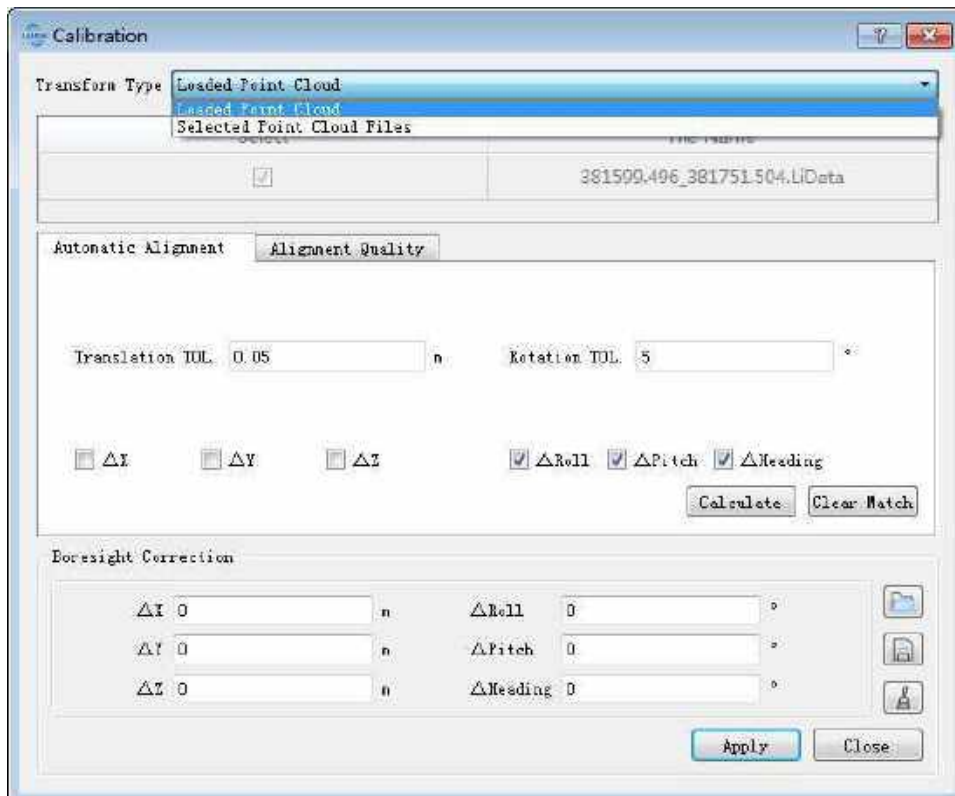



Before transformation

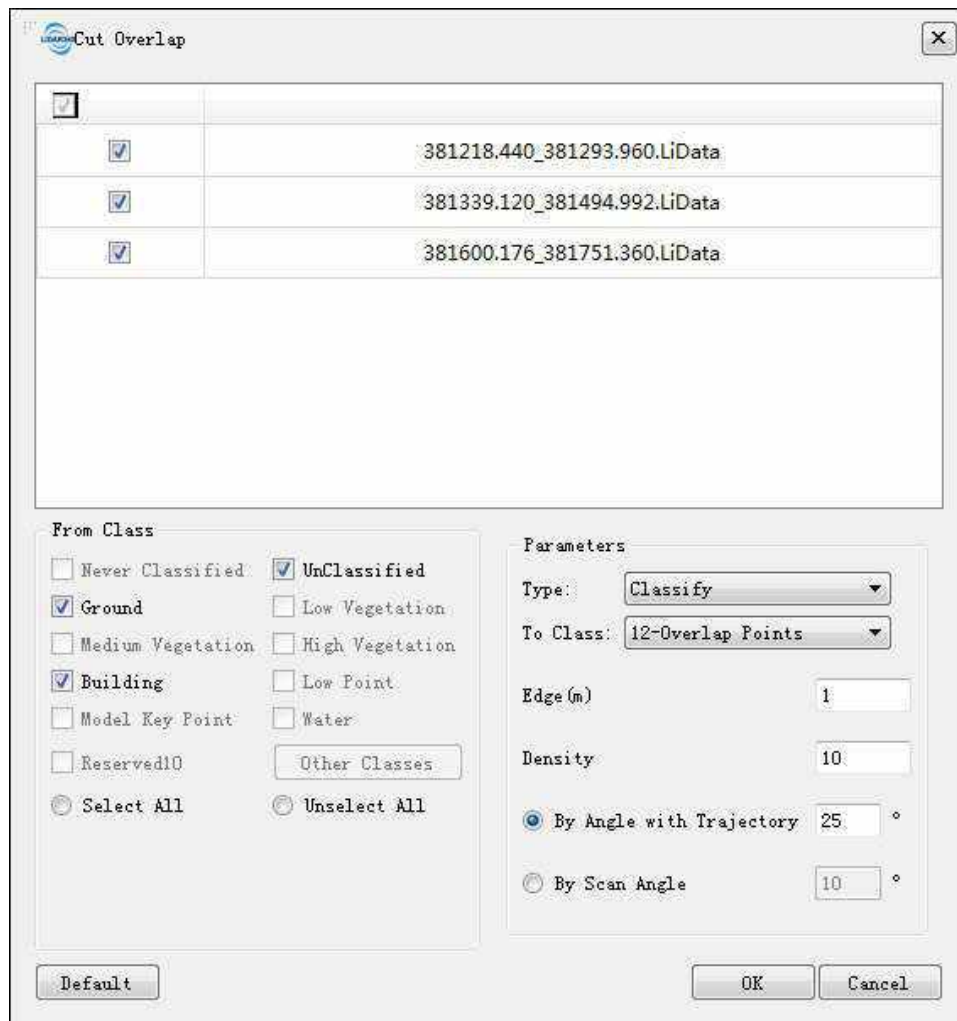


After transformation

- 8.3 Buttons on the right of the "Boresight correction" provide the following operations: "loading from file", "saving to a file" and "cleaning".
- 8.4 If the alignment effect is satisfied, you can switch **Transform Type** from the "Loaded Point Cloud" to "Selected Point Cloud Files". Click "Apply" to finish the transformation.



9.  Cut Overlap: Click this button to set the [Cut Overlap Parameters](#). Click "OK" button, then the redundant points between the overlapped trajectories will be classified or deleted.



#### 10. Show Single Trajectory


- Select a trajectory in the Trajectories List Widget, right click to pop up the Context Menu.
- Click the Show Single Trajectory button, the color of the selected trajectory will be changed gradually, and then the trajectory will twinkle several times.

#### 11. Delete Trajectories or Segments.


- Select the trajectories or segments in the Trajectories List Widget, right click to pop up the Context Menu.
- Click the Delete button and the selected trajectories and segments will be removed.

#### 12. Show/Hide Trajectory or Segment Check/Uncheck the checkbox of the trajectory or segment in the Trajectories List Widget will Show/Hide the trajectory or segment.


#### 13. Trajectory Display the software supports multi-display modes: 13.1 Display by Time(Default)

- Click  button, the trajectory will be displayed in different color according to acquisition time, users can select the color bar in a pop-up window.


#### 13.2 Display by Height

- Click  button, the trajectory will be displayed in different color according to height information, users can select the color bar in a pop-up window.


#### 13.3 Display by Quality

- Click  button, the trajectory will be displayed in different color according to quality information, users can select the color bar in a pop-up window.

### 13.4 Display by Specific Color

- Click  button, the trajectory will be displayed in specific color according to user-defined color, users can select the color in a pop-up window.

### 13.5 Show selected segments

- Check  button, the unsegmented area will be hide, and only selected segment part will display.

## Settings

- **Parameters of Cutting point cloud based on Trajectories**
  - **Buffer:** The remaining distance in both sides of trajectory while cutting.
- **Parameters of Transform**
  - **Boresight Error**
    - **$\Delta X/\Delta Y/\Delta Z$ :** Correction parameters of boresight offset error.
    - **$\Delta Roll/\Delta Pitch/\Delta Heading$ :** Correction parameters of boresight pose error.
  - **Automatic Alignment:** It matches corresponding points between strips automatically and calculates optimal correction value of boresight error via adjustment.
    - **Translation TOL:** The maximum translation tolerance of  $\Delta X$ ,  $\Delta Y$ ,  $\Delta Z$ . The default value is 0.05 m.
    - **Rotation TOL:** The maximum rotation tolerance of  $\Delta Roll$ ,  $\Delta Pitch$ ,  $\Delta Heading$ . The default value is 5°.
    - **Options:** Users can decide whether the 3 translations and 3 rotations are involved in adjustment to calculate correction values. For most aerial data, it is not recommended to correct  $\Delta Z$ . In default state, all the rotations are selected while all the translations are unselected.
  - **Alignment Quality:** After automatic alignment calculation, LiDAR360 will figure out the alignment quality and show the result in [the alignment quality result tab](#).
    - **Min Error:** Minimum error of matched corresponding points.
    - **Max Error:** Maximum error of matched corresponding points.
    - **RMSE:** RSE error of matched corresponding points.
  - **Transform Type:**
    - **Loaded Point Cloud:** The loaded point cloud which is matched with trajectory in LiDAR360. When the transformation is applied, the corresponding point cloud is modified and the transformation effect can be shown in real-time. When boresight module exits, relevant transformation is eliminated without saving.
    - **Selected Point Cloud Files:** In this type, the file list area on the interface will be activated, users can choose which point cloud file(s) will participate in the transformation. Then the results will be saved to the file. It doesn't loss the information even though the boresight module exits.
- **Parameters of Cut Overlap:**
  - **Type:**
    - **Classify:** Classify points into target category and save the result in the original point cloud file.
    - **Delete:** Classify points into target category and then delete them from initial point cloud data (Note: If the input point cloud contains points of target category, they will also be removed).
  - **From Class:** Point cloud target category.
  - **Edge:** Grid unit size (length) of overlapping area. This parameter is used to rasterize the point cloud data of the overlapped area.
  - **Density:** Smallest point density of grid unit. If the point density is smaller than the defined threshold, these points will not be classified to redundant points.
  - **By Angle with Trajectory:** Angle between point cloud and trajectory. If this angle is larger than the threshold, the point cloud will be classified to redundant points.
  - **By Scan Angle:** If scanning angle is larger than the threshold, point cloud will be classified to redundant points. (Note: this function can only be used when scanning angle is recorded by point cloud.)

Note:

1. The matching principle of a point cloud file and a trajectory is that: Each GPS time of all the points in the point cloud is inside the trajectory's GPS time span.
2. In most cases, the effect from X,Y or Z is tiny, while the ground control points are needed for higher precision of Z value. Therefore, only Roll, Pitch and Heading are selected to take apart in the adjusting by default.
3. The result may not satisfy if accuracy of the POS data file is not enough, and users can make an manual alignment based on the result.
4. For Overlapped function, at least two pairs of matched point cloud and trajectories are needed.



# Boresight Error Calculation

The boresight error between **laser scanner coordinate system** and **GNSS/INS coordinate system** is the largest systematic error source of airborne LiDAR. The laser footprint error caused by the boresight error also depends on flight height and scanning angle.

LiDAR360 provides two approaches to eliminate the boresight error:

1. Correction based on manual measurement
2. Correction based on automatic adjustment

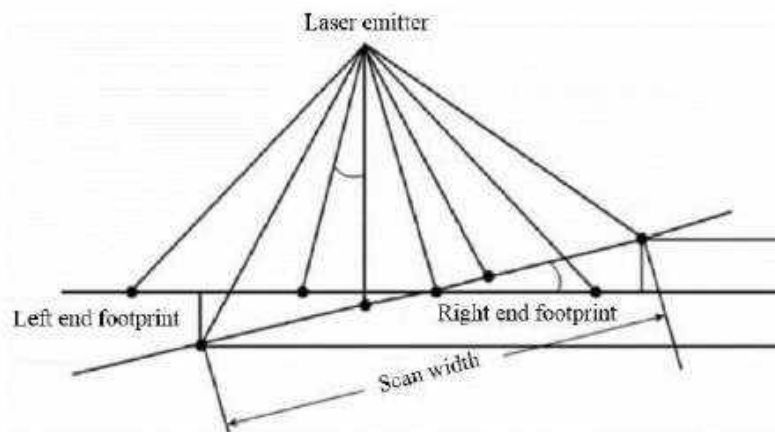
The principles of them are described as follows.

## Manual Correction

Firstly, datasets for calibration need to be acquired during perpendicular and round flights (e.g., 4 flights: from east to west, from west to east, from north to south, from south to north). After data acquisition the boresight angle errors can be retrieved using the *Stepwise Geometric Method* (Zhang et al., 2010), which is based on measurements of overlapping laser footprints of regular objects (e.g., playground, building). Compared to angle errors, the translation errors are of less importance and hence omitted in the manual correction.

## $\Delta$ Roll

Error of Roll angle leads to an oblique result of horizontal ground, which is shown in the following figure. The planar position of scanned object is shifted along scanline (perpendicular to flight direction).



Please measure the following parameters in the data acquired during round flights of same height.

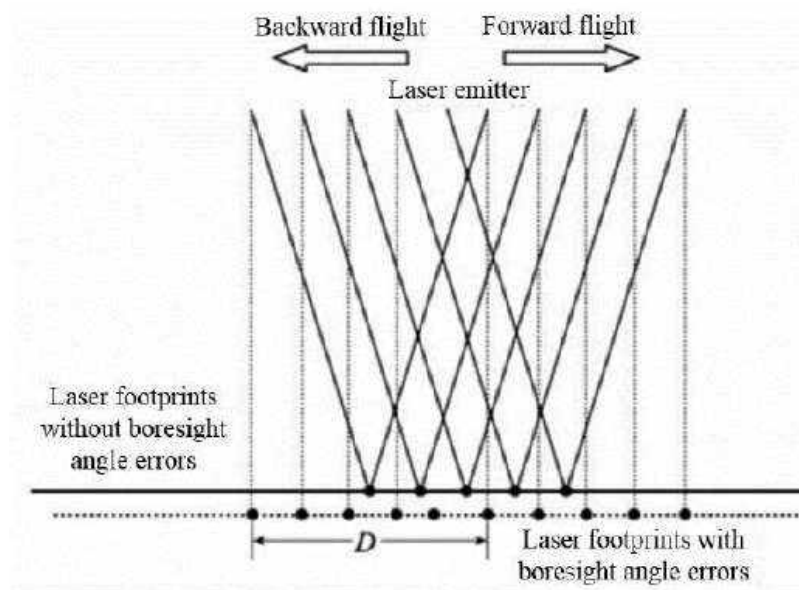
- Start a [Profile Window](#) perpendicular to the flight direction. Then measure the height difference  $\Delta h$  of quasi-homologous objects in two strips.
- Measure the horizontal distance  $r$  between the object and centerline of two strips in [2D-View Window](#).

The formula to calculate the Roll angle error is as follows:

$$\Delta Roll \approx \arctan\left(\frac{\Delta h}{2r}\right)$$

## $\Delta$ Pitch

The position of scanned object is shifted along scanline due to Pitch angle error. The following figure shows the affected laser footprints.



Please measure the following parameters in the data acquired during round flights.

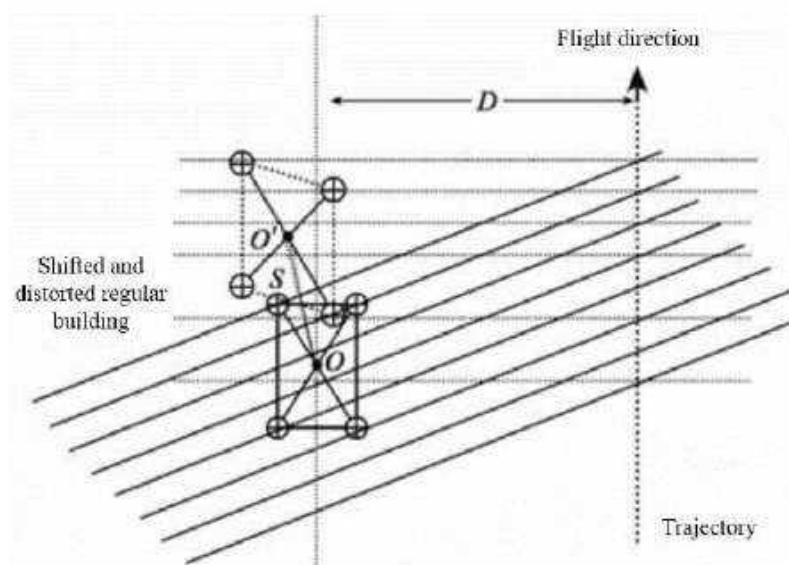
- Start a [Profile Window](#) along the flight direction. Then measure the distance  $D$  between centers of homologous objects along the flight direction.
- Estimate the average flight height  $H$  based on trajectory and object heights. The heights of round flights should be roughly equal.

The formula to calculate the Pitch angle error is as follows:

$$\Delta Pitch \approx \arctan\left(\frac{D}{2H}\right)$$

## **$\Delta$ Heading**

Error of Heading angle leads to object shifting and distortion. The following figure shows the erroneous result.



Please display data acquired during round flights in [2D-View Window](#).

- Measure the average distance  $S$  between centers of homologous objects in two strips.
- Measure the distance  $D$  between two strips.

The formula to calculate the Heading angle error is as follows:

$$\Delta Heading \approx \arctan\left(\frac{S}{D}\right)$$

## Automatic Correction

While the manual correction relies on well-trained operators, the automatic correction can reduce manual work significantly. Based on datasets with regular objects, the automatic process can replace manual correction and achieve equivalent or even better accuracy.

The algorithm is capable of correcting not only the angle errors, but also the translation errors. Users have the flexibility to check/uncheck every correction parameter. By default, the software only calculates the angle errors, because they have the largest weights. The principle of the algorithm is as follows:

1. Extract feature points and their normals in overlapping strips. Please refer to ([Glira et al., 2015](#)).
2. Match the feature points to get corresponding pairs.
3. Construct the correction model and calculate the distances of paired points along their normal.
4. Minimize the corresponding distances using least-square method, and get the correction parameters.

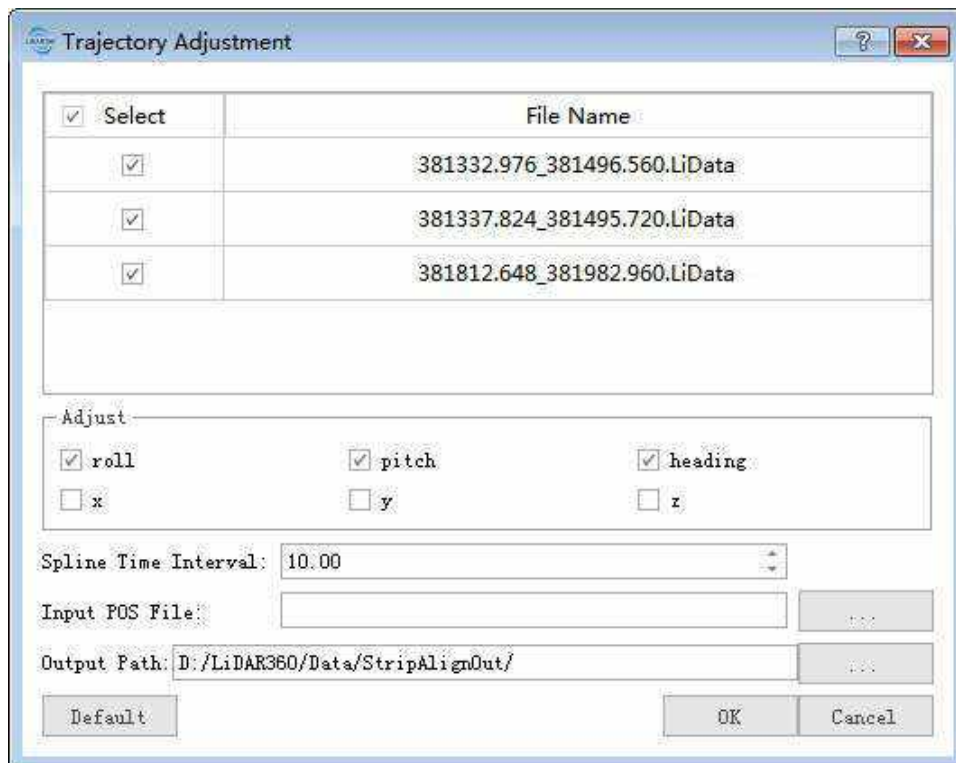
```
@inproceedings{
  author={Zhang Xiaohong, Forsberg Rene},
  title={Retrieval of Airborne Lidar Misalignments Based on the Stepwise Geometric Method},
  booktitle={Survey Review 42(316):176-192 April 2010},
  year={2010},
}
```

```
@inproceedings{
  author={Philipp Glira, Norbert Pfeifer, Christan Briese and Camillo Ressel},
  title={A Correspondence Framework for ALS Strip Adjustments based on Variants of the ICP Algorithm},
  booktitle={PFG Photogrammetrie, Fernerkundung, Geoinformation Jahrgang 2015 Heft 4},
  year={2015},
}
```

# Trajectory Adjustment

If point cloud discrepancies are still obvious after [Boresight](#), the misalignment may be caused by trajectory errors. With this tool, trajectories and related point clouds can be post-processed and refined.

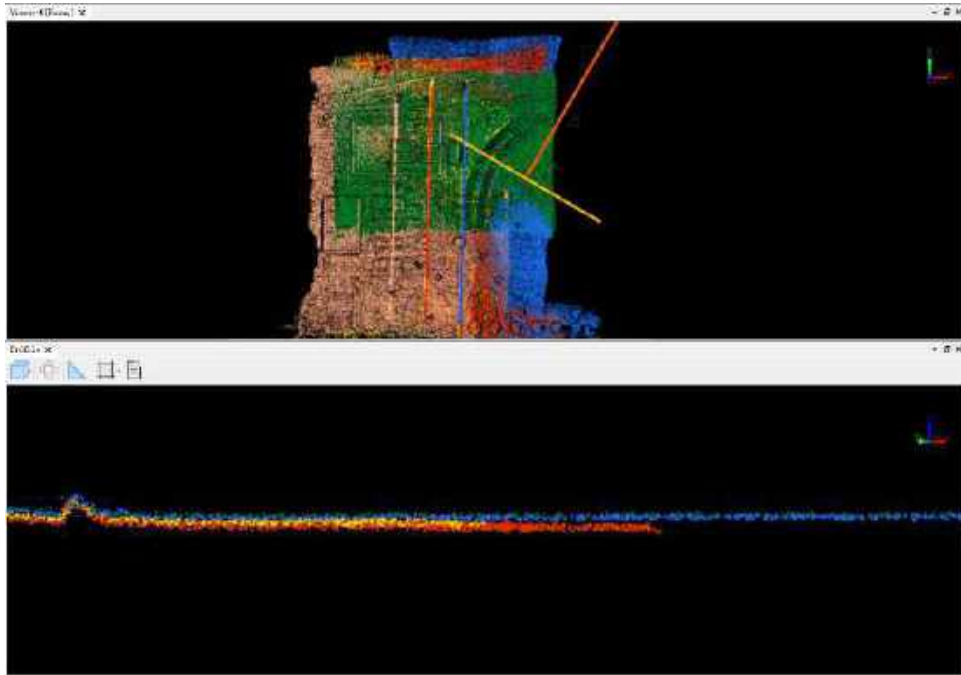
Click the button *Strip Alignment>Trajectory Adjustment*, the interface will pop up. This function estimates fluctuating errors of trajectory, then updates point clouds based on correction values.



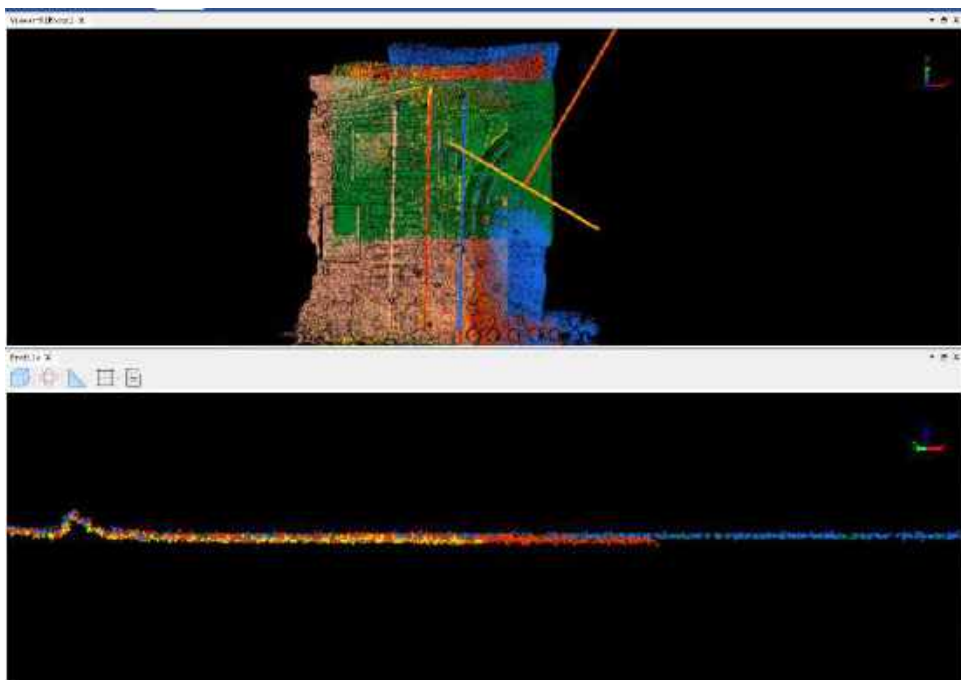
Check trajectory correction components on the interface, set spline node interval for trajectory fluctuation, click OK button, then the software runs automatically. Point cloud data will be corrected accordingly.

A quality report in HTML format will be generated after correction.

You can use profile tool to view the correction results, as shown below.



Before correction



After correction

## Parameter settings

- **Adjust**
  - $\Delta X/\Delta Y/\Delta Z$ : position components of trajectory correction.
  - $\Delta Roll/\Delta Pitch/\Delta Heading$ : angular components of trajectory correction.
- **Spline Node Interval (Sec)**: Fluctuating corrections for trajectory are calculated based on spline nodes. The smaller the interval, the higher the fluctuation's frequency. A smaller interval is preferred if trajectory errors vary a lot in local region. Default value is valid for most data.
- **Input POS**: Input the corresponding POS file of the point cloud.
- **Output**: Select the output path for adjusted result data, including point cloud, trajectory and HTML quality

report.

# Control Point Report

## Summary

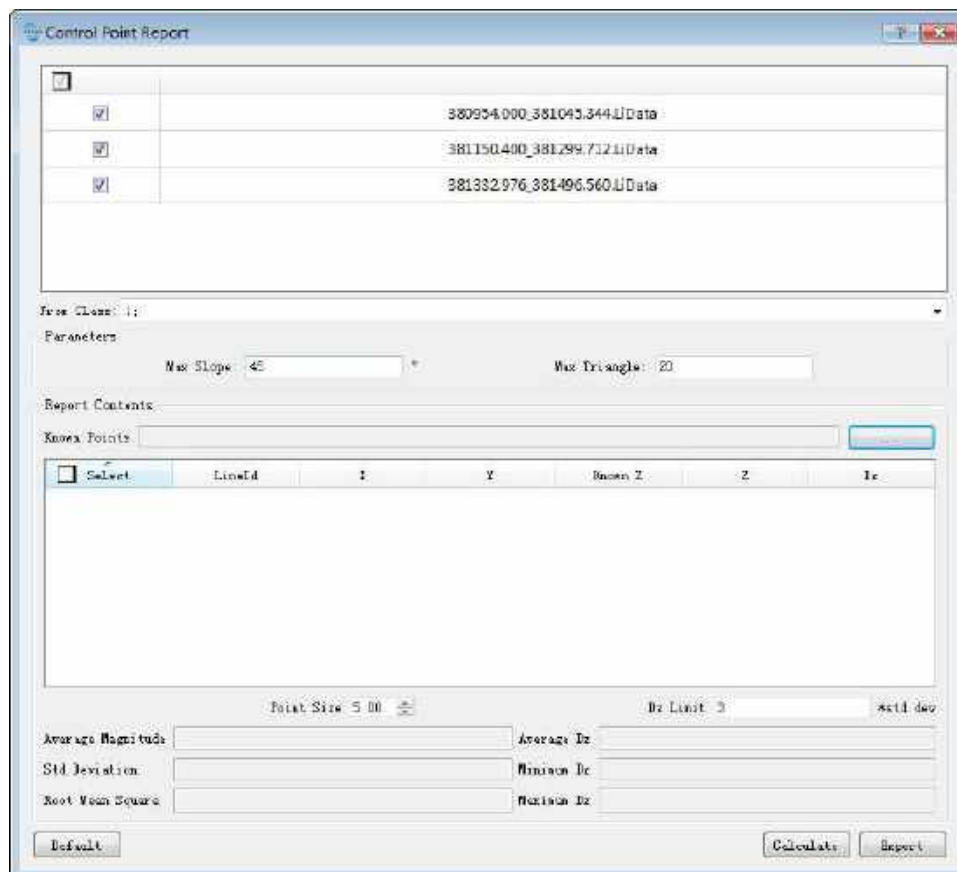
Control point report tool will create a report about elevation difference of laser point clouds and ground control points, which can be used to check the elevation accuracy of laser point clouds and improve the height accuracy of laser point clouds using calculated adjusted values.

Control point file is the text file separated by comma. Every row is composed by 3 columns which are X, Y and Z. The first row is the header, and please refer to [Control Point File Format](#) for specified format. At least 3 control points are requested to successfully create the control point report.

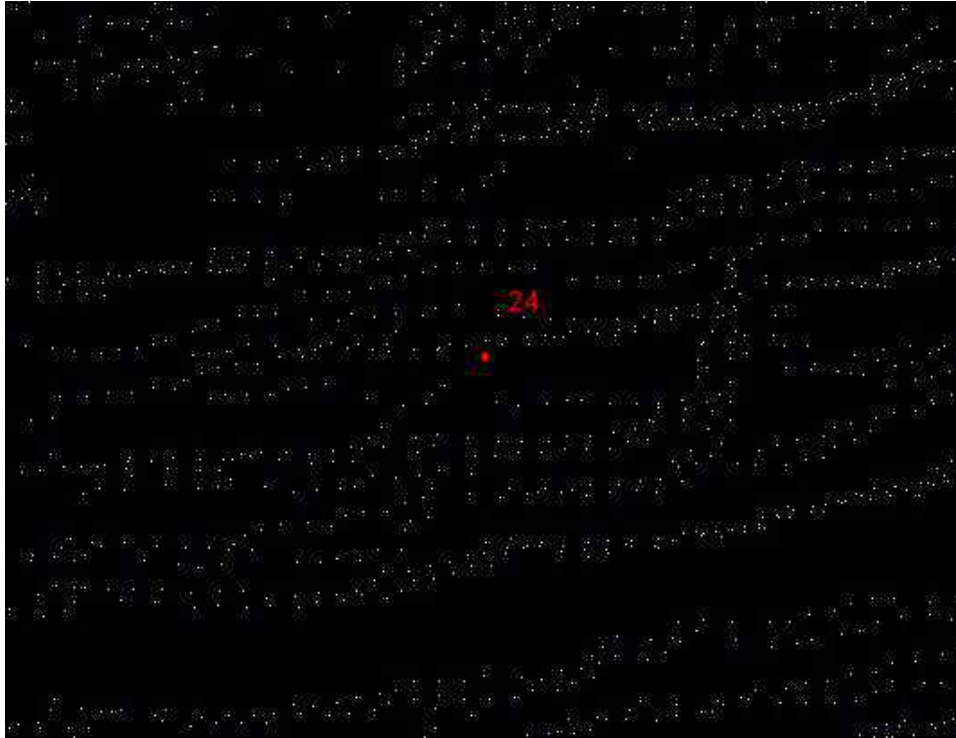
The output report displays information of elevation difference between used laser point clouds and control points of elevation, statistic information of height difference like average magnitude, standard deviation, root mean square, average of elevation difference as well as maximum and minimum height difference.

## Usage

Click *Strip Alignment > Control Point Report*.



After computation, the position of every control point can be checked by left double click at any position on the control point row in order to jump to the location of control point. Using [Profile](#) tool can help to check the relative position between control points and point cloud more intuitively.



After the calculation, users can choose the control points, or change the maximum slope and maximum triangle edge length, and then click "Calculate" to re-calculate.

## Settings

- **Input Data:** Input file can be single point cloud data file or point cloud data set.
- **From Class (default value is "all class"):** User needs to select the point cloud class which is used to check control point elevation accuracy, and normally point cloud of hard surface such as ground point, construction point, etc. are chosen.
- **Z tolerance (default value is "0.15"):** The accuracy of the point cloud in the Z-axis direction. To avoid the distance between the points is too small leads to the excessive slope.
- **Max Slope (°, default value is "45"):** Maximum terrestrial gradient tolerance. If gradient is larger than this value, elevation difference will not be computed. Normally control points are chosen at the flat terrain, therefore if gradient is too steep, the result will be easily affected by wrong information.
- **Max Triangle (m, default value is "20"):** The longest side length of triangle is used to avoiding the large deviation caused by elevation interpolation. If the side length of triangle is too long, it is indicated that points of initial category in point cloud area where control points are located are less and calculated error of elevation difference is large.
- **Known Points:** Input control point file.
- **Point Size (default value is "0.10"):** The location of control points can be displayed in the window by double clicking the corresponding data in the list of control point report. The size of point controls the size of control points shown in the window.
- **Dz limit (default value is "3"):** Set the tolerance of Dz. If Dz is not within the tolerance, show red in order to inspect elevation difference with large error between point cloud and control points. Maximum tolerance = Average Dz + Dz × Std Deviation. Minimum tolerance = Average Dz - Dz × Std Deviation.
- **Calculate:** After setting parameters, click this button to calculate elevation difference.
- **Export:** Export control point report file of TXT format. The file contains elevation error information of point cloud data and statistical information of Dz.



# Trajectory Quality Analysis

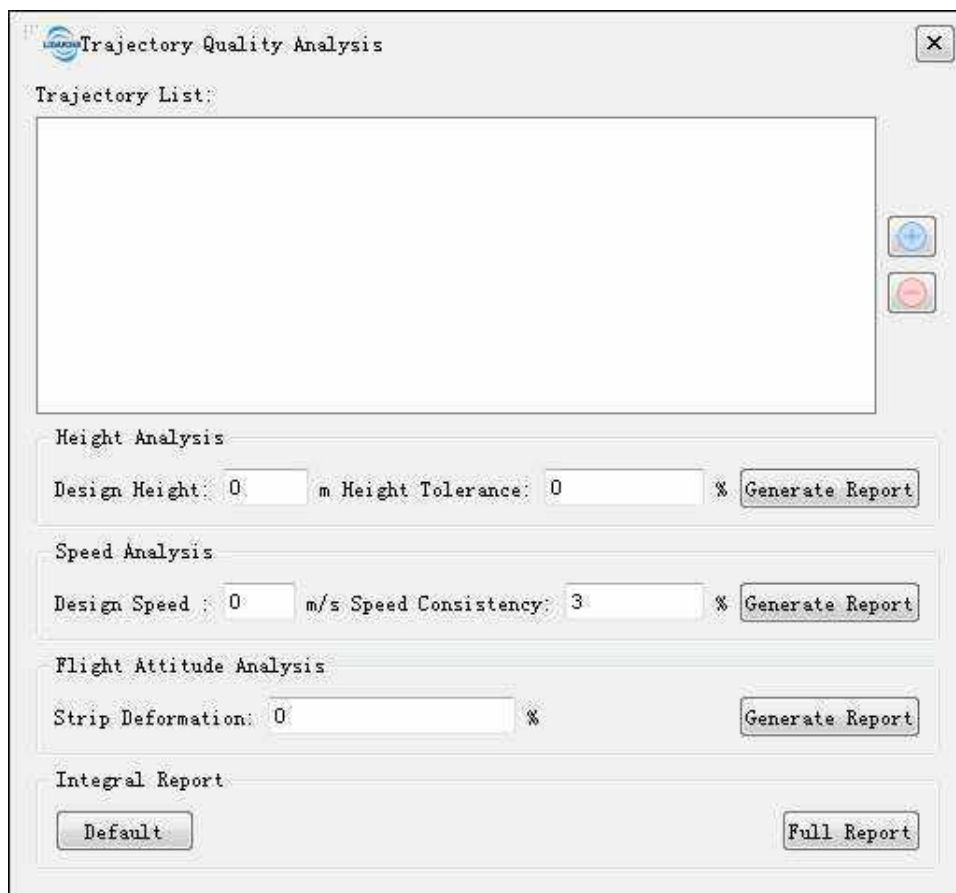
## Summary

**Trajectory Quality Analysis** tool checks trajectory quality from the height analysis, speed analysis and flight attitude analysis.



## Usage

Click *Strip Alignment* > *Trajectory Quality Analysis*.

Load trajectory file(s) and set the parameters of height analysis, speed analysis and flight attitude analysis. This tool supports generating reports for each analysis. Click **Export** to save the quality report in html format.



The screenshot shows the 'Trajectory Quality Analysis' window. At the top, there is a title bar with the software name and a close button. Below the title bar is a 'Trajectory List' section with a large empty text area and two buttons: a blue '+' button and a red '-' button. The main area is divided into four sections: 'Height Analysis' with 'Design Height: 0 m' and 'Height Tolerance: 0 %' and a 'Generate Report' button; 'Speed Analysis' with 'Design Speed: 0 m/s' and 'Speed Consistency: 3 %' and a 'Generate Report' button; 'Flight Attitude Analysis' with 'Strip Deformation: 0 %' and a 'Generate Report' button; and 'Integral Report' with 'Default' and 'Full Report' buttons.

Click  to load data. The supported formats of POS files contain \*.OUT and \*.pos. Click  to clear loaded data.

## Settings

- **Height Analysis:** Height analysis report contains strip name, max height, min height, height difference, height variance, mean height and qualified flag of each strip. The Yes is qualified, and No is unqualified. The mean height of qualified strip is displayed as green, or as red. Click **Export** button to save the result in html format.
- **Design Height (m, default value is "0"):** Designed height value.

- **Height Tolerance (% , default value is "0"):** The floating ratio of designed height. For example, 5% denotes that the qualified height range is between  $(1 - 5\%) \times$  designed height and  $(1 + 5\%) \times$  designed height.
- **Generate Report:** Click **Generate Report** button to save height analysis quality report.

Strip Name	Max Height	Min Height	Height Difference	Height Variance	Mean Height	Qualified
D:\sampledata\UDAR190\20160304\180665496_181078.024.csv	398.517000	360.667000	38.450000	64.377889	379.542100	No
D:\sampledata\UDAR190\20160304\181119.184_181120.968.csv	379.214000	349.045000	0.710000	0.042288	374.299250	Yes
D:\sampledata\UDAR190\20160304\181119.424_181119.424.csv	355.305000	559.167000	3.138000	1.269294	253.986000	Yes
D:\sampledata\UDAR190\20160304\181342.864_181513.620.csv	208.750000	259.536000	79.223000	266.643466	233.679800	Yes
D:\sampledata\UDAR190\20160304\182572.256_183743.824.csv	354.448000	337.423000	27.627000	55.303872	345.944100	Yes
D:\sampledata\UDAR190\20160304\183823.424_182011.720.csv	382.828000	295.560000	86.158000	408.292585	339.294000	Yes
D:\sampledata\UDAR190\20160304\182046.192_182217.536.csv	421.123000	354.149000	68.974000	215.674719	333.991700	No
D:\sampledata\UDAR190\20160304\182213.224_182492.880.csv	378.174000	339.346000	38.828000	127.109463	358.979000	Yes
D:\sampledata\UDAR190\20160304\182510.832_182774.896.csv	451.497000	344.309000	77.189000	314.540597	371.703000	No

- **Speed Analysis:** The speed analysis report contains strip name, max speed, min speed, speed difference, speed variance, mean speed and qualified flag of each strip. The mean speed of qualified strip is displayed as green, or as red. Click *Export* button to save the result in HTML format.
- **Design Speed (m/s, default value is "0"):** Designed speed value.
- **Speed Consistency (% , default value is "0"):** The floating ratio of designed speed. For example, 5% denotes that the qualified speed range is between  $(1 - 5\%) \times$  designed speed and  $(1 + 5\%) \times$  designed speed.
- **Generate Report:** Click **Generate Report** button to save speed analysis quality report.

Strip Name	Max Speed	Min Speed	Speed Difference	Speed Variance	Mean Speed	Qualified
D:\sampledata\UDAR190\20160304\180665496_181078.024.csv	25.396178	22.863746	2.532432	0.306447	24.140000	Yes
D:\sampledata\UDAR190\20160304\181119.184_181120.968.csv	25.396178	22.863746	2.532432	0.299597	24.127000	Yes
D:\sampledata\UDAR190\20160304\181119.424_181119.424.csv	25.396178	22.863746	2.532432	0.277938	24.126000	Yes
D:\sampledata\UDAR190\20160304\181342.864_181513.620.csv	25.980200	21.365720	4.614480	0.456926	24.300000	Yes
D:\sampledata\UDAR190\20160304\182572.256_183743.824.csv	28.495629	21.365720	7.129909	0.209724	24.577100	Yes
D:\sampledata\UDAR190\20160304\183823.424_182011.720.csv	26.495629	21.365720	5.129909	0.649213	24.200000	Yes
D:\sampledata\UDAR190\20160304\182046.192_182217.536.csv	28.952229	21.365720	7.586509	0.546900	24.400000	Yes
D:\sampledata\UDAR190\20160304\182213.224_182492.880.csv	28.952229	21.365720	7.586509	0.289407	24.200000	Yes
D:\sampledata\UDAR190\20160304\182510.832_182774.896.csv	37.707175	21.365720	16.341455	1.103391	24.764100	Yes

- **Flight Attitude Analysis:** Flight attitude analysis report contains strip name, max roll, mean roll, max pitch, mean pitch, strip deformation (%) and qualified flag of each strip. The Yes is qualified, and No is unqualified. The strip deformation of qualified strip is displayed as green, or as red. Click **Export** button to save the result in html format.
- **Strip Deformation (% , default value is "3"):** According to the related data standard, the qualified threshold of strip deformation is generally set to 3%.
- **Generate Report:** Click **Generate Report** button to save flight attitude analysis quality report.

	Strip Name	Max Roll	Mean Roll	Max Pitch	Mean Pitch	rip Deformation?	Qual/Tied
1	D:\sampledata\UDAR16Q\20166804\180665436_181078.024.pps	0.139347	0.053389	0.980410	0.017202	0.000004	Yes
2	D:\sampledata\UDAR16Q\20166804\181119.184_181120.988.pps	0.075823	0.066235	-0.126734	-0.290275	0.017111	No
3	D:\sampledata\UDAR16Q\20166804\181178.424_181183.424.pps	0.097426	0.032323	-0.399158	0.448768	0.138075	No
4	D:\sampledata\UDAR16Q\20166804\181242.864_181243.900.pps	0.157269	0.052235	0.210310	0.028488	0.028803	Yes
5	D:\sampledata\UDAR16Q\20166804\181272.236_181743.824.pps	0.112046	0.090136	0.250300	0.024094	0.029021	Yes
6	D:\sampledata\UDAR16Q\20166804\181822.424_182011.720.pps	0.176866	0.072513	0.479725	0.047400	0.035589	No
7	D:\sampledata\UDAR16Q\20166804\182046.192_182217.536.pps	0.132483	0.057752	0.188747	0.031398	0.030407	Yes
8	D:\sampledata\UDAR16Q\20166804\182213.224_182492.880.pps	0.101122	0.018927	0.256978	0.038257	0.040158	Yes
9	D:\sampledata\UDAR16Q\20166804\182510.832_182074.896.pps	0.131206	0.047944	0.148180	0.077442	0.010583	Yes

- **Integral Report:** Click **Full Report** button to save the integral report.

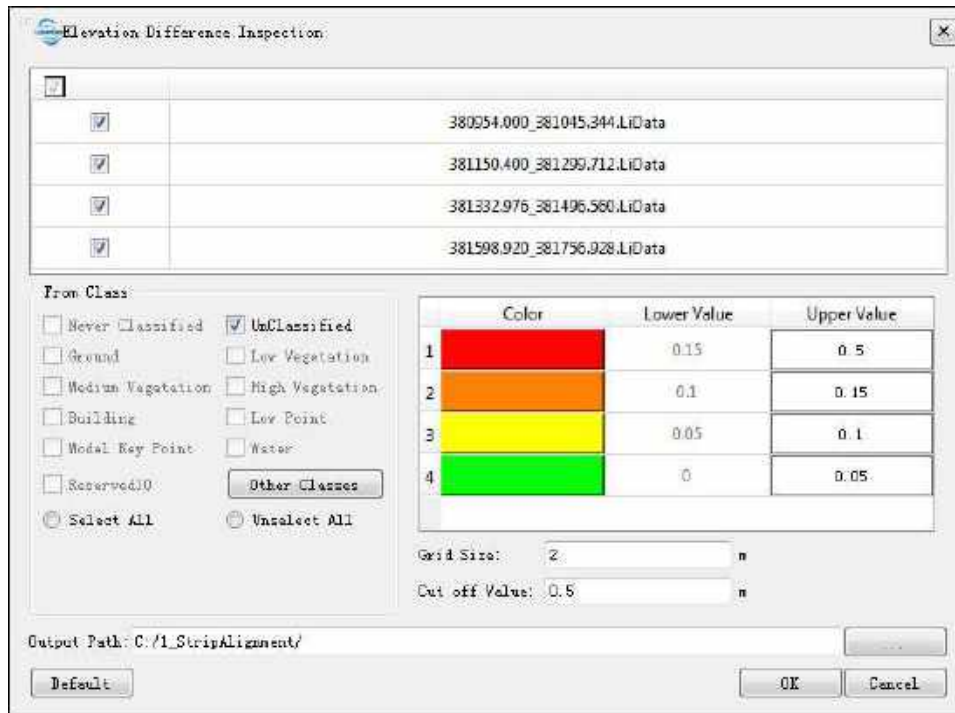
# Elevation Difference Inspection

## Summary

Elevation Difference Inspection tool analyzes the elevation difference between point clouds.

## Usage

Click *Strip Alignment > Elevation Difference Inspection*



## Settings

- **Input Data:** Input files can be single point cloud file or point cloud dataset. The data to be processed must be opened in the LiDAR360.
- **From Class:** The point cloud classes used in the elevation difference quality inspection.
- **Grid Size (m, default value is "2"):** The grid size in the point cloud gridding.
- **Cut off Value (m, default value is "0.5"):** The data will be ignored if the height difference is greater than this threshold. Considering the moving vehicles in the scanning area which can be scanned at different time, it is necessary to set the cut off value for height difference.
- **Output Path:** The results of elevation difference quality inspection will be exported to the selected folder, which contains the result of each strip density quality inspection and integral report in HTML format.

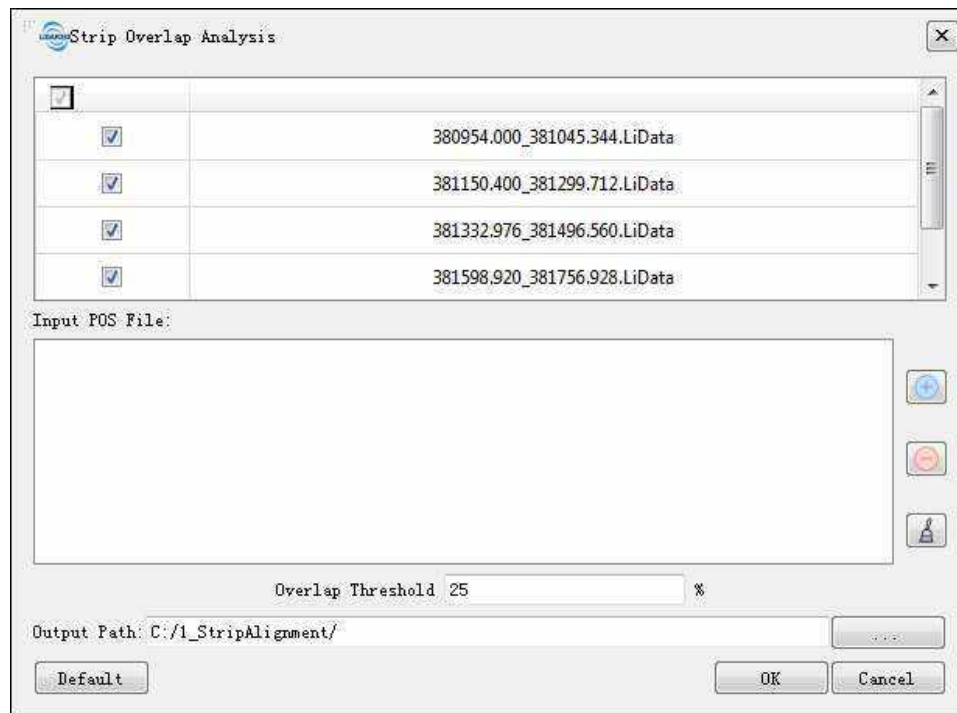
# Strip Overlap Analysis

## Summary




**Strip Overlap Analysis** tool analyzes the overlap between point clouds.

## Usage

Click *Strip Alignment* > *Strip Overlap Analysis*



## Settings

- **Input Data:** The input files should be 2 or more point cloud files. The data to be processed must be pre-opened in LiDAR360.
- **Input POS File:** Click  to load the data. The supported formats of POS files include \*.OUT and \*.pos. Click  to clear the loaded data. Click  to clear the loaded POS file(s).
- **Overlap Threshold (% , default value is "25"):** Set the threshold to define the overlap region between two adjacent strips.
- **Output Path:** The results of overlap quality inspection will be exported to the selected folder, which contains the results of each strip overlap quality inspection in SHP format and a comprehensive report in html format.

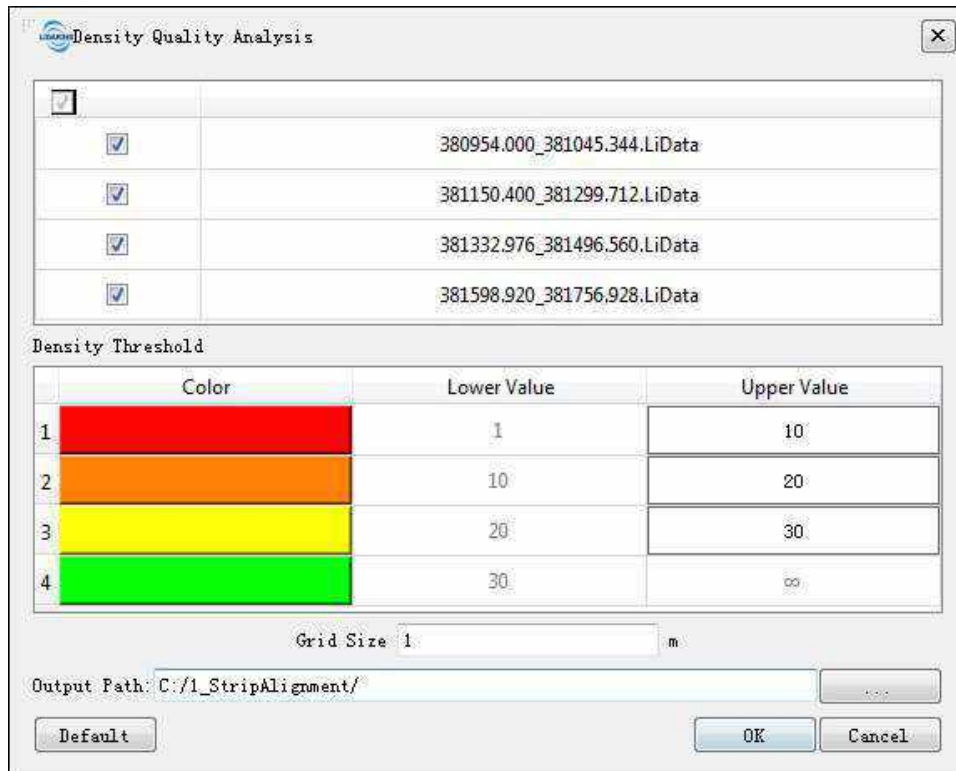
# Density Quality Analysis

## Summary

Density Quality Analysis tool analyzes the density of point cloud.

## Usage

Click *Strip Alignment* > *Density Quality Analysis*



## Settings

- **Input Data:** Input file can be single point cloud file or point cloud dataset. The data to be processed must be opened in the LiDAR360.
- **Density Threshold:** The point density between the adjacent thresholds is shown in the corresponding color.
- **Grid Size (m, default value is "1"):** The grid size in the point cloud gridding.
- **Output path:** Select the output path of density inspection quality report. The folder contains the results of each strip density quality inspection and integral report in html format.

# Data Management

This chapter introduces the basic tools commonly used for point cloud and raster data processing. Contents include: point cloud tools, raster tools, clip tools, format conversion and data extraction.

- [Point Cloud Tools](#)
  - [Remove Outliers](#)
  - [Noise Filter](#)
  - [Normalize by DEM](#)
  - [Normalize by Ground Points](#)
  - [Demormalization](#)
  - [Tile by Range](#)
  - [Tile by Point Number](#)
  - [Merge](#)
  - [Extract Point Cloud Boundary](#)
  - [Subsampling](#)
  - [PCV](#)
  - [Extract Color from Image](#)
  - [Subdivision](#)
  - [Transform GPS Time](#)
  - [Smooth Points](#)
- [Raster Tools](#)
  - [Band Calculator](#)
  - [Raster Mosaic](#)
  - [Raster Subdivision](#)
- [Projections and Transformations](#)
  - [Define Projection](#)
  - [Reproject](#)
  - [Transformation](#)
  - [Elevation Adjustment](#)
  - [Four-parameters Solution](#)
  - [Seven-parameters Solution](#)
  - [ICP Registration](#)

- Convert ASCII to BLH
- Manual Registration
- Manual Rotation and Transformation
- Clip
  - Clip by Circle
  - Clip by Rectangle
  - Clip by Polygon
- Conversion
  - Convert Las to LiData
  - Convert to Las
  - Convert LiData to LiData
  - Convert to ASCII
  - Convert to E57
  - Convert to TIFF
  - Convert to Shape
  - Convert to DXF
  - Convert TIFF to LiModel
  - Convert to Texture LiModel
  - Convert LiModel to TIFF
  - Convert TIFF to ASCII
  - Convert TIFF to LiData
  - Convert LiTin to DXF
  - Convert Shape to KML
  - Convert KML to Shape
- Extract
  - Extract by Class
  - Extract by Elevation
  - Extract by Intensity
  - Extract by Return
  - Extract by Time



# Point Cloud Tools

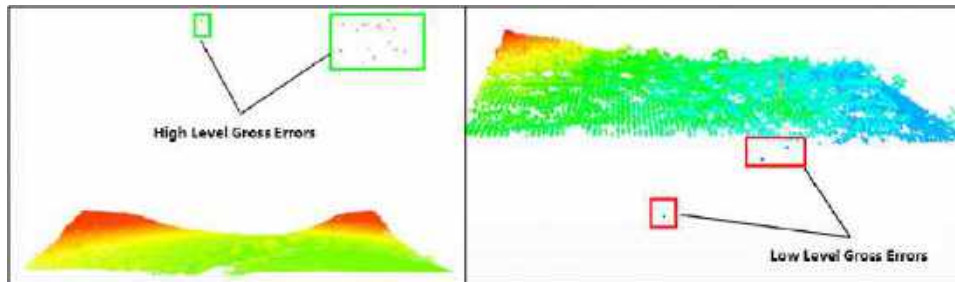
The point cloud tools include the following point cloud processing functions:

- [Remove Outliers](#)
- [Noise Filter](#)
- [Normalize by DEM](#)
- [Normalize by Ground Points](#)
- [Denormalize](#)
- [Tile by Range](#)
- [Tile by Point Number](#)
- [Merge](#)
- [Extract Point Cloud Boundary](#)
- [Subsampling](#)
- [PCV](#)
- [Extract Color from Image](#)
- [Subdivision](#)
- [Transform GPS Time](#)
- [Smooth Points](#)

# Remove Outliers

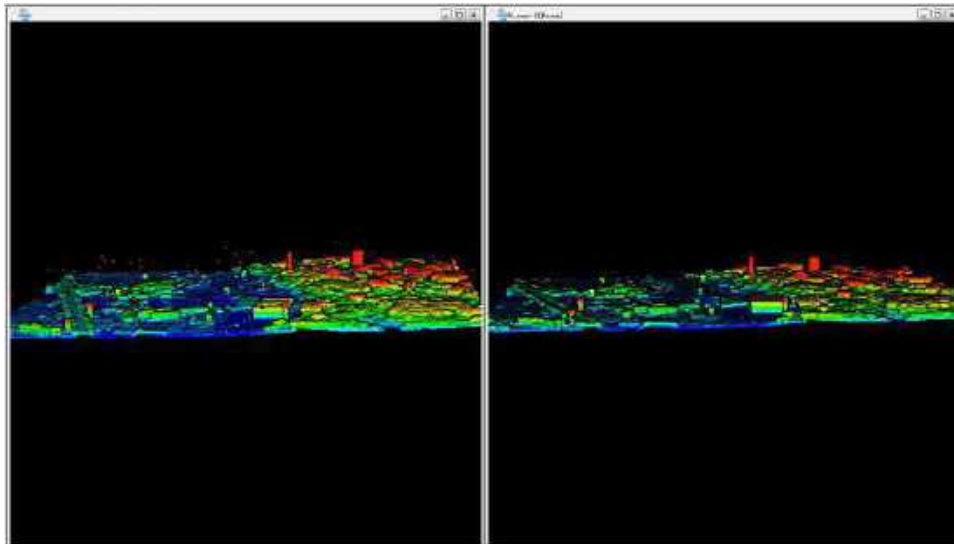
## Summary

Common noises include high level gross errors and low level gross errors. As shown below, high level gross error is usually caused by the returns of high-flying objects (such as birds or aircraft) during the process of data collection; low-level gross error are returns with extremely low attitudes caused by the multipath effect of a laser pulse. The Outlier Removal tool aims to remove these errors as much as possible and therefore improve the data quality.



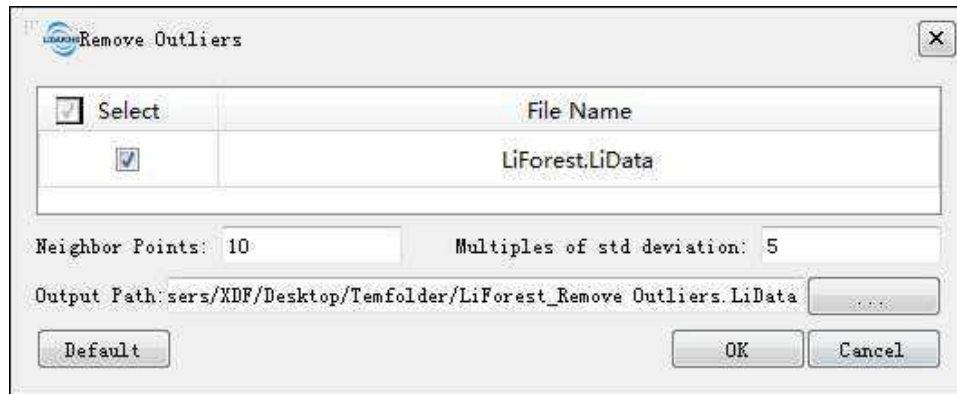
The algorithm will first search for each point's neighboring points within a user-defined area and calculate the average distance from the point to its neighboring points. Then, the mean and standard deviation of these average distances for all points are calculated. If the average distance of a point to its neighbors is larger than maximum distance (maximum distance = mean + n \* standard deviation, where n is a user-defined multiple number), it will be considered as an outlier and be removed from the original point cloud.

Effect picture:



## Usage

Click *Data Management > Point Cloud Tools > Remove Outliers*



## Settings

- **Input Data:** The input file can be a single point cloud data file or multiple data files. File Format: \*.LiData.
- **Neighbor Points (default value is "10"):** The number of points required in the neighborhood to calculate the average distance of each point. If there are not enough points found, the algorithm will not be executed.
- **Multiples of std deviation (default value is "5"):** The factor multiplied by the standard deviation to calculate the maximum distance.
- **Output path:** Path of the output file. After the function being executed, a new file will be generated. When more than one files are entered, the path needs to be set to a folder.

Note: The algorithm of this function can be performed repeatedly to improve the denoising results. The outlier removal results is limited if the noises are to dense.

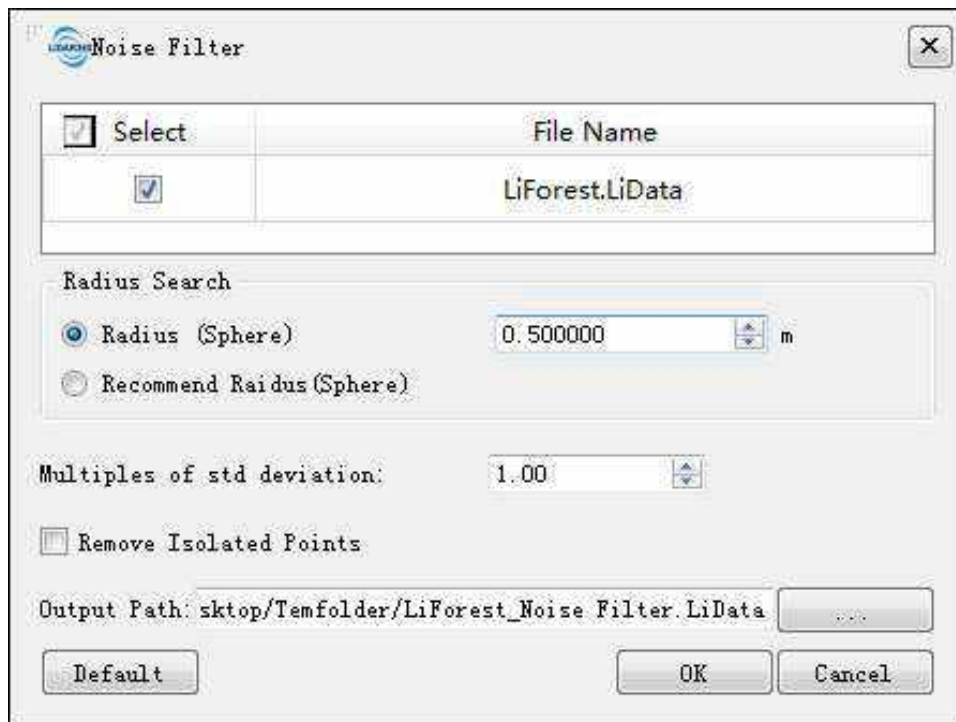
# Noise Filter

## Summary

Remove the outliers from the point cloud data. Different from the remove outliers function, this function has a better processing performance (filters more outliers) on objects with a flat surface (such as walls, interior tunnel walls, and the ground).

## Usage

Click *Data Management > Point Cloud Tools > Noise Filter*.



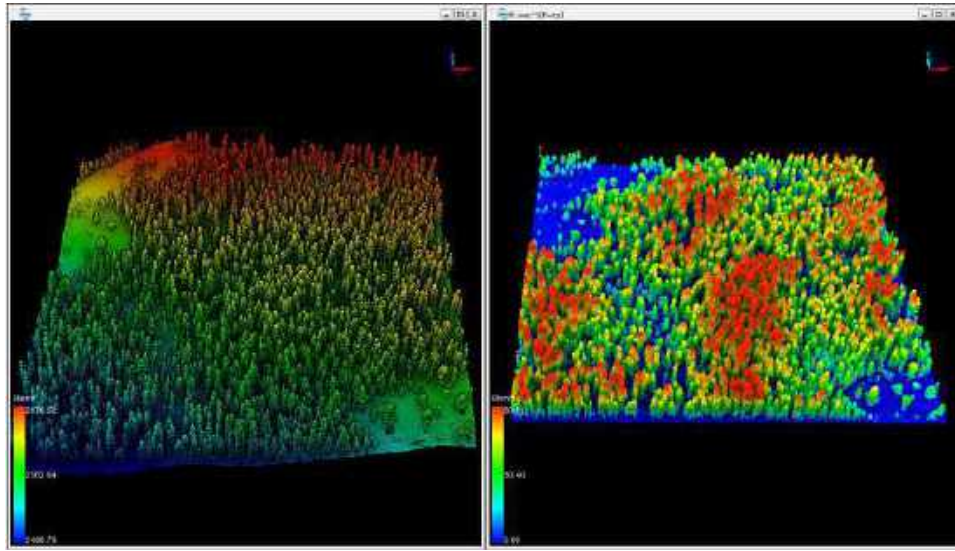
## Settings

- **Input Data:** The input data can be a single point cloud file, or can be a point cloud data collection; these data to be processed must be pre-opened in LiDAR360 software.
- **Radius(Default value is “0.5m”):** Set the radius of the fitting plane. This function can be used when users know the approximate density of the point cloud data.
- **Recommended Radius:** Automatically calculate the appropriate searching radius according to the input point cloud data.
- **Multiples of std deviation(Default value is “1.0”):** Using the relative error (sigma) as a parameter for outliers removal. The algorithm will automatically calculate the standard deviation (stddev) of a point P's surrounding fitting plane. If the distance, d, from this point to that plane is less than  $\sigma * stddev$ , this point, P, will be kept. The reduction of this relative error results in removing more points. Conversely, more points will be retained. The change of this parameter will not influence the efficiency.
- **Remove Isolated Points:** The point will be treated as an isolated point when there is less than 4 points within the distance of the searching radius (cannot create a fitting plane with less than 4 points).
- **Output Path:** The point cloud data will be save at this path after the outliers are removed.

# Normalize by DEM

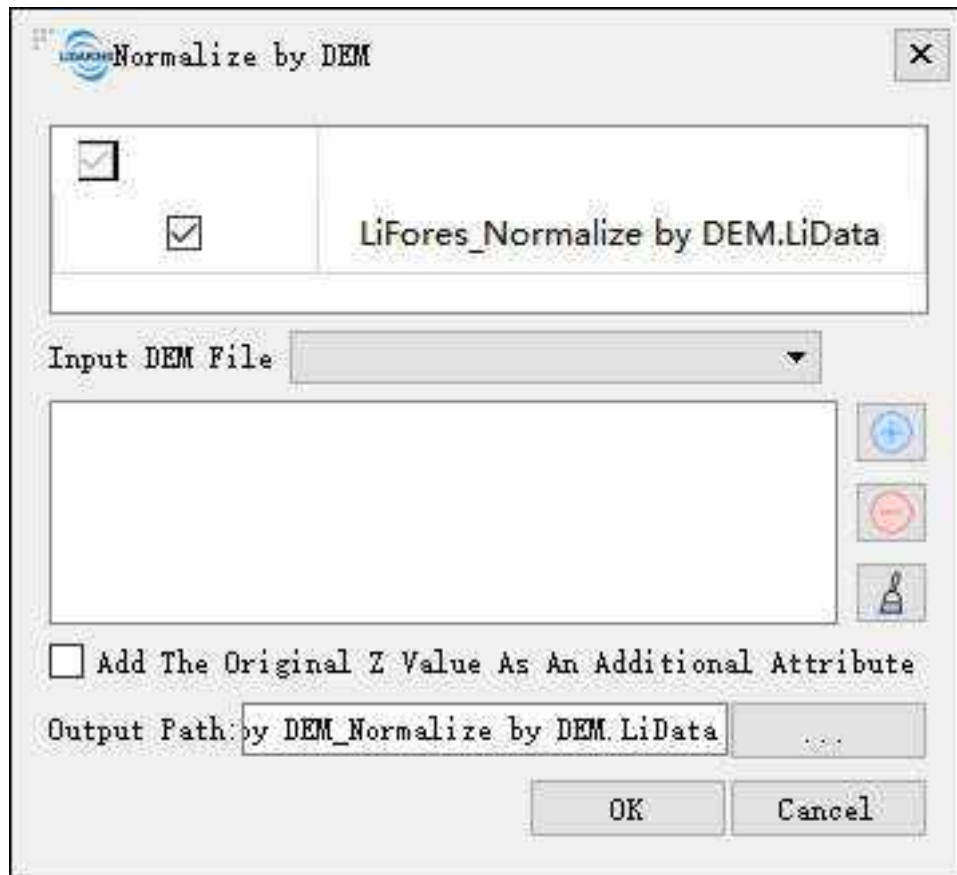
## Summary

The normalization tool can remove the influence of terrain relief on the elevation value of the point cloud data. This function requires that the extent of the DEM overlaps with the extent of the point cloud data. The normalization process is performed by subtracting the corresponding terrain elevation of the DEM from each point's Z value. The output of this function is similar to [Normalize by Ground Class](#).






## Usage

Click *Data Management > Point Cloud Tools > Normalize by DEM*



## Settings

- **Input Data:** The input file can be a single point cloud data file or multiple data files. File Format: \*.LiData.
- **Input DEM File:** Users can select single or multiple single-band TIFF image files from the drop-down list. File format: \*.tif.
- : Users can add external DEM file data.
- : Users can select a file in the list and click this button to remove the file from the list.
- : Click this button to clear all the data in the list.
- **Add Z Value to Additional Attributes:** Add the Z value of the current point cloud to the additional attribute table. If this option is not checked, then the normalized point cloud cannot be [denormalized](#).
- **Output Path:** Path of the output file. After the algorithm being executed, the new normalized file will be generated. When entering more than one file, the path will need to be set as a folder.

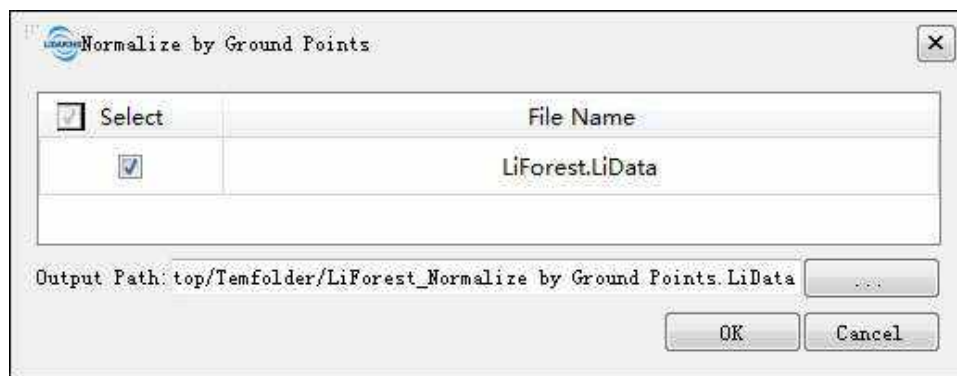
# Normalize by Ground Points

## Summary

The normalization tool can remove the effects of topographic relief on the elevation value of point cloud data. This function requires that the input data has already been classified into ground points and non-ground points. The normalization process is performed by subtracting the terrain elevation (represented by the elevation of the closet ground point to each point) from each point's Z value. The output of this function is similar to [Normalize by DEM](#).

## Usage

Click *Data Management > Point Cloud Tools > Normalize by Ground Points*



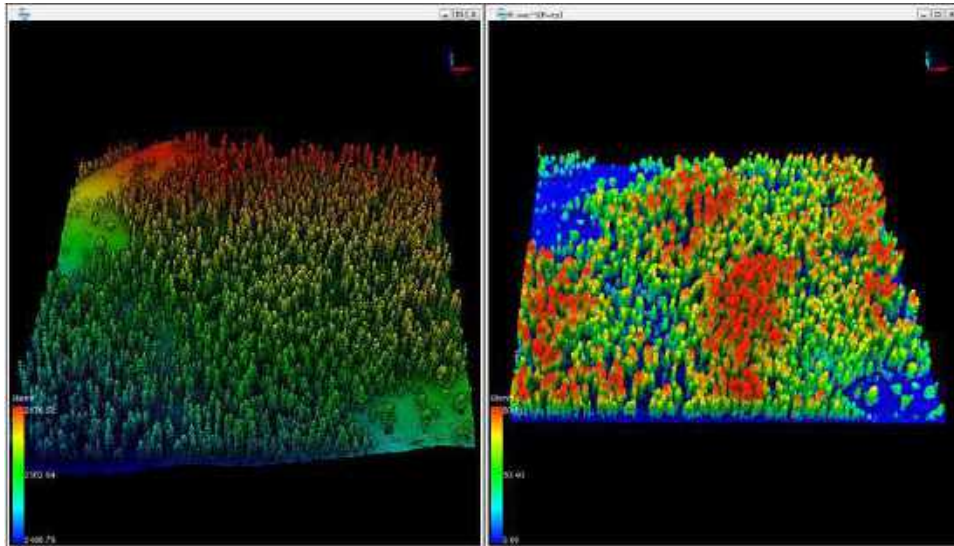
## Settings

- **Input Data:** The input file can be a single point cloud data file or multiple data files. File Format: \*.LiData.
- **Add Z Value to Additional Attributes:** Add the Z value of the current point cloud to the additional attribute table. If this option is not checked, then the normalized point cloud cannot be [denormalized](#).
- **Output path:** Path of the output file. After the function being executed, the normalized new file will be generated. When entering more than one file, the path needs to be set as a folder.

# Denormalize

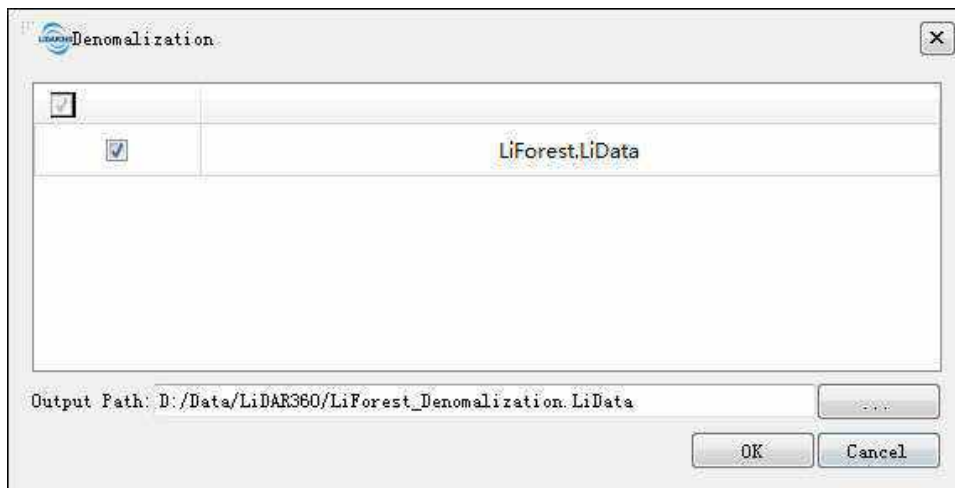
## Summary

Denormalization tool can reset the Z value of the normalized data. Users need to check the option "Add Original Z Value to Additional Attributes" when performing [Normalize by Ground Points](#) or [Normalize by DEM](#). After denormalization, the Z value will be reset as the original Z value stored in the additional attributes.



## Usage

Click *Data Management > Point Cloud Tools > Denormalize*



## Settings

- **Input Data:** The input data could be one or more point cloud files. The input data should be in \*.LiData format.
- **Output Path:** The path of the output data after denormalization. When number of input data sets is more than one, the output path should be a folder.



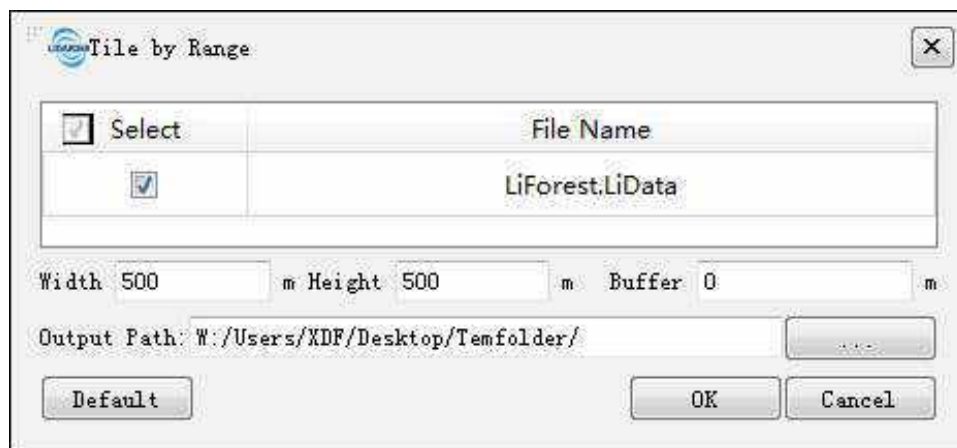
# Tile by Range

## Brief

Tile by Range divides the point cloud into a series of small data files based on the user-defined width ,length and buffer size of the small data file. This process begins from the lower-left corner of the input file's bounding box,the result includes the point cloud blocks data(including buffer) and the blocks boundary stored in the shp file(not including buffer). The output of this function is similar to [Tile by Point Number](#).

## Brief

Click *Data Management > Point Cloud Tools > Tile by Range*



## Settings

- **Input Data:** The input file can be a single point cloud data file or multiple data files. File Format: \*.LiData.
- **Width (m)(default value is "500"):** The width of the data block size, which is the length in the X-axis direction.
- **Height (m)(default value is "500"):** The length of the data block size, which is the length in the Y-axis direction.
- **Buffer (m)(default value is "0"):** The extend size of every block in all directions.
- **Output path:** Path of the output folder. After the function being executed, new files will be generated which include the point cloud blocks data(including buffer) and the blocks boundary stored in the shp file(not including buffer).

# Tile by Point Number

## Summary

**Tile by Point Number** divides the point cloud into a series of small data files with a total of user-defined number of points. This process begins from the lower-left corner of the input file's bounding box. The output of this function is similar to [Tile by Range](#).

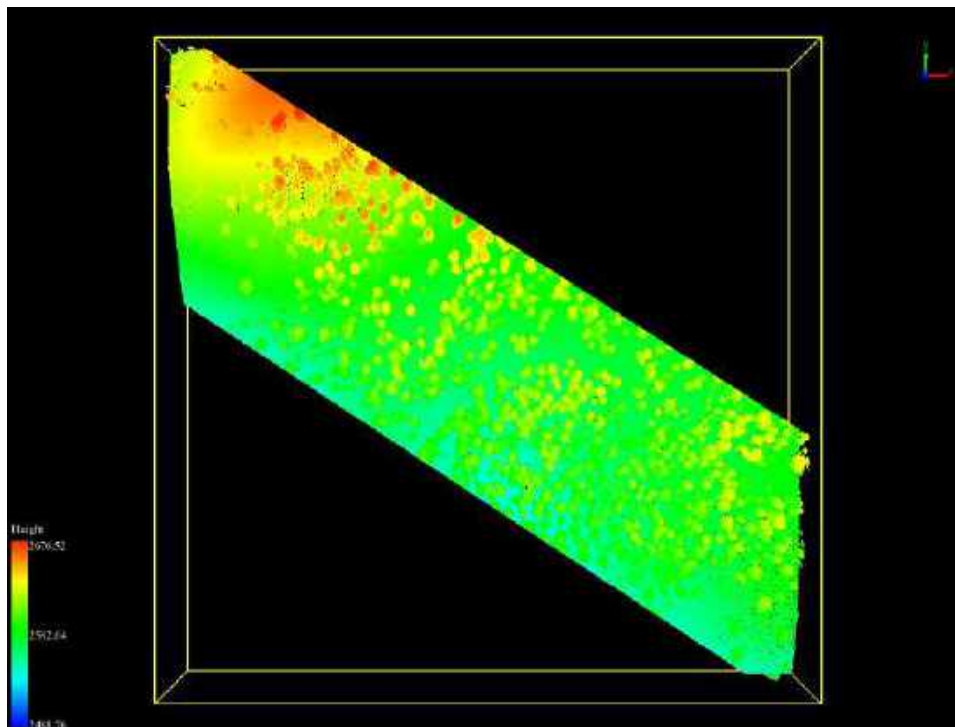
## Principle

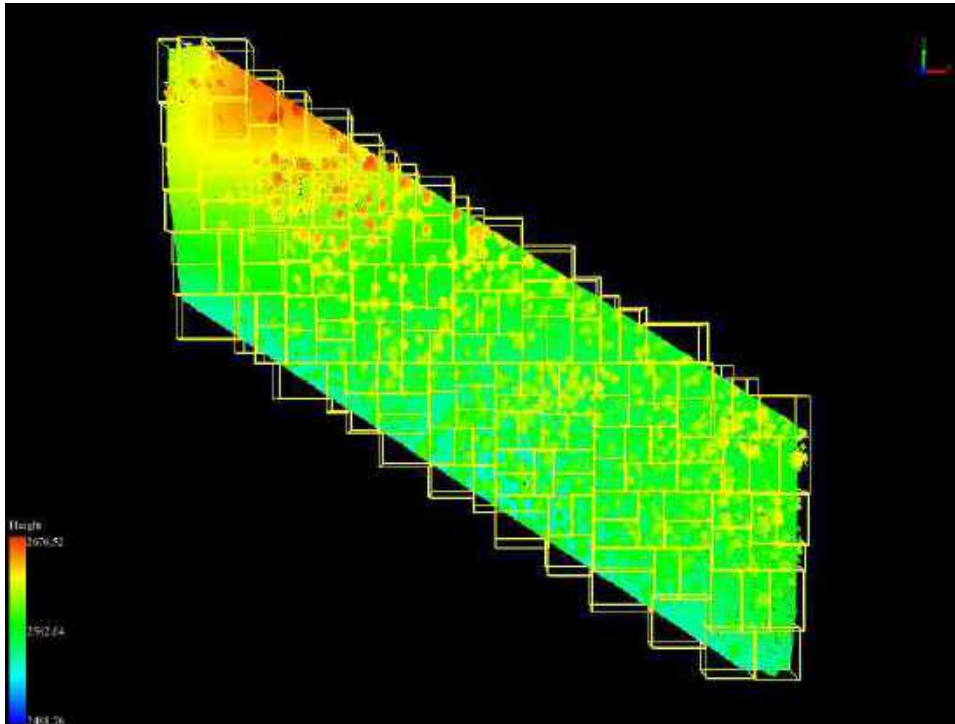
The **Point Number** entered by the user will be recalculated according to the actual number of blocks in the actual chunking process. The formula is as follows:

$$N_{block} = \begin{cases} N_s/N_u, & N_s \% N_u = 0 \\ N_s/N_u + 1, & N_s \% N_u > 0 \end{cases}$$
$$N_{real} = \begin{cases} N_s/N_{block} \\ N_s/N_{block} + 1 \end{cases}$$

Among them,  $N_{block}$  is the number of tiles,  $N_{real}$  is the actual point number of a tile,  $N_s$  is the total number of points in the original file, and  $N_u$  is the user-defined point number.

Effect picture of tile:

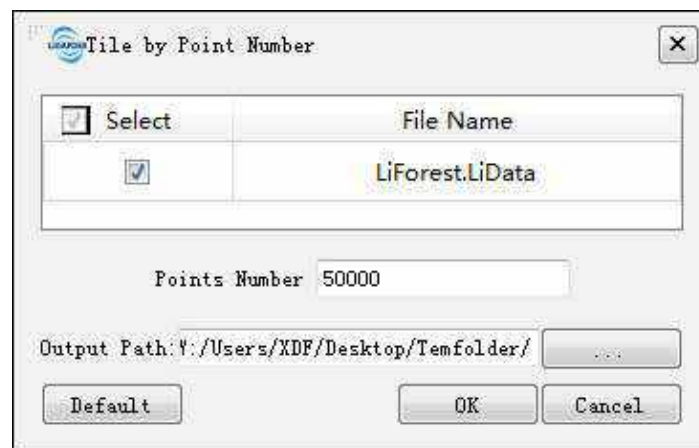




Original point cloud data and point cloud data after chunking by point (different yellow bounding boxes represent different point cloud data).

## Usage

Click *Data Management > Point Cloud Tools > Tile by Point Number*



## Settings

- **Input Data:** The input file can be a single point cloud data file or multiple data files. File Format: \*.LiData.
- **Point Number (default value is "50000"):** Set the number of points in each tile. Note that the actual number of points in a tile may be slightly different from the user-defined number.
- **Output path:** Path of the output folder. After the function being executed, new files will be generated.

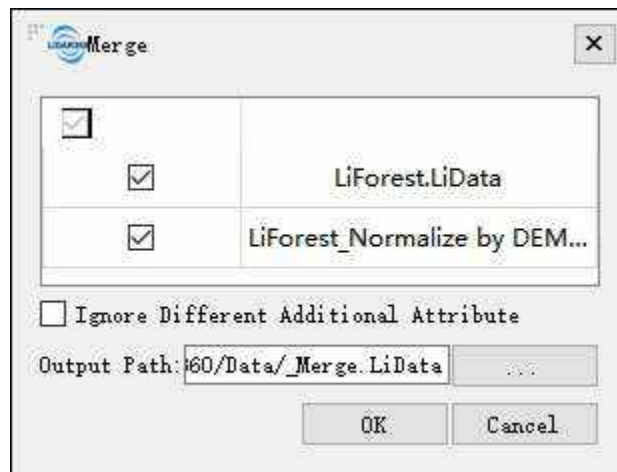
# Merge

## Summary

Merge multiple point cloud files into a single point cloud file. This function is the reverse operation of [Tile by Range](#) and [Tile by Point Number](#).

## Usage

Click *Data Management > Point Cloud Tools > Merge*



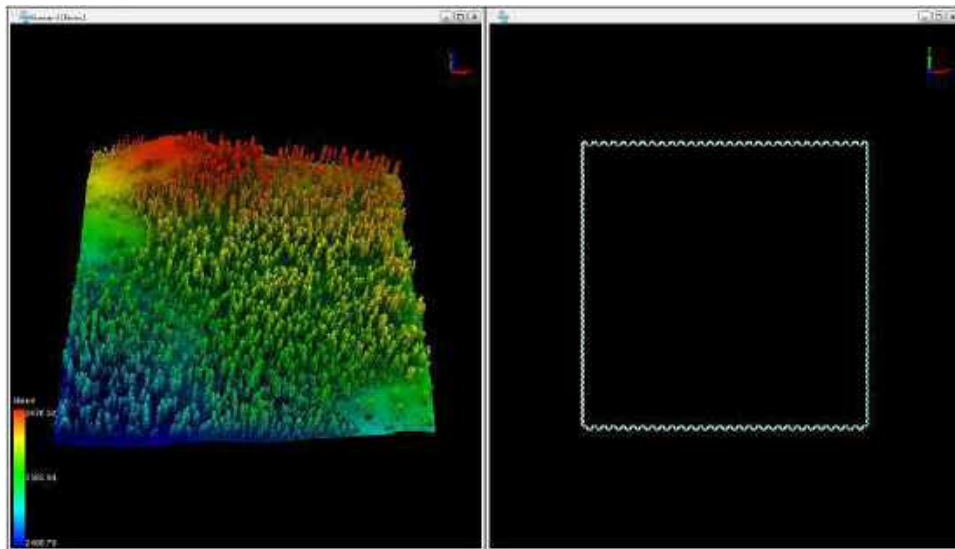
## Settings

- **Ignore Different Additional Attributes:** When the input data sets are more than one, if this option is checked, then only the same additional attributes will be merged. If there are any different additional attributes and this option is unchecked, the merge cannot be done.
- **Input Data:** The input file can be a single point cloud data file or multiple data files. File Format: \*.LiData.
- **Output path:** Path of the output folder. After the algorithm being executed, a new file will be generated.

# Extract Point Cloud Boundary

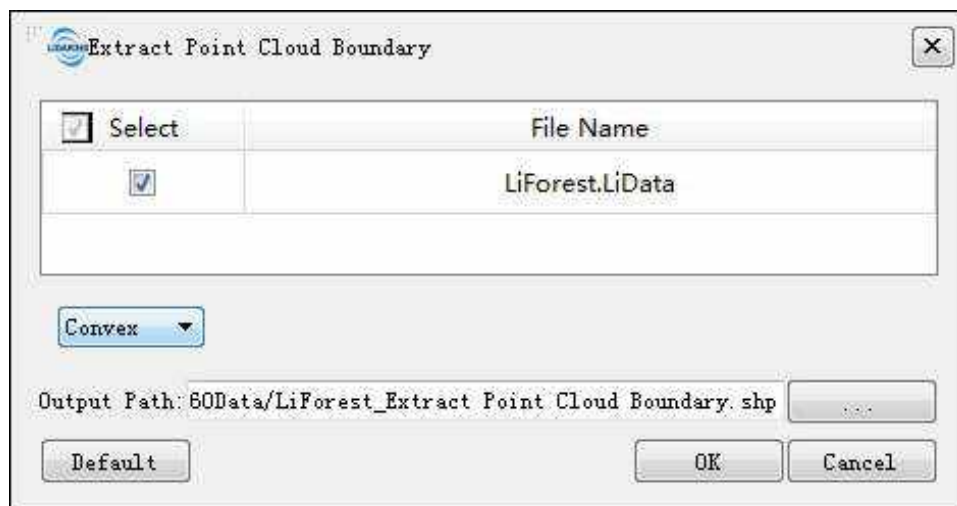
## Summary

Use a regular hexagon to extract the boundary of a point cloud data. According to the **Extraction Hexagon Height**, determine the height of each regular hexagon, and draw each hexagon based on the bounding box of the point cloud data. If the number of points within a hexagon is greater than or equal to the user-defined **Minimum Number of Points** value, this hexagon will be kept and merged with its connected hexagons. The ultimate output file is the final border vector file.



## Usage

Click *Data Management > Point Cloud Tools > Extract Point Cloud Boundary*



## Settings

- **Input Data:** The input file can be a single point cloud data file or multiple data files. File Format: \*.LiData.

- **Extraction Methods:** Choose the method to extract the boundary. Currently supports three methods, hexagon, convex hull, and concave hull.
  - **Hexagon (Default):** Use hexagon to extract the boundary of the the data. Set the **Hexagon Height** to determine the size of the hexagon. And draw every hexagon according to the minimum bounding box of the data. If the points inside the hexagon is more than **Minimum Number of Points**, then draw the hexagon. Merge the adjacent hexagons to generate the shapefile of the boundary.
    - **Hexagon Height (m)(default value is "10"):** The height of the hexagon, which is used to set the size of drawing a hexagon.
    - **Minimum Number of Points (default value is "1"):** The thresholding number of points in a hexagon, below which no hexagon will be drawn.
  - **Convex Hull:** Extract the 2.5-demantional convex hull of the point cloud in the XY plane (ignore the Z value). The output file is the vector file (polygon) of the convex hull of the original point cloud. Each node of the polygon is extracted from the points in the point cloud (with Z value).
  - **Concave Hull:** Extract the 2.5-demantional concave hull of the point cloud in the XY plane (ignore the Z value). The output file is the vector file (polygon) of the concave hull of the original point cloud. Each node of the polygon is extracted from the points in the point cloud (with Z value).
    - **Maximum Side Length (m)(default value is "2"):** The max. side length of all the sides of the output concave hull. The software first detects the convex hull of the point cloud, then loops inward to capture the concave hull, and ensures that the maximum side length is not greater than this value. When the value is too large, the calculation efficiency is improved, but the result will not show the boundary details of the point cloud well; if the value is too small, the boundary will be clearly show the details, but the calculation efficiency will be reduced. Therefore, in order to obtain the best extraction results, it is recommended that users set this value to be more than 2 times the average distance of the point cloud. The users can also set this value to zero. At this time, the program will automatically estimate the average distance between all the points, and set the parameter as twice of the average distance.
- **Output path:** Path of the output file. A new boundary vector file will be generated after the algorithm is executed. File format: \*.shp.

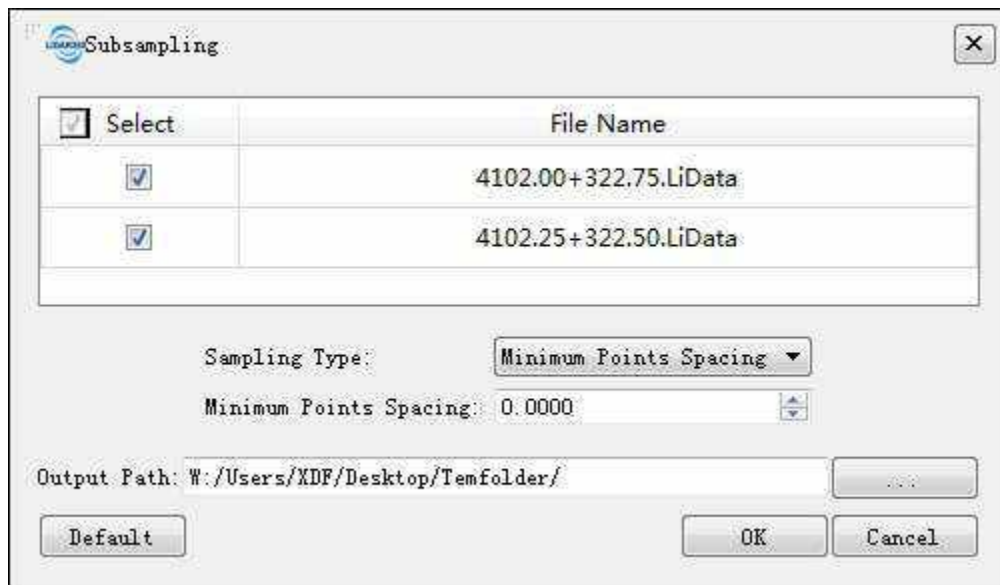
# Subsampling

## Summary

Subsampling point clouds, namely, reducing the number of point clouds, LiDAR360 offers three methods for resampling: minimum point spacing, sampling rate, and octree.

## Usage

Click *Data Management > Point Cloud Tools > Subsampling*



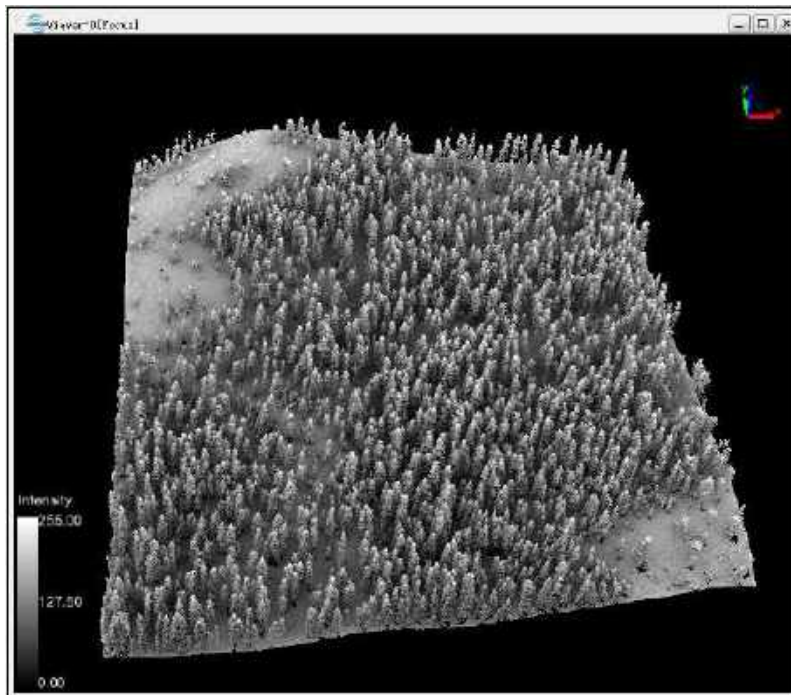
## Settings

- **Input Data:** The input file can be a single point cloud data file or multiple data files. File Format: \*.LiData.
- **Sampling Type:** This parameter defines the resampling method.
  - **Minimum Points Spacing (default, default value is "0.0000"):** Users need to set a minimum point spacing between two points so that the minimum three-dimensional distance between any two points in the sampled point cloud will not be less than this value. The larger the value is set, the fewer points will be kept.
  - **Sampling Rate (default value is "99.99%"):** Users need to set the percentage of reserved points. In this mode, LiDAR360 will randomly retain the specified number of points. Reserved Points = Total Number of Points \* Sample Rate. The value of this parameter ranges from 0 to 100%. The smaller the value is set, the fewer points will be kept.
  - **Octree (default value is "21"):** This method allows users to select an "octree" subdivision level and build 3D voxels for the input point cloud. Only the point closest to each voxel center will be retained. The "octree" subdivision level ranges from 1 to 21. The smaller the value is set, the fewer points will be kept.
- **Output path:** Path of the output file. New file will be generated after the function being executed.

# PCV

## Summary

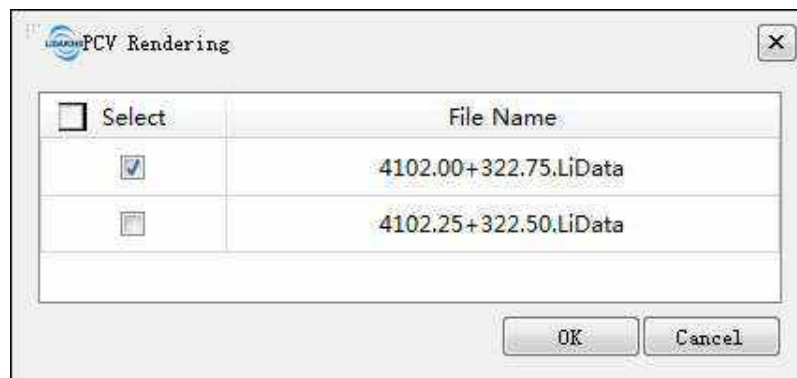
PCV tool can be used to improve visualization effect of a point cloud. The principle of the PCV (Portion of Visible Sky) algorithm is to evenly distribute multiple light sources at the top of the hemisphere or sphere calculate, and then calculate the cumulative number of times when the light can be irradiated by illuminating each point in a point cloud. The last statistical result will be used as the intensity of the point cloud. The rendering effect of the point cloud intensity after PCV calculation is shown in the figure below.



## Usage

Click *Data Management > Point Cloud Tools > PCV*

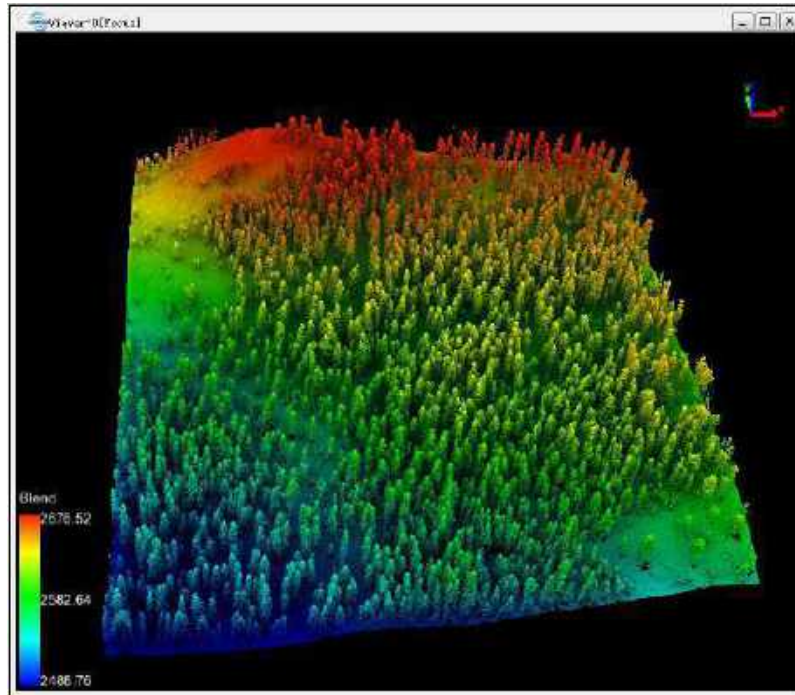
Select the point cloud data that needs to be processed by PCV.



After the PCV process, the intensity range of a point cloud will be 0-255. By clicking on display by intensity or clicking display by the mixed mode, users can see the boundary between different land covers more clearly in the point cloud after PCV process. The figure below shows an example of intensity and height




blend displaying effect after PCV calculation.



# Extract Color from Image

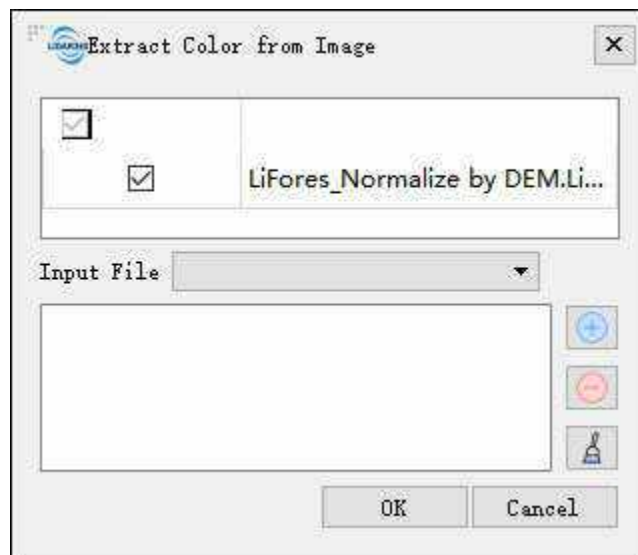
## Summary

Extract Color from Image tool can extract RGB information from multi-band imagery and assigned them to each point in a point cloud. The user is required to enter one or more multi-band images that overlapping with the extend of the point cloud data.




After the process is completed, the display mode of the point cloud data will automatically change to RGB display (you can also click  on the toolbar button, to display the point cloud in RGB).

## Usage

Click *Data Management > Point Cloud Tools > Extract Color from Image*



## Settings

- **Input Data:** The input file can be a single point cloud data file or multiple data files. File Format: \*.LiData.
- **Input File:** The user needs to enter one or more multi-band images that are geographically overlapping with the point cloud data. If the image data has already been opened in the software, click the drop-down button to select the data, or you can click  to open the external image data. Click  to remove selected images from the list and click  to clear the image data list. File format: \*.tif.

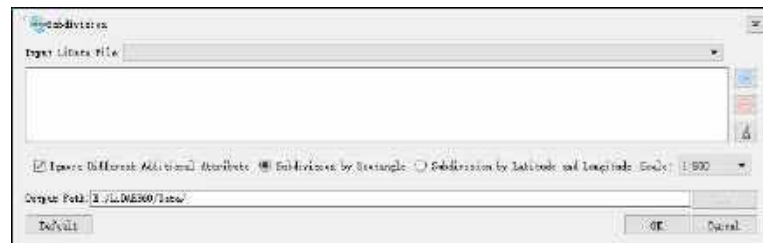
# Subdivision

## Summary




Subdivision tool can divide a point cloud to a series of frames based on the user defined scales. Currently, for rectangle-division, LiDAR360 supports four subdivision scales: a scale of 1:5000 (taken to 1 km), 1:2000 (taken to 0.1 km), 1:1000 (taken to 0.1 km), and 1:500 (taken to 0.01km). The frame ID will be named by the coordinate number, which is composed of the southwest corner of the frame (Y coordinate + X coordinate). After the operation is completed, one or multiple LiData file will be generated. A vector file in shp format will also be generated recording each subdivided frame.

## Usage

Click *Data Management > Point Cloud Tools > Subdivision*



## Settings

- **Input LiData File:** Input the point cloud data to be subdivided. If the point cloud data is already open in the software, click the drop-down button to select the data; or you can click  to open external point cloud data. Click  to remove the selected data. Click  to clear the data list. File format: \*.LiData.
- **Subdivision by Rectangle:** Use "Subdivision by Rectangle". Scale is 1:500 by default.
- **Subdivision by Latitude and Longitude:** Use "Subdivisions of Graticules". Scale is 1:500 by default.
- **Scale:** Users can choose the scale of the division. For rectangle-division, LiDAR provides four scales, including 1:500, 1:1000, 1:2000, 1:5000. For subdivisions of graticules, LiDAR provides eleven scales, including 1:500, 1:1000, 1:2000, 1:5000, 1:10000, 1:25000, 1: 50000, 1:100000, 1:250000, 1:500000, 1:1000000.
- **Output Path:** The path for the output folder. After running this function, the new divisions will be generated.

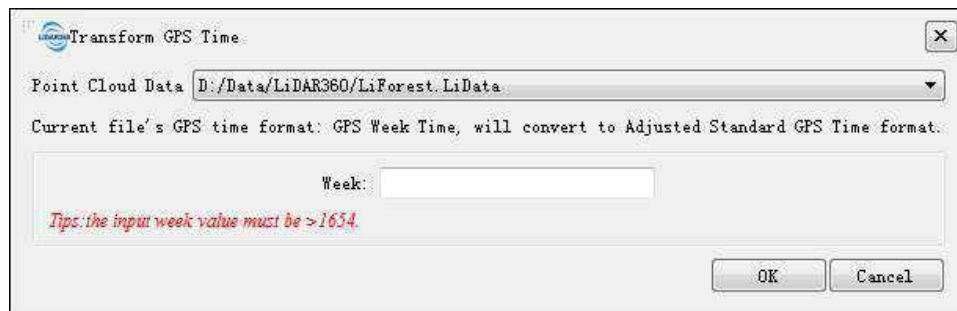
# Transform GPS Time

## Summary

This function converts the GPS time information in LiData from GPS coordinate time to GPS week second, or from GPS week second to GPS coordinate time. There are two ways to record the GPS time information, GPS week second and GPS coordinate time (GPS standard time minus  $10^9$ ).

## Usage

Click *Data Management > Point Cloud Tools > Transform GPS Time*.



## Settings

- **Input Data:** Input a point cloud file.
- **Week Number:** If the GPS time information of the input point cloud is in GPS week second and to be transformed into GPS coordinate time, the week number is necessary. And the week number must be greater than 1654. Otherwise, when being subtracted by  $10^9$ , the GPS time will be negative. If the GPS time information of the input point cloud is in GPS coordinate time and to be transformed into GPS week second, the week number is unnecessary.
- **Offset:** Leap second.

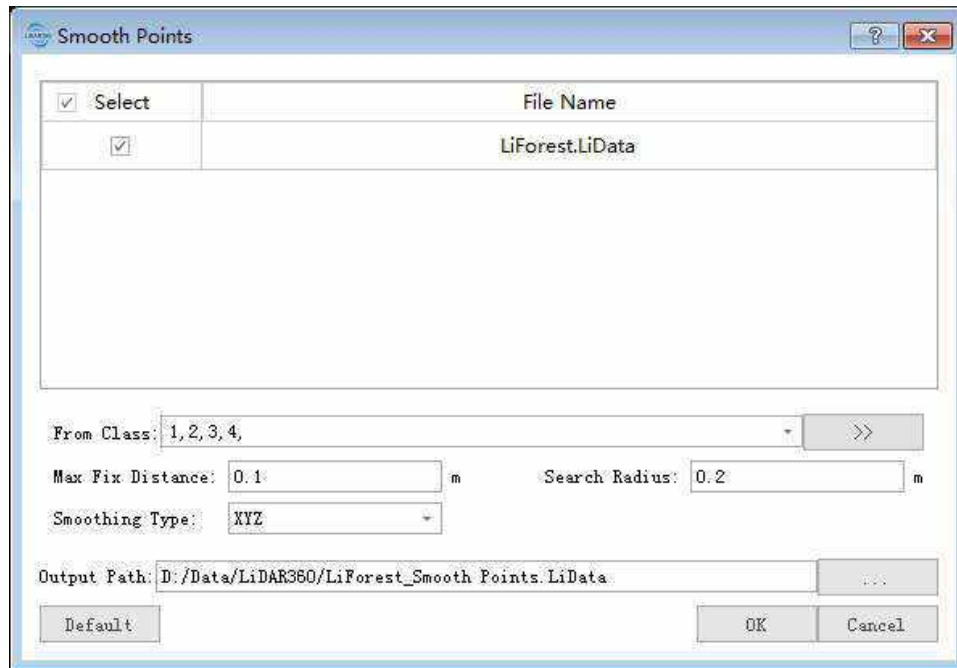
# Smooth Points

## Summary

Smooth the laser point cloud based on the neighbouring points, making the point cloud look more consistent.

## Usage

Click *Data Management > Point Cloud Tools > Smooth Points*.



## Settings

- **Input Point Cloud Data:** Input the LiData point cloud data to be smoothed.
- **Smoothing Type:**
  - **XYZ (Default)** : In the 3D smoothing process, the points on the vertical plane are smoothed in the XY direction, and the points on the horizontal plane are smoothed in the Z direction.
  - **Elevation** : Fit the best fitting plane equation according to the neighboring points, and adjust the elevation of the center point to better fit the plane equation. If the adjustment distance exceeds the repair threshold, no adjustment will be made.
- **Search Radius (m) (Default Value is “0.2”):** Search radius of neighboring points.
- **Max Fix Distance (m) (Default Value is “0.1”):** The maximum single-point adjustment distance threshold, beyond which it will not be adjusted.
- **Output Path:** Set the output path for smooth point cloud files generated by the smoothing process.
- **Default:** Restore the setting parameters to the default values.

# Raster Tools

Raster tools include **Band Calculation**, **Raster Mosaic**, and **Raster Subdivision**.

- [Raster Mosaic](#)
- [Raster Subdivision](#)
- [Raster Calculator](#)

# Band Calculator

## Summary

**Band Calculator** tool can generate a new raster image based on a user-defined map algebra equation from two single-band images.

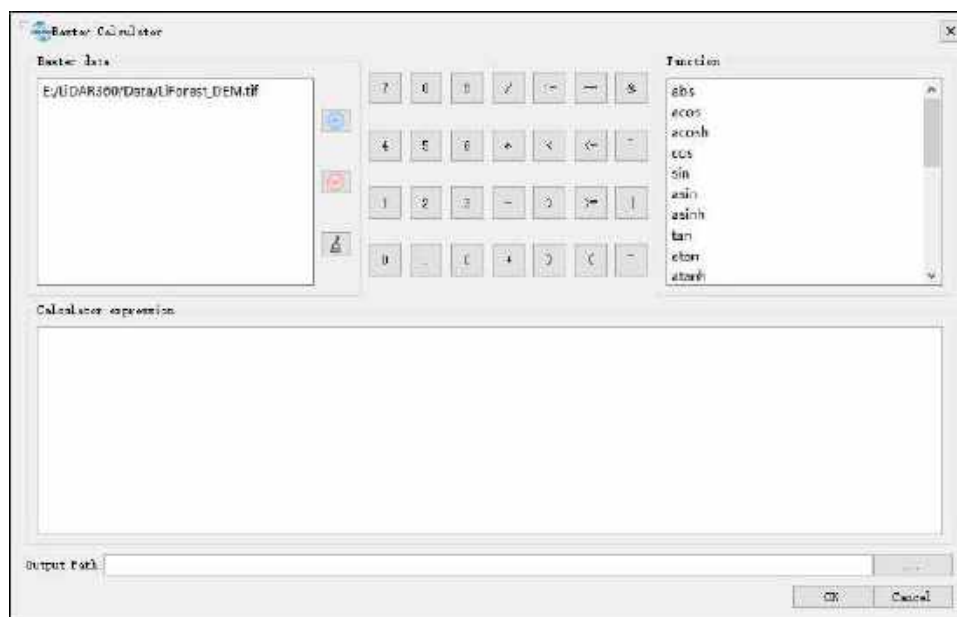
Band operator functions and operators include: Basic operations: plus (+), minus (-), multiply ( $\times$ ), and divide ( $\div$ ); Trigonometric functions: sine  $\sin(x)$ , cosine  $\cos(x)$ , tangent  $\tan(x)$ , arcsine  $\arcsin(x)$ , arc cosine  $\arccos(x)$ , arc tangent  $\arctan(x)$ ; Other mathematical functions: natural  $\exp(x)$ , natural logarithm  $\log(x)$ , (base-10) logarithms  $\log_{10}(x)$ , square root  $\sqrt{x}$ , quadratic power Power2, cubic power Power3, round integer part, inverse

The band operation function can be applied to single or two raster images, and the input data must meet the following conditions:

- (1) The input data must be a single-band image;
- (2) The input data must have the same spatial resolution;
- (3) The spatial range of the input data must have intersections.

## Usage

Click *Data Management > Raster Tools > Band Calculator*



## Settings

- **Output path:** Path of the output folder. After the function is executed, a new file will be generated after the band operation.

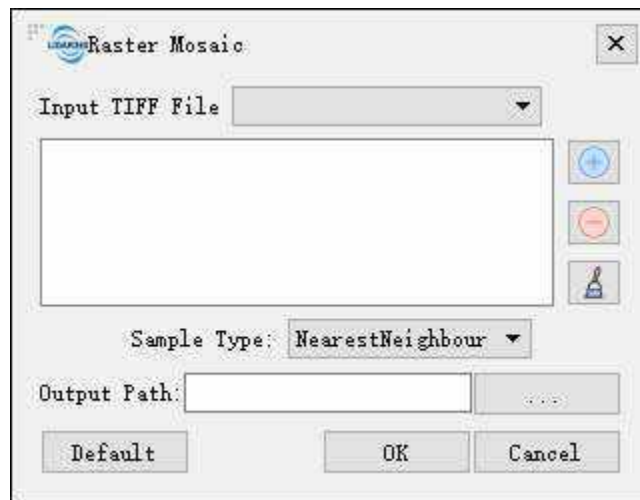
# Raster Mosaic

## Summary




**Raster Mosaic** refers to the technical process of merging two or more images to one image. LiDAR360 provides seven sampling methods: **Nearest Neighbour**, **Bilinear**, **Cubic**, **CubicSpline**, **Lanczos**, **Average**, and **Mode**. It is the reverse operation of [Raster Subdivision](#).

## Usage

Click *Data Management > Raster Tools > Raster Mosaic*



## Settings

- **Input Tiff File:** Users can select multiple files (>1) to be processed from the drop-down list.
- : Users can add multiple external images for image mosaic.
- : Users can select a file in the list and click this button to remove the file from the list.
- : Click this button to clear all images in the list.
- **Sample Type:** Users need to select the sampling type from the drop-down list.
  - **NearestNeighbour (default):** Nearest neighbor, sampled from the nearest neighbor.
  - **Bilinear:** Bilinear sampling (2 x 2 cores).
  - **Cubic:** Cubic convolution approximation (4 x 4 kernels).
  - **CubicSpline:** Cubic B-spline approximation (4x4 kernel).
  - **Lanczos:** Lanczos Window Sine Interpolation (6x6 Cores). [Lanczos](#) can be used as a low pass filter or to smoothly interpolate the value of a digital signal between its samples.
  - **Average:** Calculate the average of all non-value pixels.
  - **Mode:** Select the most frequently occurring value for all sampling points.
- **Output path:** Path of the output folder. After the function is executed, a new file will be generated.



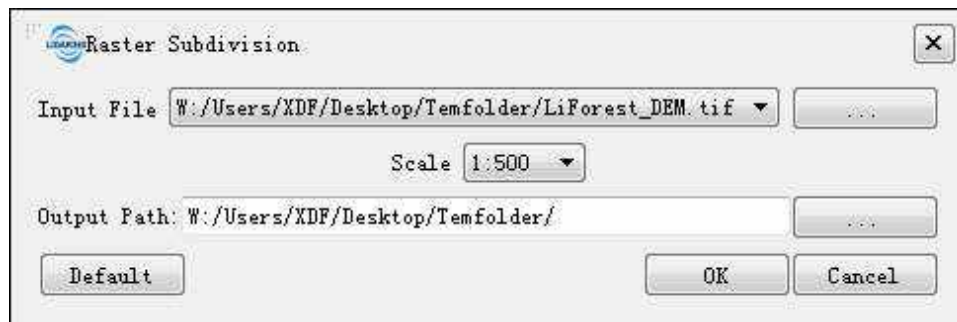
# Raster Subdivision

## Summary


The raster subdivision tool is the inverse operation of [Raster Mosaic](#). The frame number adapts the coordinate number and consists of the southwest corner of the frame (Y coordinate + X coordinate). A scale of 1:5000 is taken into 1 km, 1:2000 and 1:1000 to 0.1 km, and 1:500 to 0.01 km.

## Usage

Click *Data Management > Raster Tools > Raster Subdivision*



## Settings

- **Input File:** Users can select the file to be processed from the drop-down list.
- : Users can add external files that need to be processed.
- **Scale (default "1:500"):** Users can select a targeted scale. LiDAR360 has four scale options: 1:500, 1:1000, 1:2000, and 1:5000.
- **Output path:** Path of the output folder. After the function is executed, new subdivided files will be generated.

# Projections and Transformations

Different kinds of transforms for point clouds, e.g. reprojection, elevation adjustment, are provided. The calculation of parameters necessary for transforms, e.g. seven-parameter solution, four-parameter solution, are provided as well.

- [Define Projection](#)
- [Reproject](#)
- [Transformation](#)
- [Elevation Adjustment](#)
- [Four-parameter Solution](#)
- [Seven-parameter Solution](#)
- [ICP Registration](#)
- [Convert ASCII to BLH](#)
- [Manual Registration](#)
- [Manual Rotation and Translation](#)

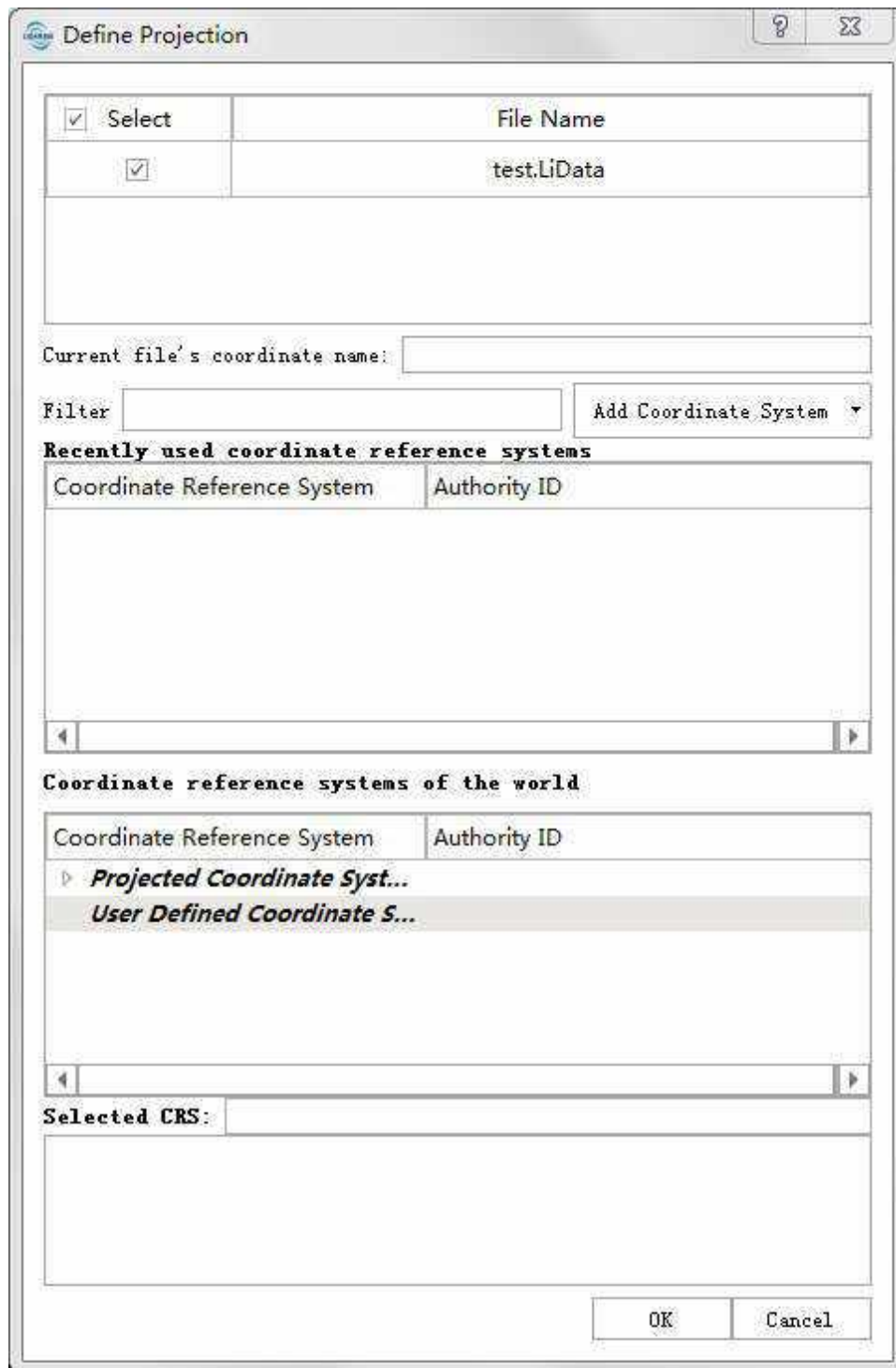
# Define Projection

## Summary

Define projection information for point cloud data, including geographic coordinates (usually latitude and longitude coordinates) and projection coordinates (plane coordinates calculated from projection). Note that when use this tool to define the projection information for point cloud data, they should not have projection information previously.

## Usage

Click *Data Management > Projections and Transformations > Define Projection*



## Settings

- **Select Input file:** The input file can be a single point cloud data file or multiple point cloud data files. File format: \*.LiData.
- **Current File's Coordinate Name:** Display the current coordinate name.
- **Filter:** Users need to enter a customized coordinate system. By entering the coordinate system keywords, the corresponding coordinate system can be filtered from the **Coordinate reference systems of the world** table (for example: to set the point cloud coordinate system to WGS 84 / UTM Zone 49N, users can enter

UTM 49N in the filter for fast screening, or enter its EPSG number 32649 for quick search.) Users can also import external coordinate system by clicking the **Add Coordinate System** button.

- **Add Coordinate System:** Users can add external coordinate system settings or customize coordinate system settings. LiDAR360 software provides four ways to add external coordinate system:
  - **Add Geographic Coordinate System**
  - **Add Projected Coordinate System**

#### Add Geographic Coordinate System

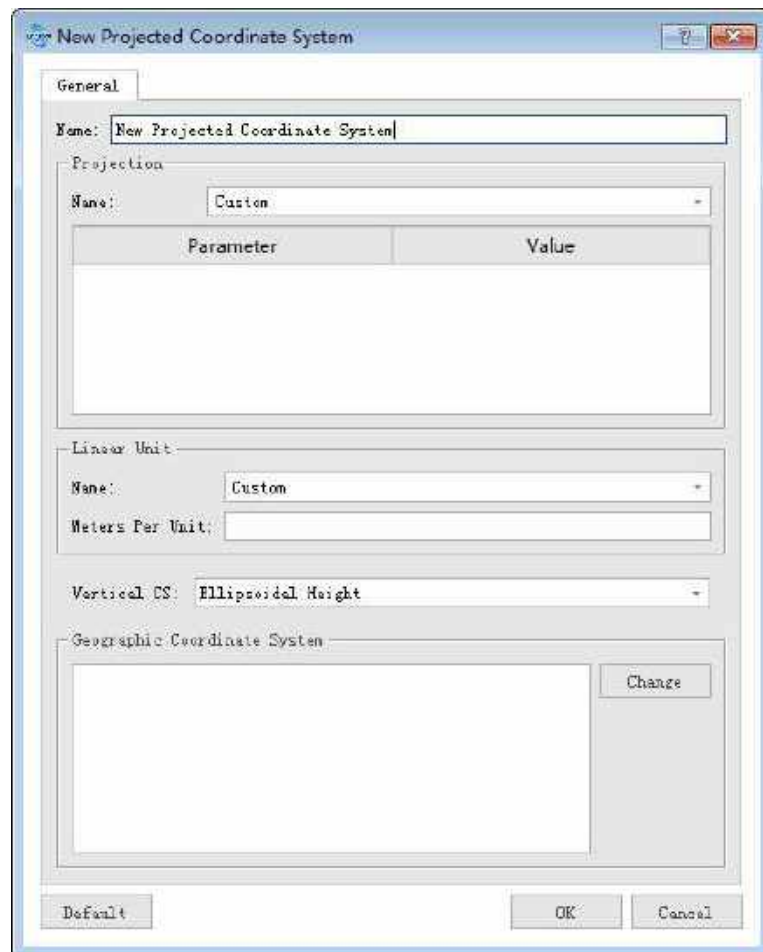
The screenshot shows a dialog box titled "New Geographic Coordinate System". It has a standard Windows-style title bar with a question mark icon and a close button. The dialog is organized into several sections, each with a label and a set of controls:

- General:** A text field for "Name" containing "New\_GCS01".
- Datum:** A dropdown menu for "Name" set to "Custom".
- Spheroid:** A dropdown menu for "Name" set to "Custom", and two text input fields for "Semimajor Axis" and "Inverse Flattening".
- Angular Unit:** A dropdown menu for "Name" set to "Custom", and a text input field for "Radians Per Unit".
- Prime Meridian:** A dropdown menu for "Name" set to "Custom", and a text input field for "Longitude" with a degree symbol and a slash.
- Vertical CS:** A dropdown menu set to "Custom".

At the bottom of the dialog are three buttons: "Default", "OK", and "Cancel".

- **Name:** Users can customize the name of a geographic coordinate system .
- **Datum:**
  - **Name:** Users can customize a datum name or select a known datum from the drop-down list.
  - **Spheroid:** If a user selects the datum from the drop-down list, the ellipsoid parameter does not require to be entered.
    - **Name:** The name of the spheroid.
    - **Semimajor Axis:** Spheroid's major semiaxes.
    - **Inverse Flattening:** Inverse flattening of the spheroid.
- **Angular Unit:**
  - **Name:** Users can customize the angle unit name, or select the angle unit name from the drop-down list.
  - **Radians Per Unit:** Define the unit of arc in the geographic coordinate system.
- **Prime Meridian:**
  - **Name:** Users can customize the name of the central meridian, or select the name of the central meridian from the drop-down list.
  - **Longitude:** Input the central meridian longitude.

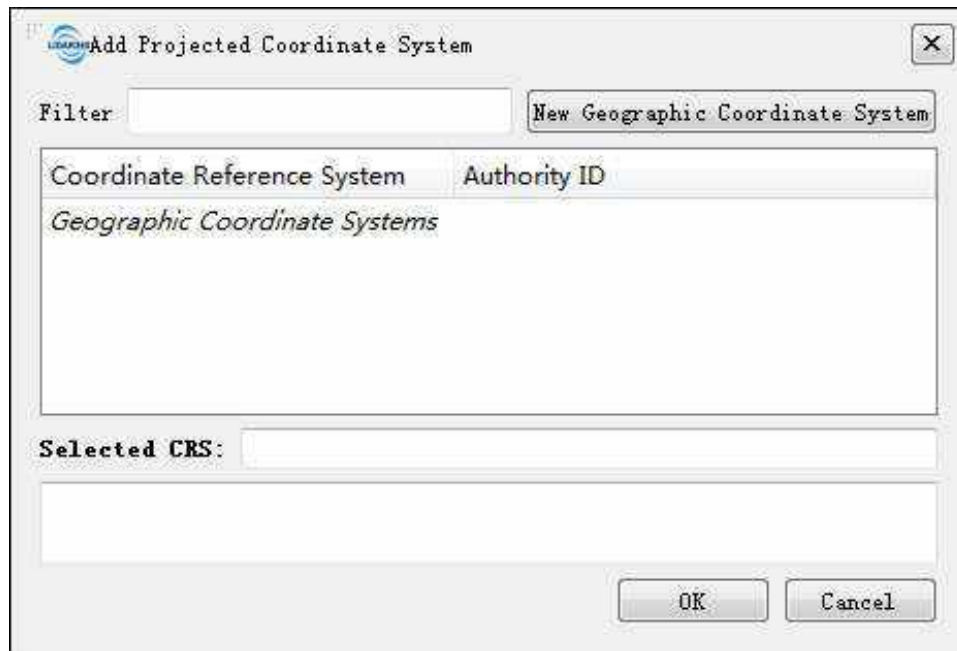
#### Add Projected Coordinate System



- **Name:** Users can customize the name of a projection coordinate system.
- **Projection:**
  - **Name:** Users can customize a projection name or select a known projection from the drop-down list. It should be noted that user-defined projections can be modified from a projection template selected from the drop-down list.
- **Linear Unit:**
  - **Name:** Users can customize the linear unit name or select the linear unit name from the drop-down list.
  - **Meters per Unit:** Input meters per unit.
  - **Geographic Coordinate System:** Users can paste the geographic coordinate system parameters into the text box, or click [to change](#).

### Change

When the user clicks on the Modify button, the following dialog box will pop up for modifying the geographic coordinate system.



The user can filter out the needed coordinate system through the [filter](#) operation, or can also add the geographic coordinate system through the **New Geographic Coordinate System**. Setting method is the same as [Add Geographic Coordinate System](#).

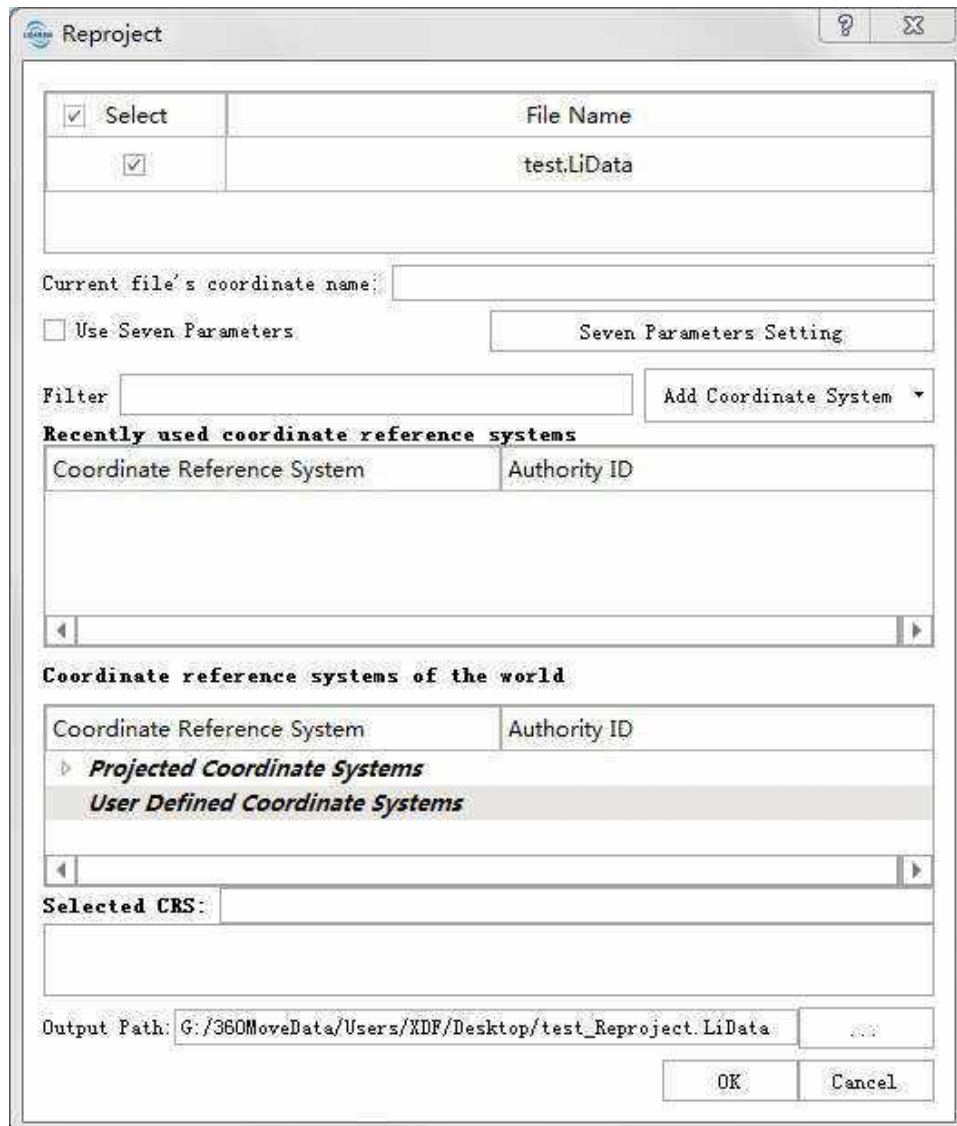
# Reproject

## Summary

The point cloud can be reprojected among geographic coordinate systems and projected coordinate systems. When different geographic coordinate systems are converted to each other, LiDAR360 provides the seven-parameter transformation model to adjust the differences between ellipsoids and reference planes. To achieve this, users can select the "using the seven-parameters" option, click the "Seven Parameters Setting" button, and then enter the values for X-translation, Y-translation, Z-translation, X-axis rotation, Y-axis rotation, Z-axis rotation, and scale factor for the seven-parameter transformation.




## Usage

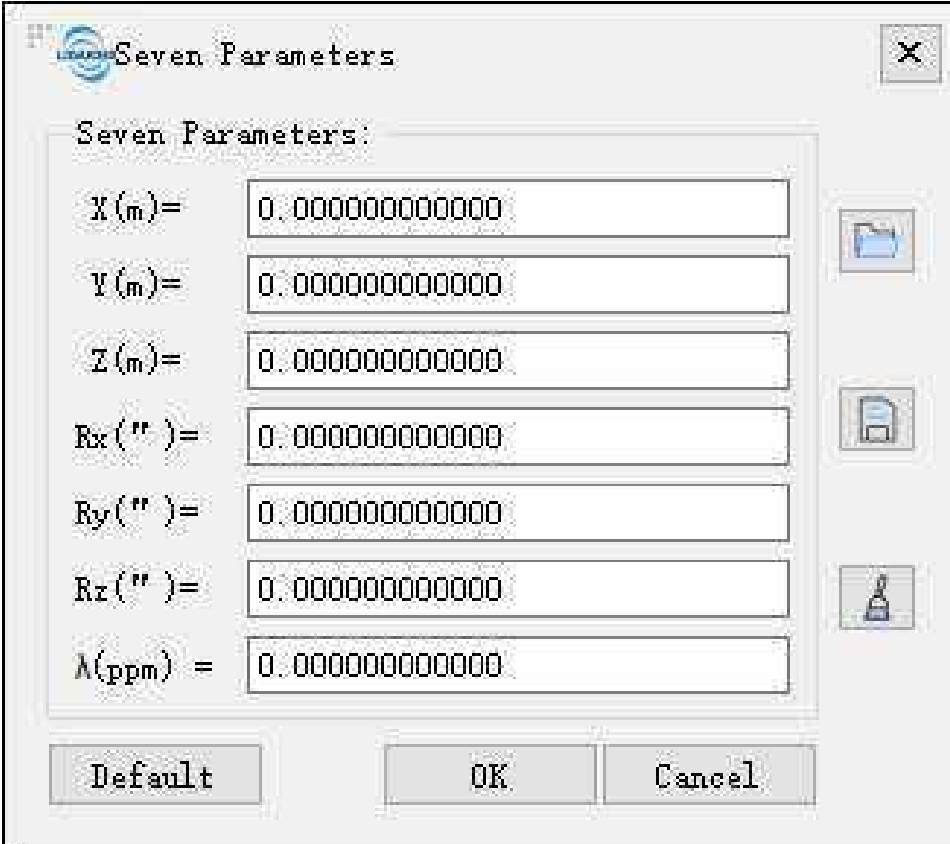
Click *Data Management > Projections and Transformations > Reproject*



## Settings



- **Select Input File:** The input file can be a single point cloud data file or multiple data files. File Format: \*.LiData.
- **Current File's Coordinate Name:** Display the coordinate system name of the current point cloud.
- **Use Seven Parameters:** Users can choose whether to use seven parameters for re-projection. If checked, seven parameters will be used; vice versa.
- **Seven Parameters Setting:** Select the **Use Seven Parameters** option, click the **Seven Parameters Setting** button, and the **Seven Parameters Dialog** will pop up. Click  to fill the seven-parameter values by opening a txt file; click  to save the setting values as a txt file; click  to clear the entered values.
  - **X (m):** X translation.
  - **Y (m):** Y translation.
  - **Z (m):** Z translation.
  - **Rx ("):** X-axis rotation.
  - **Ry ("):** Y-axis rotation.
  - **Rz ("):** Z-axis rotation.
  - **λ (ppm):** Scaling factor.
- **Filtering:** Users need to enter a customized coordinate system. By entering the coordinate system keywords, the corresponding coordinate system can be filtered from the **Coordinate reference systems of the world** table (for example: to set the point cloud coordinate system to WGS 84 / UTM Zone 49N, users can enter UTM 49N in the filter for fast screening, or enter its EPSG number 32649 for quick search.) Users can also import external coordinate system by clicking the **Add Coordinate System** button.
- **Add coordinate systems:** For details, refer to [Define Projection](#) Parameter Settings.
- **Output path:** Path of the output file. New files will be generated after the function being executed.



Note: The reprojected point cloud must already have projection information. To check whether the current point cloud has projection information, users can select the data in the data list and its projection information will be displayed in the current file coordinate system.

# Transformation

## Summary

LiDAR360 software supports multiple coordinate transformation methods. Users can select a transformation method to perform coordinate conversion according to their needs.

The four supported coordinate transformation methods are:

- [Linear](#)
- [XYMultiply](#)
- [Translate and Rotate](#)
- [3D Affine](#)

## Steps

1. **Input Data:** The input file can be a single point cloud data file or multiple data files. File Format: \*.LiData.
2. Select the **Transformation Method**. Users can select the desired transformation method from the drop-down box and set the relevant parameters.
3. **Output Path:** Path of the output folder. After the algorithm being executed, new files after coordinate conversion will be generated.

## Usage

Click *Data Management > Projections and Transformations > Transformation*

## Settings

### Linear

The screenshot shows the 'Transformation' dialog box with the 'Linear' method selected. The 'Select' checkbox is checked, and the file name is 'LiForest.LiData'. The 'Transformation Type' is set to 'Linear'. The 'Linear Parameters' section shows three rows: X= 1 \* x + 0, Y= 1 \* y + 0, and Z= 1 \* z + 0. The 'Output path' is 'data/LiForest\_Transformation.LiData'. The 'OK' and 'Cancel' buttons are visible at the bottom.

Select	File Name
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	LiForest.LiData

Transformation Type: Linear

Linear Parameters

X= 1 \* x + 0

Y= 1 \* y + 0

Z= 1 \* z + 0

Output path: data/LiForest\_Transformation.LiData

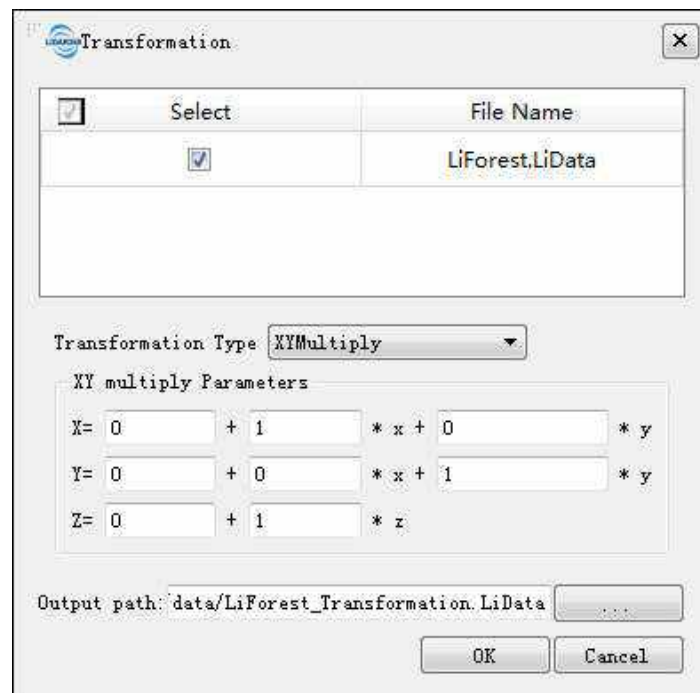
OK Cancel

The linear transformation is used to pan and zoom a point cloud. A panning parameter and a scaling parameter need to be set to the X, Y, Z coordinates, respectively. The targeted coordinates are calculated using the following formula:

$$\begin{cases} X = S_x * x + P_x \\ Y = S_y * y + P_y \\ Z = S_z * z + P_z \end{cases}$$

Among them:  $S_x$ ,  $S_y$ ,  $S_z$  are the scaling factors for the x, y, and z coordinates.  $P_x$ ,  $P_y$ , and  $P_z$  are the panning parameters for the x, y, and z coordinates.  $x$ ,  $y$ , and  $z$  are the original coordinates, and  $X$ ,  $Y$ , and  $Z$  are coordinates obtained after the linear transformation.

### XYMultiply

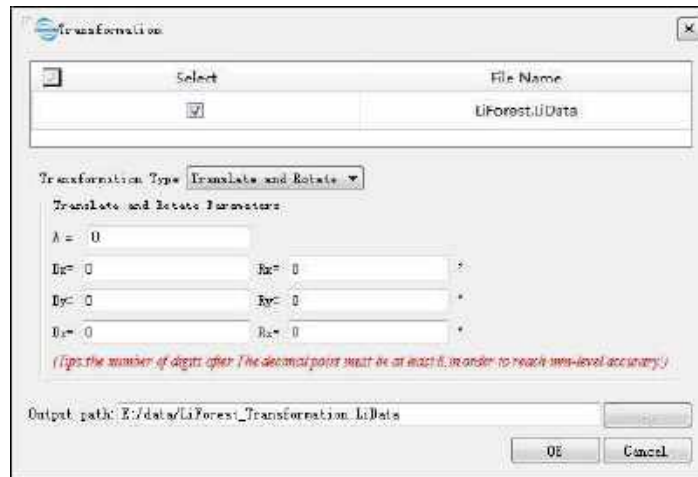


The targeted coordinates are calculated using the following formula:

$$\begin{cases} X = P_x + a * S_x + b * S_y \\ Y = P_y + c * S_x + d * S_y \\ Z = P_z + e * S_z \end{cases}$$

Among them,  $P_x$ ,  $P_y$ ,  $P_z$ ,  $a$ ,  $b$ ,  $c$ ,  $d$ ,  $e$  are the transformation parameters,  $S_x$ ,  $S_y$ ,  $S_z$  are the original coordinates, and  $X$ ,  $Y$ ,  $Z$  are the transformed coordinates. This is often used as a 2D Helmert transformation.

### Translate and Rotate



The targeted coordinates are calculated using the following formula:

$$\begin{bmatrix} X \\ Y \\ Z \end{bmatrix} = (1 + \lambda) \begin{bmatrix} R_{11} & R_{12} & R_{13} & D_x \\ R_{21} & R_{22} & R_{23} & D_y \\ R_{31} & R_{32} & R_{33} & D_z \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} x \\ y \\ z \end{bmatrix}$$

R11、R12、R13、R21、R22、R23、R31、R32、R33 are calculated as follows:

$$R11 = \cos(Ry) * \cos(Rz)$$

$$R21 = \cos(Ry) * \sin(Rz)$$

$$R31 = -\sin(Ry)$$

$$R12 = \sin(Rx) \sin(Ry) \cos(Rz) - \cos(Rx) * \sin(Rz)$$

$$R22 = \sin(Rx) \sin(Ry) \sin(Rz) + \cos(Rx) * \cos(Rz)$$

$$R32 = \sin(Rx) * \cos(Ry)$$

$$R13 = \cos(Rx) \sin(Ry) \cos(Rz) + \sin(Rx) * \sin(Rz)$$

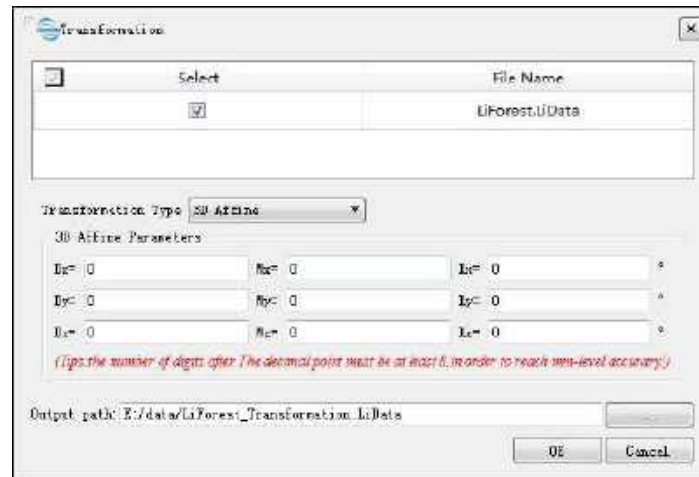
$$R23 = \cos(Rx) \sin(Ry) \sin(Rz) - \sin(Rx) * \cos(Rz)$$

$$R33 = \cos(Rx) * \cos(Ry)$$

- **λ (default value is "0")**: Scale factor applied to X, Y, Z.
- **Dx, Dy, Dz (default value is "0")**: Panning values added to X, Y, Z.
- **Rx, Ry, Rz (default value is "0")**: The angle of rotation about the X, Y, and Z axes in degrees.

Note: To achieve millimeter-level accuracy, there should be at least eight decimal places after the decimal point.

### 3D Affine



The targeted coordinates are calculated using the following formula:

$$\begin{cases} X = D_x + (1 + M_x) * x + R_z * y - R_y * z \\ Y = D_y + (1 + M_y) * y - R_z * x + R_x * z \\ Z = D_z + (1 + M_z) * z + R_y * x - R_x * y \end{cases}$$

- **Dx, Dy, Dz (default value is "0"):** Panning values added to X, Y, Z.
- **Mx, My, Mz (default value is "0"):** Scale factor applied to X, Y, and Z.
- **Rx, Ry, Rz (default value is "0"):** The angle of rotation about the X, Y, and Z axes in degrees.

Note: To achieve millimeter-level accuracy, there should be at least eight decimal places in the user inputs.

# Elevation Adjustment

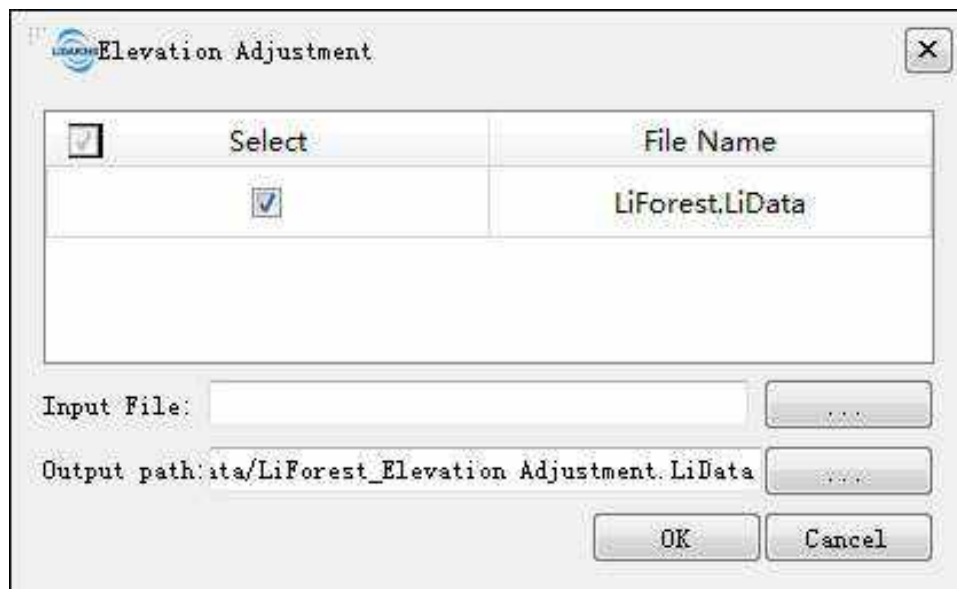
## Summary

The elevation of raw laser data is normally represented by ellipsoidal height. Normally these values need to be transformed to values in regional height system or local height system. For large area, the adjustment of elevation can not be defined as a mathematical formula. Hence, the model of elevation adjustment is required to be defined. The algorithm is to build triangular network model using known control point data as well as to interpolate and correct local points using height anomaly between different height systems. Adjusted elevation result can be checked according to the [Control Point Report](#).

It is recommended to use control point data containing entire project region to adjust model in order to provide more accurate elevation information to the project border.

## Usage

Click *Data Management > Projections and Transformations > Elevation Adjustment*



## Setting

- **Input Data:** Input files can be single point cloud file or point cloud data set.
- **Input File:** Users need to input adjustment model file of control points. This file data can be generated by tool of [Control Point Report](#).
- **Output path:** Output adjusted point cloud data.

# ICP Registration

## Summary

By setting benchmark point cloud and point cloud to be registered, perform the point cloud registration through ICP (Iterative Closest Points) algorithm. The basic steps of this algorithm are shown as follow.

Supposing that there are two given 3D-point collections, X1 and X2, the steps of ICP registration are shown as follows:

Step 1. For each point in X2, calculate and find its closest point in X1;

Step 2. Estimate the combination of rotation and translation using a root mean square point to point distance metric minimization technique which will best align each source point to its match found in the previous step.

Step 3. Transform X2 using the obtained transformation.

Step 4. Iterate the above steps until the average distance from X2 to X1 is less than a given threshold.

## Usage

Click *Data Management > Projections and Transformations > ICP Registration*

ICP Registration

Reference Cloud: [ ]

Aligned Cloud: [ ]

From Class: 244, 245, 246, 247, 248, 249, 250, 251, 252, 253, 254, 255 >>

Use Selected Region

Parameters

Max Iterations 20

RMS 1.0e-5




Sampling Point Count 50000

Output Path: [ ]

Default OK Cancel

## Setting

- **Reference Cloud:** The point cloud data will be used as benchmark for the registration. It can be inserted from outside or selected directly from the point cloud shown in the dropdown window.
- **Aligned Cloud:** The point cloud to be registered. Users can choose one or more point cloud files need to be

registered. Users can choose the aligned point cloud through the dropdown menu, and add, delete, or clear all the point clouds through the buttons , , or  next to the dropdown menu.

- **From Class:** Choose the classes in the point cloud to be registered. All the classes are selected by default.
- **Use Selected Area:** Users can select overlap area through the select tool in the LiDAR360 frame toolbox. If this option is selected, the registration will be performed only with the select area. If this option is not selected, the registration will be performed with the entire point cloud. It is recommended to select this option.
- **Number of Iterations (default value is "20"):** The maximum times of iteration when performing the point cloud registration.
- **RMSE (default status is checked, default value is "1e-5"):** Represent the difference in error between point clouds after current registration.
- **Number of Sample Points (default value is "50000"):** If the number of points in the point cloud is larger than this threshold, randomly sample the threshold number of points to be registered.
- **Output Path:** Output path for the registered point cloud data.



# Four-parameter Solution

## Summary

According to two or more control points, users can calculate the four parameters that used to perform coordinate system transformation. The four parameters include two translation parameters, dx and dy, a rotation parameter, T, and a scaling factor, K.

## Usage

Click *Data Management > Projections and Transformations > Four-parameter Solution*

The dialog box titled "Four-parameter Solution" contains the following elements:

- Source File:** A text input field with a browse button (three dots) to its right.
- Target File:** A text input field with a browse button (three dots) to its right.
- Swap:** A button located to the right of the "Target File" field.
- Source Points:** A table with two columns labeled "X" and "Y".
- Target Points:** A table with two columns labeled "X" and "Y".
- Output Path:** A text input field with a browse button (three dots) to its right.
- OK:** A button at the bottom right.
- Cancel:** A button at the bottom right, next to the OK button.

## Setting

- **Source File:** Input the file with the source coordinates of control points. File should be in txt format. Each point should be written in a row. X and Y coordinates should be separated by comma.
- **Target File:** Input the file with the targeted coordinates of control points. File should be in txt format. Each point should be written in a row. X and Y coordinates should be separated by comma.
- **Swap:** Clicking this button, the source file and target file will be swapped from each other.
- **Output Path:** Output the report of the result of four parameters calculation to the user-defined path.

# Seven-parameter Solution

## Summary

Use Bursa model to calculate the seven parameters for the transformation among different coordinate systems according to three or more pairs of tie-points. The parameters include three translation parameters, dx, dy, dz, three rotation parameters, rx, ry, rz, and a scaling factor, m. The calculation formula is shown below. Bursa seven parameters formula can be written as follow:

$$\begin{bmatrix} X_B \\ Y_B \\ Z_B \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} X_A \\ Y_A \\ Z_A \end{bmatrix} + \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 & 0 & X_A & 0 & -Z_A & Y_A \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & Y_A & Z_A & 0 & -X_A \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & Z_A & -Y_A & X_A & 0 \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} dx \\ dy \\ dz \\ m \\ rx \\ ry \\ rz \end{bmatrix}$$

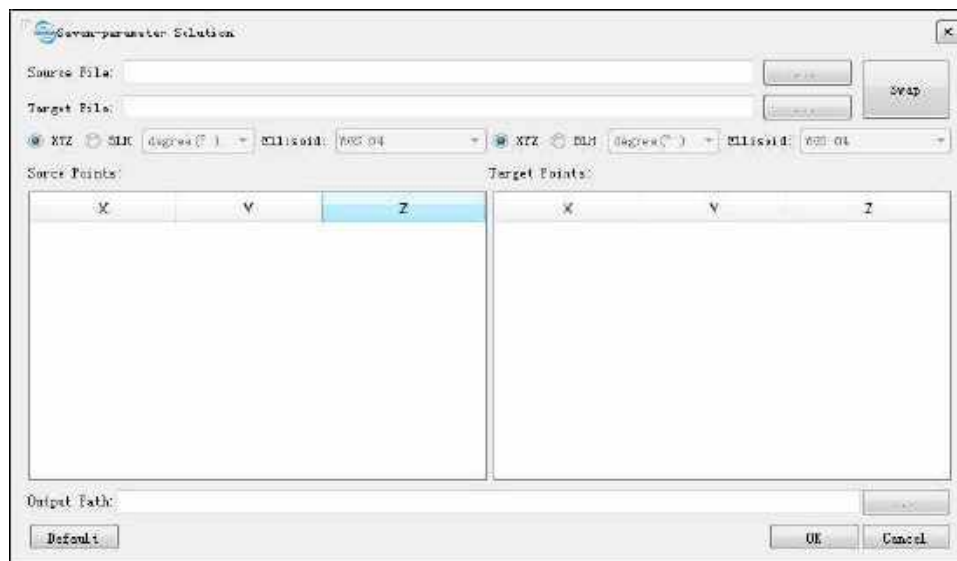
Convert the above formula to a equation set, which is:

$$\begin{cases} X_B = dx + mX_A - ryZ_A + rzY_A \\ Y_B = dy + mY_A + rxZ_A - rzX_A \\ Z_B = dz + mZ_A - rxY_A + ryX_A \end{cases}$$

In the equation set, there are seven unknown parameters. If there are three or more than pairs of tie-points, these seven parameters can be solved through the above equation set using the least square method.

## Usage

Click *Data Management > Projections and Transformations > Seven-parameter Solution*



## Settings

- **Source File:** Select the file containing the source coordinates of control points. File should be in .txt format. Please refer to [seven parameters inputs](#) for detailed information.
- **Target File:** Select the file containing the targeted coordinates of control points. File should be in .txt format. Please refer to [seven parameters inputs](#) for detailed information.
- **Swap:** Swap the source file and target file with each other.
- **XYZ (Checked by default):** The inserting points' coordinates should be in spatial Cartesian coordinate system.
- **BLH (Optional):** The inserting points' coordinates should be in geographic coordinate system.
  - **Unit (Degree by default):** Either degree, or degree: minute: second.
  - **Ellipsoid (WGS84 by default):** Ellipsoidal coordinate systems including WGS 1984, Xi'an 1980, and Beijing 1954 are provided.
- **Output Path:** Save the report of the solved results to a user-defined path.

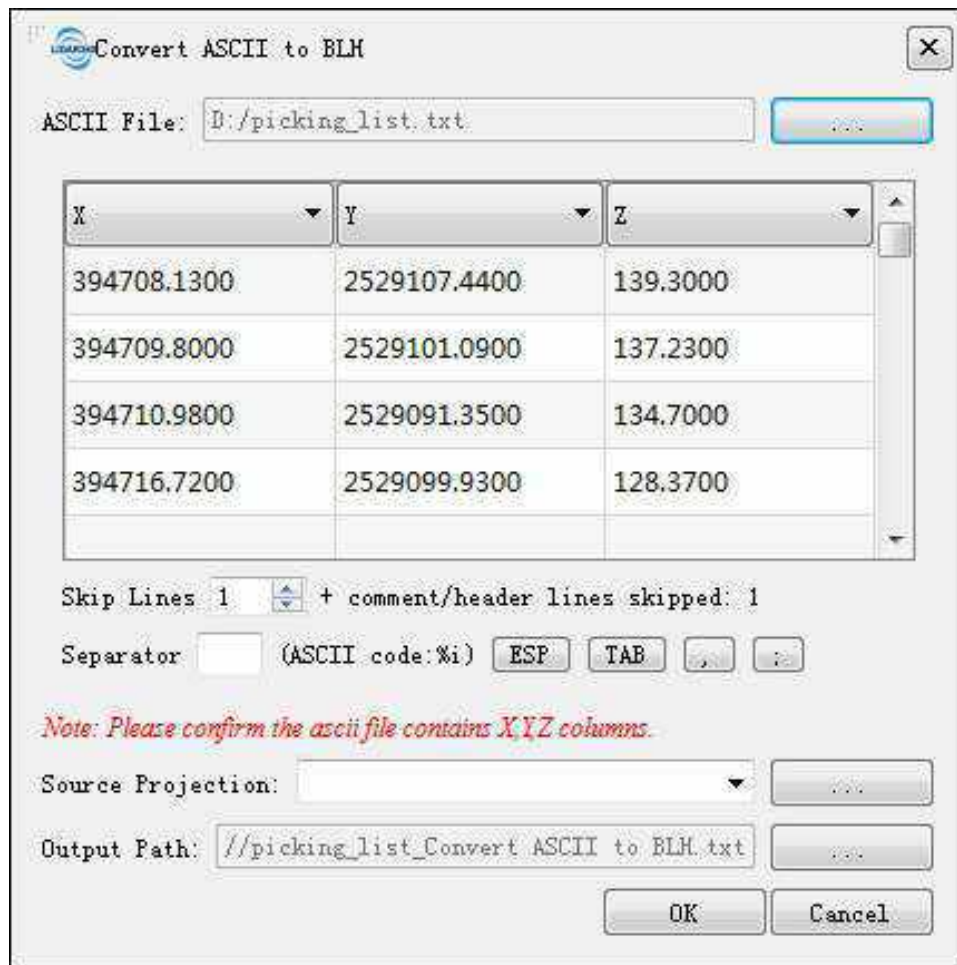
# Convert ASCII to BLH

## Summary

Transform the X, Y, Z information stored in the ASCII data to B (latitude), L (longitude), and H (ellipsoid height) in Geographic Coordinate System. All the other attributes in ASCII file will be kept.

## Usage

Click *Data Management > Projections and Transformations > Convert ASCII to BLH*.

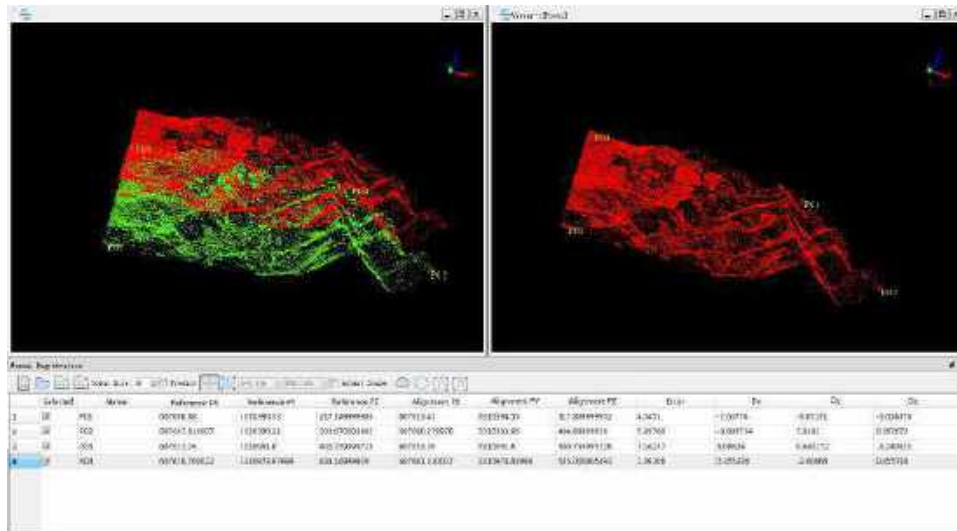


## Settings

- **Input ASCII Data:** Input an ASCII file. The supported formats include *.txt* and *.CSV*.
- **Coordinate System of Current Data:** Select the coordinate system of current point cloud file
- **Skip Lines:** The number of lines that need to be skipped for the currently selected ASCII data (usually description information or column headers).
- **Separator:** The separator of each component of the selected ASCII data.
- **Source Projection:** Projection information of the selected ASCII data.
- **Output Path:** Output the converted file to the specified path.

# Manual Registration

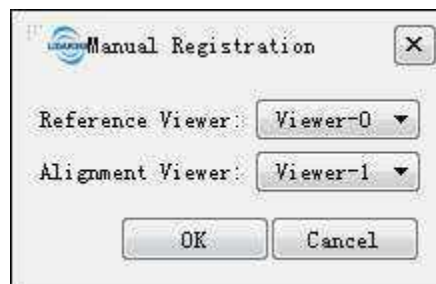
This tool is used for coordinate rectification of to-be-aligned data with respect to reference data. The two datasets can be "point cloud and point cloud", "point cloud and image", or "image and image". At least 3 pairs of homologous points(or fitted spheres in point cloud) should be added in the datasets, which are displayed in separate windows, before the calculation of transformation parameters. You can evaluate the accuracy using the residuals of homologous points listed in the table window.



Note: You have to create at least two display windows (except the profile window) before using this tool.

## Steps

1. Create two display windows and load the reference data and the to-be-aligned data into separate windows. Click the **Manual Registration** tool to open the following dialog.



2. Select **Reference window** for the reference data and **Alignment window** for the to-be-aligned data. Then click the **OK** button. The following table window with a series of **tools** pops up.







3. **(Optional)** Click the **Load Data** button to load homologous points from existing file. Then you can skip the manual measurement (steps 5, 6, 7).

4. Click [Pick Point](#) or [Pick Registration Sphere](#) to measure a pair of homologous points (or fit a pair of spheres) in reference window and alignment window. If spheres are fitted, their centers are used as homologous points.
5. Click the button [Add Point](#) to add blank row for a new pair of homologous points.
6. Repeat steps 5 and 6 to pick at least three pairs of homologous points (or spheres).
7. **(Optional)** If the option [Predict](#) is checked and there exist at least 3 pairs of homologous points, the corresponding position in the reference window will be predicted after picking a point in the alignment window.
8. **(Optional)** The user can exclude a pair of homologous points in the calculation of transformation parameters: (1) Uncheck the row of the homologous points in the table; (2) Or click the [Delete Point](#) button after selecting the corresponding row.
9. **(Optional)** The user can modify the coordinates of added homologous points: (1) Pick point again in the alignment window and reference window after selecting a row of homologous points; (2) Or double click the coordinates in a row, then input new values directly.
10. **(Optional)** The user can view each homologous point quickly for quality check: Double click a row in the table to jump to the corresponding positions in the display windows.
11. **(Optional)** Click the [Save Data](#) button to save the homologous points to file.
12. Click the button [Transform](#) to calculate transformation parameters and generate aligned data.


## Toolbar




Following functions are integrated in the toolbar.

-  **Save Data:** Save homologous points to file.
-  **Load Data:** Load homologous points from file (Please refer to [File Format of Homologous Points](#)).
-  **Add Point:** Add blank row for a new pair of homologous points in the table.
-  **Delete Point:** Delete selected row in the table.
- Point Size (Default: "20"):** Point size of homologous points in display windows.

**Predict (Default: Unchecked):** If this option is checked and there exist at least 3 pairs of homologous points, the corresponding position in the reference window will be predicted after picking a point in the alignment window.


 **Pick Point:** Pick homologous points in reference window and alignment window.

 **Pick Registration Sphere:** If target ball is used for point cloud registration, this function can fit sphere automatically after clicking the target ball in point cloud. The sphere center is used as homologous point.

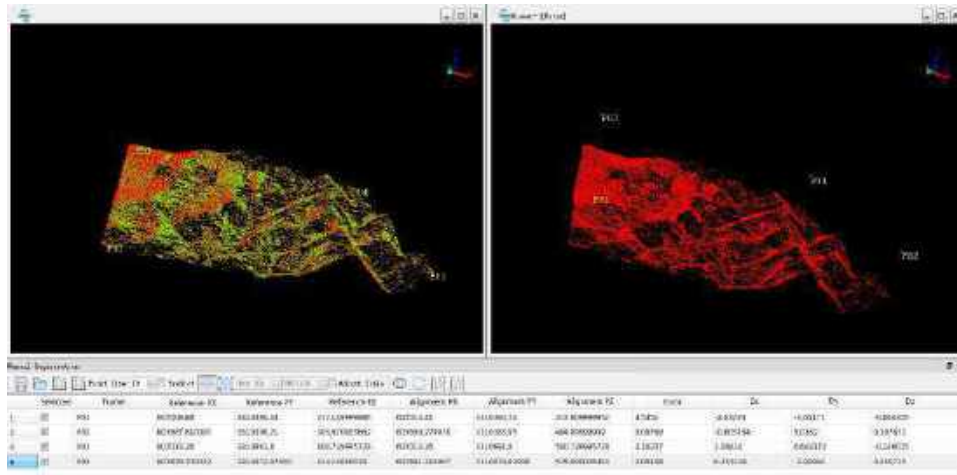
**R:** Radius for sphere fitting. Please input the actual radius of target ball.

**RMS:** The threshold of root mean square error for sphere fitting. Please set larger value for point cloud of low quality in case of fitting failure.

**Adjust Scale (Default "unchecked"):** If the scale between data is different, this option needed to be checked in order to generate a scaling factor. If it is not checked, the point cloud is considered to be a rigid transformation, and the calculated rotation matrix does not contain a scaling factor.

 **Transform:** The coordinates are rectified based on homologous points. While processing image data, the user can specify different methods, which include polygonal correction and polynomial correction. The polynomial

correction varies depending on N pairs of homologous points. [Polynomial Correction|Condition| |:-|:-| |Primary Polynomial |3 <= n="" <="" 6|="" |quadratic="" polynomial="" |6="" 10|="" |cubic="" |10=""  **Preview:** If this option is checked, a new window for preview will be created. The reference point cloud and the point cloud with the current transformation matrix applied will be displayed in this window. If users want to see the transform in preview, they can use this function. Currently, the preview only supports adding point cloud data. The picture below shows the effect of preview function.



**Export Transform Matrix:** When the point pairs picked in two windows are more than 3 pairs, software will generate the transform matrix shown in the matrix information table. Click this button to save the current transform matrix.

Current Matrix

	1	2	3	4
1	0.999562852104	-0.001513922421	0.029526475127	-308361.3487937...
2	-0.002736815682	0.989662037159	0.143393033467	-4053927.453015...
3	-0.029438317453	-0.143411158024	0.989225265154	595251.8424462...
4	0.000000000000	0.000000000000	0.000000000000	1.000000000000

**Input Transform Matrix:** Input a txt format transform matrix. The matrix should be 4 by 4. Click "apply" to show the matrix in the matrix information table.

Transformation Matrix

Matrix File: D:/TestData/Transformation.txt

Matrix Information:

	1	2	3	4
1	0.9999401535...	0.0106705249...	0.0024143931...	-35294.57328...
2	-0.010658107...	0.9999302004...	-0.005098925...	6713.1845675...
3	-0.002468632...	0.0050728877...	0.9999840857...	-15393.42135...
4	0	0	0	1

# Manual Rotation and Translation

Manual rotation and translation tool is used to translate and rotate a single point cloud file. Rotate and translate the point cloud file in the user-interface, and the software will automatically calculate the transform matrix. After applying this transformation, the transformed result will be generated.



Note: To activate this function, there are at least one window other than profile window, and at least one point cloud file being opened in the software.

## Steps

1. Create a new window, and input the point cloud to be transformed and the reference point cloud (if there are any) in that window. Click the manual rotation and translation tool, and the following dialog window will popup.



2. In the popup window, select the point cloud to be transformed. If there is a reference point cloud, please specify it in the same window. And then the following table window will popup. For the detailed information of the tool listed in the window, please refer to [Settings](#) below.




## Tool Bar


If there is a reference point cloud, please match the center first.





In the table window, from left to right, each button is: open matrix, save matrix, start rotation and translation transformation, match data center, pause, resume to initial state, display transformation matrix, data transformation.





 **Open matrix:** Input the existing matrix from external source. Please refer to the appendix for [matrix format](#).

 **Save matrix:** Save the current matrix information as a txt file.

 **Match center:** This function is applicable when there is a reference point cloud. By calculating the center of the reference point cloud and the point cloud to be transformed, this function can translate the point cloud to be transformed to the position of reference point cloud.

 **Pause:** 暂停待处理数据的旋转和平移操作。

 **Resume:** Resume the point cloud to be transformed to the initial status, and change the transform matrix to the identity matrix.

 **Apply transform matrix:** After applying the transform matrix, the transformed point cloud will be saved to the original point cloud file.

**TX:** If this option is checked, it is allowed to translate the data in the direction of X axis. And the distance of translation will be displayed in delt X.

**TY:** If this option is checked, it is allowed to translate the data in the direction of Y axis. And the distance of translation will be displayed in delt Y.

**TZ:** If this option is checked, it is allowed to translate the data in the direction of Z axis. And the distance of translation will be displayed in delt Z.

**Rotation:** There are four options, X, Y, Z, and XYZ. If the X or Y or Z option is checked, the rotation about the checked axis is allowed. If the XYZ option is checked, the rotation about all the axes is allowed.

# Clip

The clipping tools include **Clip by Circle**, **Clip by Rectangle** and **Clip by Polygon**.

- [Clip by Circle](#)
- [Clip by Rectangle](#)
- [Clip by Polygon](#)

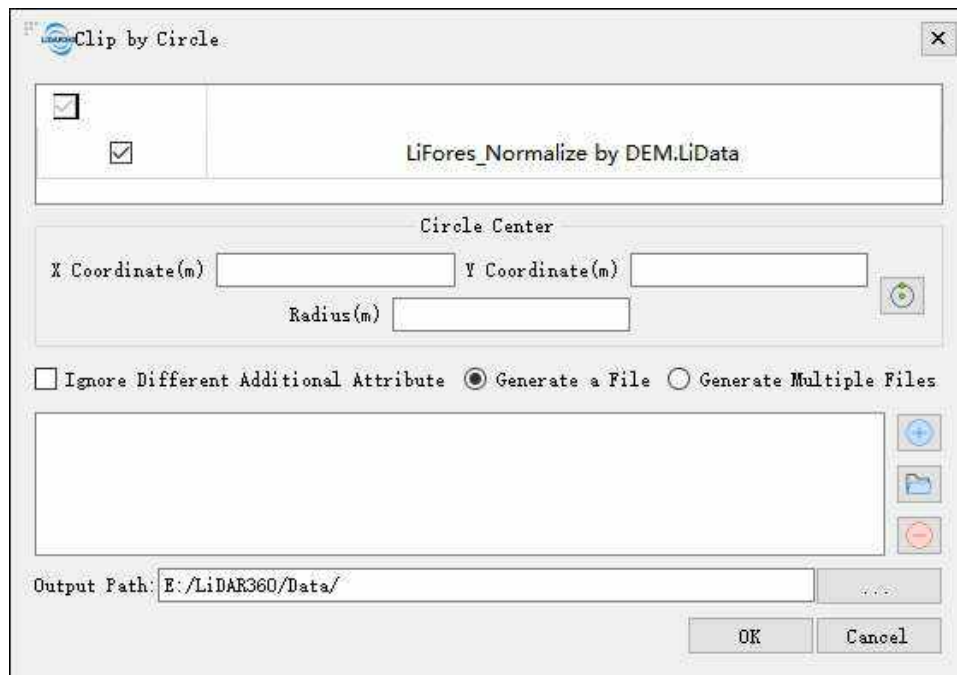
# Clip by Circle

## Summary



Clip by circle tool extracts the point cloud data within user-defined circle(s), and the extracted points can be saved in one or multiple files.



## Usage

Click *Data Management > Clip > Clip by Circle*



## Settings

- **Input Data:** Input one or more point cloud data files. File Format: \*.LiData.
- **X Coordinate (m):** Enter the X coordinate of the circle center.
- **Y Coordinate (m):** Enter the Y coordinate of the circle center.
- **Radius (m):** Enter the radius of the circle.
- **Ignore Different Additional Attributes:** When inputs are several point cloud files, and this option is checked, only the same additional attributes of the point cloud files will be merged. If this option is unchecked, and there are some different attributes in the additional attribute tables, the merge of different point cloud files cannot be done.
- **Generate a File:** Extract all the point cloud data within 2D circle(s) to one file.
- **Generate Multiple Files:** Extract the point cloud data within each circle and save them to one individual file. The file is named by its center and radius by default.
- : After clicking this button, users will be able to draw circle in the current window. Single-click to choose the center of the circle, and drag the mouse to change the size of the circle. Double-click to end the selection. The coordinates of the center of circle and the radius of the circle will be displayed in the window.
- : Click this button to add the coordinates and radius of a circle to the processing list. Perform the same operation to add multiple clipping circles.

- : Click this button to load external data files. The file format refers to the [Clip Range File Format](#) in the appendix.
- : Click this button to remove the selected row(s) in the processing list.
- **Output path:** The generated file will be saved in this output path.

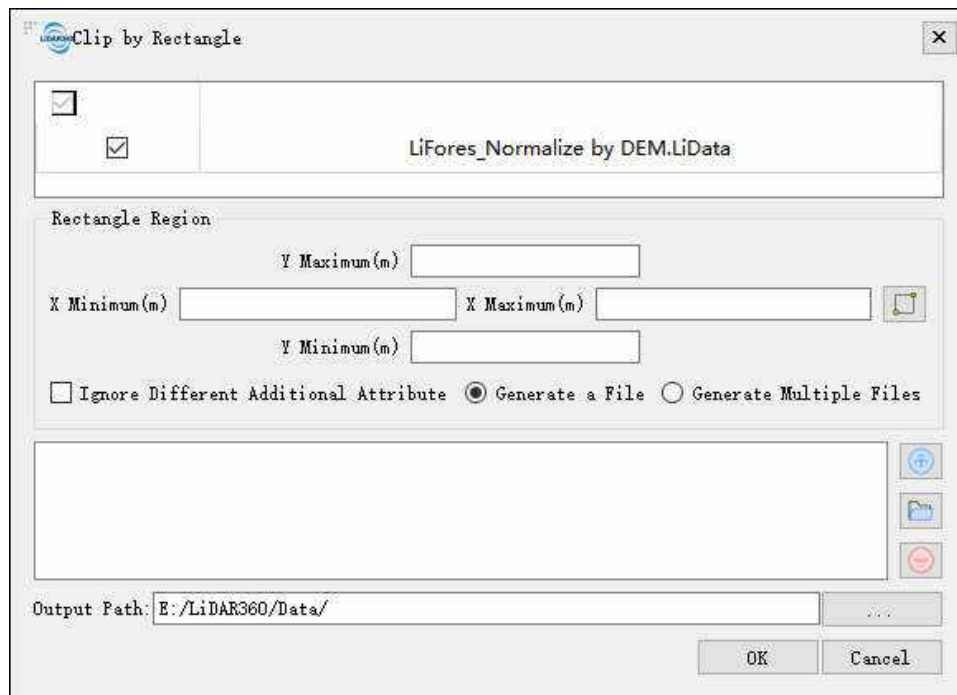
# Clip by Rectangle

## Summary


Clip by rectangle tool extracts the point cloud data within user-defined rectangular(s), and the extracted points can be saved in one or multiple files.




## Usage

Click *Data Management > Clip > Clip by Rectangle*



## Settings

- **Input Data:** Input one or more point cloud data files. File Format: \*.LiData.
- **Y Maximum (m):** Enter the maximum Y coordinate of the rectangle.
- **Y Minimum (m):** Enter the minimum Y coordinate of the rectangle.
- **X Minimum (m):** Enter the minimum X coordinate of the rectangle.
- **X Maximum (m):** Enter the maximum X coordinate of the rectangle.
- **Ignore Different Additional Attributes:** When inputs are several point cloud files, and this option is checked, only the same additional attributes of the point cloud files will be merged. If this option is unchecked, and there are some different attributes in the additional attribute tables, the merge of different point cloud files cannot be done.
- **Generate a File:** Extract all the point cloud data within the rectangle to a file.
- **Generate Multiple Files:** Extract the point cloud data within each rectangle and save them to one file. The file is named by the rectangle's lower left corner coordinate and the rectangle's width and height by default.
- : After clicking this button, users will be able to draw rectangle in the current window. Single-click to choose the first vertex of the rectangle, and drag the mouse to change the size of the rectangle. Double-click to end the selection. The the location information of the rectangle will be displayed in the window.

- : Click this button to add the entered rectangle range to the processing list. Perform the same operation to add multiple clipping regions.
- : Click this button to load external data files. The file format refers to the [Clip Range File Format](#) in the appendix.
- : Click this button to remove the selected row(s) in the processing list.
- **Output Path:** The generated file will be saved in this output path.

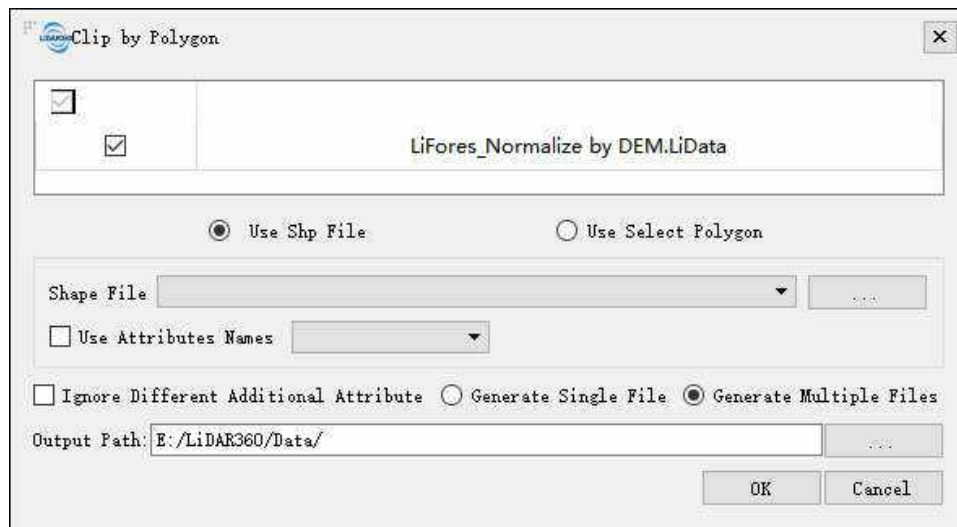
# Clip by Polygon

## Summary




Clip by polygon tool extracts the point cloud data within a user-defined polygon vector file, and the extracted points will be saved in one or several files.

## Usage

Click *Data Management > Clip > Clip by Polygon*



## Settings

- **Input Data:** Select one or more point cloud data files. File Format: \*.LiData.
- **Interactive Polygon:** Click  to start to create the polygon. Click in the viewer to select the nodes and double-click to end selecting. After this, the polygon will be added to the polygon list. Click  to delete the polygon in the list.
- **Shape File:** Select the vector file pre-loaded in LiDAR360 from the drop-down menu, or click the button  to load an external vector data file.
- **Ignore Different Additional Attributes:** When inputs are several point cloud files, and this option is checked, only the same additional attributes of the point cloud files will be merged. If this option is unchecked, and there are some different attributes in the additional attribute tables, the merge of different point cloud files cannot be done.
- **Generate Single File:** When users choose to export a single file, the point cloud will be clipped by all polygons in the vector data. All results will be saved in one file.
- **Generate Multiple Files:** When users choose to export single file, the point cloud will be clipped by all polygons in the vector data. The point cloud in each polygon unit will be saved as one file.
- **Use Attributes Names:** When users select to **Generate Multiple Files**, this function can be used. Users can name the files by selected attributes. When attributes are not available, the files will automatically be named as its identification number.
- **Output Path:** The generated files will be saved in this output path.

Note: The vector data file used to clip the point cloud data must be an existing polygon file.



# Conversion

Conversion Tools Provide the Option to Convert Files Between Various Formats.

- [Convert Las to LiData](#)
- [Convert to Las](#)
- [Convert LiData to LiData](#)
- [Convert to ASCII](#)
- [Convert to E57](#)
- [Convert to TIFF](#)
- [Convert to Shape](#)
- [Convert to DXF](#)
- [Convert TIFF to LiModel](#)
- [Convert to Texture LiModel](#)
- [Convert LiModel to TIFF](#)
- [Convert TIFF to ASCII](#)
- [Convert TIFF to LiData](#)
- [Convert LiTin to DXF](#)
- [Convert Shape to KML](#)
- [Convert KML to Shape](#)

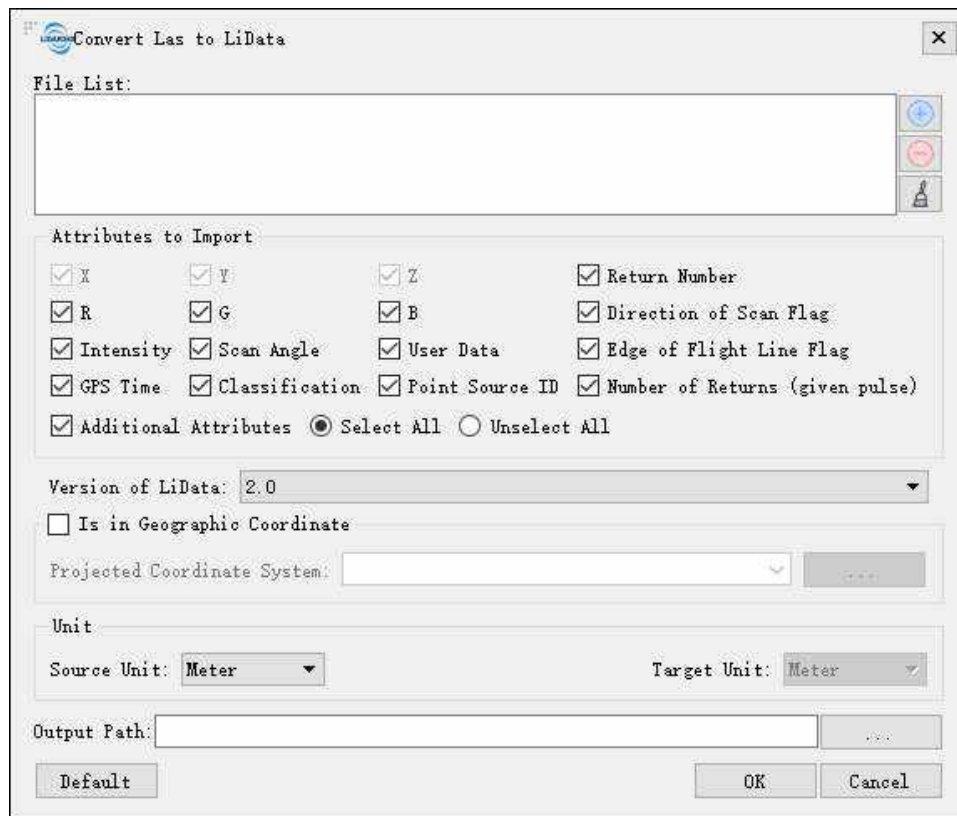
# Convert Las to LiData

## Summary




Convert to LiData can convert point cloud data in LAS or LAZ formats to LiDAR360 customized point cloud format (LiData format).

## Usage

Click *Data Management > Conversion > Convert Las to LiData*



## Settings

- **File List:** Import the file that needs to be converted. The file formats currently supported are : .las, .laz. Users need to click  to select the point cloud data; users can select one or more file(s) in the existing list and click  to delete them from the list; users can click  to remove all files in the list.
- **Attributes to Export:** Users can select the attributes that need to be exported. All Las attributes are supported.
- **Source Unit:** The unit of the importing point cloud file. Choose from meter, decimeters, centimeters, millimeters, feet, and inches.
- **Target Unit:** The unit of the exporting LiData. As the only unit supported in LiDAR360 is meter, this option is fixed as "meter".
- **LiDAR Version (The most updated version of LiData by default):** The version of the exporting LiData. Choose from 1.9 and 2.0
  - Note: LiData 2.0 supports all the features of LAS 1.4. LiData 1.9 is mainly used to support LAS 1.0 to

LAS 1.3. Please refer to [LiData Format](#) for details. When exporting from a higher version to a lower version, the exceeded field range limitation will be set as 0.

- **In Geographic Coordinate System (Unchecked by Default):** If the input LAS point cloud is in Geographic Coordinate System (BLH), please check this option. And the data will be projected to the projected coordinate system to be displayed normally in LiDAR360.
- **Output Path:** Path of the output folder. After the conversion is executed, the converted new file(s) will be generated.

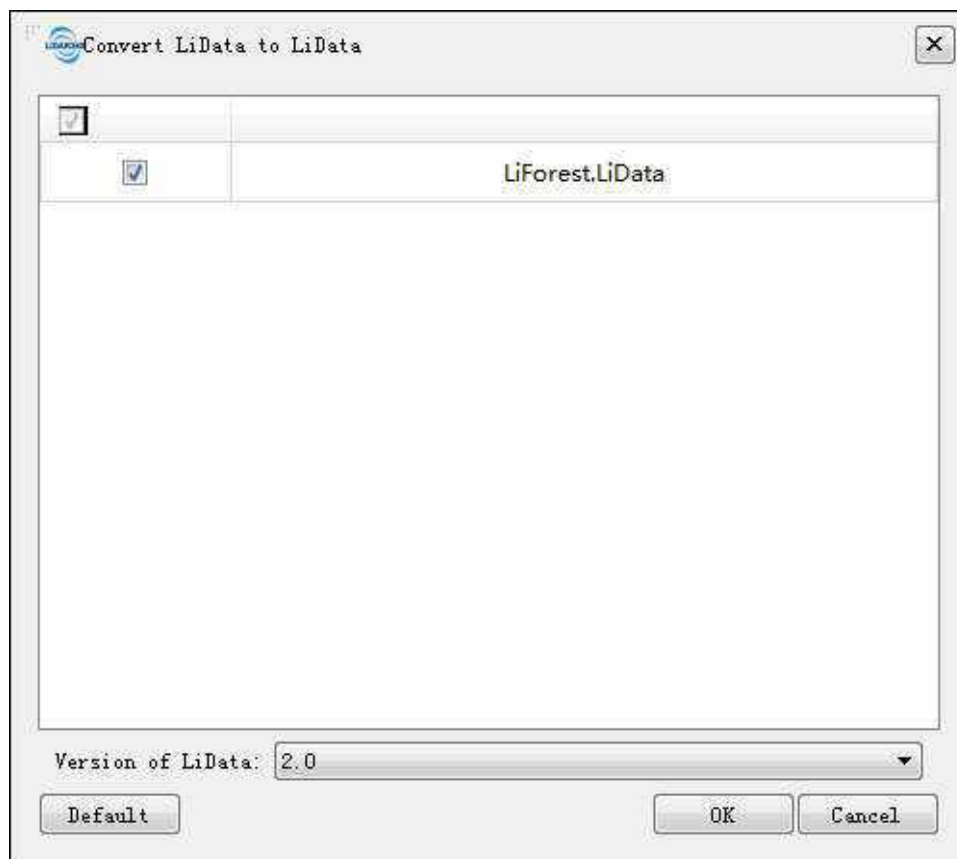
# Convert LiData to LiData

## Summary

Convert the version of LiData file. Currently, the tool supports the conversion between LiData 1.9 and LiData 2.0. LiData 2.0 supports the additional attributes and expands the scope of some attribute fields (i.e., the number of classes has been expanded from 32 to 256). It is required to use LiData 2.0 file to run some of the functions, i.e., change detection, deviation analysis.

## Usage

Click *Data Management > Conversion > Convert LiData to LiData*



## Settings

- **Input Data:** Input data could be one or more point cloud files. File format: \*.LiData.
- **LiData Version (2.0 by default):** The version of output LiData file. It is supported to export LiData in the version of 1.9 or 2.0.

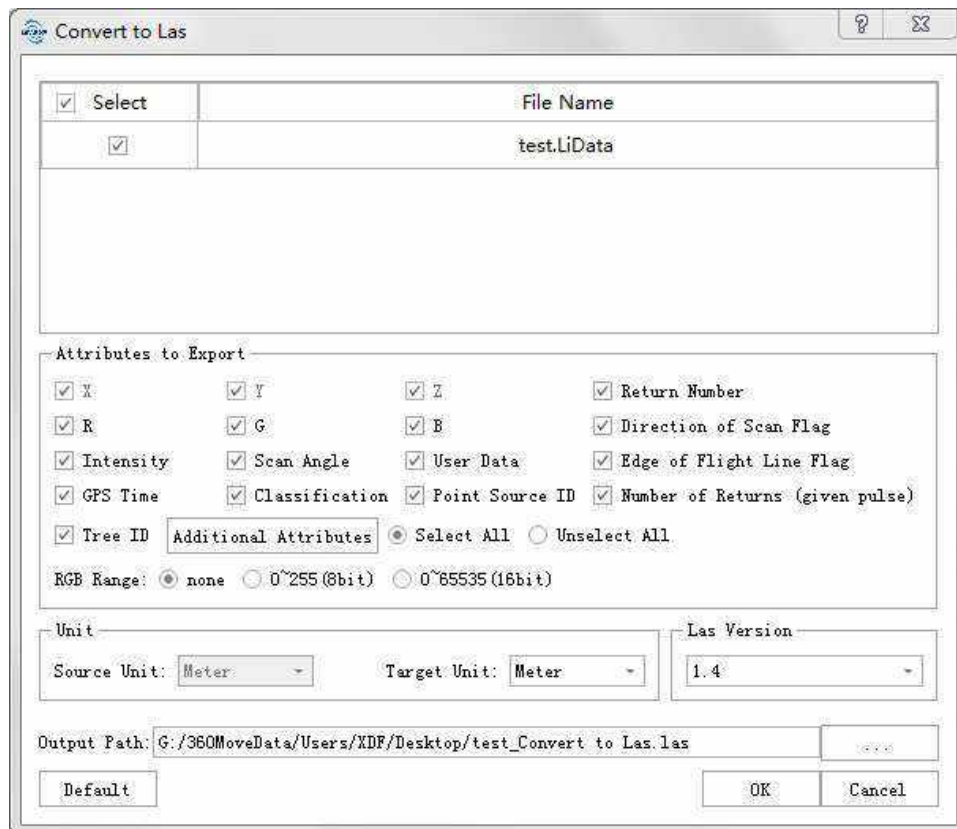
# Convert to Las

## Summary

Convert to Las can convert point clouds in LiData format to LAS format, namely the standard Lidar point cloud data format.

## Usage

Click *Data Management > Conversion > Convert to Las*



## Settings

- **Select Input File:** The input file can be a single point cloud data file or multiple data files. File Format: \*.LiData.
- **Attributes to Export:** Users can select the attributes that need to be exported. All Las attributes are supported.
- **RGB Range:** There are three options for the RGB range.
  - **none:** Output according to the original RGB range of the selected file.
  - **0~255 (8 bits):** Output with the RGB mapped to 0~255. If the color range of the file selected is 0~1 or 0~65535, it can be mapped to 0~255 for output.
  - **0~65535 (16 bits):** Output with the RGB mapped to 0~65535. If the color range of the file selected is 0~1 or 0~255, it can be mapped to 0~65535 for output.
- **Source Unit:** The unit of the LiData to be exported as LAS file. As the only supported unit in LiDAR360 is meters currently, this option is fixed as "meter".

- **Target Unit:** The unit of the exporting LAS file. Choose from meters, decimeters, centimeters, millimeters, feet, and inches.
- **LAS Version (Default value is 1.4):** The version of the exporting LAS file. Choose from 1.2 to 1.4. Please refer to [LiData Format](#) for details. When exporting from a higher version to a lower version, the exceeded field range limitation will be set as 0.
- **Output Path:** Path of the output folder. After the conversion being executed, the converted new file(s) will be generated.

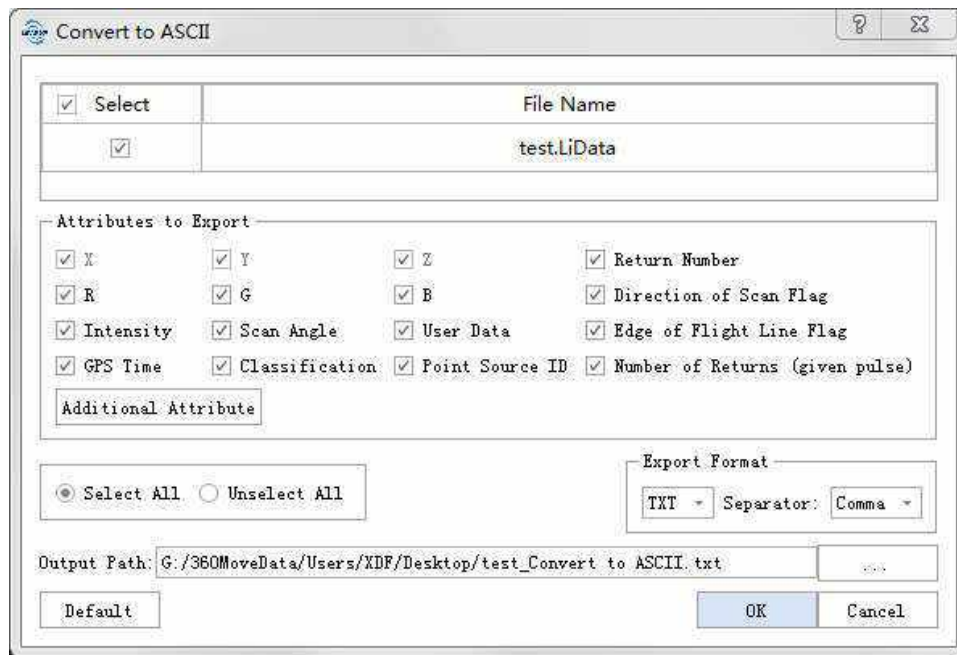
# Convert to ASCII

## Summary

The Convert to ASCII tool can convert the LiData point cloud to ASCII format, a text format that can be easily viewed in a text editor.

## Usage

Click *Data Management > Conversion > Convert to ASCII*



## Settings

- **Input Data:** The input file can be a single point cloud data file or multiple data files. File Format: \*.LiData.
- **Attributes to Export:** Users can select the attributes that need to be exported. All Las attributes are supported.
- **Export Format:** LiDAR360 supports two suffix formats: txt and csv, and support separators are: commas, spaces and TAB.
- **Output path:** Path of the output folder. After the conversion is executed, the converted new file(s) will be generated.

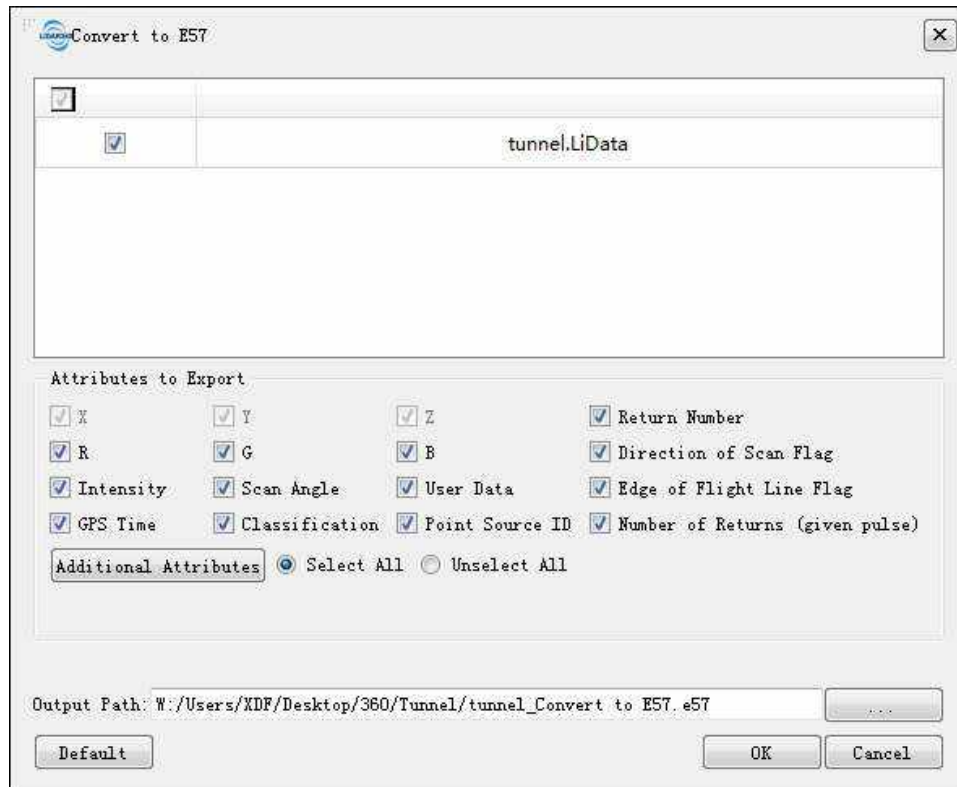
# Convert to E57

## Summary

Convert to E57 can convert point clouds in LiData format to E57 format.

## Usage

Click *Data Management > Conversion > Convert to E57*



## Settings

- **Select Input File:** The input file can be a single point cloud data file or multiple data files. File Format: \*.LiData.
- **Attributes to Export:** Users can select the attributes that need to be exported. The basic and additional attributes are supported.
- **Output Path:** Path of the output folder. After the conversion being executed, the converted new file(s) will be generated.



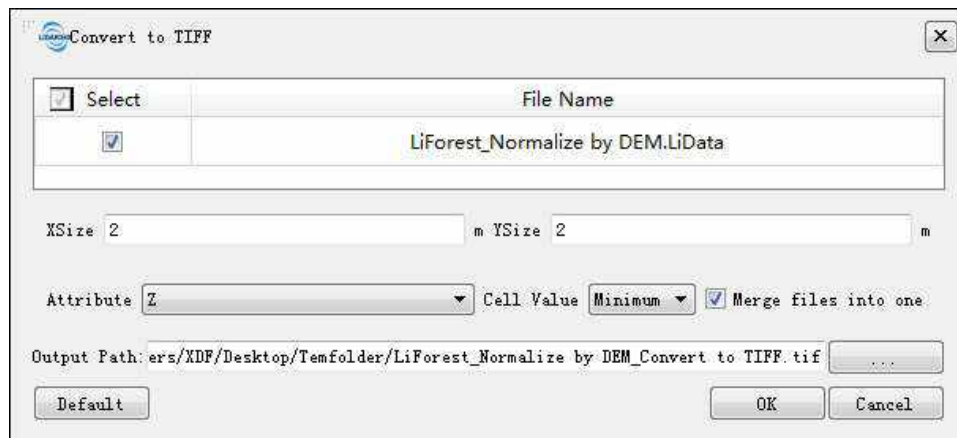
# Convert to TIFF

## Summary

The Convert to TIFF tool can convert LiData point cloud data to raster images according to the **Attribute** of the points in **Cell Value** method.

## Usage

Click *Data Management > Conversion > Convert to TIFF*



## Settings

- **Input Data:** The input file can be a single point cloud data file or multiple data files. File Format: \*.LiData.
- **XSize (m, default value is "2"):** The X pixel resolution of the output raster.
- **YSize (m, default value is "2"):** The Y pixel resolution of the output raster.
- **Attribute (default is "Z"):** Select the point attribute used to calculate the raster cell value.
  - **Z (default):** Generate the raster data using the Z value of the point cloud data.
  - **Intensity:** Generate raster data using the intensity values of the point cloud data.
  - **Scan angle:** Generate raster data using the scan angle of point cloud data.
  - **Return number:** Generate raster data using the return number of the point cloud data.
  - **Number of returns of given pulse:** Raster data is generated using the number of returns of given pulse of the point cloud data.
- **Cell value:** Choose how to fill raster pixel values.
  - **Minimum (default):** Use the smallest attribute value as the value of a raster cell.
  - **Average:** Use the average of attribute values of all points within a raster cell as its value.
  - **Maximum:** Use the largest attribute value as the value of a raster cell.
- **Merge files into one:** Users can set merging all raster into one data file. If not checked, each point cloud data will be generated into a separate raster file.
- **Output path:** Path of output folder. After the function is executed, the converted new file is generated.

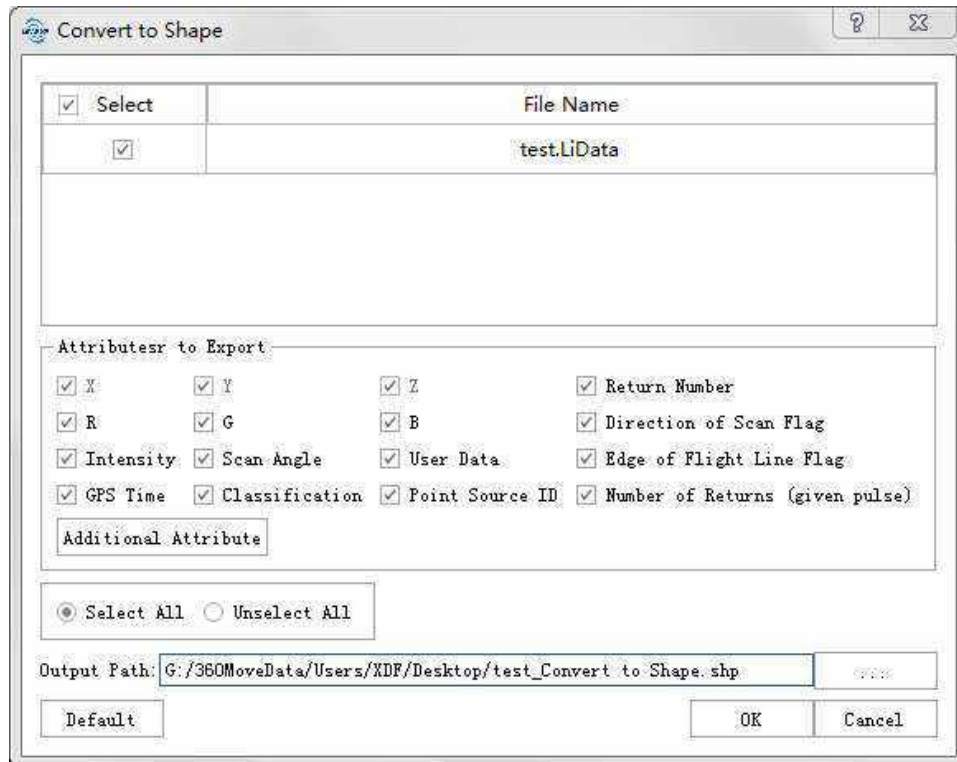
# Convert to Shape

## Summary

The Convert to Shape tool can convert point cloud files in LiData format to point files in vector format.

## Usage

Click *Data Management > Conversion > Convert to Shape*



## Settings

- **Input data:** The input file can be a single point cloud data file or multiple data files. File Format: \*.LiData.
- **Attributes to Export:** Users can select the attributes that need to be exported, and all Las attributes are supported. The selected attributes will be written in the attributes of the shape file data.
- **Output path:** Path of the output folder. After the conversion being executed, the converted new file will be generated.

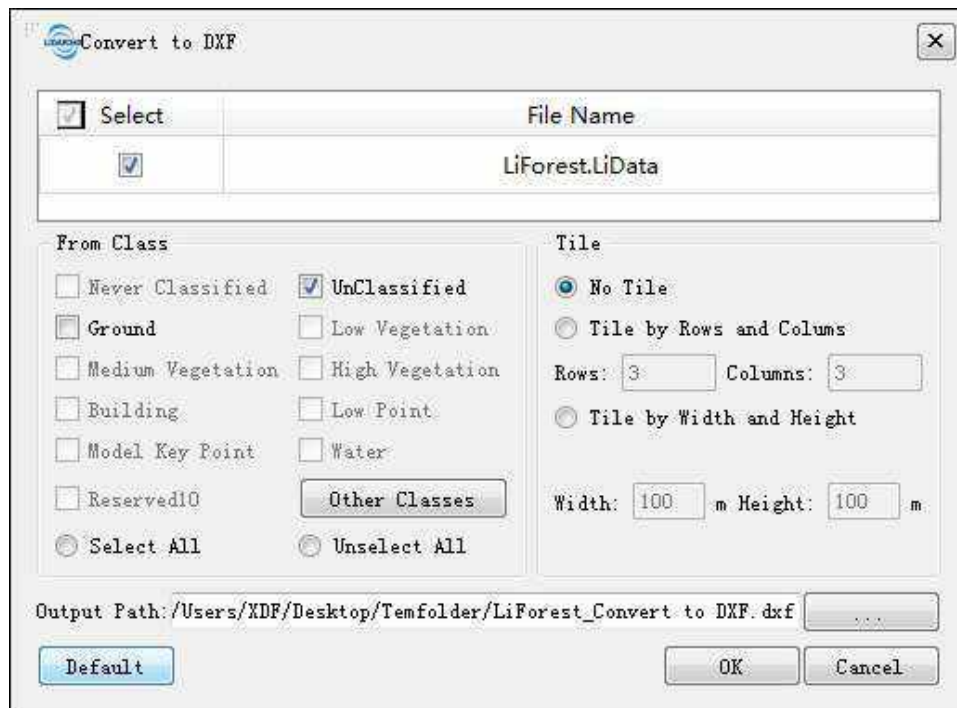
# Convert to DXF

## Summary

The Convert to DXF tool can convert LiData format point cloud files to point vector data in DXF format. LiDAR360 software exports DXF files in ASCII format.

## Usage

Click *Data Management > Conversion > Convert to DXF*



## Settings

- **Input Data:** The input file can be a single point cloud data file or multiple data files. File Format: \*.LiData.
- **From Class:** Source class (es), supports up to 256 different classes.
- **Tile:** Since the amount of point cloud data is often large, the software provides an optional tile mode that can split the input data file to a number of tiles.
  - **No Tile:** Export a single DXF file.
  - **Tile by Rows and Columns:** According to the boundary of the point cloud data, the point cloud will be split into a total number of rows \* columns data blocks evenly, and a single DXF file will be generated.
    - **Rows (default value is "3"):** User-defined number of rows that the point cloud want to be split into.
    - **Columns (default value is "3"):** User-defined number of columns that the point cloud want to be split into.
  - **Tile by Width and Height:** The point cloud will be split into a number of tiles from the lower left corner by the specified width and height, one DXF file per block.
    - **Width (m, default value is "100"):** User-defined block width.
    - **Height (m, default value is "100"):** User-defined block height.
- **Output path:** Path of the output folder. After the conversion being executed, the converted new file(s) will be

generated.

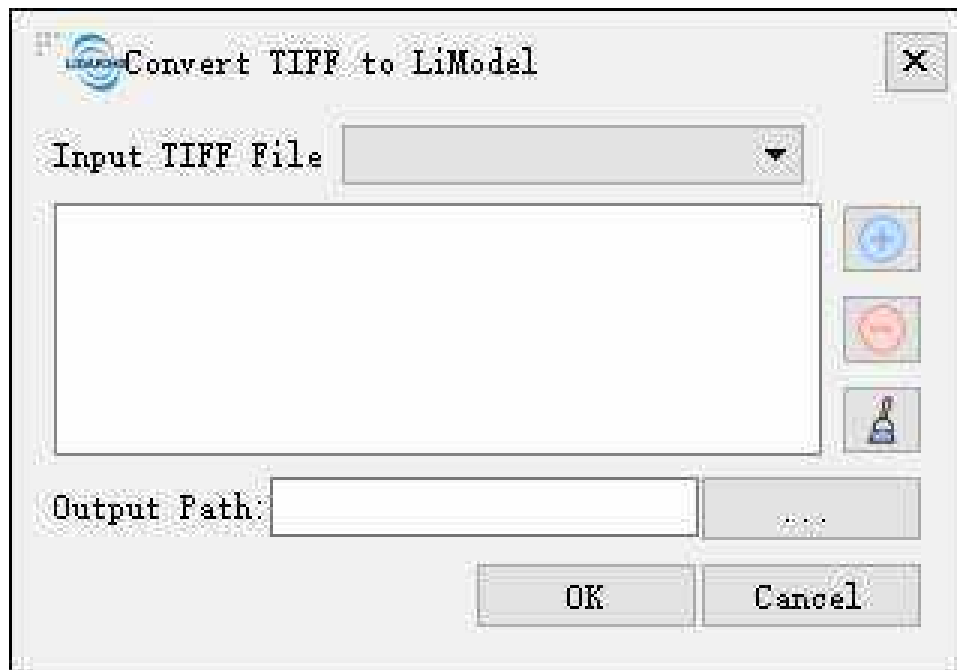
# Convert TIFF to LiModel

## Summary




Convert TIFF to LiModel tool can convert single-band raster data (DEM, DSM, CHM, etc.) to LiModel format. The LiModel format is a LiDAR360 software customized format that allows the converted single-band raster data to be displayed and edited in a 3D window.

## Usage

Click *Data Management > Conversion > Convert TIFF to LiModel*



## Settings

- **Input Tiff File:** Users can select the file to be processed from the drop-down list.
- : Users can add files to be converted that have not been opened.
- : Users can select a file in the list and click this button to remove the file from the list.
- : Click this button to clear all files in the list.
- **Output path:** Path of the output folder. After the conversion being executed, the converted new file(s) will be generated.

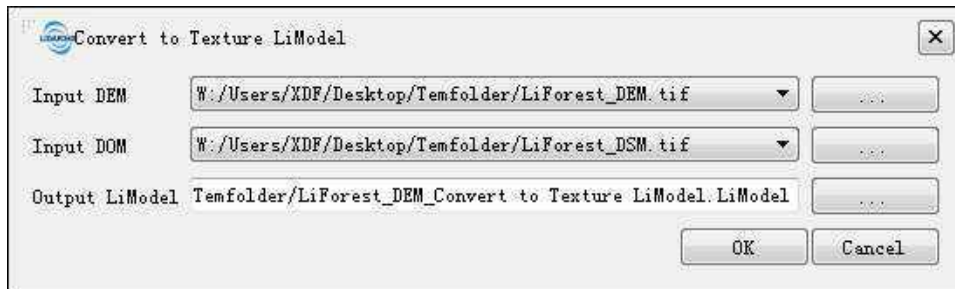
# Convert to Texture LiModel

## Summary



Convert to Textured LiModel tool is based on the [Convert Image to LiModel](#) tool, which maps color values of a DOM data to the LiModel model for display. This function only supports single file data conversion.

## Usage

Click *Data Management > Conversion > Convert to Texture LiModel*



## Settings

- **Input DEM:** Users can select a file to be converted from the drop-down list or use the button  to load an external data file. Single-band raster data is required.
- **Input DOM:** Users can select a desired file from the drop-down list or use the button  to load an external data file. The selected color image needs to have at least three bands.
- **Output LiModel:** Path of the output file. After the conversion being executed, the converted new file will be generated.

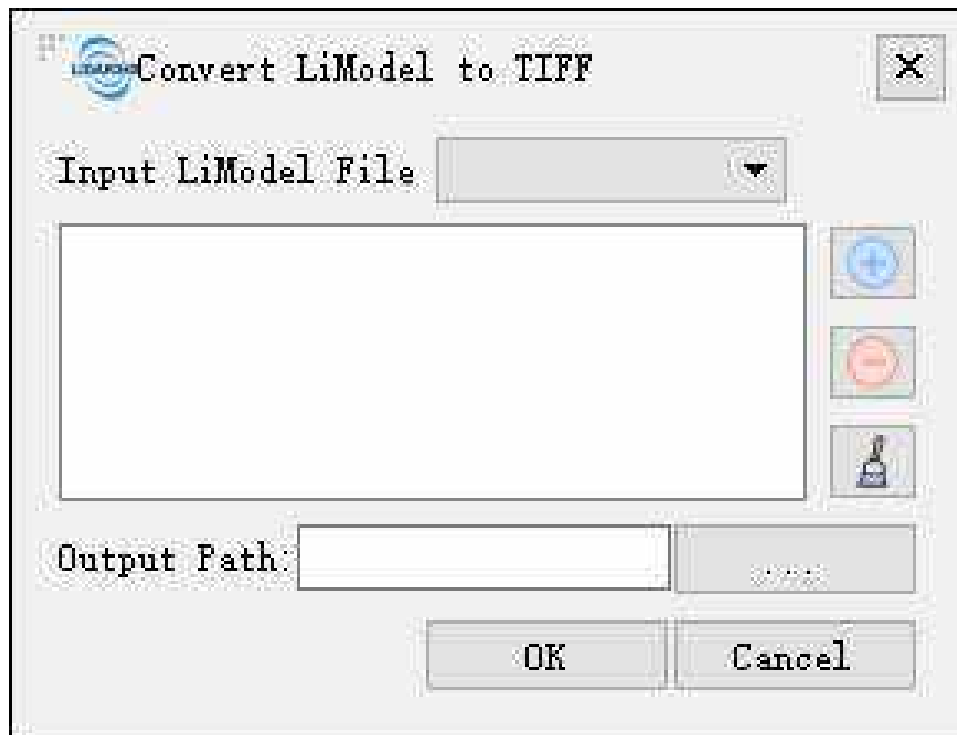
# Convert LiModel to TIFF

## Summary




Convert LiModel to TIFF tool converts LiModel format files to raster images in TIFF format. After [editing](#) LiModel data, users can use this function to convert the data to TIFF format.

## Usage

Click *Data Management > Conversion > Convert LiModel to TIFF*



## Settings

- **Input LiModel File:** User can select a file to be processed from the drop-down list.
- : Users can add external data files to be converted.
- : Users can select a file in the list and click this button to remove the file from the list.
- : Click this button to clear all the data in the list.
- **Output path:** Path of the output folder. After the conversion being executed, the converted new file will be generated.

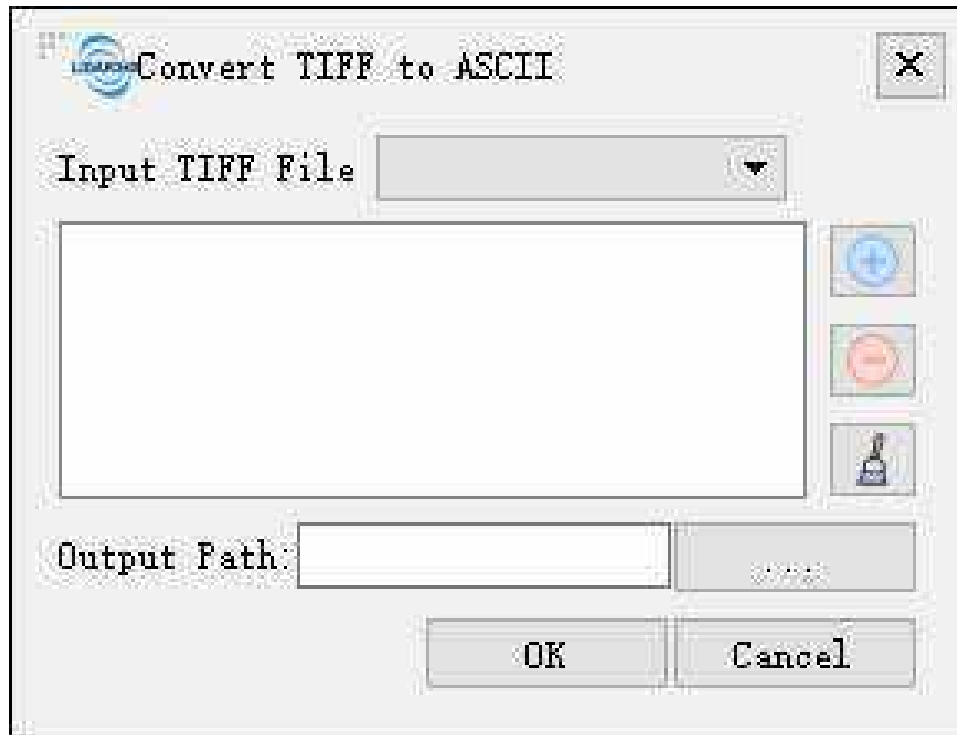
# Convert TIFF to ASCII

## Summary




Convert TIFF to ASCII tool can be used to convert TIFF format raster images to files in ASCII format.

## Usage

Click *Data Management > Conversion > Convert TIFF to ASCII*



## Settings

- **Input Tiff File:** Users can select the file to be processed from the drop-down list.
- : Users can add external file(s) to be converted.
- : Users can select one or files in the list and click this button to remove them from the list.
- : Click this button to clear all files in the list.
- **Output path:** Path of the output folder. After the conversion being executed, the converted new file(s) will be generated.



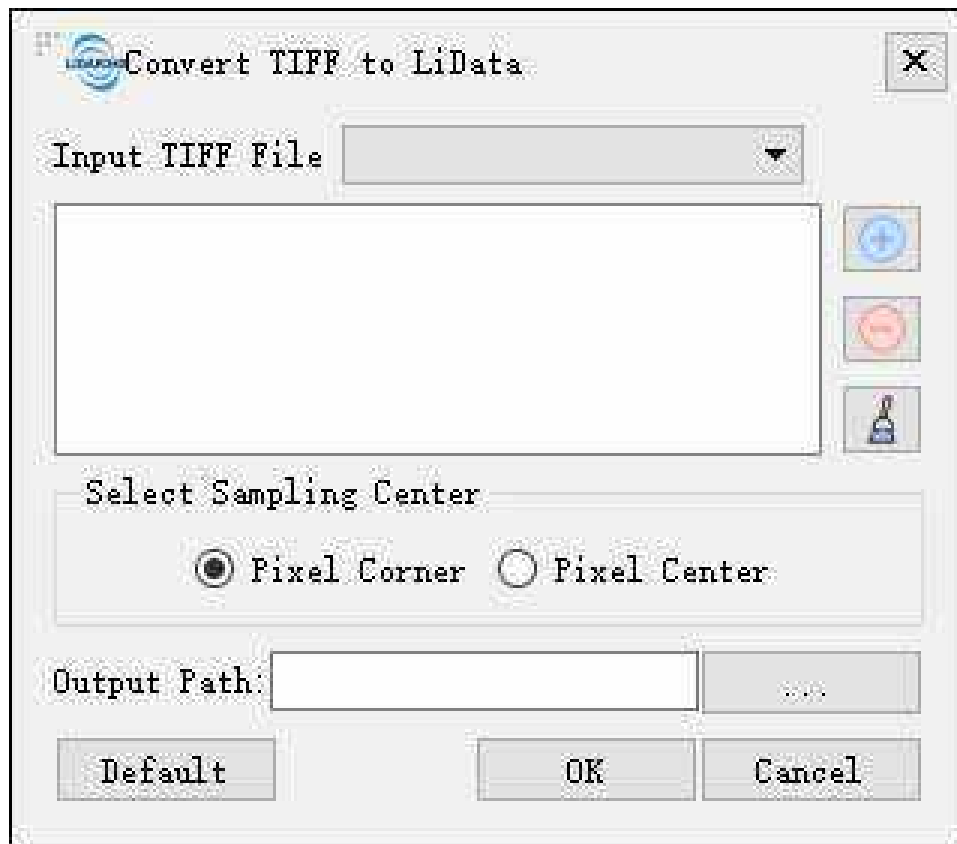
# Convert TIFF to LiData

## Summary




Convert TIFF to LiData tool can convert single-band raster data (DEM, DSM, CHM, etc.) to LiData. This tool is particularly useful when the users can hardly acquire point clouds in a certain area but have accurate raster products. This function can help to simulate the point cloud data in that region missing LiDAR points.

## Usage

Click *Data Management > Conversion > Convert TIFF to LiData*.



## Settings

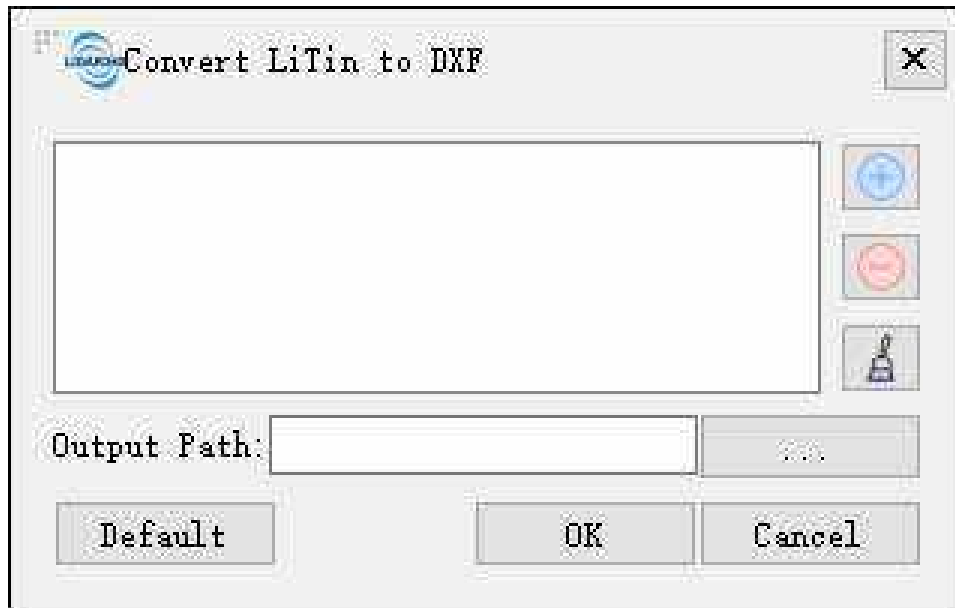
- **Input TIFF File:** Users can select the files need to be processed from the drop-down list. The files will be added to the list of files to be processed.
- : Users can insert external files to be processed.
- : Users can select one file in the list of files to be processed, and click this button to remove this file from that list.
- : Click this button to clear the list of files to be processed.
- **Select Sampling Center:** Users can choose either the corner (default) or the center points of the pixels as the sampling center.
- **Output Path:** Path of output folder. After the function is executed, the converted new file is generated.

## Convert LiTin to DXF




Convert the TIN in LiTin format to Drawing Exchange Format, or DXF format.

### Usage

Click *Data Management > Conversion > LiTin to DXF*.



### Settings

- **File List:** Input the TIN files to be converted. The supported format is LiTin. Users can click  to add external data, or users can select the file in the file list and click  button to remove the file from the list. Click  button to clear all the files from the file list.
- **Output Path:** select the output path to store the newly generated DXF file.

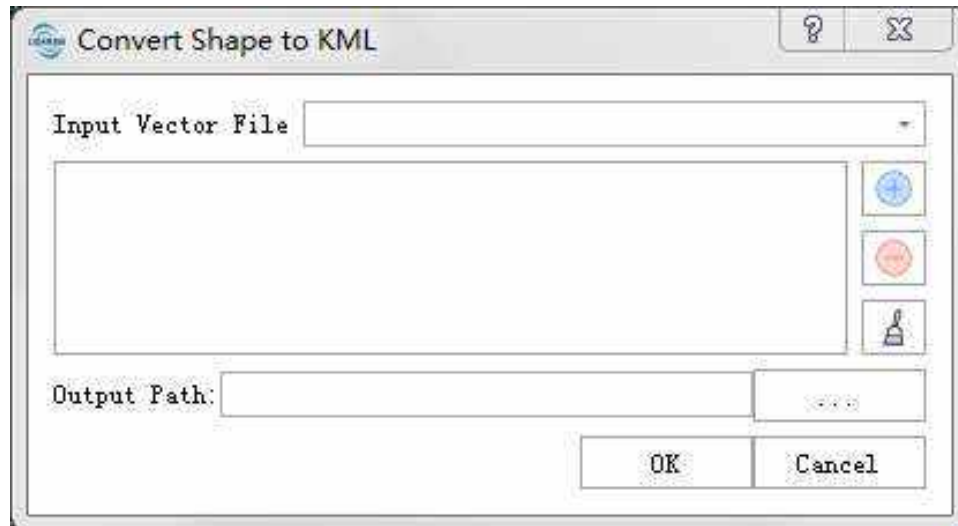
# Convert Shape to KML

The data in shape format will be converted to KML format. KML format




reference: <https://wiki.openstreetmap.org/wiki/KML>

## Usage

Click *Data Management > Conversion > Convert Shape to KML*.



## Settings

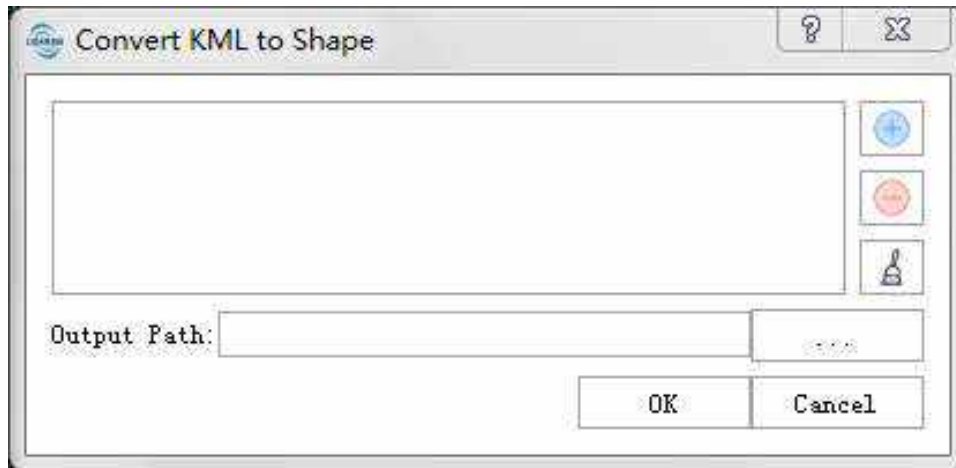
- **Input Shape File:** Users can select the files need to be processed from the drop-down list. The files will be added to the list of files to be processed.
- : Users can insert external files to be processed.
- : Users can select one file in the list of files to be processed, and click this button to remove this file from that list.
- : Click this button to clear the list of files to be processed.
- **Output Path:** Path of output folder. After the function is executed, the converted KML file is generated.

# Convert KML to Shape




The data in KML format will be converted to shape format. KML format reference: <https://wiki.openstreetmap.org/wiki/KML>

## Usage

Click *Data Management > Conversion > Convert KML to Shape*.



## Settings

- **Input KML File:** Users can select the files need to be processed from the drop-down list. The files will be added to the list of files to be processed.
- : Users can insert external files to be processed.
- : Users can select one file in the list of files to be processed, and click this button to remove this file from that list.
- : Click this button to clear the list of files to be processed.
- **Output Path:** Path of output folder. After the function is executed, the converted Shape file is generated.

# Extract

Extraction tools include **Extract by Class**, **Extract by Elevation**, **Extract by Intensity**, **Extract by Return**, and **Extract by Time**.

- [Extract by Class](#)
- [Extract by Elevation](#)
- [Extract by Intensity](#)
- [Extract by Return](#)
- [Extract by Time](#)

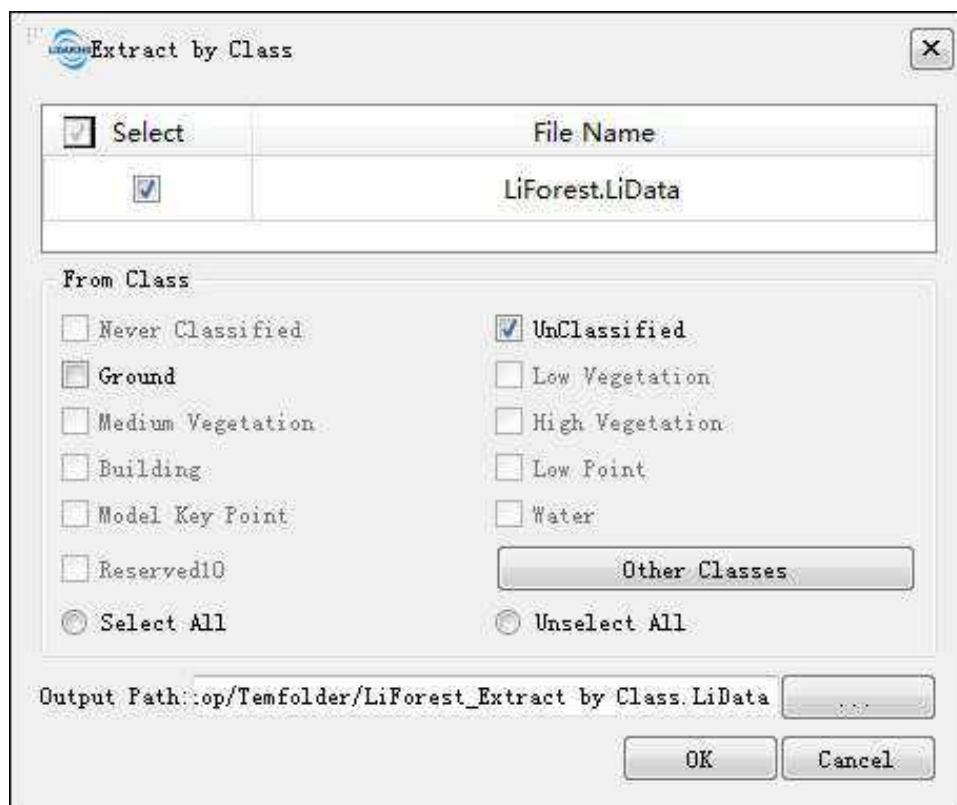
# Extract by Class

## Summary

Extract by class tool can extract all the point cloud data of the user-selected class, and save the data in one file. This function supports multiple file operations.

## Usage

Click *Data Management > Extract > Extract by Class*



## Settings

- **Input Data:** Input one or more point cloud data files. File Format: \*.LiData.
- **From Class:** Users need to select the class to be extracted from the drop-down list. The unavailable status in the drop-down list represent the corresponding category that does not exist in the file.
- **Output path:** Path of the output folder. After the function being executed, the extracted new file(s) will be generated.

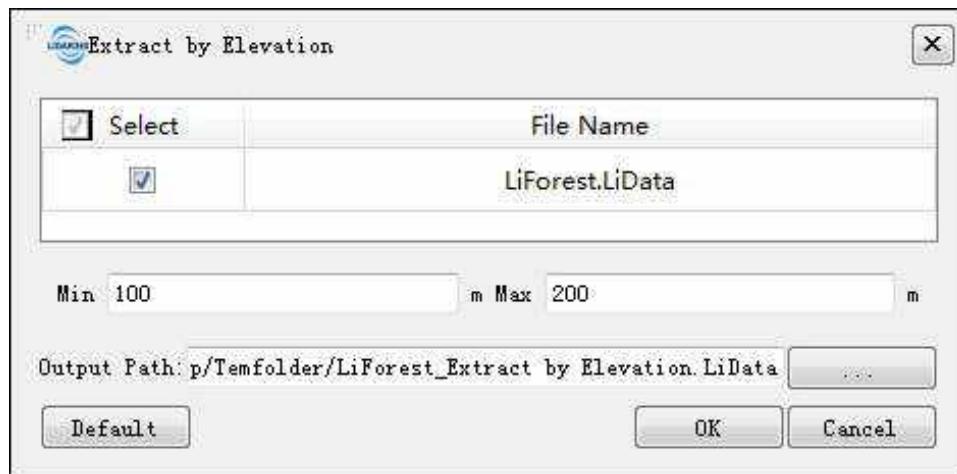
# Extract by Elevation

## Summary

Extract by Elevation tool can extract the point cloud data in the user-defined elevation range to a file. This function supports multiple file operations.

## Usage

Click *Data Management > Extract > Extract by Elevation S*



## Settings

- **Input Data:** Input one or more point cloud data files. File Format: \*.LiData.
- **Min (m, default value is "100"):** Users need to enter the minimum elevation value of the point cloud data to be extracted.
- **Max (m, default value is "200"):** Users need to enter the maximum elevation value of the point cloud data to be extracted.
- **Output path:** Path of the output folder. After the function being executed, the extracted new file(s) will be generated.

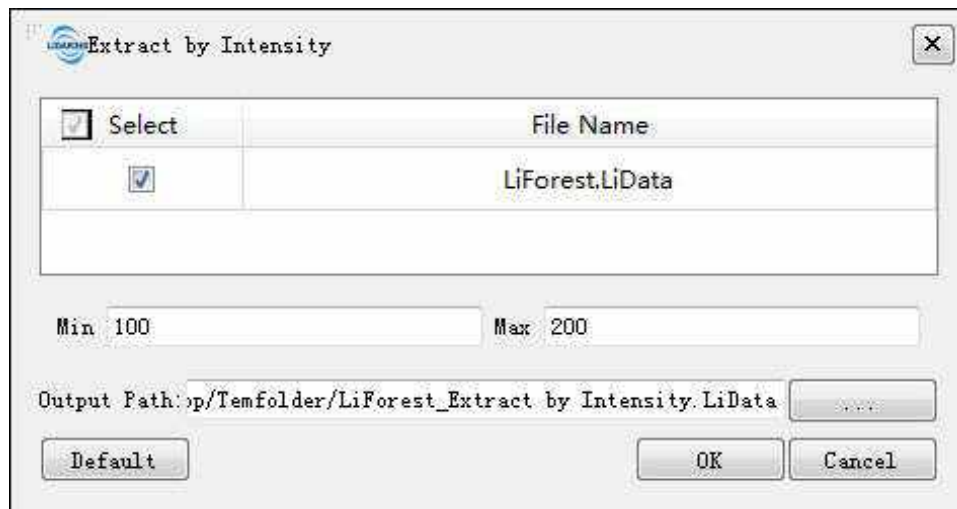
# Extract by Intensity

## Summary

Extract by Intensity tool can extract all the point cloud data within the user-defined intensity range. This function supports multiple file operations.

## Usage

Click *Data Management > Extract > Extract by Intensity*



## Settings

- **Input Data:** Input one or more point cloud data files. File Format: \*.LiData.
- **Min (default value is "100"):** Users need to enter the minimum intensity value of the point cloud data to be extracted.
- **Max (default value is "200"):** Users need to enter the maximum intensity value of the point cloud data to be extracted.
- **Output path:** Path of the output folder. After the function being executed, the extracted new file(s) will be generated.



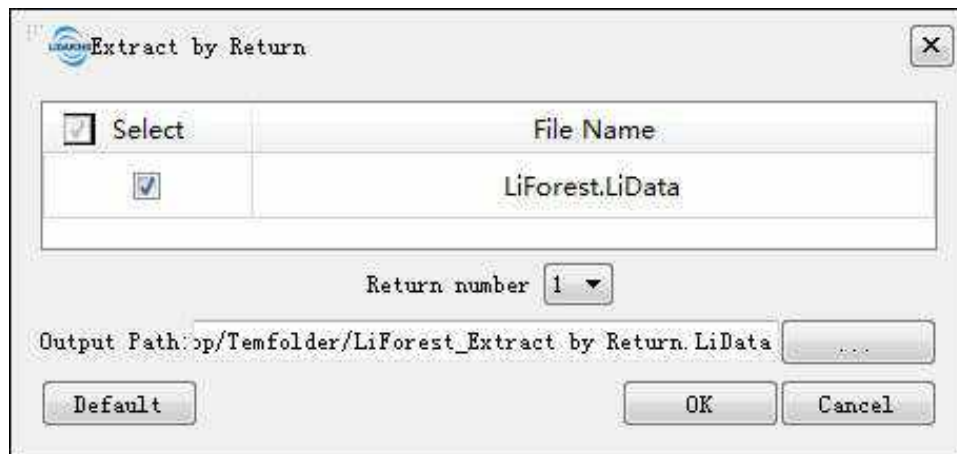
# Extract by Return

## Summary

Extract by Return tool can extract all the point cloud data of the user-defined return number, and saved the data in a file. This function supports multiple file operations.

## Usage

Click *Data Management > Extract > Extract by Return*



## Settings

- **Input Data:** Input one or more point cloud data files. File Format: \*.LiData.
- **Return number:** Users need to select the return number of the point cloud data to be extracted. Click on the drop-down menu to select the return number, including: first return, last return, 2nd return, 3rd return, 4th return, and returns after 4th.
- **Output path:** Path of the output folder. After the function being executed, the extracted new file(s) will be generated.

Note: If the data does not have the return number selected by the user, the extraction will not be executed.

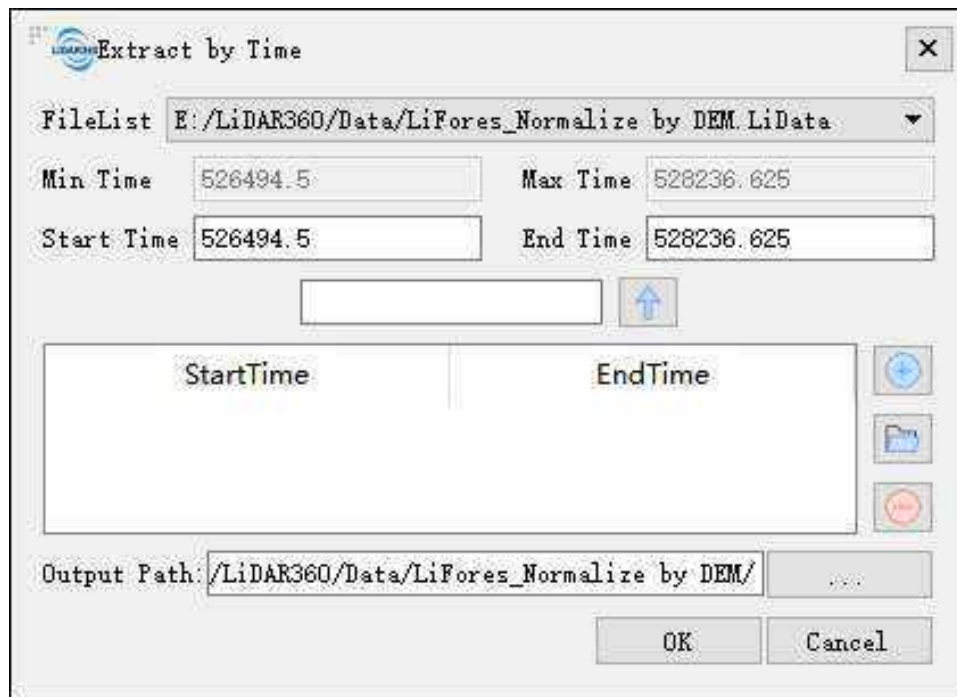
# Extract by Time

## Summary




Extract by GPS time tool can extract all the point cloud data within the user-defined GPS time range, and save them in a file.

## Usage


Click *Data Management > Extract > Extract by Time*



## Settings

- **File List:** Select the file to be processed from the drop-down list.
- **Min Time:** Displays the minimum GPS time value in the point cloud file selected by the user. This value does not require user settings.
- **Max Time:** Displays the maximum GPS time value in the point cloud file selected by the user. This value does not require user settings.
- **Start Time (default value is "min Time"):** Input the minimum GPS time value of the point cloud data to be extracted.
- **End Time (default value is "max Time"):** Input the maximum GPS time value of the point cloud data to be extracted. This value must be larger than the start time.
- : If you want to extract the point cloud at a specified interval, enter the interval value in the text box, and then click this button, the values of the start time and end time will increase at the set interval.
- : Add the input time range to the range list. All point cloud data in the time range will be extracted into one file.
- : Users can click this button to load external GPS range file. The time range in the file needs to be between the **min Time** and the **max Time**. The file format can be referred to the appendix for information in

the [GPS time extract file format](#).

- : Users select a row in the time range list and click this button to remove the row from the list.
- **Output Path:** Path of the output folder. After the function being executed, the extracted new file will be generated.

# Statistics

LiDAR360 can be used for statistical analysis of point cloud data and raster data.

- [Grid Statistics](#)
- [Volume Statistics](#)
- [Raster Statistics](#)

# Grid Statistics

## Summary

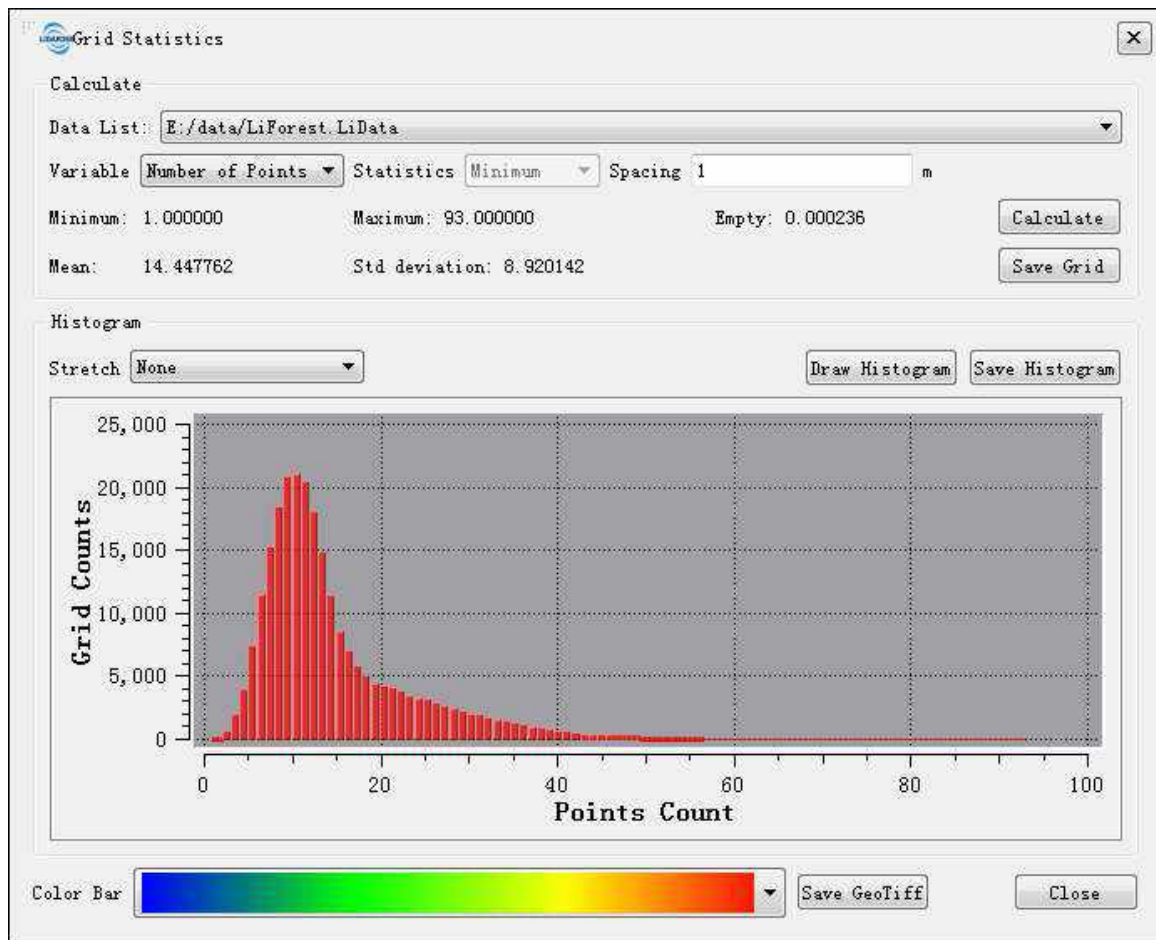
LiDAR360 supports fast grid statistics analysis on point cloud data. The tool supports meshing of point cloud data to count the number of points, density, and Z attributes in the grid. It can be used to view the point cloud data flight and processing quality, as well as analyze the geographical features of the flight area. If only one type of data in point cloud data is counted, the [Extract](#) tool can be used to extract point clouds and perform statistics.

## Steps

1. Select the point cloud data file to analyze from the **Data List** drop-down box.
2. Select **Variable** to be analyzed. Users can select the variables to be analyzed from the drop-down box.
3. Set **Spacing** size.
4. Click the **Calculate** button.
5. **(Optional)** Click **Draw Histogram** to view the histogram of the grid statistics. You can also use **Stretch** method to stretch the histogram.
6. **(Optional)** Users can click **Save Histogram** to save the displayed histogram as a PDF file.
7. **(Optional)** Users can click **Save Grid** to save the statistics grid as a single-band grayscale image, or select **Color Bar** and click **Save GeoTiff** to map single-band grayscale images to multiband color images. It should be noted that if the user selects **Stretch** action, the single-band image will be mapped after stretching.

## Usage

Click *Statistics > Grid Statistics*



## Settings

- **Data List:** Users need to select point cloud data to be counted from the drop-down list.
- **Variable:** Users need to select the variable to be analyzed from the drop-down list. Fill the statistic value of the variable in the grid.
  - **Number of Points (default):** Count the number of points in the grid.
  - **Density:** Calculate the density of the point cloud within the grid, which is obtained by dividing the number of points by the grid area.
  - **Z:** To calculate the user-defined Z-value of the point cloud in the grid.
- **Statistics:** If you select the **Z** variable in the **Variable** list, users need to select the statistical method for the **Z** variable.
  - **Minimum (default):** The minimum value of Z variable in the statistics grid.
  - **Maximum:** The maximum value of Z variable in the statistics grid.
  - **Mean:** The average value of Z variable in the statistics grid.
  - **Range:** The range of Z variable in the statistics grid (range = maximum - minimum).
  - **Deviation:** The standard deviation of Z variable in the statistics grid.
- **Spacing (m, default value is "1"):** The size of the statistics grid.

- **Calculate:** After setting the parameters, click this button to calculate.
- **Save Grid:** Save the statistics grid as a single-band grayscale image in the format of .tif or .csv.
- **Stretch:** Users can choose whether to stretch **Draw Histogram** or **Save GeoTiff**.
  - **None (default):** Do not perform any stretching operation.
  - **Minimum and Maximum:** Use the maximum and minimum values of the statistical grid data for stretching. Linear stretch is applied based on the minimum and maximum pixel values, which will be regarded as the endpoints of the histogram. For example, the minimum and maximum values of a image are 2488 and 2656, linear stretch will rearrange the values based on a linear equation calculated from the maximum and minimum values to re-distribute pixel values from 0 to 255. By distributing the pixel values over the entire histogram, the image brightness and contrast can be improved, making the elements in the image more distinguishable.
    - **Minimum (default value is the minimum of the grids):** The minimum value of the stretch.
    - **Maximum (default value is the maximum of the grids):** The maximum value of the stretch.
  - **Std Deviation:** The stretching operation is performed using the standard deviation of the statistical grid data. The quasi-difference stretch type applies the linear stretching to the maximum value ( $maximum = mean + n \text{ standard deviation}$ ) and minimum value ( $minimum = mean - n \text{ standard deviation}$ ).
    - **n:** The multiple of the standard deviation.
    - **Percent Clip:** Percent stretch uses statistical grid data. Percent Stretch applies a linear stretch between the pixel values of the minimum and maximum cropping percentages. For example, the minimum and maximum values of a image are 2488 and 2656 respectively, and the user-defined minimum and maximum values of clipping percentage are 0.02 and 0.98 respectively. Values less than 0.02 stand for values between 2488 and 2492, and values above 0.98 stand for values between 2652 and 2656. The value between 2488-2492 will become 0, while the value between 2652-2656 will become 255. Other values will be distributed between 0-255.
      - **Minimum (default value is "0.02"):** The minimum stretch percentage, range 0~1.0.
      - **Maximum (default value is "0.98"):** The maximum stretch percentage, range 0~1.0.
- **Draw Histogram:** Draw a histogram of grid statistics in the canvas.
- **Save Histogram:** Save the drawn histogram in the PDF format.
- **Color Bar:** LiDAR360 provides 11 color bar options for users to choose.
- **Save GeoTiff:** Save statistical grid data as a multi-band color image based on the user-selected **Color Bar**.
- **Close:** Close the tool.

Note: The **Save Grid** function saves the original statistical result as a single-band TIFF file. **Save GeoTiff** function saves the result after histogram stretch and performs RGB three-channel mapping according to the selected color bar.

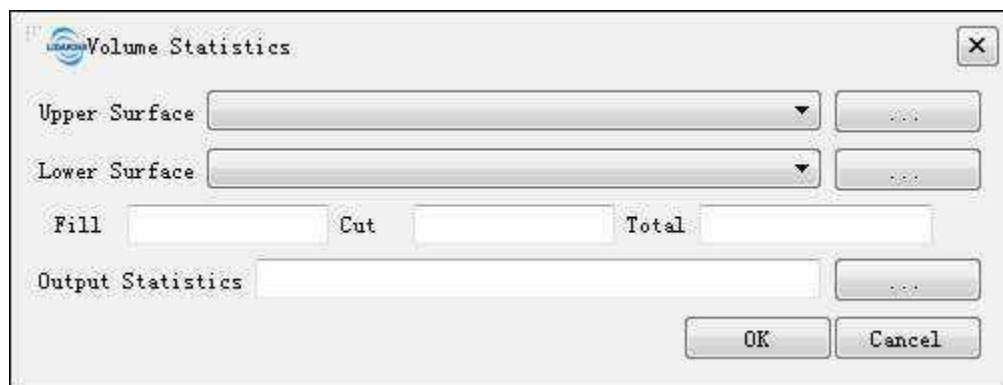
# Volume Statistics

## Summary



LiDAR360 supports the use of surface model data (single-band tif data) with spatial overlaps to calculate volume statistics. By subtracting the lower surface from the upper surface, the statistical filling amount (**Fill**), excavation amount (**Cut**) and total fill volume (**Total**) (calculated by subtracting fill volume from volume of excavation) can be obtained.

## Usage

Click *Statistics > Volume Statistics*



## Settings

- **Upper Surface:** Users can select the \*.tif format file from the drop-down list, or click  to select external file.
- **Lower Surface:** Users can select the \*.tif format file from the drop-down list or click  to select external file.
- **Output Statistics:** Specify the path to output the statistical result as a \*.txt format file. The file contains the path of the upper and lower surface files, spatial resolution, XSize, YSize, and the amount of the filler.

Note: The upper and lower surface files are single-band data, they must have the same spatial resolution and the spatial ranges have intersections. The unit of the point cloud data processed by LiDAR360 is meter, and the calculated fill volume, excavation volume, and total amount are in cubic meter.



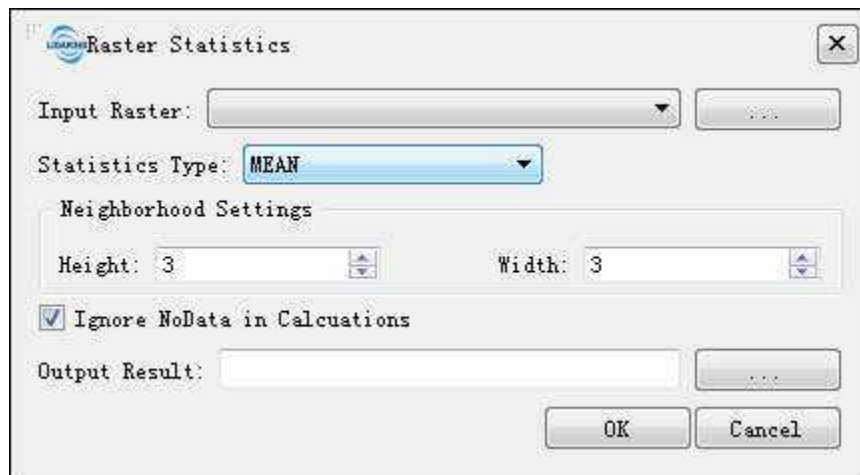
# Raster Statistics

## Summary

This function can perform neighborhood calculation for each cell in a tif format raster data. The output can be different kinds of statistics of the neighborhood. The statistics include mean, maximum, minimum, range, standard deviation, and sum.

## Usage

Click *Statistics > Raster Statistics*



## Settings

- **Statistics Type ("Mean" by default):** Users can choose any type of statistics in the drop-down menu. The statistics include mean, maximum, minimum, range, standard deviation, and sum.
  - **Mean:** Calculate the mean value for the neighborhood of each cell to be as the value of the cell at the same location as the original cell.
    - **Maximum:** Calculate the maximum value for the neighborhood of each cell to be as the value of the cell at the same location as the original cell.
    - **Minimum:** Calculate the minimum value for the neighborhood of each cell to be as the value of the cell at the same location as the original cell.
    - **Range:** Calculate the range for the neighborhood of each cell to be as the value of the cell at the same location as the original cell.
    - **STD:** Calculate the standard deviation for the neighborhood of each cell to be as the value of the cell at the same location as the original cell.
    - **Sum:** Calculate the sum for the neighborhood of each cell to be as the value of the cell at the same location as the original cell.
- **Neighborhood Settings:** Settings of the neighborhood size.
  - **Height:** Height of the neighborhood.
  - **Width:** Width of the neighborhood.
- **Ignore NoData in Calculation (Checked by default):** If this option is checked, the software will ignore the NoData cells in the neighborhoods during the calculation. If this option is not checked, software will define the cell with NoData in its neighborhood as NoData. If this option is checked, for those NoData cells, the

software will calculate the statistics with the values from their neighborhoods. If the all the cells in the neighborhood of a cell are NoData, whether or not this option is checked, this cell will be defined as NoData during the calculation.

- **Output Result:** The path for the result of raster statistics.

# Classify

LiDAR360 can be used to classify unclassified point cloud, or to reclassify points that have already been classified.

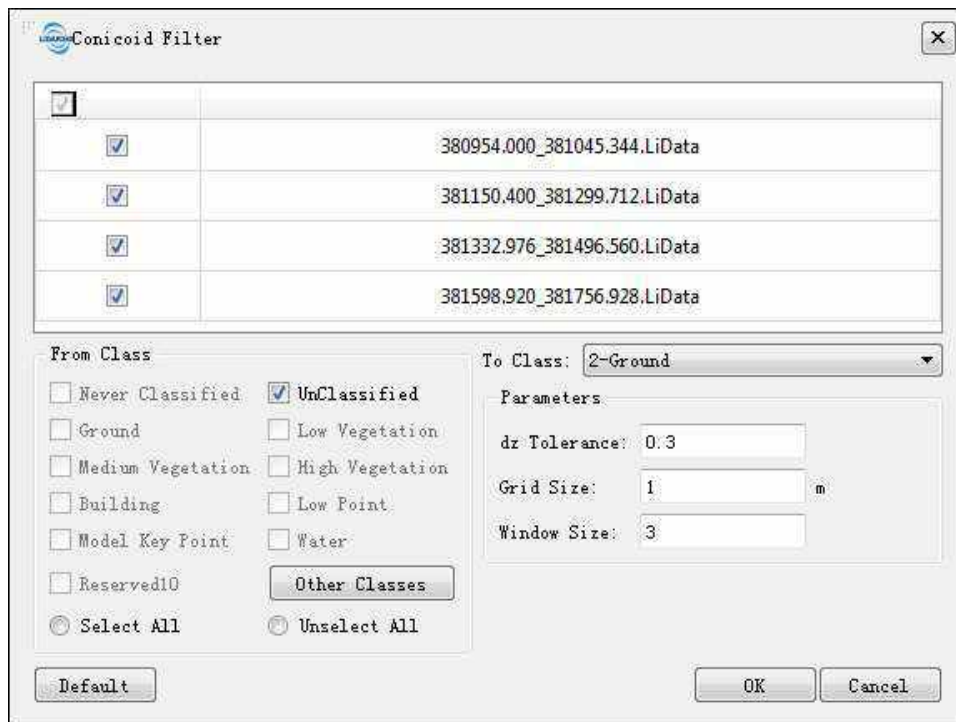
- [Conicoid Filter](#)
- [Slope Filter](#)
- [Classify Ground Points](#)
- [Extract Median Ground Points](#)
- [Classify by Attribute](#)
- [Classify Low Points](#)
- [Classify Below Surface Points](#)
- [Classify Isolated Points](#)
- [Classify Noise Points](#)
- [Classify Air Points](#)
- [Classify by Height Above Ground](#)
- [Classify by Min Elevation Difference](#)
- [Classify closeby Points](#)
- [Classify Buildings](#)
- [Classify Model Key Points](#)
- [Classify by Machine Learning](#)
- [Classify by Trained ML Model](#)
- [Classify Ground by Selected](#)
- [Classify by Interactive Editing](#)

# Conicoid Filter

## Summary

Ground points are classified by fitting quadric surfaces. The specific idea is: first, mesh the point cloud, select the lowest point of the grid within a certain size window to construct the quadric surface, and compare the distance between the point cloud and the fitting surface in the calculation window and the set distance threshold, which is less than this Thresholds are classified as ground points; otherwise, they are classified as non-ground points.

This method is suitable for undulating terrain, but not very steep areas. Click this button, and the dialog as shown below pops up.



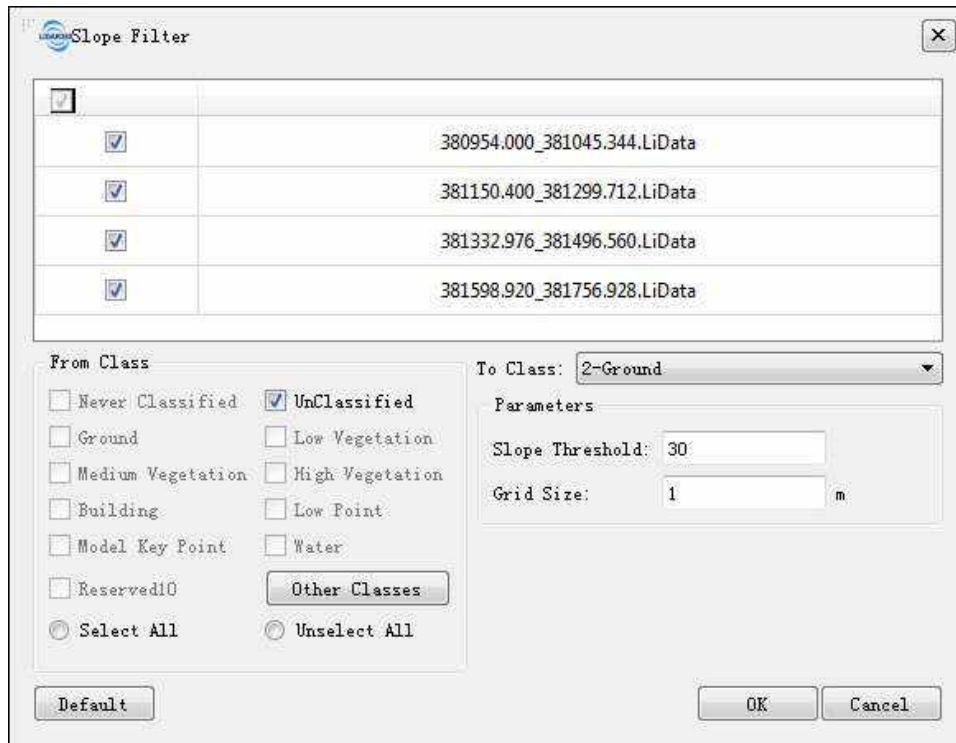
## Settings

- **From Class:** Source class (es).
- **To Class:** Target class.
- **dz Tolerance (m, default value is "0.3"):** After fitting the surface using the grid low point, calculate the height difference between each unclassified point and the surface. If the height difference is greater than the threshold, the unclassified point is classified as non-ground point. Otherwise, it's classified as ground point.
- **Grid Size (m, default value is "1"):** The size of the grid that meshes the point cloud. The smaller the grid size, the finer the ground will be fitted, which keeps more details, but the filter efficiency will be a bit affected.
- **Window Size (default value is "3"):** This function uses a moving window to fit the surface, so the window size directly affects the final filtering result. The larger the window, the larger the area where surface is fitted each time. The grid size and window size need to complement each other for best results.

# Slope Filter

## Summary

As the name implies, this filtering method extracts terrain based on changes in point cloud slope. Therefore, its drawbacks are as follows: sensitive to slope change, not reliable in steep areas, and easy to flatten the convex parts on the terrain. This method is more suitable for areas with smooth terrain changes, in that case, the filtering efficiency is high. Click this button, and the dialog as shown below pops up.



## Settings

- **From Class:** Source class (es).
- **To Class:** Target class.
- **Slope Threshold (°, default value is "30"):** The maximum slope threshold of the slope between grid point and its 8 neighborhood grids. If it is larger than the threshold, it is classified into non-ground points, and vice versa.
- **Grid Size (m, default value is "1"):** The side length of the grid. In addition, a 3 \* 3 grid composes a filter window.

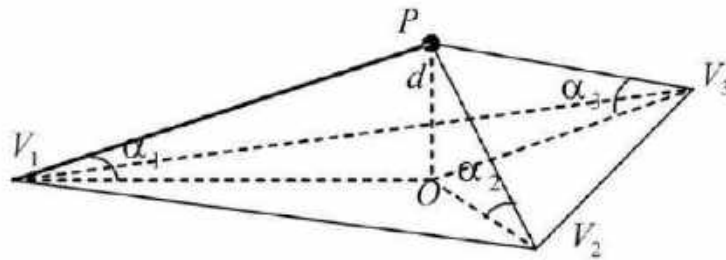
# Classify Ground Points

## Summary

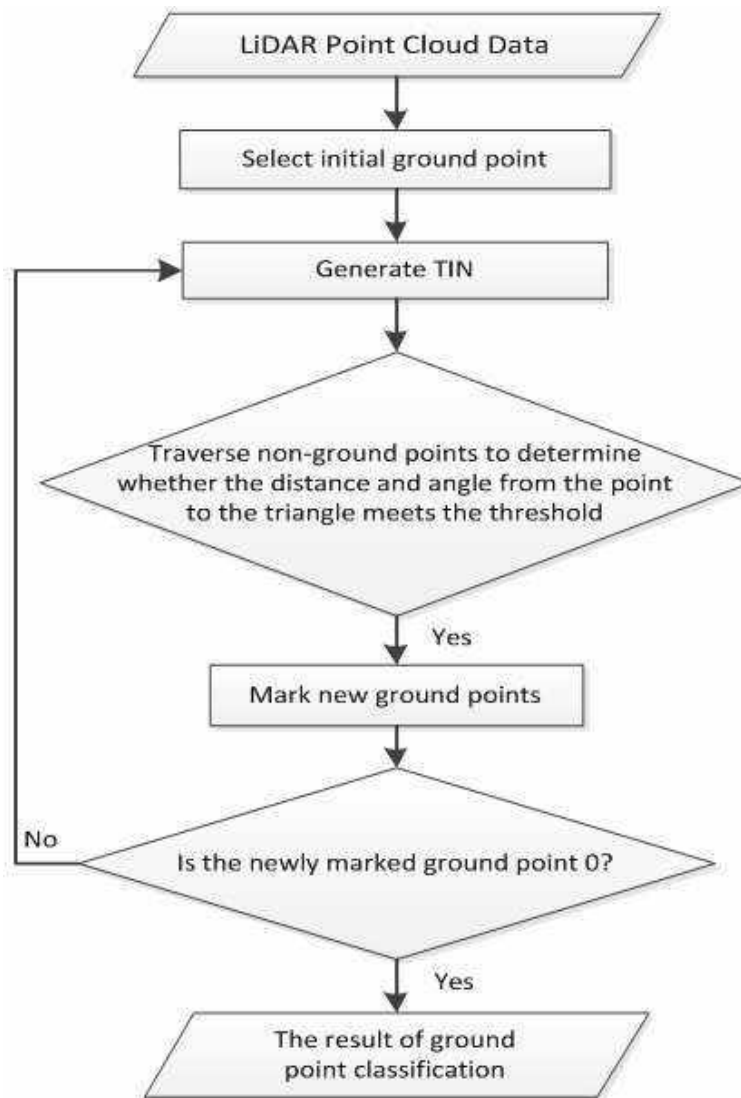
Ground points classification is an important operation of point cloud preprocessing, which can be implemented in LiDAR360 with an improved progressive TIN densification filtering algorithm (Zhao et al.,2016).

The algorithm first generates a sparse triangulated irregular network(TIN) through seed points, and then iteratively processes layer-by-layer densification until all ground points have been classified. The specific steps of the algorithm are described as follows:

1. The initial seed point selection. If the point cloud contains buildings, the **maximum building size** is taken as the grid size to grid the point cloud, and for the point cloud without the building, the default value is used as the grid size. Take the lowest point in the grid as the starting seed point.
2. Build a TIN. The initial TIN was constructed using the initial seed point.
3. Iterative densification process. Traverse all the unclassified points, query the triangles that each point belongs to in the horizontal projection plane; Calculate the distance( $d$ ) from the point to the triangle and the max angle between the point and three vertices with the triangles plane. As shown in the figure below, the distance and max angle are compared with the **Iteration distance** and **Iteration angle**, separately. If it is less than the corresponding threshold, then the point is classified as a ground point and added to the triangulation. Repeat this process until all ground points have been classified.

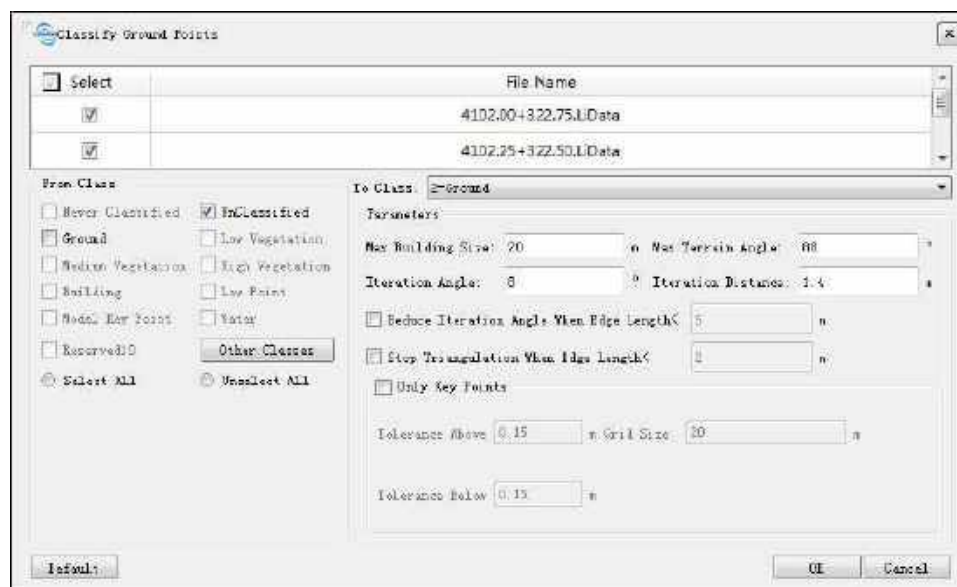


The flow of algorithm is shown in the figure.



## Usage

Click *Classify* > *Classify Ground Points*



## Settings

- **Input Data:** The input file can be a single point cloud data or a point cloud dataset, which must be opened in the LiDAR360 software.
- **From Class:** Source class(es).
- **To Class:** Target class.
- **Max Building Size (m, default value is "20"):** The maximum length of the building edge that exists in the point cloud scan. If this parameter is set too small, the flat roof of the building may be mistaken for the terrain. When there is a building in the point cloud data, the maximum building size can be measured by using the [Length Measurement](#) in the menu bar. The value of this parameter should be greater than the measured value. For point cloud data without buildings, this parameter can use the default value of 20m.
- **Max Terrain Angle (°, default value is "88"):** The maximum slope of the terrain shown in the point cloud. This parameter can determine whether the points nearby the ground points belong to the ground or not. Usually, the parameter can be set as default.
- **Iteration Angle (°, default value is "8"):** The allowable range of angles between unclassified points and ground points. For areas with large topography and undulations, it can be bigger. Generally, it is set between 10 to 30 degrees. In addition, the iteration angle should adjust with the iteration distance.
- **Iteration Distance (m, default value is "1.4"):** Distance threshold between the unclassified points and the triangle in the triangle mesh. When the topography is highly undulating, it should be set to a larger value. The general setting is 1~2 meters. In addition, the iteration distance should adjust with the iteration angle.
- **Reduce Iteration Angle When Edge Length < (m, default value is "5", Optional):** When the triangle length of the points to be classified is smaller than the threshold, the iteration angle should be decreased. Use the parameter to indicate that when the point to be classified corresponds to the length of the triangle in the triangulation network is less than the threshold, the iteration angle is reduced accordingly. When a sparse ground point needs to be obtained, the threshold may be increased accordingly.
- **Stop Triangulation When Edge Length < (m, default value is "2", Optional):** When the triangle length of the point to be classified corresponds to the length of the triangle is less than the threshold, the densification of triangulation network is stopped. This value can prevent the locally generated ground point from being too dense. When this value increase, the ground points will be sparse, and vice versa.
- **Only Key Points (Optional):** Extract key points of terrain model on the basis of ground point filtering. This function can preserve the key points on the terrain and sparse the points on the flat area. For the specific usage, please see [Classify Model Key Points](#).

Note: Because the actual terrain is complex and changeable, when using this function to perform ground point classification, different parameters needs to be adjusted in order to achieve relatively ideal results. In addition, the classification result in local area can be reclassified by [Classify Ground by Selected](#) and the [Classify by Interactive Editing](#) tool.

```
@inproceedings{
  author={Zhao X Q, Guo Q H, Su Y J and Xue B L},
  title={Improved progressive TIN densification filtering algorithm for airborne LiDAR data in forested areas},
  booktitle={ISPRS Journal of Photogrammetry and Remote Sensing,117:79-91},
  year={2016}
}
```

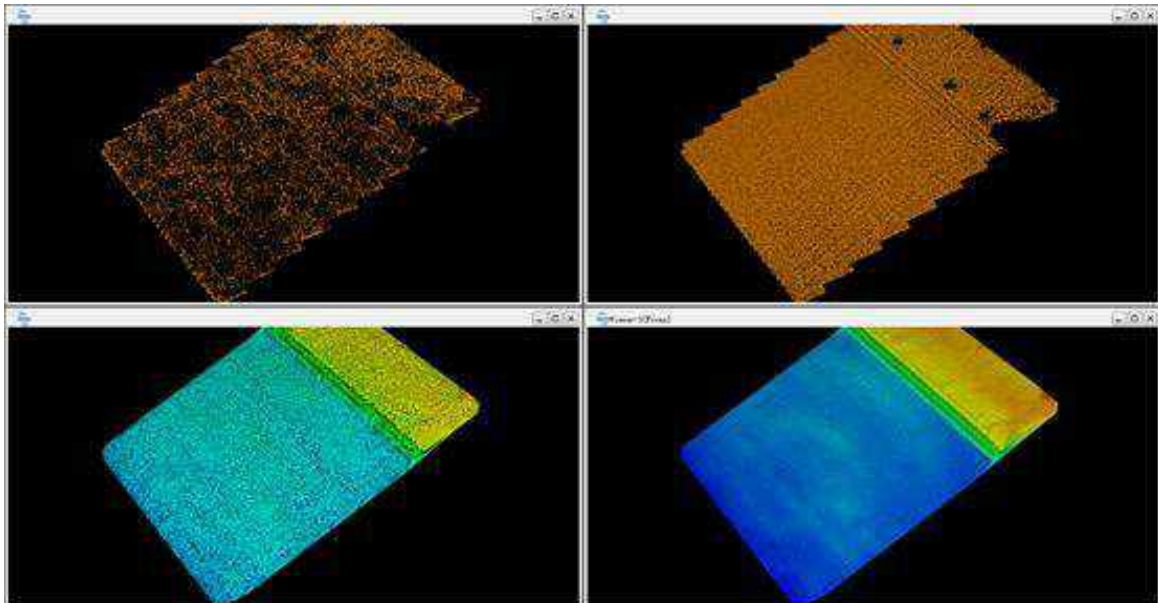


# Extract Median Ground Points

## Summary

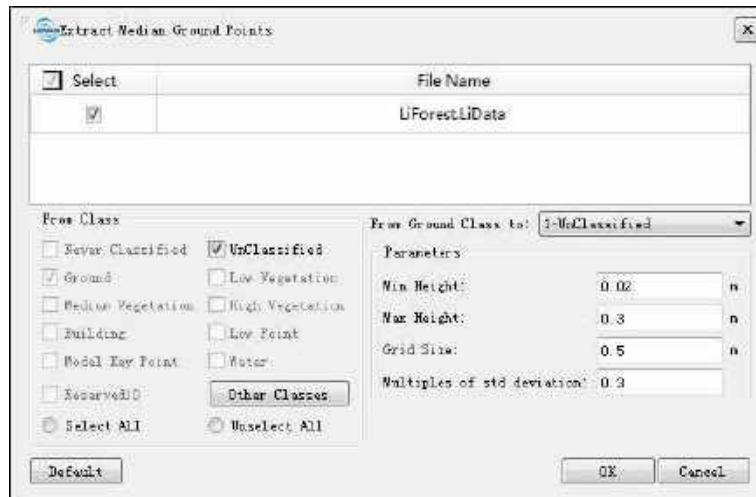
Point clouds generated from data collected by small aircrafts and unmanned aerial vehicles (UAVs) typically have many ground points and individual point densities in these regions can be very high. Traditional point cloud filtering methods used to thin these high density regions often produce ground point subsets with vertical thicknesses that can be measured in centimeters. When these filtered point clouds are used to create 3D mesh objects (e.g. TINs), the results tend to be poor as the 3D modeled surfaces have an uneven appearance.

The Extract Median Ground Points tool can be used to obtain a ground point cloud that is thinner and smoother than those produced using traditional point cloud filtering methods. Generating this type of ground point cloud allows for consideration of the points found in a denser and thicker ground point cloud. **This method belongs to the optimization step after the initial ground point has been extracted. Therefore, the point cloud data must first be classified using ground point classification method.** The comparison results before and after using the median ground point classification method are as follows:



## Usage

Navigate to and click on *Classify > Extract Median Ground Points*



## Settings

- **Input Data:** Single or multiple point cloud data files can be input into the tool. Each point cloud must contain points classified as ground points and have been loaded in the LiDAR360 software.
- **From Class:** Source class(es) that represent ground points or other points are included in the median ground points finding operation.
- **From Ground Class to:** Classify target ground points that do not meet the median rule to this class.
- **Min Height (meters, default value is "0.02"):** The minimum height above the lowest ground point elevation found in the input file(s) from which ground points will be taken and used to find the median ground point elevation. Ground points falling below the Min Height will not be used to find the median ground point elevation value. The default value is set to 0.02 meters.
- **Max Height (meters, default value is "0.3"):** The maximum height above the lowest ground point elevation found in the input file(s) from which ground points will be taken and used to find the median ground point elevation. Ground points falling above the Max Height will not be used to find the median ground point elevation value. The default Max Height value is set to 0.3 meters.
- **Grid Size (meters, default value is "0.5"):** The grid size defines the horizontal extents of the square area from which ground points will be extracted from the input file(s) and then used to find a median ground point elevation value for each grid cell. When the number of points in a grid cell falls below a user-defined threshold, the median ground point elevation for that grid cell will not be included in the output dataset. The default Grid Size is 0.5 meters.
- **Multiples of Std Deviation (default value is "0.3"):** The number and thickness of the extracted point cloud ground points are controlled by the user-defined Multiples of Std Deviation parameter. The default value is 0.3, which means that 22% of ground points are extracted as ground points. Moreover, a value of 0.5 Multiples of Std Deviation corresponds to 40% of all points classified as ground points being extracted. 0, 7 corresponds to 50%, 0.9 corresponds to 62%, and 1.5 corresponds to 86%.
- **Default Value:** Click to set all Extract Median Ground Points tool parameters to their default values.

Note: This classification algorithm is only applicable to thicker ground point data scanned by small aircrafts and unmanned aerial vehicles (UAVs). This data must be classified by ground points first, as an optimization step.

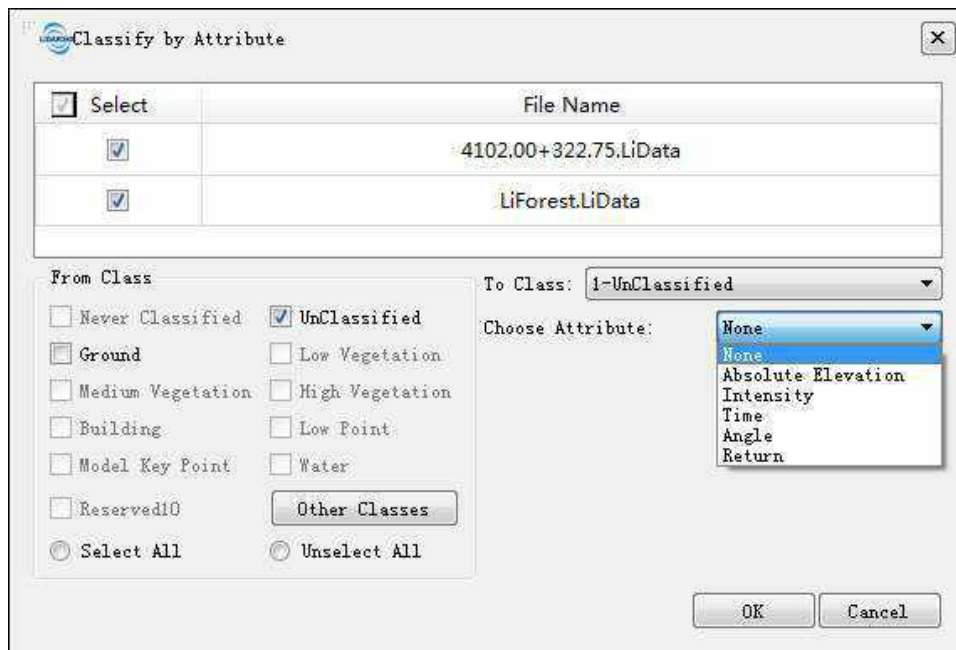
# Classify by Attribute

## Summary

This function classifies the point cloud into another class according to their attributes. Currently available classification attributes include Absolute Elevation, Intensity, GPS Time, Scan Angle, and Return Number. In addition, the function can restore all classes and/or reclassify the point cloud for undesirable classification results.

## Usage

Click *Classify > Classify by Attribute*



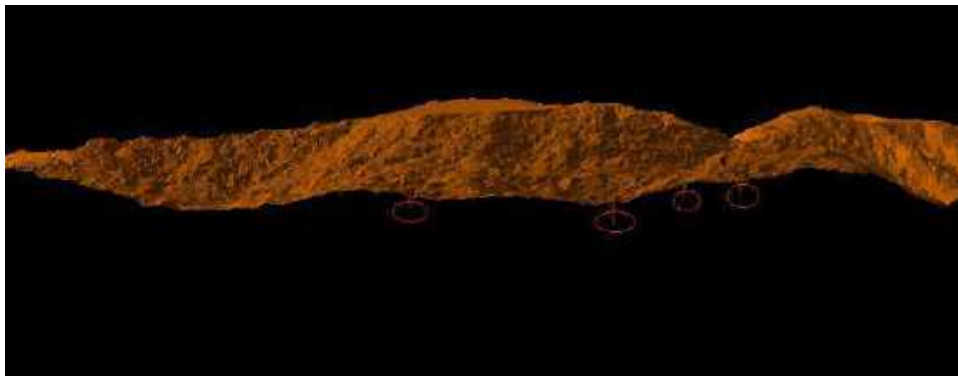
## Settings

- **Input Data:** The input file can be a single point cloud data or a point cloud dataset, which must be opened in the LiDAR360 software.
- **From Class:** Source class(es).
- **To Class:** Target class.
- **Choose Attribute:** The selected attribute will be used to classify the point cloud.
  - **None (default):** The default setting will change all points in the **From Class** option to **To Class**.
  - **Absolute Elevation:** Classified by elevation range. If the elevation value of a point is between the specified range, it will be assigned to the **To Class**.
  - **Intensity:** Classified by intensity range. If the intensity value of a point is between the specified range, it will be assigned to the **To Class**.
  - **Time:** Classified by GPS time. If the GPS time value of a point is between the specified range, it will be assigned to the **To Class**.
  - **Angle:** Classified by scan angle. If the scan angle value of a point is between the specified range, it will be divided into the **To Class**.
  - **Return:** Classified by the return number. If the return number at a point is between the specified range, it will be assigned to the **To Class**.

# Classify Low Points

## Summary

The low point refers to the noise point that is lower than the actual terrain. The existence of the low point will affect the extraction of the ground point, because the progressive triangulation filtering algorithm is based on the seed points represented by the lowest point of the gridded point cloud. Therefore, filtering out the low point is a preprocessing operation, which directly affects the filtering effects, the establishment of a digital model, and the generation quality of contour lines. The triangulated terrain model created by the ground points with low points is shown below.

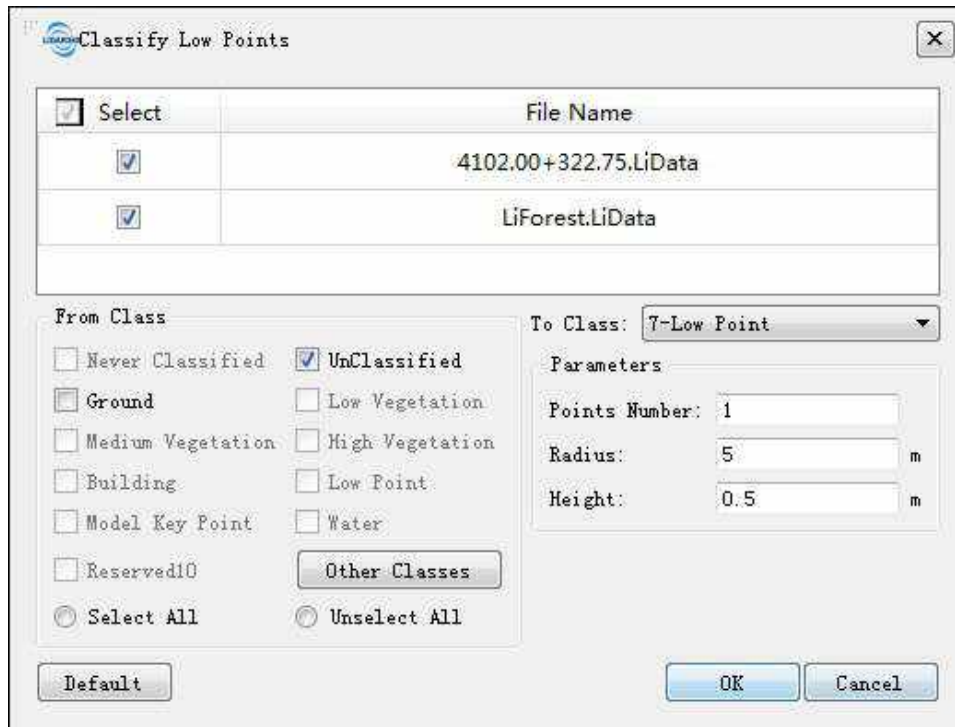


The distribution of low points is divided into individual points or clusters. The algorithmic flow of this function is:

1. Traverse the point cloud and search for points to be classified within a certain range of **radius** of the current single point or point cluster.
2. Calculate the maximum **height difference** between the current point and the neighboring point, which is compared with the threshold.
3. If the value is greater than the threshold, the current point is considered to be a low point, otherwise, it is not classified as a low point.

## Usage

Click *Classify* > *Classify Low Points*



## Settings

- **Input Data:** The input file can be a single point cloud data or a point cloud dataset, which must be opened in the LiDAR360 software.
- **From Class:** Source class(es).
- **To Class:** Target class.
- **Points Number (default value is "1"):** When the number of points is set to 1, the single low point is classified. If it is greater than 1, cluster low points are classified.
- **Radius (m, default value is "5"):** The radius threshold between the unclassified point and the neighboring point.
- **Height (m, default value is "0.5"):** The **height difference** threshold between the unclassified point and the neighboring point.
- **Default Value:** Click this button to set all parameters as default.

# Classify Below Surface Points

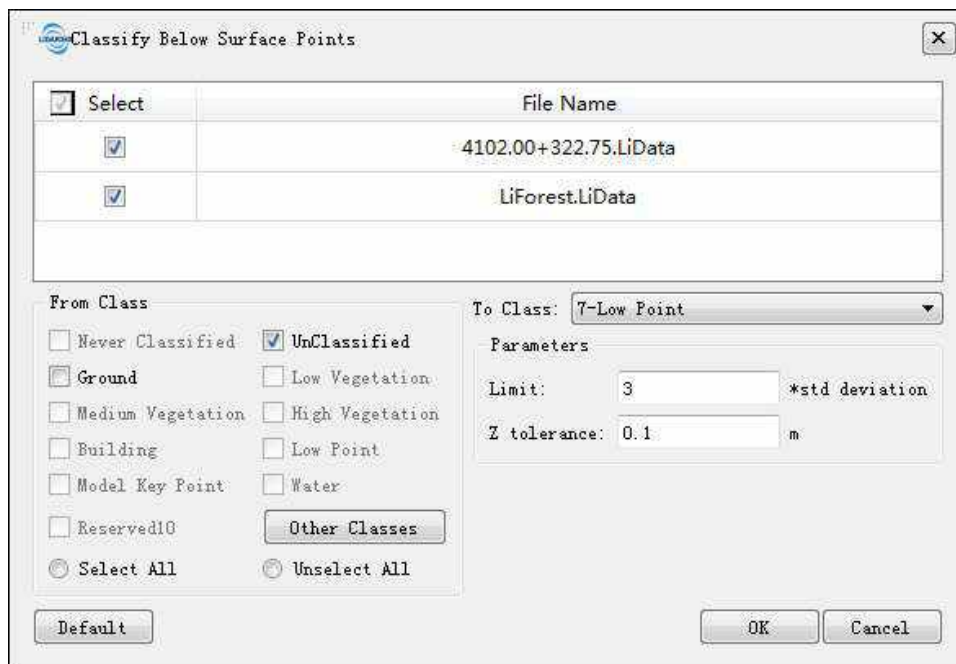
## Summary

This function classifies points in the initial category that are below the elevation of the surrounding neighborhood. For example, when the starting category is ground, this method can be used to classify points lower than the surface elevation to be the lower-than-the-surface point. The main algorithm idea of this function is:

1. Search for a certain number of nearest points for the current point in initial class.
2. Fit the plane with the nearest point.
3. Calculate the absolute value of the height difference between the current point and the plane. If the value is less than the set **Z tolerance**, it is not categorized. If it is greater than the tolerance, go to the next step.
4. Calculate whether the difference between the current point elevation and the average value of the neighboring points is greater than the **Limit** of the standard deviation. If it is greater than, then it is classified as the target category; otherwise, it is not classified.

## Usage

Click *Classify > Classify Below Surface Points*



## Settings

- **Input Data:** The input file can be a single point cloud data or a point cloud dataset, which must be opened in the LiDAR360 software.
- **From Class:** Source class(es).
- **To Class:** Target class.
- **Limit (default value is "3"):** The multiple of the mean squared error of the neighboring point fitting plane of the unclassified points. The larger the value, the less points will be classified into the target class.
- **Z tolerance (m, default value is "3"):** The threshold of height difference. The point to plane distance less than this value is not classified. The larger the value, the less points will be classified into target class.

- **DefaultValue:** Click this button to set all parameters as default.

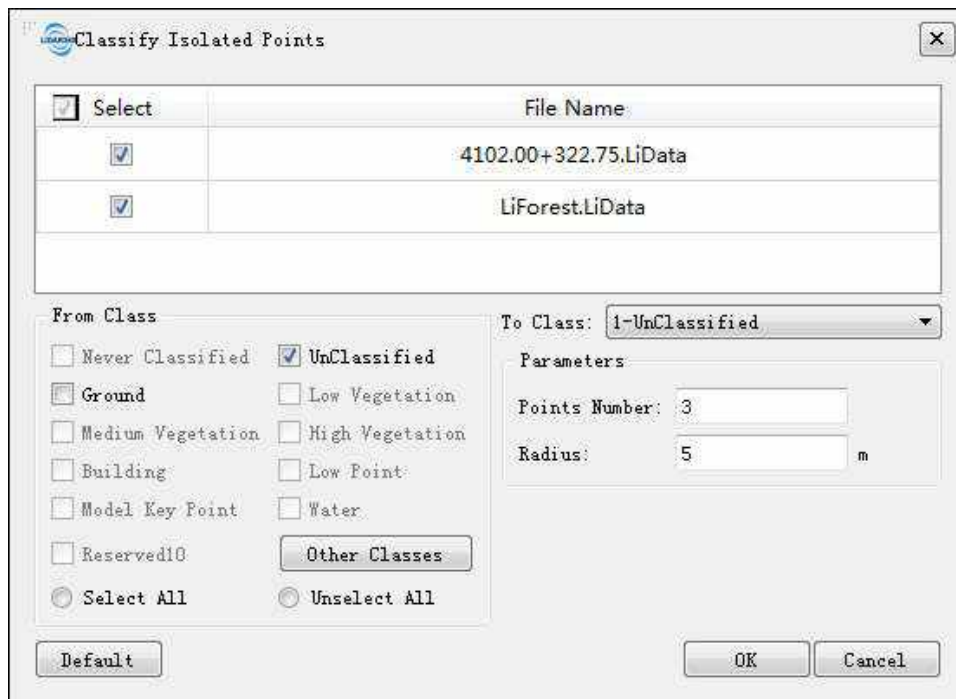
# Classify Isolated Points

## Summary

This function classifies points in a certain area of point cloud, which is generally used to find outliers in the air or below the ground.

## Usage

Click *Classify > Classify Isolated Points*



## Settings

- **Input Data:** The input file can be a single point cloud data or a point cloud dataset, which must be opened in the LiDAR360 software.
- **From Class:** Source class(es).
- **To Class:** Target class.
- **Points Number (default value is "3"):** If the number of points in the neighboring radius are less than or equal to the value, the point is considered as an isolated point.
- **Radius (m, default value is "5"):** Neighboring search radius.
- **Default Value:** Click this button to set all parameters as default.



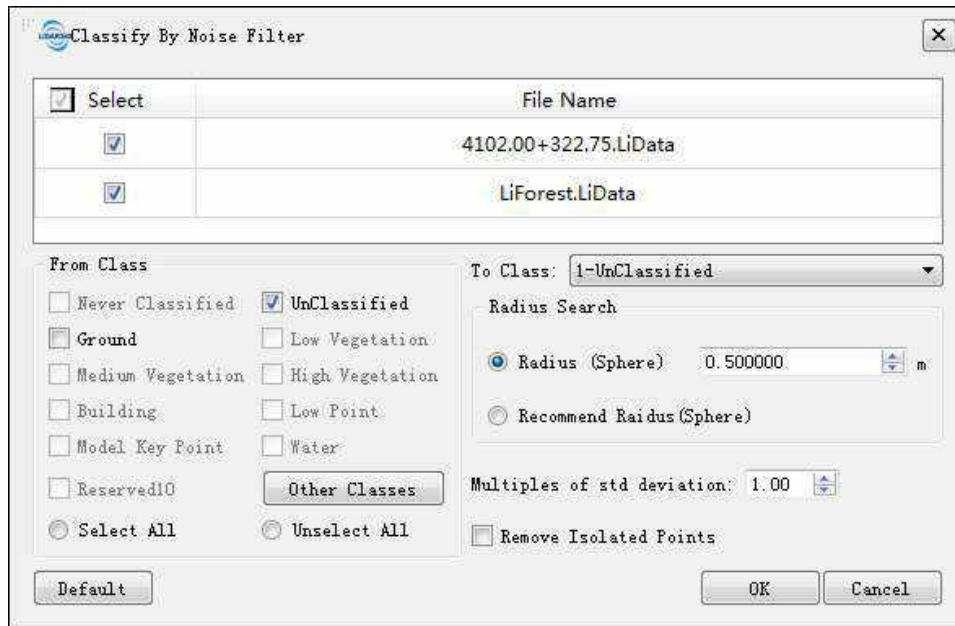
# Classify Noise Points

## Summary

Classify the outliers in the point cloud data as a certain class in the format of \*.LiData.

## Usage

Click *Classify > Classify Noise Points*.



## Settings

- **Input Data:** The input data can be a single point cloud file, or can be a point cloud data collection; the data to be processed must be pre-opened in LiDAR360 software.
- **Radius(Default value is “0.5m”):** Set the radius of the fitting plane. This function can be used when users know the approximate density of the point cloud data.
- **Recommended Radius:** Automatically calculate the appropriate searching radius according to the input point cloud data.
- **Multiples of std deviation(Default value is “1.0”):** Using the relative error (sigma) as a parameter for outliers removal. The algorithm will automatically calculate the standard deviation (stddev) of a point P's surrounding fitting plane. If the distance, d, from this point to that plane is less than  $\sigma * stddev$ , this point, P, will be kept. The reduction of this relative error results in removing more points. Conversely, more points will be retained. The change of this parameter will not influence the efficiency.
- **Remove Isolated Points:** A point will be treated as an isolated point when there is less than 4 points within a distance of the searching radius (cannot create a fitting plane with less than 4 points).

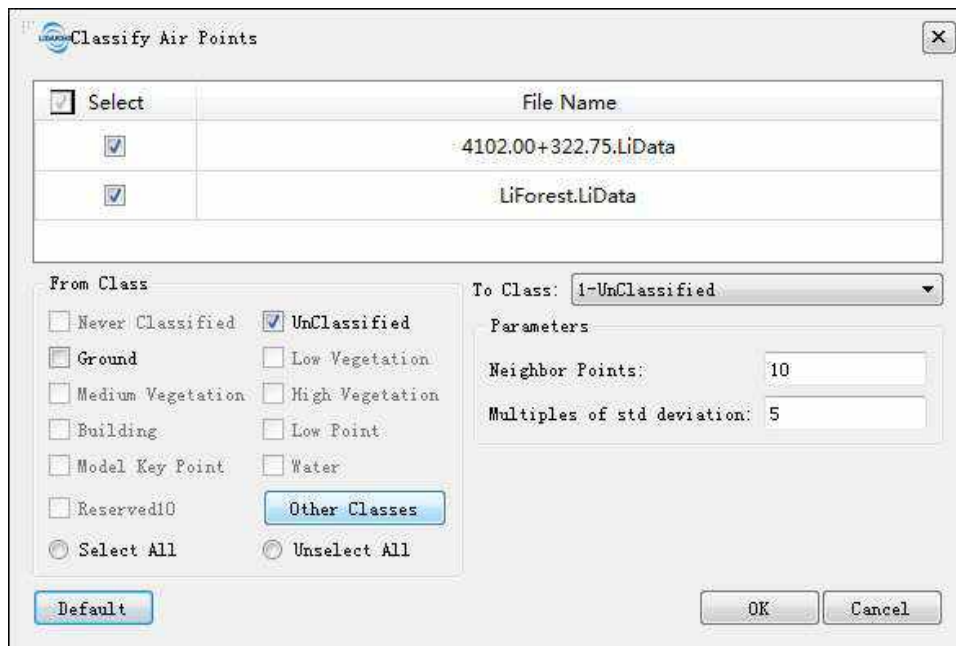
# Classify Air Points

## Summary

This function classifies points that are significantly higher than the surrounding points into airborne noise points. The idea of the algorithm is the same as the principle of [Outlier Removal](#) in the data management module.

## Usage

Click *Classify > Classify Air Points*



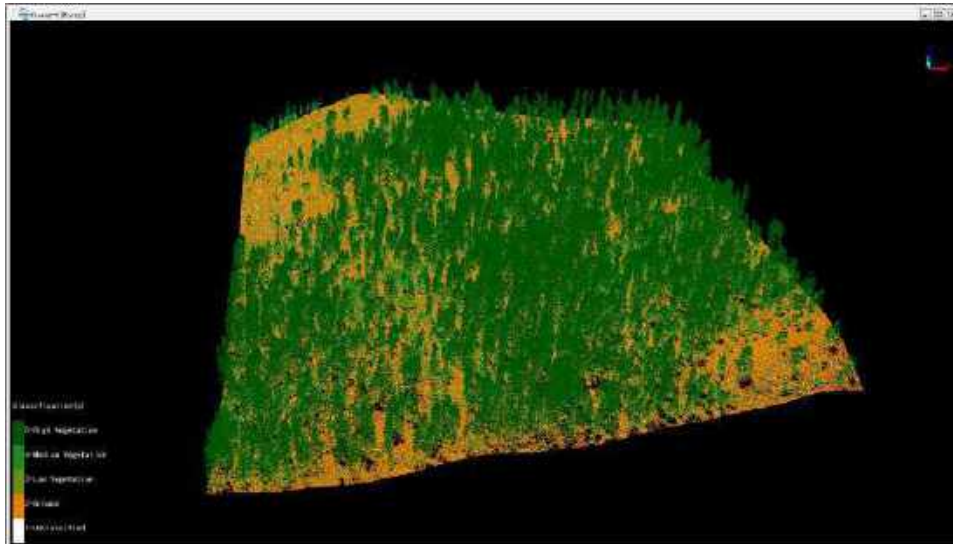
## Settings

- **Input Data:** The input file can be a single point cloud data or a point cloud dataset, which must be opened in the LiDAR360 software.
- **From Class:** Source class(es).
- **To Class:** Target class.
- **Neighbor Points (default value is "10"):** The number of neighbors that will be used to determine whether a point is a noise in the sky. Calculate the distance between each point to the nearest point and calculate the standard deviation of the nearest distances.
- **Multiples of std deviation (default value is "5"):** If the deviation of points beyond the minimum allowable threshold, they are considered as noise in the sky. The larger the threshold, the less the noise will be divided into.
- **DefaultValue:** Click this button to set all parameters as default.

# Classify by Height Above Ground

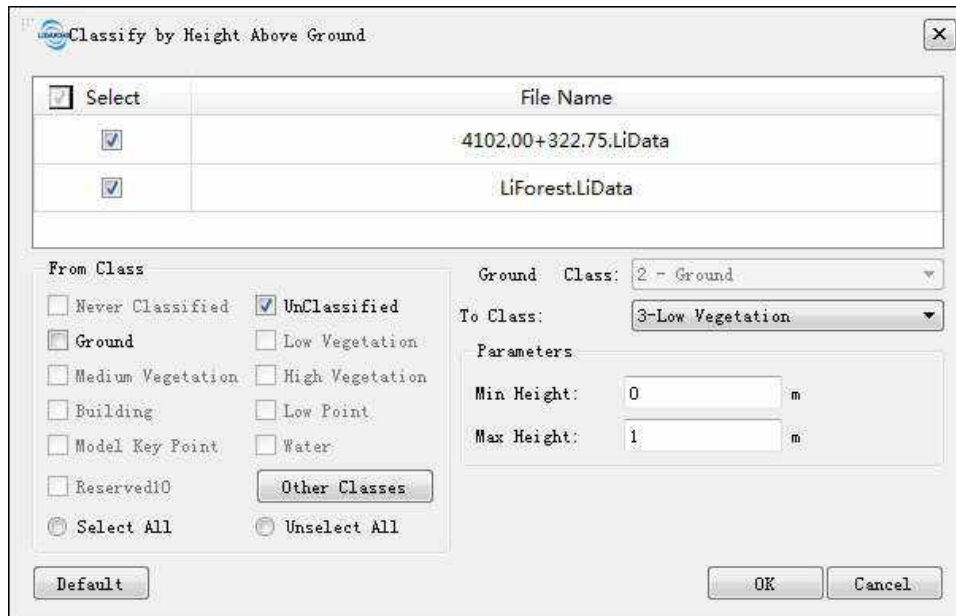
## Summary

This function classifies the points on the surface of the terrain with a certain height, which can quickly classify vegetation at different heights. For example, this classification can be performed three times to separate low vegetation (0-1m), medium vegetation (1-10m), and high vegetation (10-100m), see the figure below.



## Usage

Click *Classify > Classify by Height Above Ground*



## Settings

- **Input Data:** The input file can be a single point cloud data or a point cloud data set, which must be opened in the LiDAR360 software.

- **From Class:** Source class(es).
- **Ground Class:** The default ground point is 2-class.
- **To Class:** Target class.
- **Min Height (m, default value is "0"):** The minimum height difference of the area to be classified above the ground points.
- **Max Height (m, default value is "1"):** The maximum height difference of the area to be classified above the ground points.
- **DefaultValue:** Click this button to set all parameters as default.

Note: This function need to contain the ground point in the cloud.

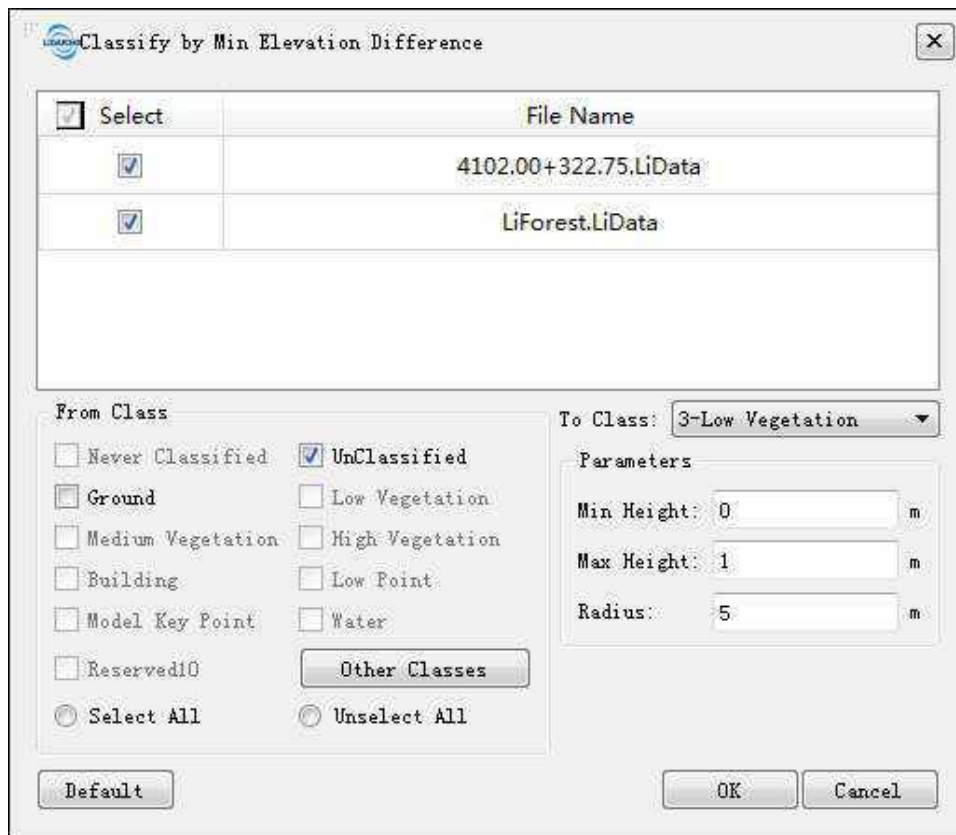
# Classify by Min Elevation Difference

## Summary

For each point in the data, this function calculates the elevation difference between the lowest point within a specified radius around it and itself. If the elevation difference is between **Min Elevation Difference** and **Max Elevation Difference**, that point will be marked as **Target Class**.

## Usage

Click *Classify > Classify by Min Elevation Difference*



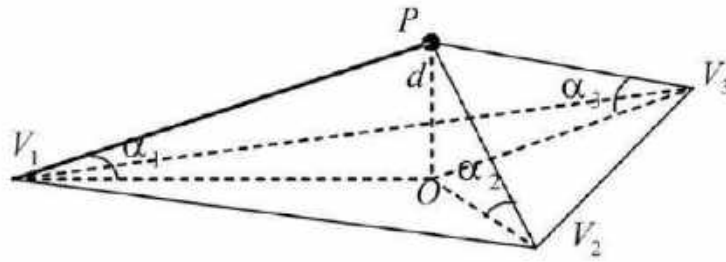
## Settings

- **Input Data:** The input file can be a single point cloud data or a point cloud data set, which must be opened in the LiDAR360 software.
- **From Class:** Source class(es).
- **To Class:** Target class.
- **Min Elevation Difference (m, default value is"0"):** Threshold for the minimum elevation difference.
- **Max Elevation Difference (m, default value is"1"):** Threshold for the maximum elevation difference.
- **Radius (m, default value is"5"):** The radius of the area needs to be classified at the current point, which needs to be classified.
- **DefaultValue:** Click this button to set all parameters as default.

# Classify Close by Points

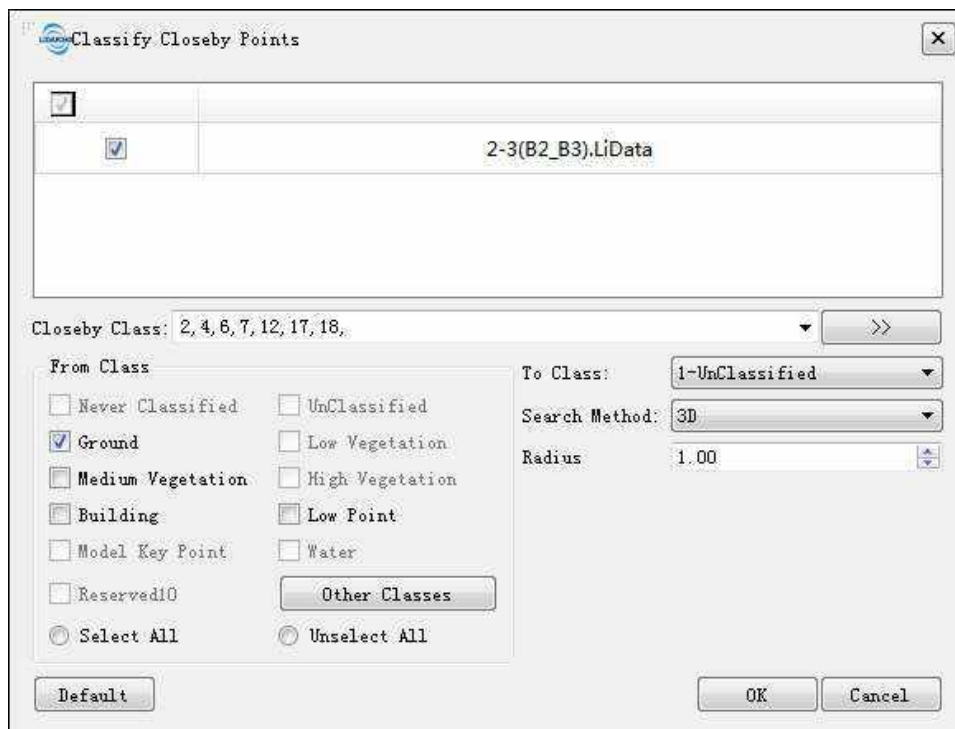
## Summary

This function is used to classify those points close to the certain class(es) of points. For each points in the source class, find the points in its specified 2D or 3D neighborhood area, and determine whether these points meet certain conditions (i.e., belong to a specified class). Those points meet the requirement will be classified as the target class.



## Usage

Click *Classify* > *Classify Closeby Points*.



## Settings

- **Input Data:** The input data could be one point cloud file or a set of point cloud files. The data to be processed must be opened in LiDAR360 software.
- **Neighbor Class:** The points of this class which is close to the source points will be classified.
- **Source Class:** The points close to this class will be classified.
- **Target Class:** Target class of the classification.

- **Search Method:** The method for searching in the neighborhood. Support 2D or 3D neighborhood.
  - **Radius:** Neighborhood search radius.

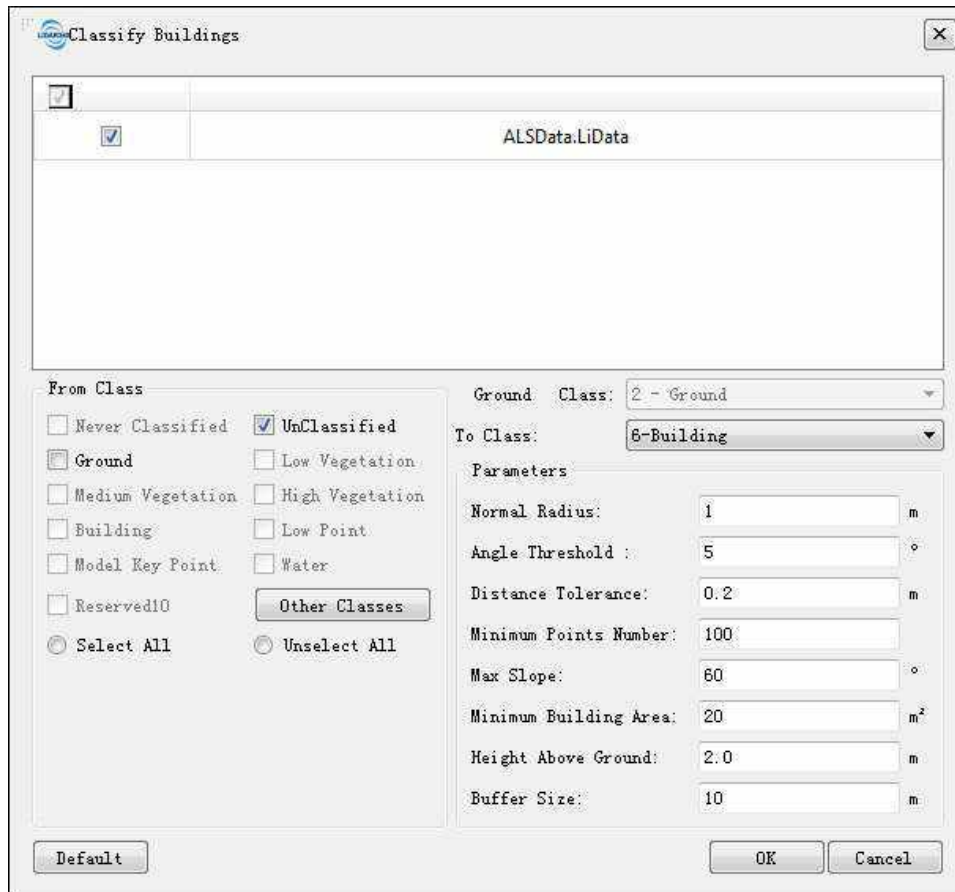
# Classify Buildings

## Summary

This function classifies buildings in point cloud data.

## Usage

Click *Classify* > *Classify Buildings*



## Settings

- **Input Data:** The input file can be a single point cloud data file or a point cloud dataset, which must be opened in the LiDAR360 software and has already been classified by ground points.
- **From Class:** Source class(es).
- **Ground Class:** The default ground point is 2-class.
- **To Class:** Target class.
- **Normal Radius (m, default value is "3"):** The radius of the neighborhood when calculating the normal vector of each point in the point cloud. Usually set to 4-6 times the distance between points.
- **Angle Threshold (°, default value is "10"):** The angle threshold between two points in plane clustering. When the actual angle of two points is less than the threshold, the two points will be clustered into the same group.
- **Elevation Tolerance (m, default value is "0.6"):** The distance threshold from point to plane in plane



clustering, which is expected to be slightly larger than the average point distance. When the actual distance is less than the threshold, the point and plane will be clustered into the same group.

- **Minimum Points Number (default value is "100"):** The minimum points number of building patches.
- **Max Slope (°, default value is "60"):** The angle between the plane and the vertical direction. Greater than this value is not considered as the top of the building but the wall or other classes.
- **Max Building Size (m, default value is "60"):** The maximum length of buildings, which was used for the detection of building patches between blocks.
- **DefaultValue:** Click this button to set all parameters as default.

Note: Using this function requires that the point cloud has been classified by ground points.

# Classify Model Key Points

## Summary

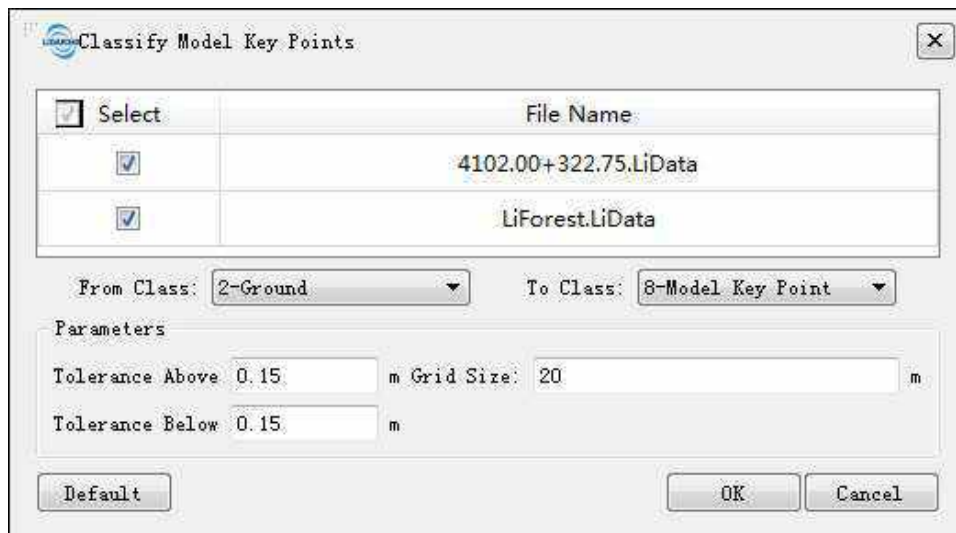
This function can thin a certain level of the classified points. It is generally used to generate a sparse point set that retains the key points in the complex terrain area and thin the points in the flat area from the extracted dense ground points.

The idea of the algorithm is: first, meshing of point cloud data, and then use the seed points in the grid to establish the initial triangulation network. According to the upper and lower boundary thresholds, the points that meet the conditions are added to the triangulation network. The process is iterated until all of the key points of terrain model are classified. In the following figure, the yellow point is the ground point and the purple point is the key point of terrain model.



## Usage

Click *Classify* > *Classify Model Key Points*



## Settings

- **Input Data:** The input file can be a single point cloud data or a point cloud dataset, which must be opened in the LiDAR360 software.
- **From Class:** Source class(es).
- **To Class:** Target class.
- **Tolerance Above (m, default value is "0.15"):** The maximum allowable elevation tolerance value over the

triangulation model composed by the original points. The larger the value, the more sparse the key points will be extracted, and vice versa.

- **Tolerance Below (m, default value is "0.15"):** The maximum allowable elevation tolerance value under the triangulation model composed by the original points. The larger the value, the more sparse the key points will be extracted, and vice versa.
- **Grid Size (m, default value is "20"):** The value is used to ensure the density of key points extracted from the model. For example, if you want to ensure that there is at least one point in the grid every 20 meters, this value is set to 20.
- **DefaultValue:** Click this button to set all parameters as default.

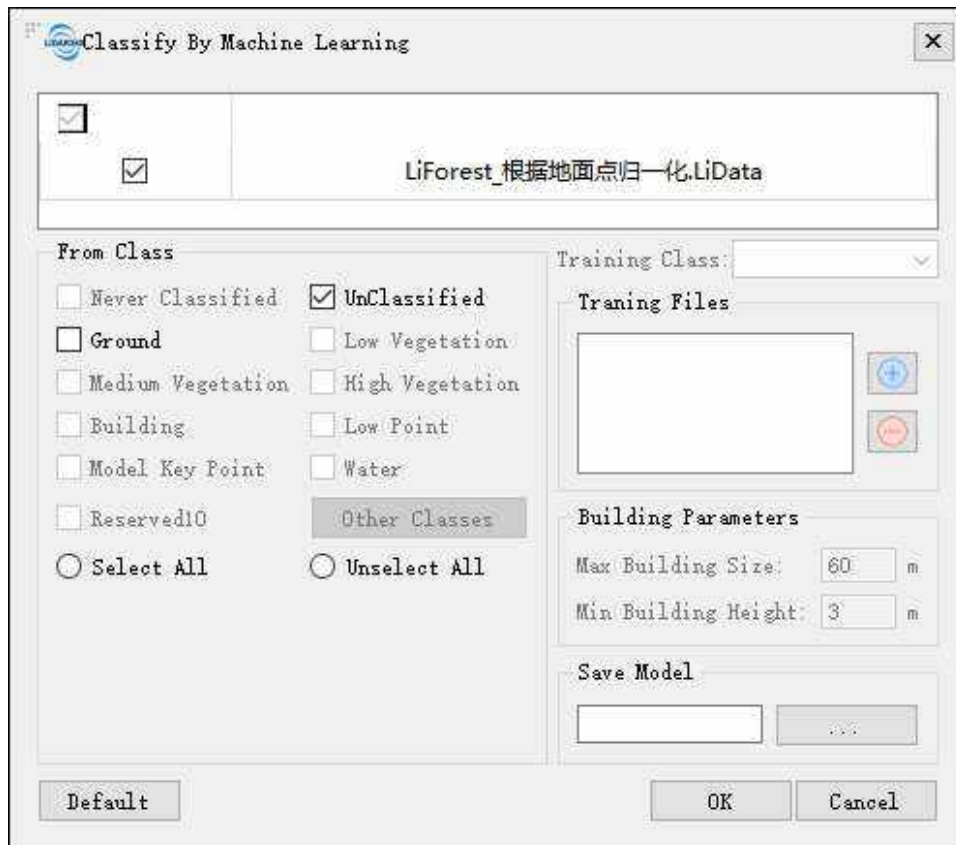
# Classify by Machine Learning

## Summary



This feature uses random forests (machine learning) method to classify point cloud data. In the same batch of data, it is necessary to manually edit the categories of a small amount of data. After the model is trained, a large amount of data is processed in batches, and it is used to reduce the amount of labor. This feature supports two kinds of processes, one is through selecting training samples, generating training models, and classifying the data, the other is classifying the data directly using the existing models.

## Usage

Click *Classify > Classify by Machine Learning*



## Settings

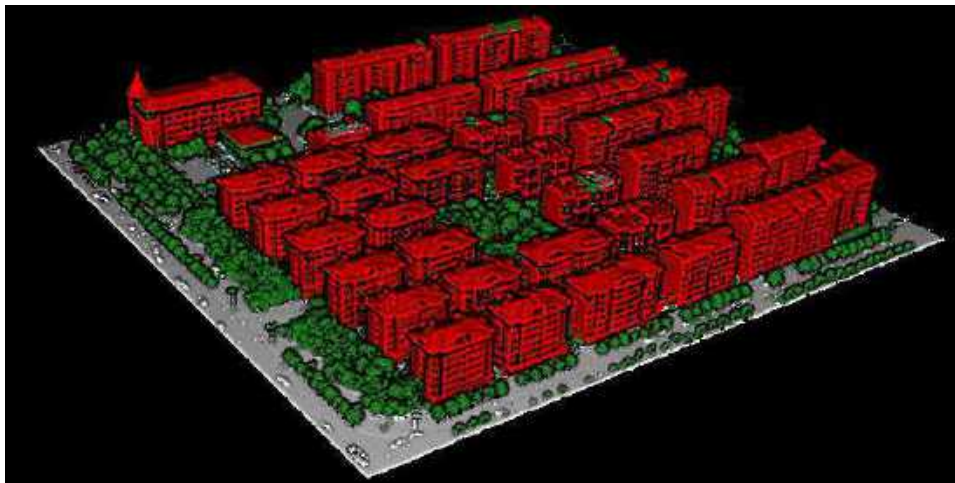
- **Input Data:** The input file can be a single point cloud data or a point cloud dataset, which must be opened in the LiDAR360 software.
- **From Class:** Source class(es).
- **Training Class:** The classes that are of interest to the user are trained, which will also be included in the classification results. At least two types of training categories should be selected, of which one must be unclassified
- **Training Files:** Click  to load training data. Click  to remove the selected data. You can train multiple files. The categories in the training data are edited manually.

- **Building Parameters:** The parameters are set only when buildings are included in the training class, which were used to set the maximum building size and minimum building height, respectively.
    - **Max Building Size (m, default value is "60"):** The largest building size in the data to be processed.
    - **Min Building Height (m, default value is "3"):** The smallest building size in the data to be processed.
  - **Save Model:** After training, save the model in the file path with the custom **.vcm** file format . This model file can be used as input data for [Run Machine Learning Classification Model](#).
  - **DefaultValue:** Click this button to set all parameter as default.
- 

Training a small amount of manually edited data, including unclassified, vegetation, building, and all involved in training, as shown below:



Handle a large number of data results, including unclassified, vegetation, building, as shown below:



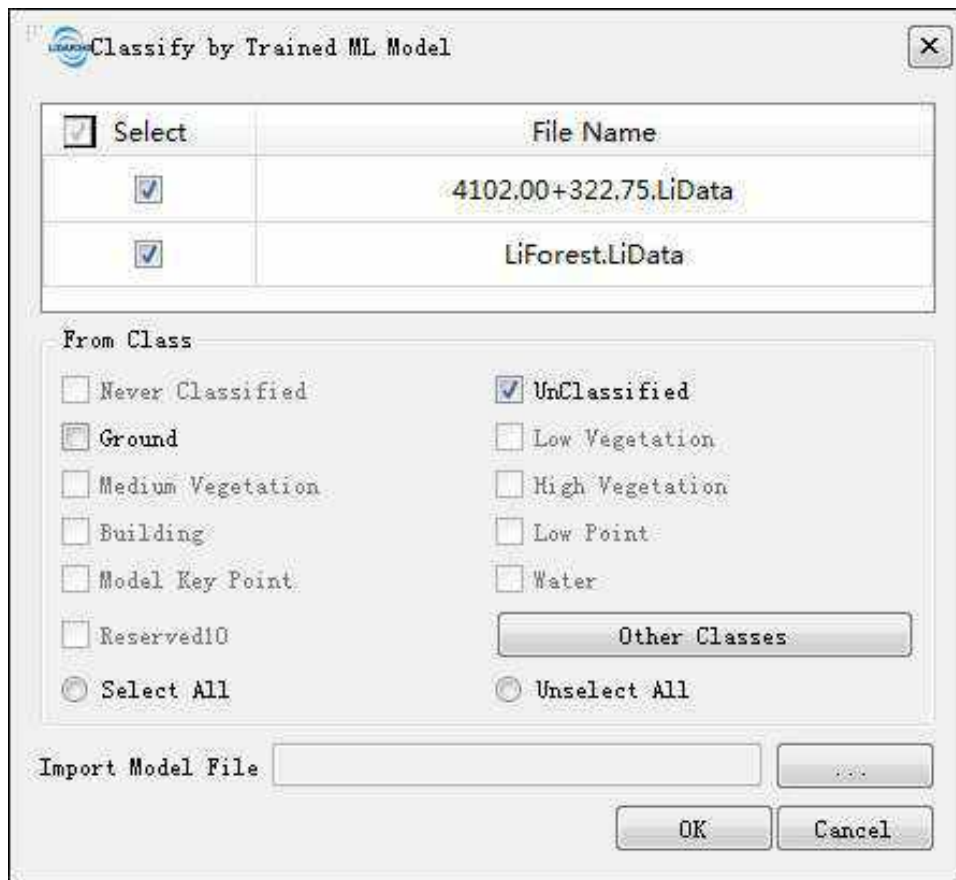
# Classify by Trained ML Model

## Summary

By directly importing the machine learning model with the suffix vcm for classification to classify the point cloud. It should be noted that the source cloud data trained for the imported machine learning model should contain relevant geometric features of the unclassified data.

## Usage

Click *Classify > Classify by Trained ML Model*



## Settings

- **Input Data:** The input file can be a single point cloud data or a point cloud data set, which must be opened in the LiDAR360 software.
- **From Class:** Source class(es).
- **Import Model File:** Import the trained model file, whose suffix is vcm. This file is generated by [Classify by Machine Learning](#).

# Classify Ground by Selected

## Summary

Due to the complex and varied terrain of point cloud data, it is often difficult to achieve good classification results using a set of parameters when using [Classify Ground Points](#), especially for the mixed areas (mountains, plains, etc.). This function can reclassify the ground points in the unsatisfactory area.

## Usage

First load the data in the window. Click *Classify > Classify Ground by Selected*, the classification toolbar appears at the top of the data window, as shown below.



From left to right: *polygon selection, rectangle selection, sphere selection, subtract selection, clear selection, classify by attribute, conicoid Filte, slope filter, TIN filtering, extract median ground points, recover selection, and exit.*

## Polygon Selection



**Brief:** Using method see point cloud selection tool [Polygon Selection](#).

## Rectangle Selection



**Brief:** Using method see point cloud selection tool [Rectangle Selection](#).

## Shpere Selection



**Brief:** Using method see point cloud selection tool [Sphere Selection](#).

## Subtract Selection




**Brief:** Using method see point cloud selection tool [Subtract Selection](#).

## Clear Selection




**Brief:** Clear selected point cloud area.


## Classify by Attribute

 **Brief:** Using method see classification tool [Classify by Attribute](#).


## Conicoid Filter

 **Brief:** Using method see classification tool [Conicoid Filter](#).


## Slope Filter

 **Brief:** Using method see classification tool [Slope Filter](#).


## TIN Filter

 **Brief:** Using method see classification tool [Classify Ground Points](#).


## Extract Median Ground Points

 **Brief:** Using method see classification tool [Extract Median Ground Points](#).

## Recover Selection

 **Brief:** Restore last selected point cloud area.

## Exit

 **Brief:** Exit this tool bar.

Note: The ground point classification algorithms provided by the selected area point classification include: Conicoid Filter, Slope Filter, and TIN Filter. Different methods should be chosen according to the terrain. Generally, the effect of TIN filter is the most stable and therefore we recommend this first. In addition, it would be better to handle each file separately.








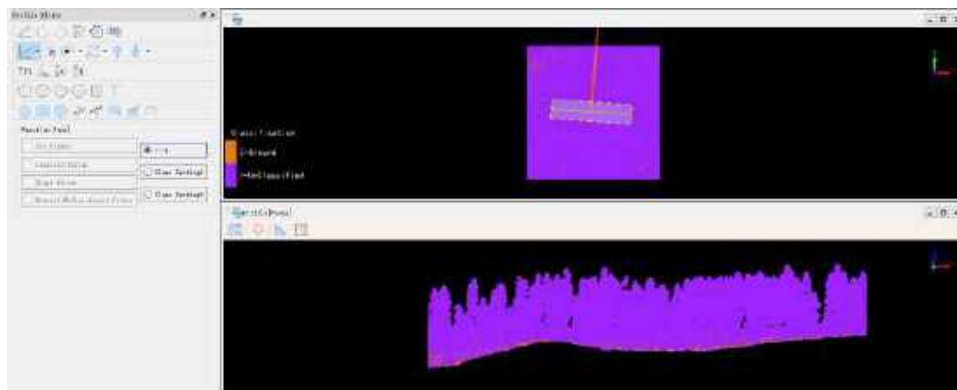
# Classify by Interactive Editing










## Summary

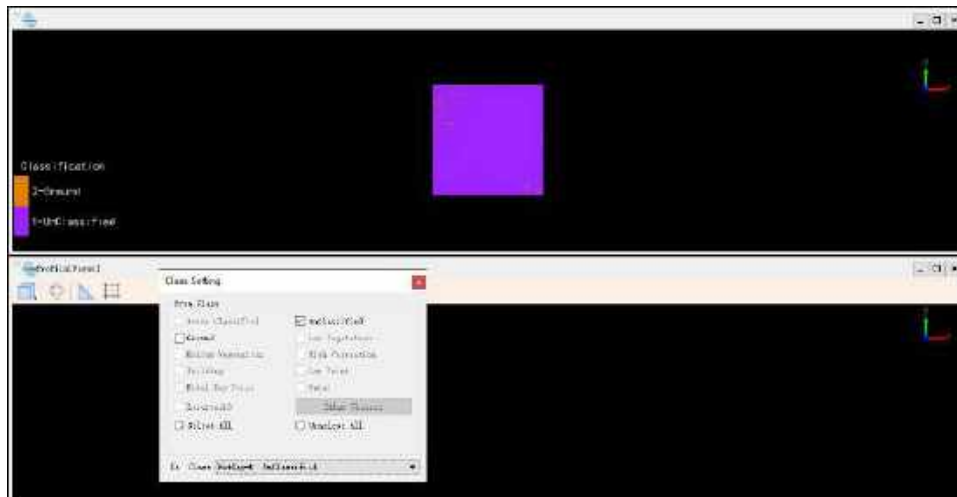
Because it is difficult to attain 100% accuracy with the automatic classification algorithm, human-computer interaction classification is usually required to meet product requirements. Manual inspections and reclassifications are performed in the profile window. The profile tool is used to examine the classification results and modify them. For the accuracy improvement of the classification, real-time changing TINs can be generated to assist the classification.

## Steps

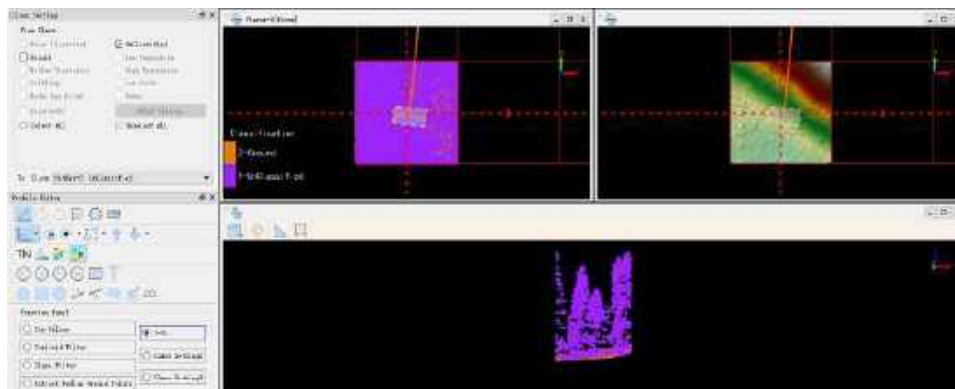
1. When performing interactive editing and classification of point cloud, it is better to ensure that the point cloud is displayed in the class display mode. Click on the color bar toolbar  C to display by class.
2. Click  , open the profile window to start checking the classification results. In the main window of profile mode, point cloud can only be displayed in 2D mode.
3. Select the point cloud in the main window and select the corresponding point cloud in the profile window. At the same time, the selected area can **Up Move** by clicking  or **Down Move** by clicking  and **Rotate** by clicking .





4. For points with inaccurate classification, you can use the **Polyline Above Selection**  and **Polyline Below Selection**  or **selection tools** (  Polygon selection,  rectangle selection, and  circle selection,  lasso selection,  detect plane, and  circular brush selection are provided) for reclassification. First click  , set the **class**, then click on the above tools to classify points to specified classes.



5. In general, to visualize point cloud classes more intuitively, you need to generate a TIN. Click the **TIN** button to generate a TIN and intuitively perform interactive classification via the top left and right views of the TIN. You can also use the **TIN Left**, **TIN Right**, **TIN Up**, **TIN Down**, and **Pick Tile** functions in the drop-down menu of the TIN to perform interactive classification by block.



6. If the manual classification error needs to be modified, you can undo the previous operations with the shortcut **Ctrl + Z**, or clear all temporary operations by clicking .

7. After confirming the classification results, you should click  to finish save.

Note: After classifying by editing, you need to click the **Save** button to save it in the file.

# Terrain

The Terrain module contains a range of products required for terrain production, of which the DEM (Digital Elevation Mode) indicates that the bare earth surface (vegetation and other objects are removed), the DSM (Digital Surface Model) represents the surface characteristics of terrain and other objects (e.g. tree canopy), and CHM (Canopy Height Model) indicates the normalized height of vegetation and ground objects. Hillshade maps can be created by any digital model for visualization.

- [Grid Parameters](#)
- [DEM](#)
- [DSM](#)
- [CHM](#)
- [Hillshade](#)
- [Slope](#)
- [Roughness](#)
- [Aspect](#)
- [Raster to Contour](#)
- [Generate Elevation Annotation](#)
- [Point Cloud to Contour](#)
- [Generate TIN](#)
- [TIN to Contour](#)
- [TIN to DEM](#)
- [Deviation Analysis](#)
- [Change Detection](#)
- [Section Analysis](#)
- [LiModel Editor](#)
- [LiTIN Editor](#)

# Grid Parameters

When generating terrain products, it is necessary to set up some grid cell size parameters and determine the interpolation method for grid unit calculation.

## XSize and YSize

Through XSize and YSize, users can set the size of sampling interval (resolution) in meters. For instance, if XSize and YSize values are set to 2, respectively, the grid unit size is 2 meters by 2 meters.

## Buffer size

- **Buffer Size (cell) (default is "5"):** The size of each block of raster data extending around, in unit of cell.

## Interpolation Methods

LiDAR360 provides three kinds of raster cell interpolation methods: IDW (Inverse Distance Weight) interpolation, kriging interpolation, and TIN (Triangulated Irregular Network) interpolation.

### IDW

In the inverse distance weighting interpolation method, the value of a grid element is computed using its nearby points, and the weighted average value is judged by the distance of the center point of the grid unit. Users need to set the weight value.

The search radius can be used to define the input points of each raster image meta value interpolation, which consists of variable radius and fixed radius.

- **Power(default value is "2"):** The power of the sampling point to the center distance of the pixel to control the degree of the influence of the sampling point elevation on the pixel center.
- **Radius Variable:** Use a "Variable" to find a specified number of sampling points for interpolation.
  - **Distance(Pix)(default value is "5"):** Restricts the distance to search for adjacent points, by default 5 pixels.
  - **Number of Points(default value is "12"):** The number of nearest neighboring points used for interpolating, which is set 12 as default.

Parameters

XSize 2 m YSize 2 m

Interpolation Method IDW Power 2

Search Radius Radius Variable

Distance 5 Pix Number of Points 12

Merge Files into One  Fill in Holes

- **Radius Fixed:** Interpolation using all points in a fixed radius range.
  - **Distance(Pix)(default value is "5"):** The point within the range of the radius is used for interpolation, by default 5 pixels.
  - **Number of Points(default value is "12"):** The smallest number of points used for interpolation, which is set 12 by default. If required points were not found within the specified radius, it will increase the search radius until find the minimum number of points.

Parameters

XSize 2 m YSize 2 m

Interpolation Method IDW Power 2

Search Radius Radius Fixed

Distance 5 Pix Number of Points 12

Merge Files into One  Fill in Holes

## Kriging

The Kriging interpolation method computes the optimized covariance and uses the Gaussian process interpolation grid value. The RADIUS search can be used to define the input points of each raster image meta value interpolation, which is divided into variable radius and fixed radius.

- **Radius Variable:** Use a "Variable" to find a specified number of sampling points for interpolation.

- **Distance(Pix)(default value is "5"):** Restricts the distance to search for adjacent points, by default 5 pixels.
- **Number of Points(default value is "12"):** The nearest neighbor point to use when interpolating, and by default is 12.

The screenshot shows a 'Parameters' dialog box with the following settings:

- XSize: 2 m
- YSize: 2 m
- Interpolation Method: Kriging (dropdown)
- Power: 2
- Search Radius: Radius Variable (dropdown)
- Distance: 5
- Pix Number of Points: 12
- Merge Files into One
- Fill in Holes

- **Radius Fixed:** Interpolation using all points in a fixed radius range.
  - **Distance(Pix)(default value is "5"):** The point within the range of the radius is used for interpolation, by default 5 pixels.
  - **Number of Points(default value is "12"):** The smallest number of points used for interpolation, by default 12. If required points not found within the specified radius, increase the search distance until find the minimum number of points.

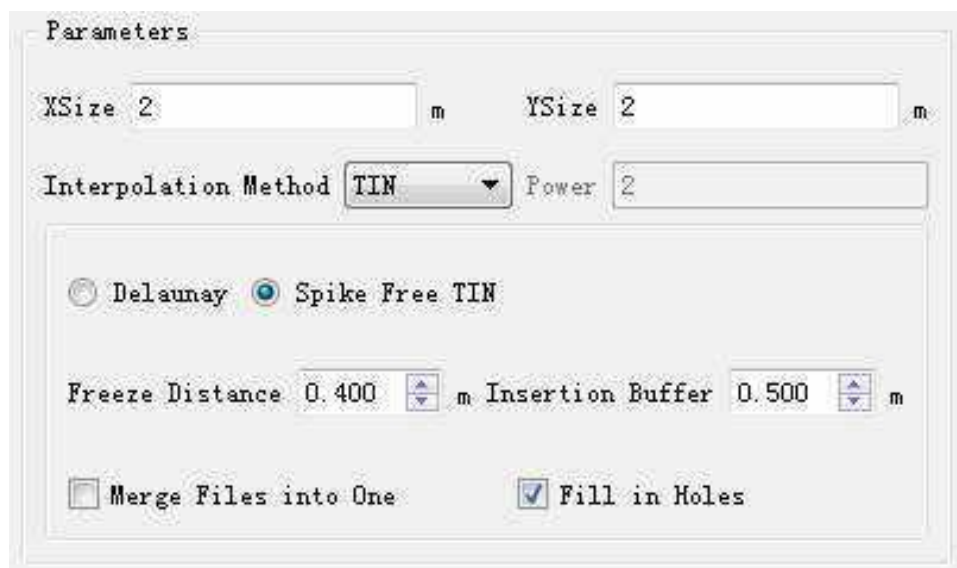
The screenshot shows a 'Parameters' dialog box with the following settings:

- XSize: 2 m
- YSize: 2 m
- Interpolation Method: Kriging (dropdown)
- Power: 2
- Search Radius: Radius Fixed (dropdown)
- Distance: 5
- Pix Number of Points: 12
- Merge Files into One
- Fill in Holes

TIN

Extracts a grid cell value from a surface formed by a plurality of triangles consisting of the nearest adjacent point. This tool offers two options of interpolation.

- **Delaunay**: Create the Delaunay triangulated network by traditional point-by-point insertion. All the points will be involved.
- **Spike Free TIN**: Remove all the points with abnormal altitude. It can lead to generating triangulated network without obvious spikes.
  - **Freeze Distance (default value is "1.0 meter")**: The shortest distance in xy plane of each side of triangle in the triangulated network. When inserting a new point and its Z value lower **Insertion Buffer**, freeze all the triangles whose three sides are all less than **Freeze Distance**. The frozen triangles will no longer change. The larger this value is, the fewer points will be involved in creating the network, the more smooth the network will be and the less details will be included. Conversely, more points will be involved in creating the network, the more details will be included and the more possible spikes will appear in the network.
  - **Insertion Buffer (default value is "0.5 meter")**: When trying to freeze a new triangle right after freezing another one, the difference in altitude value should be larger than this threshold. Decreasing this value will result in more triangles will be frozen too early, new point cannot be inserted, less spikes will appear, processing will be faster, and more details will be lost. Conversely, more details will be included, and more spikes will be included in the network.



```
@inproceedings{
  author={Khosravipour A, Skidmore A K, Isenburg M},
  title={Khosravipour A, Skidmore A K, Isenburg M. Generating spike-free digital surface models using LiDAR raw point clouds: A new approach for forestry applications},
  booktitle={International journal of applied earth observation and geoinformation, 52: 104-114},
  year={2016}
}
```

## Merge files into one

If this option is not checked, each point cloud data will be processed separately, resulting in more than one grid file. Check this option to merge all generated raster files into one file.

## Fill in holes

If there are no points near the grid unit, the grid cells may not have data values. When this option is checked, data values can be computed by analyzing adjacent grid units and using the selected interpolation method to fill in an area with no values.

Note: The "Fill in holes" function is only for closed holes.



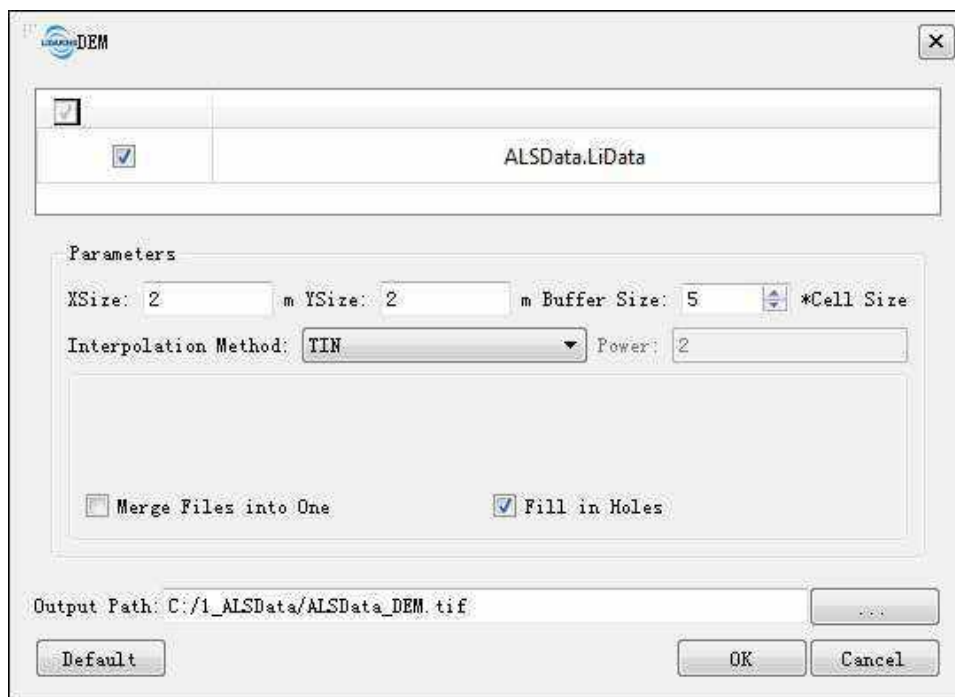
# DEM

## Summary

Digital Elevation Model (DEM), is the digitized simulation of terrain through limited topographic elevation data (i.e. the digitized representation of terrain surface). It represents the ground elevation with a set of ordered numerical array. It is a branch of the digital terrain model, which can be used to generate all other terrain feature values.

## Usage

Before you can generate a digital elevation model, first [Classify Ground Points](#). Click on the *Terrain > DEM*.

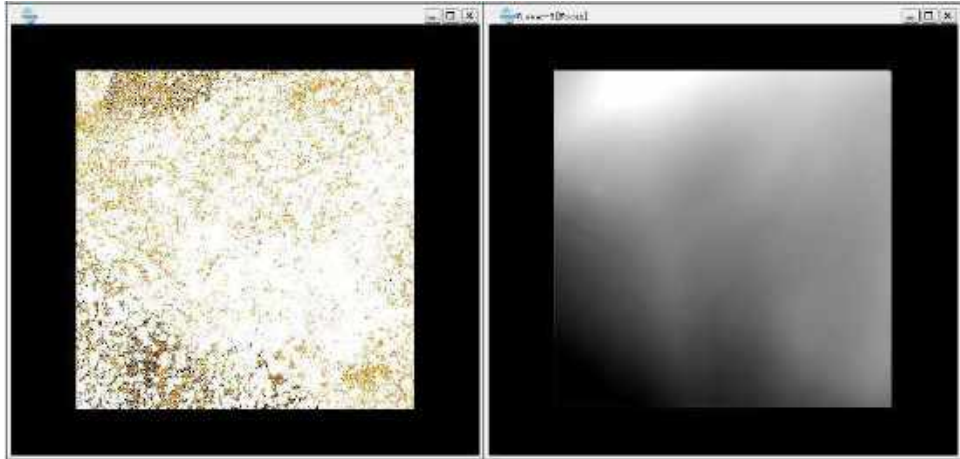


## Settings

- **Input Data:** The input file can be a single point cloud data or a point cloud dataset, which must have classified ground points and opened in LiDAR360 software.
- **Parameter Settings:** See [Grid Parameters Settings](#).
- **Output Path:** Save DEM file to a path.
- **Default Value:** Click this button to restore all parameter defaults.

---

The original point cloud (left below) and the DEM (right below).



Based on DEM, a myriad of products including [Slope](#), [Aspect](#), [Roughness](#) and [Contour](#) can be generated.

Note: Point clouds that are used to generate DEM need contain ground points.

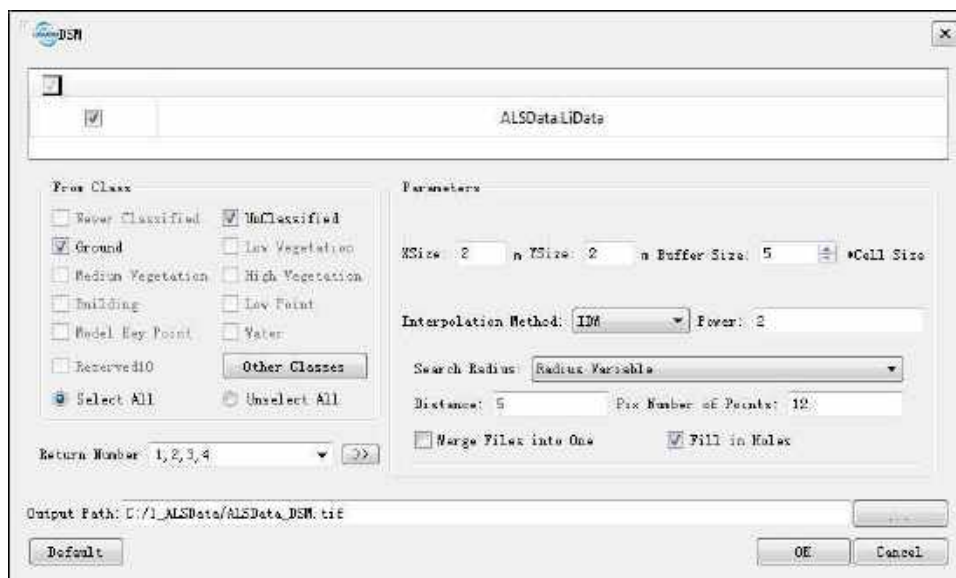
# DSM

## Summary

Digital Surface Model (DSM) refers to the digital representation of height of the surface including the buildings, bridges, trees etc. Compared to a DEM, a DSM contains more elevation information for buildings, bridges, forests and other surface object that don't exist in the DEM. DSM is based on DEM and further covers the elevation of surface information other than the ground.

## Usage

Click on the *Terrain > DSM*.

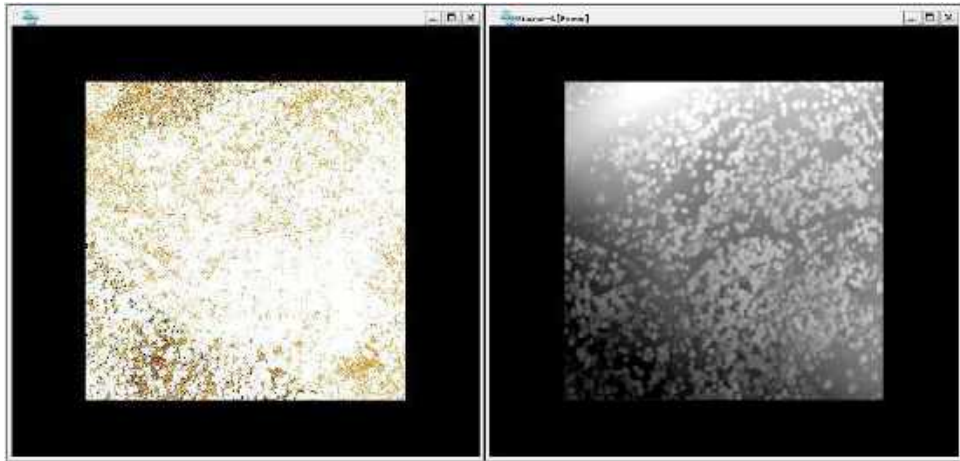


## Settings

- **Input Data:** The input file can be a single point cloud data or a point cloud dataset, which must be already opened in LiDAR360 software.
- **Include Class:** Classifications of point cloud for DSM generation.
- **Parameter Settings:** See [Interpolation Parameters Settings](#).
- **Output Path:** Save DSM file to a path.
- **Default Value:** Click this button to restore all parameter defaults.

---

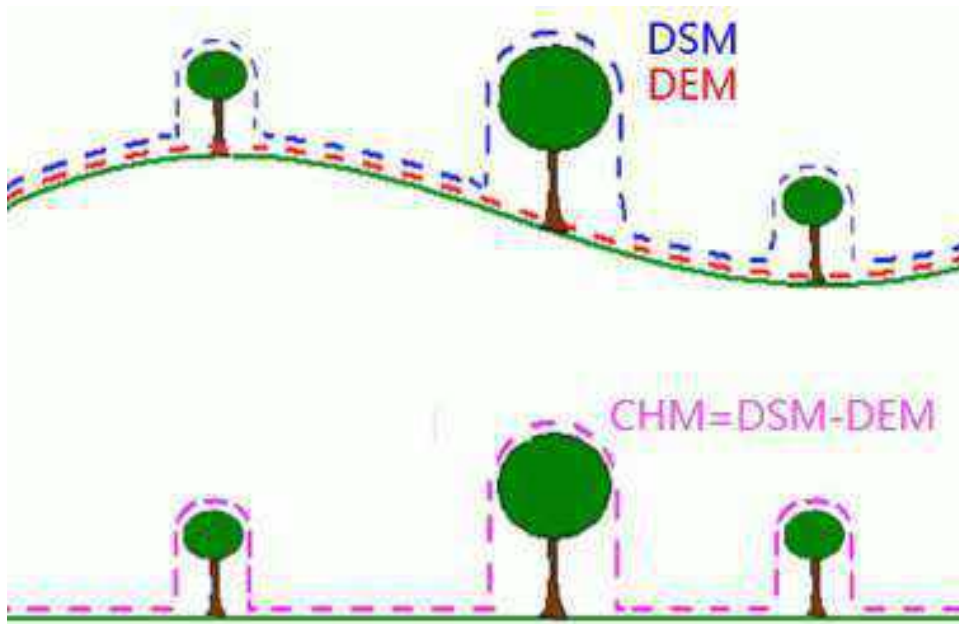
The DSM generated from the point cloud whose initial category is ground and unclassified. Point cloud data is shown on the left, DSM is shown on the right.



# CHM

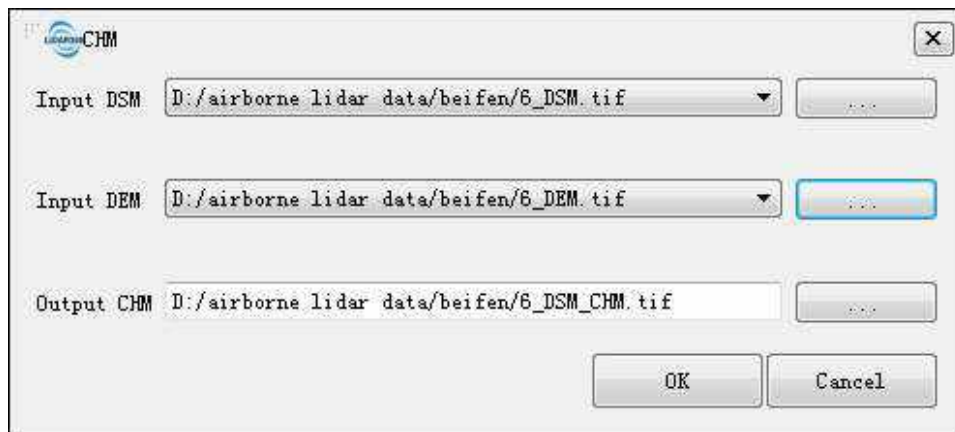
## Summary

The Canopy Height Model (CHM) can be obtained by subtracting DEM from DSM, and the following figure shows the relationship of the DSM (Digital Surface Model), DEM (Digital Elevation Model) and the CHM (Canopy Height Model).



## Usage

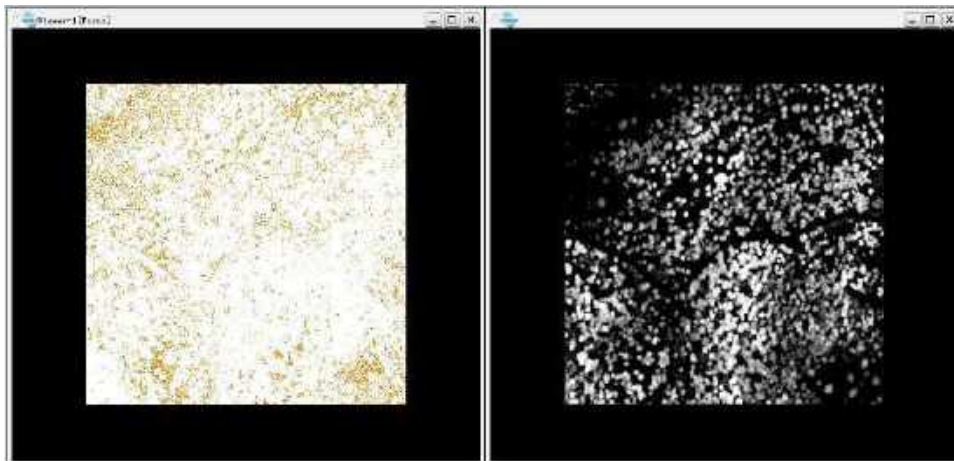
Using this function requires a DEM and a DSM. Click on the *Terrain > CHM*.



## Settings

- **Input DSM:** Input a DSM file, the generation method can be seen in [DSM](#).
  - **Input DEM:** Input a DEM file, the generation method can be seen in [DEM](#).
  - **Output CHM:** The path of CHM file to save.
-

The original point cloud (seen left below) and the generated CHM(see figure right below).



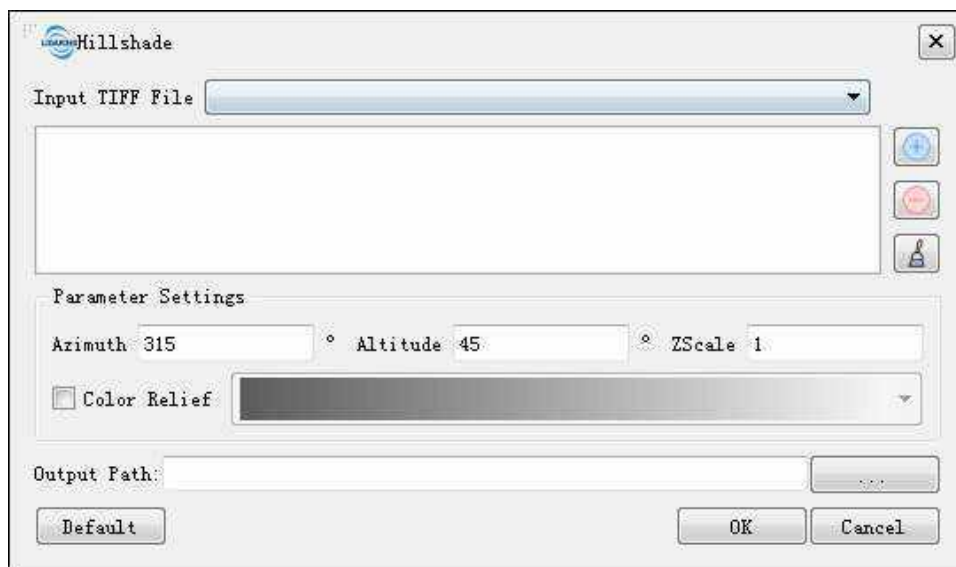
# Hillshade

## Summary




The Hillshade tool obtains the assumed illumination of the surface by determining the illumination for each image element in the grid. The assumed illumination can be obtained by setting the position of the light source and calculating the illumination value of each image element related to the adjacent pixels. In the analysis or graphic display, the Hillshade tool can greatly enhance the surface visualization especially when using transparency.

## Usage

Click on the *Terrain > Hillshade*.

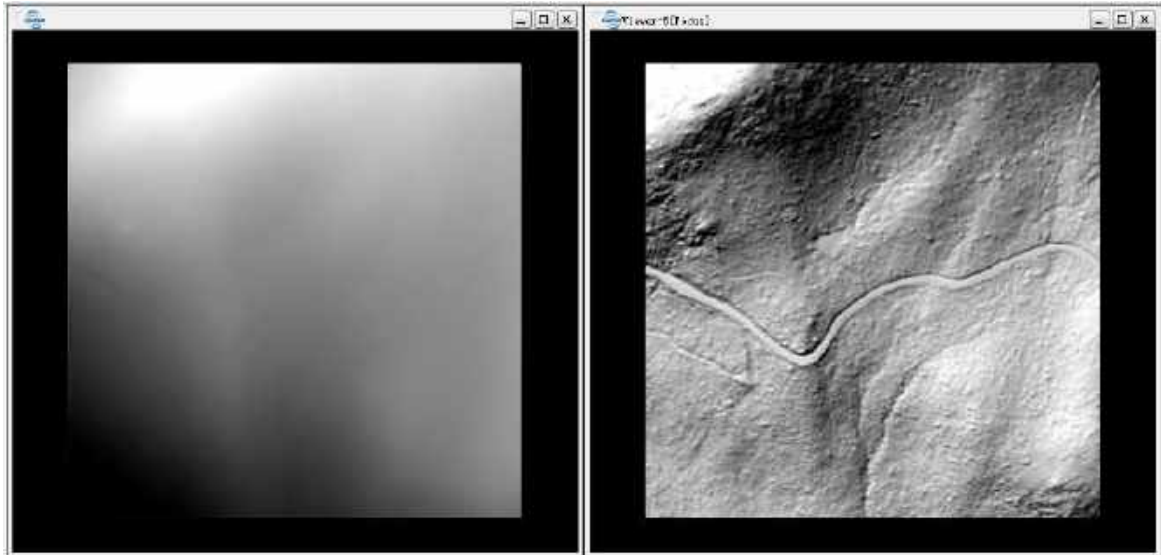


## Settings

- **Input Tiff File:** Input DEM file format in Tiff. The drop-down box allows to select the Tiff data that has already been opened in the LiDAR360 software. Users can also import Tiff data by clicking .OR delete imported Tiff data by clicking .Or clear all the imported data by clicking .
- **Azimuth (°)(default value is "315"):** Using North as the benchmark, the degree range is 0~360 clockwise and the default is set to 315 degree(NW).
- **Altitude(°)(default value is "45"):** The angle between the incident direction of the light source and the ground plane, which ranges from 0 to 90 degrees and uses 45 degree as default.
- **ZScale(default value is "1"):** The stretch scale of the Z value.
- **Color Relief:** Color rendering of hillshade.
  - **Yes:** There are 11 types of optional color bar.
  - **No(default):** Black and white color bar.
- **Output path:** The path where the generated hillshade map file will be saved.
- **Default Value:** Click this button to restore all default parameters.

---

DEM (left below) and Hillshade map (right below).





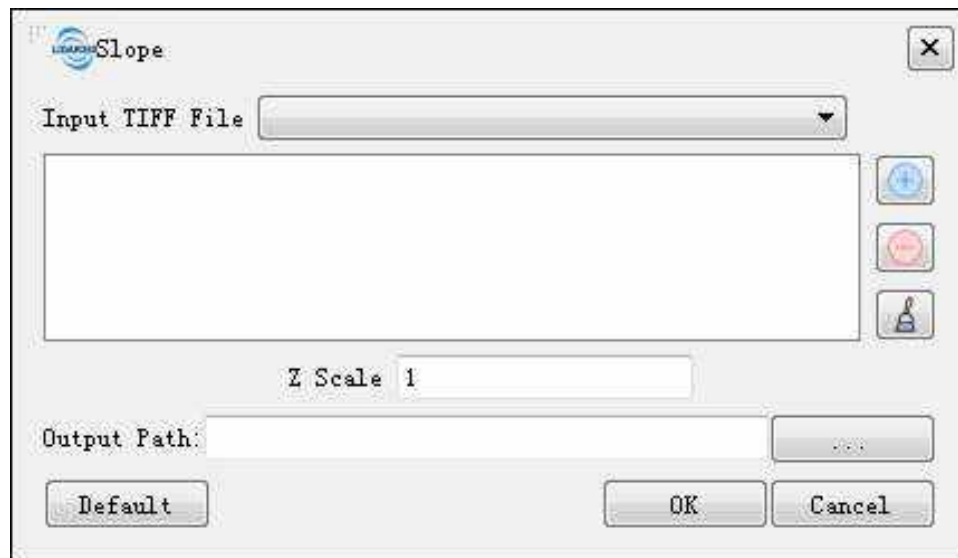
# Slope

## Summary




Slope shows how deep is the terrain surface. This function analyzes terrain slope based on DEM and generates slope images.

## Usage

Click on the *Terrain > Slope*.

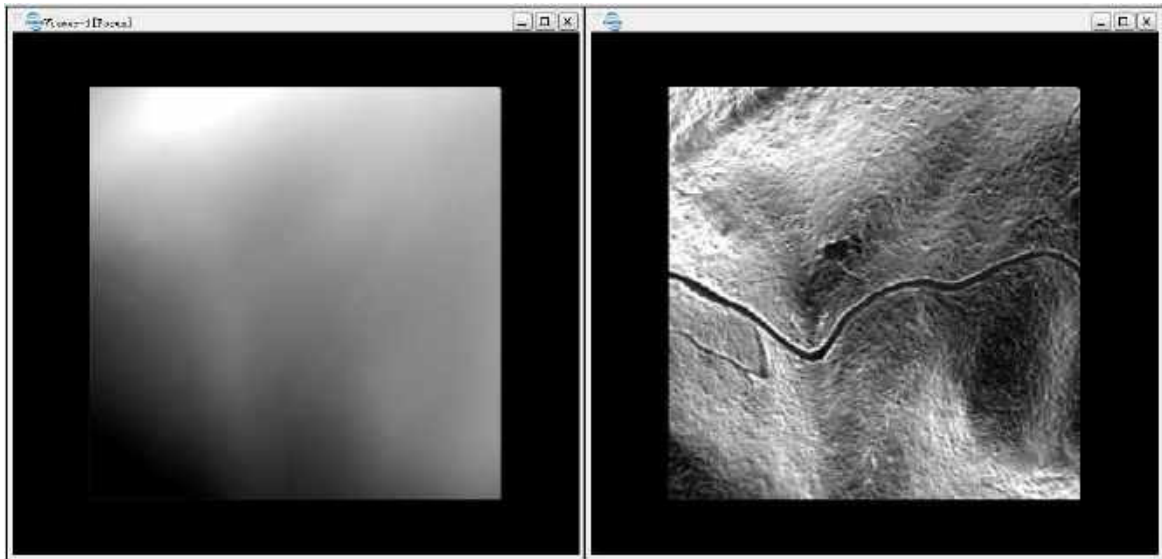


## Settings

- **Input Tiff File:** Input DEM file format in Tiff. The drop-down box allows to select the Tiff data that has already been opened in the LiDAR360 software. User can also import Tiff data by clicking .OR delete imported Tiff data by clicking .Or clear all the imported data by clicking .
- **ZScale(default value is "1"):** The stretch scale of the Z value.
- **Output path:** The path where the generated slope map file to be saved.
- **Default Value:** Click this button to restore all default parameters.

---

DEM (left below) and slope map (right below).



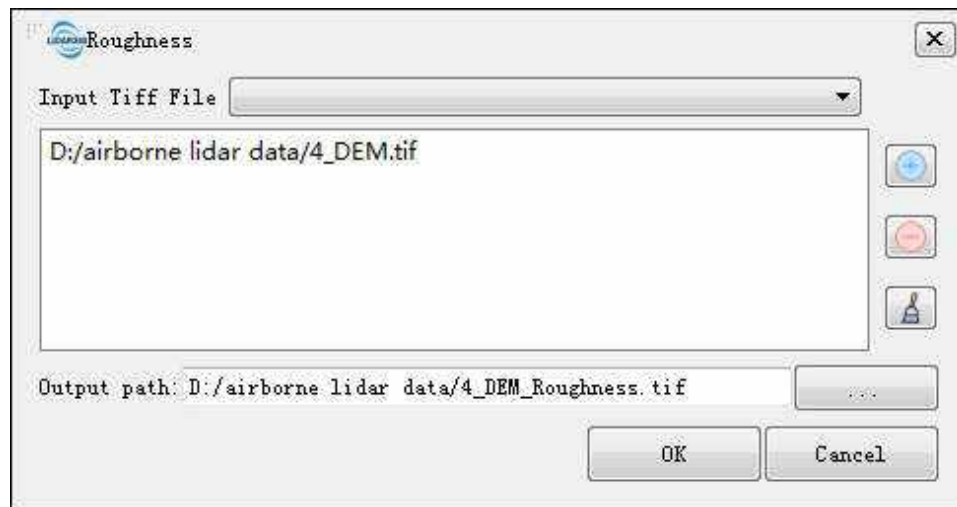
# Roughness

## Summary




Indicators that reflect changes in surface fluctuations and degree of erosion. It is generally defined as the ratio of surface area to the projected area on the horizontal plane.

## Usage

Click on *Terrain > Roughness*.

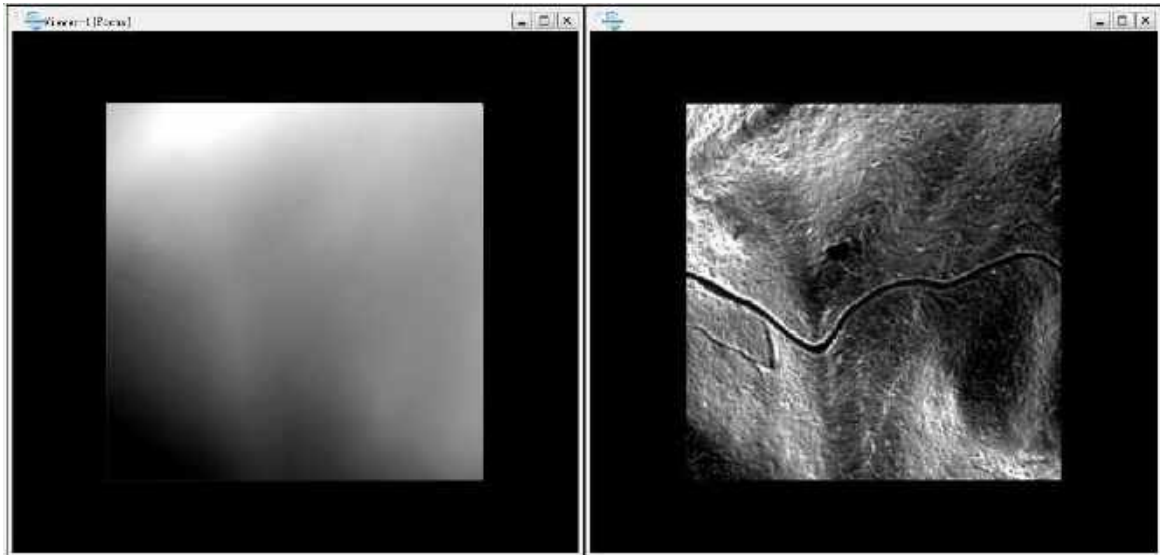


## Settings

- **Input Tiff File:** Input DEM file format in Tiff. The drop-down box allows to select the Tiff data that has already been opened in the LiDAR360 software. Users can also import Tiff data by clicking . Or delete imported Tiff data by clicking . Or clear all the imported data by clicking .
- **Output path:** The path where the generated roughness map file to be saved.

---

DEM (left below) and roughness map (right below).



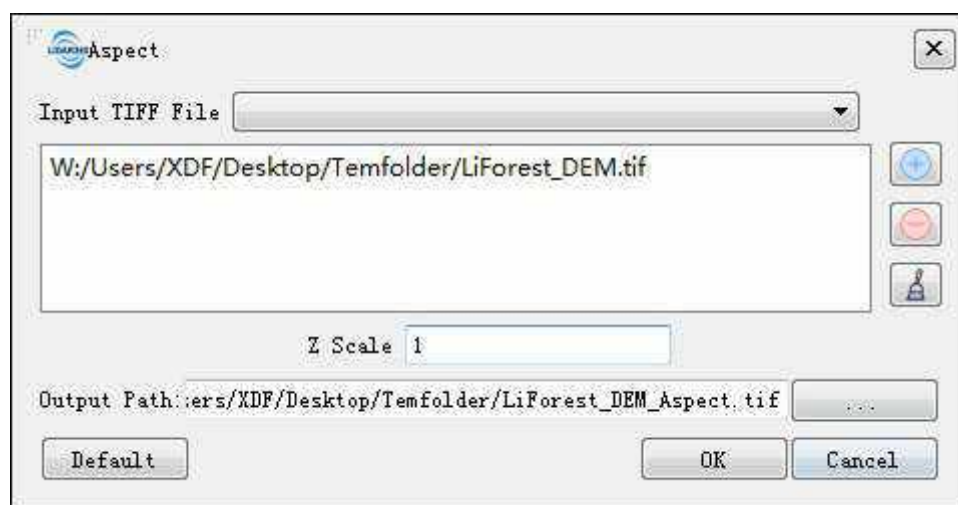
# Aspect

## Summary




Aspect refers to the orientation of the terrain slope, defined as the direction of the projection of the slope normal on the horizontal plane. Slope direction is of great importance for mountain ecology. The slope is an angle, which is measured clockwise with a range between 0 (north) and 360 (north as well). This function can analyze terrain aspect based on DEM and generates aspect map.

## Usage

Click on *Terrain > Aspect*.

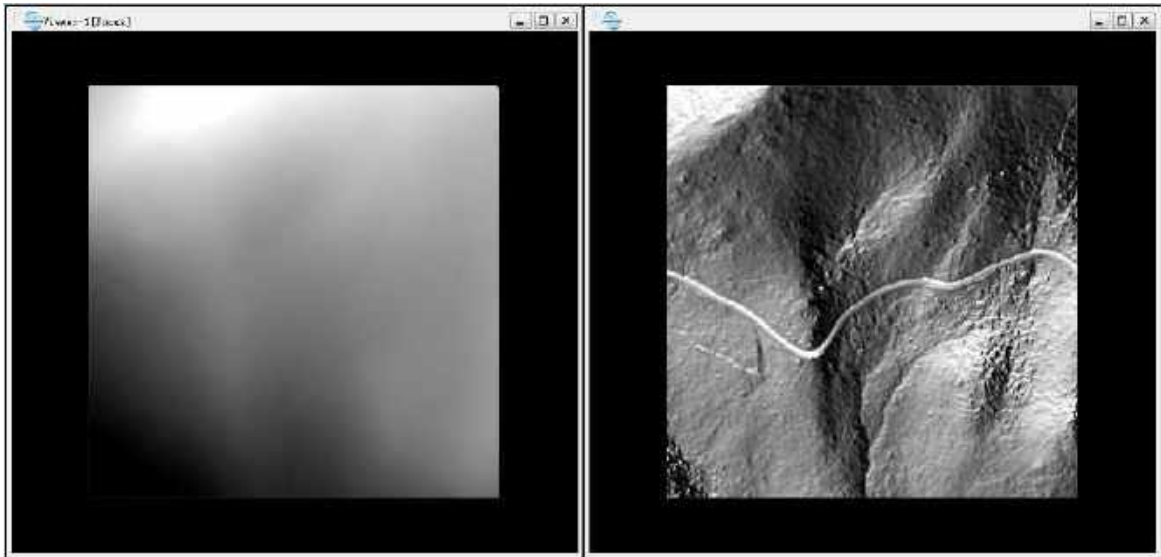


## Settings

- **Input Tiff File:** Input DEM file in Tiff format. The Drop-down box allows to select the Tiff data that has already been opened in the LiDAR360 software. User can also import Tiff data by clicking . Or delete the imported Tiff data by clicking . Or clear all the imported data by clicking .
- **ZScale(default value is "1"):** The stretch scale of the Z value.
- **Output path:** The path where the generated aspect file to be saved.
- **Default Value:** Click this button to restore all default parameters.

---

The DEM (left below) and the aspect map (right below).



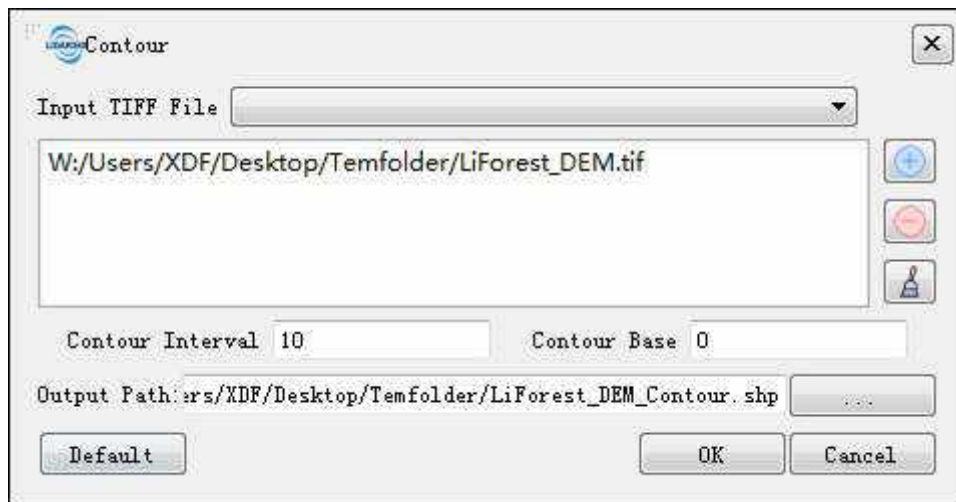
# Raster to Contour

## Summary

The contour refers to the closed curve of the adjacent points with equal elevation on the topographic map. Raster to Contour is to connect the grid points that have the same elevation value, which can build the contour.

## Usage

Click the *Terrain > Raster to Contour*.

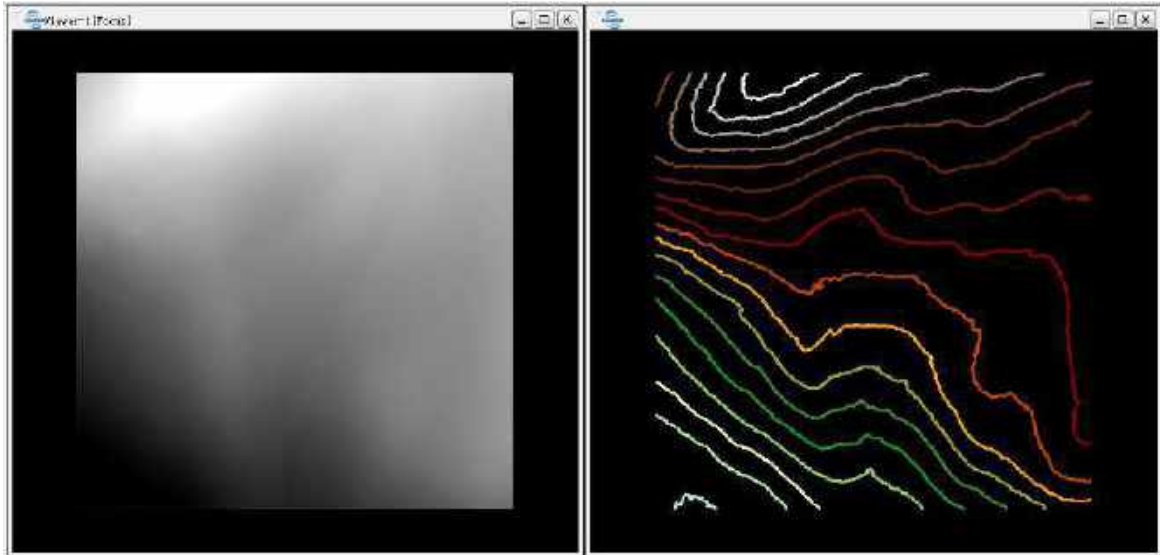


## Settings

- **Input Tiff File:** Input DEM file format in Tiff. The drop-down box allows to select the Tiff data that has already been opened in the LiDAR360 software. Users can also import Tiff data by clicking .OR delete imported Tiff data by clicking .Or clear all the imported data by clicking .
- **Contour Interval(m)(default value is "10"):** The elevation difference of the adjacent contour lines.
- **Contour Base(default value is "0"):** The elevation of the generated contour is calculated from the base elevation. The difference between elevation of the contour and base elevation is the integral multiples of the contour interval. For example, the contour base is 0 and the contour interval is 10m, thus the distribution of contour is :0, -10, -20, -30, ...,10, 20, 30,...
- **Output path:** The path where the generated contour file to be saved.
- **Default Value:** Click this button to restore all default parameters.

---

DEM (left below) and contour map (right below).



Note: Use the Elevation Smoothing Tool of [LiModel Editor](#) to smooth the contour.



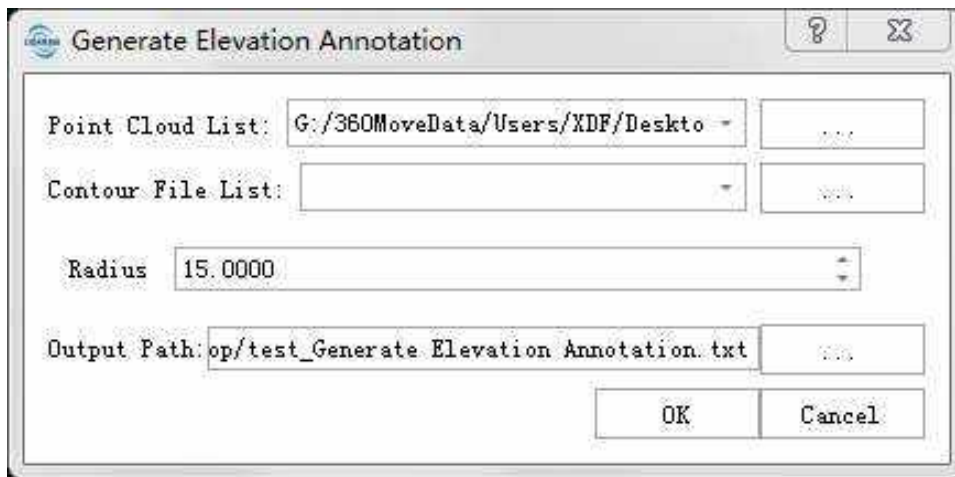
# Generating elevation annotations

## Summary

Using point cloud and contour lines to generate elevation points for topographic mapping. [Notes Elevation Points File](#).

## Usage

Click *Terrain > Generating elevation annotation*.



## Settings

- **Input Tiff File:** Input DEM file format in LiData.
- **Input Contour File (.shp):** Input Contour file format in shp, The file needs to contain one or more contours.
- **Radius (m)(default value is "15"):** A Note Elevation Point is generated within a region with a defined radius.
- **Output path:** The path of the generated contour lines file(s) to save.

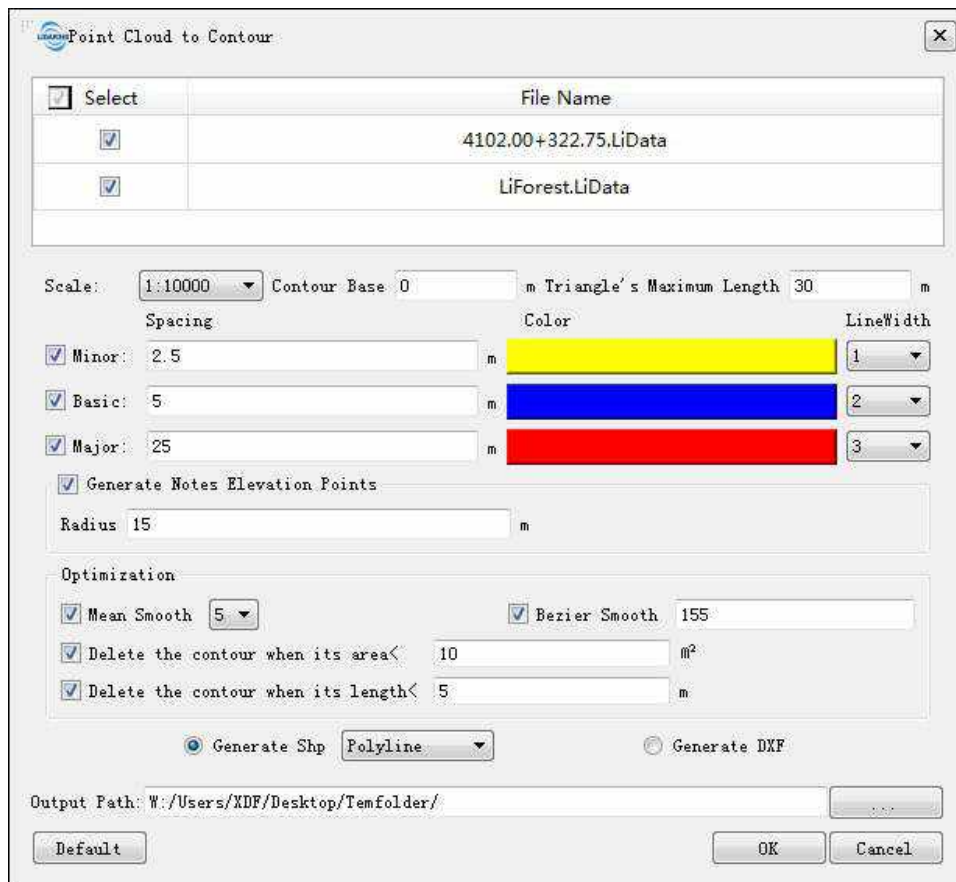
# Point Cloud to Contour

## Summary

The Point Cloud to Contour tool extracts elevation contours from input point cloud data by developing a triangular irregular network (TIN) from ground class points. This is then used to construct lines of equal elevation that are output as a polyline.

## Usage

Navigate to and click on *Terrain > Point Cloud to Contour*.



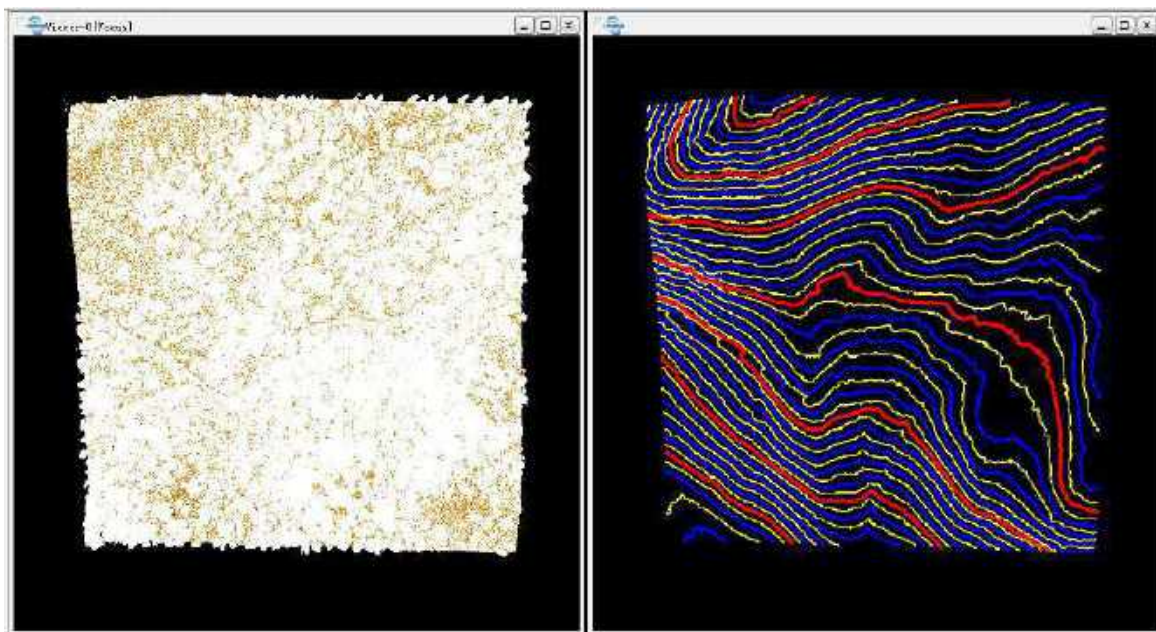
## Settings

- **Input Data:** The input file can be a single point cloud data or a point cloud dataset which must have classified ground points and have been loaded in LiDAR360 software.
- **Scale:** There are 11 scales for generating the point cloud, which correspond to different height intervals. For instance,
  - **1:500:** 1:500 scale.
  - **1:1000:** 1:1000 scale.
  - **1:2000:** 1:2000 scale.
  - **1:5000:** 1:5000 scale.
  - **1:10000(default):** 1:10000 scale.
  - ... ..

- **Contour Base (m)(default value is "0"):** The elevation value of each contour line is relative to a user-defined Contour Base elevation. Contours falling at lower elevations relative to the Contour Base elevation will take on negative values and contours falling at higher elevations relative to the Contour Base elevation have positive values. The default Contour Base elevation value is zero (0) meters. Generated lines of equal elevation are evenly spaced and the distance separating any two contour lines will be held constant.
- **Triangle's Maximum Length (m)(default value is "30"):** This parameter allows users to set a maximum edge length value, in meters (m), of arcs found in the triangulation network, constructed from elevation attributed ground points, that is used to generate contours. If the length of a triangle side, or arc, in the network is greater than the defined threshold, that edge will be excluded from the construction of elevation contours.
- **Minor Contour (default state is checked):** The Minor Contour option allows users to define what is also referred to as the 'half-distance contour'. When the major contour interval, which is defined by the Scale, does not adequately show the topographic detail of an area (such as when little local relief is present, i.e., flat areas), the contour lines are drawn at the Minor Contour Interval. The Minor Contour Interval option is turned ON by default.
  - **Spacing (m)(default value is "2.5"):** Height interval, the absolute value of height difference between two adjacent minor contour lines.
  - **Color (default value is "yellow"):** The color of Minor Contours.
  - **Line Weight (default value is "1"):** The weight of Minor Contours.
- **Basic Contour (default state is checked):** The Basic Contour option allows users to include lines of equal elevation that represent the landscape. The Basic Contour option is turned ON by default.
  - **Spacing (m)(default value is "5"):** Height interval (in meters), the absolute value of height difference between two adjacent basic contour lines.
  - **Color (default value is "Blue"):** The color of Basic Contours.
  - **Line Weight (default value is "2"):** The weight of Basic Contours.
- **Major Contour (default state is checked):** The Major Contour option allows users to include bold contour lines that facilitate easy interpretation of terrain and topography. Major Contours are drawn at the Base Contour and at every 4th interval above and below the Base Contour. For example, if the Base Contour elevation is 0 meters, the Basic Contour Spacing is 100 meters (m) and the maximum ground point elevation found in the input file(s) is 1000 meters, then Major Contours would appear at 0 meters, 400 meters and 800 meters.
  - **Spacing (m)(default value is "25"):** Height interval (in meters), the absolute value of height difference between two adjacent major contour lines.
  - **Color (default value is "Red"):** The color of Major Contours.
  - **Line Weight (default value is "3"):** The weight of Major Contours.
- **Generate Notes Elevation Points (default state is checked):** Generate [notes elevation points](#) in outputs.
  - **Radius (m)(default value is "15"):** A Note Elevation Point is generated within a region with a defined radius.
- **Optimization:** Optimized settings for smoothing the generated contours.
  - **Mean Smooth (default state is checked):** The Mean Smoothing contour optimization method replaces the measured or estimated (interpolated) ground elevation points along a contour line (otherwise known as contour points) with mean contour points that represent weighted average X and Y coordinates of adjacent contour points found on a given line of equal elevation. This operation will reduce the number of contour points used to construct the contour line and will smooth the outputs of the Point Cloud to Contour tool. Users can choose to include 3, 5 or 7 neighboring contour points in the calculation of the weighted average X, Y coordinate locations of mean contour points. By default, the Mean Smoothing Contour Operation Setting is turned ON and 5 neighboring contour points are used to find the weighted average contour point location.
    - **3:**The number of neighboring contour points participating in smoothing at the current point is 3.

- **5 (default)**:The number of neighboring contour points participating in smoothing at the current point is 5.
    - **7**:The number of neighboring contour points participating in smoothing at the current point is 7.
  - **Bezier Smooth (default value is "155")**: The Bezier Smoothing contour optimization method replaces the measured or estimated (interpolated) ground elevation points along a contour line (otherwise known as contour points), with contour points that fall within an angle threshold range from 0 to 180 degrees. The larger the threshold setting, the smoother the contour lines.
  - **Delete the contour when its area <(m<sup>2</sup>)(default value is "10")**: When the area of the closed contour is less than this threshold, it will be deleted.
  - **Delete the contour when its length (m)(default value is "5")**: Non-closed contours are deleted if their length is less than this threshold.
- **Generate Shp (default)**:Save Point Cloud to Contour tool outputs to a shapefile (.shp) format with the following feature attributes: contour line type, contour line width, contour line color, and contour line elevation. Users can choose to output the generated Contour features as a 2-D or 2.5-D polylines. Point Cloud to Contour tool outputs will be generated as 2-D shapefiles by default.
- **Generate DXF**: Save Point Cloud to Contour tool outputs to a Drawing Exchange Formatted (.dxf) file. NOTE: LiDAR360 supports the generation of DXF format contour files, however, the software does not currently support the reading and visualization of DXF formatted Contour lines files.
- **Output path**: The path of the generated contour lines file(s) to save.
- **Default Value**: Click this tool option to restore all default parameters.

Point cloud data (left below) and contour map (right below).



Note: Before using this tool, ground points should be generated in advance.

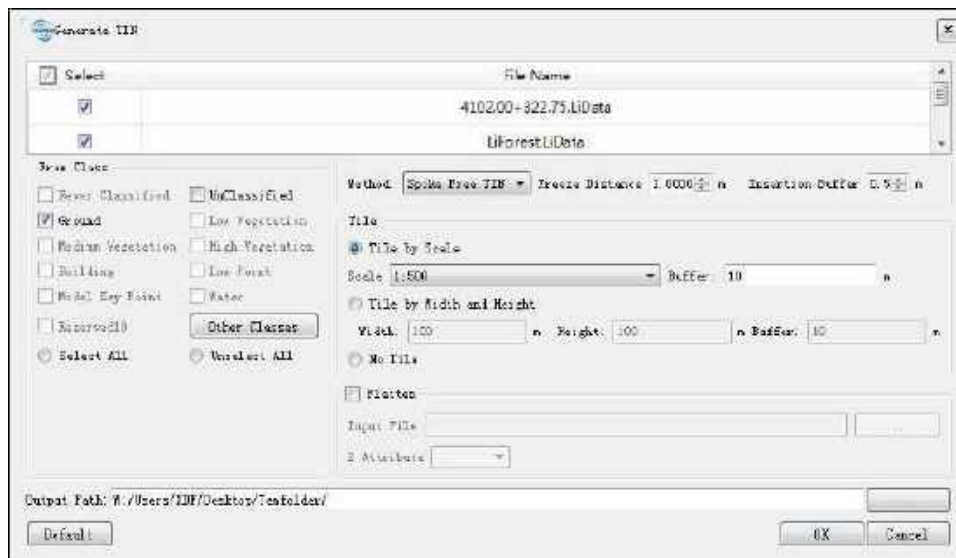
# Generate TIN

## Summary

LiDAR360 generate TIN based on point clouds and save the model with a custom triangulation model file format (\*.LiTin).

## Usage

Click on the *Terrain > Generate TIN*.



## Settings

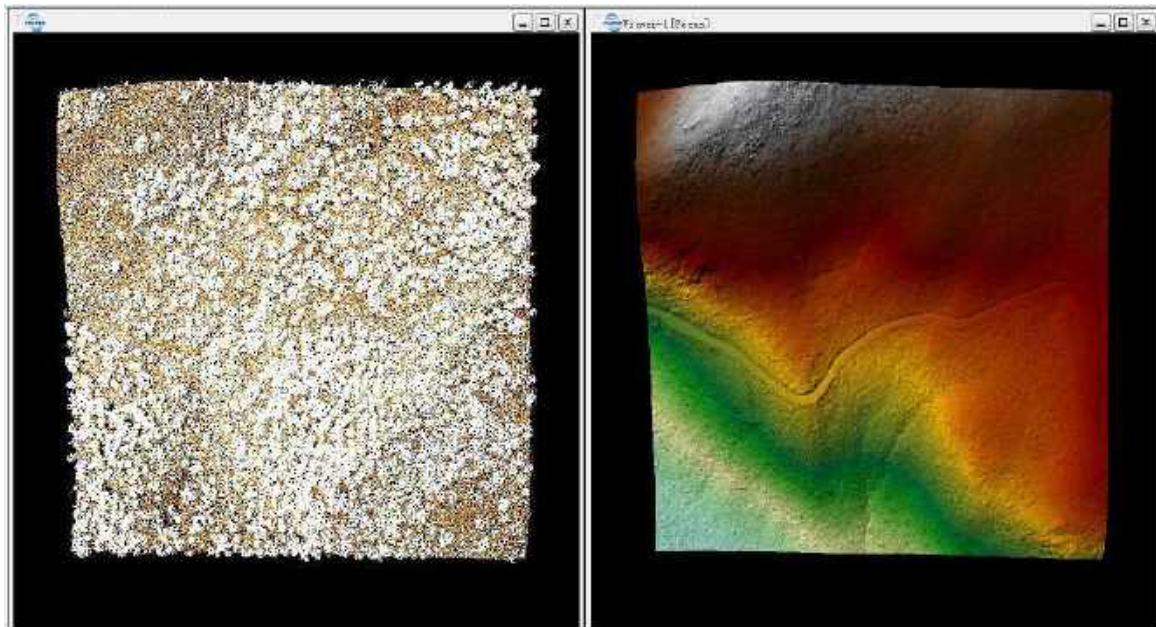
- **Input Data:** The input file can be a single point cloud data or a point cloud dataset, which must be already opened in LiDAR360 software.
- **From Class:** Source class(es).
- **Method:** Methods to generate TIN. Now there are two methods, Delaunay and Spike Free TIN.
  - **Delaunay:** Use point-by-point insertion to generate Delaunay TIN.
    - **Maximum Triangle Side Length (default value is "30 meter"):** Delete any triangle whose longest size is longer than this value.
  - **Spike Free TIN:** Remove the points with abnormal elevation, in order to generate TIN without obvious spikes.
    - **Freeze Distance (default value is "1.0 meter"):** The shortest distance in xy plane of each side of triangle in the triangulated network. When inserting a new point and its Z value lower **Insertion Buffer**, freeze all the triangles whose three sides are all less than **Freeze Distance**. The frozen triangles will no longer change. The larger this value is, the fewer points will be involved in creating the network, the more smooth the network will be and the less details will be included. Conversely, more points will be involved in creating the network, the more details will be included and the more possible spikes will appear in the network.
    - **Insertion Buffer (default value is "0.5 meter"):** When trying to freeze a new triangle right after freezing another one, the difference in altitude value should be larger than this threshold. Decreasing this value will result in more triangles will be frozen too early, new point cannot be

inserted, less spikes will appear, processing will be faster, and more details will be lost.

Conversely, more details will be included, and more spikes will be included in the network.

- **Maximum Triangle Side Length (default value is "30 meter"):** Delete any triangle whose longest size is longer than this value.
- **Tile:** The results consist of three types of tiles: "Tile by Scale", "Tile by Width and Height" and "No Tile".
  - **Tile by Scale(default):** Generate TIN by a certain scale.
    - **Scale:**Point cloud tile scale.
      - **1:500(default):** 1:500 scale.
      - **1:1000:** 1:1000 scale.
      - **1:2000:** 1:2000 scale.
      - **1:5000:** 1:5000 scale.
    - **Buffer(m)(default value is "10"):** The buffer size of the overlap between two adjacent point cloud tiles.
  - **Tile by Width and Height:** Tile by a certain width and height.
    - **Width(m)(default value is "100"):** Width of point cloud tile.
    - **Height(m)(default value is "100"):** Height of point cloud tile.
    - **Buffer(m)(default value is "10"):** The buffer size of the overlap between two adjacent point cloud tiles.
  - **No Tile:** The point cloud generates a TIN as a whole and no tile.
- **Flatten(optional):** The flatten tool is used to flatten the specified range based on user input files.
- **Input File:** The input file is the polygon-type shapefile. The irregular triangulation will be flattened based on the file range and the Z attribute.
- **Z Attribute:** The Z attribute of flattening.
- **Output path:** The path where the generated TIN file to be saved.

Point cloud data (left below) and TIN (right below).



```
@inproceedings{
  author={Khosravipour A, Skidmore A K, Isenburg M},
  title={Khosravipour A, Skidmore A K, Isenburg M. Generating spike-free digital surface models using LiDAR raw point clouds: A new approach for forestry applications},
```

```
booktitle={ International journal of applied earth observation and geoinformation, 52: 104-114},  
year={2016}  
}
```

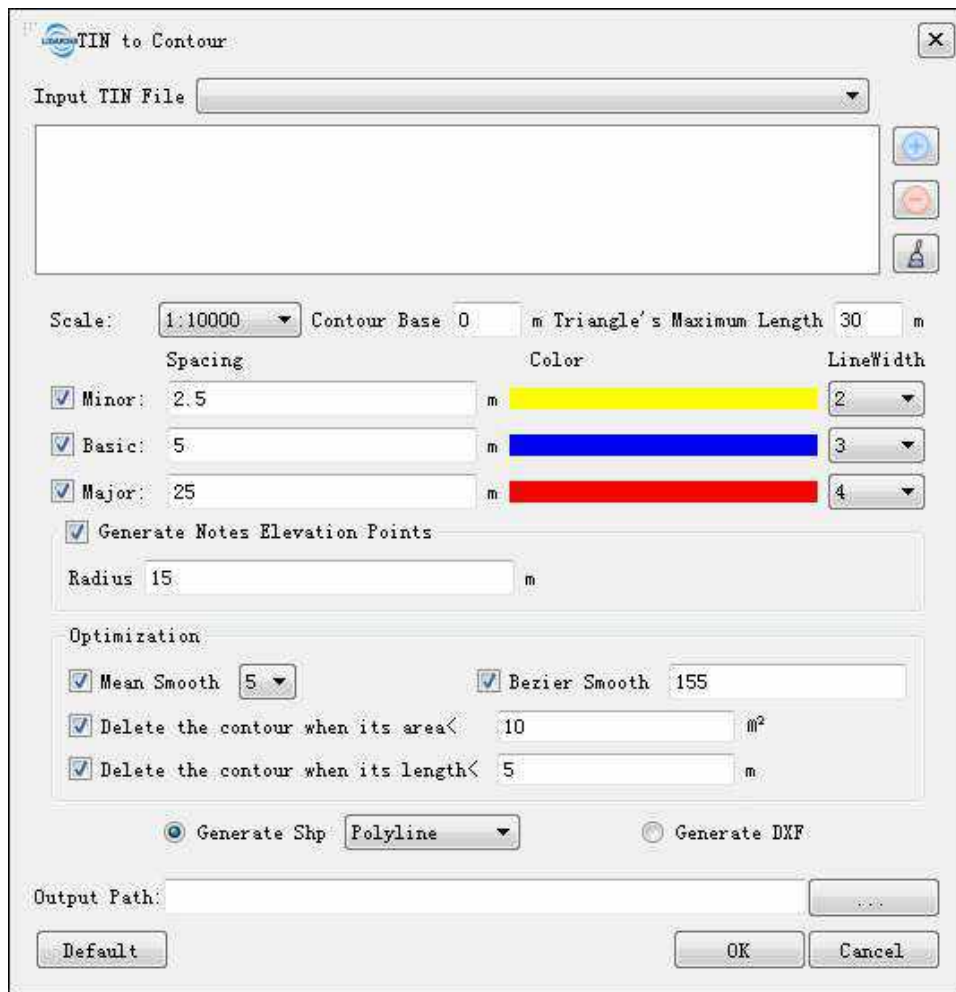
# TIN to Contour

## Summary




This function directly connects contour point positions of the same elevation on the [TIN](#) stored in the [LiTin](#) file to generate contour lines.

## Usage

Click on the *Terrain > TIN to Contour*.



## Settings

- **Input TIN File:** Input LiTin file(s). The drop-down box allows to select the LiTin data that has already been opened in the LiDAR360 software. User can also import LiTin data by clicking . Or delete imported LiTin data by clicking . Or clear all the imported data by clicking .
- **Default Value:** Click this button to restore all default parameters.
- **The other parameters settings of the interface are the same as [Point Cloud to Contour](#).**



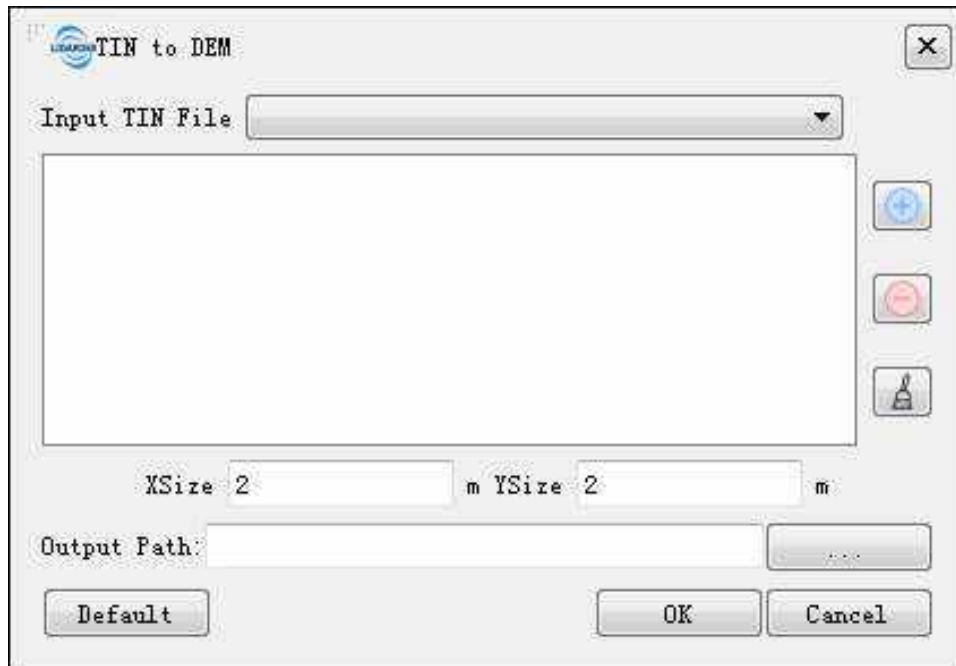
# TIN to DEM

## Summary




This function can generate DEM with the LiTin file.

## Usage

Click on the *Terrain > TIN to DEM*.



## Settings

- **Input TIN File:** Input LiTin file(s). The drop-down box allows to select the LiTin data that has already been opened in the LiDAR360 software. User can also import LiTin data by clicking . Or delete imported LiTin data by clicking . Or clear all the imported data by clicking .
- **XSize(m)(default value is "2.0"):** The XSize of the grid to generate the DEM.
- **YSize(m)(default value is "2.0"):** The YSize of the grid to generate the DEM.
- **Output path:** The path where the generated DEM file to be saved.
- **Default Value:** Click this button to restore all default parameters.

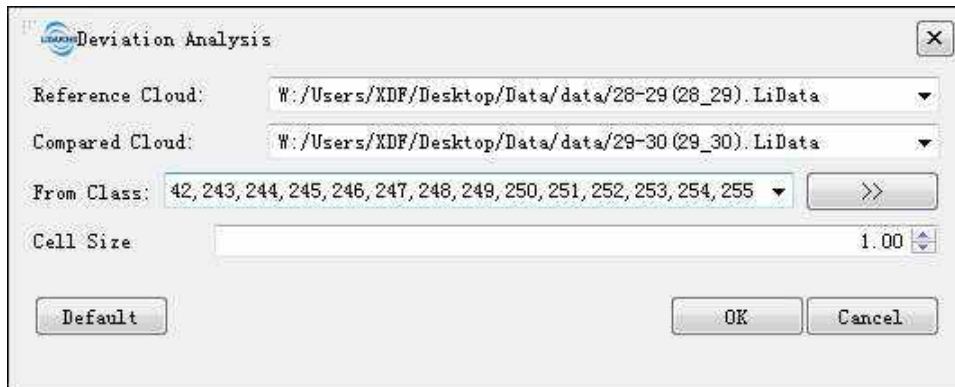
# Deviation Analysis

## Description

To calculate the distance between two point cloud and add the result into additional attribute. This function can calculate the distance between any two point in 3D space, which can be used for deviation analysis.

## Usage

Click *Terrain > Deviation Analysis*.



## Settings

- **Reference Cloud:** Selected reference LiDAR data.
- **Compared Cloud:** Selected LiDAR data to be compared.
- **From Class:** Select point class involved in Deviation Analysis.
- **Voxel Size:** The smaller the voxel size, the more precise the deviation analysis.
- **By Default:** Click this button to restore default settings.

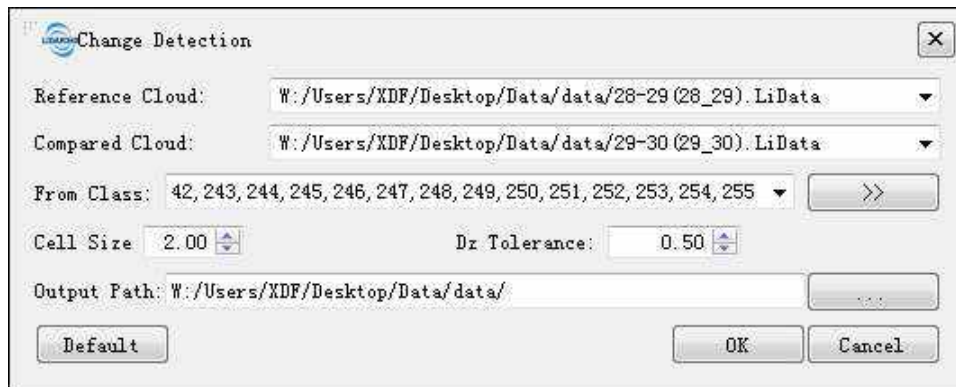
# Change Detection

## Description

To calculate relative height difference between two LiDAR file, and export in .tiff image or .html report. In image, red color indicates increasing part while green color indicates decreasing part, the rest part is rendered in grey. Besides, relative height difference will be added as .LiData additional attributes. This function can be useful on disaster analysis, comparison of illegal buildings, analysis of earthwork changes, analysis of vegetation growth changes etc.

## Usage

Click *Terrain > Change Detection*.



## Settings

- **Reference Cloud:** Selected reference LiDAR data, rendered in green.
- **Compared Cloud:** Selected LiDAR data to be compared, rendered in red.
- **From Class:** Select point class involved in change detection.
- **Cell Size:** Grid point cloud data by this value, the smaller the cell size, the more precise the detection.
- **Dz Tolerance:** Only height difference larger than the tolerance will be recorded.
- **By Default:** Click this button to restore default settings.
- **Output Path:** Set output path.

Note: Reference cloud and compared cloud version have to be 2.0 or above. Lower version cloud data can convert to higher version referring to [Convert LiData to LiData](#) Note: Users can right click the file name and display the cloud by additional attribute

# Section Analysis

## Summary

The Section Analysis toolbar contains functions that can be used to: (1) extract points along a user-defined section line and (2) generate horizontal and vertical section views.

## Usage

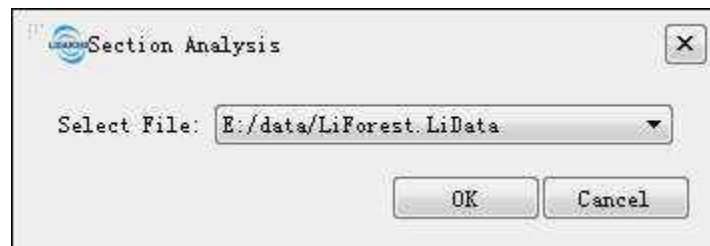
Import the point cloud data into the currently active window, click Terrain > Section Analysis, a section analysis toolbar will appear at the top of the data display window.




Section Analysis Toolbar functions include (from left to right): Section Analysis Editor, Create Section Polyline, Import Section Polyline, Extract Points Along Section Line, Save Section Polyline, Generate Orthogonal Reference Lines, Save Reference Section Lines, Import Designed Cross Sections, Generate Road Cross Section Diagrams, Generate Tunnel Cross Section Diagrams, Show/Hide Vector Tools, Clear Tools, and Exit.

Navigate to and Click on *Editor > Start Edit*.


Select the target point cloud dataset loaded in the current active window to begin the Section Analysis.

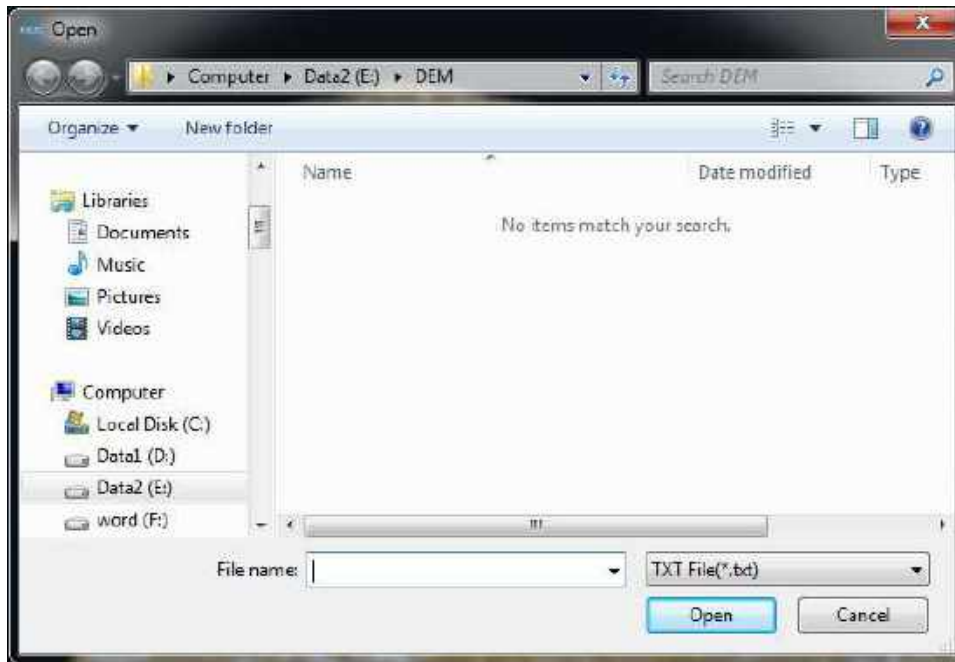


## Generate Reference Section Line

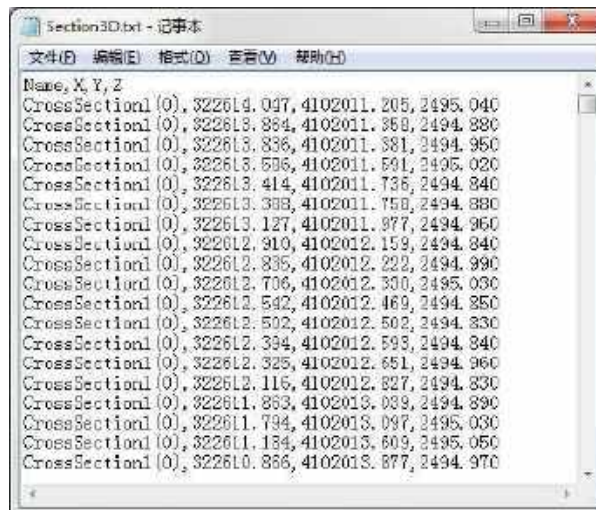
 **Description:** Create a reference section line by drawing a series of points with the mouse. This tool supports drawing multiple reference section lines.

## Import Section Polyline

 **Brief:** Open an existing section polyline file. LiDAR360 supports .txt and .dxf formatted polyline file type imports. The Import Polyline tool can read in section text information stored in .dxf file formats. Note: If there are more than two nodes of a section line, LiDAR360 will recognize the feature as a profile by default. Otherwise, the imported polyline feature will be recognized as a cross-section.



Note: File format of an import text (.txt) file: X, Y, Z.



## Extract Points Along Section Line



**Description:** Click this button to extract the point cloud data file around the reference section line.



## Settings

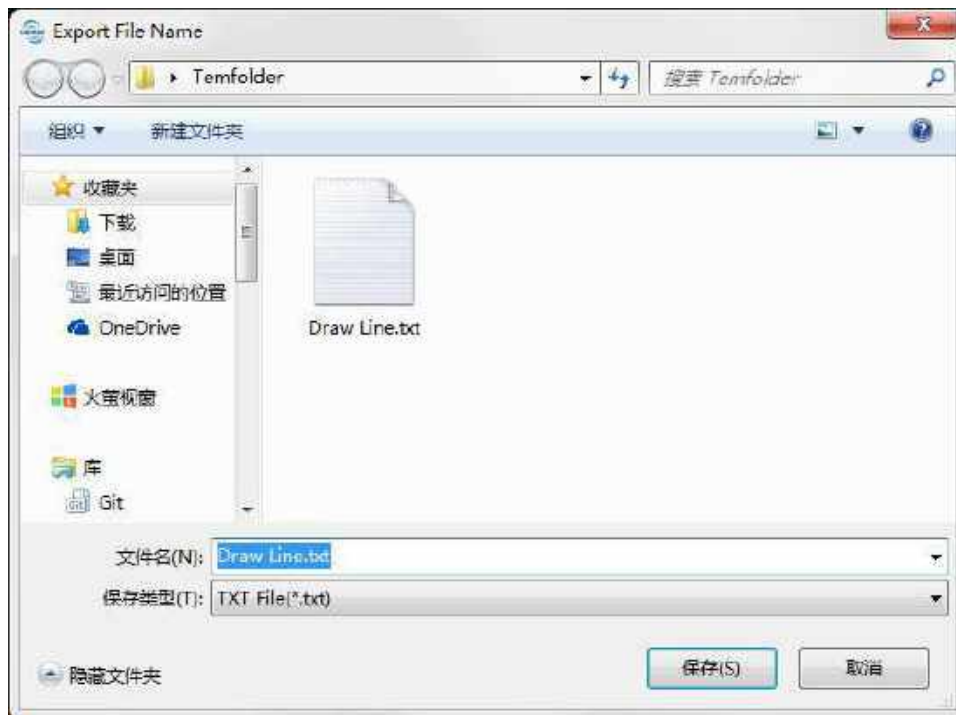
-**Section:** Select the section line that needs to extract the point cloud.

**-Buffer size (meters) (default is "1.00"):** The buffer distance perpendicular to the reference section line. If set to 100 meters, the two ends on the left and right of the section line will be buffered by 50 meters.

## Save Section Polyline



**Brief:** Save the created Section Polyline to a .txt or .shp formatted file. The format of the saved section polyline file should be consistent with the format of the section line imported from an external source.



The file format of the saved section line will be consistent with the format of the section line imported from the external resource.

## Generate Cross-Section Polyline

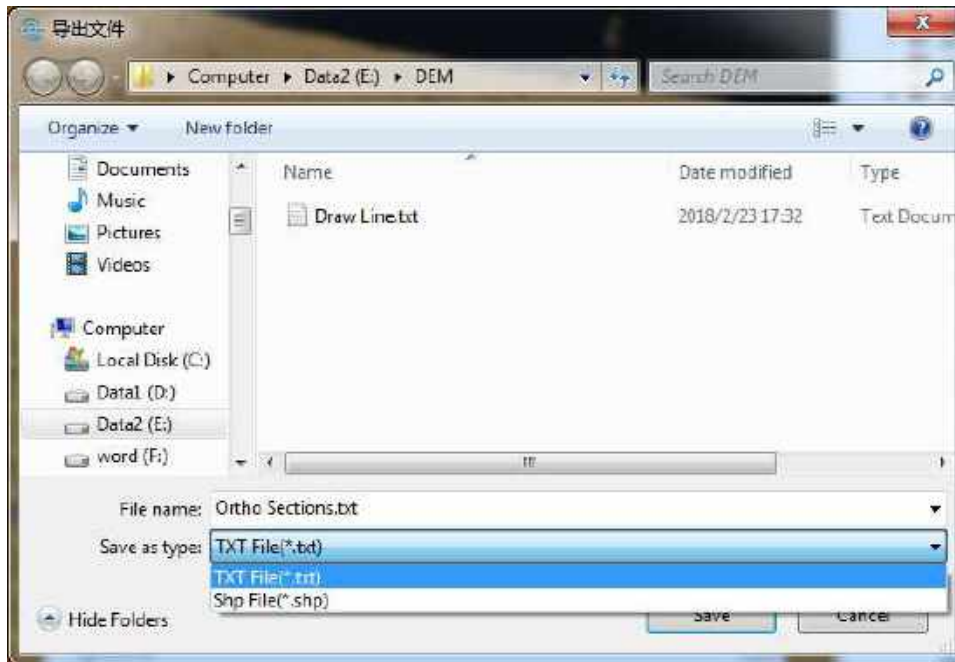


**Brief:** Generate section polylines that are orthogonal to a section centerline.

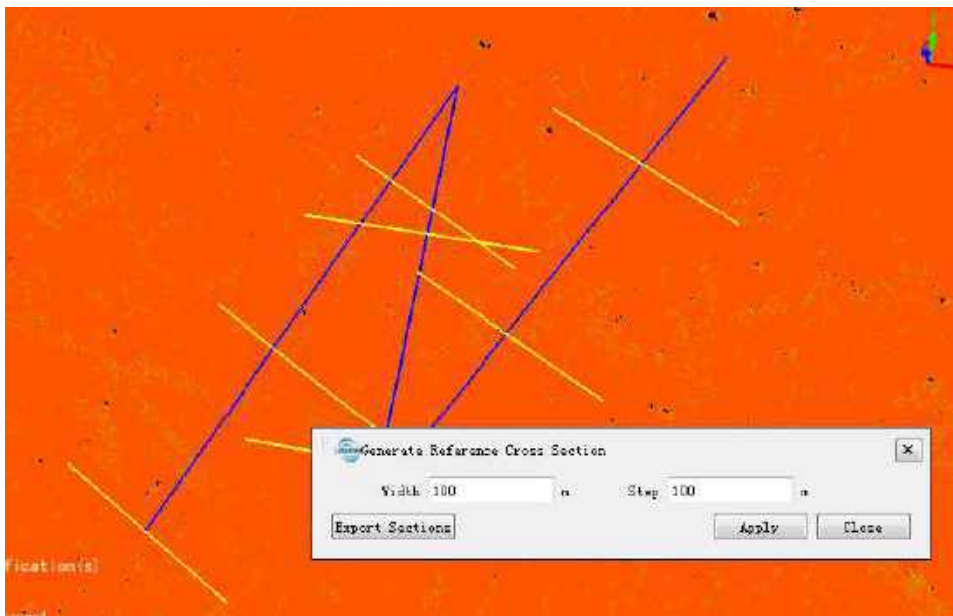


## Settings

- **Cross-Section Width:** The length of the orthogonal section line. The default Cross-Section Width value is "100" meters.
- **Cross-Section Step Length:** The Step Length of orthogonal cross-section lines. The default Step Length value is 100 meters.
- **Export Cross-Section Polyline:** Save generated orthogonal cross-section polylines to a .txt or a .shp formatted file.



Cross section map is shown here.



## Import Designed Cross Section

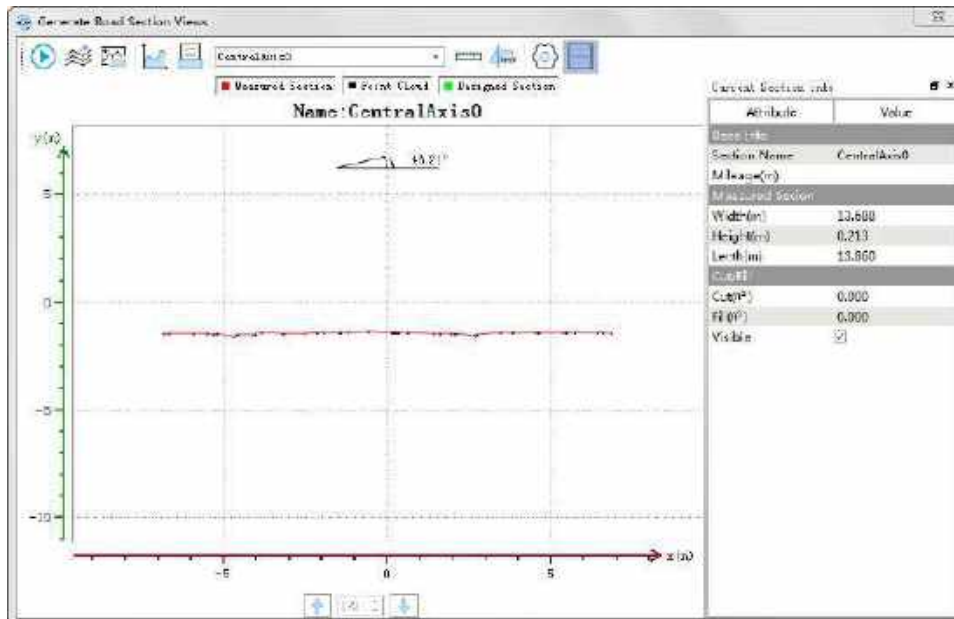


**Description:** Click this button to import the designed section into the software. Support text files (\*.txt), the read section lines will all be displayed as design section lines. For the design section format, please refer to the "Import Reference Section Line" function.

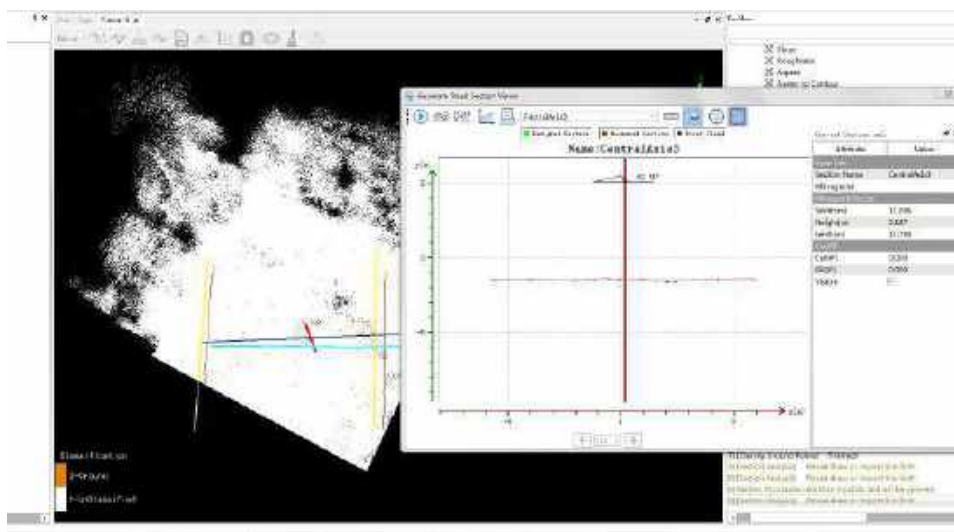
## Generate Road Section Chart



**Description:** Click this button to generate the section chart of a given road.



Click and hold the left button of the mouse and move on the section chart, users can view the section information at the position of the mouse in real-time. In the figure below, the position of the red label of the point cloud on the left corresponds to the dark red label in the chart on the right. When you click the "Calculate" button, a parameter setting dialog box pops up.

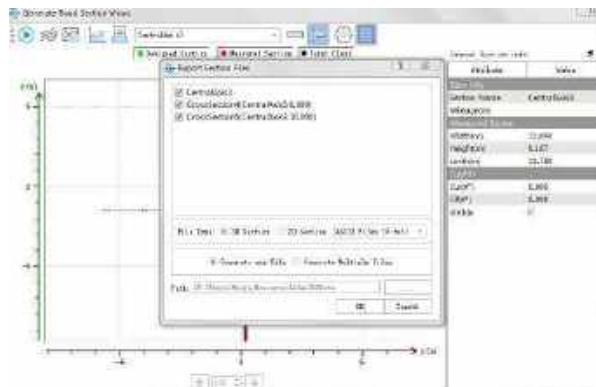


## Settings

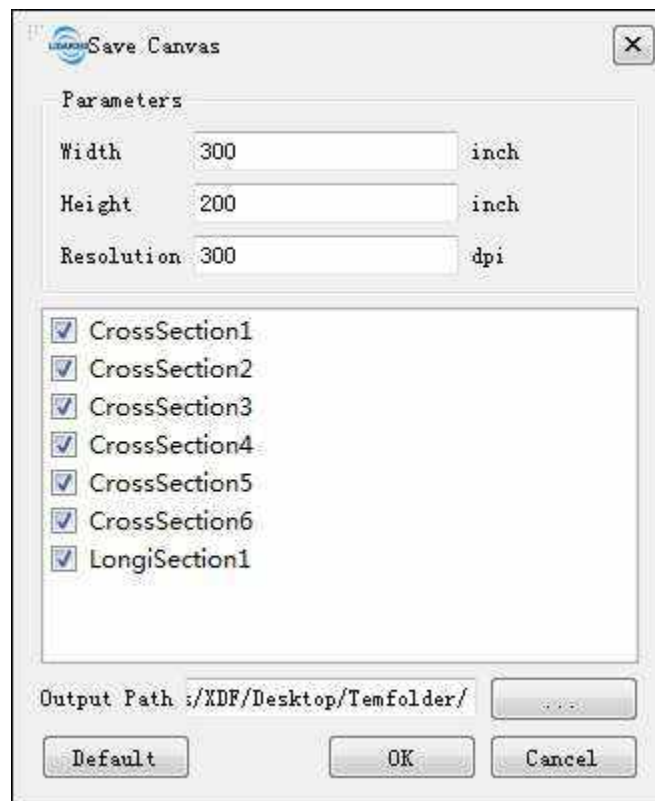
- **Section Thickness(m)(default value is "1"):** Generate section view using point cloud data along the width of the section line.
- **From Class:** Source class.
- **Section Step (m)(default value is "5"):** The section will be simplified according to this value and the distance threshold. The section will use the linear interpolation to interpolate points at integer multiples of the step value. If the step value is set to 0, the entire section will be simplified.
- **Distance Threshold (m)(default value is "0.01"):** The section will be simplified according to this parameter based on the Douglas algorithm. The larger this value is, the simpler the remaining section line will be. The larger this value is, the more points and details will remain.
- **Type:** Generate section view using point cloud data of different elevation types.



- **Lower (default):** Use the lower point of the section to generate a section view.
  - **Upper:** Use the upper point of the section to generate a section view.
- **Max Edge Length (m)(default value is "0"):** The threshold of the maximum length of the segment lines, which needs to be used in conjunction with the Split Profile on Longer Edges. If the distance between two points in the section view is larger than the Max Edge Length, it will be disconnected into two segments. The default value is 0, which means no disconnection.
- **Split Profile on Longer Edges:** Divide the Profile into multiple segments according to the length threshold of segment (Users need to consider the threshold of the maximum edge length).
  - **Yes:** Segment Profile into multiple segments based on the threshold of segment length.
  - **No (default):** Do not segment Profile into multiple segments based on the threshold of segment length.
- **Section Index:** Select the profile displayed in the dialog to highlight it in the window.



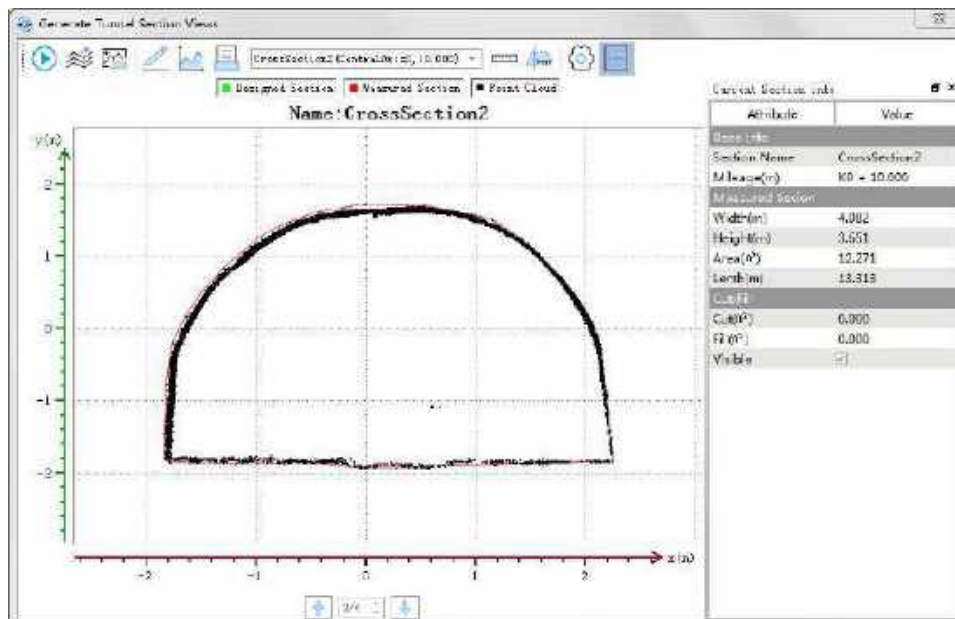
- **Export Sections:** Save the currently generated section line(s) to one or multiple files, ASCII(.txt) file(s), Vector(.shp) file(s) and DXF(.dxf) file(s) are supported. Export product format reference [Section Product File Format](#).
- **Export Picture:** Save a screen shot of the current dialog section as a .pdf formatted image file. Users can set the resolution and dimensions of the exported section view in the export dialog.



## Generate Tunnel Section Chart



**Description:** Click this button to generate a tunnel section chart based on the cross sectional line.



Click the Calculate button to pop up the parameter setting dialog box. Click OK to generate the tunnel cross-section. Canvas can be panned and zoomed with the mouse.

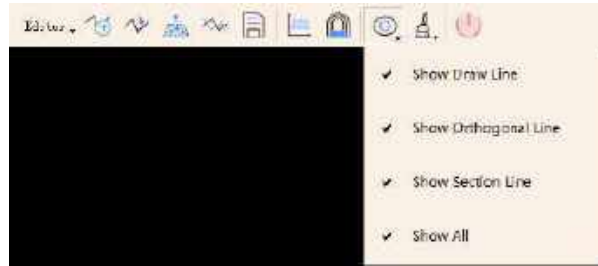
**-tunnel section parameters:**

- Maximum side length (m) (default is "0.5"):** Maximum line segment side length threshold, which needs to be used in conjunction with the split long side. With the split long side checked, if there are two points in the cross-sectional diagram If the distance between them is greater than this value, it will be broken into two segments. The default value is 0, which means no segmentation.
- Cross-section thickness (m) (default is "0.5"):** Generate cross-section maps using point cloud data along the width of the cross-section line.
- Export Section:** Save the currently generated tunnel section line, which can be saved as a 2D or 3D text file.
- Export image:** Save the current cross-sectional view of the dialog box as a picture, and the format can be saved as pdf. The user can set the resolution and size of the exported cross-sectional view in the export interface.
- Edit concave point:** Edit the node of the tunnel section line. After editing, you can drag the node.
- Sections Comparison:** Compare the generated reference section of the tunnel with the design section of the tunnel and calculate the amount of fill and cut. Fill and excavation are displayed in different colors (colors can be set).
- Export Comparison Report:** Users can export the cross-sectional view and cross-sectional information on the current canvas into a report, and output it to the specified folder.
- Distance Measurement:** After distance measurement is turned on, you can use the left mouse button to click on the canvas to pick up the points to be measured, and you can use the mouse to zoom and pan the canvas at the same time. Double-click the left mouse button to complete the measurement; click the "Distance Measurement" button again to end the measurement.
- Settings:** The setting dialog box will pop up. You can set the color of the point cloud and the color of the section nodes.
- Show section properties:** User can show/hide the current section properties.

## Show or Hide Section Polylines



**Brief:** Show or hide section polylines as needed, including **Draw Line, Orthogonal Line, Section Line and All.**



## Clear Section Polylines



**Brief:** Clear all or some of the Section Polylines using this tool. Clearing options include: **Clear Line**, **Clear Orthogonal Line**, **Clear Section Line**, and **Clear All**.



## Exit

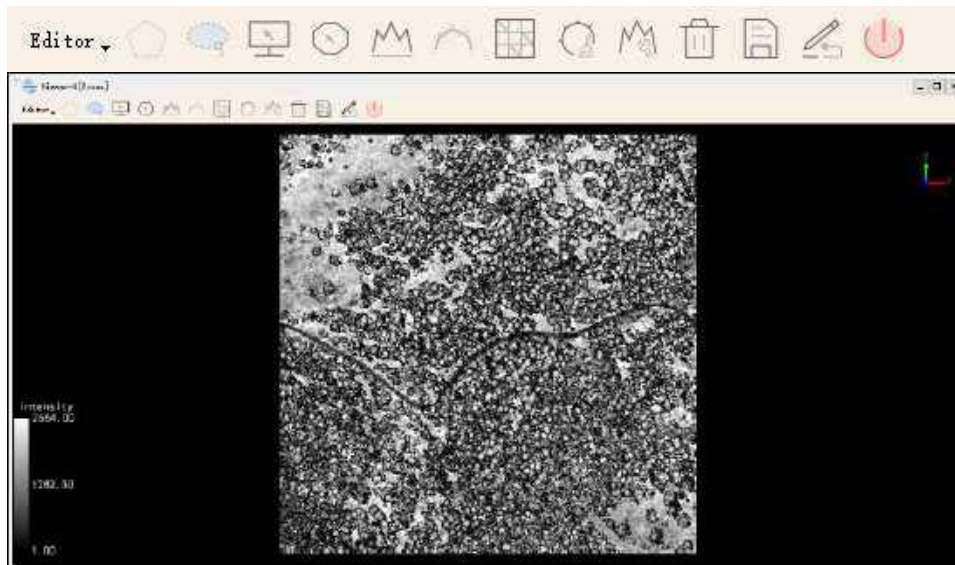


**Brief:** Exit Section Analysis.

# LiModel Editor

## Summary

Provides editing operations for [LiModel](#). The user can select area of interest using Polygon Selection, Lasso Selection, Screen Selection, or Shp Selection, which can be edited by various operations such as Flatten Height, Smooth Height, Repair No Data, Repair Height by Variance, Repair Height and Delete Height.

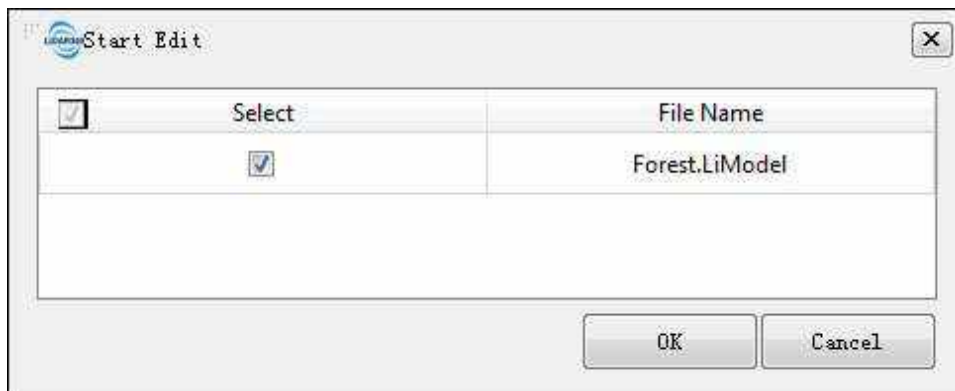


## Usage

Click *Terrain > LiModel Editor*. The current activation window will show the LiModel Editor toolbar.

## Data Selection

Click **Start Edit** in the drop-down menu for editing. You can select one or more data which has been opened in LiDAR360 for editing.

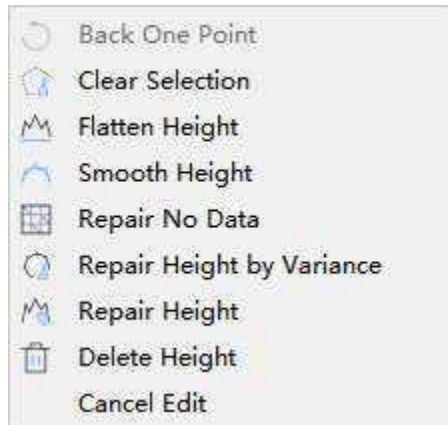


## Polygonal Selection




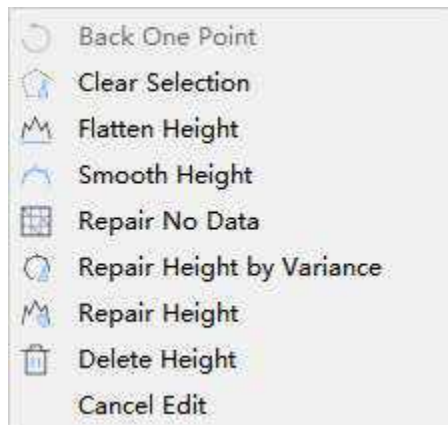
Left-click to add the polygon vertex, double-click to finish the selection. Right-click to **Back One Point** or **Clear Selection** before finish. Unlike **Screen Selection** tool, you cannot select an area that exceeds the

data range.




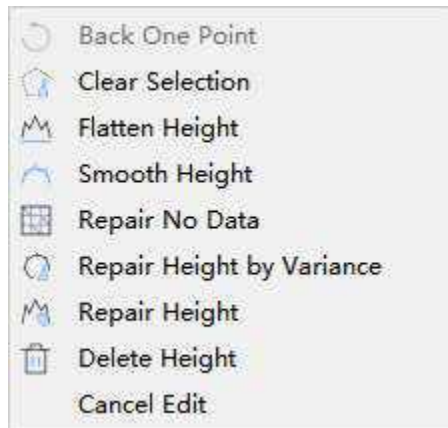
## Lasso Selection

 Left-click to start the Lasso Selection, move to add one point, and double-click to finish the selection. Right-click to **Back One Point** or **Clear Selection** before finish. Unlike **Screen Selection** tool, you cannot select an area that exceeds the data range.




## Screen Selection


 Left-click to add the polygon vertex, double-click to finish the selection. Right-click to **Back One Point** or **Clear Selection** before finish. You can select the area that exceeds the data range.



## Shp Selection

 For a specific range, the existing 2d SHP format vector file can be imported, and the polygon is identified by the software as the editing area.

## Flatten Height

 Click this button, or right-click to select **Flatten Height**. You can set elevations for selected area range models to specified elevation values for rivers or waters that have the same altitude.



- **Flatten Height (m)**: Set the elevation value. The default value is the average of the elevation values of the vertices of the selected region.

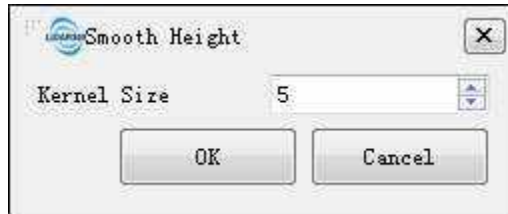
The schematic diagram is as follows, the left image is the original data, and the right image is the edited version.



## Smooth Height

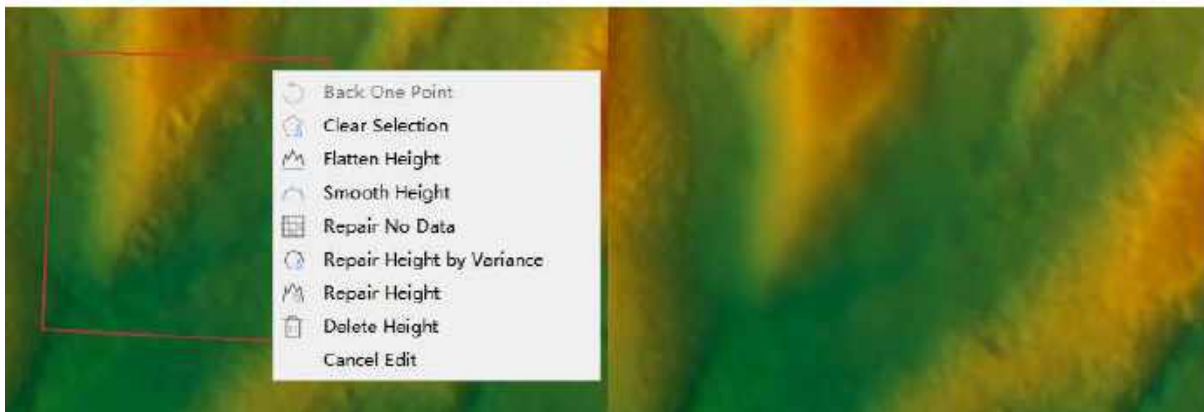


Click this button, or right-click to select **Smooth Height**, which can smooth the selected area range model. Using image mean smoothing to process the model in the selected region point by point, it is suitable for smoothing DEM to generate smooth contour lines.



- **Kernel Size (default value is "5")**: The size of the mean filter kernel, it can only be odd.

The schematic diagram is shown below. The left figure shows the original data, and the right figure shows the effect after editing.



## Repair No Data



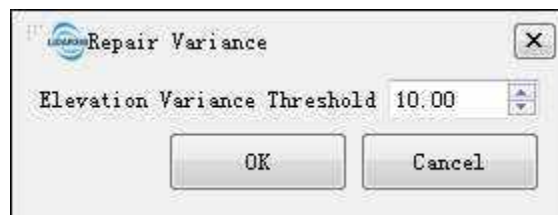
Click this button, or right-click to select **Repair No Data**. Use bilinear interpolation to calculate the elevation value of NO Data values in the area.

The schematic diagram is shown below. The left figure shows the original data, and the right figure shows the effect after editing.



## Repair Height by Variance

Click this button, or right-click to select **Repair Height by Variance**. It is used to repair the noise caused by noise, according to the variance of its elevation value with the neighborhood point to determine whether it is a noise. Bilinear interpolation is used to calculate the elevation of the noise point.



- **Elevation Variance Threshold:** The elevation variance threshold is used to determine whether it is a noise.

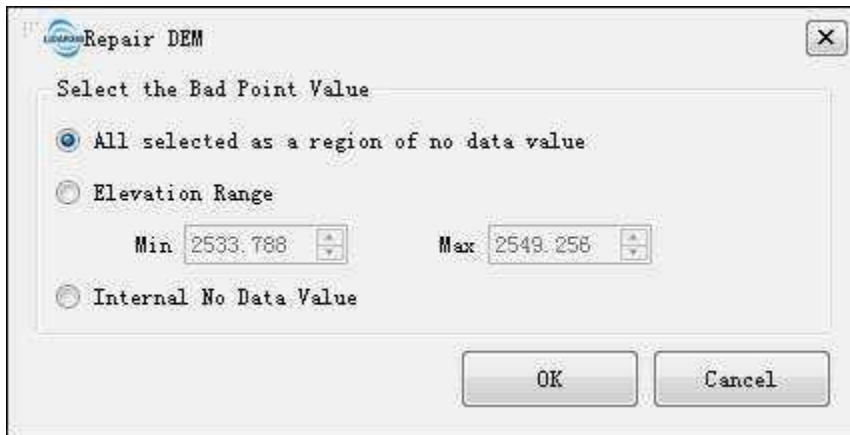
The schematic diagram is shown below. The left figure shows the original data, and the right figure shows the effect after editing.



## Repair Height

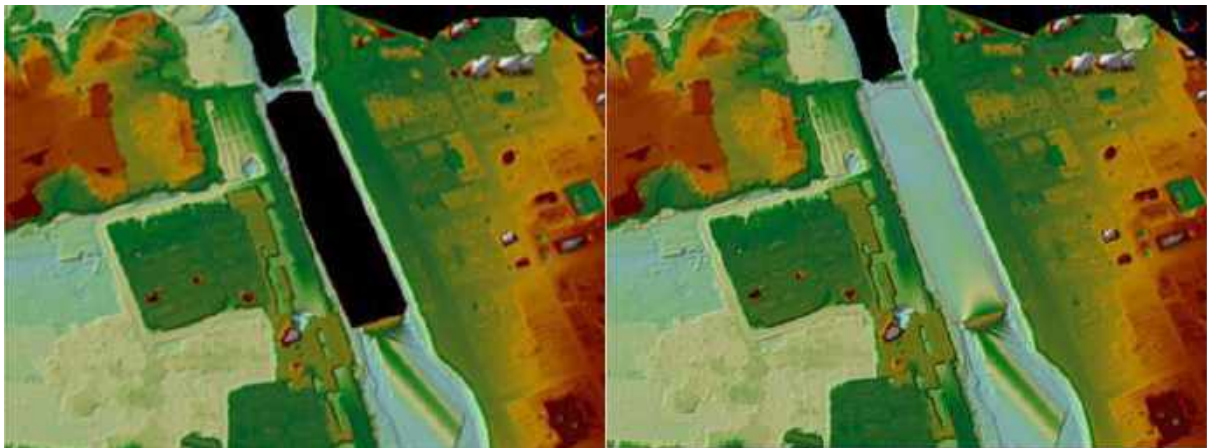
Click this button, or right-click to select **Repair Height**. It is used to repair the elevation in the specified range. The bilinear interpolation method is used to calculate the elevation of the parameter conditions.





- **Select the Bad Point Value:** Select the bad point value to support the following types.
  - **All selected as a region of no data value (default):** All selected areas will be repaired.
  - **Elevation Range:** Only grids with elevation values within the minimum and maximum values are repaired. The default values for the maximum and minimum values are the maximum and minimum elevation values for the vertices of the selected area.
  - **Internal No Data Value:** Only the non-valued areas are repaired.

The schematic diagram is shown below. The left figure shows the original data, and the right figure shows the effect after editing.

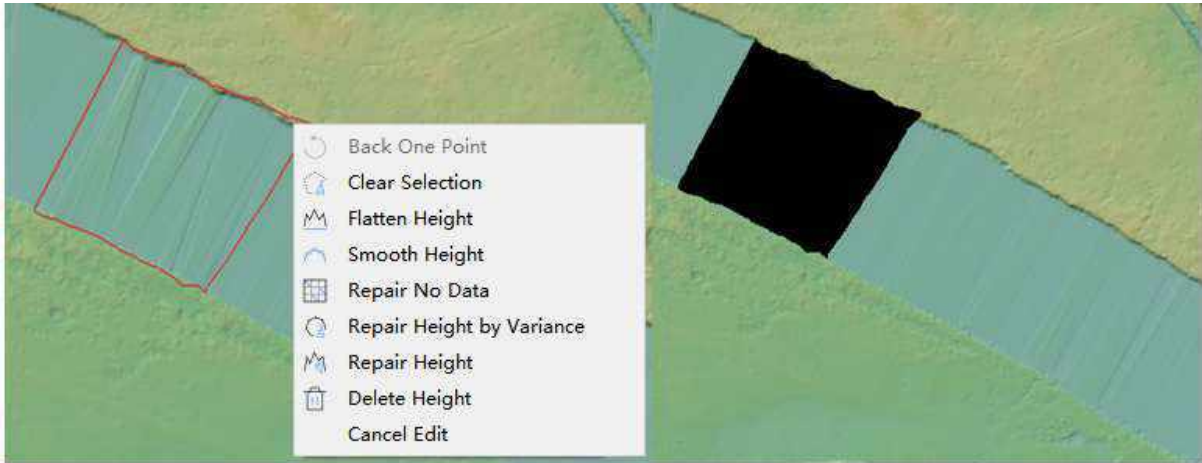


## Delete Height



Click this button, or right-click to select **Delete Height**. Delete the selected point elevation point.

The schematic diagram is as follows, the left image is the original data, and the right image is the edited version.



## Save Editing Results



Save the edited result to LiModel file.

## Cancel editing

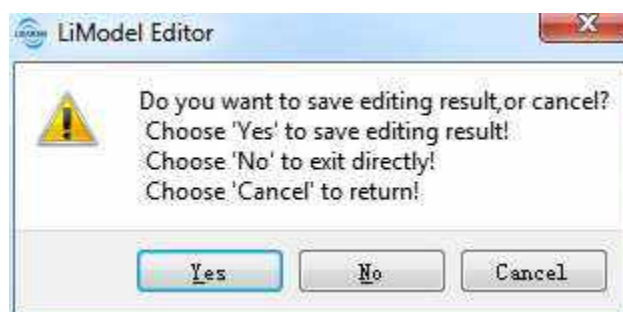


Cancel editing, discard edit result, reload original file to display.

## Exit



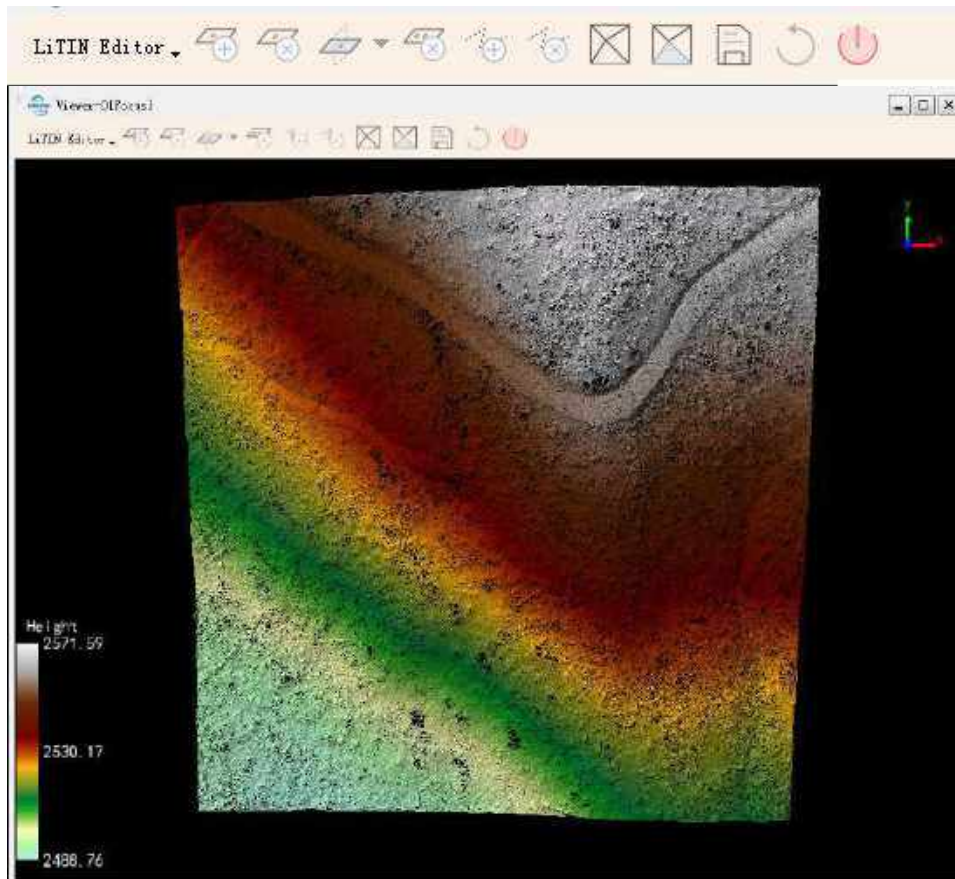
Exit LiModel Editor. If the editing result is not saved, and click the Exit button or click the Edit button to finish the editing of the menu, the software will pop up the prompt window as shown below. Click **Yes** to save the editing result and exit. Click **No** to exit without saving the editing result. Click Cancel returns.



# LiTIN Editor

## Summary

Provides editing operations for LiTin. It can be edited by various operations such as **Add Single Point**, **Delete Single Point**, **Flatten**, **Delete Multiple Points**, **Add Breakline**, **Delete Breakline**, **Select Edge**, **Select Triangle**.



Note: LiTin can be displayed by model, triangle or point (switching shortcut: W). It is recommended to use "triangular" display to see the editing effect. The model display tool is shown in the following figure.



## Usage


Click *Terrain > LiTin Editing*. The current activation window will show the LiTIN Editor toolbar.

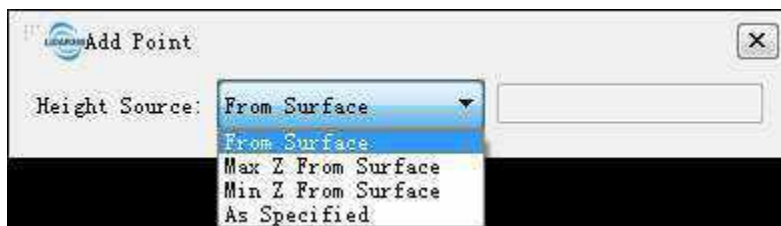
## Data Selection

Click **Start Edit** in the drop-down menu for editing. You can select one or more data which has/have been pre-opened in LiDAR360 for editing.




## Add Single Point

 Left-click to add a vertex in the triangulation model. Users can select the source of the elevation value. This function is suitable for local editing.




- **Height Source:** The following four options are provided to define the height source.
  - **From Surface (default):** The elevation is determined by triangular interpolation.
  - **Max Z From Surface:** The maximum elevation of the model.
  - **Min Z From Surface:** The minimum elevation of the model.
  - **As Specified:** User input a customized elevation.

## Delete Single Point

 Left-click to delete a vertex from the triangulation model, and reconstruct the triangulation with its neighboring points. This function is suitable for local editing, removing noise points or misclassified points intervening the generated terrain trend.

## Flatten

 Select the area to be flattened by mouse, or by inserting file with polygons. After the area to be flattened being selected, a table with the coordinates of that area will be shown.

Flatten Boundary Points

Flatten Mode: Adaptive Height 2618.45


	Index	X	Y	Z	User Z
0	Point 1	322590.1907	4102449.3145	2642.2200	
1	Point 2	322550.6755	4102374.3518	2602.1360	
2	Point 3	322591.3529	4102330.7688	2588.1927	
3	Point 4	322630.2871	4102388.8794	2622.7838	
4	Point 5	322644.8147	4102425.4891	2636.9199	

Note: The lines with green background would be used to fitting the flatten plane when the column "User Z" is empty in Adaptive Height mode.


count 5 Flatten

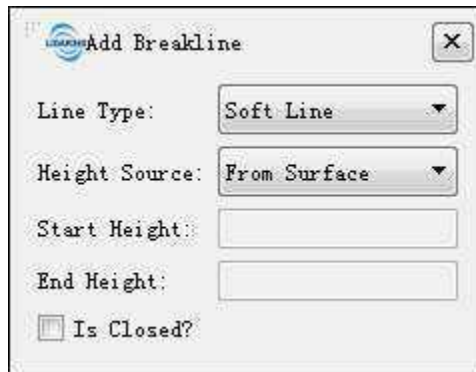
- **Flatten Mode:** According to the information in the table, users can choose the flatten mode, i.e., the same height mode or the adaptive height mode.
  - **Same Height:** If users choose the same height mode, the default value flattening elevation will be the average elevation of the triangulated network in the selected area. Users can manually change this value.
  - **Adaptive Height:** If users choose adaptive height mode, it assumes that the points (3 points) used to create the fitting plane are marked in the table. If users want to specify the elevation of coordinates, they can insert the elevation in the last column. It needs to be mentioned that users must insert elevation of three points. Because it needs three points to create the fitting plane.
- **Save the Flatten Boundary Points File:** Users can save the boundary points' coordinates into a file, and insert that file to show the area to be flattened in the future.

## Delete Multi Points

 You can select a triangle area and delete the triangle inside the area. It is suitable for deleting noise points or misclassified points in a local area.


## Add Breakline

 Add breakline by mouse interaction. You can select the break line type, elevation value, and whether it is closed. This function is applicable to water bodies, highways and other situations where the terrain changes violently. It is used to distinguish the trend of the terrain around the fault line.




- **Line Type:** Select the breakline to support the following types.
  - **Soft Line (default):** Soft breakline.
  - **Hard Line :** Hard breakline.
- **Height Source:** Select the elevation to support the following types.
  - **From Surface (default):** The elevation is determined by triangle interpolation.
  - **Max Z From Surface:** The maximum elevation of the model.
  - **Min Z From Surface:** The minimum elevation of the model.
  - **As Specified:** User can enter a customized elevation.
- **Is Closed:** Whether the breakline is closed as a polygon.
  - **No (default):** Do not close the breakline and save it as a polyline.
  - **Yes:** Close the breakline and save it as a polygon.


## Delete Breakline

 Delete the selected breakline.


## Select Edge

 Select the edge of a triangle. The selected edge will be displayed in red.


## Select Triangle

 Select a triangle. The selected triangle will be displayed in red.

## Save

 Save the editing results to a LiTin file.

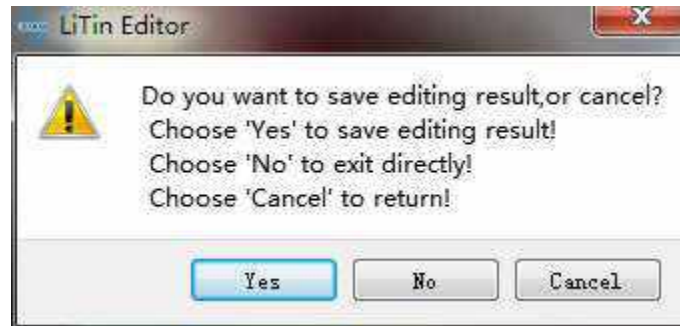
## Cancel

 Discard the editing results and reload the original file to display.

## Exit

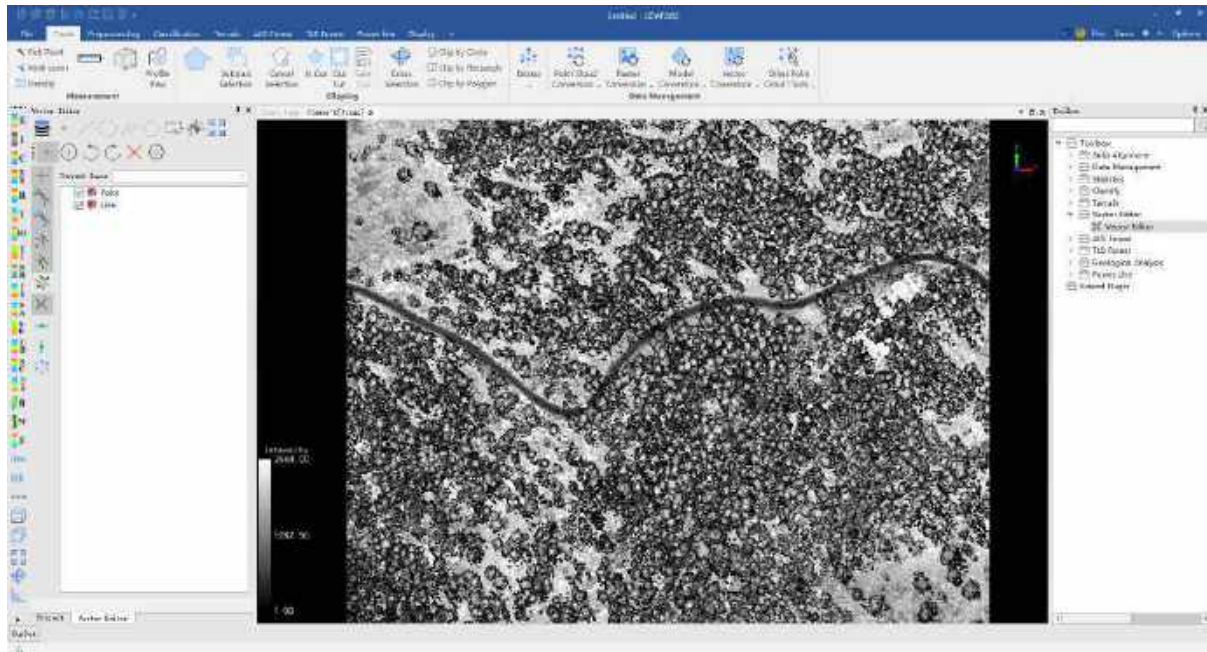


Exit LiTin Editor. If the editing result is not saved, the software will pop up the prompt window as shown below. Click **Yes** to save the editing result and exit. Click **No** to exit without saving the editing result. Click Cancel to return.



# Vector Editor

Vector Editor can realize the vectorization in the process of drawing digital line. It provides high contrast display effects based on the well displayed point cloud with image data as the background. Therefore, the function can clearly distinguish houses, vegetation areas, roads, street lights, water areas, bridges, and other objects. Moreover, it can generate vectorized results in SHP and DXF format, which support subsequent editing and processing with other third-party software such as ArcGIS and AutoCAD.

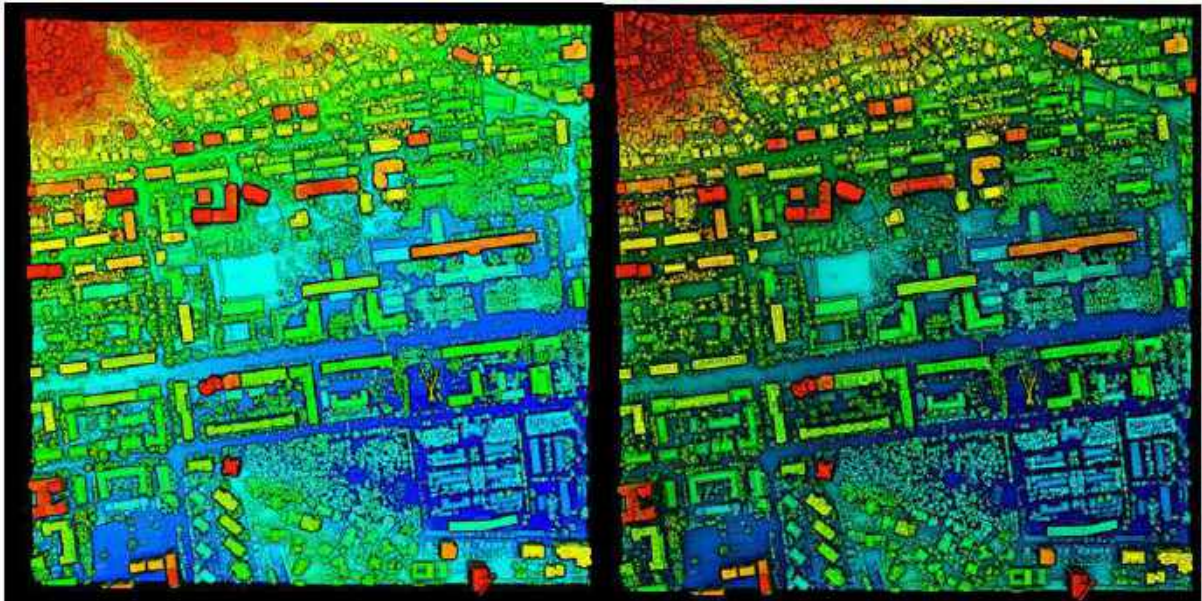


Vector Editor provides basic entities (i.e. point, line, polyline, rectangle, polygon, and circular) to complete the mapping of key features of the scene. The above features are organized by the layer and stored in shp file format.

In addition, Vector Editor provide layer merge function, which can integrate the vectorization result into a DXF file. The result can be export and further input to other mapping software to be symbolized and trimmed in order to get the standardized surveying and mapping results.

Note: To get clear display effect of the surface object, the point cloud data should be processed by PCV (Portion of Visible Sky) before vectorization. The following figure shows the point cloud with elevation + EDL mode (left), and the mixed display after PCV processing (right).






## Usage

Click *Vector Editor* > *Vector Editor*

- Layer Management
- Basic Function
- Entity Vectorization
- Entity Modify
- Entity Selection
- Entity Snapper

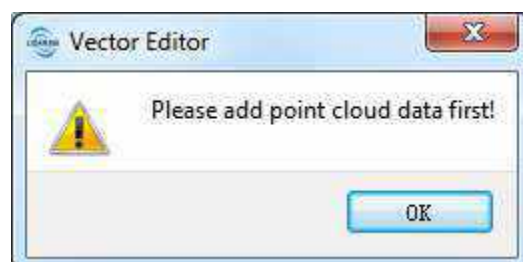
## Layer Management

 **Brief:** Vector editing is managed with layers, which means a file is treated as a layer. Clicking the triangle of the "File" will show the drop-down menu, including the "New File", "Open File", "Save File", "Remove File", "Export File" functions.

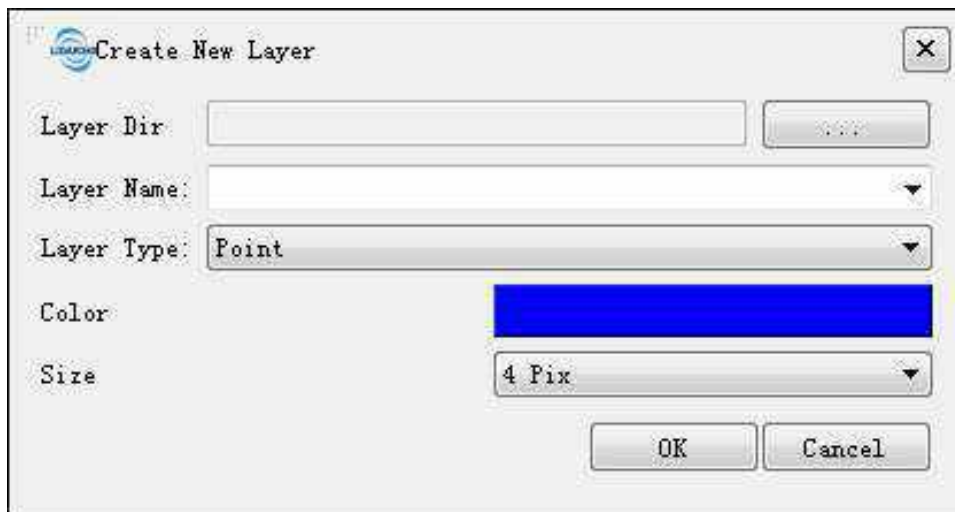


## New File

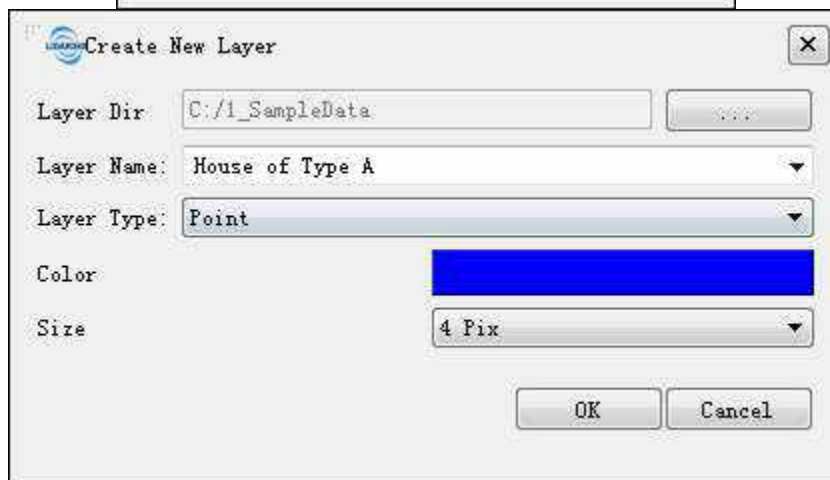
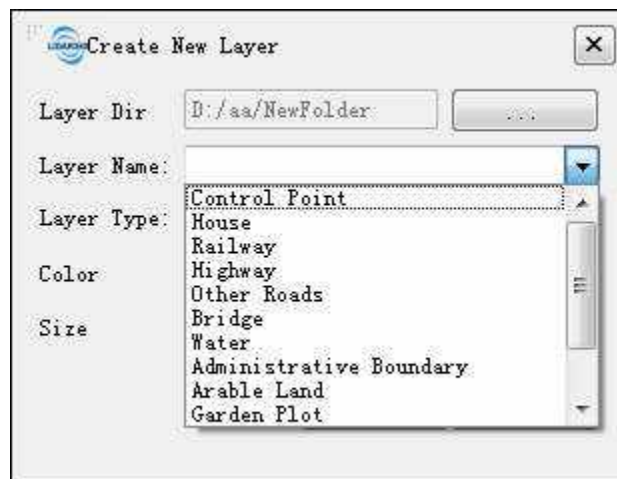
Please make sure the point cloud data has been loaded in the window. If not, the pop-up window will warn you to add a point cloud, as shown in the figure below.:



If point cloud data has been loaded in current window, the dialog will open:

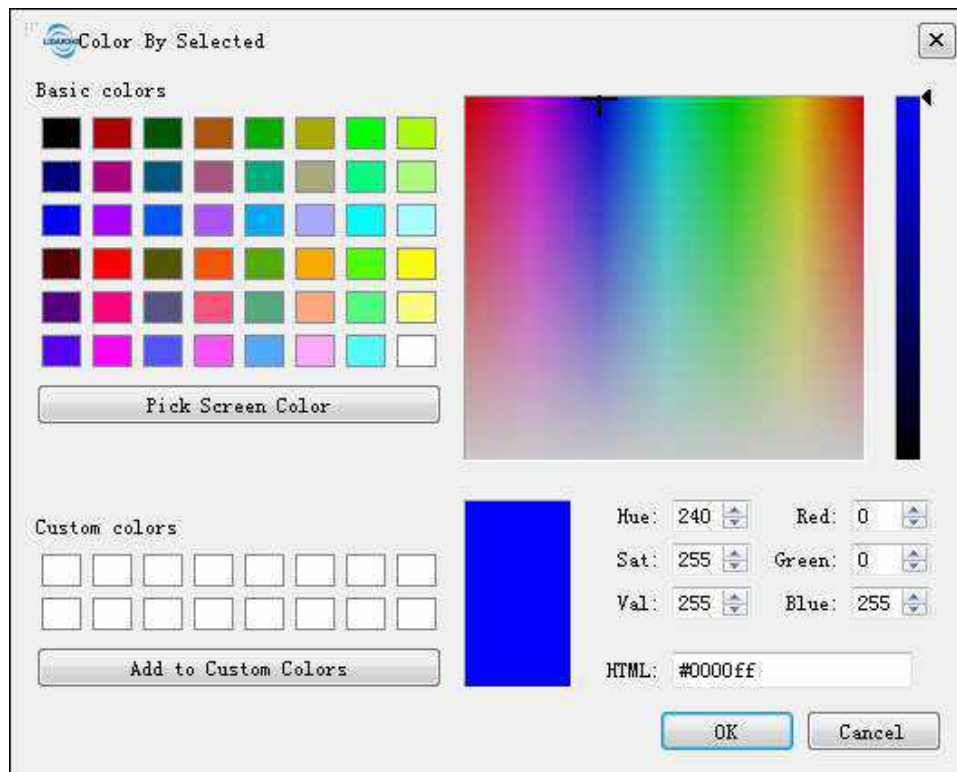


1. Select the folder which the layer located.
2. Select the drop-down layer name which includes control points, houses, railways, roads, other roads, bridges, waters, administrative boundaries, farmlands, gardens, woodlands, grasslands, other vegetation. Also, users can directly enter the layer name, as shown in the following figure:

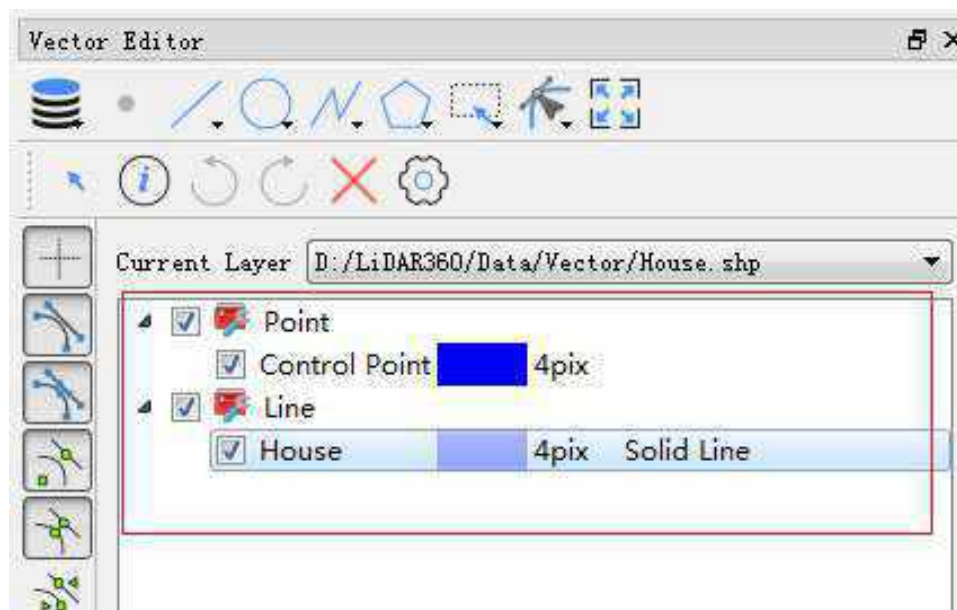


3. Select the layer type which includes point type and line type. To create a new point layer needs to set layer color and dot diameter (1-10 pixels). To create a new line layer needs to set line color, line width (1-10 pixels), and line type (solid line and dotted line etc.).

4. Click the layer color will display the pop-up window of color dialog box, as shown below:



5. Set the size of the point and the width of the line, in the range of 1-10 pixels. If the new layer is point type, it will be added to the list of point layer. If the new layer is line type, it will be added to the list of line layer.

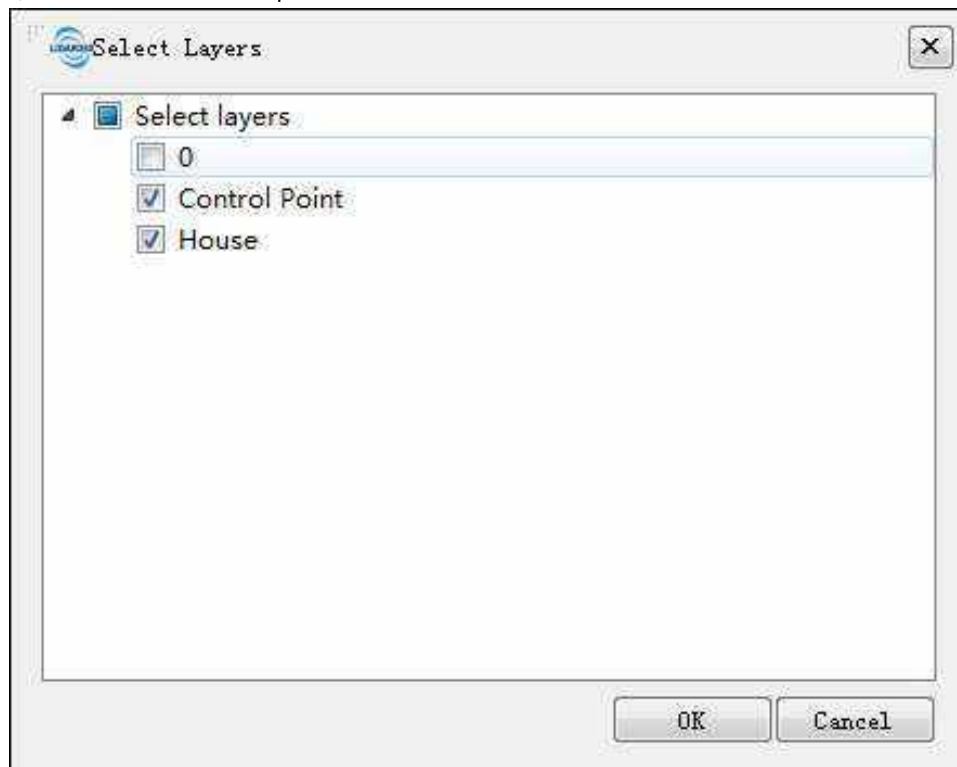


## Open File

The open file support .shp and the .dxf format. Click "Open File" will pop dialog up as follows:

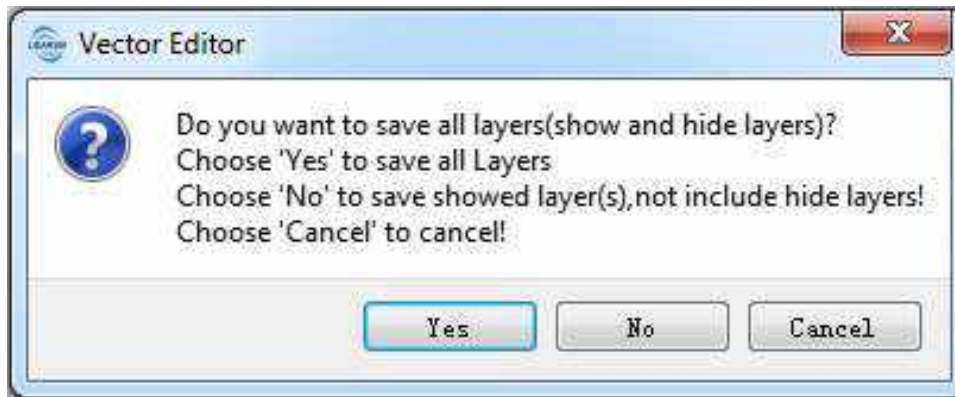


- When opening the shp format file, LiDAR360 will read the file type (point type or line type) and add it to the list of point or line layer.
- When opening the dxf format file, the select layer dialog will be opened. Please select the layers needed to be edited and add them into the list of point or line layer according to the type of the layer. Layer 0 is the default layer in DXF format for temporary objects. The user can import it or not depending on specific data. By default, the software doesn't import it.



## Save File

Clicking the "Save File" will open the dialog:



- Click "Yes" to save all the layers, including displayed layers and hidden layers;
- Click "No" to save the displayed layers except the hidden layers;
- Click "Cancel" to cancel the saving of layers.

## Remove File

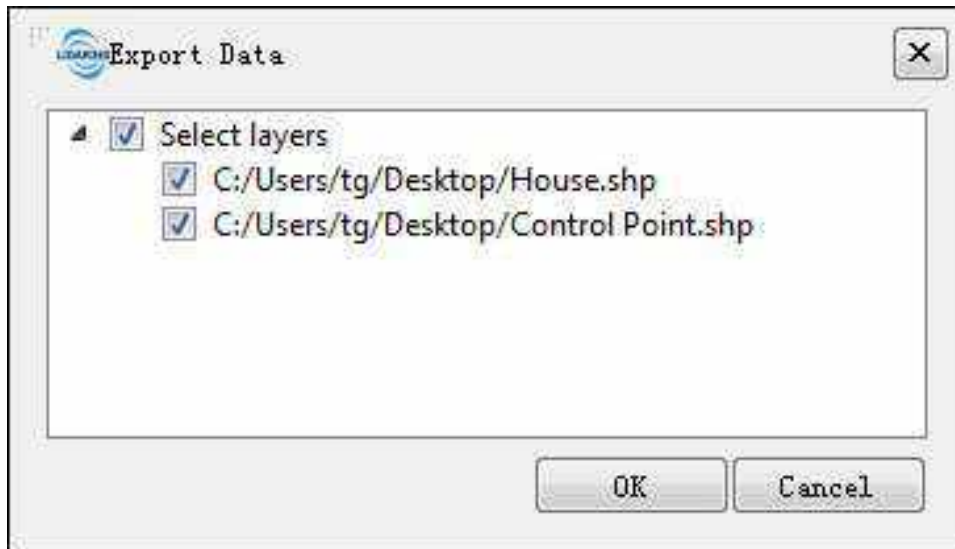
Clicking the "Remove File" will open the dialog:



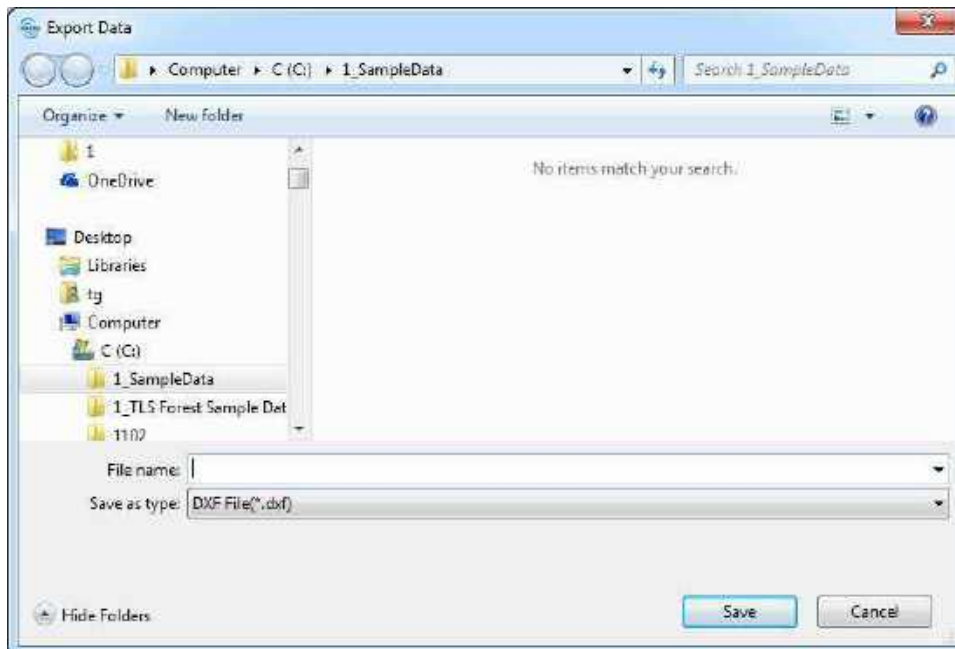
- Click "Yes" to save and remove the current layers;
- Click "No" to remove the current layers without save;
- Click "Cancel" to cancel the removing of layers.

## Export File

Export the layers to .dxf file. Click "Export file" to select target layers opened in the dialog.



Give the save directory and filename before clicking "OK" to save the file.




## Basic Function

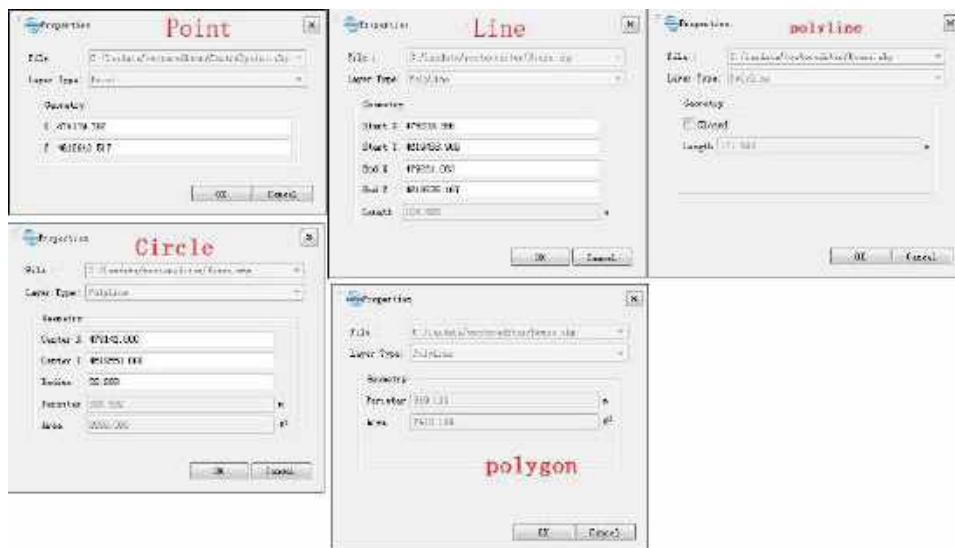
Vector Editor provides a variety of basic functions, such as Vertex Editing, Attribute Query, Undo, Redo, Delete entity, Zooming, and Setting.

## Vertex Editing


- Edit the vertex position of the entity. Users can use the left mouse button to select the entity and drag the vertex of entity to another location.

## Attribute Query


-  You can query entity geometry attribute. Users can use the left mouse button to select the entity, which make the geometry attribute of the entity displayed in the pop-up dialog, as shown below.




## Undo

-  Undo the last edit. This operation cannot be performed during other editing operations.

## Redo



-  Redo the last edit. This operation cannot be performed during editing.

## Delete Entity

-  You need to first select the entities which need to be deleted, and then perform the delete operation.



## Zooming

  By this operation, you can see all the entities in the scene at the best zoom



## Setting



Configure various parameters for vector measurement.




- **Show Crossing Line:** This parameter defines whether to display the cross wire in the screen center or not.
  - **Yes(default):** Show.
  - **No:** Hide.
- **Double Click Mouse's Left Button to Finish Editing:** This parameter defines whether the current editing can be ended when double click the left mouse button.
  - **Yes:** Double click Mouse's left button to finish editing.
  - **No(default):** Single click Mouse's right button to finish editing.
- **Show Context Menu:** This parameter determines whether to show context menu using right click.
  - **Yes(default):** Show.
  - **No:** Hide.
- **Capture Distance (15px):** Capture the distance.

## Entity Vectorization

This function provides a variety of vectorization operations for different entities (such as point, line, circle, polyline, and polygon entities) as well as providing specific editing functions for polyline and polygon.


Note: For the point layer, users can only add point entities except the lines, circles, polylines, and polygons. For the line layer, users cannot add point entities, but can add lines, circles, polylines, and polygons.

### Point

 Draw the entity point by clicking the left mouse button. The steps are shown as follows.


1. Left-click the mouse to pick the point position.
2. Repeat step 1 to draw the next point entity.
3. Right-click the mouse to end drawing.

### Line


 Draw the line segment entity, click the left mouse button to pick the beginning and ending point of the line segment entity. The steps are shown below.

1. Left-click the mouse to select the starting point of the line segment entity or click the right mouse button to cancel.
2. Left-click the mouse to select the ending point of the line segment or click the right mouse button to back to step 1.
3. Right-click the mouse to end drawing.

### Circle

 There are four ways to create a circle entity, including a central point, two points, three points, a circle and a radius.

#### A Central Point

 The mouse specifies the center point and the radius to create a circle entity. The steps are shown as follow.

1. Left-click the mouse to select the center position, or click the right mouse button to cancel.
2. Move the mouse to modify the radius of the circle, click the left mouse to make sure or click the right mouse to back to step 1.
3. Right-click the mouse to end drawing.

#### Two Points

 Click left mouse to specify the center point and another point on the circumference to create a circular



Click left mouse to specify the center point and another point on the circumference to create a circular entity. The steps are shown as follow.

1. Left-click the mouse to select the center position, or click the right mouse button to cancel.
2. Left-click the mouse to select point on the circumference, or click mouse right button to return to step 1.
3. Right-click the mouse to end drawing.

### Three Points



Click mouse button to select three points on the circle. The steps are shown below.

1. Left-click the mouse to select A on the circle, or click the right mouse button to cancel.
2. Left-click the mouse to select a point B on the circle, or click the right mouse button to return to step 1.
3. Left-click the mouse to select a point C on the circle, or click the right mouse button to return to step 2.
4. Right-click the mouse to end drawing.

### Centre and Radius



Right-click the mouse to select the center position, with the fixed circle radius specified by users. The steps are shown as follows.

1. Left-click the mouse to select the center position, or click the right mouse button to cancel.
2. You can modify the radius and redo step 1.
3. Right-click the mouse to end drawing.

## Polyline



It provides a way to draw polyline, providing three types of operations to edit polyline (i.e.add node, append node, and delete node).

## Draw Polyline



Draw polyline through mouse interaction, which provides three types of editing functions(i.e. add node, append node, and deleting node).

1. Left-click the mouse to select a point, or click the right mouse button to cancel.
2. Left-click the mouse to select one more point, or click the right mouse button to step 1.
3. Right-click the mouse to end drawing.


## Add Node



Edit polyline and add nodes by mouse interaction.


1. Left-click the mouse to select polyline entity that you want to edit, or click the right mouse button to cancel.
2. Left-click the mouse to add nodes at the position, or click the right mouse button to return to step 1.
3. Right-click the mouse to end adding.

## Append Node

 Appending nodes at the start or end of the polyline by the mouse interaction.


1. Left-click the mouse to select polyline that you want to edit, or click the right mouse button to cancel.
2. Left-click the mouse to select the point, and determine the position of the inserted point according to the distance. If it is closer to the starting point, the point will be appended before the starting point, otherwise it will be appended after the end point. Users can also click the right mouse button to cancel the editing of the polyline and return to step 1.
3. Right-click the mouse to end appending.

## Delete Node


 Deleting node on polyline by the mouse interaction

1. Left-click the mouse to select polyline that you want to edit, or click the right mouse button to cancel.
2. Left-click the mouse to select the node that you want to delete, or click the right mouse button to return to step 1.
3. Right-click the mouse to end deleting.

## Polygon


 Providing three ways to draw polygons (i.e. drawing polygons, two-point rectangles, and three-point rectangles) as well as providing the ability of adding nodes and deleting nodes.

## Draw Polygon

 Drawing polygon by the mouse interaction.

1. Left-click the mouse to choose a vertex of polygon, or click the right mouse button to cancel.
2. Left-click the mouse to choose one more point, or click the right mouse button to return back to step 1.
3. Right-click the mouse to end drawing.


## Rectangle From Two Points

 Select two points to draw the rectangle paralleled with the coordinate axis by mouse interaction.

1. Left-click the mouse to select A, or click the right mouse button to cancel.
2. Left-click the mouse to select point B, or click the mouse button to return to step 1.


3. Right-click the mouse to end drawing.

## Rectangle From Three Points

 Select three points to draw the rectangle which is not paralleled with the coordinate axis by mouse interaction.


1. Left-click the mouse to select point A, or click the right mouse button to cancel.
2. Left-click the mouse to select point B, or click right mouse button to return to step 1.
3. Left-click the mouse to select point C, continue to draw the next rectangle, or click right button to return to step 2.
4. Right-click the mouse to end drawing.

## Add Node

 Edit polygon and add node by mouse interaction.

1. Left-click the mouse to select the polygon that you want to edit, or click the right mouse button to cancel.
2. Left-click the mouse to chose the location of the polygon entity and add nodes to the position. Users can also click the right mouse button to return to step 1..
3. Right-click the mouse to end adding.

## Delete Node

 Edit polygon and delete node by mouse interaction

1. Left-click the mouse to select the polygon that you want to edit, or click the right mouse button to cancel.
2. Left-click the mouse to choose the node of the polygon entity and delete. Users can also click the right mouse button to return to step 1.
3. Right-click the mouse to end deleting.

## Entity Modify

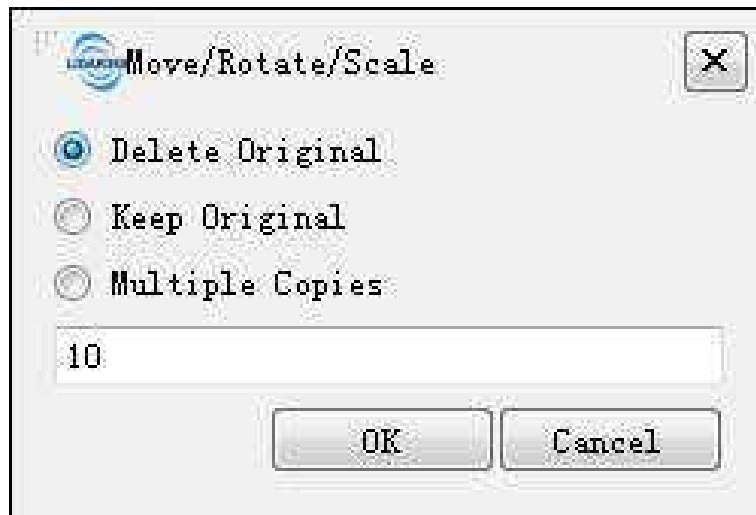


Entity provides many basic functions, such as copy, shift, and rotate.

## Copy

Copying entities to one copy or multiple copies, which can create the same entities in different locations. In addition, multiple entities can be created with the same offset increment by this function. The steps are shown below.

1. Select the entities that you want to copy.
2. Click copy and click the left mouse button to select the base position.
3. Left-click the mouse to select the location where you want to move, the pop-up dialog box will be displayed.



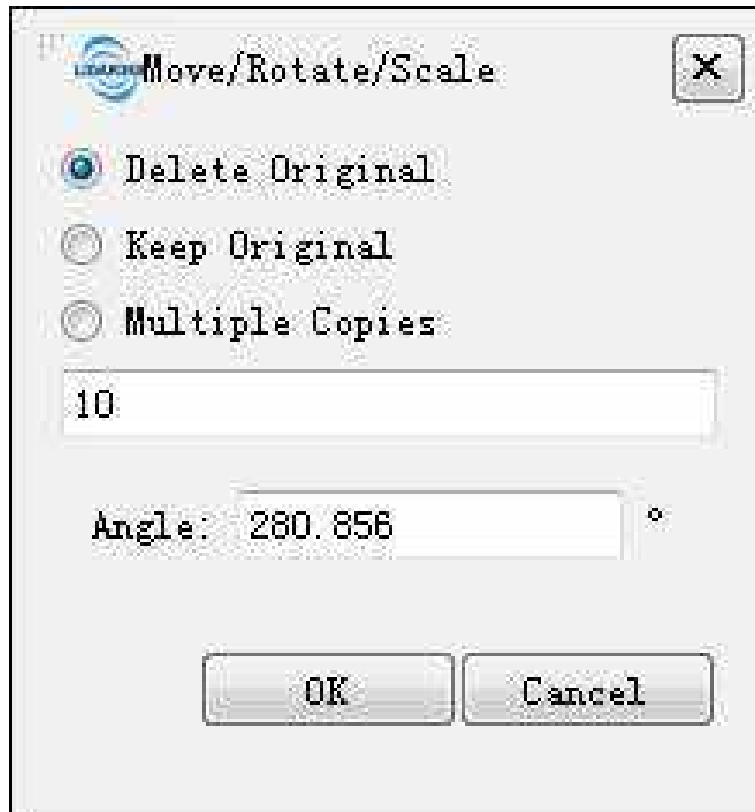
Settings

- **Delete Original:** Remove the original entity and keep the moved entity.
- **Keep Original:** Keep both the original entity and the moved entity.
- **Multiple Copies:** Keep the original entity, copy multiple entities, set the number of copies, and the multiple entities will be shifted with the same offset increment.

## Rotate

Rotate entities to get one copy or multiple copies at different rotation angles. In addition, multiple entities can be created with the same angle increment. The steps are shown below.

1. Select the entities that you want to rotate.
2. Click rotate and click the left mouse button to select the position of rotation center.
3. Left-click the mouse to determine the final angle position of the rotation, the pop-up dialog box will be displayed.



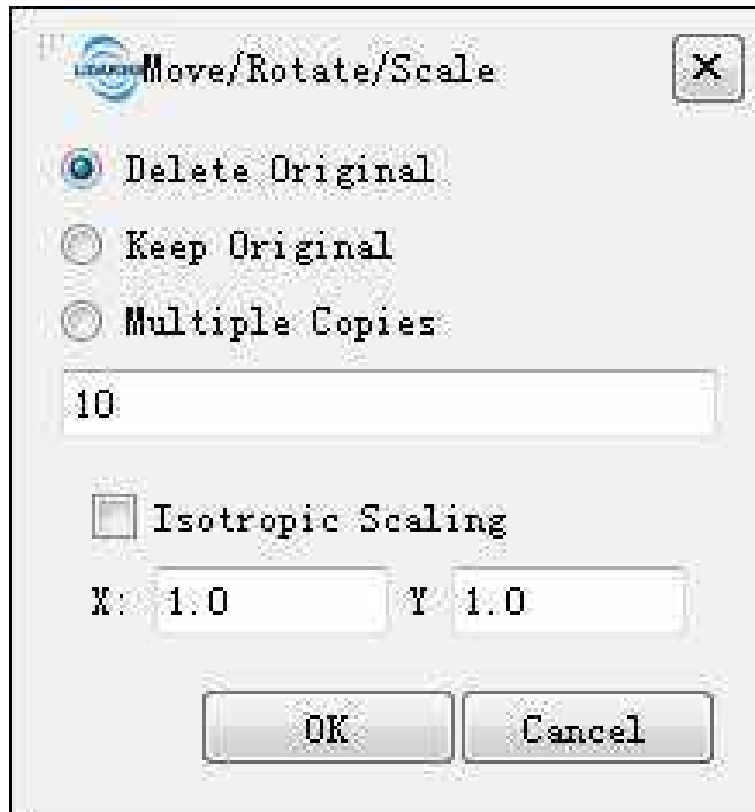
#### Settings

- **Delete Original:** Remove the original entity and keep the moved entity.
- **Keep Original:** Keep both the original entity and the moved entity.
- **Multiple Copies:** Keep the original entity, copy multiple entities, set the number of copies, and the multiple entities will be rotated with the same angle increment.
- **Angle (°) :** Set the angle value of rotation.

## Scale

Scale entities to get one copy or multiple copies at different scales in different locations. The steps are shown below.

1. Select the entities that you want to scale.
2. Click copy and left-click the mouse to select the zoom center position, the pop-up dialog box will be displayed.



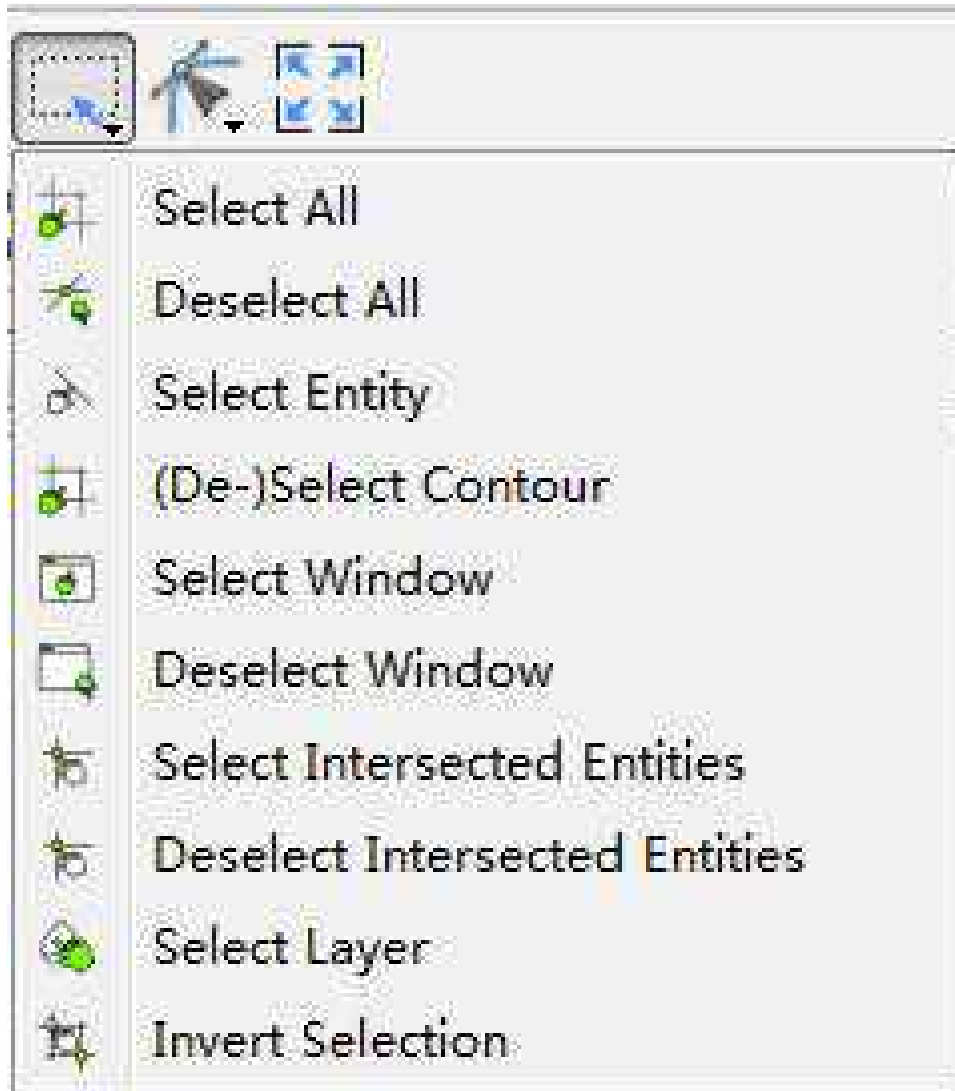
#### Settings

- **Delete Original:** Remove the original entity and keep the moved entity.
- **Keep Original:** Keep both the original entity and the moved entity.
- **Multiple Copies:** Keep the original entity, copy multiple entities, set the number of copies, and the multiple entities will be scaled with the same scale increment.
- **Isotropic Scaling:** This parameter defines the scaling of the X and Y directions, separately. If checked, the scaling of X and Y directions are the same.
  - **X:** Set the scaling of the X direction.
  - **Y:** Set the scaling of the Y direction.



## Entity Selection

The function provides a variety of operations to select entities, such as Select all, Deselect all, Select entity, Deselect line, Select window, Deselect window, Select intersected entities, Deselect intersected entities, Select layer, and Invert selection.



### Select All



Select all entities in the scene.

### Deselect All



Deselect all entities which are selected in the scene.

## Select Entity



Left-click the mouse to select the entity.

## Deselect line



Left-click the mouse to select the end-to-end connected entity object, such as a connected line segment.

## Select Window



Left-click the mouse to draw rectangle, the entities will be selected within this rect.

## Deselect Window



Left-click the mouse to draw rectangle, the entities will be deselected within this rect.

## Select Intersected Entities



Left-click the mouse to draw straight line, all entities intersected with the line will be selected.

## Deselect Intersected Entities



Left-click the mouse to draw straight line, all entities intersected with line will be deselected.

## Select Layer



Left-click the mouse to select one entity, and then all entities within its layer will be selected.

## Deselect line



Left-click the mouse to select the end-to-end connected entity object, such as a connected line segment.

## Select Window



Left-click the mouse to draw rectangle, the entities will be selected within this rect.

## Deselect Window



Left-click the mouse to draw rectangle, the entities will be deselected within this rect.

## Select Intersected Entities



Left-click the mouse to draw straight line, all entities intersected with the line will be selected.

## Deselect Intersected Entities



Left-click the mouse to draw straight line, all entities intersected with line will be deselected.

## Select Layer



Left-click the mouse to select one entity, and then all entities within its layer will be selected.

## Invert Selection




All selected entities in the scene will be deselected.

## Entity Snap


Vector Editor provides a variety of snapper operations, such as Free Snap, Endpoint Snap, Entity Snap, Center Snap, Middle Snap, Distance Snap, Intersection Snap, Horizontal Snap, Vertical Snap, and Point Cloud Snap(such as the corner of buildings).The function can control the point location clicked by the mouse, which can improve accuracy of vectorization.




## Free Snap

 Snap point freely, which has the lowest priority among all snapper functions.


## Endpoint Snap

 Snap startpoints and endpoints, such as starting point and ending point of one line.


## Entity Snap

 Snap the point on the closest entity to the mouse position.


## Center Snap

 Snap the center of the entity, such as the center of a circle.

## Middle Snap

 Snap middle points of an entity, such as the midpoint of the line segment.

## Distance Snap

 Snap points with distance constraint, which should be used with other snap operation to limit the distance of other snap.

## Intersection Snap

 Snap intersecting points of multiple entities, such as the intersection of two lines.



Snap intersecting points of multiple entities, such as the intersection of two lines.

## Horizontal Snap



Snap points of horizontal direction, this snap limits the movement in vertical direction and is suitable for drawing horizontal lines.

## Vertical Snap



Snap points of vertical direction, this snap limits the movement in vertical direction and is suitable for drawing vertical lines.

## Point Cloud Snap



Snap points on the point cloud, this snap is suitable for drawing corners of house etc.

# ALS Forest

This chapter describes how to deal with aerial (both UAV and airborne) LiDAR data for forestry applications. This chapter include: Statistical Parameter Extraction, Regression Analysis, Individual Tree Segmentation, Batch Processing, Clear Tree ID, Extract Point Clouds by Tree ID and ALS Editor.

- [Theory of Elevation Metrics](#)
- [Theory of Intensity Metrics](#)
- [Theory of Canopy Cover](#)
- [Theory of Leaf Area Index](#)
- [Theory of Gap Fraction](#)
- [Forest Metrics](#)
  - [Calculate Forest Metrics by Grid](#)
  - [Calculate Forest Metrics by Polygon](#)
  - [Calculate Forest Metrics by Forest Stands](#)
- [Regression Analysis](#)
  - [Sample Data and Independent Variables](#)
  - [Linear Regression](#)
  - [Support Vector Machine](#)
  - [Fast Artificial Neural Network](#)
  - [Random Forest Regression](#)
  - [Run Existing Regression Model](#)
- [Segmentation](#)
  - [CHM Segmentation](#)
  - [View the CHM Segmentation Results](#)
  - [Point Cloud Segmentation](#)
  - [View the Point Cloud Segmentation Results](#)
  - [Generate Seed Points from CHM](#)
  - [Generate Seeds from Layer Stacking](#)
  - [Point Cloud Segmentation from Seed Points](#)
- [Batch Process](#)
  - [Forest Metrics](#)
  - [Point Cloud Segmentation](#)
  - [Canopy Height Model\(CHM\) Segmentation](#)

- Registration
  - Auto Registration by Tree Locations
- Clear Tree ID
- Clear Tree ID by CSV File
- Statistic Individual Tree Attributes
- Extract by Tree ID
- Forest Structure Change Detection
- ALS Editor

# Forest Metrics

The Forest Metrics menu contains Elevation Metrics, Intensity Metrics, Canopy Cover, Leaf Area Index, and Gap Fraction generated from point cloud data.

- [Calculate Forest Metrics by Grid](#)
- [Calculate Forest Metrics by Polygon](#)
- [Calculate Forest Metrics by Forest Stands](#)



# Elevation Metrics

## Summary

Elevation Metrics are statistical parameters related to point cloud elevation. They are frequently used in regression analysis, especially when correlating field plot measurements with LiDAR data. In this model, 46 statistical parameters related to elevation and 10 parameters related to point cloud density can be calculated. The resultant product is a table in CSV format or a set of TIFF files.

## Principle

- Average Absolute Deviation:** Computed using the following equation:  $V = \frac{\sum_{i=1}^n (|Z_i - \bar{Z}|)}{n}$ , where  $Z_i$  represents the elevation of  $i^{\text{th}}$  point within a statistical unit,  $\bar{Z}$  represents the average elevation of all points within a statistical unit, and  $n$  is the number of points in a statistical unit.
- Canopy relief ratio:** Computed using the following equation:  $V = \frac{\text{mean} - \text{min}}{\text{max} - \text{min}}$ , where  $\text{mean}$  represents the average elevation of a statistical unit,  $\text{min}$  represents the minimum elevation of a statistical unit, and  $\text{max}$  represent the maximum elevation of a statistical unit.
- AIH (15):** Within a statistical unit, all normalized lidar point clouds are sorted according to the elevation and the cumulative heights of all points are calculated. The cumulative height of X% points in each statistical unit is the statistical unit's AIH. In LiDAR360, 15 AIH can be calculated, including 1%, 5%, 10%, 20%, 25%, 30%, 40%, 50%, 60%, 70%, 75%, 80%, 90%, 95% and 99%.
- AIH Interquartile Distance:** Computed using the following equation:  $V = \text{AIH75\%} - \text{AIH25\%}$ , where  $\text{AIH75\%}$  represents the 75% AIH statistical layer, and  $\text{AIH25\%}$  represents the 25% AIH statistical layer.
- Coefficient of Variation:** Computed using the following equation:  $V = \frac{Z_{\text{std}}}{Z_{\text{mean}}} \times 100\%$ , where  $Z_{\text{std}}$  represents the standard deviation of elevation within a statistical unit, and  $Z_{\text{mean}}$  represents the average elevation within a statistical unit.
- Density Metrics(10):** The point cloud data is divided into ten slices with the same height interval from low to high, and the proportion of returns in each height interval is the corresponding density metrics.
- Kurtosis:** The kurtosis of the Z value of all points in a statistical unit. The calculation formula is 
$$\text{Kurtosis} = \frac{\frac{1}{n-1} \sum_{i=1}^n (Z_i - \bar{Z})^4}{\sigma^4} = \frac{\sum_{i=1}^n Z_i^4 + 6\bar{Z}^2 \sum_{i=1}^n Z_i^2 - 4\bar{Z}^3 \sum_{i=1}^n Z_i - 4\bar{Z}^2 \sum_{i=1}^n Z_i + n\bar{Z}^4}{(n-1)\sigma^4}$$
, in which  $Z_i$  is the height value of the  $i$ -th point in each statistical unit,  $\bar{Z}$  is the average height of all points in each statistical unit,  $n$  is the point number in each statistical unit, and  $\sigma$  is the standard deviation of point cloud height distribution within a statistical unit.
- MADMedian:** The median of median absolute deviation.
- Maximum:** The maximum value of Z for all points in a statistical unit.
- Minimum:** The minimum value of Z for all points in a statistical unit.
- Mean:** The mean value of Z for all points in a statistical unit.
- Median:** The median of Z for all points in a statistical unit.

- Generalized means for the 2nd power:** Computed using the following equation:  $V = \sqrt{\frac{\sum_{i=1}^n Z_i^2}{n}}$ ,

where  $Z_i$  is the Z value of the  $i^{\text{th}}$  point in a statistical unit.

- **Generalized means for the 3rd power:** Computed using the following equation:  $V = \sqrt[3]{\frac{\sum_{i=1}^n Z_i^3}{n}}$ , where

$Z_i$  is the Z value of the  $i^{\text{th}}$  point in a statistical unit.

- **Elevation Percentile (15):** Within a statistical unit, all normalized lidar point clouds are sorted by elevation, and then the elevation at which X% of points in each statistical unit is located is the elevation percentile of this statistical unit. In LiDAR360, 15 elevation percentiles are calculated, including 1%, 5%, 10%, 20%, 25%, 30%, 40%, 50%, 60%, 70%, 75%, 80%, 90%, 95% and 99%.

- **Elevation Percentile Interquartile Distance:** Computed using the following equation:

$V = \text{Elev75\%} - \text{Elev25\%}$ , where Ele75% represents the 75% elevation statistical layer, and Ele25% represents the 25% elevation statistical layer.

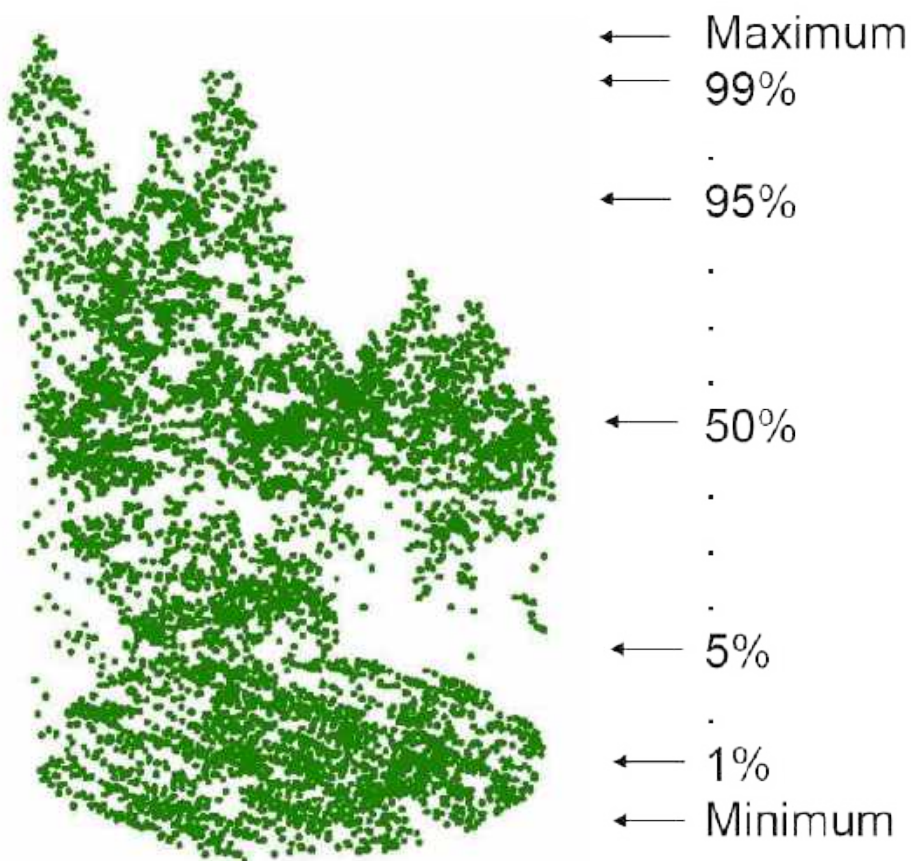
- **Skewness:** This value shows the symmetry of Z values of all the points in each statistical unit. The

calculation formula is  $V = \frac{\sum_{i=1}^n (Z_i - \bar{Z})^3}{n}$ , in which  $Z_i$  is the height value of the  $i$ -th point in each

statistical unit,  $\bar{Z}$  is the average height of all points in each statistical unit,  $n$  is the point number in each statistical unit, and  $\sigma$  is the standard deviation of point cloud height distribution within a statistical unit.

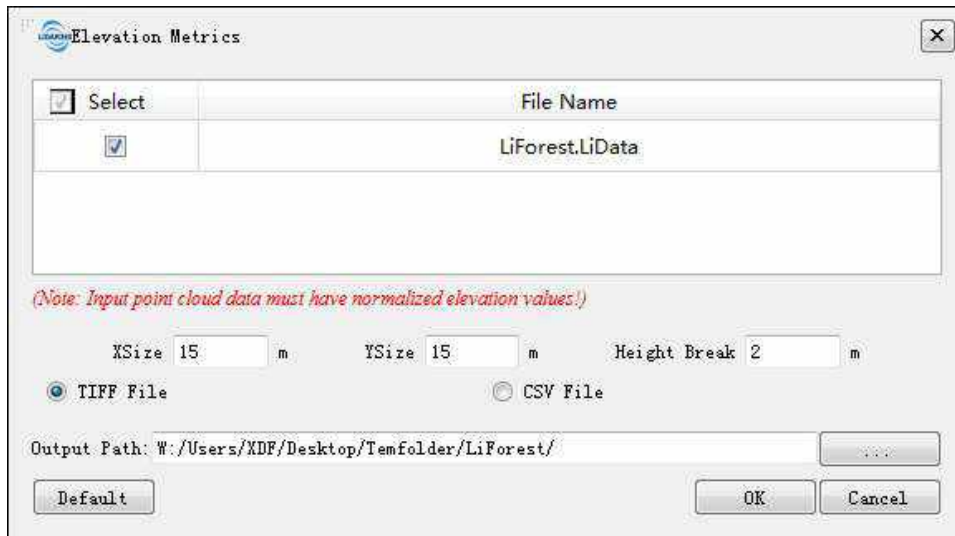
- **Standard Deviation:** The standard deviation of Z for all points in a statistical unit.

- **Variance:** The variance of Z for all points in a statistical unit.



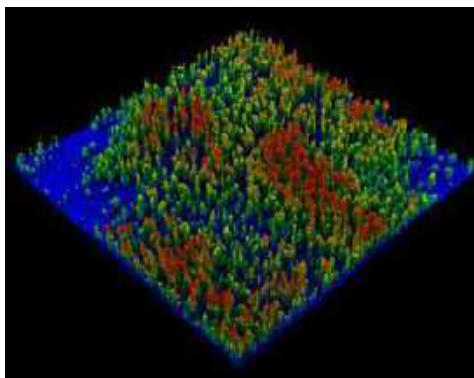
## Usage

To generate Elevation Metrics, navigate to *ALS Forest > Forest Metrics > Elevation Metrics*.



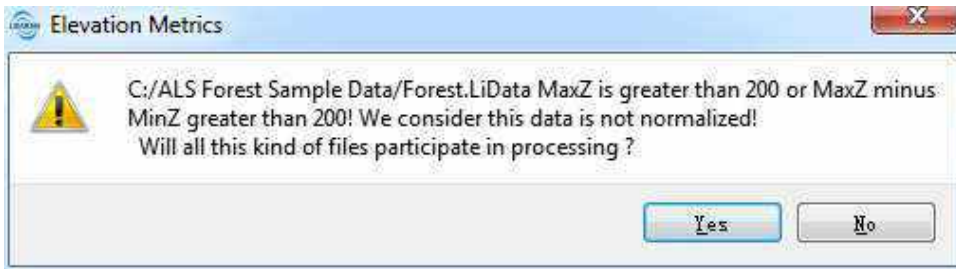
## Settings

- **Input Data:** Ensure that each input point cloud data is [Normalize by DEM](#) or [Normalize by Ground Points](#). The input file can be a single file or multiple data files. Point cloud data should be opened in LiDAR360 before being processed.
- **XSize (meter)(default value is "15"):** The length of a grid size should be greater than an individual tree crown width. For most forest types, the grid size should be greater than 15 meters.
- **YSize (meter)(default value is "15"):** The width of a grid size should be greater than an individual tree crown width. For most forest types, the grid size should be greater than 15 meters.
- **HeightBreak (meter)(default value is "2"):** Usually, it is desirable to ignore points below a particular elevation to avoid influence low vegetations (e.g., grass and shrub). The "HeightBreak" parameter can be set in many ALS forestry tools, allowing users to ignore points below a specified height (a value of 2 m is commonly used).
- **Output Path:** Path of the output file. A corresponding CSV file or a set of corresponding TIFF files will be generated for each input point cloud data, which can be used as an independent variable in the regression analysis.
- **DefaultValue:** Restore the default parameters.



	X	Y	ZMin	ZMax	abs_z_max	abs_z_max - z_min
1	32297506	418207509	15.000	15.800	9.325	0.476
2	32297506	418207509	15.000	15.800	9.388	0.487
3	32297506	418207509	15.000	15.800	7.728	0.528
4	32297506	418207509	15.000	15.800	5.947	0.433
5	32297506	418207509	15.000	15.800	7.447	0.411
6	32297506	418207509	15.000	15.800	10.004	0.639
7	32297506	418207509	15.000	15.800	13.723	0.867
8	32297506	418207509	15.000	15.800	14.926	0.964
9	32297506	418207509	15.000	15.800	5.788	0.433
10	32297506	418207509	15.000	15.800	7.055	0.502
11	32297506	418207509	15.000	15.800	10.029	0.591
12	32297506	418207509	15.000	15.800	8.057	0.510
13	32297506	418207509	15.000	15.800	7.139	0.501
14	32297506	418207509	15.000	15.800	10.960	0.511
15	32297506	418207509	15.000	15.800	0.200	0.010
16	32297506	418207509	15.000	15.800	6.173	0.529

Note: Only when the point cloud data is loaded in the software can you use the Elevation Metrics function; otherwise, the message "There is no point cloud data meeting the conditions of calculation!" will pop up. If the maximum Z value of the point cloud is greater than 200 m or the maximum Z minus the minimum Z is greater than 200 m, the data is not considered to have been normalized, and the prompt information shown in the figure below will pop up. Click "YES" to keep using this type of data in the operation; otherwise, click "NO" and reselect the input data file.



# Intensity Metrics

## Summary

The intensity metrics are similar to the elevation metrics with the exception that point intensity is used rather than point elevation. Therefore, this function can be used only if the point cloud data contains intensity information. Overall, 42 statistical parameters related to intensity can be calculated, and the resultant product is a table in CSV format or a set of TIFF files.

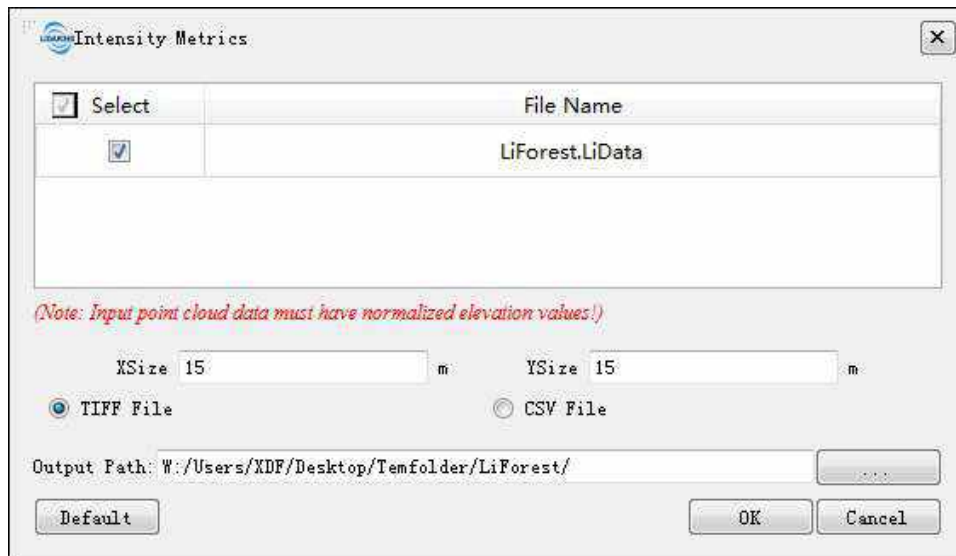
## Principle

- Average Absolute Deviation:** Computed using the following equation:  $V = \frac{\sum_{i=1}^n (|I_i - \bar{I}|)}{n}$ , where  $I_i$  represents the intensity of  $i^{\text{th}}$  point within a statistical unit,  $\bar{I}$  represents the average intensity of all points within a statistical unit, and  $n$  is the number of points in a statistical unit.
- All (15):** Within a statistical unit, all normalized lidar point clouds are sorted according to their intensity values and the cumulative intensities of all points are calculated. The cumulative intensity of X% points in each statistical unit is the statistical unit's AIH. In LiDAR360, 15 AIH can be calculated, including 1%, 5%, 10%, 20%, 25%, 30%, 40%, 50%, 60%, 70%, 75%, 80%, 90%, 95% and 99%.
- Coefficient of Variation:** Computed using the following equation:  $V = \frac{I_{std}}{I_{mean}} \times 100\%$ , where  $I_{std}$  represents the standard deviation of intensity within a statistical unit, and  $I_{mean}$  represents the average intensity within a statistical unit.
- Kurtosis:** The kurtosis of the intensity values of all points in a statistical unit. The calculation formula is 
$$\text{Kurtosis} = \frac{\frac{1}{n-1} \sum_{i=1}^n (I_i - \bar{I})^4}{\sigma^4} = \frac{\sum_{i=1}^n I_i^4 + 6\bar{I}^2 \sum_{i=1}^n I_i^2 - 4\bar{I} \sum_{i=1}^n I_i^3 - 4\bar{I}^3 \sum_{i=1}^n I_i + n\bar{I}^4}{(n-1)\sigma^4}$$
, in which  $Z_i$  is the intensity value of the  $i$ -th point in each statistical unit,  $\bar{Z}$  is the average intensity of all points in each statistical unit,  $n$  is the point number in each statistical unit, and  $\sigma$  is the standard deviation of point cloud intensity distribution within a statistical unit.
- MADMedian:** The median of median absolute deviation of the intensity values of all points in a statistical unit.
- Maximum:** The maximum of the intensity values of all points in a statistical unit.
- Minimum:** The minimum of the intensity values of all points in a statistical unit.
- Mean:** The mean of the intensity values of all points in a statistical unit.
- Median:** The median of the intensity values of all points in a statistical unit.
- Skewness:** This value shows the symmetry of intensity values of all the points in each statistical unit. The calculation formula is 
$$\text{Skewness} = \frac{\frac{1}{n-1} \sum_{i=1}^n (I_i - \bar{I})^3}{\sigma^3} = \frac{\sum_{i=1}^n I_i^3 - 3\bar{I} \sum_{i=1}^n I_i^2 + 3\bar{I}^2 \sum_{i=1}^n I_i - n\bar{I}^3}{(n-1)\sigma^3}$$
, in which  $Z_i$  is the intensity value of the  $i$ -th point in each statistical unit,  $\bar{Z}$  is the average intensity of all points in each statistical unit,  $n$  is the point number in each statistical unit, and  $\sigma$  is the standard deviation of point cloud intensity distribution within a statistical unit.
- Standard Deviation:** The standard deviation of the intensity values of all points in a statistical unit.
- Variance:** The variance of the intensity values of all points in a statistical unit.
- Intensity Percentile (15):** Within a statistical unit, all normalized lidar point clouds are sorted by intensity, and then the intensity at which X% of points in each statistical unit is located is the intensity percentile of this statistical unit. In LiDAR360, 15 intensity percentiles are calculated, including 1%, 5%, 10%, 20%, 25%, 30%, 40%, 50%, 60%, 70%, 75%, 80%, 90%, 95% and 99%.
- Intensity Percentile Interquartile Distance:** Computed using the following equation:

$V = \text{Int75\%} - \text{Int25\%}$  , where Int75% represents the 75% intensity statistical layer, and Int25% represents the 25% intensity statistical layer.

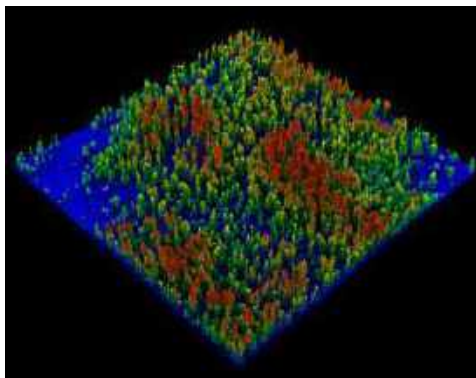
## Usage

To generate Intensity Metrics, navigate to *ALS Forest > Forest Metrics > Intensity Metrics*.



## Settings

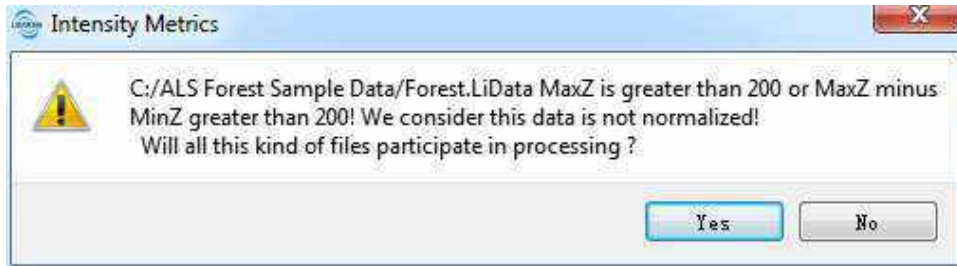
- **Input Data:** Make sure that each input point cloud data contains intensity information, and each data is [Normalize by DEM](#) or [Normalize by Ground Points](#). The input file can be a single file or multiple data files. Point cloud data should be opened in LiDAR360 before being processed.
- **XSize (meter)(default value is "15"):** The length of a grid size should be greater than an individual tree crown width. For most forest types, the grid size should be greater than 15 meters.
- **YSize (meter)(default value is "15"):** The width of a grid size should be greater than an individual tree crown width. For most forest types, the grid size should be greater than 15 meters.
- **Output Path:** Path of the output file. A corresponding CSV file or a set of corresponding TIFF files will be generated for each input point cloud data, which can be used as an independent variable in the regression analysis
- **DefaultValue:** Restore the default parameters.



ID	X	Y	Z	Intensity	Intensity	Intensity
1	32297.100	402040.500	15000	10.000	33265	0.362
2	32297.300	402032.500	15000	10.000	31269	0.484
3	32297.500	402024.500	15000	10.000	36379	0.408
4	32297.700	402016.500	15000	10.000	41150	0.566
5	32297.900	402008.500	15000	10.000	53586	0.529
6	32298.100	401999.500	15000	10.000	49571	0.620
7	32298.300	401991.500	15000	10.000	34230	0.629
8	32298.500	401983.500	15000	10.000	41240	0.510
9	32298.700	401975.500	15000	10.000	38775	0.600
10	32298.900	401967.500	15000	10.000	29200	0.285
11	32299.100	401959.500	15000	10.000	27820	0.388
12	32299.300	401951.500	15000	10.000	33431	0.547
13	32299.500	401943.500	15000	10.000	31230	0.606
14	32299.700	401935.500	15000	10.000	25309	0.528
15	32299.900	401927.500	15000	10.000	43426	0.311
16	32300.100	401919.500	15000	10.000	13040	0.227

Note: Only when the point cloud data is loaded in the software can you use the Intensity Metrics function; otherwise, the message "There is no point cloud data meeting the conditions of calculation!" will pop up. If the maximum Z value of the point cloud is greater than 200 m or the maximum Z minus the minimum Z is

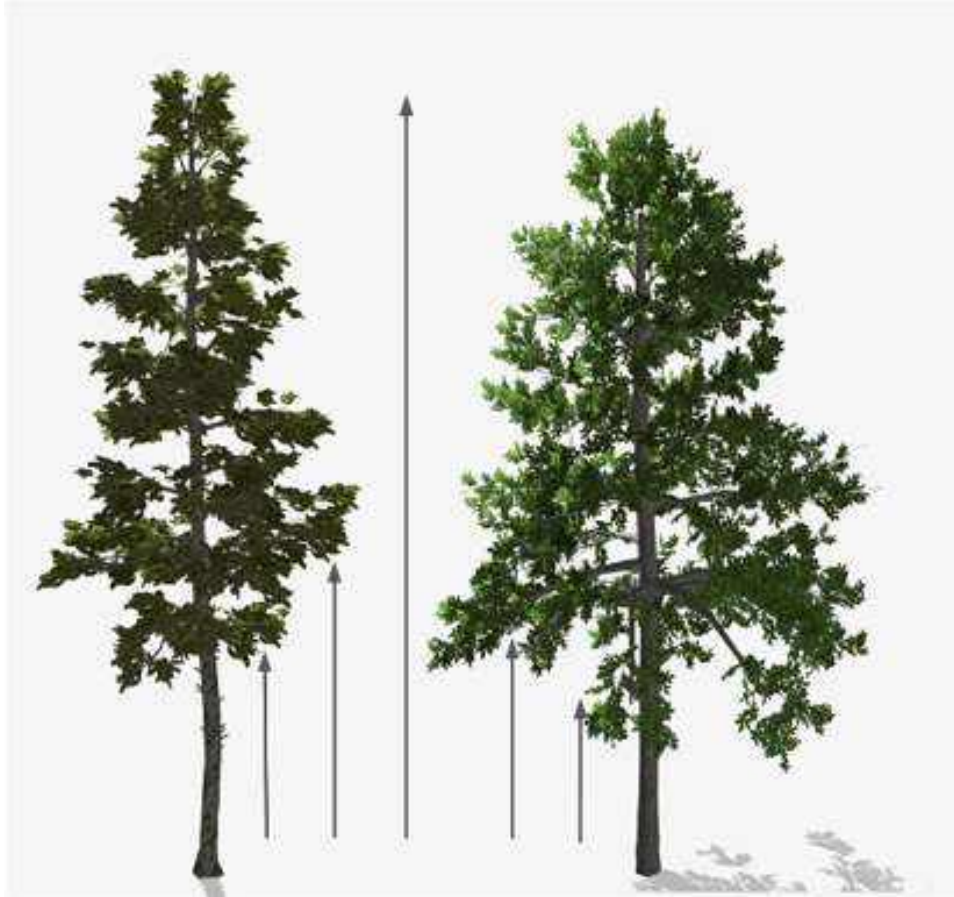
greater than 200 m, the data is not considered to have been normalized, and the prompt information shown in the figure below will pop up. Click "YES" to keep using this type of data in the operation; otherwise, click "NO" and reselect the input data file.



# Canopy Cover

## Summary

Canopy cover is the percentage of vertical projection of forest canopy to forest land area (Jennings et al., 1999). It is an important parameter in forest management, and it is also an essential factor for estimating forest volume.



## Principle

LiDAR360 adopts two different algorithms for calculating canopy cover for point cloud with and without return number information respectively. If the point cloud has return number information, it will be first divided into different grids according to a user-defined xsize and ysize. In each pixel, canopy cover can be calculated as the ratio of LiDAR first vegetation returns (higher than the user-defined threshold) to the total number of LiDAR first returns.

$$CC = \frac{n_{vegfirst}}{n_{first}}$$

where CC is canopy cover,  $n_{vegfirst}$  is the number of vegetation first returns, and  $n_{first}$  is the number of all first returns.

If point cloud does not have return number information, it will also be first divided into different grids according to a user-defined xsize and ysize. In each pixel, canopy cover can be calculated as the ratio of LiDAR vegetation returns to the total number of LiDAR returns. Similar to the calculation of gap fraction, any points higher than 2m



will be treated as vegetation points in the calculation.

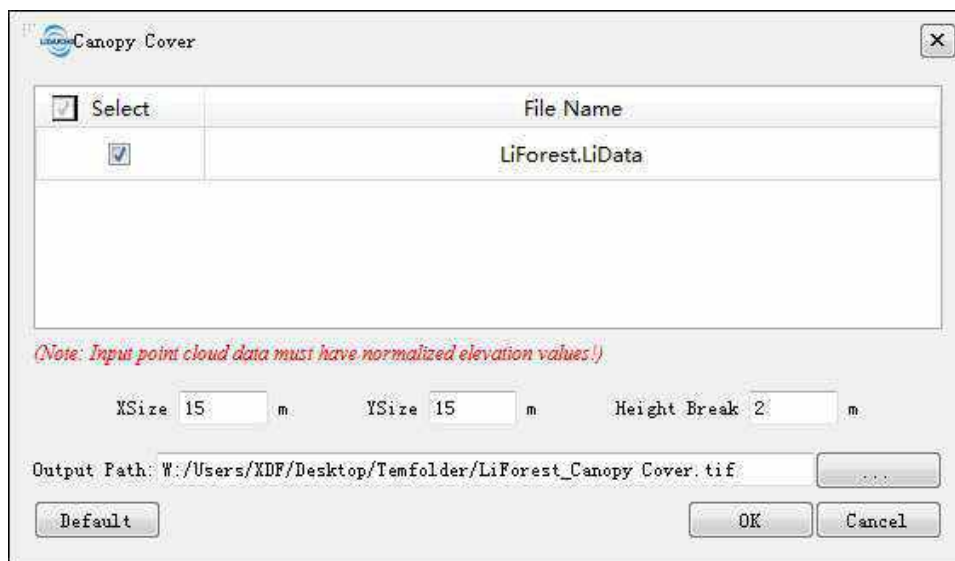
$$CC = \frac{n_{veg}}{n_{total}}$$

where CC is canopy cover,  $n_{veg}$  is the number of vegetation return, and  $n_{total}$  is the total number of returns.

According to (Ma et al., 2017), the canopy cover generated from these two methods have no significant difference. The resultant product is a raster file in TIFF format, the value ranges from 0 (no canopy cover/completely open) to 1 (completely covered by canopy).

## Usage

To generate Canopy Cover, navigate to *ALS Forest > Forest Metrics > Canopy Cover*.

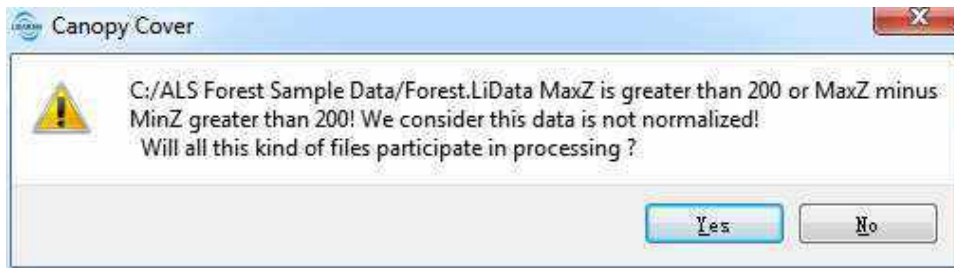


## Settings

- **Input Data:** Ensure that each input point cloud data is [Normalize by DEM](#) or [Normalize by Ground Points](#). The input file can be a single file or multiple data files. Point cloud data should be opened in LiDAR360 before being processed.
- **XSize (meter)(default value is "15"):** The length of a grid size should be greater than an individual tree crown width. For most forest types, the grid size should be greater than 15 meters.
- **YSize (meter)(default value is "15"):** The width of a grid size should be greater than an individual tree crown width. For most forest types, the grid size should be greater than 15 meters.
- **HeightBreak (meter)(default value is "2"):** Usually, it is desirable to ignore points below a particular elevation to avoid influence low vegetations (e.g., grass and shrub). The "HeightBreak" parameter can be set in many ALS forestry tools, allowing users to ignore points below a specified height (a value of 2 m is commonly used).
- **Output Path:** Path of the output file. A corresponding raster file (\*.tif format) will be generated for each input point cloud data.
- **DefaultValue:** Restore the default parameters.

Note: Only when the point cloud data is loaded in the software can you use the Canopy Cover function; otherwise, the message "There is no point cloud data meeting the conditions of calculation!" will pop up. If the maximum Z value of the point cloud is greater than 200 m or the maximum Z minus the minimum Z is

greater than 200 m, the data is not considered to have been normalized, and the prompt information shown in the figure below will pop up. Click "YES" to keep using this type of data in the operation; otherwise, click "NO" and reselect the input data file.



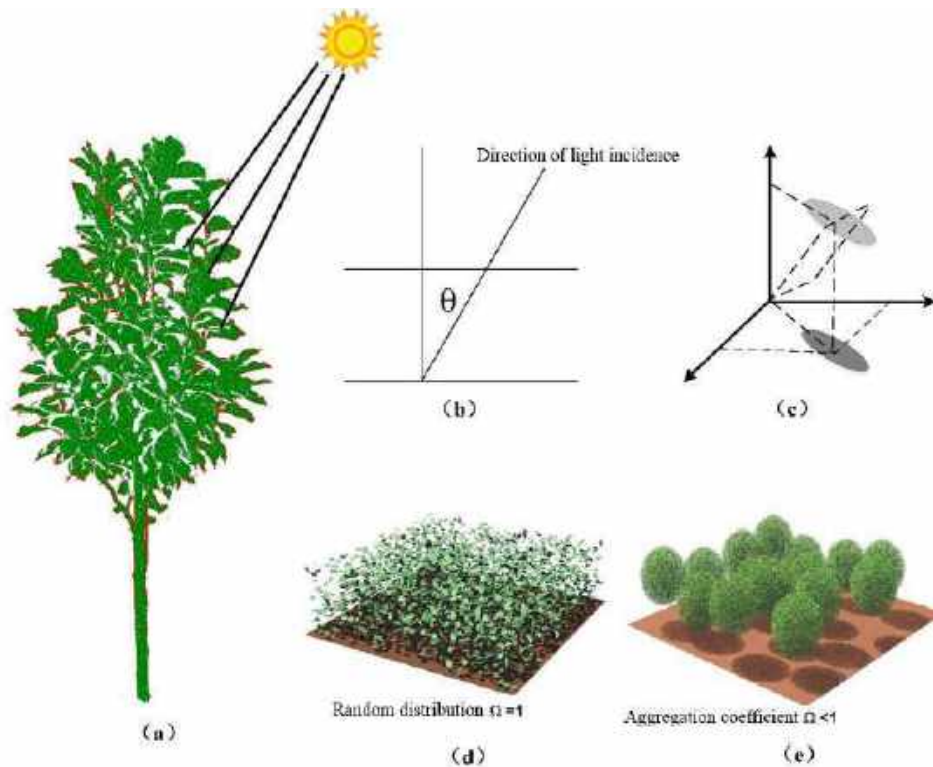
```
@inproceedings{
  author={Jennings S B, Brown N D and Sheil D},
  title={Assessing forest canopies and understorey illumination: canopy closure, canopy cover and other measure
s},
  booktitle={Forestry,72(1): 59-73},
  year={1999}
}
```

```
@inproceedings{
  author={Ma Q, Su Y J and Guo Q H},
  title={Comparison of Canopy Cover Estimations From Airborne LiDAR, Aerial Imagery, and Satellite Imagery.},
  booktitle={IEEE Journal of Selected Topics in Applied Earth Observations and Remote Sensing,10(9): 4225-4236}
,
  year={2017}
}
```

# Leaf Area Index

## Summary

The Leaf Area Index (LAI) is one of the most basic parameters that characterizes the forest canopy structure. It is defined as half of the surface area of all leaves projected on the surface area of a unit (Chen et al., 1991). LAI can be calculated from the normalized LiDAR vegetation points.



(a) Direction of light incidence, (b) the zenith angle refers to the angle between the incident ray and the vertical direction, (c) the projection of the leaf in the vertical direction, (d) describes the extinction coefficient, and (e) describes the aggregation coefficient.

## Principle Description

LAI value is calculated using the following equation:

$$LAI = - \frac{\cos(ang) \times \ln(GF)}{k}$$

where  $ang$  is the average scan angle,  $GF$  is the gap fraction, and  $k$  is the extinction coefficient, which is closely related to the leaf angle distribution (Richardson et al., 2009).

The average scan angle is calculated from LiDAR points using the following equation:

$$ang = \frac{\sum_{i=1}^n angle_i}{n}$$

where  $ang$  is the average scan angle,  $n$  is the number of LiDAR points and  $angle_j$  is the scan angle of the  $i^{th}$

LiDAR point.

The Gap Fraction (GF) is calculated using the following equation:

$$GF = \frac{n_{ground}}{n}$$

where  $n_{ground}$  is the number of ground points and  $n$  is the total number of LiDAR points.

## Usage

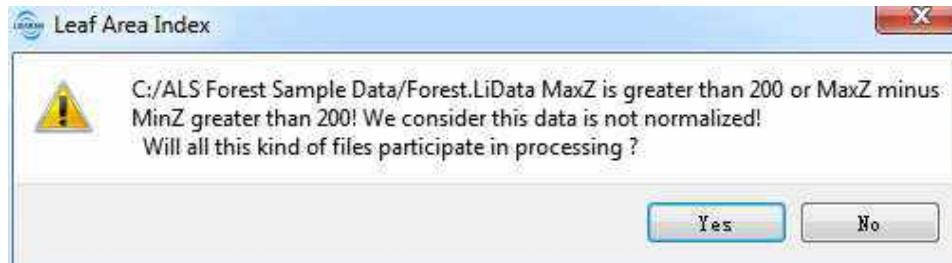
To generate the LAI, navigate to *ALS Forest > Forest Metrics > Leaf Area Index*.

The screenshot shows a software dialog box titled "Leaf Area Index". It features a "Select" checkbox and a "File Name" field containing "LiForest.LiData". Below this is a red note: "(Note: Input point cloud data must have normalized elevation values!)". There are four input fields: "XSize" (15 m), "YSize" (15 m), "Height Break" (2 m), and "Leaf Angle Distribution" (0.5 m). The "Output Path" is set to "W:/Users/XDF/Desktop/Temfolder/LiForest\_Leaf Area Index.tif". At the bottom, there are "Default", "OK", and "Cancel" buttons.

## Settings

- **Input Data:** Ensure that each input point cloud data is [Normalize by DEM](#) or [Normalize by Ground Points](#). The input file can be a single file or multiple data files. Point cloud data should be opened in LiDAR360 before being processed.
- **XSize (meter)(default value is "15"):** The length of a grid size should be greater than an individual tree crown width. For most forest types, the grid size should be greater than 15 meters.
- **YSize (meter)(default value is "15"):** The width of a grid size should be greater than an individual tree crown width. For most forest types, the grid size should be greater than 15 meters.
- **HeightBreak (meter)(default value is "2"):** Usually, it is desirable to ignore points below a particular elevation to avoid influence low vegetations (e.g., grass and shrub). The "HeightBreak" parameter can be set in many ALS forestry tools, allowing users to ignore points below a specified height (a value of 2 m is commonly used).
- **Leaf Angle Distribution:** A mathematical expression of leaf probability distribution in three-dimensional space, which is related to vegetation type, leaf angle, and beam direction. According to the empirical formula, the user can determine the value of leaf angle distribution according to the actual situation of the forest. Studies have shown that the elliptic distribution of leaf angle, which has a leaf angle distribution value of 0.5, may be applicable to the actual situation.
- **Output Path:** Path of the output file. A corresponding raster file (\*.tif format) will be generated for each input point cloud data.
- **DefaultValue:** Restore the default parameters.

Note: Only when the point cloud data is loaded in the software can you use the Leaf Area Index function; otherwise, the message "There is no point cloud data meeting the conditions of calculation!" will pop up. If the maximum Z value of the point cloud is greater than 200 m or the maximum Z minus the minimum Z is greater than 200 m, the data is not considered to have been normalized, and the prompt information shown in the figure below will pop up. Click "YES" to keep using this type of data in the operation; otherwise, click "NO" and reselect the input data file.



```
@inproceedings{
  author={Chen J M and Black T A},
  title={Measuring leaf area index of plant canopies with branch architecture},
  booktitle={Agricultural and Forest Meteorology,57(1-3): 1-12},
  year={1991}
}
```

```
@inproceedings{
  author={Richardson J J},
  title={Modeling approaches to estimate effective leaf area index from aerial discrete-return LiDAR},
  booktitle={Agricultural and Forest Meteorology, 149 (6): 1152-1160},
  year={2009}
}
```

# Gap Fraction

## Summary

Gap Fraction is a crucial variable that governs interactions between light and vegetation and requires accurate modelling to predict light climate in the canopy, photosynthetic activity or canopy reflectance.

## Principle

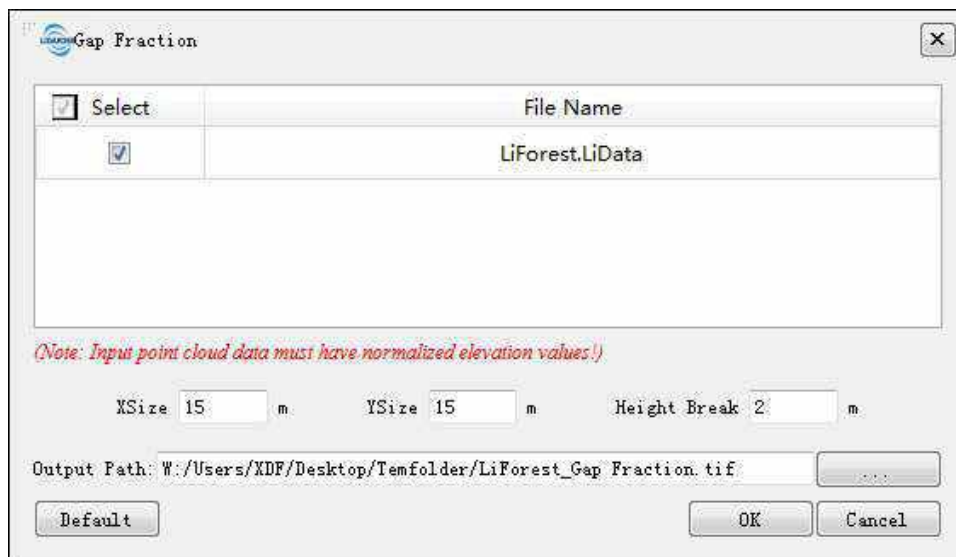
The Gap Fraction (GF) is calculated using the following equation:

$$GF = \frac{n_{ground}}{n}$$

where  $n_{ground}$  is the number of ground points and  $n$  is the total number of vegetation and ground points. Note that all LiDAR points with a normalized height lower than the user-defined height break (2m is commonly used) are treated as ground points in gap fraction calculation (Richardson et al.,2009).

## Usage

To generate the gap fraction, navigate to *ALS Forest > Forest Metrics > Gap Fraction*.

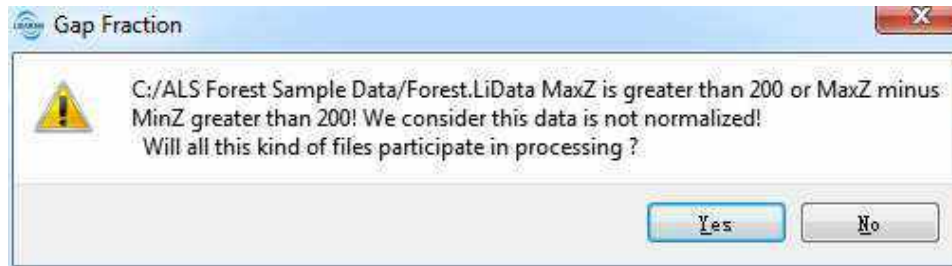


## Settings

- **Input Data:** Ensure that each input point cloud data is [Normalize by DEM](#) or [Normalize by Ground Points](#). The input file can be a single file or multiple data files. Point cloud data should be opened in LiDAR360 before being processed.
- **XSize (meter)(default value is "15"):** The length of a grid size should be greater than an individual tree crown width. For most forest types, the grid size should be greater than 15 meters.
- **YSize (meter)(default value is "15"):** The width of a grid size should be greater than an individual tree crown width. For most forest types, the grid size should be greater than 15 meters.
- **HeightBreak (meter)(default value is "2"):** Users can define a height break to treat all airborne LiDAR points as ground points in gap fraction analysis. A value of 2 m is commonly used.

- **Output Path:** Path of the output file. A corresponding raster file (\*.tif format) will be generated for each input point cloud data.
- **DefaultValue:** Restore the default parameters.

Note: Only when the point cloud data is loaded in the software can you use the Gap Fraction function; otherwise, the message "There is no point cloud data meeting the conditions of calculation!" will pop up. If the maximum Z value of the point cloud is greater than 200 m or the maximum Z minus the minimum Z is greater than 200 m, the data is not considered to have been normalized, and the prompt information shown in the figure below will pop up. Click "YES" to keep using this type of data in the operation; otherwise, click "NO" and reselect the input data file.



```
@inproceedings{
  author={Richardson J J, Moskal L M and Kim S H},
  title={Modeling approaches to estimate effective leaf area index from aerial discrete-return LIDAR},
  booktitle={Agricultural and Forest Meteorology,149: 1152-1160},
  year={2009}
}
```

# Calculate Forest Metrics by Grid

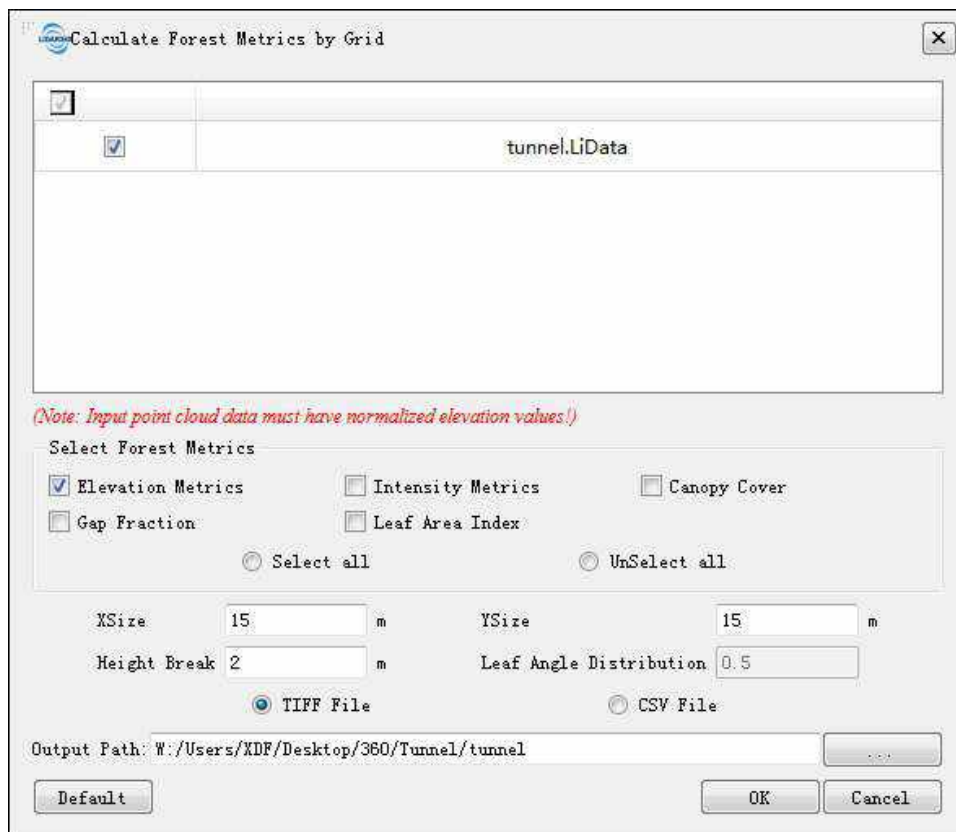
## Summary

Calculate the forest metrics based on the point cloud data in grids. Split the point cloud data with multiple grids, and then calculate the forest metrics in each grid. The forest metrics include [elevation](#), [intensity](#), [canopy cover](#), [LAI](#), and [gap fraction](#).

First, this function will divide the point cloud into different grids with a certain size in the horizontal direction. And then Calculate the forest metrics based on users selection, and, for each grid, generate a CSV file or TIFF file to store the result.

## Usage

Click *AIS Forest > Forest Metrics > Calculate Forest Metrics by Grid* to generate the selected forest metrics.



## Settings

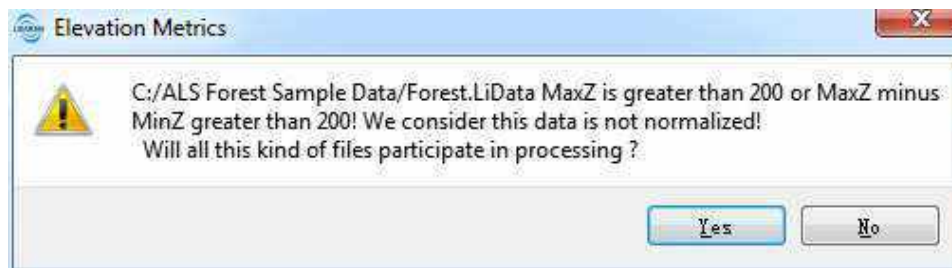
- **Input:** Make sure that all the input files are [normalized](#). The input file(s) can be a single file or a file set. The file(s) to be processed must be opened in LiDAR360 before using this function.
- **XSize (meter) (default value is "15"):** The grid size in X direction. This value should be larger than the crown size of the trees. For the data acquired from most of the forest, this value should be larger than 15.
- **YSize (meter) (default value is "15"):** The grid size in Y direction. This value should be larger than the crown size of the trees. For the data acquired from most of the forest, this value should be larger than 15.
- **Height Threshold (meter) (default value is "2"):** The threshold to divide the data in vertical direction. The



point cloud above this height will be used to calculate the forest metrics. The default value is 2.

- **Leaf Angle Distribution (default value is "0.5"):** A mathematical expression of leaf probability distribution in three-dimensional space, which is related to vegetation type, leaf angle, and beam direction. According to the empirical formula, the user can determine the value of leaf angle distribution according to the actual situation of the forest. Studies have shown that the elliptic distribution of leaf angle, which has a leaf angle distribution value of 0.5, may be applicable to the actual situation.
- **Output Path:** Path of the output file. A corresponding raster file (tif format) or CSV file will be generated for each input point cloud data, which can be used in the regression analysis.
- **DefaultValue:** Restore the default parameters.

Note: Only when the point cloud data is loaded in the software can you use the Elevation Metrics function; otherwise, the message "There is no point cloud data meeting the conditions of calculation!" will pop up. If the maximum Z value of the point cloud is greater than 200 m or the maximum Z minus the minimum Z is greater than 200 m, the data is not considered to have been normalized, and the prompt information shown in the figure below will pop up. Click "YES" to keep using this type of data in the operation; otherwise, click "NO" and reselect the input data file.



# Calculate Forest Metrics by Polygon

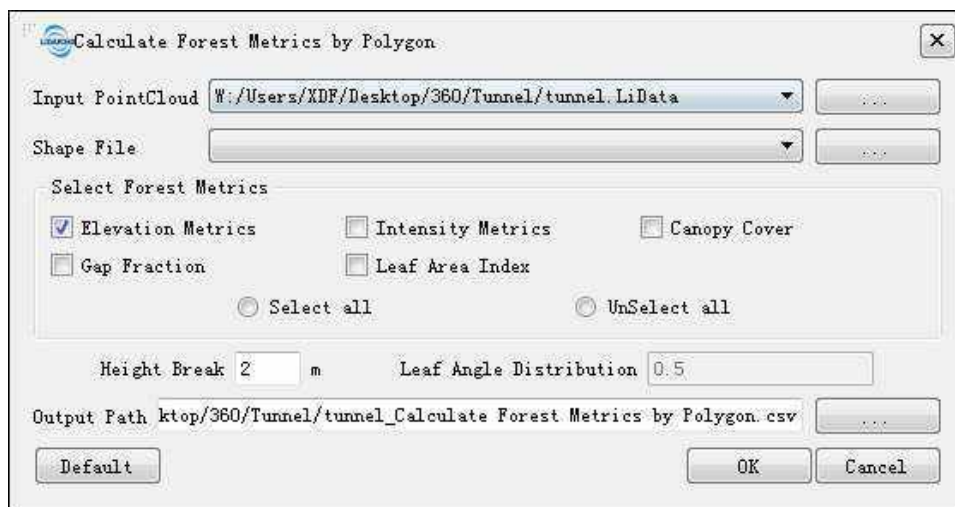
## Summary

Calculate the forest metrics based on the point cloud data in the given polygon file. The forest metrics include [elevation](#), [intensity](#), [canopy cover](#), [LAI](#), and [gap fraction](#).

Read the position information of the polygon(s) stored in the input SHP file. Calculate the forest metrics and generate a result record for each polygon.

## Usage

Click *AIS Forest > Forest Metrics > Calculate Forest Metrics by Polygon* to generate the selected forest metrics.

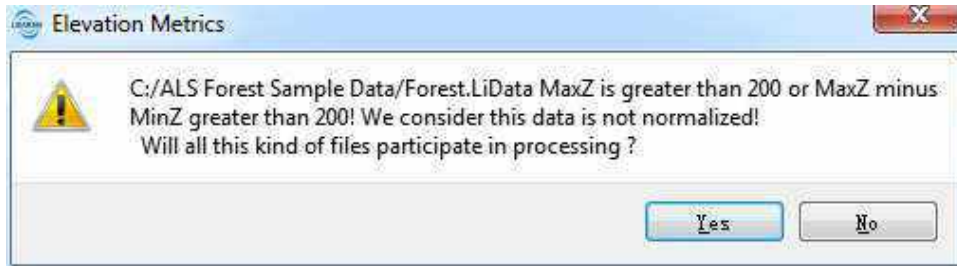


## Settings

- **Input:** Make sure that all the input files are [normalized](#). The input file(s) can be a single file or a file set. The file(s) to be processed must be opened in LiDAR360 before using this function.
- **SHP file:** The vector data that contains the polygon(s) in which the users need to generate the forest metrics. The SHP file can be added into LiDAR360 or manually input by the users.
- **Height Threshold (meter) (default value is "2"):** The threshold to divide the data in vertical direction. The point cloud above this height will be used to calculate the forest metrics. The default value is 2.
- **Leaf Angle Distribution (default value is "0.5"):** A mathematical expression of leaf probability distribution in three-dimensional space, which is related to vegetation type, leaf angle, and beam direction. According to the empirical formula, the user can determine the value of leaf angle distribution according to the actual situation of the forest. Studies have shown that the elliptic distribution of leaf angle, which has a leaf angle distribution value of 0.5, may be applicable to the actual situation.
- **Output Path:** Path of the output file. A corresponding raster file (tif format) or CSV file will be generated for each input point cloud data, which can be used in the regression analysis.
- **DefaultValue:** Restore the default parameters.

Note: Only when the point cloud data is loaded in the software can you use the Elevation Metrics function; otherwise, the message "There is no point cloud data meeting the conditions of calculation!" will pop up. If the maximum Z value of the point cloud is greater than 200 m or the maximum Z minus the minimum Z is

greater than 200 m, the data is not considered to have been normalized, and the prompt information shown in the figure below will pop up. Click "YES" to keep using this type of data in the operation; otherwise, click "NO" and reselect the input data file.



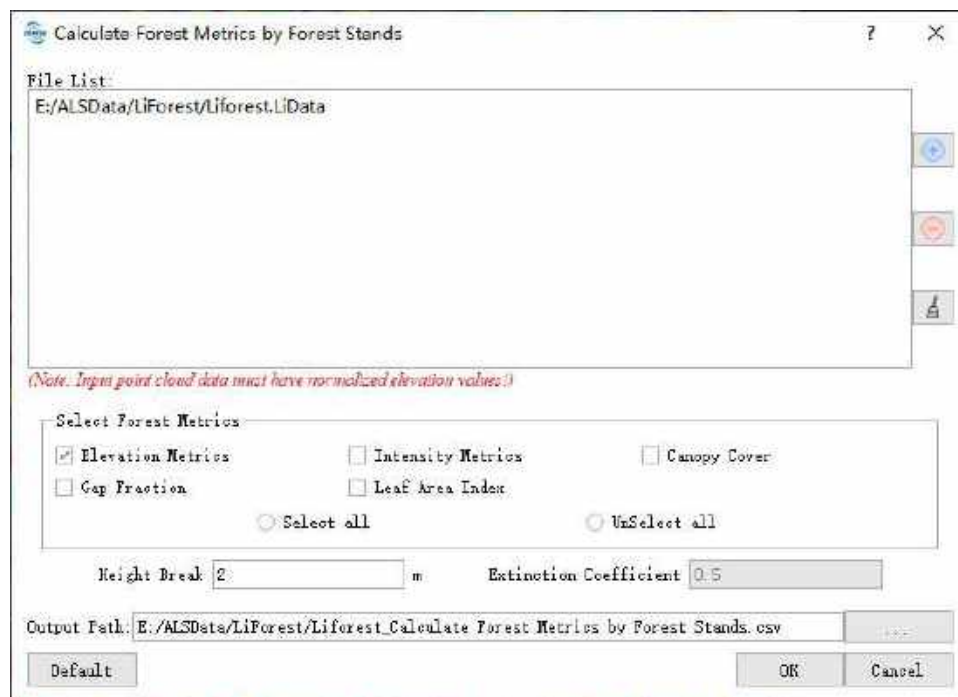
# Calculate Forest Metrics by Forest Stands

## Summary

Calculate forest metrics by forest stands for each point cloud data. The metrics include [Elevation Metrics](#), [Intensity Metrics](#), [Canopy Cover](#), [Leaf Area Index](#), and [Gap Fraction](#). For each point cloud data, a record will be generated and stored in a CSV file.

## Usage

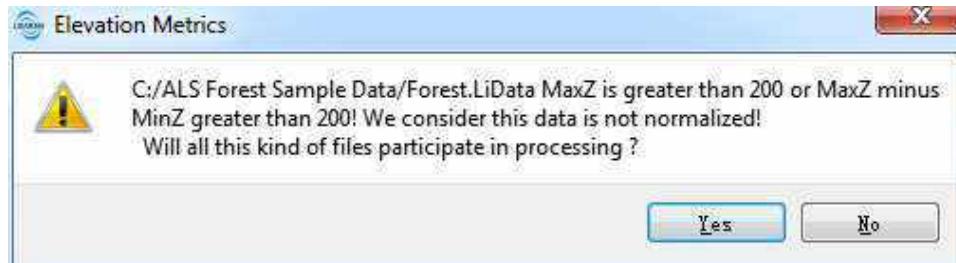
Click *ALS Forest > Forest Metrics > Calculate Forest Metrics by Forest Stands* to generate the selected forest metrics.



## Settings

- **Input:** Please ensure that each input point cloud data is [normalized](#) data; the input file can be a single point cloud data file or a point cloud data set; to be The processed data must be opened in the LiDAR360 software. **-Height threshold (m) (default is "2"):** The threshold for dividing the point cloud into different layers, and the point whose height exceeds the threshold will participate in the calculation. The default value is 2 meters. **-Leaf inclination angle distribution (default is "0.5"):** A mathematical expression of the probability distribution of leaves in a three-dimensional space, which is related to vegetation type, leaf inclination angle and beam direction. The user can determine the value of the leaf inclination angle distribution based on the empirical formula combined with the actual situation of the forest. Studies have shown that the elliptical distribution of leaf inclination angles may be suitable for most forests, with a value of 0.5. **-Output Path:** Output path. After running, each input point cloud data file will generate a corresponding CSV file or a set of TIFF files, which can be used as independent variables in regression analysis. **-Default:** Restore the height threshold and leaf inclination angle distribution to the default values.

Note: Only when the point cloud data is loaded in the software, can you use the grid-based calculation of forest parameters function, otherwise, the software will pop up the prompt message "There is no point cloud data meet the conditions of calculation!". If the maximum Z value of the point cloud is greater than 200 or the maximum Z minus the minimum Z is greater than 200, the data is considered to be unnormalized, and the software will pop up the prompt message shown in the figure below, click "YES", this type of data Still participating in the calculation, click "NO", this type of data will not participate in the calculation, and the user can re-select the data that meets the conditions.



# Regression Analysis

The basic idea of the regression analysis is: firstly, establish a regression model between in-situ forest parameter measurements and LiDAR statistics at the plot level, and then use the obtained model to predict forest parameters from LiDAR statistics. Studies have shown that the regression methods can estimate forest parameters that cannot directly derive from LiDAR point cloud, such as aboveground biomass, and achieve a relative high accuracy without saturation (Popescu et al., 2004). However, building regression models requires a number of field measurement data. Please refer to [Forestry FAQ](#) for the selection of field measurements.

- [Sample Data and Independent Variables](#)
- [Linear Regression](#)
- [Support Vector Machine](#)
- [Fast Artificial Neural Network](#)
- [Random Forest Regression](#)
- [Run Existing Regression Model](#)

```
@inproceedings{
  author={Popescu S C and Wynne R H},
  title={Seeing the trees in the forest: Using lidar and multispectral data fusion with local filtering and variable window size for estimating tree height},
  booktitle={Photogrammetric Engineering and Remote Sensing, 70(5): 589-604},
  year={2004}
}
```

# Sample Data and Independent Variables

## Sample Data

All regression methods require sample data derived from field measurements to train the regression model. The sample data can be imported using the “Import Training Data” dialog of each regression model. The imported file should be in text format (.txt extension) and must contain a header to label each column. The first two columns should be the X and Y coordinates of each sample, followed by any dependent values. Note that multiple dependent values can be given, but only one can be used for each regression execution. See [Sample Data File](#) in the File Formats section of the Appendix for information about sample data file.

Import training data

Sample data

Dependent Variable

Plot Type  Length(m)

Optimize by considering location uncertainty

Optimize Location Uncertainty

X  Y

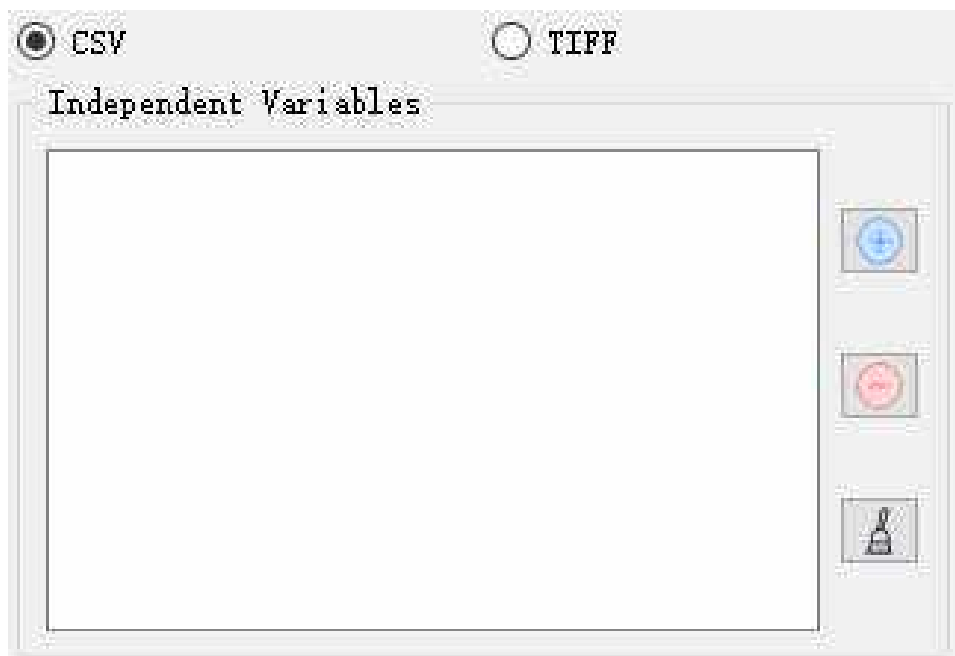
## Settings

- **Sample Data:** Click  next to the sample data input box to select sample data. Imported values can then be viewed in the Import Training Data section.
- **Dependent Variable:** This parameter defines the dependent variable used in the regression analysis. Only one dependent variable from the sample data file can be selected each time.
- **Plot Type:** This parameter defines the plot type. It should be selected based on the plot surveying methodology.
  - **Square (default):** The plot is square.

- **Circle:** The plot is circle.
- **Length (meter):** When the plot type is square, set the length of the plot.
- **Radius (meter):** When the plot type is circle, set the radius of the plot.
- **Local Error Buffer:** When the plot type is circle, set the radius of the plot.
- **X:** X coordinate of the plot center.
- **Y:** Y coordinate of the plot center.

## Independent Variables

For the Independent Variables section, users can select the independent variables from [Elevation Percentile](#), [Elevation Density](#), [Intensity Percentile](#), [LAI](#), [Gap Fraction](#) and [Canopy Cover](#). Users can also import data in .csv or .tif format. While importing a .csv table, only one can be selected at a time, and must contain at least four fields, including X, Y, X size, and Y size (each column would be added to the list as an independent variable). However, multiple .tif images can be added at once. Every time a .tif image is added successfully, an independent variable named after the file name of .tif will be added to the list.



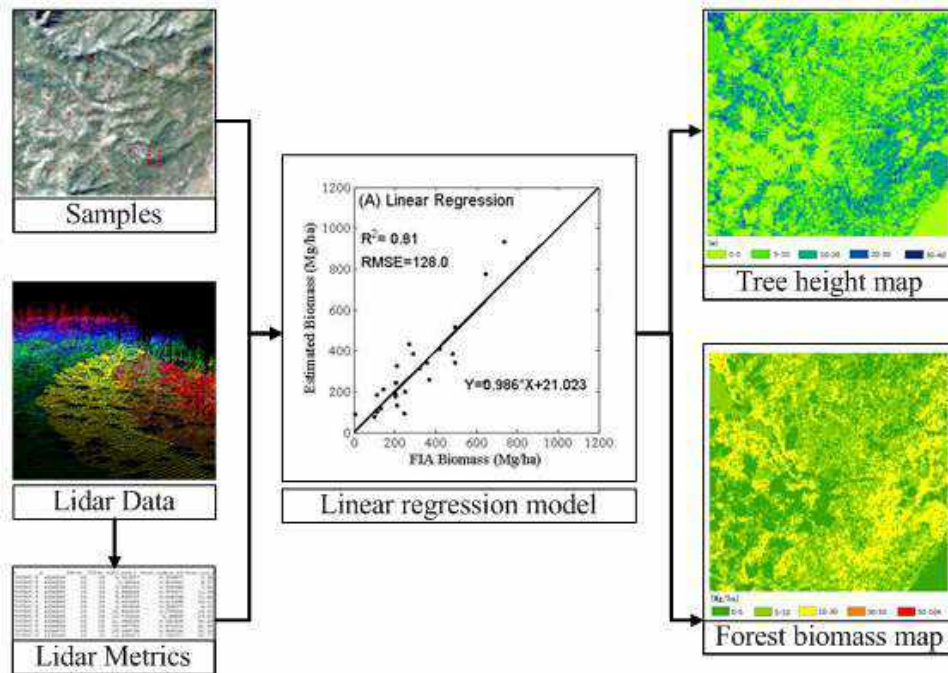
Note: The selected sample data should be within the extent of LiDAR point cloud. The XY range and scale of all imported .tif independent variables must be consistent. While importing a .csv file, X, Y, X size, and Y size will be imported as independent variables to the list. In this case, it is recommended to remove these 4 variables, or at least remove X size and Y size, depending on the case. It is also recommended to have more samples than dependent variables, otherwise it could lead to infinite solutions when solving the matrix.



# Linear Regression

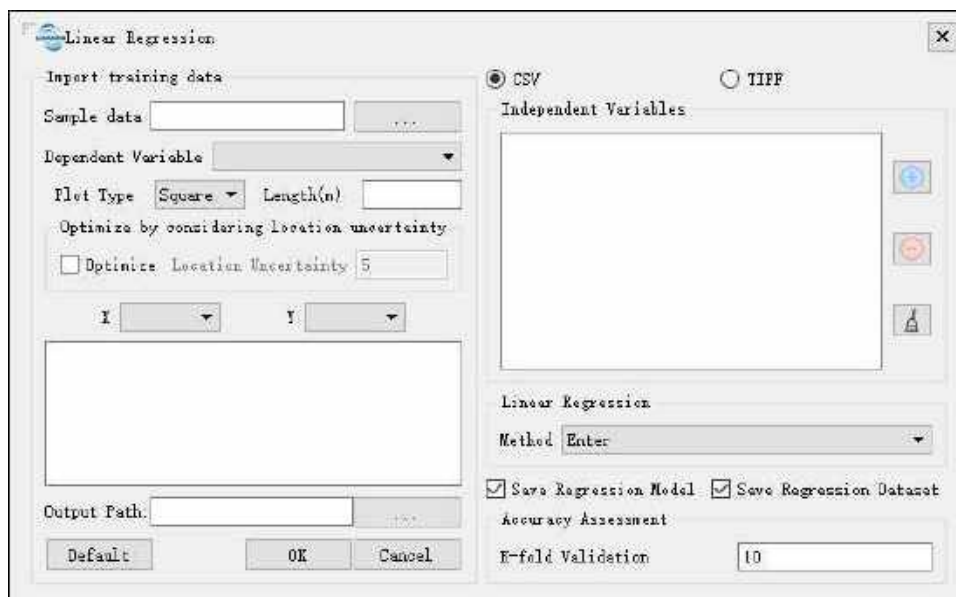
## Summary

Linear Regression performs analysis ( $Y = a_1X_1+a_2X_2+...+a_nX_n$ ) to predict forest parameters, such as tree height, biomass, etc., from field measurements and LiDAR-derived metrics.



## Usage

Navigate to and click on *ALS Forest > Regression Analysis > Linear Regression*.



## Settings

- **Import Training Data:** Refer to [Sample Data and Independent Variables](#).
- **Independent Variables:** Refer to [Sample Data and Independent Variables](#).
- **Linear Regression Method:** Users can define the method of linear regression here.
  - **Enter (default):** All selected independent variables will be included in the linear regression equation.
  - **Stepwise:** The choice of independent variables from the user input will be carried out by an automatic procedure. In each step, one independent variable is considered as an addition to the linear regression model, and each variable will be retained or removed from the model based on statistical t-test.
- **Accuracy Assessment:** Based on the K-Fold cross validation model, a sample would be partitioned into k subsets according to input K-Fold value (no less than 2). Take one of subsets as a validation dataset and rest of subsets as training datasets to form a model, then run this model and test the fitting of validation set to training sets. Repeat this process until every subset is treated as a validation set at least once and select out the model with the least MSE (mean square error) as the optimal model.
- **Save Regression Model:** Tick the checkbox to save the regression model (Linear Regression.model) under the output path.
- **Save Regression Dataset:** Tick the checkbox to save the training dataset (Linear Regression.csv) in .csv format under the output path.
- **Output Path:** Choose an output directory. A linear regression model report (Linear Regression.html), recording the model's parameters and accuracy (R-square, RMSE), would be generated under this directory. A prediction result file (Linear Regression.tif), based on the linear regression model and input variables from a .tif or .csv file, would also be generated under this output directory.

#### Linear Regression Summary

Regress Type	LINEAR				
Linear Regression Coeffs	a1	a2	a3	a4	a5
	0.42594355501	-0.920513309986	1.08612214327	0.515717171997	-3.89992128691
	a6	a7	a8	a9	a10
	5.32208922164	-2.03571577184	2.55419044528	-4.50899390082	-3.43392046593
	a11	a12	a13		
	5.46055222409	1.08123669727	-0.575347246215		
K-Fold	10				
R	0.944891274743				
R Square	0.892819521086				
RMSE	0.00853442112782				
Probability Value	0.0				
The Result of K-fold Test Insignificant	Yes				

#### Dependent and Independent Variable

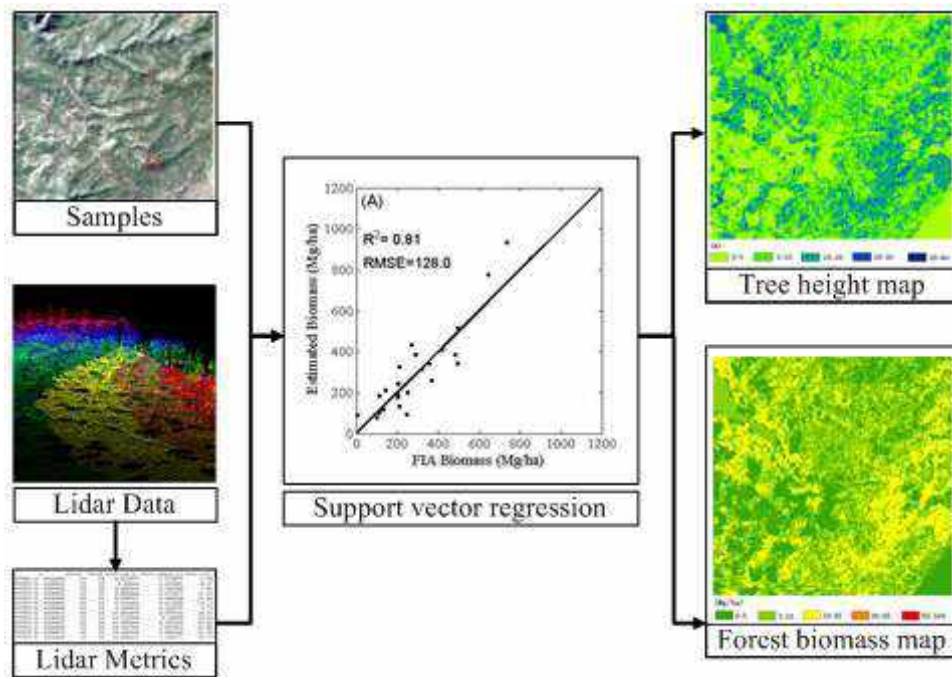
<b>Dependent Variable</b>	Biomass	
<b>Independent Variable</b>	elev_percentile_5th	elev_percentile_10th
	elev_percentile_20th	elev_percentile_25th
	elev_percentile_30th	elev_percentile_40th
	elev_percentile_50th	elev_percentile_60th
	elev_percentile_70th	elev_percentile_75th
	elev_percentile_80th	elev_percentile_90th
	elev_percentile_95th	

Note: The dimension of imported sample/training data must be within the scope of independent variables, which may be adjusted accordingly. The model/result is based on the passed-in variables.

# Support Vector Machine

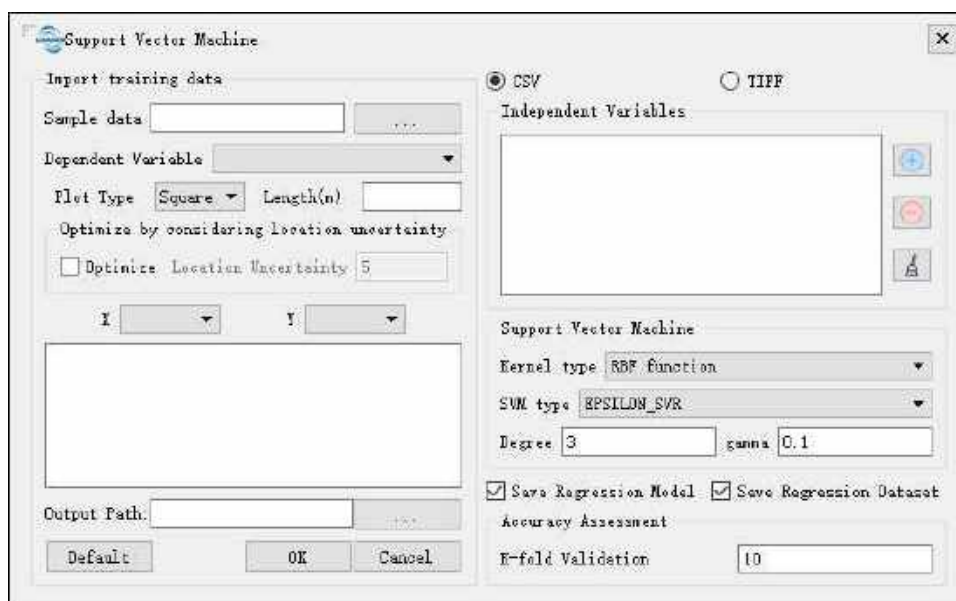
## Summary

This tool is an implementation of the LIBSVM (Chang et al.,2011) for support vector regression (SVR). LiDAR360 supports forest metrics estimation using two SVR types (epsilon-SVR and nu-SVR) and four kernel types (linear, polynomial, radial basis function and sigmoidal).



## Usage

Navigate to *ALS Forest > Regression Analysis > Support Vector Machine*.



## Settings

- **Import Training Data:** Refer to [Sample Data and Independent Variables](#).
- **Independent Variables:** Refer to [Sample Data and Independent Variables](#).
- **Kernel Type:** Users can select the type of kernel function here including RBF function, Linear, Polynomial, and Sigmoid.
  - **RBF Function (default):**  $\exp(-\gamma|x-x'|^2)$ , where  $\gamma > 0$ .
  - **Linear:**  $\langle x, x' \rangle$ .
  - **Polynomial:**  $(\gamma \langle x, x' \rangle + r)^{degree}$ , where  $\gamma > 0$ .
  - **Sigmoid:**  $\tanh(\gamma \langle x, x' \rangle + r)$ .
- **SVM Type:** Two types of SVM method are provided.
  - **EPSILON\_SVR (default):** EPSILON SVR( $\epsilon$ SVR).
  - **NU\_SVR:** NU SVR( $\nu$ SVR).
- **Degree (default value is "3"):** Kernel function parameter.
- **Gamma (default value is "0.1"):** Kernel function parameter.
- **Accuracy Assessment:** Based on the K-Fold cross validation model, a sample would be partitioned into k subsets according to input K-Fold value (no less than 2). Take one of subsets as a validation dataset and the remaining subsets as training datasets to form a model, then run this model and test the fitting of validation set to training sets. Repeat this process until every subset is treated as a validation set at least once and select out the model with the least MSE (mean square error) as the optimal model.
- **Save Regression Model:** Tick the checkbox to save the SVM model (Support Vector Machine.model) under the output path.
- **Save Regression Dataset:** Tick the checkbox to save the training dataset (Support Vector Machine.csv) in .csv format under the output path.
- **Output Path:** Choose an output directory. A support vector machine regression model report (Support Vector Machine.html), recording the model's parameters and accuracy (R-square, RMSE), would be generated under this directory. A prediction result file (Support Vector Machine.tif), based on the support vector machine regression model and input variables from a .tif or .csv file, would also be generated under this output directory.

## Support Vector Regression Summary

<b>Degree</b>	3
<b>Gama</b>	0.10000000149
<b>K-Fold</b>	10
<b>R</b>	0.801855560156
<b>R Square</b>	0.642972339353
<b>RMSE</b>	0.0284289120661
<b>Probability Value</b>	0.0
<b>The Result of K-fold Test Insignificant</b>	No

## Dependent and Independent Variable

<b>Dependent Variable</b>	Biomass	
<b>Independent Variable</b>	elev_percentile_1st	elev_percentile_5th
	elev_percentile_10th	elev_percentile_20th
	elev_percentile_25th	elev_percentile_30th
	elev_percentile_40th	elev_percentile_50th
	elev_percentile_60th	elev_percentile_70th
	elev_percentile_75th	elev_percentile_80th
	elev_percentile_90th	elev_percentile_95th
	elev_percentile_99th	

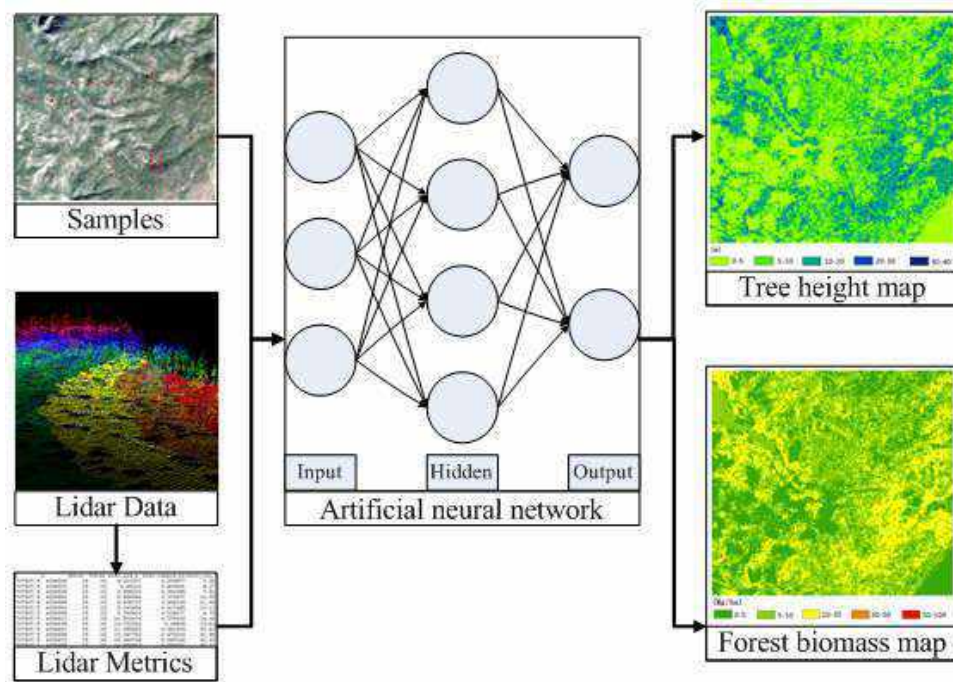
Note: The dimension of imported sample/training data must be within the scope of independent variables, which may be adjusted accordingly. The model/result is based on the passed-in variables.

```
@inproceedings{
  author={Chang C C and Lin C J},
  title={LIBSVM: A Library for Support Vector Machines},
  booktitle={ACM,2(3):1-27},
  year={2011}
}
```

# Fast Artificial Neural Network

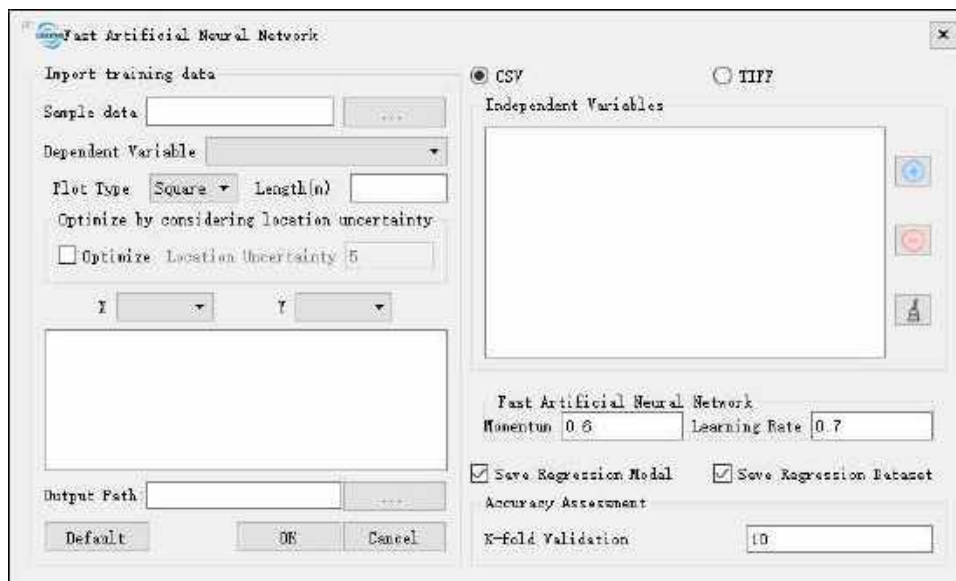
## Summary

Implementation of FANN (Fast Artificial Neural Network) regression to provide ANN (Artificial Neural Network) regression.



## Usage

Navigate to and click on *ALS Forest > Regression Analysis > Fast Artificial Neural Network*.



## Settings

- **Import Training Data:** Refer to [Sample Data and Independent Variables](#).
- **Independent Variables:** Refer to [Sample Data and Independent Variables](#).
- **Momentum (default value is "0.6"):** Set the momentum parameter in ANN regression analysis for selecting the optimized path.
- **Learning Rate (default value is "0.7"):** The global learning rate for training the network.
- **Accuracy Assessment:** Based on the K-Fold cross validation model, a sample would be partitioned into k subsets according to input K-Fold value (no less than 2). Take one of the subsets as a validation dataset and the remaining subsets as training datasets to form a model, then run this model and test the fitting of the validation set to training sets. Repeat this process until every subset is treated as a validation set at least once then select out the model with the least MSE (mean square error) as the optimal model.
- **Save Regression Model:** Tick the checkbox to save the ANN model (Fast Artificial Neural Network.model) under the output path.
- **Save Regression Dataset:** Tick the checkbox to save the ANN training dataset (Fast Artificial Neural Network.csv) in .csv format under the output path.
- **Output Path:** Choose an output directory. A fast artificial neural network regression model report (Fast Artificial Neural Network.html), recording the model's parameters and accuracy (R-square, RMSE), would be generated under this directory. A prediction result file (Fast Artificial Neural Network.tif), based on the fast artificial neural network regression model and input variables from a .tif or .csv file, would also be generated under this output directory.

## Artificial Neural Network Regression Summary

<b>Learning Rate</b>	0.699999988079
<b>Momentum Rate</b>	0.600000023842
<b>K-Fold</b>	10
<b>R</b>	0.89832207752
<b>R Square</b>	0.80698255496
<b>RMSE</b>	0.0153693301027
<b>Probability Value</b>	0.0
<b>The Result of K-fold Test Insignificant</b>	Yes

## Dependent and Independent Variable

<b>Dependent Variable</b>		
<b>Independent Variable</b>	elev_max_z	elev_min_z
	elev_mean_z	elev_median_z
	elev_percentile_1st	elev_percentile_5th
	elev_percentile_10th	

Note: The dimension of imported sample/training data must be within the scope of independent variables, which may be adjusted accordingly. The model/result is based on the passed-in variables.



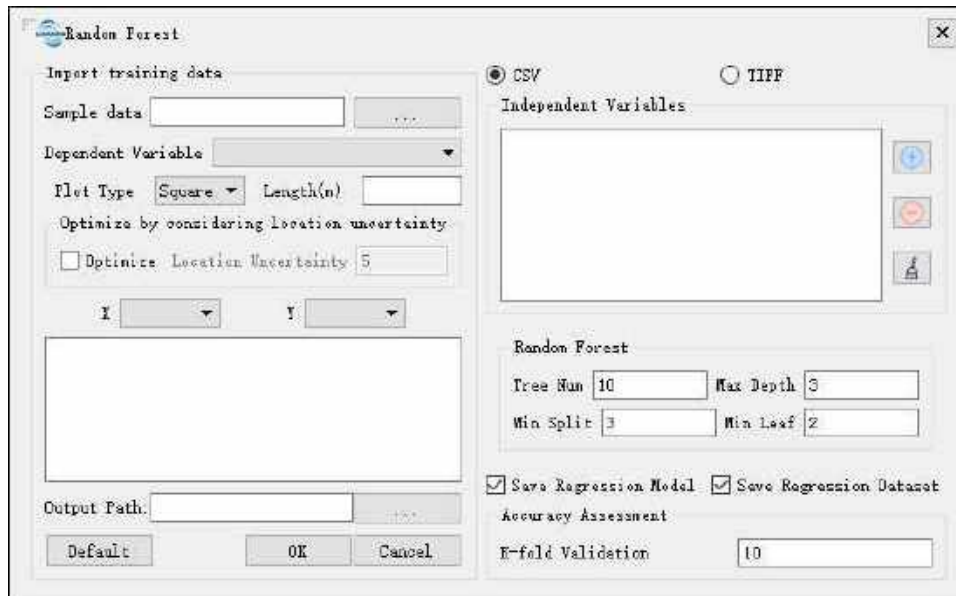
# Random Forest Regression

## Principle Description

This tool use Python Package [scikit-learn](#) and [NumPy](#) to build up the Random Forest model.

## Usage

Click *ALS Forest > Regression Analysis > Random Forest Regression*.



## Setting

- **Sample Data:** Please refer to [Sample Data and Independent Variables](#).
- **Independent Variables:** Please refer to [Sample Data and Independent Variables](#).
- **Random Forest:** These values define Random Forest's parameters.
  - **Tree Num:** Tree number in the Random Forest model.
  - **Max Depth:** The maximum depth of Random Forest model.
  - **Min Split:** The minimum split of Random Forest model.
  - **Min Leaf:** The minimum leaf number in Random Forest model.
- **Accuracy Assessment:** Use K-Fold cross-validation model. According to the inserted K-Fold parameters, divide the sample into K groups. Each group will be taken as testing data by training the model using other remaining samples. Note that K-Fold value should be larger than 1 (don't include 1).
- **Save Regression Model:** If the box is checked, a model named (Random Forest.model) will be generated in the output path, after the program being successfully run.
- **Save Regression Dataset:** If the box is checked, a training data model named (Random Forest.csv) will be generated in the output path, after the program being successfully run.
- **Output Path:** The path for the output files. The software will generate a model report (Random Forest.html) with the residuals and related values of the model, a result file (Random Forest.tif), and a regression model file (optional).
- **Default Value:** Restore all the default values for all parameters.

## Random Forest Regression Summary

<b>Tree Num</b>	10
<b>Max Depth</b>	3
<b>Min Split</b>	3
<b>Min Leaf</b>	2
<b>K-Fold</b>	10
<b>R</b>	0.965381896766
<b>R Square</b>	0.931962206603
<b>RMSE</b>	0.0054176207024
<b>Probability Value</b>	0.0
<b>The Result of K-fold Test Insignificant</b>	Yes

## Dependent and Independent Variable

<b>Dependent Variable</b>	Biomass	
<b>Independent Variable</b>	elev_percentile_1st	elev_percentile_5th
	elev_percentile_10th	elev_percentile_20th
	elev_percentile_25th	elev_percentile_30th
	elev_percentile_40th	elev_percentile_50th
	elev_percentile_60th	elev_percentile_70th
	elev_percentile_75th	elev_percentile_80th
	elev_percentile_90th	elev_percentile_95th
	elev_percentile_99th	

Note: The inserted sample data must be included in the range of inserted independent variables. The number of independent variables can be changed based on the users' situation. The final result is generated according to the inserted independent variables. Max Depth and Tree Num should be greater than 0.

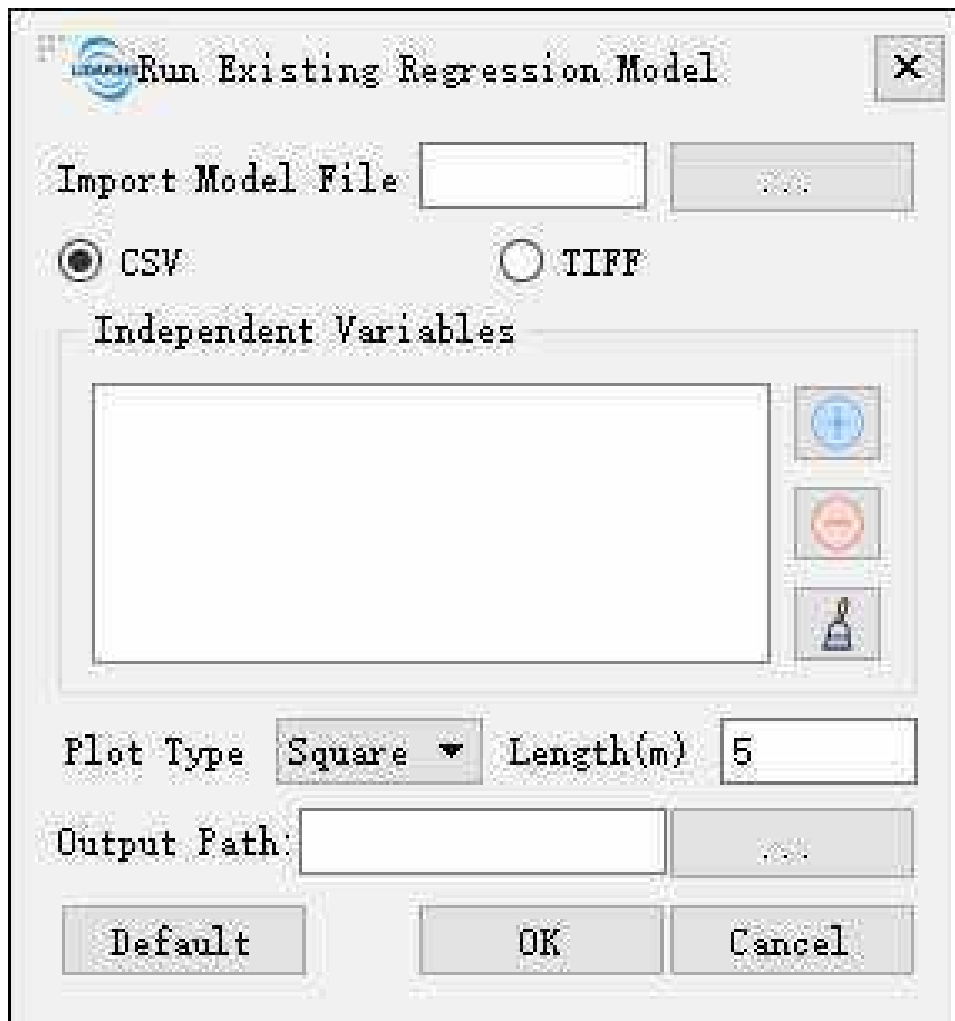
# Run Existing Regression Model

## Summary

This tool estimates forest metrics using any available regression models ([Linear Regression](#), [Support Vector Machine](#), [Fast Artificial Neural Network](#) and [Random Forest Regression](#)).

## Usage

Navigate to *ALS Forest > Regression Analysis > Run Existing Regression Model*.



## Insert Model File

Select a regression model file (\*.model) generated by the regression analysis tools, including linear regression, support vector machines, fast artificial neural network, or random forest, etc.

## Insert Independent Variables

Inserted file should be in CSV or TIF format. CSV files must have attributes of X, Y, XSize, and YSize. Each attribute will be added into the list as a independent variable. Only one CSV file can be added; while several TIF files can be added. Each TIF will be added to the list as a independent variable with its file name. The number of independent variables must be the same as the number of independent variables in the model selected. (To learn more about each independent variable, please refer to [Elevation Metrics](#), [Intensity Metrics](#), [Canopy Cover](#), [Leaf Area Index](#), and [Gap Fraction](#))

## Setting

- **Plot Type:** This parameter defines the plot type. Users can choose that according to the survey in the sample data.
  - **Square (default):** The plot is in square shape.
  - **Circle:** The plot is in circle shape.
- **Length (meters):** When the plot type is square, set the length of the plot.
- **Radius (meters):** When the plot type is circle, set the radius of the plot.
- **Output Path:** Select the path for the output files. The software will generate two files, "Regression Predict.tif" file and "Regression Predict.html" report, after succeeding to predict. The TIF file is the result of prediction.

Note: the number of inserted independent variable must be the same as the number of independent variables in the inserted model. Otherwise, it will lead to failing to predict or large residuals.

# Segmentation

Segmentation provides a series of functions for segmenting individual trees and therefore acquire individual tree attributes from ALS data.

- [CHM Segmentation](#)
- [View the CHM Segmentation Results](#)
- [Point Cloud Segmentation](#)
- [View the Point Cloud Segmentation Results](#)
- [Generate Seed Points from CHM](#)
- [Generate Seeds from Layer Stacking](#)
- [Point Cloud Segmentation from Seed Points](#)

# CHM Segmentation

## Summary

CHM segmentation utilizes the watershed segmentation (Chen et al., 2006) technique to identify and delineate individual trees, and therefore obtain individual tree information, such as tree location, tree height, crown diameter, crown area and tree boundaries.

## Principle

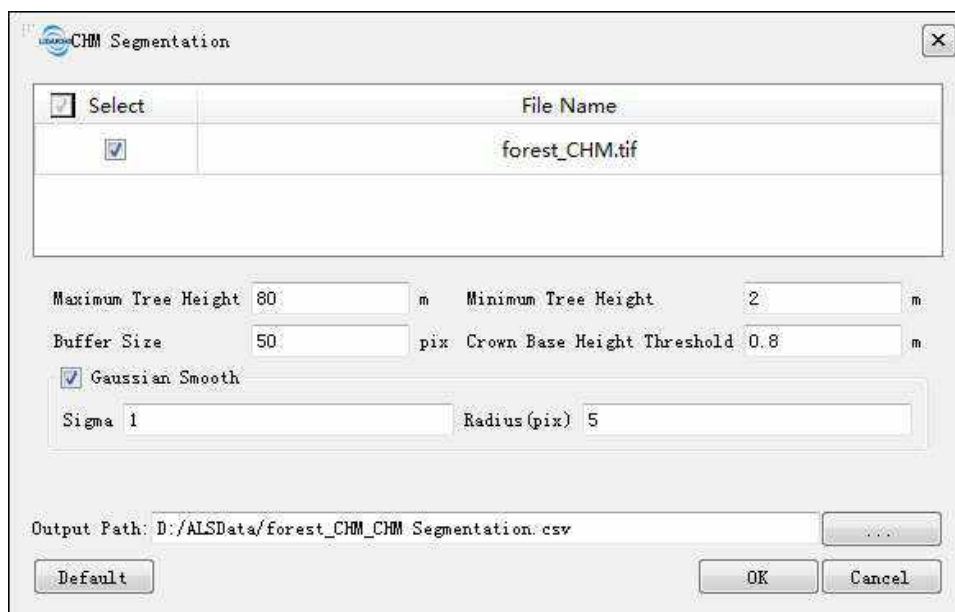
The basic principle of watershed segmentation algorithm is if placing a water source in each regional lowest point in the CHM and flooding the entire relief, barriers can be generated when different water sources meet. The resulting set of barriers can build a watershed by flooding, which is the segmentation result. Note that the CHM segmentation result can be affected by the CHM resolution. It is recommended that the CHM should have a spatial resolution higher than 1 m to ensure a sufficient segmentation result. Moreover, the CHM segmentation result can also be largely influenced by tree density and tree species. If the algorithm does not work well in certain study area, users can try to use other segmentation algorithms to get the best segmentation result.



(a) CHM; (b) Watershed Segmentation Algorithm; (c) CHM Segmentation Result

## Usage

Navigate to *ALS Forest > Segmentation > CHM Segmentation*.



## Settings

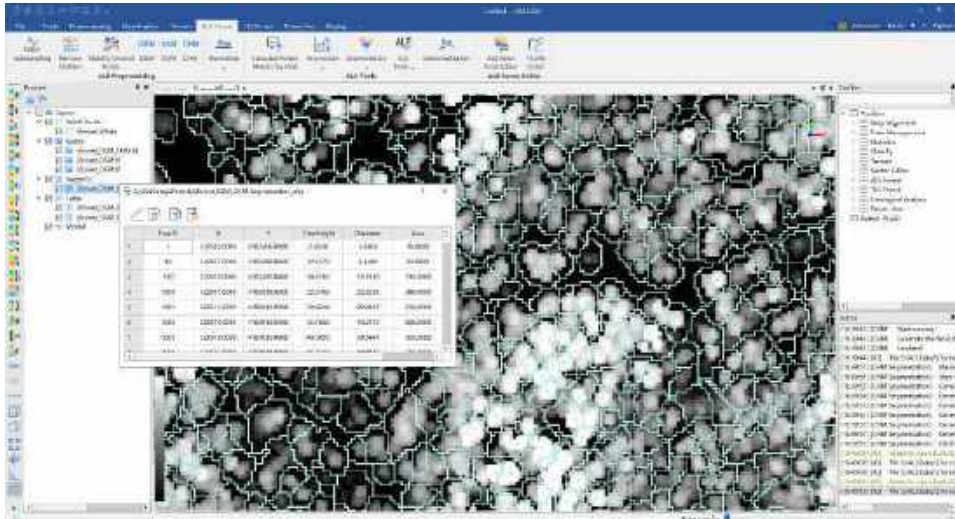
- **Input Data:** The input file can be a single [CHM](#) file or multiple CHM files. The data should be opened in LiDAR360 before being processed.
- **Maximum Tree Height (meter)(default value is "80"):** The threshold defining the maximum tree height in a study areas. CHM pixels above this threshold will not be considered in the segmentation.
- **Minimum Tree Height (meter)(default value is "2"):** The threshold defining the minimum tree height in a study areas. CHM pixels below this threshold will not be considered in the segmentation.
- **Buffer Size (pix)(default value is "50"):** A threshold controls the block size for performing CHM segmentation, which can avoid physical memory overflow. This value should be larger than the maximum crown area and smaller than 1500. If the CHM is larger than 1500 by 1500 pixels, the CHM will be forced to divided into a number of blocks with a size of 1500 by 1500 pixels.
- **Crown Base Height Threshold (meter)(default value is "0.8"):** The starting height of the crown range. A reasonable base height value can help to improve the accuracy of the boundary and area of crown. After setting the base height, the pixels higher than this height will be included to generate the vector boundary of crown, while the pixels lower than this height will be excluded. Users should set this value according to the species and growing situation of the trees in order to get the best result.
- **Gaussian Smooth (optional):** This parameter is to control whether to perform Gaussian smoothing. In general, it is recommended to check the Gaussian smoothing option to remove noise effects.
- **Sigma (default value is "1"):** Gaussian smoothing factor. The greater the value is, the smoother the results are. The degree of smoothness can affect the number of trees being segmented. In the case of under-segmentation, it is recommended to reduce this value (e.g. 0.5); and in the case of over-segmentation, it is recommended to increase the value (e.g. 1.5).
- **Radius (pix)(default value is "5"):** The window size used by Gaussian smoothing, which should be an odd number. Generally, it can be set to the average crown diameter.
- **Output Path:** Path of the output file. The resultant product is a comma-separated table in "csv" format and a polygon file in "shp" format. The CSV table contains the ID, location (x and y coordinates), height, crown diameter, and crown area of each segmented tree. The shp file contains the boundary of each tree, and its corresponding attribute table contains the ID, location (x and y coordinates), height, crown diameter, and crown area of each segmented tree. Refer to the [CHM Segmentation Results](#) for segmentation result examples.
- **DefaultValue:** Restore the default parameters.

Note: The CHM Segmentation function can only be used when the raster data is loaded in the software. Otherwise, the message "There is no raster data!" will pop up.

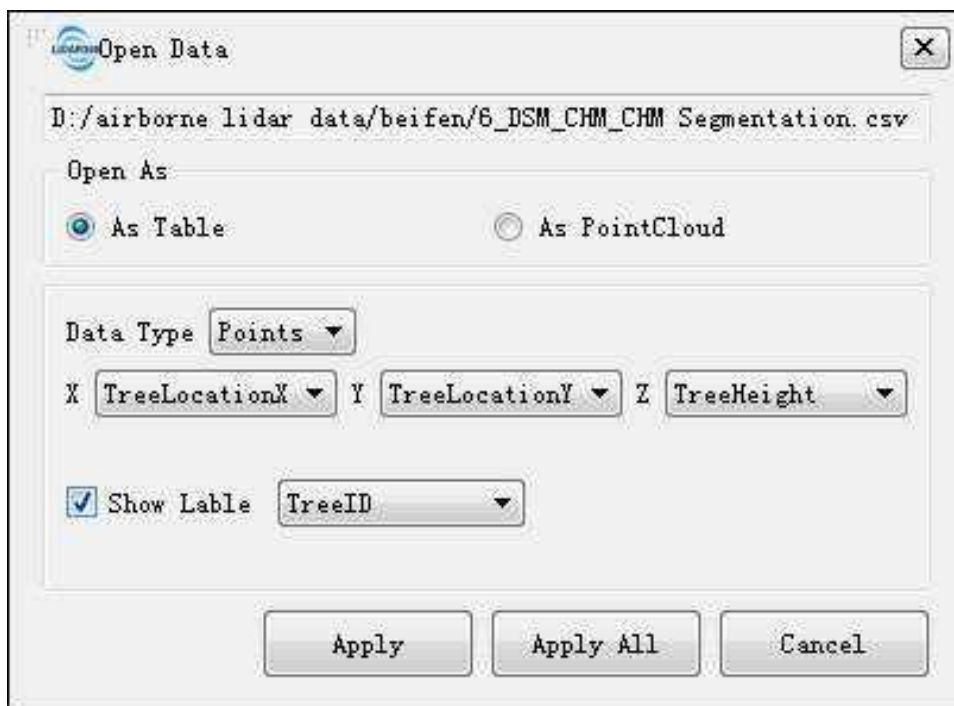
```
@inproceedings{
  author={Chen Q, Baldocchi D, Gong P and Kelly M},
  title={ Isolating Individual Trees in a Savanna Woodland Using Small Footprint Lidar Data},
  booktitle={Photogrammetric Engineering and Remote Sensing, 72(8): 923-932},
  year={2006},
}
```

## View the CHM Segmentation Results

After the CHM segmentation is completed, each input CHM data will generate a corresponding CSV file and SHP file, and the CHM can be superimposed and displayed with the CSV file and the shp file. Load the CHM, csv and shp files into the software respectively. The following figure shows the superimposed display effect of CHM and shp data, and the attribute table of csv data.

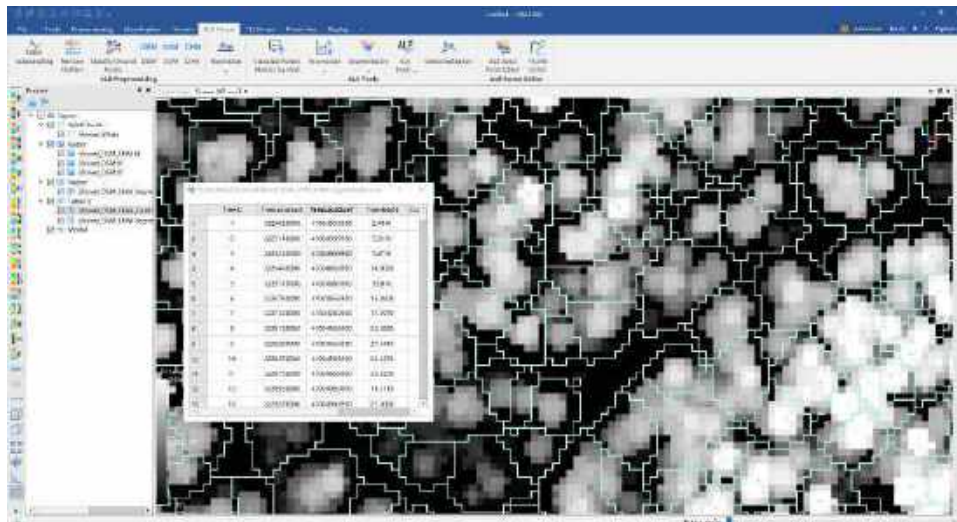


Open the csv file as a table, as shown below, and select the X, Y, Z corresponding to the TreeLocationX, TreeLocationY and TreeHeight, respectively. Check the "Show Label" option (if the label has too much text and block other information, one can remove the data and reopen it without checking the "Show Label" option). Click "Apply" to load the csv file in the software.



On the csv file name, click the mouse right button, select Table Attribute, and the property information will be prompted. Double-click on the mouse left button anywhere in each line, the viewer will jump to the corresponding individual tree location.





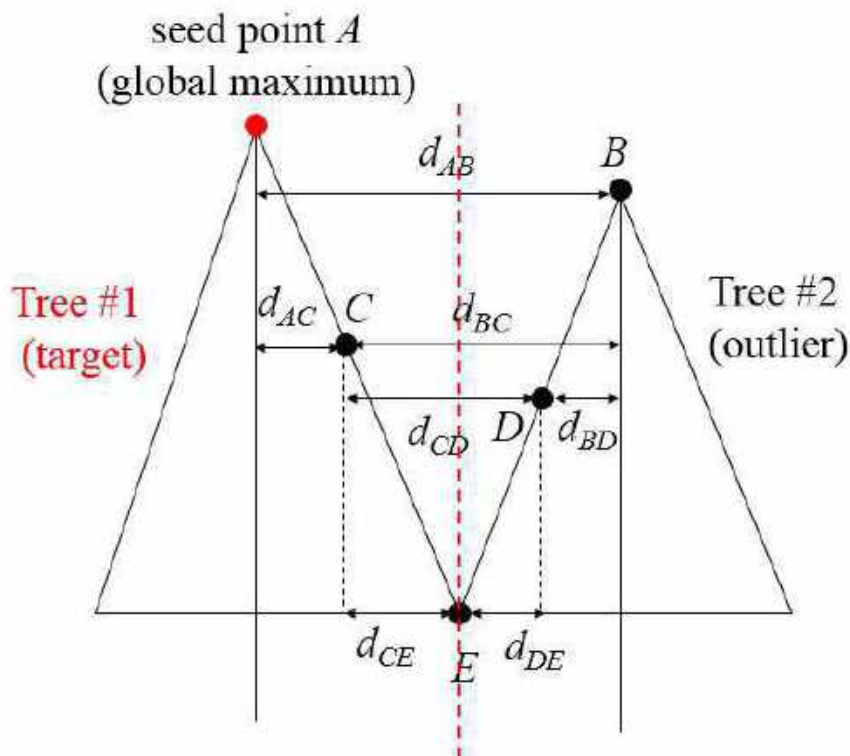
# Point Cloud Segmentation

## Summary

Point Cloud Segmentation can directly segment LiDAR point cloud, which can reduce the influence of under-canopy information loss in the CHM segmentation method. Individual tree information, including tree location, tree height, crown diameter, crown area and crown volume can be obtained from the segmentation results.

## Background

The point cloud segmentation algorithm was developed by Li et al.(2012). This method assumes that there are always gaps between trees. By finding the local maximum as seed points, each individual tree can be segmented based on the geometric correlations between each point and the seed points. The principle of this method is shown below:



The algorithm starts from the global maximum value, using it as the seed point A of the first segmented tree. Then, another local maximum, B, which is close to A but with a distance to A  $d_{AB}$  larger than the user-defined threshold, will be used as the seed point of the second segmented tree. Every point between A and B will be clustered to one of these two trees following the minimum spacing rule. For example, if the spacing between point C and the first tree  $d_{AC}$  is less than that between point C and the second tree  $d_{BC}$ , point C will be clustered to the first tree correspondingly; if the spacing between point D and the first tree  $d_{AD}$  is larger than that between point D and the second tree  $d_{BD}$ , point D will be clustered to the second tree; if a point (point E) has the same distances to point A and point B, it will be set as the boundary point of these two trees. The spacing threshold should be close to the radius of the individual tree crown. When the spacing threshold is too large or too small, under-segmentation or over-segmentation may occur.

## Usage

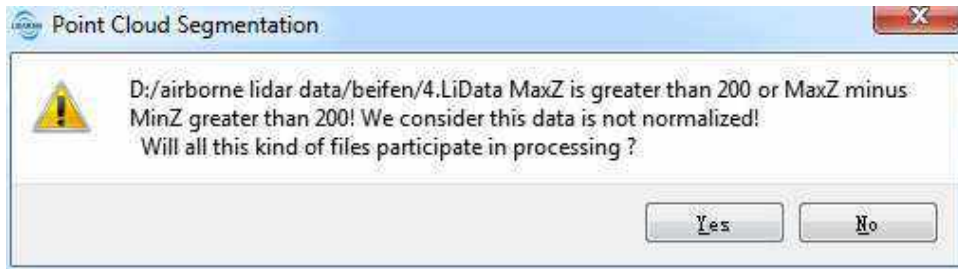
To identify individual trees using point cloud segmentation, navigate to and click on *ALS Forest > Segmentation > Point Cloud Segmentation*.



## Settings

- **From Class:** Classes which participate in the point cloud segmentation (All classes by default).
- **Input Data:** Ensure that each input point cloud data is [Normalize by DEM](#) or [Normalize by Ground Points](#). The input file can be a single file or multiple data files. Point cloud data should be opened in LiDAR360 before being segmented.
- **Spacing Threshold (meter)(default value is "2"):** The 2D euclidean distance between the top of the tree is very important for tree segmentation. When setting the distance threshold parameter, the threshold value should be lower than the minimum allowable 2D Euclidean distance between two adjacent trees.
- **Height Above Ground (meter)(default value is "2"):** Usually it is desirable to ignore points below a certain height to avoid the influence of low vegetation (e.g., grass and shrubs). Points below this threshold will not be considered in the segmentation. A value of 2 meters is commonly used.
- **Optimize color rendering for individual tree segmentation result (checked by default):** By reorganizing the tree ID generated after the individual tree segmentation, it can greatly solve the problem of rendering the same color to the trees next to each other.
- **Output Path:** Path of the output file. The resultant product is a comma-separated table in .csv format which contains the TreeID, location (x and y coordinates), height, crown diameter, crown area and crown volume of each individual tree. Refer to [ALS point cloud segmentation results](#) for the output example.
- **DefaultValue:** Restore the default parameters.

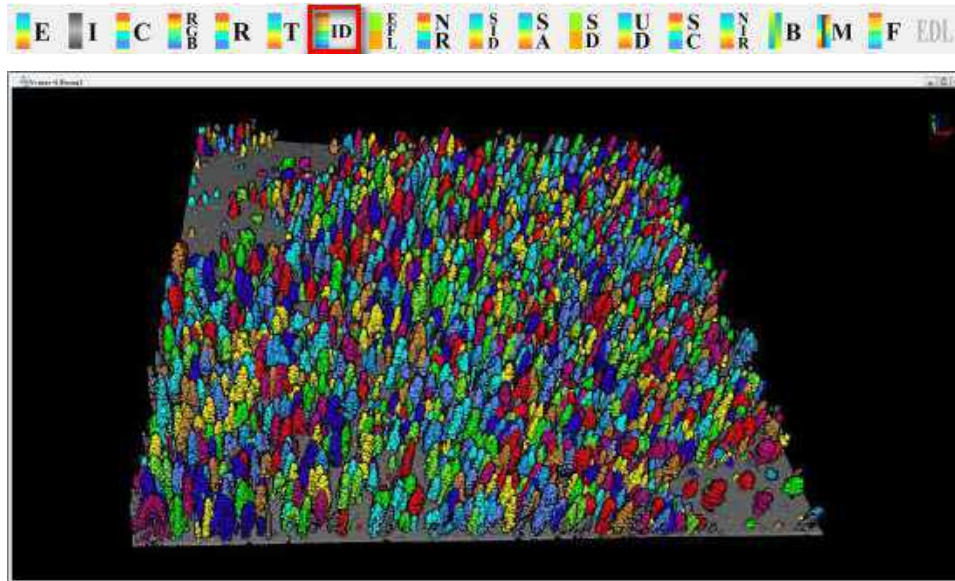
Note: Only when the point cloud data are loaded in the software, can you use the Point Cloud Segmentation function; otherwise the message "There is no point cloud data meeting the conditions of calculation!" will pop up. If the maximum Z value of the point cloud is greater than 200 meters or the maximum Z minus the minimum Z is greater than 200 meters, the data is considered to not have been normalized, and the prompt information shown in the figure below will pop up. Click "YES" to keep using this type of data in the operation; otherwise, click "NO" and reselect the input data file.



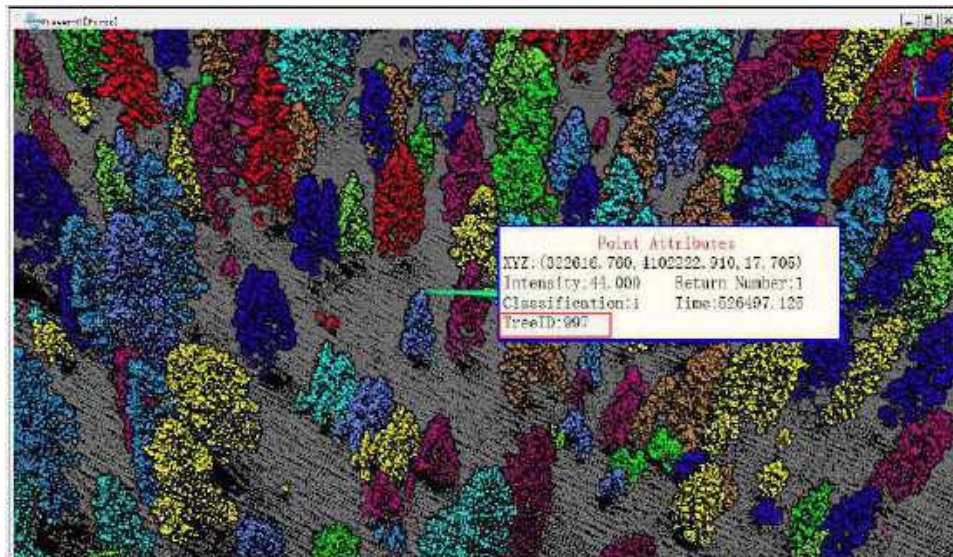
```
@inproceedings{
  author={ Li W K, Guo Q H, Jakubowski M K and Kelly M},
  title={A new method for segmentation individual trees from the LiDAR point cloud},
  booktitle={ Photogrammetric Engineering and Remote Sensing,78(1):75-84},
  year={2012}
}
```

## View the Point Cloud Segmentation Results

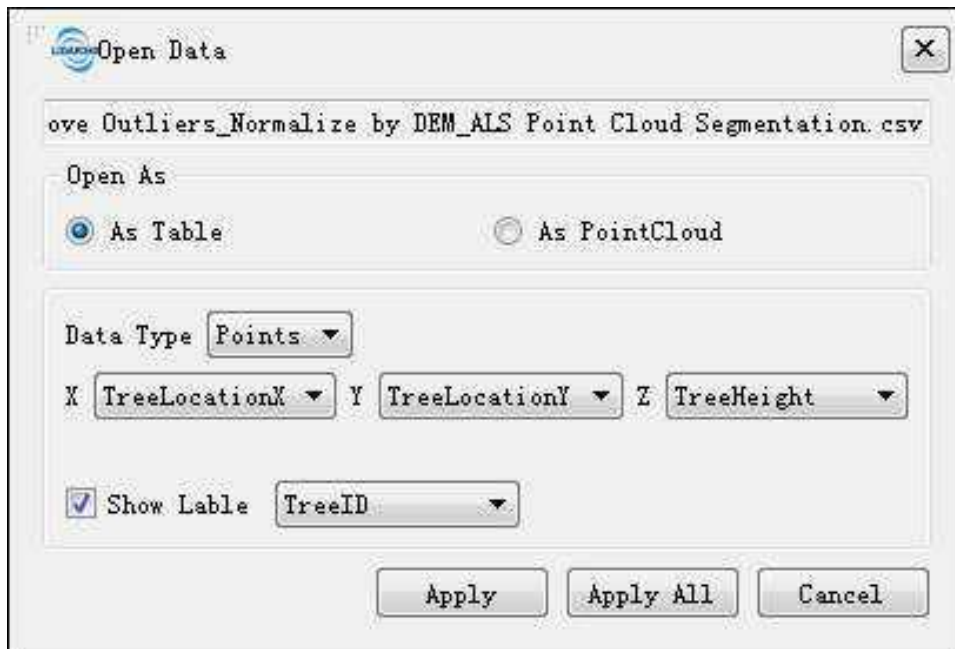
After segmenting the trees, Tree IDs are saved to each point in the point clouds used in the segmentation, the results can be viewed within a window viewer. Load the point cloud used for the tree segmentation into a 3D viewer. Ensure the viewer is active and press the Display by Tree ID button in the color tools toolbar. The following is an example of a point cloud colored by individual tree. The [ALS Editor](#) tool can be used to check the single tree segmentation results. At the same time, it can be used for editing operations such as add, delete seed points etc., and segment the point cloud data based on the edited seed points.



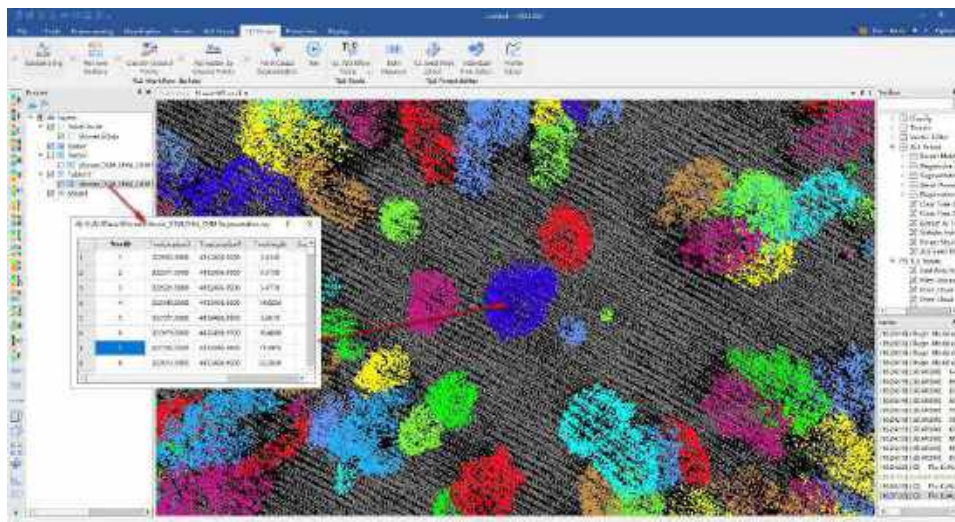
The tree ID attribute of each point can be queried by the [Pick Point](#) (  ) tool on the toolbar.



CSV file generated by segmentation can be superimposed with the point cloud, and the CSV file can be opened as a table. Select X, Y and Z as the TreeLocationX, TreeLocationY and TreeHeight respectively in the CSV file as shown below, and check the Show Label (if the label has too much text and blocking other data, affect the display effect, you can remove the data and open again, do not check the Show Label), click “Apply” to load the CSV file in the software.



Click the right mouse button on the CSV file name, select Table Attribute, you can view the property information, double-click the left mouse button anywhere in each line, you can jump to the corresponding location. The following figure shows the effect of superimposed display of point cloud data and CSV file. Open the attribute table of the CSV file and double-click to jump to the selected row.



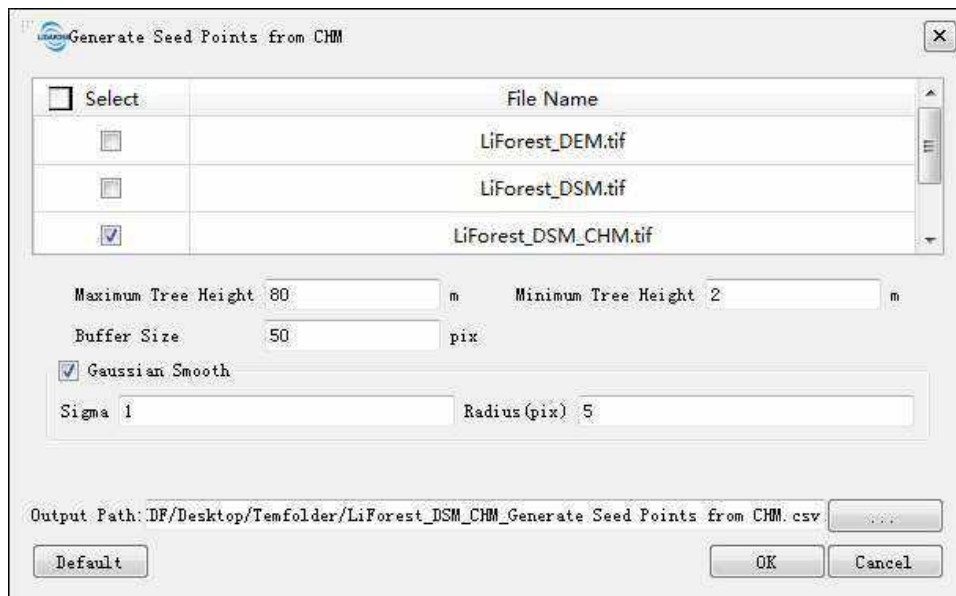
# Generate Seed Points from CHM

## Summary

This tool aims to generate individual tree seed points from CHM so that they can be used for Point Cloud Segmentation based on Seeds. The [ALS Editor](#) tool can be used to edit the seed points and therefore improve the individual tree segmentation accuracy.

## Usage

Navigate to *ALS Forest > Segmentation > Generate Seed Points from CHM*.



## Settings

- **Input Data:** The input file can be a single [CHM](#) file or multiple CHM files. The data should be opened in LiDAR360 before being processed.
- **Maximum Tree Height (meter)(default value is "80"):** The threshold defining the maximum tree height in a study areas. CHM pixels above this threshold will not be considered in the segmentation.
- **Minimum Tree Height (meter)(default value is "2"):** he threshold defining the minimum tree height in a study areas. CHM pixels below this threshold will not be considered in the segmentation.
- **Buffer Size (pix)(default value is "50"):** A threshold controls the block size for performing CHM segmentation, which can avoid physical memory overflow. This value should be larger than the maximum crown area and smaller than 1500. If the CHM is larger than 1500 by 1500 pixels, the CHM will be forced to divided into a number of blocks with a size of 1500 by 1500 pixels.
- **Gaussian Smooth (optional):** This parameter is to control whether to perform Gaussian smoothing. In general, it is recommended to check the Gaussian smoothing option to remove noise effects.
- **Sigma (default value is "1"):** Gaussian smoothing factor. The greater the value is, the smoother the results are. The degree of smoothness can affect the number of trees being segmented. In the case of under-segmentation, it is recommended to reduce this value (e.g. 0.5); and in the case of over-segmentation, it is recommended to increase the value (e.g. 1.5).
- **Radius (pix)(default value is "5"):** The window size used by Gaussian smoothing, which should be an odd

number. Generally, it can be set to the average crown diameter.

- **Output Path:** Path of the output file. The resultant product is a comma-separated table in “csv” format which contains ID and x, y, z coordinates of each seed points.
- **DefaultValue:** Restore the default parameters.

Note: Generate Seed by CHM Segmentation function can only be used when the raster data is loaded in the software. Otherwise, the message “There is no raster data!” will pop up. The interface and parameters setting of Generate Seed by CHM are the same as those of CHM Segmentation. The difference between these two tool is that CHM Segmentation will generate a csv file that includes attributes such as tree height, crown diameter and crown area, and a shp file for tree boundary, while Generate Seed by CHM will not generate a shp file. For the seed point file format, refer to [Seed Points File](#).



# Generate Seeds from Layer Stacking

## Summary

This tool aims to generate individual tree seed points using an layer stacking algorithm so that they can be used for Point Cloud Segmentation based on Seeds. The [ALS Editor](#) tool can be used to edit the seed points and therefore improve the individual tree segmentation accuracy.

## Usage

Navigate to *ALS Forest > Segmentation > Generate Seeds from Layer Stacking*.

Generate Seeds from Layer Stacking

Select

File Name

LiForest, LiData

*(Note: Input point cloud data must have normalized elevation values!)*

From Class: 1, 2

XSize: 1 m YSize: 1 m

Height Above Ground: 2 m Layer Thickness: 1 m

Minimum Spacing Between Trees: 1 m Buffer Size: 50 pix

Gaussian Smooth

Sigma: 1 Radius (pix): 5

Output Path: sktop/Tenfolder/LiForest\_Generate Seeds from Layer Stacking.csv

Default OK Cancel

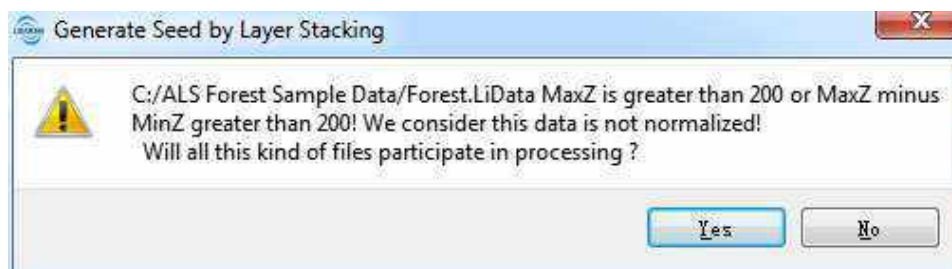
## Settings

- **Input Data:** Ensure that each input point cloud data is [Normalize by DEM](#) or [Normalize by Ground Points](#). The input file can be a single file or multiple data files. Point cloud data should be opened in LiDAR360 before being processed.
- **XSize (meter)(default value is "1"):** Grid x-axis resolution. It is recommended to set this parameter between 0.3m and 2m.
- **YSize (meter)(default value is "1"):** Grid y-axis resolution, It is recommended to set this parameter between 0.3m and 2m.
- **Height Above Ground (meter)(default value is "2"):** Usually, it is desirable to ignore points below a particular height to avoid influence low vegetations (e.g., grass and shrub). Points below this threshold will not be considered in the segmentation. A value of 2 m is commonly used.
- **Layer Thickness (meter)(default value is "1"):** The layer thickness is used to cut the layer for stacking. It is recommended to set this parameter between 0.5m and 2m.
- **Minimum Spacing Between Trees (meter)(default value is "1"):** This parameter should be set as the minimum spacing of the tree. This parameter can be adjusted to avoid over- or under-segmentation.
- **Buffer Size (pix)(default value is "50"):** A threshold controls the block size for performing segmentation, which can avoid physical memory overflow. This value should be larger than the maximum crown area and

smaller than 1500. If the image is larger than 1500 by 1500 pixels, it will be forced to divided into a number of blocks with a size of 1500 by 1500 pixels.

- **Gaussian Smooth (optional)**: This parameter is to control whether to perform Gaussian smoothing. In general, it is recommended to check the Gaussian smoothing option to remove noise effects.
- **Sigma (default value is "1")**: Gaussian smoothing factor. The greater the value is, the smoother the results are. The degree of smoothness can affect the number of trees being segmented. In the case of under-segmentation, it is recommended to reduce this value (e.g. 0.5); and in the case of over-segmentation, it is recommended to increase the value (e.g. 1.5).
- **Radius (pix)(default value is "5")**: The window size used by Gaussian smoothing, which should be an odd number. Generally, it can be set to the average crown diameter.
- **Output Path**: Path of the output file. The resultant product is a comma-separated table in "csv" format which contains the ID and x, y, z coordinates of each seed points.
- **DefaultValue**: Restore the default parameters.

Note: Only when the point cloud data is loaded in the software can you use the Generate Seed by Layer Stacking function; otherwise, the message "There is no point cloud data meeting the conditions of calculation!" will pop up. If the maximum Z value of the point cloud is greater than 200 m or the maximum Z minus the minimum Z is greater than 200 m, the data is not considered to have been normalized, and the prompt information shown in the figure below will pop up. Click "YES" to keep using this type of data in the operation; otherwise, click "NO" and reselect the input data file. The seed point file obtained by layer stacking is the same as the seed point file generated by CHM, please refer to [Seed Points File](#).



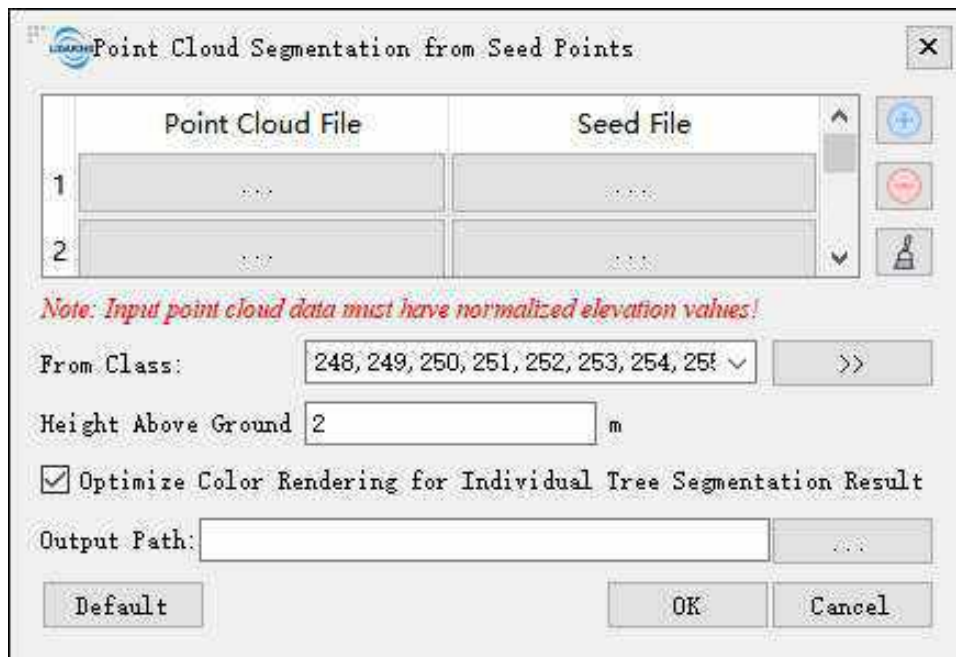
# Point Cloud Segmentation from Seed Points

## Summary


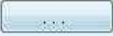




This function supports batch processing of multiple files. The input data includes normalized point cloud data and the corresponding seed points file. For the generation of seed points file please refer to [Generate Seed Points from CHM](#) and [Generate Seeds from Layer Stacking](#).

## Usage

Navigate to and click on *ALS Forest > Segmentation > Point Cloud Segmentation from Seed Points*.



## Settings

- **From Class:** Classes which participate in the PCS with seeds (all classes by default).
- **Input Data:** Ensure that each input point cloud data is [Normalize by DEM](#) or [Normalize by Ground Points](#).
- **Point Cloud File:** Click  to select the point cloud data to be processed.
- **Seed File:** Click  to select the seed file.
- : Five datasets can be processed in batch by default. Click  to add more files to be processed.
- : Delete the selected point cloud and seed points file.
- : Clear the file list.
- **Height Above Ground (meter)(default value is "2"):** Point cloud data above this value will be divided into single trees. To split low trees, set this value to be smaller than the minimum tree height to be divided.
- **Optimize color rendering for individual tree segmentation result (checked by default):** By reorganizing the tree ID generated after the individual tree segmentation, it can greatly solve the problem of rendering the same color to the trees next to each other. Note: if choosing to optimize the color rendering, the tree IDs in new csv file for individual tree segmentation are not one-to-one correspond to those in the input seeds files.
- **Output Path:** Path of the output file. The output product is a comma-separated table in the .csv format which contains the ID of each tree, the x, y coordinate locations, the tree height, the crown diameter, the crown

area and the crown volume. Refer to [ALS point cloud segmentation results](#).

- **DefaultValue:** Restore the default parameters.

To view the segmentation results, please refer to [View the Point Cloud Segmentation Results](#).

# Batch Process

The batch processing menu contains the automated workflows for the extraction of forest metrics, which includes Forest Metrics, Point Cloud Segmentation, Canopy Height Model(CHM) Segmentation, and all prerequisites for these operations as follows:

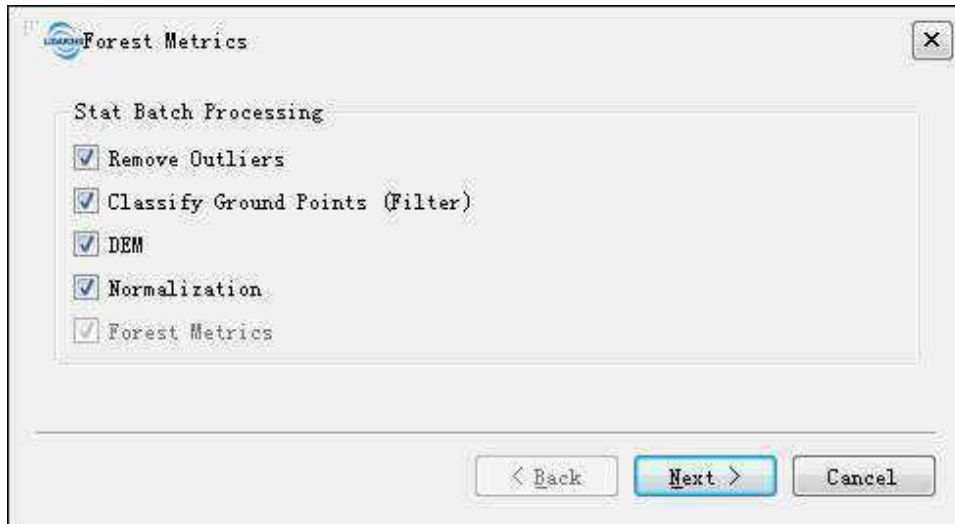
1. Remove Outliers
  2. Classify Ground Points (Filter)
  3. DEM
  4. Normalize by DEM
  5. Forest Metrics, Point Cloud Segmentation or Canopy Height Model(CHM) Segmentation processing
- [Forest Metrics](#)
  - [Point Cloud Segmentation](#)
  - [Canopy Height Model\(CHM\) Segmentation](#)

# Forest Metrics

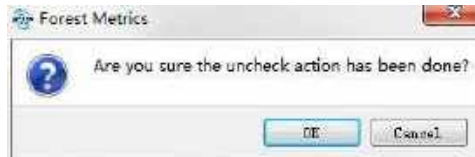
## Usage

Navigate to *ALS Forest > Batch Process > Forest Metrics*. The For Forest Metrics tool can extract all metrics found in the *ALS Forest > Forest Metrics* automatically.

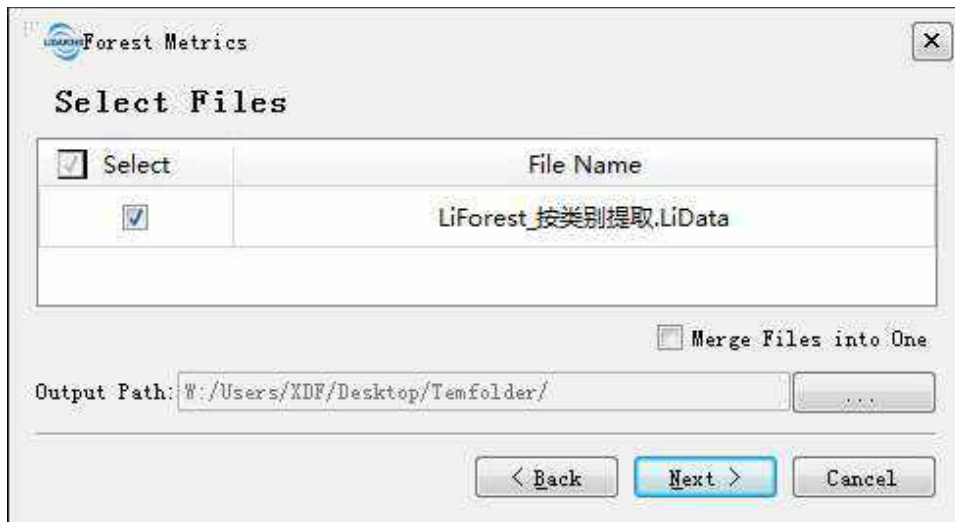
The first interface that appears in the dialog box is a series of steps to be followed in the automatic extraction of statistical parameters.



If any process has been completed, it can be ignored in the batch. Clicking "Next" will prompt a dialog shown as follows to ask whether the uncheck step has been done? If yes, click "OK" to the next step to select the file for batch processing.

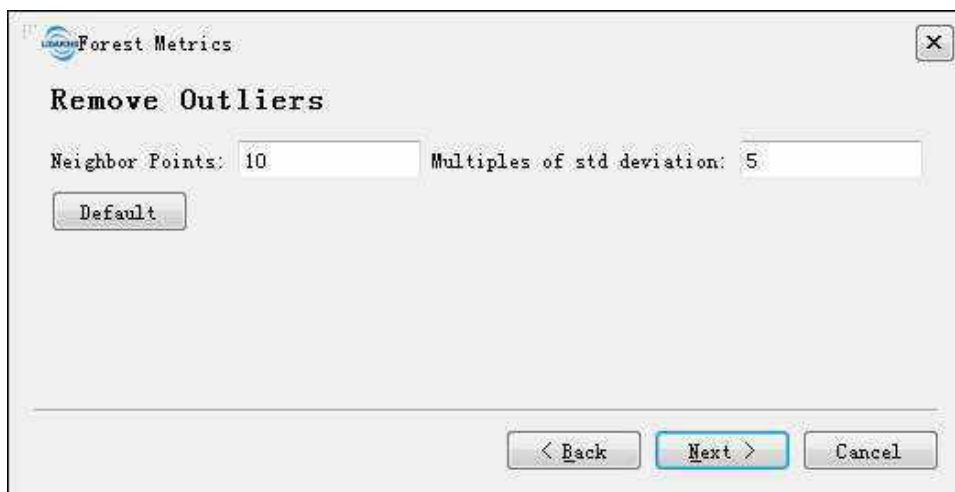


All the point cloud data opened in the software is showed in the list of unprocessed file. Users can determine whether the data is involved in the operation use the check box in front of the file name. By default, each point cloud data will be processed separately. If you check "Merge files into one", the software will merge the selected point cloud data into one file before subsequent processing.

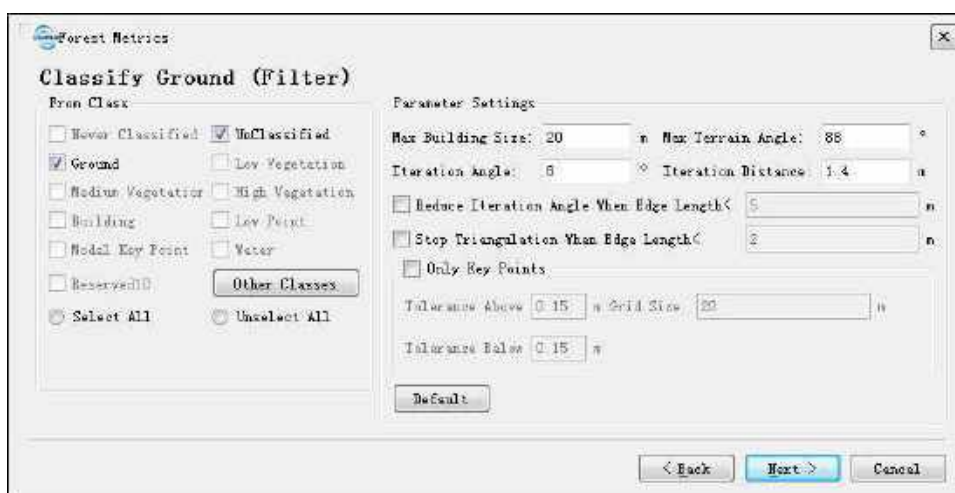


Click "Next" and set appropriate parameters for all steps involved in the batch processing.

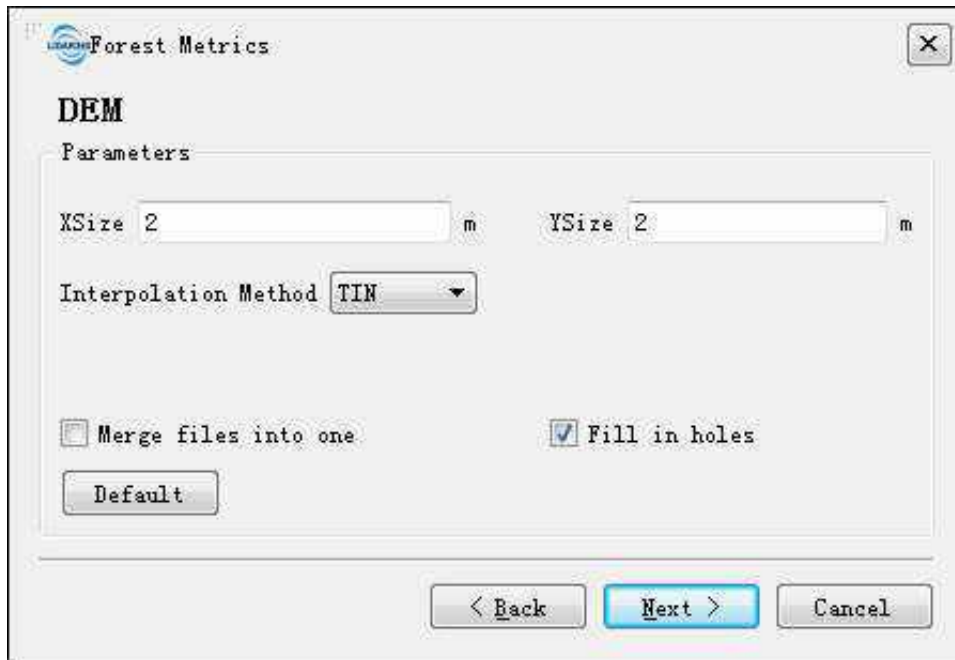
For parameters setting of "Outlier Removal", please refer to [Remove Outliers](#).



For parameters setting of "Classify Ground Points", please refer to [Classify Ground Points](#).



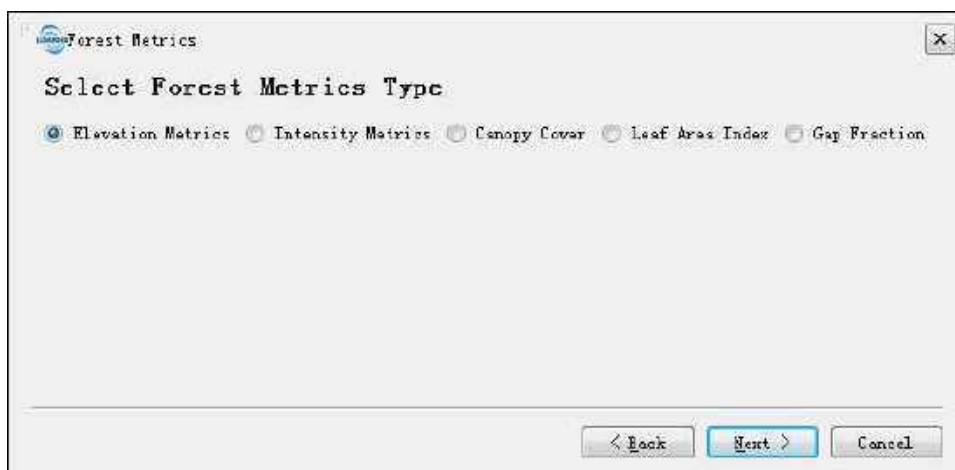
For parameters setting of "DEM", please refer to [DEM](#).



At the step of "Input DEM File", users can choose the DEM generated by the last step or an existing one already loaded into the project (the speed of batch processing will increase dramatically if an existing DEM is used rather than creating it at every batch).



Click "Next" and choose the "Forest Metrics Type" which need to be extracted. Depending on the choice, a set of parameters will need to be given, please refer to [Forest Metrics](#).



Click "Finish" to begin the batch process.



# Point Cloud Segmentation

## Usage

Navigate to *ALS Forest > Batch Process > Point Cloud Segmentation*. The [Point Cloud Segmentation](#) tool is used for automatic segmentation and processing of airborne LiDAR data.

The steps of this process are similar to the [Forest Metrics](#). For more information about the point cloud segmentation, please refer to the [Point Cloud Segmentation](#).

# Canopy Height Model(CHM) Segmentation

## Usage

Navigate to *ALS Forest > Batch Process > Canopy Height Model(CHM) Segmentation*. The [CHM Segmentation](#) tool is used for automatic segmentation and processing of [CHM](#) derived from LiDAR data.

The steps of this process are similar to the [Forest Metrics](#). For more information about the CHM segmentation, please refer to the [CHM Segmentation](#).

# Registration

Registration method for forestry data.

- [Tree Based Point Cloud Registration](#)

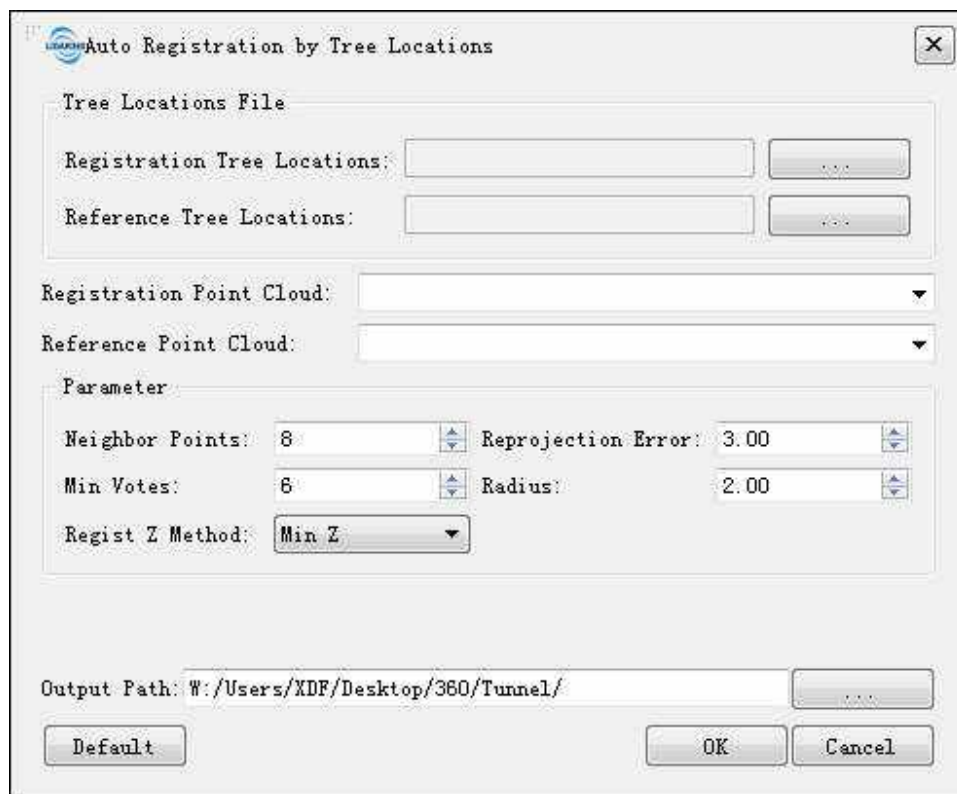
# Auto Registration by Tree Locations

## Summary

This function registers two point cloud data sets based on the location of the trees (Li J , Zhao P , Hu Q , et al., 2020) (Guan H , Su Y , Hu T , et al., 2019). The location information of the trees is stored in a CSV file, and the file should at least contain two attributes, the TreeLocationX and TreeLocationY. Please refer to [Individual Tree Segmentation Result File Format](#) for the detailed format information. The data to be registered must be two flat surface with trees, which means the registration will only translate the data and rotate the data around the Z-axis. The calculation of the transform matrix consists of two steps, namely the calculation of the horizontal rotation matrix and the calculation of the vertical translation. For horizontal transform, this function first creates feature descriptors for each individual tree position; then votes based on the similarity of the feature descriptors. The individual tree position with the higher score will be used as the matching point, and finally calculate the two-dimensional rotation matrix according to the matching points. For registration in the vertical direction, this function first obtains the point cloud in the neighborhood of each individual tree, and then uses the maximum or minimum value in the point cloud for registration in the Z direction. This process uses the  $3\sigma$  principle to make the confidence level of the difference in Z direction highest. The success rate of registration depends on the matching degree between the point cloud to be registered and the corresponding position of the registration point cloud. The higher the matching degree, the higher the algorithm success rate. The matching degree of individual tree depends on the degree of data overlap, the accuracy of position, and so on.

## Usage

Click *ALS Forest > Registration > Auto Registration by Tree Locations*



## Settings

- **Reference Point Cloud:** The reference point cloud data. After the registration, the point cloud to be registered will be transform to the coordiante system of the reference point cloud.
- **Point Cloud to be Registered:** The point cloud data to be registered. After the registration, the transform matrix will be applied to this point cloud data and generate a new file.
- **Number of Neighborhood Points (default value is 8):** The size of the neighborhood used to generate the feature descriptors. The increase of the size of the neighborhood will increase the time complexity of the algorithm, while it will increase the robustness of the feature descriptors at the same time. The decrease of this value will improve the algorithm efficiency, while it will increase the number so that the matching point outliers as well. This value should be set to 8 ~ 12.
- **Minimum Votes (default value is 6):** The individual tree positions below this number of votes will be considered as outliers and will not participate in the match. The smaller this value, the more matching points will be obtained, but the error of matching point pairs will also be greater. The larger this value is, the fewer matching points are obtained. If the value is too large, there will not be enough matching points for transform matrix calculation. When the number of neighborhood points increases, this value can be increased accordingly. This value should be set to 6 ~ 9.
- **Homography Matrix Backprojection Error (default value is 3.0):** Backprojection error of homography matrix. Candidate points selection is performed by using homography matrix combined with Ransac algorithm. The smaller the backprojection error, the fewer the matching points of the selected single wood and the higher the matching degree. The larger this value is, the looser the filter conditions for matching points are, and the greater the error of matching point pairs. While this value is too small, it may lead to not enough matching points participating in the calculation. This value should be set to 2~4 most suitable.
- **Searching Radius (meter) (default value is 2.0):** When performing Z-direction registration, the search radius used for neighborhood search. When registering in the Z direction, users need to find the real point cloud of each individual tree in a certain neighborhood on the XY plane, and then use the coordinates of the real point cloud for registration. If the value is too large or too small, the point cloud will not be able to describe the real terrain relief. This value should be set to 1.0~3.0, if it is too large, it will reduce the efficiency of the algorithm.
- **Z Translation ("Minimum" by default):** There are two registration methods in the Z direction, namely "maximum value" and "minimum value". This value describes that after performing a radius search on the position of the individual tree, the "maximum/smallest value" of the point cloud in the neighborhood is taken as the true matching point, which is used to calculate the final translation in the Z direction. When using the "maximum value", it is necessary to ensure that there is no missing or distorted treetop point cloud near the individual tree, otherwise it will be impossible to extract accurate matching points from the point cloud. When using the "minimum value", it is necessary to ensure that there are enough ground points near the individual wood, otherwise the Z direction matching will fail.

```
@inproceedings{
  author={Li J , Zhao P , Hu Q , et al.},
  title={ Robust point cloud registration based on topological graph and Cauchy weighted lq-norm},
  booktitle={Isprs Journal of Photogrammetry & Remote Sensing, 160:244-259},
  year={2020},
}
```

```
@inproceedings{
  author={Guan H , Su Y , Hu T , et al.},
  title={ A Novel Framework to Automatically Fuse Multiplatform LiDAR Data in Forest Environments Based on Tree Locations},
  booktitle={IEEE Transactions on Geoenice and Remote Sensing},
  year={2019},
}
```

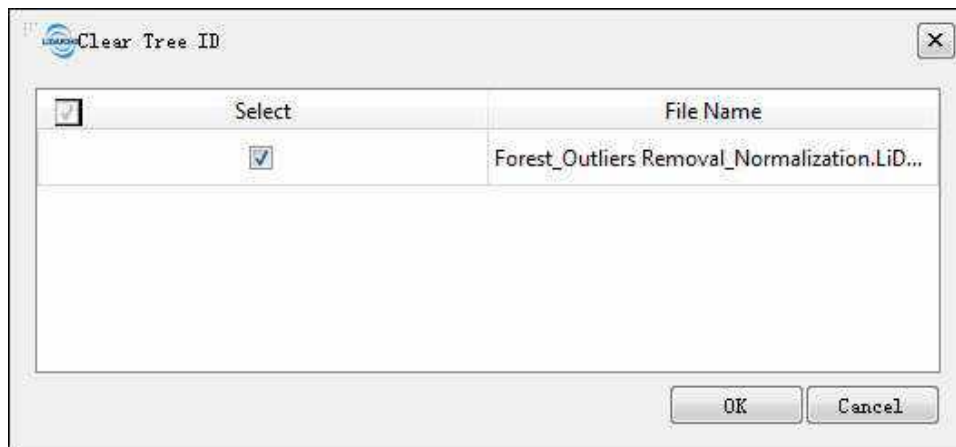
# Clear Tree ID

## Summary

After the point cloud being segmented, the tree ID information is stored in the LiData file. If the segmented point cloud data needs to be segmented again, users need to clear the tree ID first.

## Usage

Navigate to *ALS Forest > Clear Tree ID*.



Select the point cloud data to be processed, click "OK".

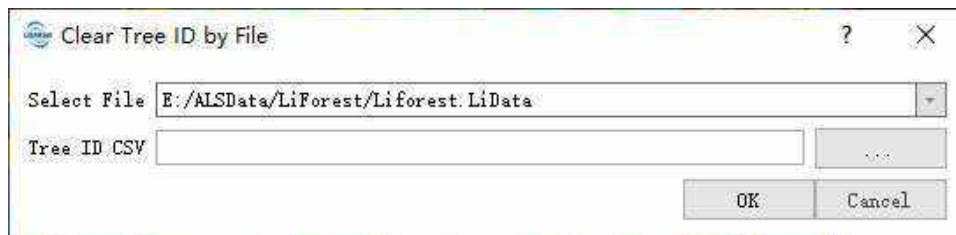
# Clear Tree ID by CSV File

## Summary

After the point cloud is segmented, there may be a wrongly segmented tree. The ID corresponding to the wrongly segmented tree can be recorded in a CSV file, and then the CSV file can be used to clear the wrongly segmented tree in the point cloud.

## Usage

Click *ALS Forest* > *Clear Tree ID by CSV File*.



Select the point cloud data to be processed and click OK.

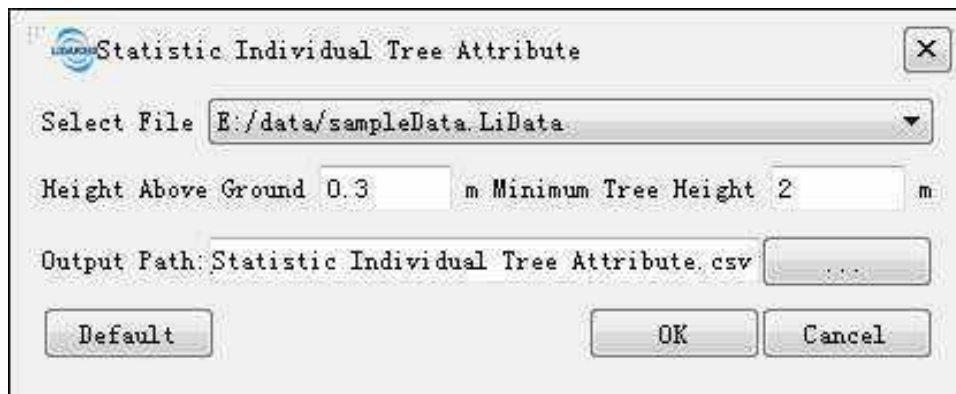
# Statistic Individual Tree Attributes

## Summary

This function is used to correct the tree height, crown area, and other individual tree information after the individual tree editing.

## Usage

Click *ALS Forest > Statistic Individual Tree Attributes*.



## Settings

- **Input Data:** The input data should be the point cloud after individual tree segmentation.
- **Height Above Ground (meter) (default value is "0.3"):** The point above this height will be used in the segmentation. This parameter can help uses to weaken the influence from the ground or grasses on the statistics calculation. If this value is too large, it will impact on the detection of tree structure.
- **Minimum Tree Height (meter) (default value is "2"):** This parameter can be set according to the growth situation of trees in the measuring area. It can be used to filter the small trees.
- **Output Path:** The output path of the statistics result. The file contains the Tree ID, XY location of each tree, tree height, crown diameter, crown area, and crown volume.
- **Default:** Reset all the parameters as their default values.



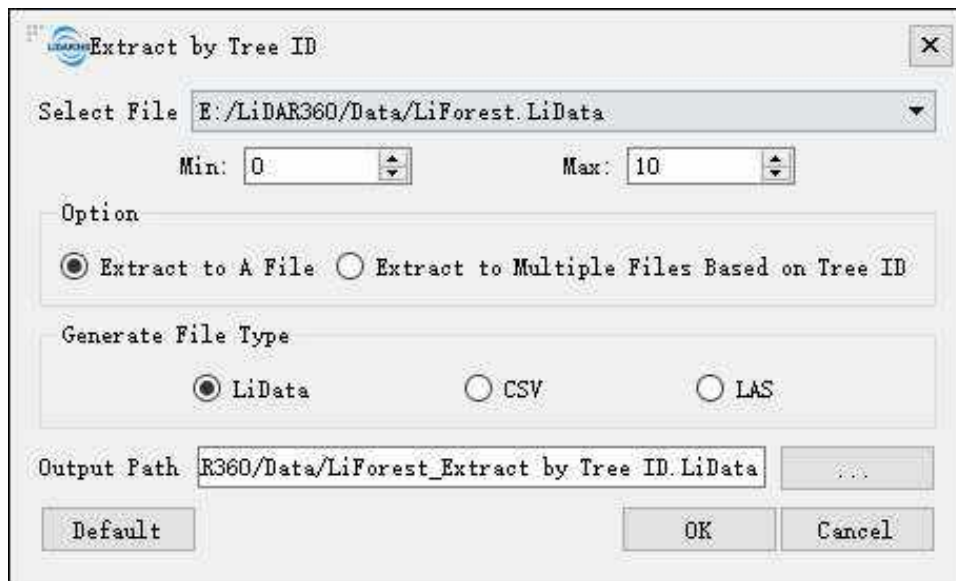
# Extract by Tree ID

## Summary

This function is used to extract part or all point clouds from the segmented point cloud based on Tree ID. When exporting the data into one file, the optional formats include LiData, CSV, and LAS. When exporting the data into multiple data, the optional format will be CSV file only.

## Usage

Navigate to *ALS Forest > Extract Point Cloud by Tree ID*.



## Settings

- **Select File:** Select the point cloud data with segmented tree ID information from the drop-down list. Only one file can be selected at a time, and it has to be opened in LiDAR360 already.
- **Min (default value is "0"):** The minimum value of tree ID to be extracted. The default value is zero.
- **Max:** The maximum value of tree ID to be extracted. The default value is the number of trees in the point cloud. If the point cloud has not been segmented, the minimum and maximum values of the tree ID are both zero.
- **Extract to A File (default):** The point cloud in the selected range is extracted into a CSV, LiData, or LAS file that contains the X, Y, Z coordinates and tree ID information.
- **Extract to Multiple Files Based on Tree ID:** Extract the point cloud data based on tree ID and save them as different CSV files for each tree. The stored information are X, Y, Z coordinates and tree ID information for each tree.
- **Output Path:** Output path for the results.

# ALS Editor

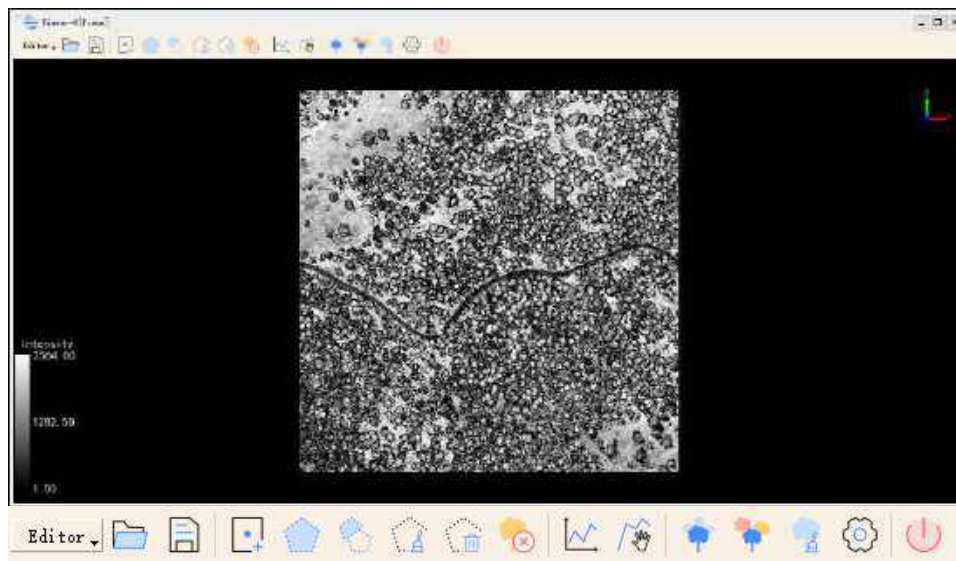
## Summary

The ALS editor tools are used for checking the ALS individual tree segmentation results, editing (i.e., adding and deleting) seed points, and segmenting point cloud data based on the edited seed points.

## Usage

In an active window, load the ALS point cloud data to be edited.

Navigate to and click on *ALS Forest > ALS Editor*.



The ALS Editor toolbar options, from left to right, are: Start/End Edit, Open Seed Point File, Save Seed Point File, Add Seed Points, Select Seed Points, Deselect Seed Points, Cancel Selection, Delete Selected Seed Points, Clear All Seed Points, Profile, Filter Trees, Point Cloud Segmentation Based on Seed, Clear TreeID, Seed Setting, and Exit.

## Start/End Edit

Click *Editor > Start Edit*.



Select the data to be edited (this should be a normalized point cloud and only one dataset can be edited at a time). Click "OK", and then other functions on the ALS Editor toolbar will be available.

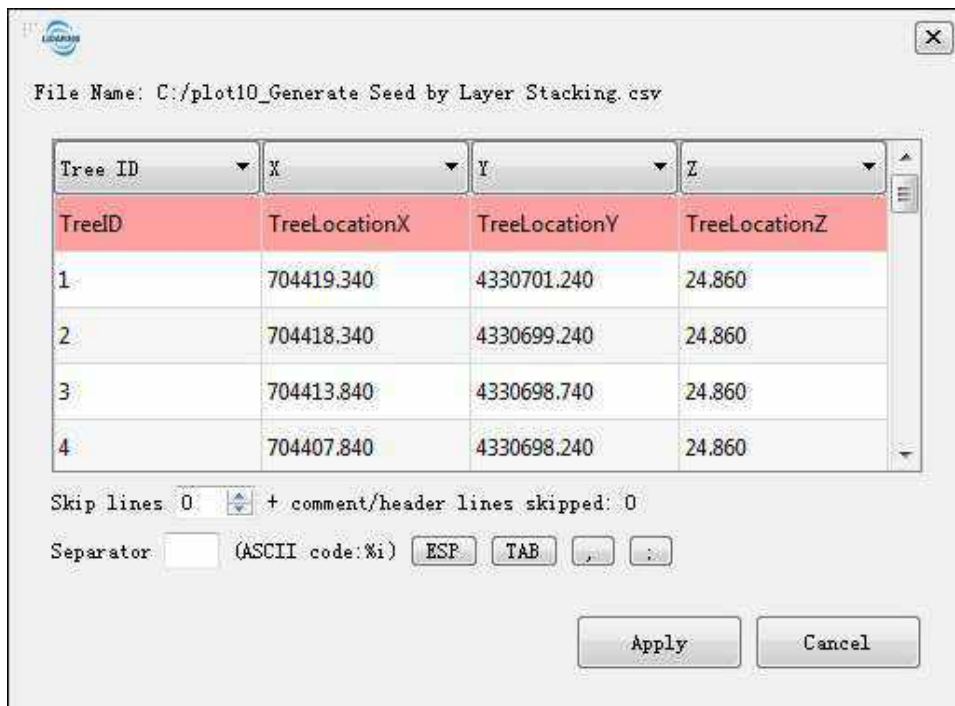


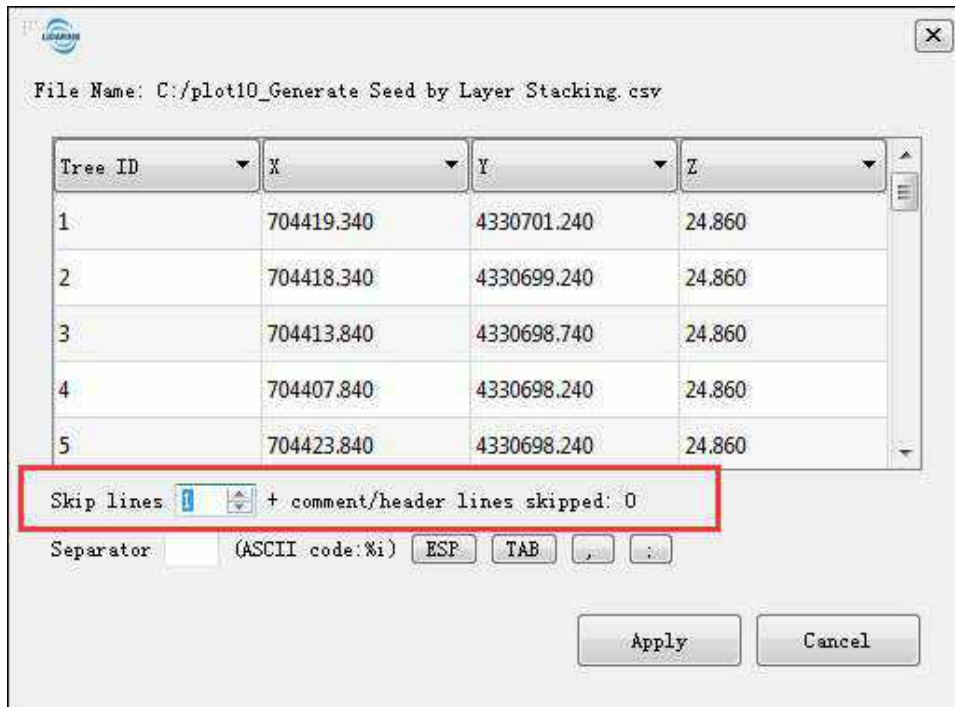
During the editing process the selected data cannot be removed from the window. When editing is completed, click "End Edit". Other toolbar functions will be unavailable at this point.

## Open Seed Points File



**Brief:** Select a seed point file (please refer to [Seed Points File](#) in the appendix for the correct format) and the window below will pop up. Please note that there is a header line in the seed point file, therefore the first line should be ignored when the file is opened.





## Save Seed Points File



**Brief:** When the editing is completed, the seed points can be saved as a new CSV file without overwriting the original file.

## Add Seed Points



**Brief:** Add seed points manually in under-segmented areas. Users may be prompted to select the peak - or the point close to the peak - of a tree as the seed point.

## Select Seed Points



**Brief:** Select seed points for editing.

## Deselect Seed Points



**Brief:** This tool can be used to deselect incorrect seed points which may have been selected in error.

## Cancel Selection



**Brief:** Cancel the selection of seed points.

## Delete Selected Seed Points



**Brief:** For areas that are over-segmented, incorrect seed points can be selected and deleted by using the **Select** tool.

## Clear All Seed Points

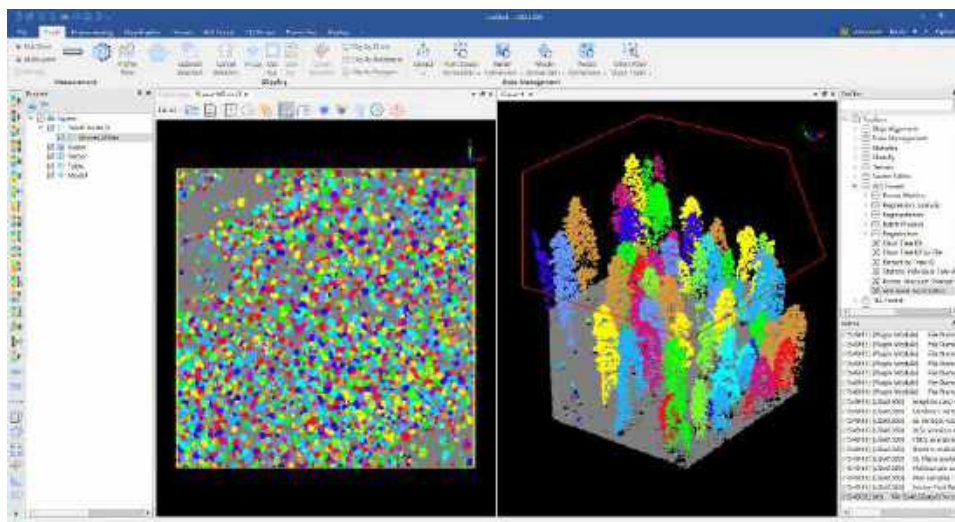


**Brief:** Remove all seed points in the window.

## Profile



**Brief:** When the ALS Editor toolbar is opened, the point cloud window will change to 2D display mode. The profile tool can show if the seed points are accurate in 3D. Click the Profile Tool button and a new window will be created. Click the mouse left button to select a polygon and all points within the polygon will be displayed in the new window in 3D.

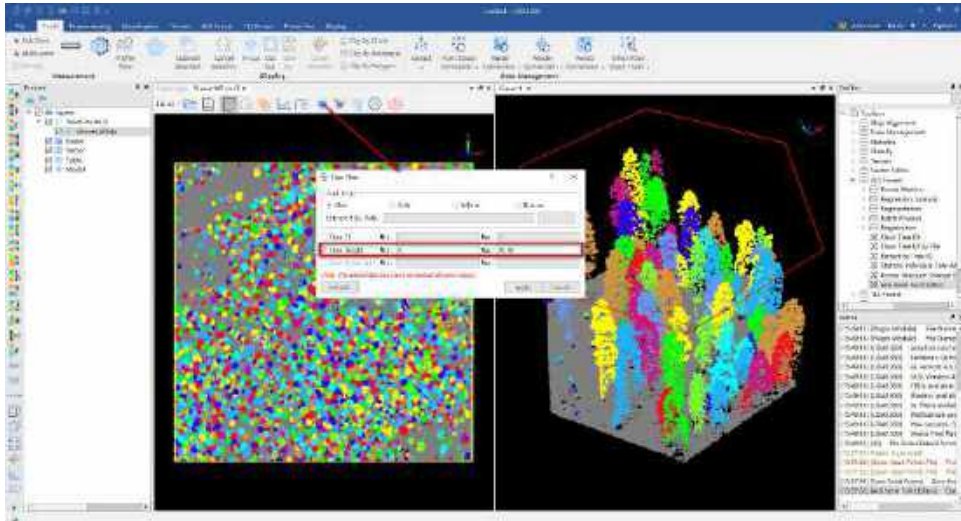


## Filter Trees



**Brief:** After point cloud segmentation, properties like tree height and crown area can be obtained. Filter Trees can be used to view (highlighted), hide, delete, or export individual trees based on individual tree properties, such as TreeID, tree height and crown area. For example, users can view the trees with height in a certain range. Or users can select the trees with extremely small or large crown area, which may be over-segmented or under-segmented. When using this function, users must add the segmented point cloud and the segmentation result to the software.

After filtering the point clouds by tree height (from 2.71 meters to 10 meters), the filtered results will be highlighted (as shown below).



## Point Cloud Segmentation Based on Seed



**Brief:** Segment the point cloud data based on the edited seed points. Refer to [PCS with Seeds](#).

## Clear Tree ID

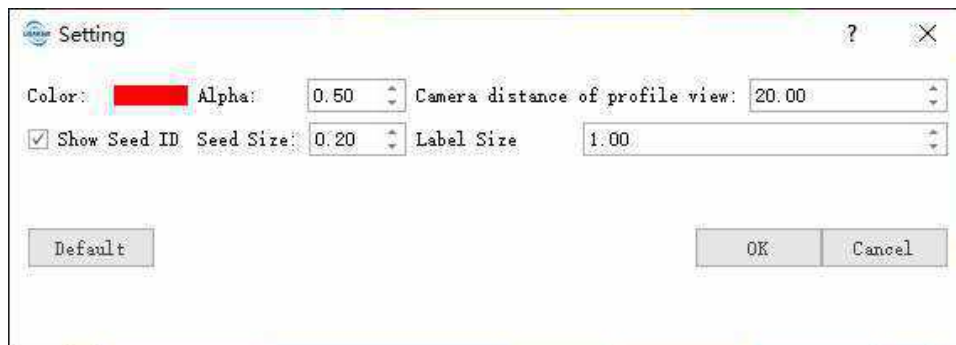



**Brief:** If the point cloud data has been previously segmented, the Tree ID should be removed prior to performing individual tree segmentation again. Refer to [Clear Tree ID](#).

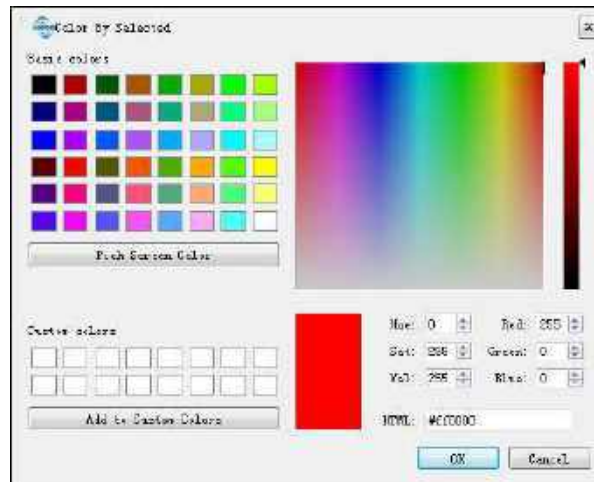
## Seed Setting






**Brief:** Users can set the color, alpha and size of the seed points, and may choose to show the seed point ID and its label size.



- **Color (default color is "Red"):** Click , and then the dialog for selecting colors will pop up as shown below. Any color may be selected as the seed point color from this window.

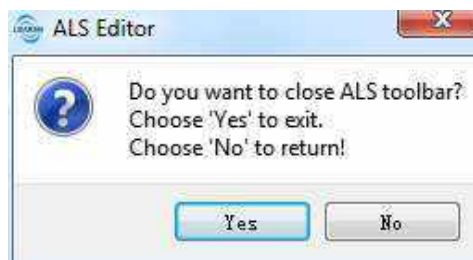


- **Alpha (default value is "0.5"):** Transparency of the seed point, ranging from 0 to 1, with 0 being completely transparent and 1 being opaque. The default value is 0.5. Click **Alpha** 0.50  and the value will be incremented or decremented by 0.1, or the user can directly enter a specific value.
- **Show Seed ID (optional):** Use the check box to determine if the seed point ID is displayed in the window.
- **Seed Size (default value is "0.5"):** The seed size, ranging from [0,100). Click **Seed Size** 0.50  and the value will be incremented or decremented by 1, or the user can directly enter a specific value.
- **Label Size (default value is "1"):** The label size, ranging from [0, 100). Click **Label Size** 1.00  and the value will be incremented or decremented by 1, or the user can directly enter a specific value.

## Exit



**Brief:** To exit ALS Editor, click the exit button and a prompt window below will pop up. Click "Yes" to close the ALS Editor toolbar or click "No" to return to the editor window.



Note: If the point cloud has been segmented, you need to [Clear Tree ID](#) prior to segmenting it again. If segmentation has not been performed, the message "All files have been segmented, please clear tree ID first!" will be displayed.

# TLS Forest

The TLS Forest modules are specifically for terrestrial LiDAR scans, including methods for ground point classification, segmenting individual trees from a LiDAR scan by identifying tree trunks, editing individual tree properties, editing individual tree, etc.

- [Leaf Area Index](#)
- [Filter Ground Points](#)
- [Point Cloud Segmentation](#)
- [View the Point Cloud Segmentation Results](#)
- [Point Cloud Segmentation from Seed Points](#)
- [Clear Tree ID](#)
- [Extract by Tree ID](#)
- [Extract by Tree ID](#)
- [Statistic Individual Tree Attributes](#)
- [Increase Individual Tree Attribute](#)
- [TLS Stem Extraction](#)
- [TLS Stem Extraction](#)
- [TLS Editor](#)
- [Individual Tree Editor](#)
- [DBH Measure](#)



# Leaf Area Index

## Summary

Leaf Area Index (LAI) is defined as half of the surface area of all leaves projected on the surface area of a unit.

## Principle Description

The algorithm was developed according to Li et al. (Li et al.,2016).For each statistical unit, a three-dimensional network is first constructed with a cell size of 1.5 times the average distance between each two points. Then, for the constructed three-dimensional network, count the total number of three-dimensional cells in each layer and the number of cells containing laser points in that layer. Based on that result, calculate the frequency of laser points in each layer.

$$N(s) = \frac{n_l(s)}{n_T(s)}$$

Where  $N(s)$  is the point frequency of the s-th layer,  $n_l(s)$  is the number of cells which contains the laser points in the s-th layer;  $n_T(s)$  is the total number of three-dimensional cells in the s-th layer. And then calculate the LAI in the s-th layer:

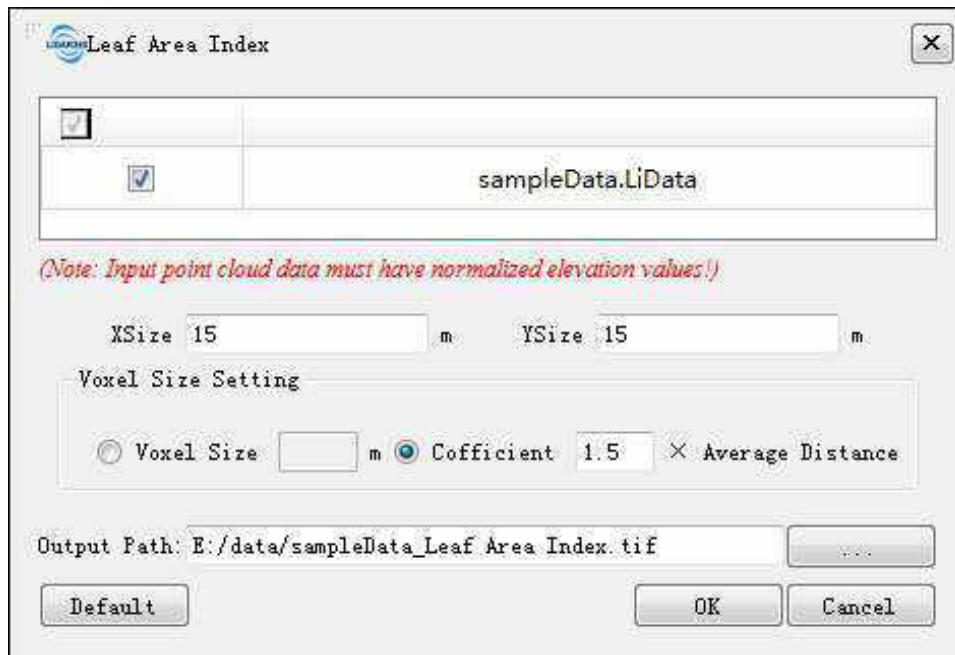
$$l(s) = \alpha(\theta)N(s)$$

Where  $\alpha(\theta)$  is the leaf inclination correction factor. Usually, it is set as 1.1. Finally, accumulate the LAI of each layer to calculate the LAI for the entire statistical unit.

$$LAI = \sum_{s=1}^n l(s) = 1.1 * \sum_{s=1}^n \frac{n_l(s)}{n_T(s)}$$

## Usage

Click *TLS Forestry > Leaf Area Index*, to generate TLS leaf area index.



## Settings

- **Input Data:** Ensure that each input point cloud data is [Normalize by DEM](#) or [Normalize by Ground Points](#). The input file can be a single file or multiple data files. Point cloud data should be opened in LiDAR360 before being processed.
- **XSize (meter)(default value is "15"):** The length of a grid size should be greater than an individual tree crown width. For most forest types, the grid size should be greater than 15 meters.
- **YSize (meter)(default value is "15"):** The width of a grid size should be greater than an individual tree crown width. For most forest types, the grid size should be greater than 15 meters.
- **Voxel Size Setting:**
  - **Voxel Size (meter) (default value is "0"):** The size of the cell which is used to divide the statistical unit.
  - **Coefficient (default value is "1.5"):** The coefficient used to calculate the size of the three-dimensional cell. The cell size is the product of this coefficient and the average distance between each two points in the point cloud.
- **Output Path:** Path of the output file. A corresponding raster file (*.tif format*) will be generated for each input point cloud data. The .tif files can be used as an independent variable of the regression analysis.

Note: Only when the point cloud data is loaded in the software can you use the TLS Leaf Area Index function; otherwise, the message "There is no point cloud data meeting the conditions of calculation!" will pop up. If the maximum Z value of the point cloud is greater than 200 m or the maximum Z minus the minimum Z is greater than 200 m, the data is not considered to have been normalized, and the prompt information shown in the figure below will pop up. Click "YES" to keep using this type of data in the operation; otherwise, click "NO" and reselect the input data file.

@inproceedings{ author={ Li Y , Guo Q , Tao S , et al.}, title={Derivation, Validation, and Sensitivity Analysis of Terrestrial Laser Scanning-Based Leaf Area Index}, booktitle={ Canadian Journal of Remote Sensing, 2016, 42(6):719-729.}, year={2016} }

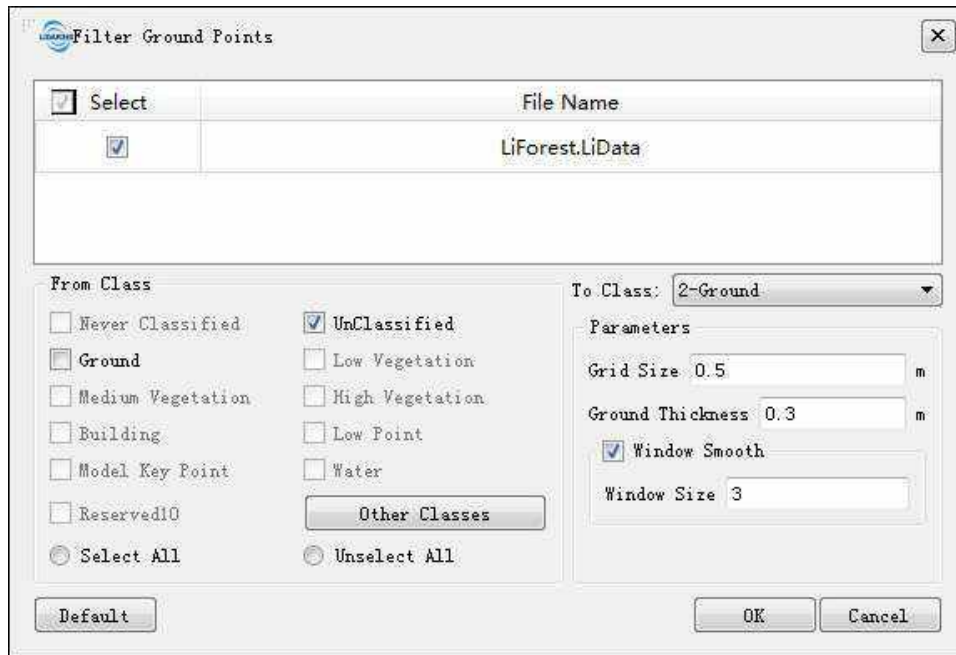
# Filter Ground Points

## Summary

Extract ground points from TLS point cloud data.

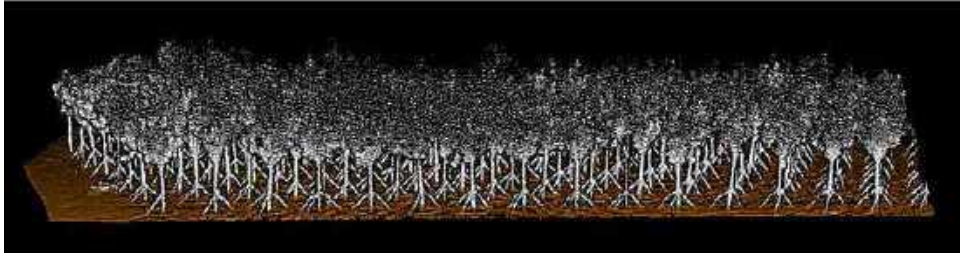
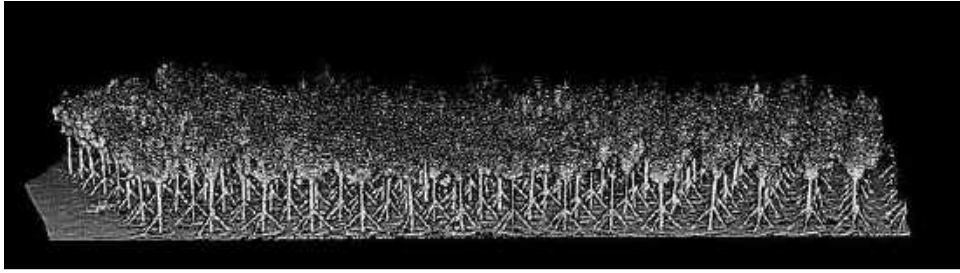
## Usage

Navigate to *TLS Forest > Filter Ground Points*.



## Settings

- **Input Data:** The input data can be a single point cloud data file or multiple data files. Point cloud data should be opened in LiDAR360 before being filtered.
- **From Class:** The list of point cloud classes that can be used for ground point filtering. If a certain class is existed in the point cloud and its check box is checked, it will be involved in the filtering operation.
- **To Class:** Targeted class.
- **Grid Size (meter)(default value is "0.5"):** Resolution of the grid.
- **Ground Thickness (meter)(default value is "0.3"):** Point cloud data from the lowest point of the grid to the points with the user-defined thickness will all be classified as ground points.
- **Window Smooth (optional):** Use neighborhood grid data to conduct ground point consistency filtering.
- **Window Size (default value is "3"):** Size of the neighborhood window. 3 indicates a window size of 3\*3.
- **DefaultValue:** Restore the default parameters.



# Point Cloud Segmentation

## Summary

The TLS point cloud segmentation method (originally developed by [Tao et al.,2015](#)) utilizes a bottom-up approach to identifying individual trees. This is because TLS data is typically acquired beneath the canopy where tree stems can be readily observed and used to inform the segmentation algorithms that delimit the spatial extents of individual trees within a forest or stand. Individual Tree attributes, including Tree Height and Diameter at Breast Height (DBH), can be then determined for each tree segmented out of the input TLS dataset.

## Usage

Navigate to and click on *TLS Forest > Point Cloud Segmentation*.

Point Cloud Segmentation

Select

File Name

clip\_center\_30m\_Normalize by Ground Points.LiData

*Note: Input point cloud data must have normalized elevation values!*

From Class: 0, 1, 2

Cluster Tolerance: 0.2 m

Minimum Cluster Size: 500

Minimum DBH: 1.2 m

Maximum DBH: 1.4 m

Height Above Ground: 0.3 m

Minimum Tree Height: 2 m

Trunk Height: 1.6 m

Optimize Color Rendering for Individual Tree Segmentation Result

Output Path: \_center\_30m\_Normalize by Ground Points\_Point Cloud Segmentation.csv

Default OK Cancel

## Settings

- **Input Data:** Ensure that each input point cloud data is [Normalize by DEM](#) or [Normalize by Ground Points](#).
- **From Class:** Classes which participate in the point cloud segmentation (all classes by default).
- **Cluster Tolerance (meter)(default value is "0.2"):** Users can control the accuracy and efficiency of the individual tree segmentation process by changing this value. Increase of this threshold will result in higher efficiency of the individual tree segmentation process. But if this threshold is too large, it will lower accuracy.
- **Minimum Cluster Size:** This parameter will influence the growing of point cloud of individual tree's crown. Fewer points will lead to higher accuracy and lower efficiency. Vice versa.
- **Maximum DBH (meter)(default value is "1.4"):** Upper DBH threshold for fitting DBH.
- **Minimum DBH (default value is "1.2"):** Lower DBH threshold for fitting DBH.
- **Height Above Ground (meter)(default value is "0.3"):** Only the points above this height will be involved in individual tree segmentation. This parameter is used to decrease the influence of ground points and weeds to the segmentation. It will influence the accuracy of the detection of trunk, if this value is too large.
- **Minimum Tree Height (meter)(default value is "2"):** Lower threshold of an object which could be recognized as a tree. This is used for filtering out small trees based on the growth rate of the region.
- **Trunk Height (meter)(default value is "1.6"):** the algorithm will extract the points in the range between

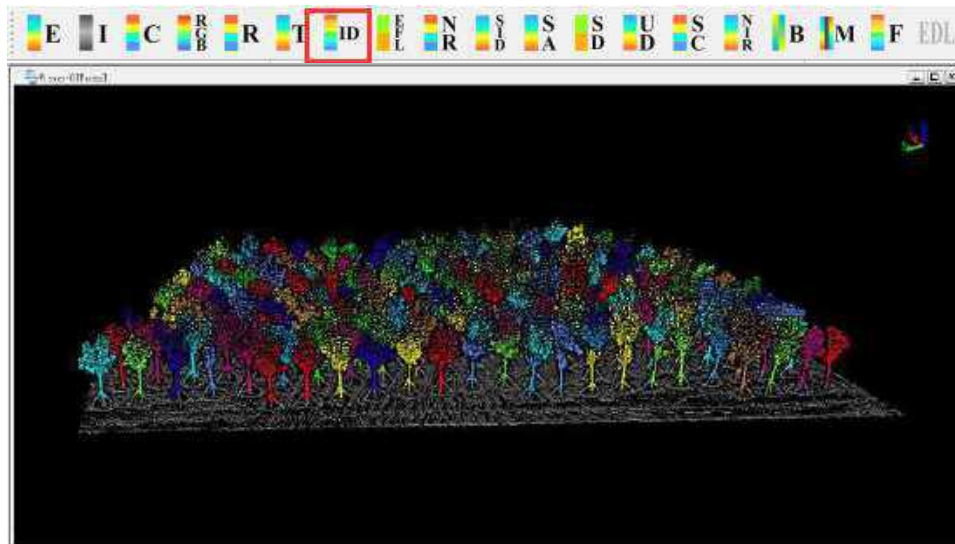
**Height Above Ground** and **Trunk Height**, and detect the trunk used as the starting point of growing of point cloud. It is suggested that this value should be less than the height of the lowest branch.

- **Optimize color rendering for individual tree segmentation result (checked by default):** By reorganizing the tree ID generated after the individual tree segmentation, it can greatly solve the problem of rendering the same color to the trees next to each other.
- **Output Path:** Path of the output file, which is a comma-separated database table in the .csv format containing the ID of each individual tree identified during the segmentation process, the x, y coordinate of each individual tree, individual tree heights, DBHs, crown diameters, crown areas, and crown volumes. Please refer to [Individual Tree Segmentation Result File Format](#) in the appendix. Please refer to [View the Point Cloud Segmentation Results](#) for the steps to view the results.
- **DefaultValue:** Reset each parameter to the default value.

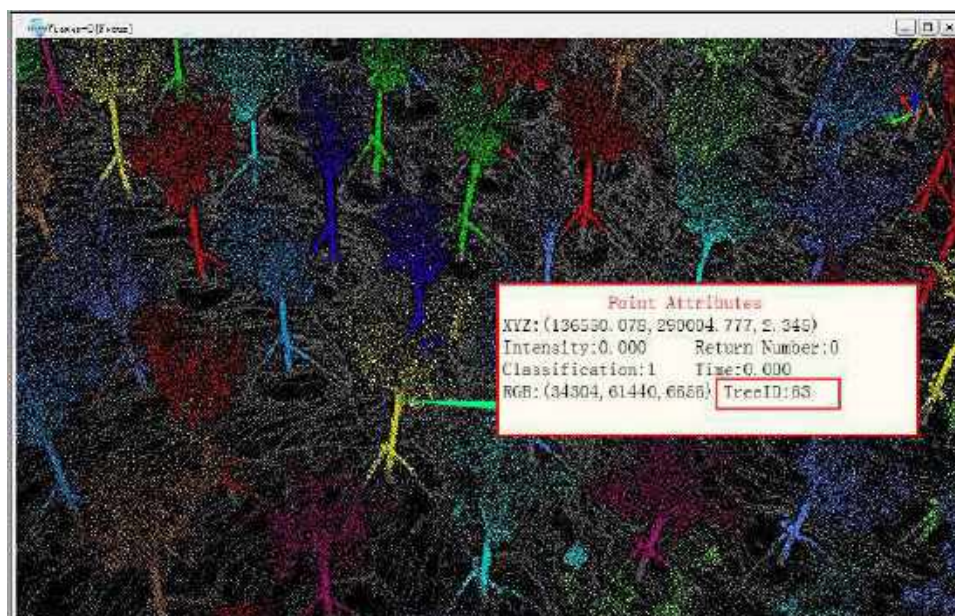
```
@inproceedings{
  author={Tao S L, Wu F F, Guo Q H, Wang Y C, Li W K, Xue B L, Hu X Y, Li P, Tian D, Li C, Yao H, Li Y M, Xu G C
and Fang J Y},
  title={Segmentation tree crowns from terrestrial and mobile LiDAR data by exploring ecological theories},
  booktitle={ISPRS Journal of Photogrammetry and Remote Sensing,110:66-76},
  year={2015}
}
```

## View the Point Cloud Segmentation Results

After segmenting the trees, Tree IDs are saved as an attribute to each point in the point cloud data. The results can be viewed within a window viewer. Load the point cloud used for the tree segmentation into a 3D viewer. Ensure the viewer is active and press the Display by Tree ID button in the toolbar. The following is an example of a point cloud colored by individual tree. [TLS Editor](#) tools are used for checking the TLS individual tree segmentation results. Moreover, it can be used to edit operations such as add, delete seed points, and segment the point cloud data based on the edited seed points.

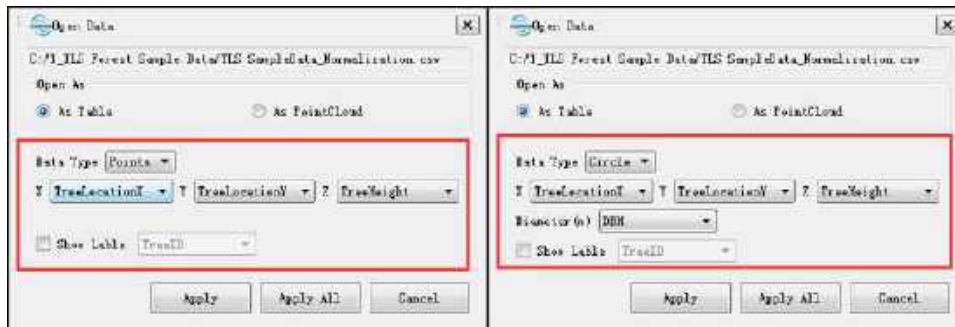


The tree ID attribute of each point can be queried by the [Pick Point](#) (  ) tool on the toolbar.

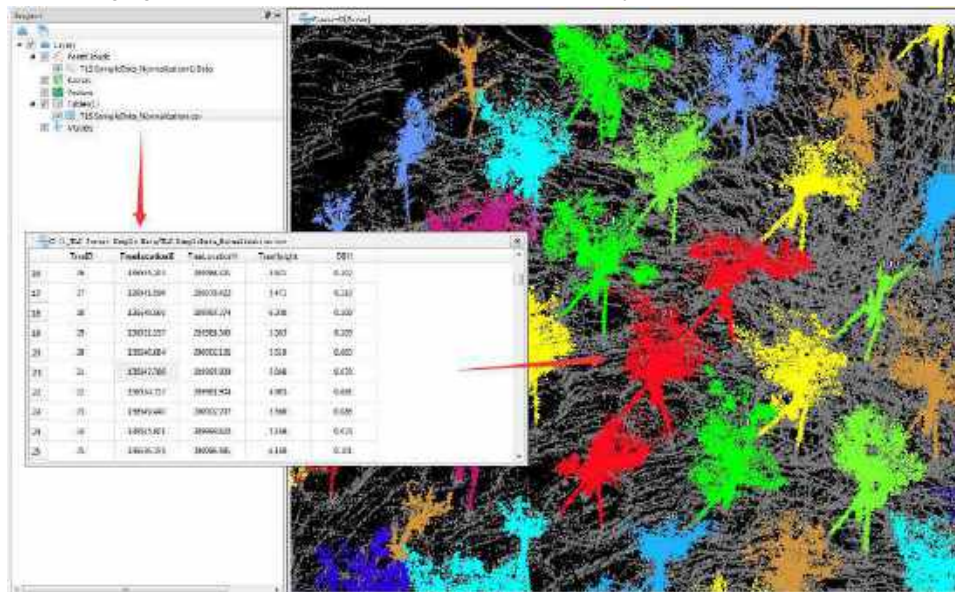


CSV file generated by segmentation can be overlaid with the point cloud, and the CSV file can be opened as a table. Select X, Y and Z as the TreeLocationX, TreeLocationY and TreeHeight respectively in the CSV file as shown below, and check the Show Label (if the label has too much text and blocking other data, one can remove the data and reopen it without checking the Show Label). Click “Apply” to load the CSV file in the software.

To view the DBH, CSV can also be selected to be displayed by circle and select DBH as the diameter.



Click the mouse right button on the CSV file and select Table Attribute. The property information will be displayed. Double-click the mouse left button anywhere in each line, and it will jump to the corresponding location. The following figure shows the effect of superimposed display of point cloud data and CSV file.





# Point Cloud Segmentation from Seed Points

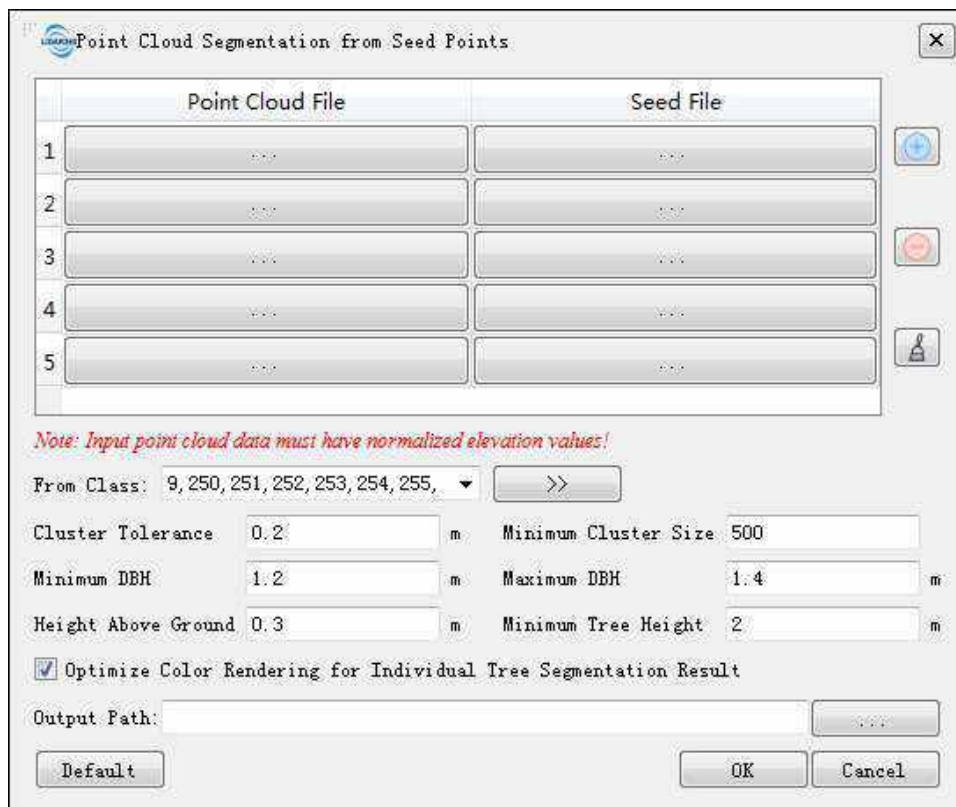
## Summary

The TLS PCS with Seeds function supports batch processing for multiple files. The input data includes normalized point cloud data and the corresponding seed point file. For TLS point cloud normalization, please refer to the [Normalize by DEM](#) or [Normalize by Ground Points](#) tool section of the LiDAR360 User Manual. For more information on the generation of seed point files, please refer to [Batch Extraction DBH](#) tool section of the LiDAR360 User Manual.

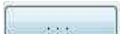
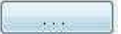


Note: Different from Point Cloud Segmentation from Seed Points in ALS Forest tool set, the DBH values are used in Point Cloud Segmentation from Seed Points in TLS Forest tool set. According to the 3D coordinates of the seed points, the algorithm will search for the points within the range of the radius of DBH or the closest point as the original seed points cluster for the following segmentation. If the DBH values are not available here, please set them to 0. For the format information, please refer to [Seed Points File](#).



## Usage

Navigate to and click on *TLS Forest > Point Cloud Segmentation from Seed Points*.



## Settings

- **From Class:** Classes which participate in the PCS with seeds (all classes by default).
- **Point Cloud File:** Click  to select the point cloud data to be processed.
- **Seed File:** Click  to select the seed file.
- : Five datasets can be batch processed per tool run. Click  to add files to be processed.

- : Delete the selected point cloud and seed points file.
- : Clear the file list.
- **Cluster Tolerance (meter)(default value is "0.2")**: Users can control the accuracy and efficiency of the individual tree segmentation process by changing this value. Increase of this threshold will result in higher efficiency of the individual tree segmentation process. But if this threshold is too large, it will lower accuracy.
- **Minimum Cluster Size**: This parameter will influence the growing of point cloud of individual tree's crown. Fewer points will lead to higher accuracy and lower efficiency. Vice versa.
- **Maximum DBH (meter)(default value is "1.4")**: Upper DBH threshold for fitting DBH.
- **Minimum DBH (default value is "1.2")**: Lower DBH threshold for fitting DBH.
- **Height Above Ground (meter)(default value is "0.3")**: Only the points above this height will be involved in individual tree segmentation. This parameter is used to decrease the influence of ground points and weeds to the segmentation. It will influence the accuracy of the detection of trunk, if this value is too large.
- **Optimize color rendering for individual tree segmentation result (checked by default)**: By reorganizing the tree ID generated after the individual tree segmentation, it can greatly solve the problem of rendering the same color to the trees next to each other. Note: if choosing to optimize the color rendering, the tree IDs in new csv file for individual tree segmentation are not one-to-one correspond to those in the input seeds files.
- **Minimum Tree Height (meter)(default value is "2")**: Lower threshold of an object which could be recognized as a tree. This is used for filtering out small trees based on the growth rate of the region.
- **Output Path**: Path of the output file, which is a comma-separated database table in the .csv format containing the ID of each individual tree identified during the segmentation process, the x, y coordinate of each individual tree, individual tree heights, DBHs, crown diameters, crown areas, and crown volumes. Please refer to [Individual Tree Segmentation Result File Format](#) in the appendix. Please refer to

[View the Point Cloud Segmentation Results](#) for the steps to view the results.

- **DefaultValue**: Reset each parameter to the default value.

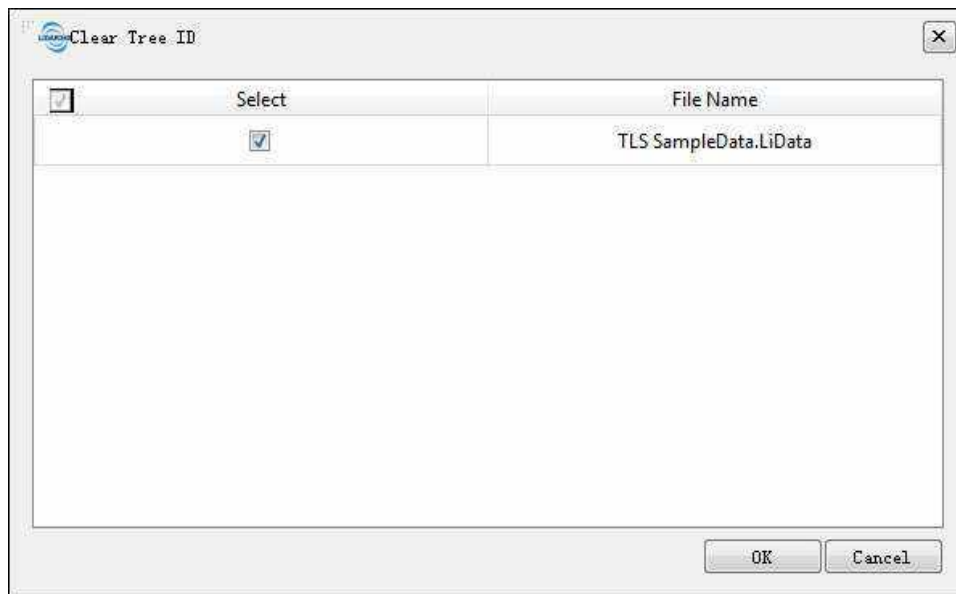
# Clear Tree ID

## Summary

After the point cloud has been segmented, the tree ID information is stored in a LiData file. If the segmented point cloud data needs to be segmented again, users need to clear the tree ID first.

## Usage

Navigate to *TLS Forest > Clear Tree ID*.



Select the point cloud data to be processed, and then click "OK".

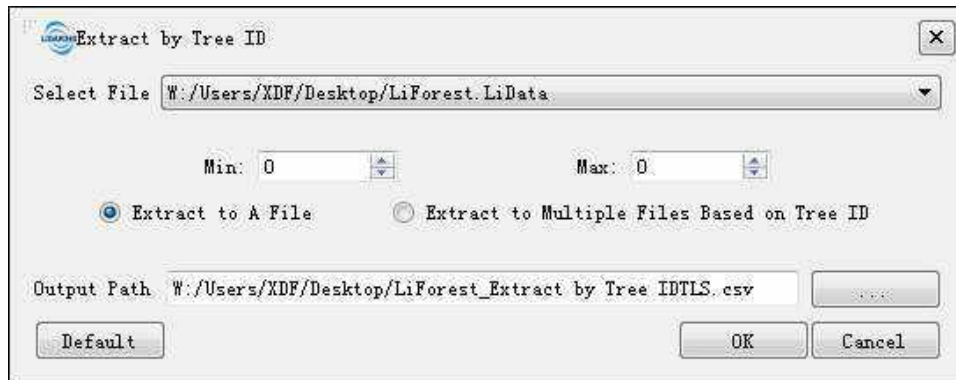
# Extract by Tree ID

## Summary

This function is used to extract part or all point clouds from the segmented point cloud based on Tree ID.

## Usage

Navigate to *TLS Forest > Extract by Tree ID*.



## Settings

- **Select File:** Select the point cloud data with segmented tree ID information from the drop-down list. Only one file can be selected at a time, and it has to be opened in LiDAR360 already.
- **Min (default value is "0"):** The minimum value of tree ID to be extracted. The default value is zero.
- **Max:** The maximum value of tree ID to be extracted. The default value is the number of trees in the point cloud. If the point cloud has not been segmented, the minimum and maximum values of the tree ID are both zero.
- **Extract to A File (default):** The point cloud in the selected range is extracted into a CSV file that contains the X, Y, Z coordinates and tree ID information.
- **Extract to Multiple Files Based on Tree ID:** Extract the point cloud data based on tree ID and save them as different CSV files for each tree. The stored information are X, Y, Z coordinates and tree ID information for each tree.
- **Output Path:** Output path for the results.

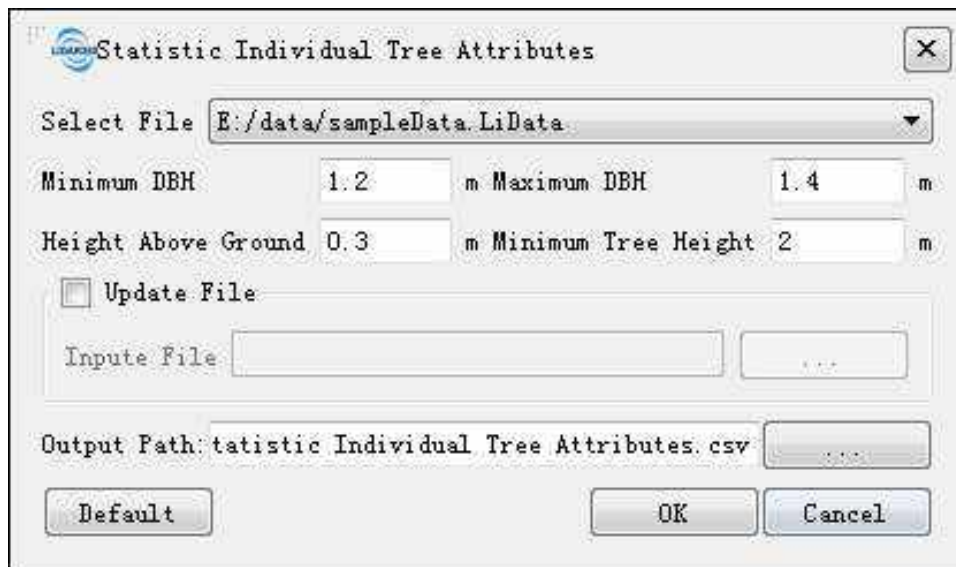
# Statistic Individual Tree Attributes

## Summary

This function is used to correct the tree height, crown area, and other individual tree information after the individual tree editing.

## Usage

Click *TLS Forest* > *Statistic Individual Tree Attributes*.



## Settings

- **Input Data:** The input data should be the point cloud after individual tree segmentation.
- **Maximum DBH (meter)(default value is "1.4"):** Upper DBH threshold for fitting DBH.
- **Minimum DBH (default value is "1.2"):** Lower DBH threshold for fitting DBH.
- **Height Above Ground (meter) (default value is "0.3"):** The point above this height will be used in the segmentation. This parameter can help users to weaken the influence from the ground or grasses on the statistics calculation. If this value is too large, it will impact on the detection of tree structure.
- **Minimum Tree Height (meter) (default value is "2"):** This parameter can be set according to the growth situation of trees in the measuring area. It can be used to filter the small trees.
- **Update File (Unchecked by default):** If this option is checked and the input file contains the valid DBH values, the DBH values will not be recalculated. Only other attributes will be updated. If this option is unchecked, or the DBH values in the input file is invalid, all the attributes will be recalculated.
- **Output Path:** The output path of the statistics result. The file contains the Tree ID, XY location of each tree, tree height, crown diameter, crown area, and crown volume.
- **Default:** Reset all the parameters as their default values.

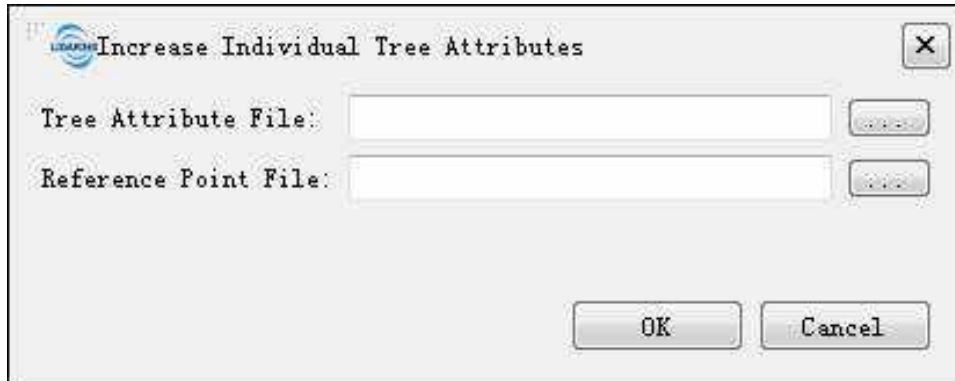
# Increase Individual Tree Attributes

## Summary

This function is mainly used to expand the attribute field of individual tree attribute file.

## Usage

Click *TLS Forest > Increase Individual Tree Attributes*.



## Settings

- **Individual Tree Attributes File:** The input data is a individual tree attribute file, which is a comma-separated CSV table, and must contain at least two fields: TreeLocationX, TreeLocationY, the detailed file format can refer to [Individual Tree Segmentation Result File Format](#).
- **Reference File:** The reference point file is a comma-separated text file with two lines and three fields: X, Y, and Radius; X and Y are reference point positions, and Radius is radius. If the reference point file is input, the azimuth and distance of the trees within a certain radius with the reference point as the center are calculated, and then added to the individual tree property file as extended attributes.
- **Slope File:** The slope file is in TIFF format. If the slope file is imported, the slope of the tree position is obtained and added to the single tree attribute file as an extended attribute.
- **DEM File:** The DEM file is in TIFF format. If the DEM file is imported, the slope of the tree position is obtained and added to the single tree attribute file as an extended attribute.

The following is an example of reference point files:

```
X,Y,Radius
322716.24,4102494.69,15.0
```

The following is an example of individual tree property file:

```
TreeID, TreeLocationX, TreeLocationY
1, 322716.24, 4102494.69
2, 322751.21, 4102499.9
3, 322519.35, 4102499.3
```

The following is an example of the extended individual tree property file:

TreeID	TreeLocationX	TreeLocationY	Azimuth	Distance
1,	322716.24,	4102494.69,	36.165,	8.982
2,	322751.21,	4102499.9,	41.282,	4.491
3,	322519.35,	4102499.3,	32.008,	4.708

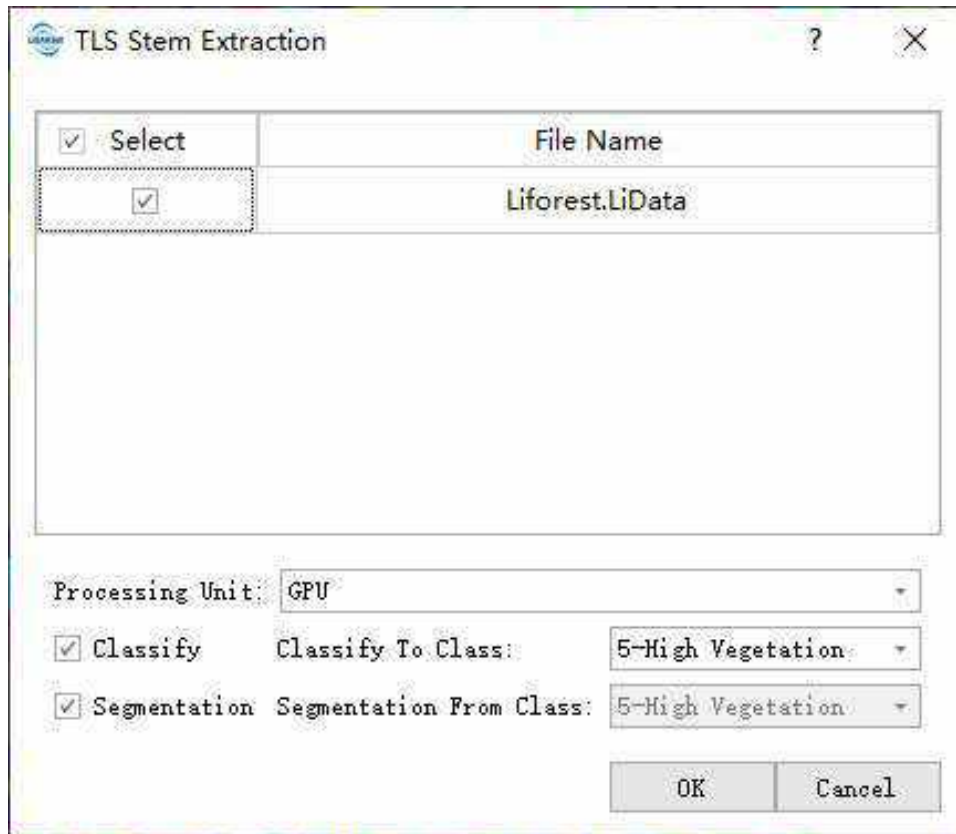
# Stem Extraction

## Summary

This function will identify tree stem from TLS forestry point cloud data and divide them into target categories.

## Usage

Click on *TLS Forest > Stem Extraction*.



## Settings

**-Input:** The input file can be a single point cloud data file or a point cloud data set; the data to be processed must be opened in the LiDAR360 software. **-Compute Unit:** You can choose GPU or CPU. **-Classification Target Class:** The user must select at least one function in classification and segmentation. After checking the classification and running, the stem will be classified into the target class. **-Segmentation Source Class:** When the user selects segmentation, the source class trees will be segmented into individual trees. When the classification is checked, the target class of the classification will be set as the source class of the segmentation. Otherwise, the user needs to specify the segmentation source class.



# TLS Editor

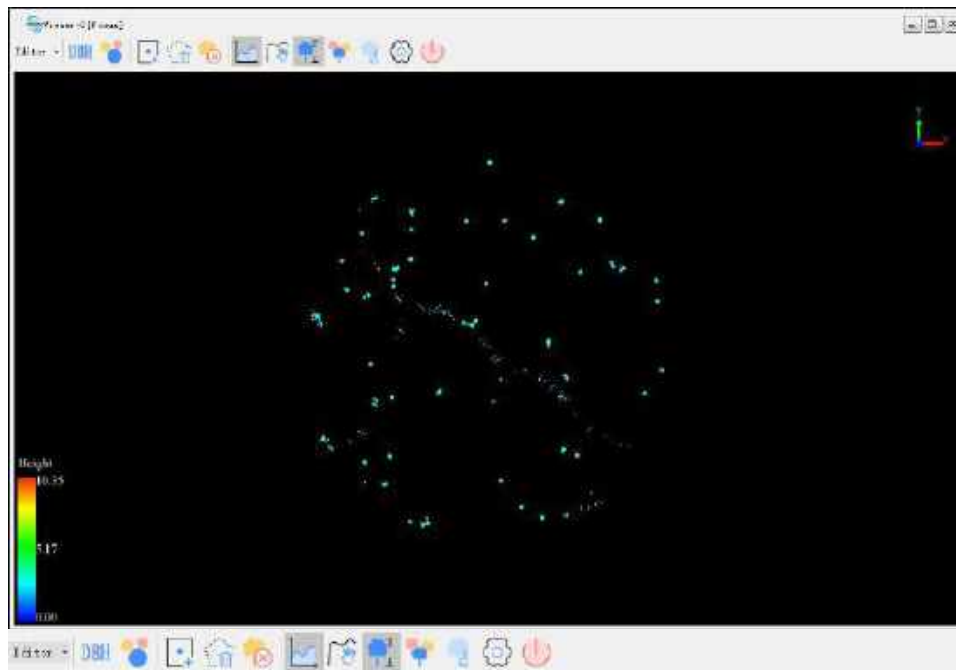
## Summary

The TLS Editor toolbar contains functions for checking the results of individual tree segmentation routines run on Terrestrial Laser Scan (TLS) input data. The TLS Editor is also used to extract Diameter at Breast Height (DBH) for individual trees, to add or delete seed points, to execute point cloud segmentation operations that include seed points, and to measure physical attributes of individual trees found in the source dataset.

## Usage

Load the point cloud data to be edited into the viewer and activate the view window.

Navigate to and click on *TLS Forest > TLS Editor* to load the TLS Editor toolbar in the active view window.

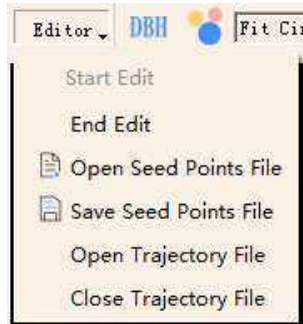


TLS Editor toolbar functions (from left to right): Start/End Editing/Open Seed Point File/Save Seed Point File, Fit DBH, Batch DBH Extraction, Methods of Fitting DBH (including Fit Circle, Fit Column and Fit Ellipse), Select, Subtract, Cancel Selection, Select Point Cloud, Select Seed Points, Add Seed Points, Delete Seed Points, Clear All Seed Points, Profile, Measure Individual Tree Attributes, Filter Trees, Point Cloud Segmentation Based on Seed, Clear Tree ID, Setting and Exit.

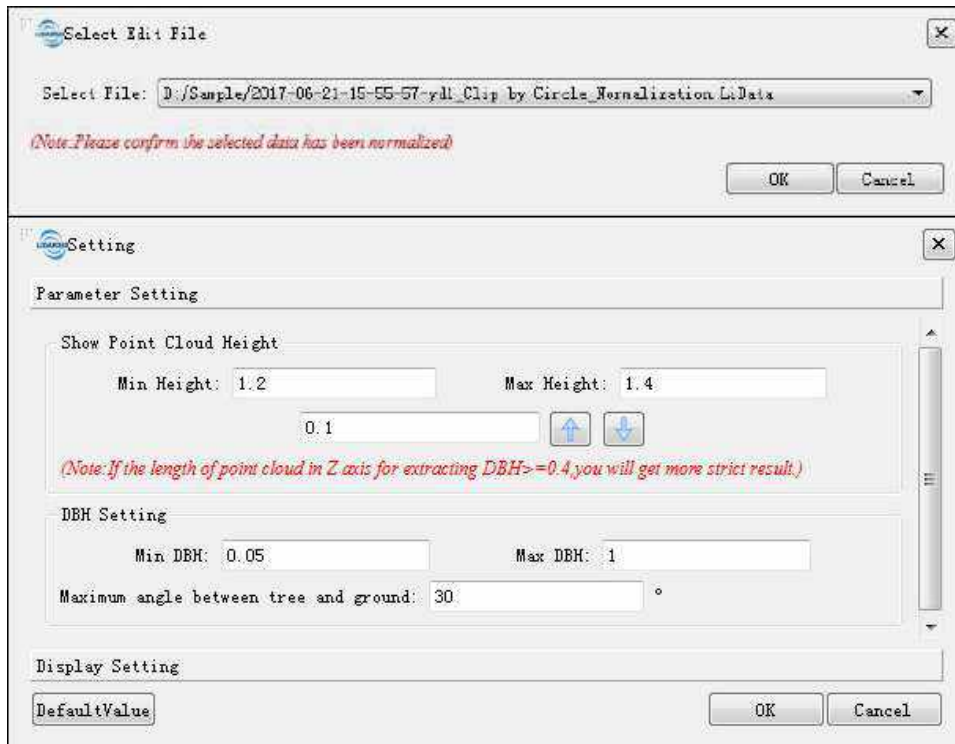
## TLS Editor Tool Description

### Start/End Edit

To begin editing session navigate to and click on *Editor > Start Edit*.



Select the data to be edited (this should be already be normalized, and only one dataset can be edited at a time). Click “OK”, then a setting window will pop up to set the color and size of the seed point, whether to display the ID, and the height of point cloud for display. The default point cloud height for display is 1.2 - 1.4 meters.



In the process of editing, the selected data cannot be removed from the window. Click “End Edit” to complete the editing, and other functions in the toolbar will then be unavailable.

## Open Seed Points File



**Brief:** Select a seed point file (please refer to [Seed Points File](#) in the appendix) for the format of seed point file, and the window below will pop up. Please note that there is a header line in the seed point file, therefore, the first line should be ignored when the file is opened.

Setting

File Name: C:/1\_TLS Forest Sample Data/seed.csv

Tree ID	X	Y	Z	DBH
TreeID	TreeLocatio...	TreeLocatio...	TreeLocatio...	DBH
1	-3.178	-17.220	1.280	0.161
2	-10.397	-19.851	1.277	0.283
3	-9.363	-21.169	1.276	0.372
4	-7.452	-22.549	1.276	0.412

Skip lines: 0 + comment/header lines skipped: 0

Separator: (ASCII code: %i) ESP TAB ;

Apply Cancel

Setting

File Name: C:/1\_TLS Forest Sample Data/seed.csv

Tree ID	X	Y	Z	DBH
1	-3.178	-17.220	1.280	0.161
2	-10.397	-19.851	1.277	0.283
3	-9.363	-21.169	1.276	0.372
4	-7.452	-22.549	1.276	0.412
5	2.483	-19.653	1.271	0.282

Skip lines: 1 + comment/header lines skipped: 0

Separator: (ASCII code: %i) ESP TAB ;

Apply Cancel

### Save Seed Points File



**Brief:** When editing is completed, the seed points can be saved as a new .csv file without overwriting the original file.

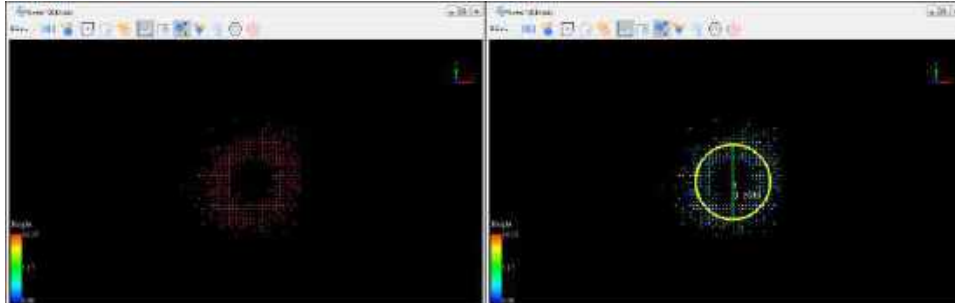
### Fit DBH



**Brief:** Select the desired individual tree for DBH fitting.

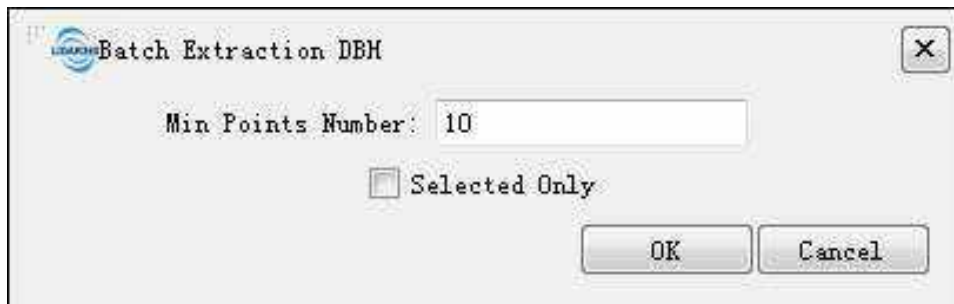
**DBH** Brief: Select the desired individual tree for DBH fitting.

The picture below (left) is the result of selecting the point cloud data of an individual tree. The picture below (right) is the result of DBH fitting: 1 indicates ID number, 0.5889 is the fitted DBH value in meters.



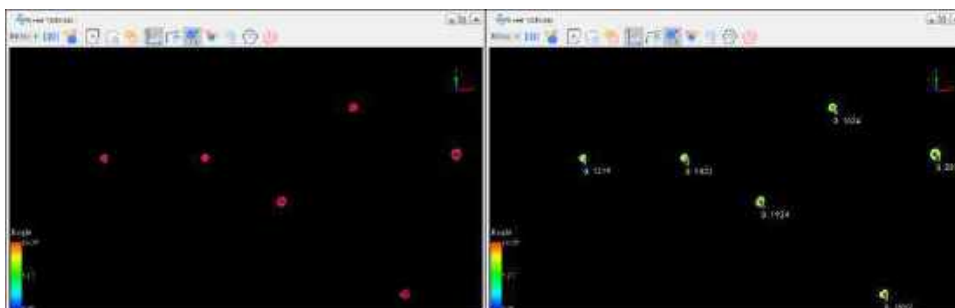
## Batch Extraction DBH

**Brief:** Select the point cloud data of multiple trees and then perform batch fitting of tree DBH (the parameter settings are shown as below). By default, the function uses the entire point cloud in the window for batch DBH fitting. Users can also select out a part of point cloud for fitting.



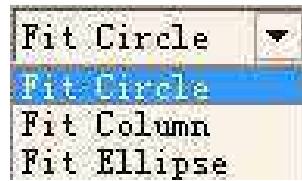
- **Min Points Number (default value is "10"):** Minimum threshold for the number of trees of each category. If the number is less than this value, then no DBH fitting will be conducted.

The picture below (left) is the result of selecting the point cloud data of multiple trees. The picture below (right) is the result of DBH fitting: 1,2,3 and 4 indicate ID number, 0.5359, 0.5130, 0.6078 and 0.4756 are the fitted DBH value in meters.



## Methods of Fitting DBH

**Brief:** Users can flexibly select the point cloud in a 2D window by setting a height or using the profile window for DBH fitting. Methods of fitting DBH include Fitting by Circle, Fitting by Column and Fitting by Ellipse. By default, the method of Fitting by Circle is adopted. If the tree is slanting, the Fitting by Cylinder method can be used.



- **Fit Circle (optional):** Use the least squares method to fit a circle from the x-y coordinates of input points.
- **Fit Column:** Use the least squares method to fit a three-dimensional cylinder from input points where the diameter is the DBH of the tree.
- **Fit Ellipse:** Use the least squares method to fit an ellipse from the x-y coordinates of input points, and the DBH will be calculated as  $2 \sqrt{\text{major axis} \times \text{minor axis}}$ . This method is for trees with an oval-shaped trunk.

## Select



**Brief:** Select target by using polygon, rectangle, or circle frame. Select point cloud or seed point to fit the DBH. For over-segmentation, users can select these wrong seed points and delete them.

## Subtract



**Brief:** If there are point clouds or seed points selected by mistake, this tool can be used to delete the wrong ones from the selected range.

## Cancel Selection



**Brief:** Deselect point clouds or seed points.

## Select Point Cloud



**Brief:** Select point cloud to fit DBH.

## Select Seed Points



**Brief:** Select seed points for editing.

## Add Seed Points



**Brief:** Add seed points manually in under-segmented places. Users are normally prompted to select the peak or the point close to the peak of a tree as the seed point.

## Delete Seed Points



**Brief:** For places that are over-segmented, wrong seed points can be selected and deleted by using the **Select** tool.

## Clear All Seed Points

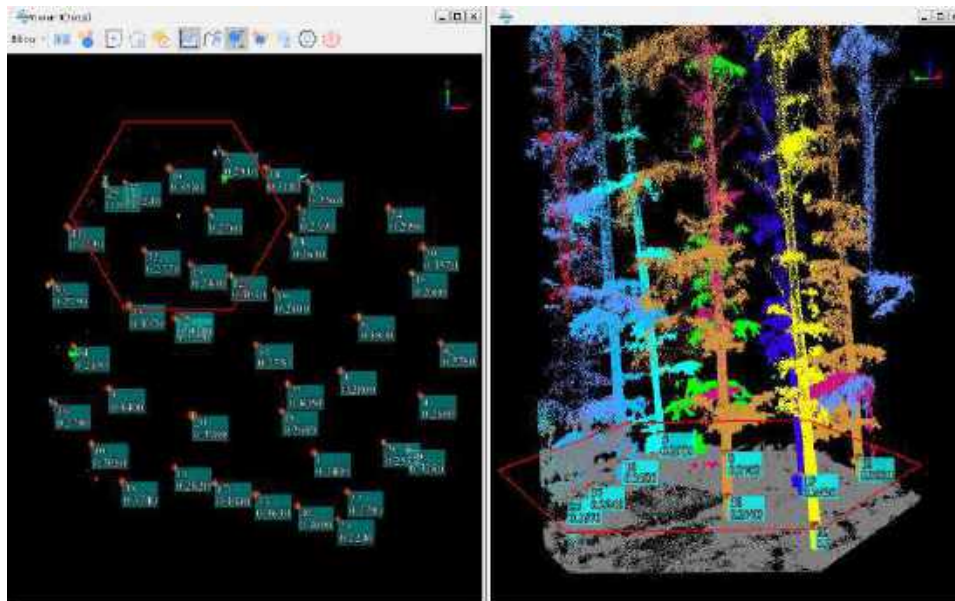


**Brief:** Remove all seed points in the window.

## Profile



**Brief:** When the TLS Editor toolbar is opened, the point cloud window will change to 2D display mode. The profile tool can show if the seed points are accurate in 3D. Click the Profile Tool button and a new window will appear. Click the mouse left button to select a polygon, and all points within the polygon will be displayed in the new window in 3D.



## Pan Profile




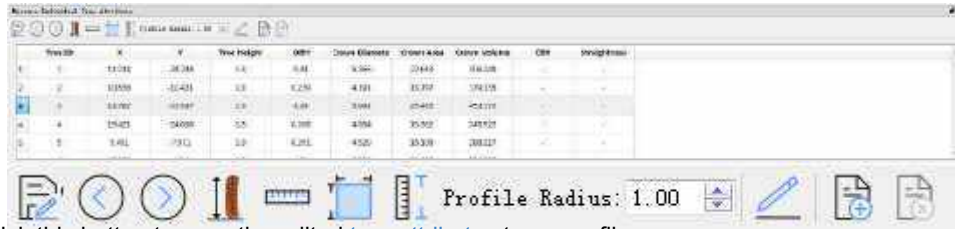
**Brief:** After drawing the profile area in the main window, users can translate the profiled area by clicking this tool, and see the profile data in real-time.

## Measure Individual Tree Attributes





**Brief:** Click this button to open a profile window to measure the attributes of individual trees, including


 **Brief:** Click this button to open a profile window to measure the attributes of individual trees, including tree height, CBH, straightness etc., and save the attribute information into a file. If the Editor of Tree Attributes is activated, change of seed points will not update the attribute table of tree information. If users need to see the updates, re-open the editor window.




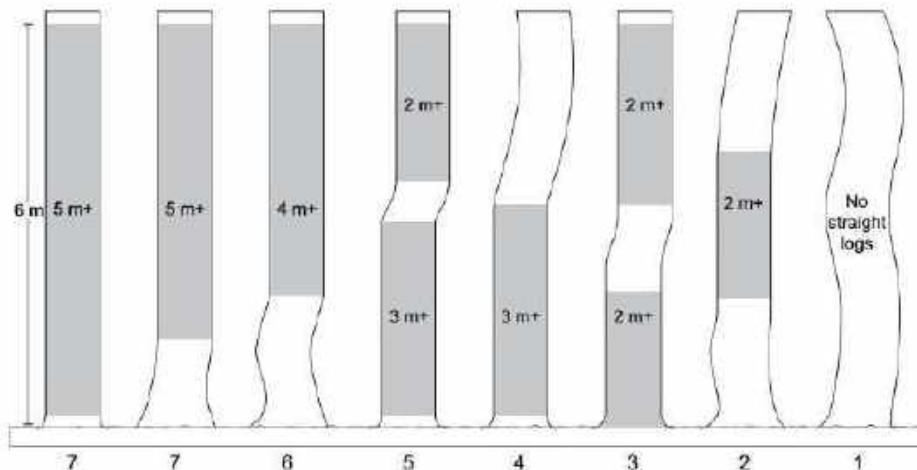
TreeID	X	Y	Tree Height	DBH	Canopy Element	Green+Red	Other colors	CBH	Straightness
1	0	13.036	-26.288	6.8	6.81	6.392	20448	166.038	-
2	2	12.508	-32.421	5.8	5.259	4.721	15.757	170.118	-
3	0	12.782	-30.887	5.9	6.49	3.094	45.462	124.111	-
4	4	15.423	-34.009	5.5	5.105	4.954	35.922	149.927	-
5	5	9.481	-79.12	5.2	6.251	4.525	35.338	188.227	-

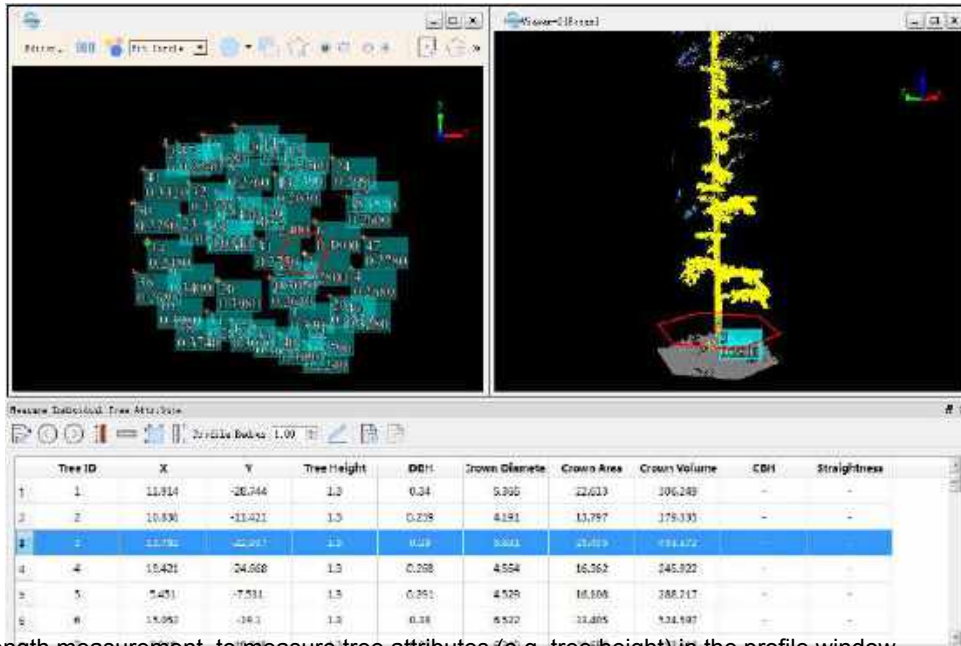
 : Click this button to save the edited [tree attributes](#) to a .csv file.


 : (Available under the profile window) Return to the previous record and the profile window will zoom to the tree point cloud jumped to. (Hotkey: ←)


 : (Available under the profile window) Go to the next record of current one. And the profile window will zoom to the tree point cloud jumped to. (Hotkey: →)

 : Calculate the straightness of a tree: Users need to select out the point cloud of the tree to be calculated in the profile window. Then, according to the calculating standard of tree straightness proposed by [Macdonald E et al.](#), the height of the selected point cloud must be higher than 6 meters. If the straightness information has not been updated after calculation, right click on the cell to refresh.

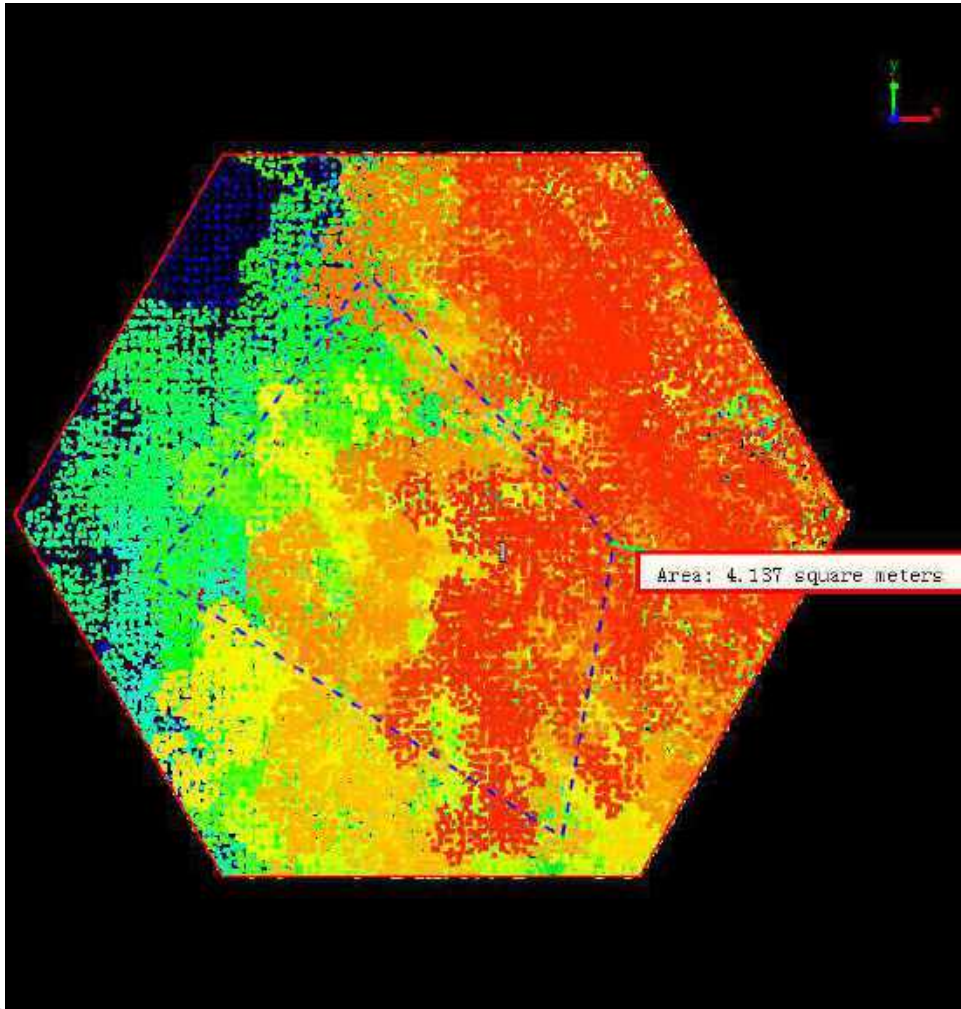





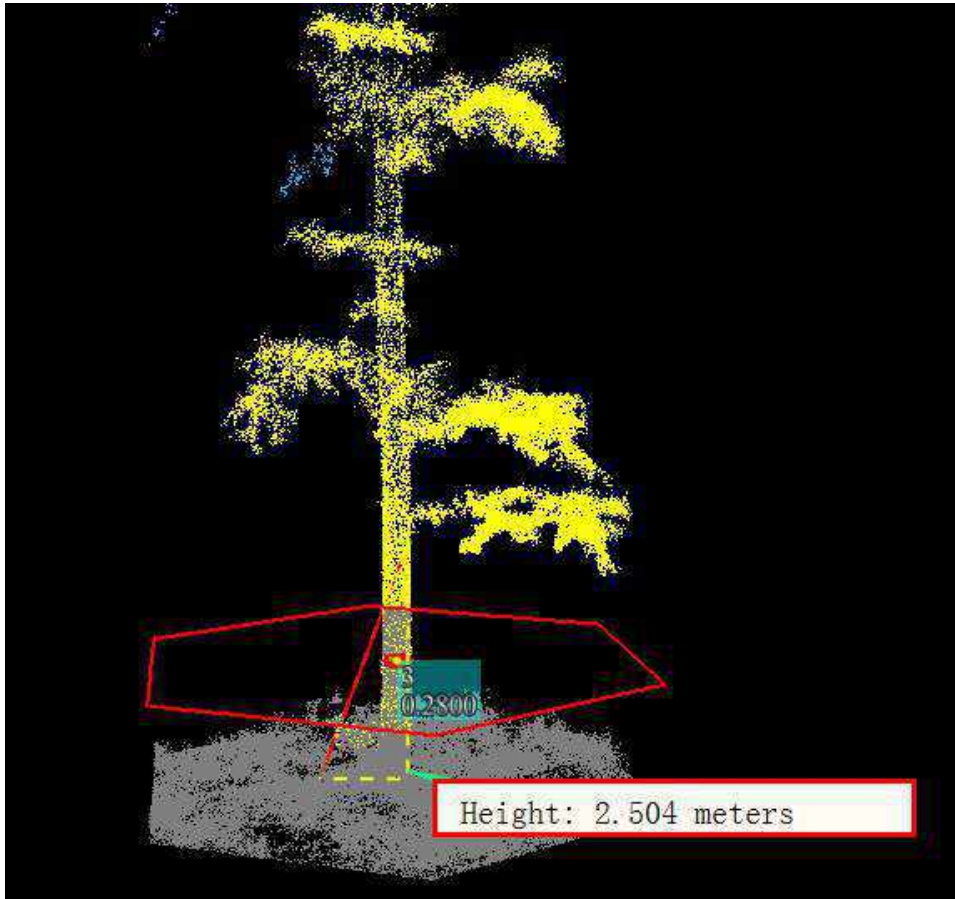
 : Length measurement, to measure tree attributes (e.g. tree height) in the profile window.

 : Area measurement, to measure tree attributes (e.g. crown area, crown diameter) in the profile window.  
 The crown diameter can be derived from the formula  $S=\pi r^2$ , in which S is the circle area fitted from the measured crown area and r is the corresponding crown radius.





 T : Height measurement, to measure tree attributes (e.g. tree height, crown base height) in the profile  
⊥ window.



- **Profile Radius:** Adjust the radius of hexagon in the profile window.

Note: Users must ensure there are seed points in the window before measuring individual tree attributes. If there is no update to edited tree attributes, users can right click on the corresponding cell to refresh (Hotkey: F5).

## DBH Inspector



**Brief:** This tool is used to check if the overlapped DBHs exist in the data.

It is shown as follow when this function is activated:

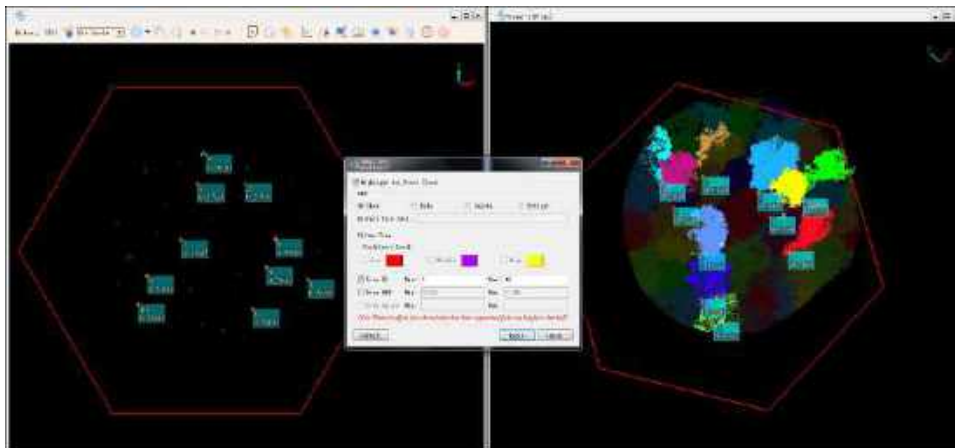


## Filter Trees



**Brief:** The individual tree filtering tool is used for manually examining or editing DBH fitting or individual tree segmentation results. Based on the user-defined filtering range, users can display, hide, delete, extract and highlight individual trees. The filtering methods are based on confidence level (only for DBH batch fitting results), tree ID, DBH, and tree height (only for individual tree segmentation results).

As shown below, after individual tree segmentation, use the filtering by tree ID method and set the minimum and maximum values as 1 and 10, respectively. The points within this range will be highlighted.



## Point Cloud Segmentation Based on Seed



**Brief:** Segment the point cloud data based on the edited seed points. Refer to [PCS with Seeds](#). The tree heights will be recalculated after tree segmentation.

## Clear Tree ID



**Brief:** If the point cloud data has been segmented already, the TreeID should be removed prior to



**Brief:** If the point cloud data has been segmented already, the TreeID should be removed prior to reperforming individual tree segmentation. Refer to [Clear Tree ID](#).

## Setting



**Brief:** Includes seed point setting and height setting for point cloud display.

**Setting**

Parameter Setting

Show Point Cloud Height

Min Height: 1.2      Max Height: 1.4

0.1      ↑      ↓

*(Note: If the length of point cloud in Z axis for extracting DBH  $\geq$  0.4, you will get more strict result.)*

DBH Setting


Min DBH: 0.05      Max DBH: 1

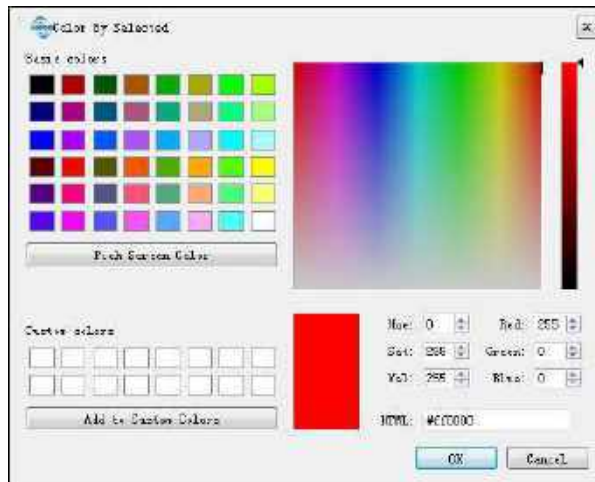
Maximum angle between tree and ground: 30 °

Display Setting

Default      OK      Cancel



- **Show Point Cloud Height:** Set the height for point cloud display in the window. The default height for point cloud display is 1.2-1.4 meters, i.e., the point cloud at the height of a tree's DBH.
  - **Min Height (meter)(default value is "1.2"):** The minimum height of the point cloud displayed in the window. The default is 1.2 meters.
  - **Max Height (meter)(default value is "1.4"):** The maximum height of the point cloud displayed in the window. The default is 1.4 meters.
  - : Increase the display range according to user's input. The range of visualization height will be from **Minimum Height** minus user's input to **Maximum Height** plus user's input.
  - : Decrease the display range according to user's input. The range of visualization height will be from **Minimum Height** plus user's input to **Maximum Height** minus user's input.
- **DBH Configuration:**
  - **Minimum DBH (meter)(default value is "0.05"):** The minimum DBH value based on user's prior knowledge. If the DBH of a tree is smaller than this value, the fitted DBH will be treated as an error.
  - **Maximum DBH (meter)(default value is "1.00"):** The maximum DBH value based on user's prior knowledge. If the DBH of a tree is larger than this value, the fitted DBH will be treated as an error.
  - **Maximum tree inclination angle (degree)(default value is "30"):** The maximum tree inclination angle based on user's prior knowledge. If the inclination angle of a tree is larger than this value, the corresponding points will not be treated as a tree. Note that this threshold is only effective to the method of **Fit Column**.
- **Seed Setting:** Seed point setting includes the color, alpha and size of the seed points, and whether the seed point ID and its label size are shown.
  - **Color (default color is "Red"):** Click , and then the dialog for selecting colors will pop up as shown below. Any color can be selected as the seed point color from this window.



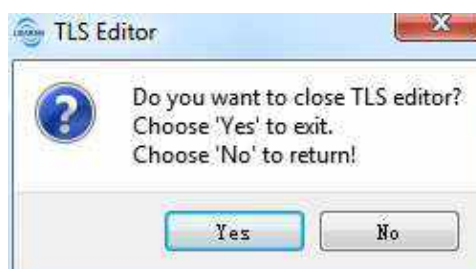
- **Alpha (default value is "0.5"):** Transparency of the seed point, ranging from 0 to 1, with 0 being completely transparent and 1 being opaque. The default value is 0.5. Click  , and the value will be incremented or decremented by 0.1; or one can directly enter a specific value.
- **Display Label:** Set if display the label of the Seed ID in the window.
- **Label Size (default value is "1"):** The label size, ranging from [0, 100). Click  , and the value will be incremented or decremented by 1; or you can directly enter a specific value.
- **Show Seed ID (optional):** Use the check box to determine if the seed point ID is displayed in the window.
- **Size (default value is "0.2"):** The seed size, ranging from [0,100). Click  , and the value will be incremented or decremented by 1; or one can directly enter a specific value.
- **Confidence Level:** Estimate the confidence level of batch fitted DBH values, and visualize the fitting results with different confidence levels using different user-defined colors.
  - **Low Confidence Level:** The DBH fitting results is poor, and users need to visually examine and edit the results to improve the fitting accuracy. Users can set the visualization color.
  - **Medium Confidence Level:** The DBH fitting results is medium, and users may need to visually examine and edit the results if necessary. Users can set the visualization color.
  - **High Confidence Level:** The DBH fitting results is very good. Note that if only a single tree was fitted, the default confident level will be set as high.

Note that if the visualization height range is larger than 0.4 m when fitting the DBH in batch, LiDAR 360 will use a more strict method to estimate the confidence level. This method usually performed better for trees with a long trunk.

## Exit



**Brief:** To exit TLS Editor, click the exit button and a prompt window will pop up. Click "Yes" to close the TLS Editor toolbar, or click "No" to return to the editor window.



Note: If the point cloud has been segmented, you need to [Clear Tree ID](#) before being segmented again. Otherwise, the message "All files have been segmented, please clear tree ID first!" will prompt.

```
@inproceedings{
  author={ Macdonald E, Mochan S},
  title={Protocol for stem straightness assessment in Sitka spruce},
  booktitle={Journal of Bacteriology,176(17):5578-82},
  year={2000}
}
```

# Individual Tree Editor

## Summary

Individual tree editor can extract the individual tree from the big data point cloud for editing, including functions such as creating trees, merging trees, and deleting trees.

## Usage

Load the point cloud data needs to be edited in the window and make sure to activate that window.

Click *TLSForest > Individual Tree Editor* to activate the editing bar in current window.

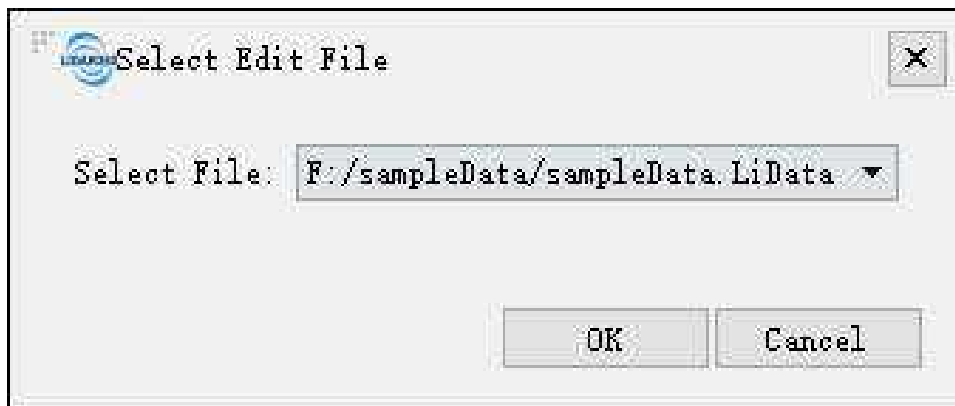
The buttons in the individual tree editor toolbar, from left to right, are: start/end editing, profile, and exit.



## Start/End Editing

Click *Edit > Start Editing*.

Select the data set needs to be edited and click the OK button. The data will be displayed by Tree ID. And all the other functions will become available.



When the editor is on, the selected data cannot be removed from the window. And after the editing, click stop editing to end the editing.

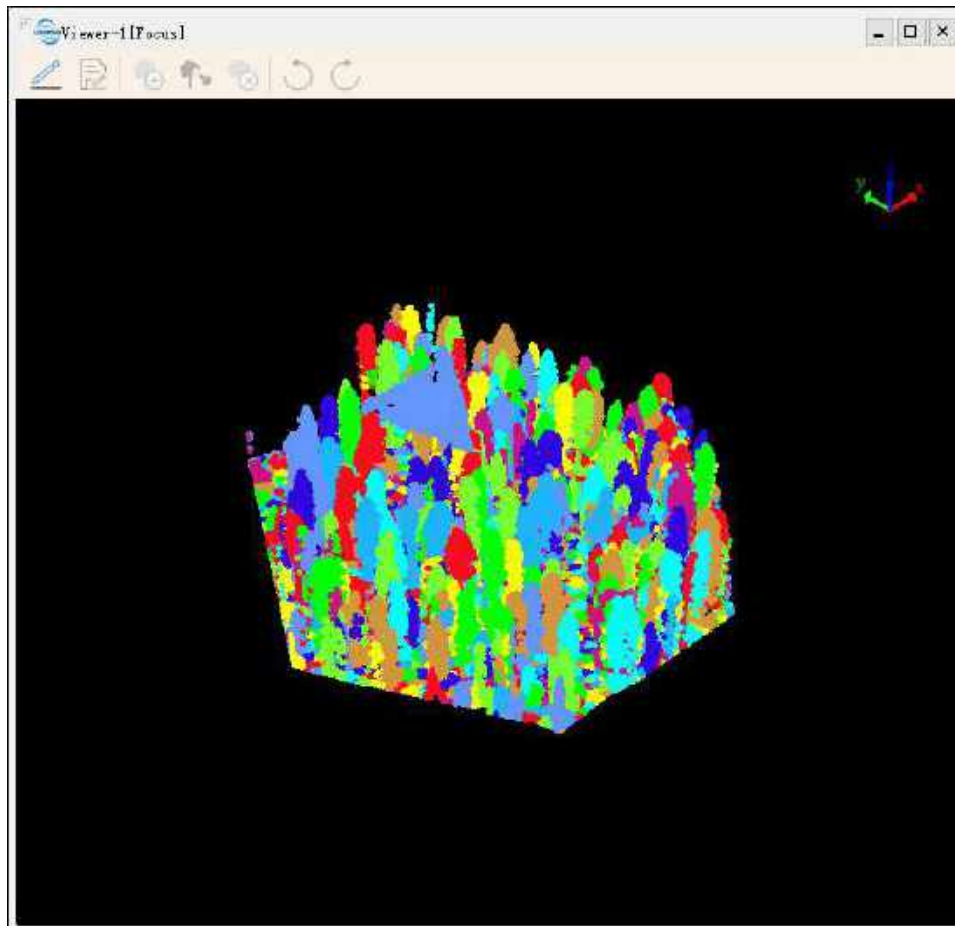
## Profile

### Description



Click \*Profile\* button to open the profile window. Start to draw a hexagon in that window by click the mouse and end drawing by double-click the mouse. This ROI is the area to be edited. And at this moment, the individual tree editing toolbar will appear at the top of the profile window. The tools are, from left to right, load/remove editing area, save, create tree, delete tree, undo, and redo.






Note: Please pay attention to the boundary of the hexagon when selecting the ROI in this profile tool. If the tree is not completely selected, the result may be influenced. Or users can avoid editing the edge of the point cloud data when editing to avoid affecting the results.

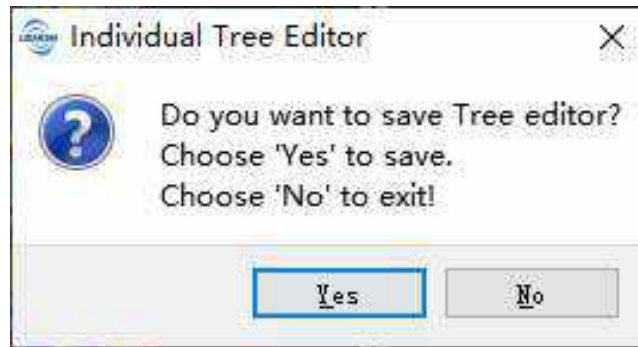
## Load/Remove Editing Area

### Description

 Click \*Load Editing Area\* button to set the area in the hexagon as the area to be edited. At this time, users cannot draw another hexagon in the main window; only the point cloud data in the current ROI can be edited; and the all the editing tools are available in the profile window.



Click *Remove Editing Area* button, if no operation is done to the point cloud file, it will exit the editing directly; if any operation is done, the software will prompt users whether to save the edited point cloud data. If users want to save the result, please click *yes*, and the edited data will be displayed in the main window. If users do not want to save the result, please click *no*. And after this step, users can draw a new hexagon in the main window again.

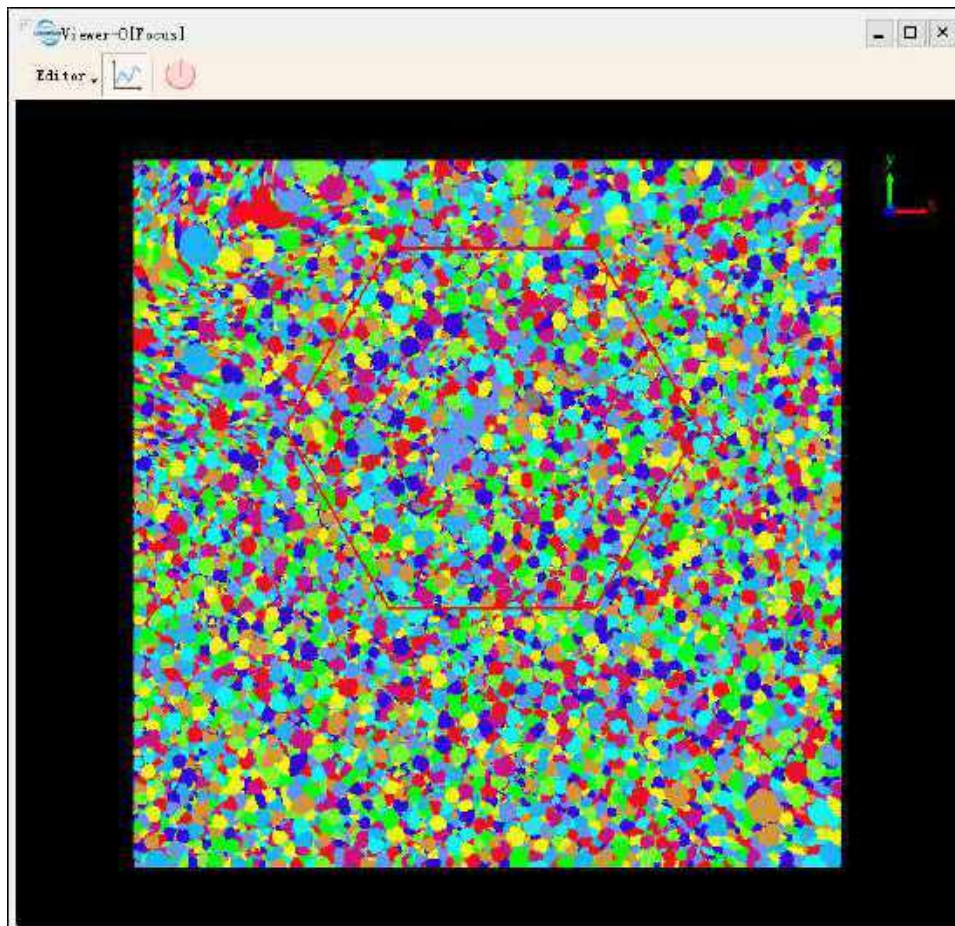


## Save

### Description



Click \*Save\* button, all the operations to edit the individual trees will be saved in the point cloud file. And the edited point cloud will be displayed in the main window.



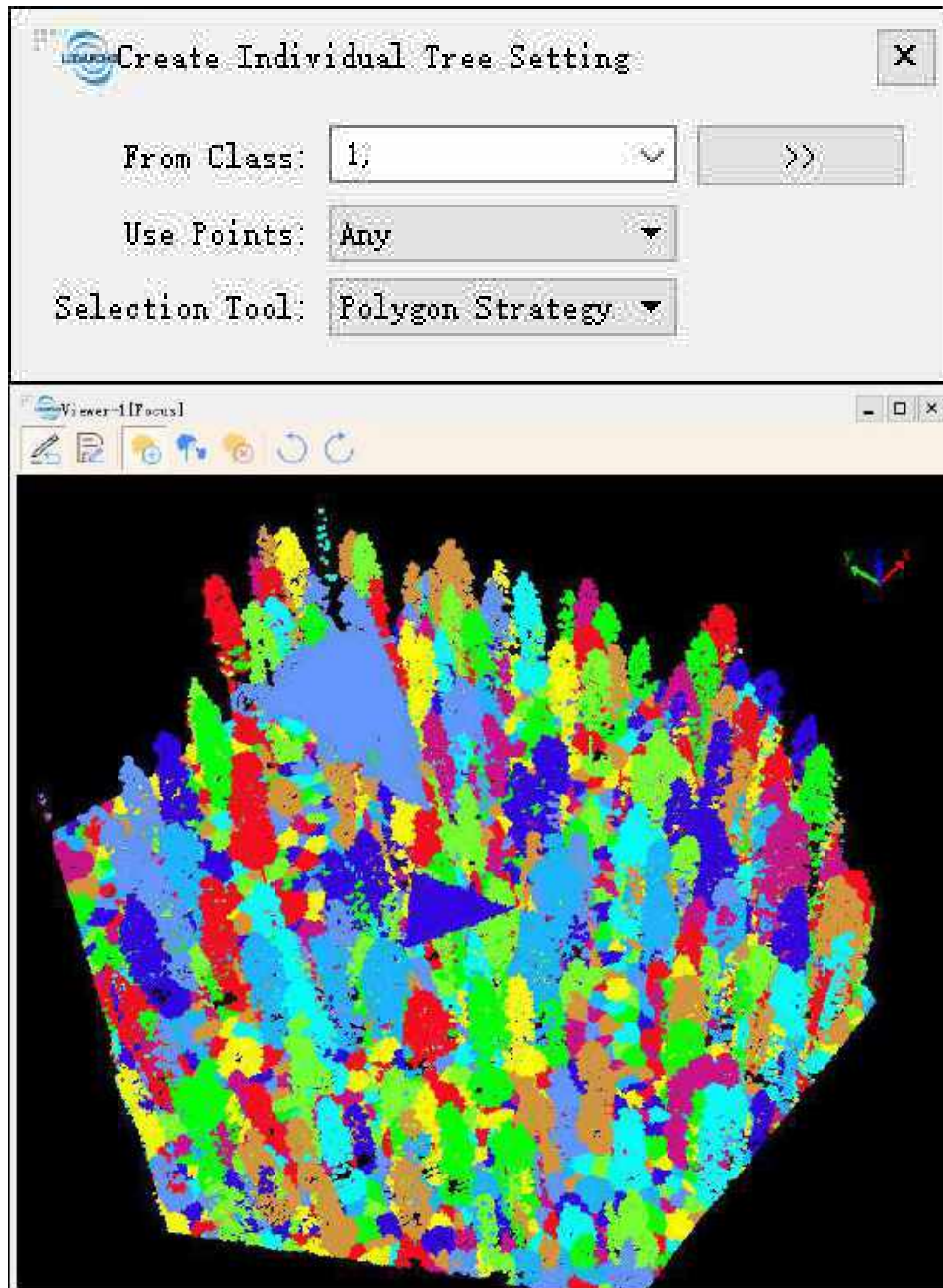
## Create Tree

### Description



Click \*Create Tree\* button and the following window will popup. Select the class of the points that will be used to create the tree in the drop-down menu. All the classes are selected by default. And then, select

the selection tool in the toolbar. The polygon selection tool is selected by default. Start to draw the selection area in the profile window by clicking the mouse. And ending the drawing by double-click the the mouse. The color of the points selected will be changed. At this moment, the new tree is created successfully.



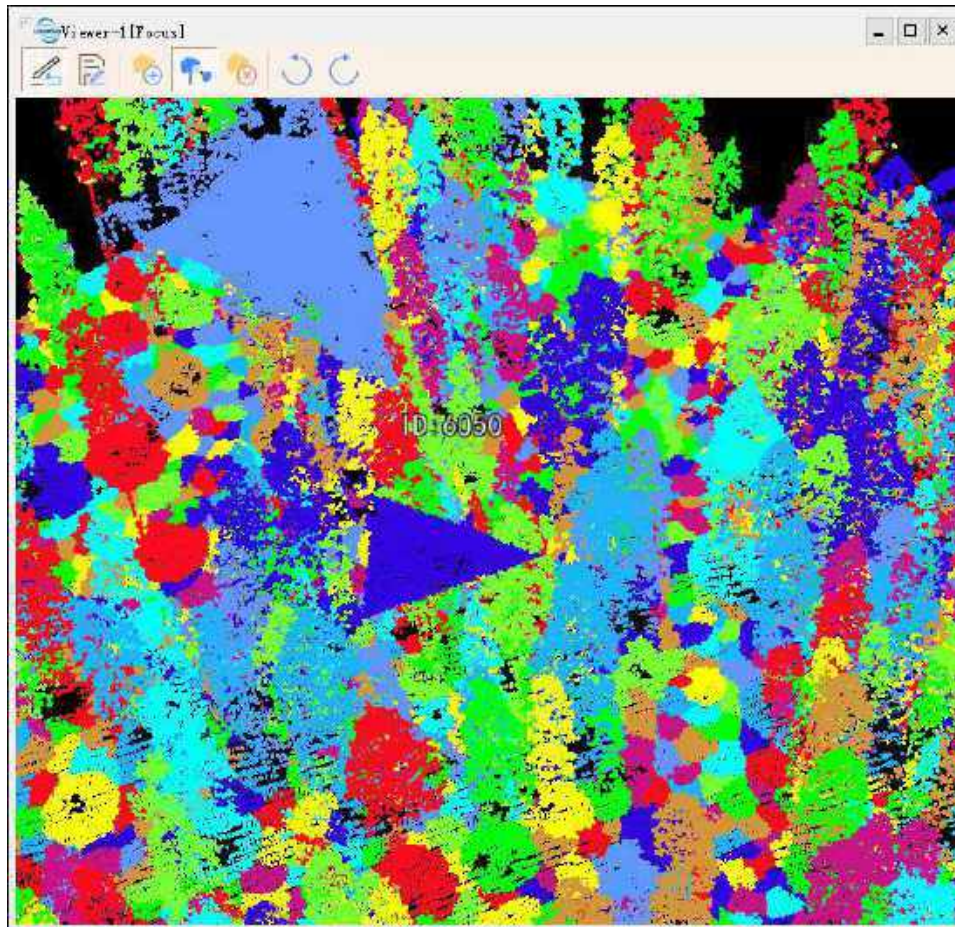
## Merge Tree

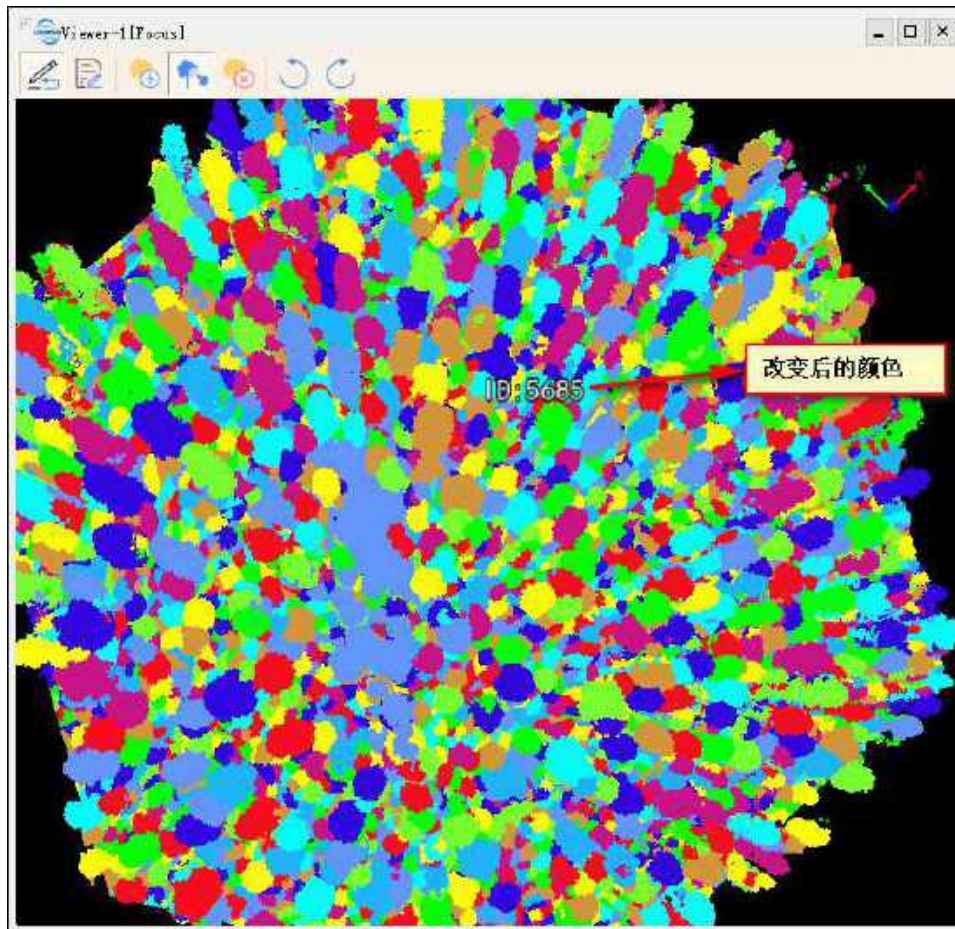
### Description



Click \*Merge Tree\* and then pick the tree in the profile window. If the picked tree's ID is not 0, its ID will be recorded. And then, pick another tree in the profile window. This newly picked tree will be merge to

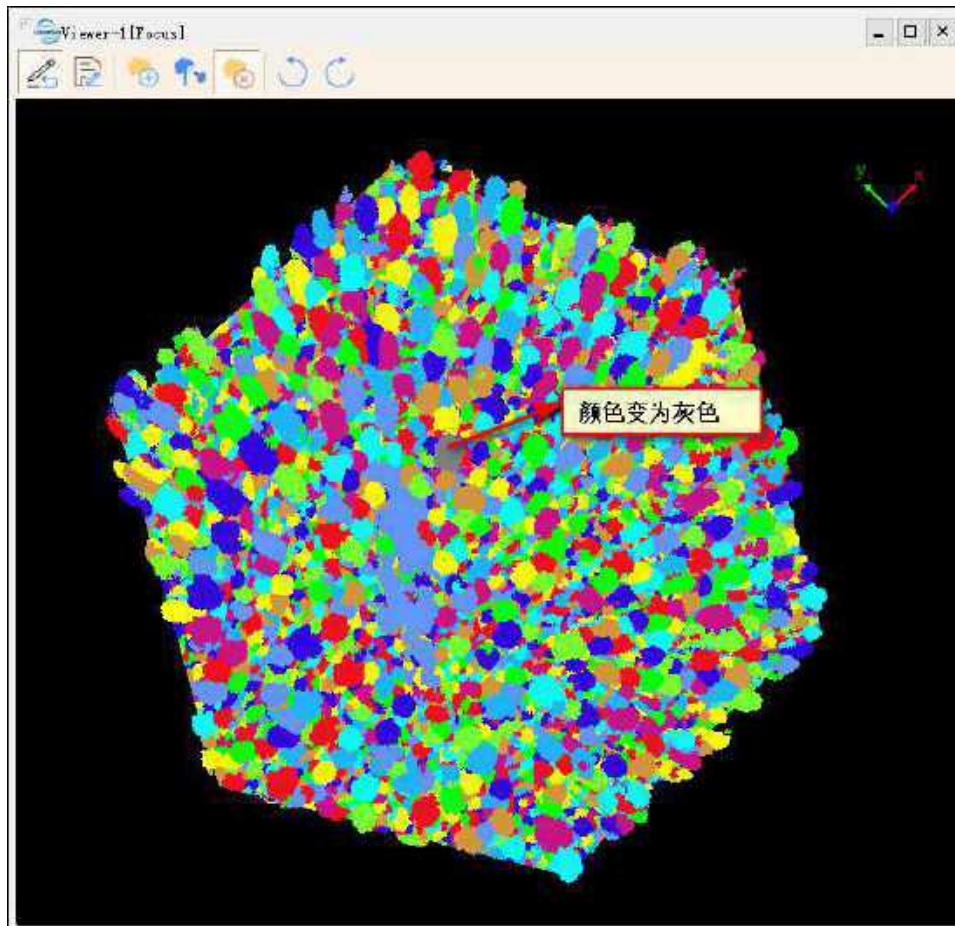
the tree which is recorded in the first step. The color of the merged tree will be the same as that tree first picked. Users can right-click to end the picking.






## Delete Tree

Description




## Undo

### Description

 Click \*Undo\* button to undo the last option. The maximum times of undoing is 20. Any operation before the last 20 steps cannot be undone.


## Redo

### Description

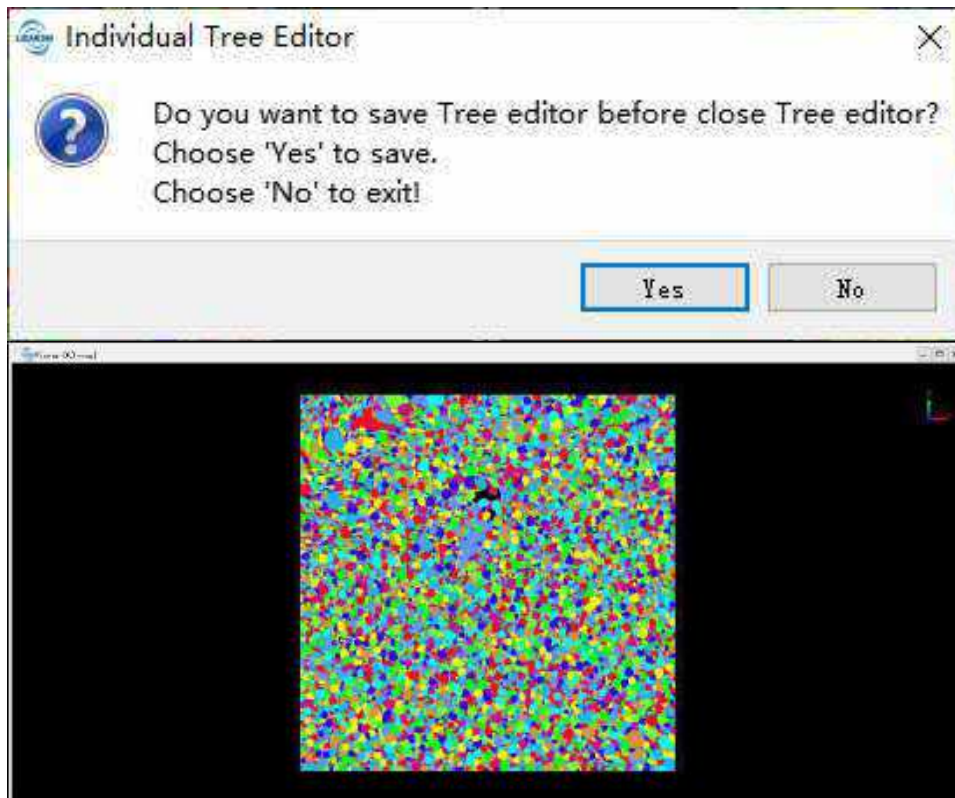
 Click \*Redo\* to redo the undone operations.

## Exit

### Description

 Click \*Exit\* button, if no operation is done to the point cloud file, it will exit the editing directly; if any operation is done, the software will prompt users whether to save the edited point cloud data. If users want to save the result, please click \*yes\*, and the edited data will be displayed in the main window. If

users do not want to save the result, please click \*no\*. And after this step, the profile window will be closed, and the individual tree editor function will be turned off.



# DBH Measuring

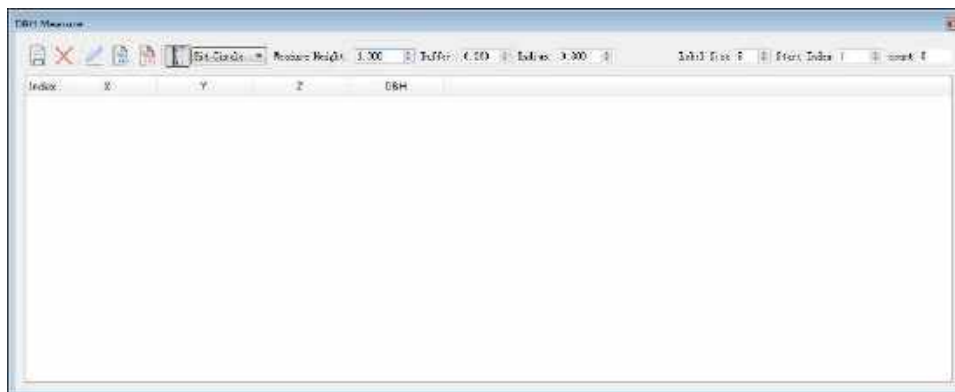
## Summary

The DBH measurement tool can measure the tree DBH on the TLS forestry point cloud data. And support to export the measurement results as txt, asc, neu, xyz, pts, and csv formats.







## Usage

Load the point cloud data to be edited into the window, and set this window as the active window.

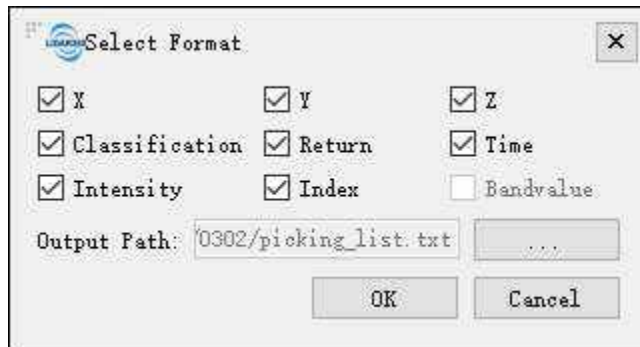
Click *TLS Forestry > DBH Measuring* to open the DBH measuring window.




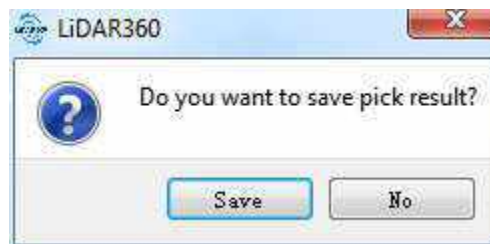
## Steps

1. Activate the DBH measuring button  (Initially activated). Use the left mouse button to click the roots of the trees in the scene to measure DBH in sequence. This function will select the point cloud of the corresponding range according to the set parameters and use the method of fitting the circle to fit DBH. The fitting results are displayed in the 3D window and the DBH measurement window at the same time.
2. Click to select any row in the list, and click the  button to delete this measurement result.
3. Click the Start Edit button , and double-click the cell in the table to change the selected field.
4. Click the Add Field button , and the following window will pop up. Currently, it supports the following types of custom fields: integer, float, text, date, and enum. After clicking the "OK" button, the new field will be displayed in the list window.
5. Click the Remove Field button  to delete the added field selected in the Remove Field dialog (only the fields created by the users can be removed).
6. The selected results can be exported in multiple formats such as txt, asc, neu, xyz, pts, and csv. Click the  button, the "Select Method" dialog box pops up (as shown).





7. Click the  button to select the output path and select all the fields need to be export. Then, click "OK" button to finalize the exporting.
8. If the users do not save the selected result, when exiting this function, the software will pop up the following interface, click "Save" to save the point, click "No" to exit the function.

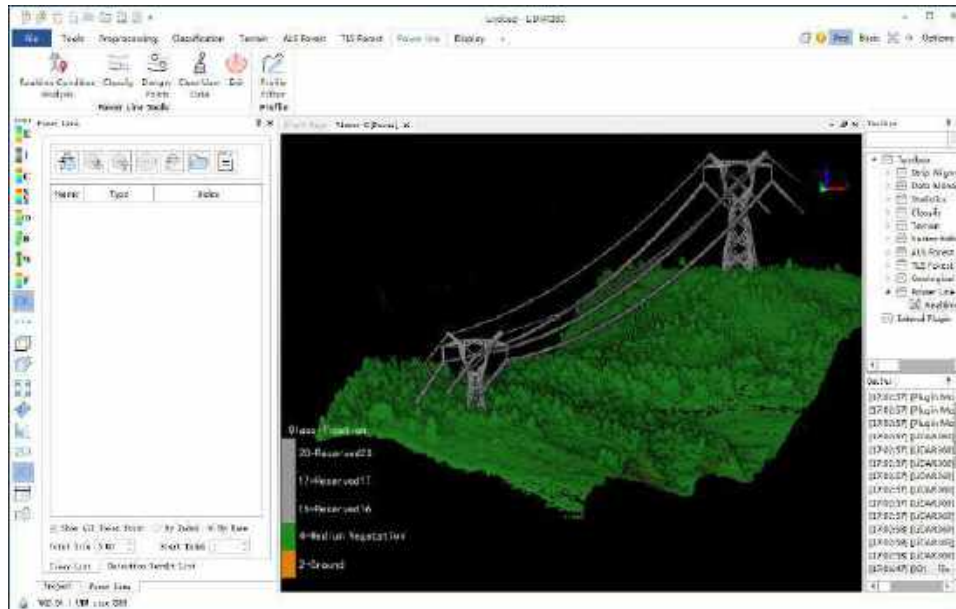


## Settings

- **Measuring Height:** This function uses a cylindrical area to select the point cloud, and fits the points obtained with a planar circle to get the DBH. The measuring height corresponds to the height from the fitting circle to the selected tree root.
- **Buffer Height:** The height of the cylindrical area to select the point cloud.
- **Buffer Radius:** The radius of the cylindrical area to select the point cloud.
- **Label Size:** The display size of the label for displaying DBH measurement results in the three-dimensional window.
- **Total Number:** The total tree of measurement result (cannot be manually modified).

# Power Line

The Power Line module is used for processing and analysis of power line point cloud, including Settings, Mark Tower, Classify, Dangerous point detection and Clear Danger Points.



- [Settings](#)
- [Mark Tower](#)
- [Classify](#)
- [Detect Danger Points](#)
- [Clear Danger Points](#)

# Settings

## Summary

This setting will pop up automatically when powerline module is turned on. Powerline module parameter settings include common settings and detection parameter settings. Common settings include working directory settings, point cloud coordinate systems settings, class and detection parameters settings, detected line voltage level settings; detection parameter settings include class settings, detection types, and safety distance settings.

## Common Settings

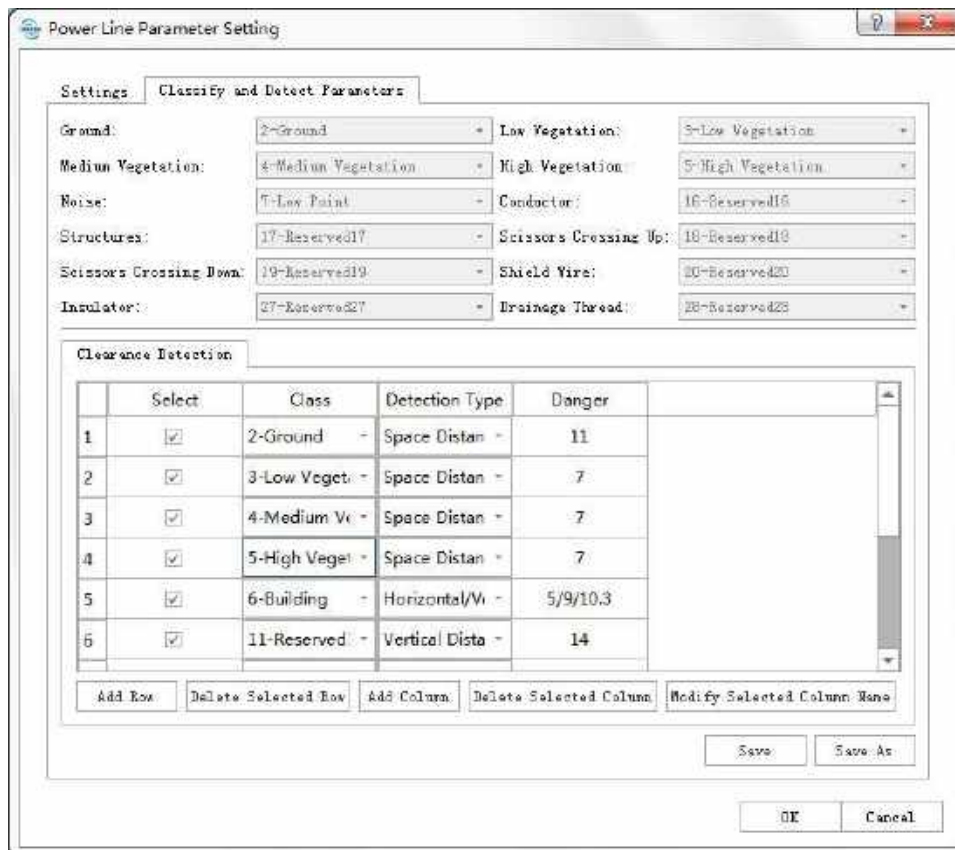
The user can set the working directory, point cloud coordinate system, class and detection parameters, detected line voltage level and add configuration tables. The software can record the user's last 5 input history records in settings of the working directory, point cloud coordinate system and classes and detection parameters. User can select the most recently used item in the drop-down list. The working directory is used to manage the project. The prj.ini file in the working directory records the point cloud coordinate system, classes and detection parameters, and voltage level of the current project.



- **Working Directory:** Used to save the intermediate and final results.
- **Classes and Detection Parameters:** Set the path of the xml format configuration file.
- **Detected Line Voltage Level:** The voltage level of the detected powerline.

## Detection Parameter Settings

Displays key detection classes and safety distance detection parameters. User can add voltage levels and then configure their corresponding detection parameters, including clearance distance analysis and crossing analysis. Clearance distance analysis includes detections for different classes of objects, as well as different safety distance and distance detection methods. For crossing analysis, user only needs to set the classes to be detected, and user does not need to set a safety distance.



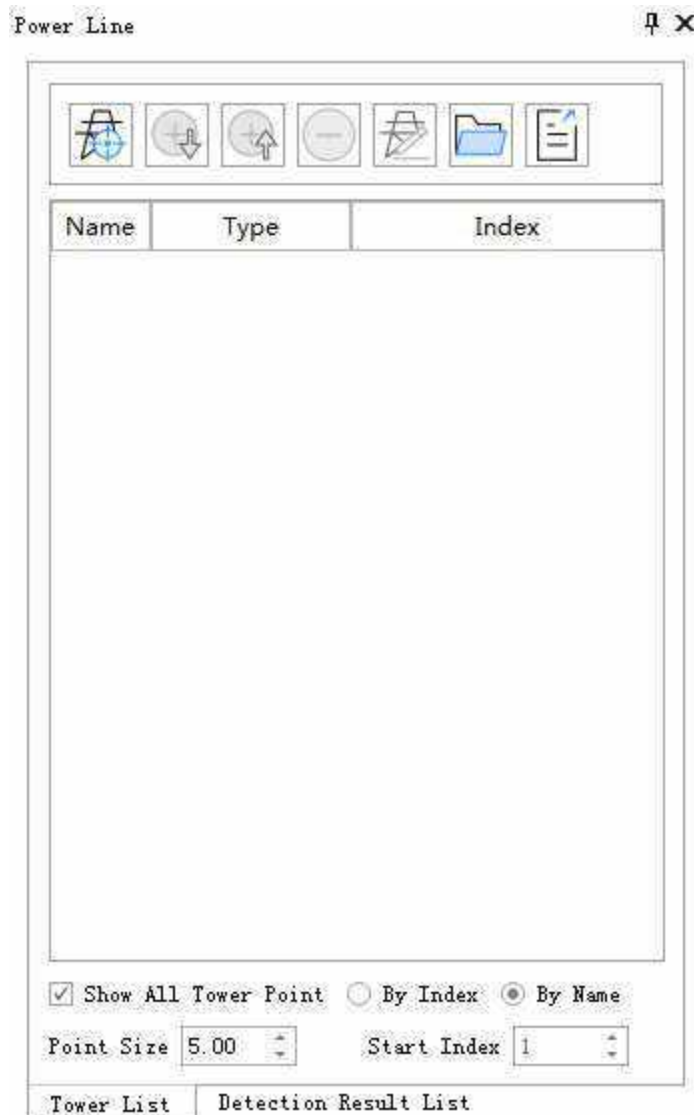
- **Select:** Whether to detect this class.
  - **Checked (default):** Detect the danger point in this class.
  - **Unchecked (default):** Do not detect the danger point in this class.
- **Class:** Select the number (from 1 to 32) of the class in the drop-down menu.
- **Detection Type:** Select the detection type in the drop-down menu.
  - **Clearance Distance:** Judge the point whether to be a danger point by the clearance distance. If the distance is less than this value, it is a danger point.
  - **Vertical Distance:** Judge the point whether to be a danger point by the vertical distance. If the distance is less than this value, it is a danger point.
  - **Horizontal Distance:** Judge the point whether to be a danger point by the horizontal distance. If the distance is less than this value, it is a danger point.
  - **Horizontal Distance / Vertical Distance:** Firstly judge the point whether to be a danger point by the horizontal distance. If the distance is less than set horizontal value, it is a danger point. If the distance is larger than set horizontal value, judge the point whether to be a danger point by the vertical distance.
  - **Horizontal Distance / Clearance Distance:** Firstly judge the point whether to be a danger point by the horizontal distance. If the distance is less than set horizontal value, it is a danger point. If the distance is larger than set horizontal value, judge the point whether to be a danger point by the clearance distance.
  - **Horizontal Distance / Vertical Distance / Clearance Distance:** Firstly judge the point whether to be a danger point by the horizontal distance. If the distance is less than set horizontal value, it is a danger point. If the distance is larger than set horizontal value, judge the point whether to be a danger point by the vertical distance. If the distance is less than the set vertical distance, it is a danger point. If the distance is larger than the set vertical distance, judge the point whether to be a danger point by the clearance distance then.
- **Add Row:** Add a new detection class record.
- **Delete Row:** Delete the selected row of detection class.
- **Add Column:** Add a new column for a severity level threshold. I.E., severe, important, and general.

- **Delete Column:** Delete the selected column.
- **Change Column Name:** Change the name of selected column.
- **Save:** Save the configuration to the current xml file.
- **Save as:** Save the configuration as a new xml file.

# Mark Tower

## Summary

After clicking in the point cloud data and choosing the tower type, user can save the result into [LiTower](#) file. After adding the position information of the tower, the software will automatically generate the index and name information of the tower. Index is a number starting from the starting value and incrementing by 1. By default, name is the same as Index. Tower type includes "None", "Tension Tower", and "Straight Line Tower". Double-click the row for each tower to jump to that tower in the displaying window. By checking or unchecking the checkbox in front of "display all tower points" to display or hiding the tower points in the window. Point size can be modified.



- **Display All Tower Points (checked by default):** Display the tower names or indexes in the window. Uncheck this option to hide the all the tower names or indexes.
- **By Index:** Display the tower index.
- **By Name:** Display the tower name.
- **Point Size (meter) (default value is "5.0"):** Set the red marker sphere and text font size of the tower.

### Select Tower



Click this button to start to pick the tower points. Click again to exit this function and save the current tower information to the tower.LiTower file in the working directory.

### Add Tower After



Add a tower record after currently selected record.

### Add Tower Before



Add a tower record before currently selected record.

### Delete Tower



Delete the current selected tower record.

### Modify Tower Position



Modify the position of the selected tower.

### Input Tower File



Input the tower file and renew the tower list in LiTower, txt, csv, and kml file.

### Export Tower File






Export the information in the current tower list to LiTower or kml file.

# Classify

## Summary

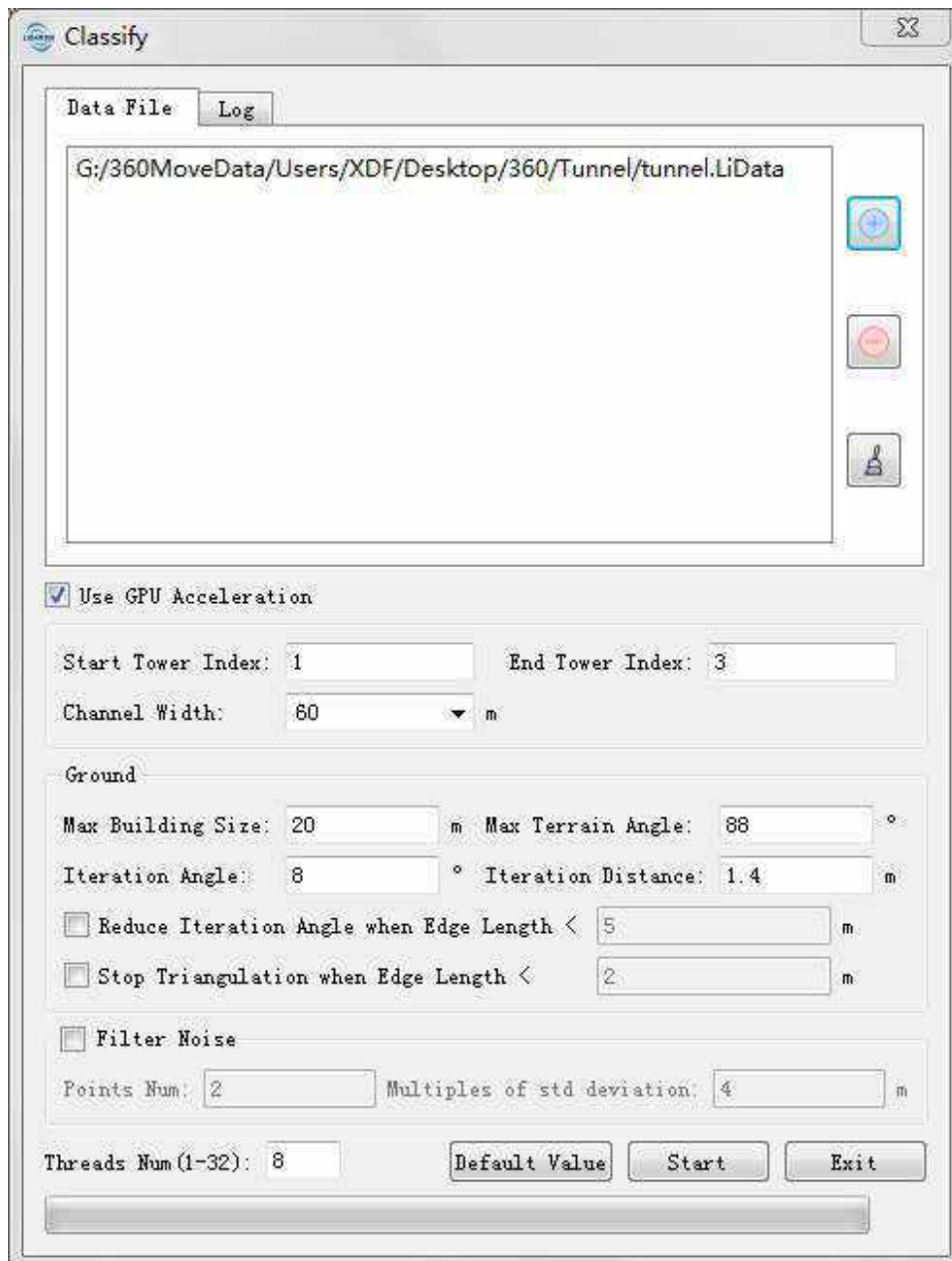


According to the tower file, clip and classify the point cloud data. Classify the point cloud into transmission tower, powerline, ground points, noise, and other selected classes. This function can process multiple data simultaneously. Click  to add the data to be processed. Click  to remove the selected data. Click  to clear the data list. This function can perform segmentation, classification, and noise removal in one step, or user can select the function needed by checking the box in front of the name of each function.

## Usage

Add the point cloud data, and click *Power Line > Classify*.





## Settings

- **GPU Acceleration (Unchecked by default):** Use GPU to accelerate when voltage is more than 500KV.
- **Corridor Width (meters) (default is "60"):** Width extending to both sides of the powerline. The software can record the user's current settings and automatically restore the settings when opened again.
- **Starting Tower Index:** Towers with index numbers smaller than this value are not involved in the calculation. The default value is the minimum Index in the tower file.
- **Ending Tower Index:** Towers with index numbers larger than this value are not involved in the calculation. The default value is the maximum Index in the tower file.
- **Classify Ground Points:** Please refer to the [Classify Ground Points](#) in the Classify toolbox for the detailed information of parameter settings. The software will not classify the ground points if this option is unchecked.
- **Remove Noise (Checked by default):** Classify the noise points. The software will not classify the noise if this option is unchecked.




- **Number of Thread (default value is "4"):** Set the number of thread (1 to 32) to run this function. The software can record the currently setting and when the user open this function again, the setting will be kept.
- **Default:** Restore the default parameter settings.

Note: The segmented data will be stored in the output path folder. The name of the file will be (Smaller Tower Index\_Larger Tower Index). In order not to impact the following steps, it is highly recommended not to change the file name. After the automatic classification, user need to check the accuracy of the result and manually modify it in the [Profile Tools](#).

# Detect Danger Points

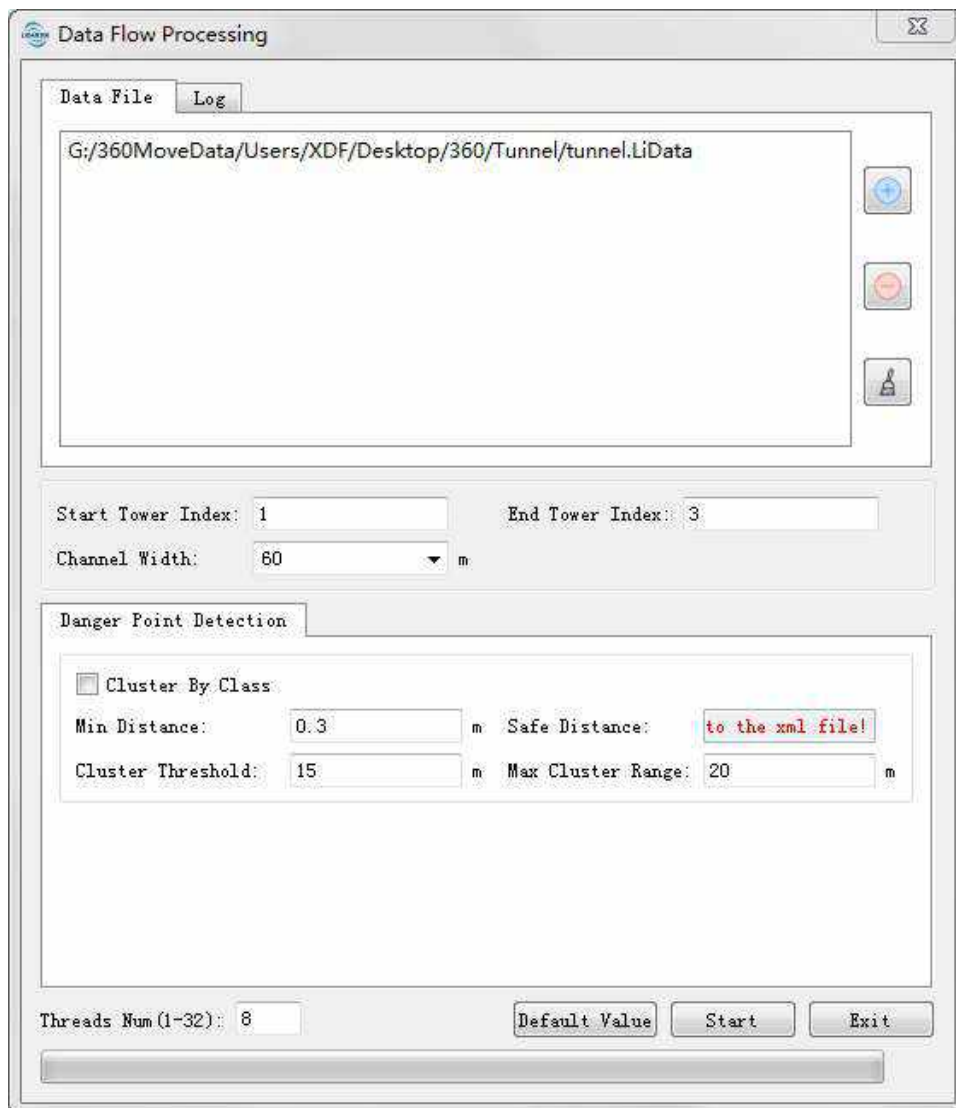
## Summary



Batch process the point cloud file to generate the danger points images and reports based on the tower file. The interface of detect danger points function is shown as follow. This This function can process multiple data simultaneously. Click  to add the data to be processed. Click  to remove the selected data. Click  to clear the data list.

## Usage

Click *Power Line > Detect Danger Points*



## Settings

- **Starting Tower Index:** Towers with index numbers smaller than this value are not involved in the calculation.

The default value is the minimum Index in the tower file.

- **Ending Tower Index:** Towers with index numbers larger than this value are not involved in the calculation. The default value is the maximum Index in the tower file.
- **Corridor Width (meters) (default is "60"):** Width extending to both sides of the powerline. The software can record the user's current settings and automatically restore the settings when opened again.
- **Detection Parameters:** Detect the clearance danger points according to the customized
  - **Cluster by Class:** Unchecked by default. Used to control whether to cluster the result by class. If this option is checked, the danger points will be clustered into different groups if they are in different classes; otherwise, the class information will not influence the clustering process. The software can record the user's current settings and automatically restore the settings when opened again.
  - **Min Distance (meters) (default value is "0.3"):** Points with clearance distance less than this distance are not detected as danger points, as they are considered to be noise. The software can record the user's current settings and automatically restore the settings when opened again.
  - **Safety Distance (meter) (default value is "4.5"):** If the distance between the detected point and the powerline point is greater than the minimum distance and less than or equal to the safe distance, the point is considered to be a danger point. If the xml file is not set, user needs to enter the safety distance; otherwise, this parameter is extracted from the xml file. When using the xml to set the parameter, user can set different safety distances for different classes, and for different severity level.
  - **Cluster Threshold (meter) (default value is "15.0"):** The maximum spatial separation distance when the detection results are clustered. This value should be smaller than the maximum clustering range. Three-dimensional Euclidean clustering is used to cluster the danger points. The software can record the user's current settings and automatically restore the settings when opened again.
    - **Maximum Clustering Range (meters) (default value is "20.0"):** After the detection results are clustered, if the length along the power line direction is greater than this value, they are divided into multiple dangerous point clusters. The software can record the user's current settings and automatically restore the settings when opened again.
- **Number of Thread (default value is "4"):** Set the number of thread (1 to 32) to run this function. The software can record the currently setting and when the user open this function again, the setting will be kept.
- **Default:** Restore the default parameter settings.

# Clear User Data

## Summary



Clear all the danger point detection result in the point cloud. After execute this function successfully, all the danger points (in red) will be changed into non-danger point.



## Usage

*Power Line > Clear*

## Settings

- **Number of Thread (default value is "4"):** Set the number of thread (1 to 32) to run this function. The software can record the currently setting and when the user open this function again, the setting will be kept.

# Geological Analysis

Geological Analysis provides automatic as well as manual analysis tools for flow direction, flow accumulation, fill, dip and strike.

- [Raster Flow Direction](#)
- [Raster Flow Accumulation](#)
- [Raster Fill](#)
- [Query Dip and Strike](#)

# Raster Flow Direction

## Summary

The tool uses the D8 algorithm to calculate the raster of flow direction for each pixel.

The D8 algorithm is to build flow direction from each pixel to downhill neighbouring pixel of the most steep angle. The output of pixel value is within 1-255 of Integer format.

Note:

1. If the pixel Z value is the lowest among the eight neighbouring pixels, it will be assigned to the minimum value among its neighbourings. And flow direction is to this pixel. If multiple neighbouring pixels have the same lowest value, it will still be assigned to the minimum value among its neighbourings. But its flow direction will be defined via one of the following methods. This can filter abnormal low noisy points.

2. If the z-value of a pixel changes the same in multiple directions, and the pixel is part of a sunken point, the flow direction of the pixel will be considered undefined. At this time, the value of the pixel in the output flow direction raster will be the sum of these directions. For example, if the z-value changes the same to the right (flow direction = 1) and downward (flow direction = 4), the flow direction of the cell is  $1 + 4 = 5$ . You can use the sink tool to mark pixels with undefined flow directions as sunken points.

3. If the z-value of a pixel changes the same in multiple directions, and the pixel is not part of a depression, a lookup table that defines the most probable direction will be used to specify the flow direction. See Greenlee (1987).

4. The output D8 descent rate raster data will be calculated based on the z-value change rate of the path length between the pixel centers and expressed as a percentage. For adjacent pixels, this is similar to the percentage slope between pixels. When crossing a flat area, the distance becomes the distance to the nearest pixel with a lower elevation. The result is a graph of the percentage increase in elevation in the steepest descent path from each pixel.

5. When calculating the D8 descent rate raster data of a flat area, in order to improve performance, the distance to the diagonally adjacent pixel (1.41421 cell size) is approximately calculated as 1.5 cell size.

## Description

The key to obtaining the hydrological characteristics of the surface is to determine the flow direction from each pixel in the grid. This can be done with the flow direction tool.

The tool takes the surface as input and outputs a raster showing the direction of flow from each pixel. If the output rate of decline raster data option is selected, an output raster expressed as a percentage will be created, showing the maximum rate of change in elevation from each pixel along the flow direction to the length of the path between the pixel center. If the Force all edge cells to flow outward is selected, all cells at the edges of the surface raster will flow outward from the surface raster.

The flow direction is determined by the steepest descent direction or the maximum descent direction from each pixel. The flow direction is calculated as follows:

$$\text{maximum\_drop} = \text{change\_in\_z-value} / \text{distance} * 100$$

Calculate the distance between the centers of the pixels.

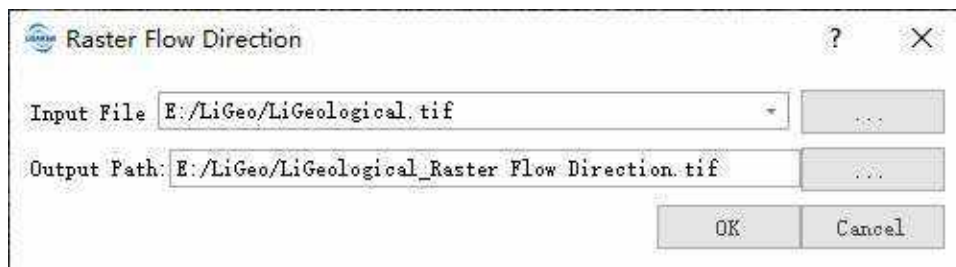
1.If the pixel size is 1, the distance between two orthogonal pixels is 1, and the distance between two diagonal pixels is 1.414 (the square root of 2). If multiple pixels have the same maximum descending direction, the range of adjacent pixels will be expanded until the steepest descending direction is found. After finding the direction of the steepest descent, the output pixel will be encoded with a value representing that direction.

2.If all neighboring pixels are higher than the pixel to be processed, the pixel to be processed will be regarded as noise and filled with the lowest value of its neighboring pixels. The pixel to be processed has a flow direction towards itself. However, if the single pixel sink point is located near the actual edge of the grid or has at least one NoData pixel as an adjacent pixel, it cannot be filled due to insufficient neighborhood information. To treat a pixel as a real single-pixel sink, all neighborhood information must exist.

3.If two pixels flow into each other, they are both meeting points and have an undefined flow direction. This method of obtaining flow direction through a digital elevation model (DEM) was introduced by Jenson and Domingue (1988).

## Usage

Click *Geological Analysis >Raster Flow Direction*.



## Parameters

- **Input File:** Select input tiff file.
- **Output Path:** Select output path.

```
@inproceedings{
  author={Sch\{o}Greenlee, D. D.},
  title={Raster and Vector Processing for Scanned Linework},
  booktitle={Photogrammetric Engineering and Remote Sensing },
  year={1987},
}

@inproceedings{
  author={Sch\{o}Qin, C., Zhu, A. X., Pei, T., Li, B., Zhou, C., & Yang, L},
  title={An adaptive approach to selecting a flow partition exponent for a multiple flow direction algorithm
},
  booktitle={International Journal of Geographical Information Science},
  year={2007},
}
```



# Raster Flow Accumulation

This tool is used to calculate raster of flow accumulation by pixel.

Notes:

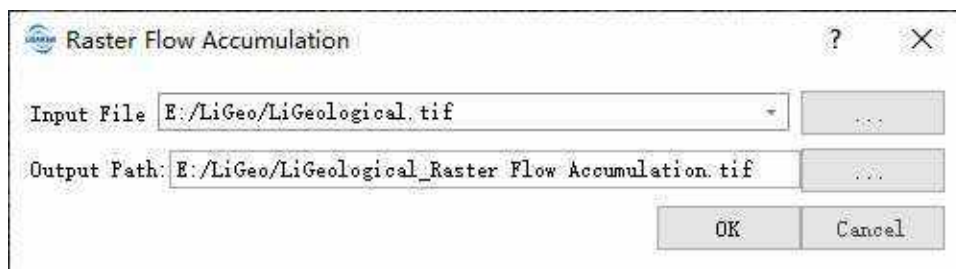
- 1.The result will be a flow accumulation raster, each pixel value is calculated by all the uphill pixels by cumulative weight.
- 2.D8 flow direction modeling algorithm is used in this tool.
- 3.If the Raster Flow Direction is not used for the input raster, the flow accumulation might be annular and go into endless loop.
- 4.Pixels of undefined flow direction will only take in uphill pixels, they will not form any downhill flow. For D8 algorithm, if the pixel is not of value 1、 2、 4、 8、 16、 32、 64 or 128, we consider the pixel flow-undefined.
- 5.Flow accumulation is based on the amount of uphill pixels, the pixel itself will not be considered in.
- 6.The large value pixels can indicate rivers.
- 7.The low value pixels can indicate ridges.

## Summary

This tool is used to calculate raster of flow accumulation by pixel. The pixel value is the cumulative weight of all the uphill pixels.

## Usage

Click *Geological Analysis >Raster Flow Accumulation*



## Parameters

- **Input File:** Select input tiff file.
- **Output Path:** Select output path.

```
@inproceedings{
  author={Sch\"{o}nson, S. K., J. O. Domingue},
  title={Extracting Topographic Structure from Digital Elevation Data for Geographic Information System Analysis},
  booktitle={Photogrammetric Engineering and Remote Sensing},
  year={1988},
}
```

```
@inproceedings{
  author={Sch\^{o}Tarboton, D. G., R. L. Bras, I. Rodriguez-Iturbe},
  title={On the Extraction of Channel Networks from Digital Elevation Data},
  booktitle={Hydrological Processes},
  year={1991},
}
```

# Raster Fill

Raster Fill is used to improve the raster by filling in the depression of the raster.

Depression pixel refers to the pixel lower than other surrounding pixels, which is unable to define the flow direction. The pour point is the boundary pixel with the lowest elevation relative to the confluence area of the depression pixel. If the depression is filled with water, the water will pour out from that point.

1. Z defines the maximum elevation difference between depression pixel and pour point, which decides the minimum depth of the depression area need to be filled.

For example, suppose the elevation of the pour point in a depression area is 210 feet, and the deepest point of the depression is 204 feet (depth:6 feet). If the z limit is set to 8, this depression will be filled. However, if the z limit is set to 4, the area will not be filled because the depth exceeds the limit value, and it is regarded as a valid depression pixel.

2. All qualified depression pixels will be modified to the elevation of pour point.

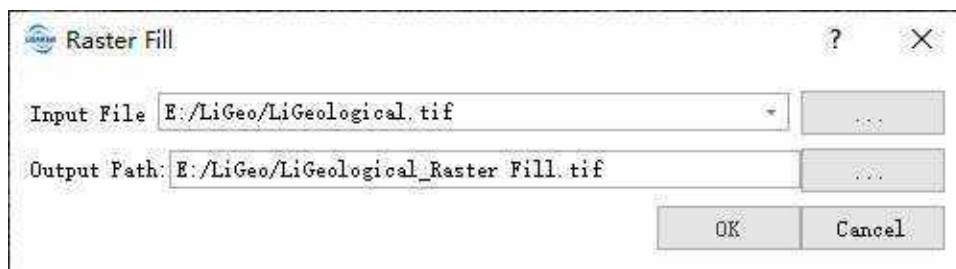
3. The more the depression points, the longer the processing time.

## Summary

The Raster Fill tool uses functions equivalent to the focus flow, flow direction, depression, watershed, and area fill tools to locate and fill depressions. The execution of the tool will iterate until all depressions within the specified z limit are filled. While filling the depressions, other depressions may be created at the boundaries of the filled area, and these depressions will be removed in the next iteration.

## Usage

Click *Geological Analysis > Raster Fill*.



## Parameters

- **Input File:** Select input tiff file.
- **Output Path:** Select output path.

Note: If the raster data is of integer type, the output filled raster data is also of integer type. If the input raster data is of floating point type, the output raster data is also of floating point type.

```
@inproceedings{
  author={Sch"{o}Planchon, O.,Darboux, F},
  title={A fast, simple and versatile algorithm to fill the depressions of digital elevation models},
  booktitle={Catena},
  year={2002},
```

```
}
```

```
@inproceedings{
```

```
  author={Sch\{"o}Tarboton, D. G., R. L. Bras,I. Rodriguez-Iturbe},
```

```
  title={On the Extraction of Channel Networks from Digital Elevation Data},
```

```
  booktitle={Hydrological Processes},
```

```
  year={1991},
```

```
}
```

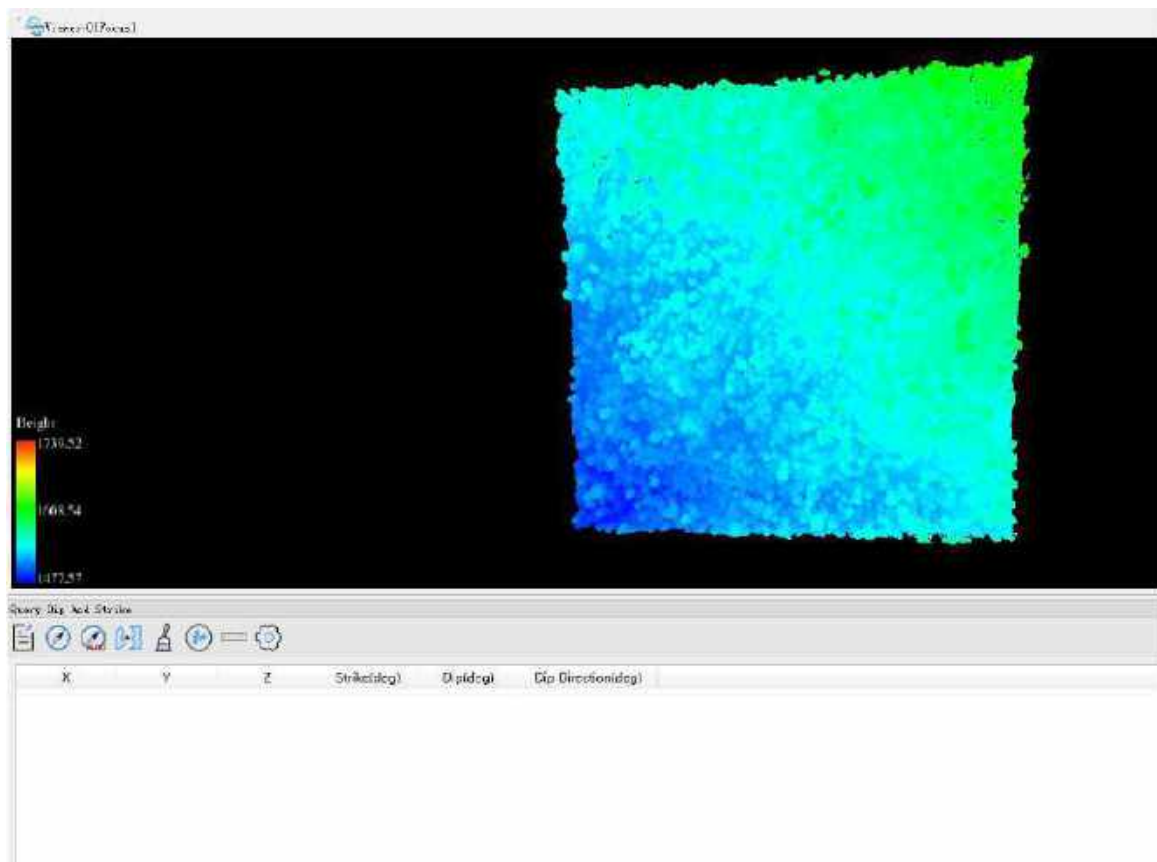
# Query Dip and Strike

## Summary


This tool is used to calculate dip and strike automatically or based on the point cloud selected manually. Related analysis tool and result report are also available.


## Usage


Load the point cloud in the viewer. Click *Geological Analysis > Query Dip and Strike*, and the toolbar will show in the viewer.

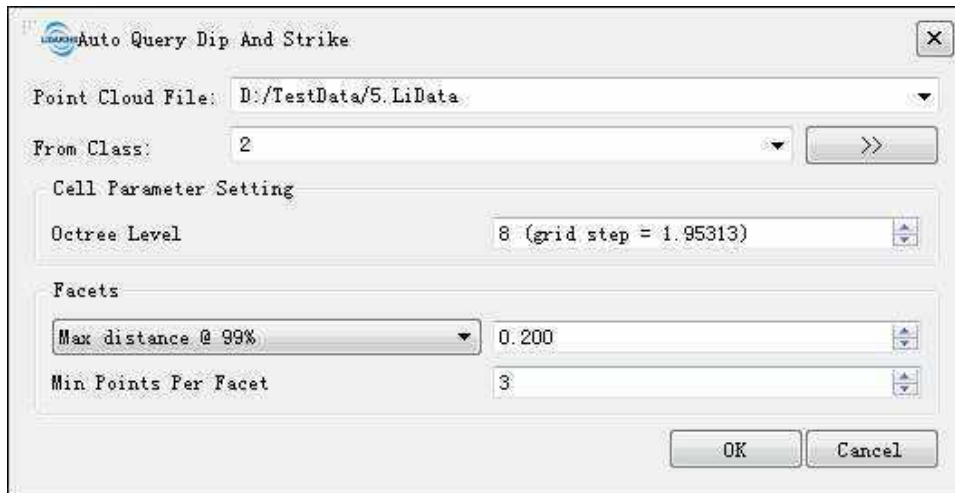


In the Query Dip and Strike window, there are several buttons: Export Data, Query Dip and Strike, Automatically Query Dip and Strike, Clear data, Statistic Report, Adjust radius and Settings.

 **Export Data:** Save data in the table as CSV file.

 **Query Dip and Strike:** By clicking this button, a round selection box will show in the point cloud viewer. You can also adjust the radius of the circle. After selecting the point cloud by the round box, the Dip and Strike info will show as 3D model in the viewer. Meanwhile, a query record will add in the table below.

 **Auto Query Dip and Strike:** This tool can automatically calculate Dip and Strike, and add the record in the table below.



- **Point Cloud File:** Select point cloud file in the drop-down list.
- **From Class:** Select the class of point cloud to be calculated, default setting is ground point.
- **Octree Level:** Create an octree for the point cloud. The higher the level, the fewer the number of point clouds contained in each octree node. The specific results of the segmentation are as follows: the larger the value is set, the finer the queried facet, otherwise the larger the facet.
- **Facets:** Parameters of Facets.
  - **Facets Type:** Different type of Facets.
    - **Max Root mean square error:** The maximum root mean square of the distance between the point cloud of the cluster and the fitted plane in the segmentation.
    - **Max distance@68%:** The maximum distance of the top 68% of the distance between the point cloud of the cluster in the segmentation and the fitted plane.
    - **Max distance@95%:** The maximum distance of the top 95% of the distance between the point cloud of the cluster in the segmentation and the fitted plane.
    - **Max distance@99% (by default) :** The maximum distance of the top 99% of the distance between the point cloud of the cluster in the segmentation and the fitted plane.
    - **Max distance:** The maximum distance between the point cloud of the cluster in the segmentation and the fitted plane.
  - **Distance Threshold:** The larger the threshold, the more points will be segmented into a facet, which means there will be more large facets.
  - **Min Points Per Facet:** The minimum points of a facet. The larger the value, the more the points of a facet.



**Clear Data:** Clear data in the viewer and the table.




**Statistic Report:** Click the button to do statistics and filter on the dip and strike. Set the interval for dip and strike statistics. The rose diagrams and corresponding statistical reports can also be generated. When filtering, you can choose different filtering types and rendering types, and filter by setting the minimum and maximum angle threshold.

The screenshot displays a software interface with several components:

- Statistical Report (Top Left):** Shows a rose diagram with a peak at 90 degrees. Below it, the value is Frequency: 967 and Direction: 206.493. It includes buttons for 'Statistics', 'Export Statistics', 'Export Box Statistics', and 'Export Report'.
- Data Table (Middle):** A table titled 'Faults for Add Strike' with columns: X, Y, Z, Strike(deg), Dip(deg), and Dip Direction(deg).
 

	X	Y	Z	Strike(deg)	Dip(deg)	Dip Direction(deg)
1	104219.297	4101667.749	1061.559	60	30	100
2	1044677.748	4101595.748	1061.059	140	30	250
3	1049165.978	4101594.389	1060.309	120	28	210
4	104417.630	4101595.714	1076.861	120	34	210
5	104098.310	4101591.593	1068.818	199	59	14
6	104469.250	4101599.511	1065.513	155	36	245
7	104479.645	4101595.295	1075.705	87	38	177
- Statistics Report (Bottom Left):** Similar to the top report, showing a rose diagram and statistics: Frequency: 88, Direction: 201.685.
- Statistics Report (Bottom Right):** Shows a rose diagram with two peaks. Legend: Red for Strike, Green for Dip Direction. Statistics: Frequency: 874, Direction: 14.4051. It includes a 'Color Bar' for the rose diagram.

 **Settings:** Checking or unchecking the box to decide whether to show label, axis and horizontal plane.

The 'Setting' dialog box contains the following options:

- Show label
- Show axis
- Show horizontal plane

Below these options is a text field: 'Keep the number of digits after the decimal point 0' with a spin button.

At the bottom are 'OK' and 'Cancel' buttons.

## Tutorials

- [Getting Started Tutorial](#)
- [Point Cloud Data Basic Operations Tutorial](#)
  - [Data Management](#)
  - [Statistics](#)
  - [Classify](#)
- [Strip Alignment Tutorial](#)
- [Terrain Tutorial](#)
- [Forestry Tutorial](#)
- [ALS Regression Analysis](#)
- [Power Line Dangerous point detection](#)

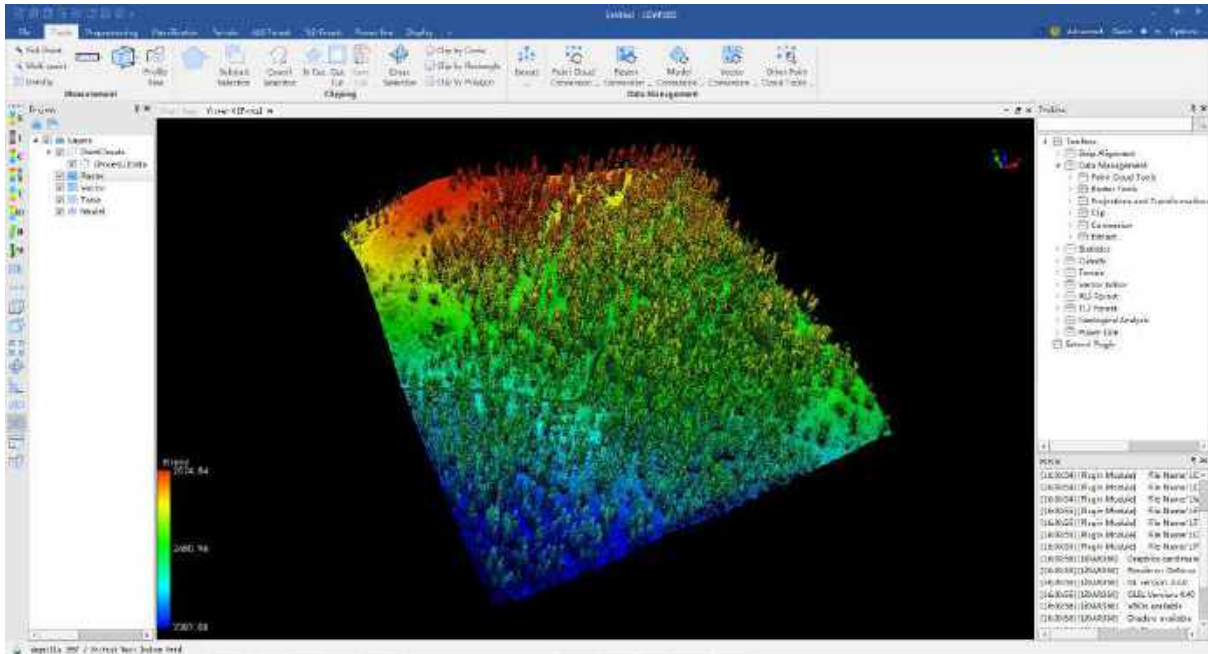
## Videos

1. [LiDAR360 Installation and License Activation](#)
2. [LiDAR360 Overview and Loading Data](#)
3. [LiDAR360 Window Management](#)
4. [LiDAR360 Measurement Tools](#)
5. [LiDAR360 Selection Tools](#)
6. [LiDAR360 Profile Tools](#)
7. [LiDAR360 Camera Roam in 90 Seconds](#)
8. [Point Cloud Generation](#)
9. [LiDAR360 Strip Adjustment Module](#)
10. [LiDAR360 Classify Ground](#)
11. [LiDAR360 Classify Ground by Selected](#)
12. [LiDAR360 Terrain Module](#)
13. [LiDAR360 Tree Segmentation](#)
14. [LiDAR360 ALS Forestry Module](#)
15. [LiDAR360 TLS Forestry Module](#)



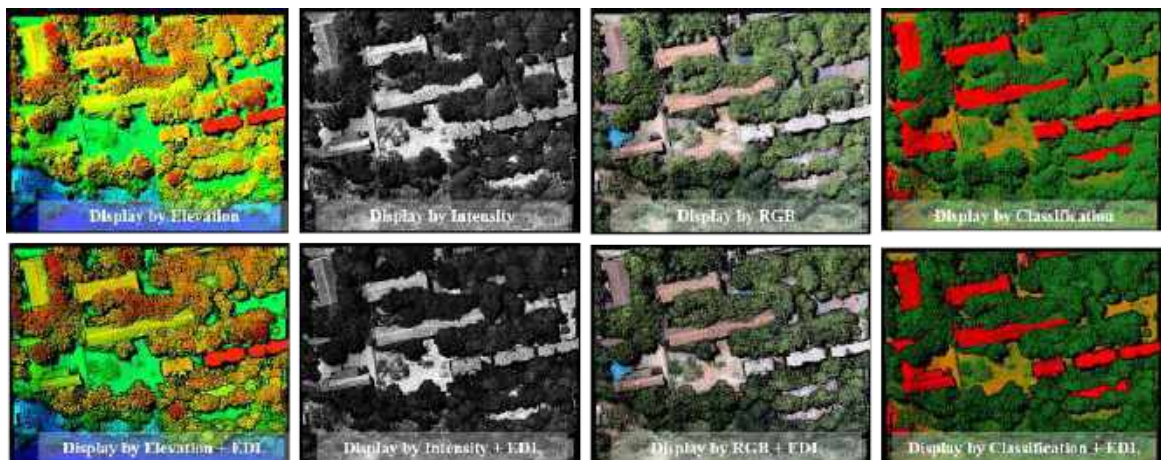
# Getting Started

## User Interface Overview



## Steps

1. Click **File > Add Data** to open data. You can import point clouds (\*.LiData, \*.las, \*.laz, \*.txt, \*.asc, \*.neu, \*.xyz, \*.pts, \*.csv, \*.ply), rasters (\*.tif, \*.jpg), vectors (\*.shp), tables (\*.csv) and models (\*.LiModel, \*.LiTin, \*.osgb, \*.ive, \*.desc, \*.obj) into LiDAR360. The point cloud data will be converted into LiData file for the first time been added, it is the customized file format for massive point cloud data visualization and processing.
2. Ten display modes for point clouds are provided in LiDAR360: Display by Elevation, Display by Intensity, Display by Classification, Display by RGB, Display by Return Number, Display by GPS Time, Display by Blend, Display by Tree ID, Display by Mix and Display by EDL. EDL can be used with other display modes. Refer to [Color Tools](#).



3. A group of measurement tools are provided, including [Pick Point](#), [Pick Multi-point](#), [Length Measurement](#), [Area Measurement](#), [Angle Measurement](#), [Height Measurement](#), [Volume Measurement](#) and [Density Measurement](#).

## Tutorial Videos

1. [LiDAR360 Installation and License Activation](#)
2. [LiDAR360 Overview and Loading Data](#)
3. [LiDAR360 Window Management](#)
4. [LiDAR360 Measurement Tools](#)
5. [LiDAR360 Selection Tools](#)
6. [LiDAR360 Profile Tools](#)
7. [LiDAR360 Camera Roam in 90 Seconds](#)

# Point Cloud Data Basic Operations

This tutorial introduces the basic operations of point cloud data by LiDAR360.

## Feature Lists

- [Data Management](#)
- [Statistics](#)
- [Classify](#)

## Data Management

### >>Point Cloud Tools

Feature	Brief
<a href="#">Remove Outliers</a>	Remove outlier points of the point cloud
<a href="#">Noise Filter</a>	Remove outlier points of the point cloud
<a href="#">Normalize by DEM</a>	Normalize the point cloud, need DEM corresponding to the point cloud
<a href="#">Normalize by Ground Points</a>	Normalize the point cloud, request ground points for the point cloud
<a href="#">Tile by Range</a>	Tile the point cloud data to by range
<a href="#">Tile by Point Number</a>	Tile the point cloud data by point number
<a href="#">Merge</a>	Merge multiple point cloud files into single one
<a href="#">Extract Point Cloud Boundary</a>	Extract the boundary of the point cloud data
<a href="#">Subsampling</a>	Provide three ways of subsampling point clouds: <b>Minimum Points Spacing, Sampling Rate, Octree</b>
<a href="#">PCV</a>	Improve visualization of point cloud
<a href="#">Extract Color from Image</a>	Add the RGB value of multi-band image data color to the corresponding point cloud data
<a href="#">Subdivision</a>	Rectangular subdivision method for point cloud data

### \*>>Projections and Transformations

Feature	Brief
<a href="#">Define Projection</a>	Define projection information for point cloud data
<a href="#">Reproject</a>	Convert the point cloud by reprojection
<a href="#">Transformation</a>	Provide four ways of transforming point cloud data
<a href="#">Elevation Adjustment</a>	Transform the elevation of the point cloud data
<a href="#">Four-parameter Solution</a>	Calculate the four parameters
<a href="#">Seven-parameter Solution</a>	Calculate the seven parameters

### >>Clip

Feature	Brief
<a href="#">Clip</a>	Provide three ways to clip point cloud data: <a href="#">Clip by Circle</a> ,

[Clip by Rectangle](#), [Clip by Polygon](#)

>>Conversion

Feature	Brief
<a href="#">Convert LiData to Other Formats</a>	Convert LiData to five file formats: <a href="#">Las</a> , <a href="#">ASCII</a> , <a href="#">TIFF</a> , <a href="#">DXF</a> , <a href="#">Shape</a>
<a href="#">Convert Las to LiData</a>	Support Las 1.0-1.3 & Laz formats
<a href="#">Convert TIFF to LiModel</a>	Convert single-band raster data to LiModel format
<a href="#">Convert to Texture LiModel</a>	Map color values of the DOM data to the LiModel model for display
<a href="#">Convert LiModel to TIFF</a>	Convert LiModel format files to raster images in TIFF format
<a href="#">Convert TIFF to ASCII</a>	Convert TIF format raster images to files in ASCII format
<a href="#">Convert TIFF to LiData</a>	Convert TIF format raster images to files in LiData format

>>Extract

Feature	Brief
<a href="#">Extract LiData by different ways</a>	Provide five ways to extract LiData from the point cloud data: <a href="#">Class</a> , <a href="#">Elevation</a> , <a href="#">Intensity</a> , <a href="#">Return</a> , <a href="#">Time</a>

## Statistics

Feature	Brief
Grid Statistics	Fast grid statistics analysis on point cloud data
Volume Statistics	Statistics of the different volumes by surface model data with intersections in two spatial ranges


## Classify

Feature	Brief
<a href="#">Classify Ground Points</a>	Classify ground points by an improved progressive TIN densification filtering algorithm, could also choose the tool of <a href="#">Classify Ground by Selected</a> to classify ground points
<a href="#">Extract Median Ground Points</a>	Extract thicker ground points from UAV points cloud data
<a href="#">Classify by Attribute</a>	Classify points by specific attribute
<a href="#">Classify Low Points</a>	Classify noise point that is lower than the actual terrain
<a href="#">Classify by Below Surface</a>	Classify points that are below the elevation of the surrounding neighborhood
<a href="#">Classify Isolated Points</a>	Classify outlier points in the air or below the ground
<a href="#">Classify Air Points</a>	Classify points that are higher than the surrounding points into airborne noise points
<a href="#">Classify by Height Above Ground</a>	Classify the points on the surface of the terrain with a certain height
<a href="#">Classify by Min Elevation Difference</a>	Classify the points which are at a certain height within a certain radius
<a href="#">Classify Buildings</a>	Classify buildings of point cloud data
<a href="#">Classify Powerlines</a>	Classify power lines of point cloud data
<a href="#">Classify Model Key Points</a>	Classify the key points on the terrain and relatively subsample the points on the ground
<a href="#">Classify by Machine Learning</a>	Classify points by machine learning or classify points by a certain <a href="#">machine learning model</a>

# Strip Alignment

This tutorial introduces the standard workflow of strip alignment for airborne LiDAR point clouds through boresight calibration by LiDAR360.

## Steps

1. **Data Quality Inspection** Data Quality Inspection is required to make sure the data meets the requirements of strip alignment module. It improves the alignment quality after processing.
  - o 1.1. Click **Strip Alignment** > **Trajectory Quality Analysis** to check the trajectory quality from the height analysis, speed analysis and flight attitude analysis.
  - o 1.2. Click **Strip Alignment** > **Strip Overlap Analysis** to analyze the overlap between point clouds.
  - o 1.3. Click **Strip Alignment** > **Density Quality Analysis** to analyze the density of point cloud.
2. Click **Strip Alignment** > **Boresight** to align strips through boresight calibration.
3. **(Optional)** Click **Strip Alignment** > **Elevation Difference Inspection** to analyze the elevation difference between point clouds.
4. **(Optional)** Click  **Cut Overlap** in the **Strip Alignment** module. For point cloud from LiDAR, the smaller the scanning angle, the higher the quality of the corresponding point cloud. Therefore, to ensure the quality of the point cloud data in the area, the low quality redundant points in the overlapped regions can be removed.

## Tutorial Videos

1. [Point Cloud Generation](#)
2. [LiDAR360 Strip Adjustment Module](#)



# Terrain

This tutorial introduces the standard workflow for terrain processing by LiDAR360.

## Steps

1. Due to multipath effect, there are gross noise points in the point cloud data. Click **Data Management > Point Cloud Tools > Remove Outliers** to remove outlier points of point cloud data.
2. Click **Classify > Classify Ground Points** to classify ground points for unclassified point cloud.
3. For the result of ground points classification at first time, if the classification results of a large number of points are inaccurate due to unreasonable parameter settings, you can click **Classify > Classify by Attribute** to restore the point cloud category to unclassified and set parameters again for reclassification.
4. After ground points classification, for the inaccuracy of local area point cloud classification, you can use the **Classify Ground by Selected** or **Classify by Interactive Edit** to perform the ground point classification of the local area.
5. Make sure the classification of ground point cloud is accurate, then click **Terrain > DEM** or **Terrain > DSM** to generate DEM or DSM. Currently the software provides three ways to generate DEM or DSM from the point cloud: TIN, Kriging, IDW.
6. Click **Terrain > Hillshade** to create a hillshade map. This tool determines the illumination-enhanced surface visualization by setting each cell in the raster. At the same time, you can click **Data Management > Conversion > Convert TIFF to LiModel** to convert single-band Tiff images to LiModel. The LiModel data can be viewed in 3D view more intuitively. In addition, the LiModel data can be edited by clicking **Terrain > LiModel Editor** for generating a better quality of DEM model. Similarly, DSM data can also be operated as above.
7. There are two ways to generate contour lines: **Raster to Contour** and **Point Cloud to Contour**. By these two ways, you can generate contours from the DEM raster data generated in the previous step or use the ground points after the fourth step classification. In addition, the TIN can be generated from the ground point cloud, and the result of ground points classification can be viewed more intuitively. The TIN model can be modified by clicking **Terrain > LiTIN Editor**, and then click **Terrain > TIN to Contour** to generate contour lines.

## Tutorial Videos

1. [LiDAR360 Classify Ground Points](#)
2. [LiDAR360 Classify Ground by Selected](#)
3. [LiDAR360 Terrain Module](#)

# Forestry

This tutorial introduces the standard workflow of **CHM Segmentation** to extract **tree location, tree height, crown diameter, crown area** and **tree boundaries** from ALS (Airborne Laser Scanning) point cloud data. **ALS Point Cloud Segmentation** to extract **tree location, tree height, crown diameter, crown area** and **crown volume**. **Extract DBH** and **tree location, tree height** in batch from TLS (Terrestrial Laser Scanning) point cloud data.

## Steps

There are two individual tree segmentation methods in LiDAR360 for ALS point cloud data: CHM segmentation and Point Cloud Segmentation.

### ALS CHM Segmentation

1. Click **File > Data > Add Data** to open data.
2. Click **Data Management > Point Cloud Tools > Remove Outliers** to perform outliers removal on point cloud data to remove noise influences.
3. Click **Classify > Classify Ground Points** to separate ground points from point clouds for DEM generation.
4. Click **Terrain > DEM** to generate Digital Elevation Model (DEM) based on ground points.
5. Click **Terrain > DSM** to generate Digital Surface Model (DSM).
6. Click **Terrain > CHM** to generate Canopy Height Model (CHM).
7. Click **ALS Forest > Segmentation > CHM Segmentation** to perform CHM segmentation to obtain individual tree location, tree height, crown diameter and crown area in a comma-separated csv file and a shp file which includes the crown boundary of individual tree.
8. **View CHM segmentation results.**
9. Click **File > Data > Add Data** to import point cloud data into LiDAR360, and click **ALS Forest > Batch Process > Canopy Height Model(CHM) Segmentation**, this function contains automated workflows for CHM Segmentation and the prerequisites it entails, including Remove Outliers, Classify Ground Points, DSM Generation, DEM Generation, CHM Generation and CHM Segmentation processing.

### ALS Point Cloud Segmentation

1. Click **File > Data > Add Data** to open data.
2. Click **Data Management > Point Cloud Tools > Remove Outliers** to perform outliers removal on point cloud data to remove noise influences.
3. Click **Classify > Classify Ground Points** to separate ground points from point clouds for DEM generation.
4. Click **Terrain > DEM** to generate Digital Elevation Model (DEM) based on ground points.
5. Click **Data Management > Point Cloud Tools > Normalize by DEM** to generate normalized point cloud data.
6. You can use the normalized point cloud for single tree segmentation directly or single seed segmentation based on seed points.

(1) Click **ALS Forest > Segmentation > Point Cloud Segmentation** to perform point cloud segmentation to obtain individual tree location, tree height, crown diameter, crown area and crown volume in a comma-separated csv file.

(2) Click **ALS Forest > Segmentation > Point Cloud Segmentation from Seed Points** to perform point cloud segmentation based on seed to obtain individual tree location, tree height, crown diameter, crown area and crown volume in a comma-separated csv file. There are two methods for seed file generation.

- Click **ALS Forest > Segmentation > Generate Seed Points from CHM** to generate seed points file by CHM.
  - Click **ALS Forest > Segmentation > Generate Seeds from Layer Stacking** to generate seed points file by layer stacking.
7. **View point cloud segmentation results.**
  8. **ALS Editor** tools can be used for editing operations such as add, delete seed points etc., and segment the point cloud data based on the edited seed points.
  9. Click **File > Data > Add Data** to import point cloud data into LiDAR360, and click **ALS Forest > Batch Process > Point Cloud Segmentation**, this function contains automated workflows for point cloud Segmentation and the prerequisites it entails, including Remove Outliers, Classify Ground Points, DEM Generation, Normalize by DEM and Point Cloud Segmentation processing.

## TLS DBH Extraction & Point Cloud Segmentation

1. Click **File > Data > Add Data** to load a terrestrial point cloud data file.
2. Click **Data Management > Point Cloud Tools > Remove Outliers** to perform outliers removal on point cloud data to remove noise influences.
3. Click **TLS Forest > Filter Ground Points** to classify ground points.
4. Click **Terrain > DEM** to generate Digital Elevation Model (DEM) based on ground points.
5. Click **Data Management > Point Cloud Tools > Normalize by DEM** to generate normalized point cloud data.
6. Click **TLS Forest > TLS Editor**, select the point cloud data of multiple trees' DBH location, and then fitting the DBH in batch using **Batch Extraction DBH** function of the TLS Editor toolbar.
7. If you want to get the tree height, crown diameter, crown area and crown volume from TLS point cloud data, click **TLS Forest > Point Cloud Segmentation** or **TLS Forest > Point Cloud Segmentation from Seed Points**.
8. **View point cloud segmentation results.**

## Tutorial Videos

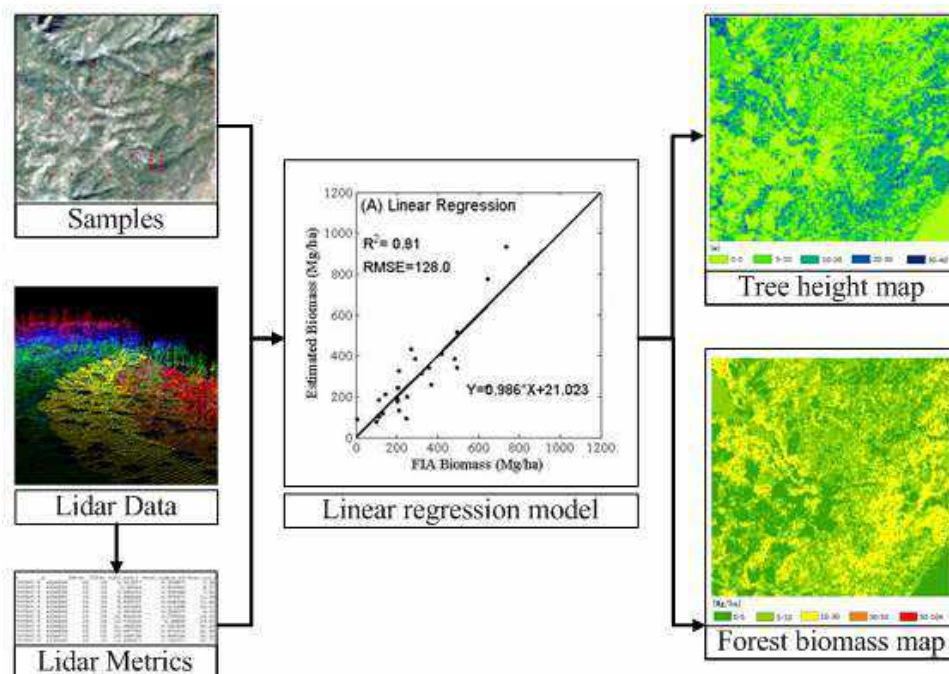
1. [LiDAR360 Tree Segmentation](#)
2. [LiDAR360 ALS Forestry Module](#)
3. [LiDAR360 TLS Forestry Module](#)

# ALS Point Cloud Regression Analysis

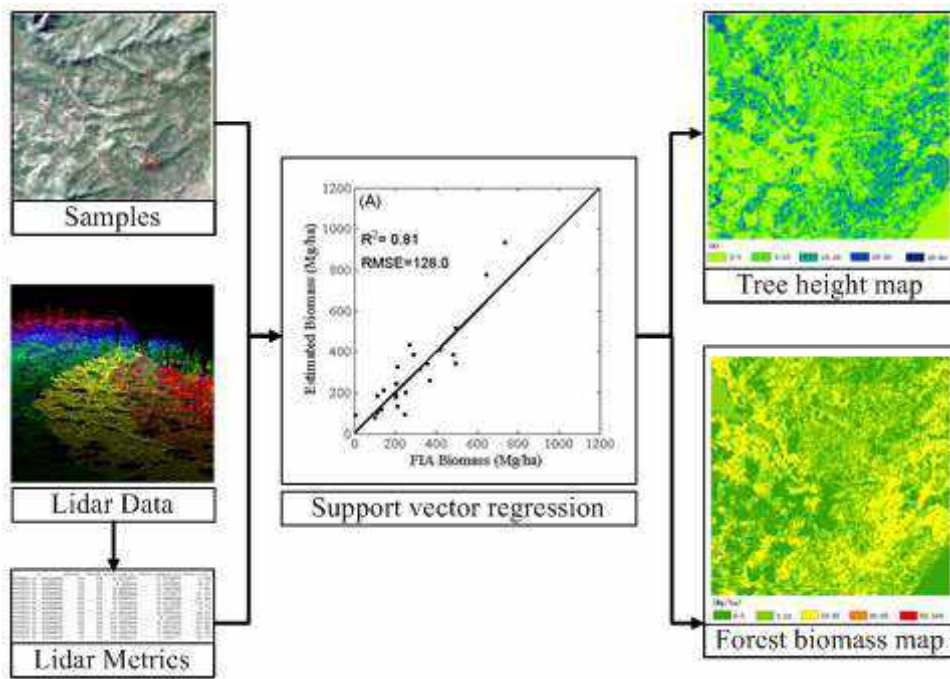
## Summary

Lidar technology has a strong ability to obtain the three-dimensional structure of the forest, and the obtained canopy structure parameters have a strong correlation with the forest volume and above-ground biomass. It is a large-area forest photosynthesis capacity assessment, biomass and carbon storage. Estimation provides a good means. LiDAR360 provides four methods: linear regression, support vector machine, fast artificial neural network, and random forest. The regression model is constructed from the sample plot survey data and the variables obtained from the lidar point cloud to estimate the forest volume and the amount of the sample square or larger area. Parameters such as biomass.

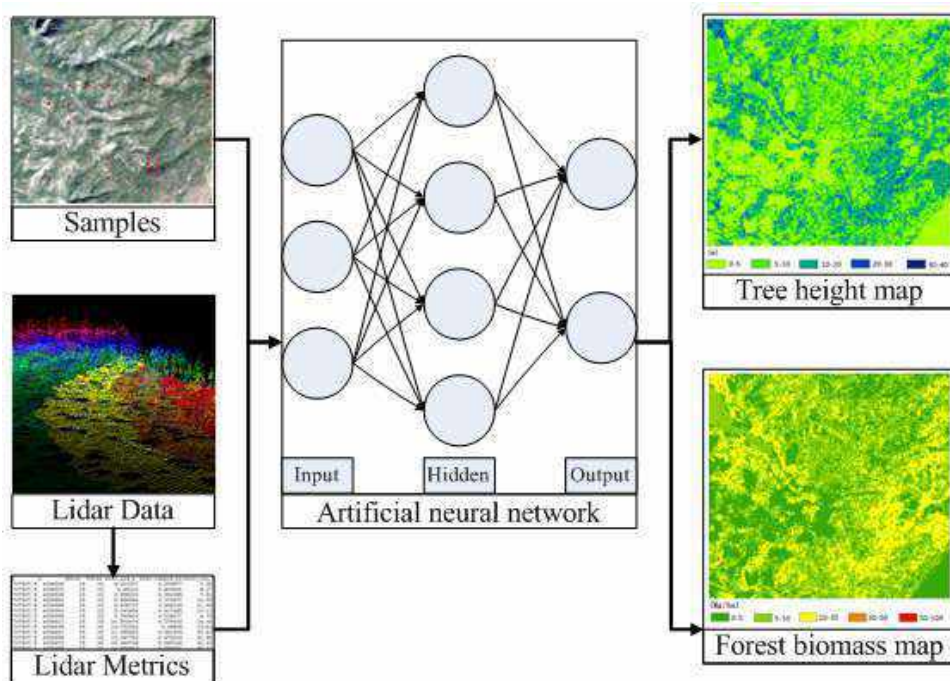
Regression analysis using LiDAR360 roughly goes through the following steps: denoising, filtering, generating Digital Elevation Model (DEM), point cloud normalization, generating forest parameters, and regression analysis.



Linear Regression Model



SVR Regression



Fast Artificial Neural Network Regression Model

## Data Preparation

The input data for regression analysis is normalized point cloud data. The steps to generate a normalized point cloud are as follows:

-Click **Data Management**> **Point Cloud Tools**> **Outlier Removal** to denoise the point cloud data and remove the influence of noise.

-Click **Classification**> **Classify Ground Points** to classify the ground points from the point cloud to generate DEM.

- Click **Terrain**> **DEM** to generate a digital elevation model based on the site surface.
- Click **Data Management**> **Point Cloud Tools**> **Normalization** to generate normalized point cloud data.
- Click **ALS Forest**> **Forest Parameters**> **Calculate Forest Metrics By Grid**, **Calculate Forest Metrics By Polygon** or **Calculate Forest Metrics by Forest Stands** to generate the independent variable data set required for regression.

## Steps

The linear regression steps are as follows:

- Click **ALS Forest**>**Regression Analysis**>**Linear Regression** to load the generated forest parameter independent variables into the function dialog box for linear regression analysis.

The support vector regression steps are as follows:

- Click **ALS Forest**> **Regression Analysis**> **Support Vector Machine**, load the generated forest parameter argument into the function dialog box, and perform support vector regression analysis.

The steps of fast artificial neural network regression are as follows:

- Click **ALS Forest**> **Regression Analysis**> **Fast Artificial Neural Network** to load the generated forest parameter independent variables into the function dialog box for quick Artificial neural network regression analysis.

The regression steps of the random forest network are as follows:

- Click **ALS Forest**> **Regression Analysis**> **Random Forest** to load the generated forest parameter independent variables into the function dialog box for fast artificial nerve Network regression analysis.

## Accuracy Assessment

After the regression analysis is completed, an html file with the same name as the result file will be generated to view the accuracy of the regression analysis and the variables involved in the regression analysis.

The figure below is the support vector machine regression accuracy report. Degree, Gamma and K-Fold are input parameters, which are set by the user in the parameter interface. The accuracy evaluation of the regression model is determined by R, R Square and RMSE. R Square is the ratio of the sum of squares of the difference between the predicted data and the mean of the original data to the sum of the squares of the difference between the original data and the mean. The value range is [0 1]. The closer the value is to 1, the independent variable's ability to explain the dependent variable. The stronger. RMSE (Root Mean Square Error), this value is the mean value of the square root of the error between the predicted value and the measured value. Dependent and Independent Variable are the dependent and independent variables participating in the regression analysis. Only one dependent variable is used for each regression analysis.

## Support Vector Regression Summary

<b>Degree</b>	3
<b>Gama</b>	0.10000000149
<b>K-Fold</b>	10
<b>R</b>	0.801855560156
<b>R Square</b>	0.642972339353
<b>RMSE</b>	0.0284289120661
<b>Probability Value</b>	0.0
<b>The Result of K-fold Test Insignificant</b>	No

## Dependent and Independent Variable

<b>Dependent Variable</b>	Biomass	
<b>Independent Variable</b>	elev_percentile_1st	elev_percentile_5th
	elev_percentile_10th	elev_percentile_20th
	elev_percentile_25th	elev_percentile_30th
	elev_percentile_40th	elev_percentile_50th
	elev_percentile_60th	elev_percentile_70th
	elev_percentile_75th	elev_percentile_80th
	elev_percentile_90th	elev_percentile_95th
	elev_percentile_99th	

# Power Line Dangerous point detection

This tutorial introduces the standard workflow of power line data processing by LiDAR360.

## Steps

The main process for using the power line module to process point cloud data, detect dangerous points, and generate dangerous point detection reports is as follows:

1. Click **File > Data > Add Data** to open data.
2. Click **Power Line > Start Mark Tower**, Start the power line module.
3. Click **Power Line > Mark Tower** to mark position of towers and edit properties of towers.
4. Click **Classify > Clipping and Classifying** to clip and classify point cloud data into tower, power line, ground points, noise and unclassified data automatically. It is necessary to manually check the classification results after automatic classification.
5. Click **Power Line > Danger Points** to perform dangerous points detection, tree segmentation, image rendering and report generation.



# Appendix

This chapter introduces some key terms, file formats and ways of high-performance graphics mode adjustment.

- [Key Terms](#)
- [File Formats](#)
  - [LiData](#)
  - [LiAtt](#)
  - [LAS](#)
  - [LiModel](#)
  - [LiTin](#)
  - [Clipping Point Cloud File Format](#)
    - [Clip by Circle File Format](#)
    - [Clip by Rectangle File Format](#)
  - [Extract by Time File Format](#)
  - [Homologous Points File Format](#)
  - [POS File](#)
  - [OUT File](#)
  - [Control Point File Format](#)
  - [Notes Elevation Points File](#)
  - [Sample Data File](#)
  - [Seed Points File](#)
  - [Individual Tree Segmentation Result File](#)
    - [Seven Parameters Inputs](#)
    - [Section Product File Format](#)
- [ID List of Json Callable Functions for Batch Processing](#)
- [Shortcut Keys](#)
  - [Menu Shortcut Keys](#)
  - [Viewer Shortcut Keys](#)
  - [Shortcut Keys for Profile Editing](#)
- [High-Performance Graphics Mode Adjustment](#)
- [LiTower File](#)

## Key Terms

- Workflow – A sequence of steps to produce the final products.
- Clipping – Extracting a subset of points from point cloud using an extent.
- Extracting – Extracting a subset of points from point cloud using a specific point attribute.
- Return Number – The Return Number is the pulse return number for a given output pulse. A given output laser pulse can have many returns, and they must be marked in sequence of return. The first return will have a Return Number of one, the second a Return Number of two, and so on up to five returns.
- Intensity – The intensity value is the integer representation of the pulse return magnitude. This value is optional and system specific. However, it should always be included if available.
- Outlier – A point or group of points isolated from other points of interest that are considered noise or extraneous objects.

# File Formats

This section introduces the data formats supported by LiDAR360 and the specific file formats involved in various functional modules, such as POS file, control point file, seed point file and so on.

- [LiData](#)
- [LiAtt](#)
- [LAS](#)
- [LiModel](#)
- [LiTin](#)
- [Clipping Point Cloud File Format](#)
  - [Clip by Circle File Format](#)
  - [Clip by Rectangle File Format](#)
- [Extract by Time File Format](#)
- [Homologous Points File Format](#)
- [POS File](#)
- [OUT File](#)
- [Control Point File Format](#)
- [Notes Elevation Points File](#)
- [Sample Data File](#)
- [Seed Points File](#)
- [Individual Tree Segmentation Result File](#)
- [Seven Parameters Inputs](#)
- [Section Product File Format](#)

# LiData

LiData is a point cloud data file format defined by LiDAR360. It consists of a public header block, variable length records, and point data records.

This format can be exchanged with other common point cloud data format files, including LAS, LAZ, E57, PLY, ASCII, etc.

When loading common point cloud data formats (including: LAS, LAZ, E57, PLY, ASCII, etc.) into LiDAR360, a LiData file named after the same name will be generated, and the subsequent operations are based on that LiData file.

LiData file has a version number to indicate its version. Currently, the most updated version of LiData is V2.0.

Starting from LiDAR360 V4.0, the all the LiData versions before V2.0 are supported. For LiDAR360 V3.x, the highest supported version is LiData V1.9. The differences between LiData V1.9 and V2.0 are listed as follows:

Features	LiData V1.9	LiData V2.0
Classification	0-31 (32 classes in total)	0-255 (256 classes in total)
Classification Flag	Not supported	Supported
Scanner Channel	Not supported	Supported
Near Infrared	Not supported	Supported
Scan Angle Rank	In degree, in the range of [-90°~+90°]	In in range of [-30000, +30000] (unitless) which corresponds to the degree of [-180°, +180°]
Additional Attribute	Not supported	Supported

Additional Attributes are stored in the [LiAtt files](#)

# LiAtt File Format

LiAtt is the additional attribute file format of [LiData](#). It consists of a file header and additional attribute data records.

The additional attribute is supported since [LiData](#) V2.0.

The additional attributes are matched with the corresponding LiData file by the file name.

When the non-matching LiData and LiAtt files are manually modified to have the same file name, the software may still be able to recognize all the additional attributes in the LiAtt file, but the corresponding additional attribute values may be incorrect. Modifying the LiAtt may destroy the LiAtt file structure and cause the additional attribute file to no longer be recognized when opening the LiData file next time.

Deleting LiAtt files does not affect the normal use of LiData files. But after LiDAR360 loads LiData, deleting the corresponding LiAtt files may cause some operations to fail and cause unknown errors.

# LAS

[LAS file format](#) Support the LAS file in the following formats:

[LAS 1.1](#)

[LAS 1.2](#)

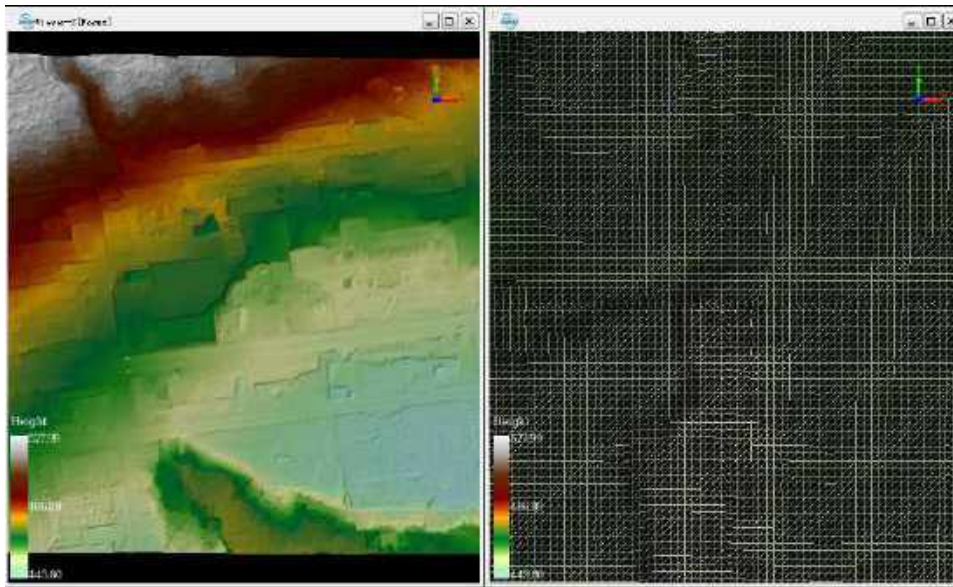
[LAS 1.3\\*](#)

[LAS 1.4\\*](#)

- - Limitation for LAS 1.3 and LAS 1.4:  
Not support waveform data currently.

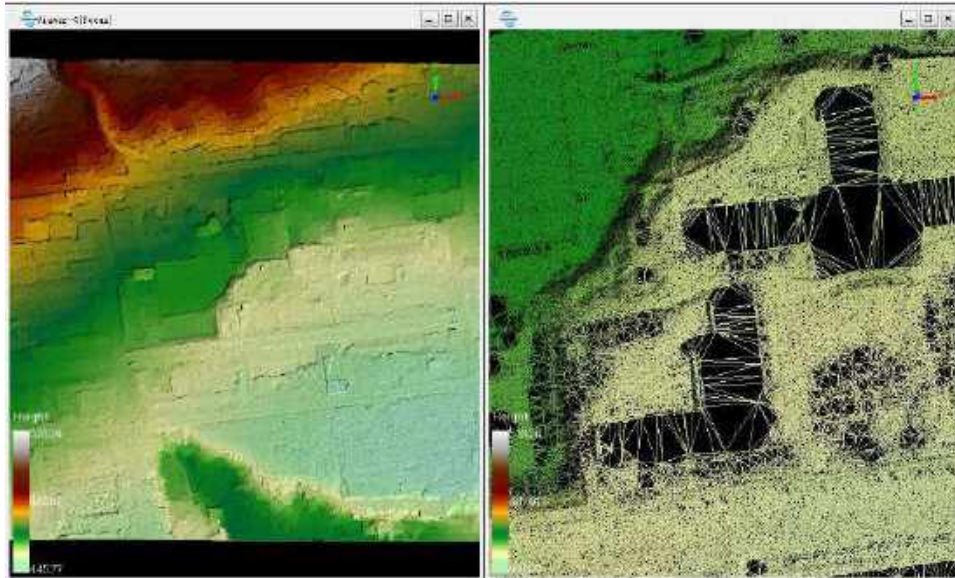
## LiModel

LiModel file stores triangulated regular network models generated by DEM or DSM. It saves regular grid nodes and block-organized triangulated regular network models according to quadtree. DOM texture information can be superimposed on the model. LiModel could be transformed from massive data of DEM or DSM. It supports editing operations including flatten height, smooth height, noise points removal and so on. After editing, it can be exported to Tiff file for generating contours.



# LiTin

The LiTin file is generated by the irregular 2.5D triangulation model based on the point cloud. It can improve quality of contour lines by editing operations including flatten height, smooth height, vertex addition and removal, etc. It organizes data in full memory mode, which takes up large memory and causes low rendering efficiency. So it is suggested to generate LiTin file into tiles.





# Clipping Point Cloud File Format

## Summary

The file is a text file that contains a list of scopes used to load multiple circles or rectangles.

## Clip by Circle File Format

Each circle consists of three values separated by commas: the X coordinate, the Y coordinate and the radius of the center.

The following table is an example of a circular extent file:

```
322610.51, 4102305.22, 50
322685.86, 4102400.5, 50
322820.45, 4102510.21, 100
322850.35, 4102655.33, 100
323000.00, 4103000.00, 60
```

The above values can be stored in a text file (such as "extents.txt") and loaded into the LiDAR360 software.

## Clip by Rectangle File Format

Each rectangle consists of four values separated by commas: X minimum, X maximum, Y minimum and Y maximum.

The following table is an example of a rectangular extent file:

```
322601.255, 322801.255, 4102309.655, 4102409.655
322548.966, 322600.110, 4102310.180, 4102360.180
322539.155, 322600.255, 4102309.655, 4102359.655
322745.950, 322780.110, 4102204.660, 4102250.180
322875.224, 322975.224, 4102028.660, 4102128.660
```

The above values can be stored in a text file (such as "extents.txt ") and loaded into the LiDAR360 software.

## Extract by Time File Format

Each extraction range consists of two values separated by commas: starting GPS time and ending GPS time.

The following table is an example of extracting range files by GPS time:

```
526494.500, 527494.500
```

```
527494.500, 528494.500
```

```
527494.500, 528494.500
```

```
528494.500, 529494.500
```

```
529494.500, 530494.500
```

The above values can be stored in a text file (such as "extents.txt ") and loaded into the LiDAR360 software.

# Homologous Points File Format

Homologous points file is a comma separated text file. The first row is a file header. Each row consists of 9 columns: ID, reference coordinate (X,Y,Z), reference source file, alignment coordinate(X,Y,Z) and alignment source file.

ID	ref_X	ref_Y	ref_Z	file	align_X	align_Y	align_Z	file
P01,	322500.1100,	4102499.9600,	2613.1400,	E:/data/LiForest.LiData,	322500.0089,	4102499.9856,	0.0000,	null
P02,	322999.8400,	4102499.7900,	2614.3400,	E:/data/LiForest.LiData,	322999.9283,	4102499.9585,	0.0000,	null
P03,	322999.8300,	4102000.3200,	2554.4100,	E:/data/LiForest.LiData,	322999.8738,	4102000.1457,	0.0000,	null
P04,	322500.3700,	4102000.1600,	2490.7400,	E:/data/LiForest.LiData,	322500.1140,	4102000.0595,	0.0000,	null

# POS File

The POS File contains information such as GPS time, longitude, latitude, height, roll, pitch, heading, GridX and GridY. GPS time, longitude, latitude, height, roll, pitch and heading must be necessary, while longitude and latitude or GridX and GridY include at least one. If POS file doesn't include GridX and GridY, we need to set projection coordinate system when we input trajectory files. GridX and GridY can be calculated according to projection coordinate system, longitude and latitude in strip alignment module.

The trajectory information stored in its file is structured as follows:

Data	Units	Type
GPS time	seconds	double
longitude	degree	double
latitude	degree	double
height	meters	double
roll	degree	double
pitch	degree	double
heading	degree	double
GridX(Optional)	meters	double
GridY(Optional)	meters	double

The examples the POS file is shown below. Example 1(not including GridX, GridY):

```
380954.000,112.5311950876, 26.8969520123,378.543, 7.1701230000, 3.0890110000,-39.4065340000
380954.008,112.5311938923, 26.8969533249,378.537, 7.2001860000, 3.0914780000,-39.4034150000
380954.016,112.5311926975, 26.8969546376,378.531, 7.2368710000, 3.0936380000,-39.4011190000
380954.024,112.5311915034, 26.8969559507,378.525, 7.2683090000, 3.1015050000,-39.3975470000
380954.032,112.5311903098, 26.8969572641,378.518, 7.3007560000, 3.1115160000,-39.3929590000
380954.040,112.5311891169, 26.8969585779,378.512, 7.3269790000, 3.1179720000,-39.3878260000
380954.048,112.5311879247, 26.8969598920,378.506, 7.3525870000, 3.1180460000,-39.3804020000
380954.056,112.5311867331, 26.8969612065,378.500, 7.3745730000, 3.1151630000,-39.3713830000
```

Example 2(including GridX, GridY):

```
383207.336,112.5421590662,26.9034172036,313.865,3.538615,2.660518,-67.848653,653147.099716932,2976670.62354689
383207.344,112.5421572108,26.9034177865,313.861,3.533299,2.659177,-67.840828,653146.914649722,2976670.68587654
383207.352,112.5421553554,26.9034183697,313.857,3.522385,2.658042,-67.828619,653146.729582108,2976670.74823943
383207.36,112.5421535001,26.9034189529,313.854,3.512757,2.659231,-67.816251,653146.544524429,2976670.81060244
383207.368,112.5421516447,26.9034195363,313.85,3.502656,2.662677,-67.807435,653146.35945655,2976670.87298749
383207.376,112.5421497892,26.9034201198,313.846,3.502243,2.664987,-67.803265,653146.174378605,2976670.9353835
383207.384,112.5421479336,26.9034207035,313.843,3.500293,2.668456,-67.80232,653145.989290462,2976670.99780155
383207.392,112.5421460783,26.9034212874,313.839,3.501546,2.671267,-67.797563,653145.804231844,2976671.06024212
383207.4,112.5421442231,26.9034218713,313.835,3.496569,2.674773,-67.789195,653145.619183163,2976671.12268281
383207.408,112.542142368,26.9034224554,313.832,3.483849,2.676885,-67.774991,653145.434144147,2976671.18514579
383207.416,112.5421405129,26.9034230395,313.828,3.471533,2.676137,-67.765536,653145.24910513,2976671.24760876
383207.424,112.5421386577,26.9034236237,313.824,3.47028,2.675779,-67.760612,653145.064056049,2976671.3100827
383207.432,112.5421368024,26.9034242079,313.82,3.475101,2.677064,-67.761833,653144.878997039,2976671.37255652
383207.44,112.5421349471,26.9034247923,313.817,3.476053,2.681571,-67.761664,653144.69393776,2976671.43505249
```

# OUT File

Out file is a binary file that stores trajectory information. The following table shows the format of the POSPac SBET file provided by [Applanix](#). For details, refer to the PosPac quick start guide.

The trajectory information stored in its file is structured as follows:

<b>Data</b>	<b>Units</b>	<b>Type</b>
time	seconds	double
latitude	radians	double
longitude	radians	double
altitude	meters	double
x velocity	meters/second	double
y velocity	meters/second	double
z velocity	meters/second	double
roll	radians	double
pitch	radians	double
platform heading	radians	double
wander angle	radians	double
x body acceleration	meters/second <sup>2</sup>	double
y body acceleration	meters/second <sup>2</sup>	double
z body acceleration	meters/second <sup>2</sup>	double
x body angular rate	radians/second	double
y body angular rate	radians/second	double
z body angular rate	radians/second	double

## Control Point File Format

The control point file contains a list of control points in TXT format. The first row is the file header, while other rows store comma separated X, Y, Z coordinates of control points. The following table is an example of a control point file:

```
X, Y, Z  
473575.563, 291005.332, 127.244  
473576.899, 291004.245, 126.328  
473576.899, 291004.243, 126.317  
473576.899, 291004.245, 126.328  
473576.899, 291004.243, 126.317
```

## Notes Elevation Points File

The notes elevation points file is a comma-delimited CSV file. The first row is the file header, while other rows store X, Y, Z and Label (separated by comma).

The following figure shows an example of notes elevation points file:

```
X, Y, Z, Label
322539.46, 4102000.01, 2489.21, 2489.21
322551.33, 4102009.72, 2489.55, 2489.55
322562.85, 4102000.03, 2489.74, 2489.74
322563.16, 4102019.38, 2489.98, 2489.98
322511.58, 4102056.04, 2492.86, 2492.86
```

## Sample Data File

The sample data file is a text file (\*.txt) delimited by commas that contains a file header in the first row. The first two columns of each row are the X and Y coordinates, followed by a number of dependent variables. Multiple dependent variables can be stored, but only one is used for each regression analysis.

The dependent variable is tree height in the following example of a sample data file:

```
X,Y,Height
322859.25,4102463.86,33
322862.25,4102459.35,31.5
322864.56,4102462.49,32
322874.58,4102463.50,35
322655.52,4102192.25,21.1
```



## ALS Seed Points File

Seed points file is a comma-separated CSV file. The first row is the file header, while other rows contain a number of seed points. Each row contains four columns: tree ID, tree location X coordinate, tree location Y coordinate and tree location Z coordinate.

The following table shows an example of a seed points file:

```
TreeID,TreeLocationX,TreeLocationY,TreeLocationZ
1,322971.5,4102497.5,47.387
2,322549.5,4102496.5,49.42
3,322678.5,4102495.5,48.456
4,322716.5,4102494.5,34.366
5,322516.5,4102489.5,23.726
```

## TLS Seed Points File

Seed points file is a comma-separated CSV file. The first row is the file header, while other rows contain a number of seed points. Each row contains five columns: tree ID, tree location X coordinate, tree location Y coordinate, DBH location Z coordinate and DBH value.

The following table shows an example of a seed points file:

```
TreeID,TreeLocationX,TreeLocationY,TreeLocationZ,DBH
1,-5.135,-21.219,1.303,0.244
2,-1.693,-30.778,1.3,0.365
3,3.249,-26.096,1.3,0.389
4,-3.852,-28.103,1.304,0.309
5,4.89,-30.851,1.301,0.299
```

# CHM Segmentation Result

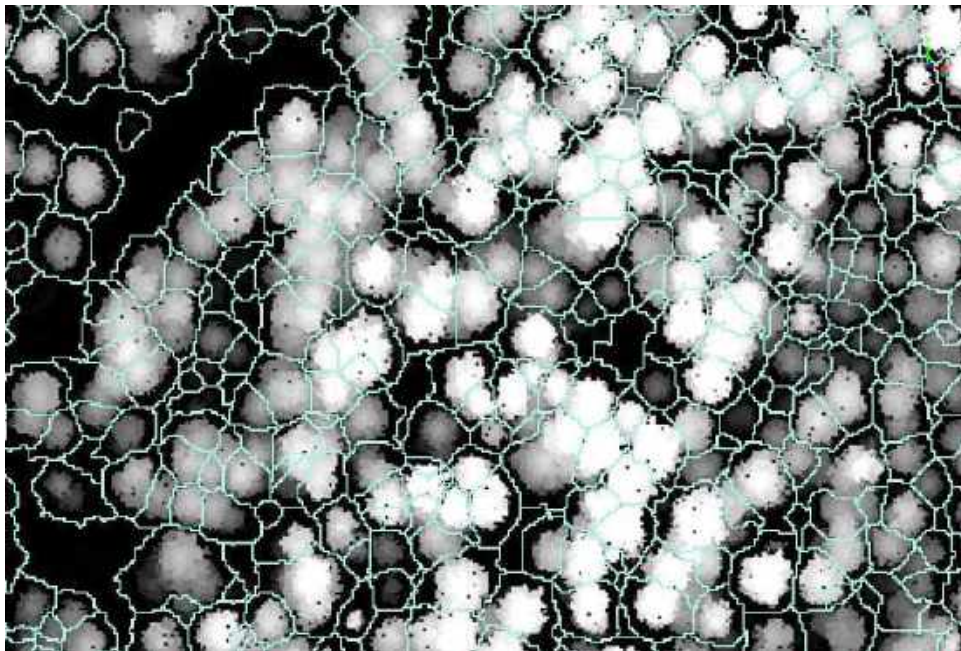
The CHM segmentation result contains a comma-separated .csv table file and a polygon-type .shp vector file.

The .csv table contains the attributes of tree ID, x, y coordinate position, tree height, crown diameter and crown area.

The following table shows an example of the segmentation result of CHM:

```
TreeID, TreeLocationX, TreeLocationY, TreeHeight, CrownDiameter, CrownArea
1, 322716.24, 4102494.69, 36.165, 8.982, 63.36
2, 322751.21, 4102499.9, 41.282, 4.491, 15.84
3, 322519.35, 4102499.3, 32.008, 4.708, 16.64
4, 322742.15, 4102497.7, 26.956, 8.347, 54.72
5, 322892.26, 4102499.5, 45.493, 7.792, 47.68
```

The .shp file contains the geometric extents of each tree segmented. The attribute table contains the ID, x, y coordinate position, tree height, crown diameter and crown area attributes of each tree.



	TreeID	X	Y	TreeHeight	Diameter	Area
1	33	322716.250	4102494.750	17.719	8.272	53.750
2	7	322751.250	4102499.250	8.767	3.141	7.750
3	9	322813.750	4102499.250	29.870	2.931	6.750
4	1	322510.750	4102499.250	13.972	6.358	31.750
5	2	322519.750	4102499.250	13.099	7.756	47.250
6	4	322573.250	4102499.250	7.661	3.568	10.000
7	6	322733.750	4102499.250	19.508	5.140	20.750
8	16	322742.750	4102498.250	12.150	4.686	17.250
9	19	322746.750	4102497.250	19.537	4.686	17.250
10	8	322766.250	4102499.250	17.510	4.853	18.500
11	12	322838.750	4102499.250	32.976	7.878	48.750
12	10	322815.250	4102499.250	31.832	3.568	10.000
13	5	322578.250	4102499.250	11.403	6.154	29.750
14	13	322892.250	4102499.250	32.772	7.797	47.750

## ALS Forest Results of Point Cloud Segmentation & PCS with Seeds

The ALS Forest results of point cloud segmentation and PCS with seeds are comma-separated .csv table files containing the attributes of TreeID, x, y coordinate position, tree height, crown diameter, crown area and crown volume.

The following table shows an example of the results of the ALS individual tree segmentation:

```
TreeID, TreeLocationX, TreeLocationY, TreeHeight, CrownDiameter, CrownArea, CrownVolume
1, 322511.52, 4102089.78, 60.606, 10.85, 92.04, 3240.171
2, 322511.81, 4102015.14, 53.785, 13.15, 135.09, 4358.651
3, 322537.43, 4102062.51, 46.667, 12.45, 126.76, 3272.472
4, 322529.42, 4102073.12, 45.197, 4.071, 13.019, 342.992
5, 322525.07, 4102101.07, 43.861, 3.105, 7.57, 107.672
```

## TLS Forest Results of Point Cloud Segmentation & PCS with Seeds

The TLS Forest results of point cloud segmentation and PCS with seeds are comma-separated .csv table files containing the attributes of TreeID, x, y coordinate position, tree height, DBH, crown diameter, crown area and crown volume.

The following table shows an example of the results of the TLS individual tree segmentation:

```
TreeID, TreeLocationX, TreeLocationY, TreeHeight, DBH
1, 136547.147, 289995.532, 6.498, 0.081
2, 136562.037, 289985.496, 5.652, 0.112
3, 136543.853, 290001.586, 6.115, 0.078
4, 136547.766, 289997.909, 5.868, 0.081
5, 136547.127, 289980.102, 5.217, 0.097
```

# Format of Tree Attribute Information from TLS Point Cloud Segmentation

Individual tree attribute information from TLS point cloud segmentation is recorded in comma-separated .csv table files containing the attributes of tree ID, x, y coordinate position, tree height, DBH, crown diameter, crown area, crown volume, crown base height and straightness.

The following table shows an example of the individual tree attribute information from TLS point cloud segmentation:

```
TreeID, TreeLocationX, TreeLocationY, TreeHeight, DBH, CrownDiameter, CrownArea, CrownVolume, CBH, Straightness
1, 136547.147, 289995.532, 6.498, 4.394, 12.964, 132.006, 120.961, 1.221, 7
2, 136562.037, 289985.496, 5.652, 3.008, 6.234, 30.524, 32.742, 1.351, 3
3, 136543.853, 290001.586, 6.115, 4.123, 8.627, 58.447, 78.947, 1.234, 4
4, 136547.766, 289997.909, 5.868, 4.464, 9.574, 71.984, 43.512, 1.471, 6
5, 136547.127, 289980.102, 5.217, 6.070, 11.155, 97.727, 307.870, 1.186, 1
```

# Seven Parameters Calculation File Format

Control points should have at least three pairs and should be saved correspondingly in source and targeted coordinate files. Supported coordinate formats are spatial Cartesian coordinate system (X, Y, Z) and geographic coordinate system (B, L, H) (in the format of degree or degree:minute:second). Each point should be written in one row, and the geographic coordinates should be written in format of latitude, longitude, and height, separated by comma.

Example (degree:minute:second):

```
24:20:52.04982,116:40:30.53733,75.01  
24:20:16.93056,116:40:25.28056,78.57  
24:19:41.28740,116:40:18.60240,83.92
```

# Section Result File Format

## Two-Dimensional Section Result File Format

Two-dimensional section result file format can be ASCII (. Txt), vector (. SHP), and DXF (. DXF). Names can help to distinguish they are cross section or longitudinal section (CrossSection is the name for points in cross section and LongiSection is the name for points in longitudinal section by default). The section result file contains three columns, including name, distance to origin (in longitudinal section, the origin is the starting point. In longitudinal section, the origin is the intersection of cross section and longitudinal section. To left is negative, to right is positive), and elevation. Name suggests in which cross section this point is. E.g., CrossSection1(0) indicates this point is in the cross section named CrossSection1, and this cross section and the longitudinal section 0 are orthogonal. Elevation records the true hight of this point in the three-dimensional coordinate system. Following is the part of exported two-dimensional section result file:

```
Name,Distance,Height
CrossSection1(0),39.510,0.025
CrossSection1(0),39.413,0.085
...
CrossSection2(0),33.884,0.000
CrossSection2(0),32.447,0.033
...
CrossSection7(1),43.774,0.000
CrossSection7(1),42.662,0.025
```

## Three-Dimensional Section Result File Format

Three-dimensional section result file format can be ASCII (. Txt), vector (. SHP), ASCII file is comma separated text file. The section file contains four columns, including name, x coordinate, y coordinate, z coordinate. Points are in the same section if their names are the same.

```
Name,X,Y, Z
CrossSection1(0),323128.788,4104260.073,0.025
CrossSection1(0),323130.481,4104261.752,39.413
...
CrossSection2(0),323245.294,4104234.559,0.073
CrossSection2(0),323245.659,4104234.934,0.103
...
CrossSection7(1),323429.209,4104472.832,0.000
CrossSection7(1),323430.965,4104472.877,0.011
```

# Tower File

Tower file is a customized text format file (\*.LiTower). The first row is the file header, while other rows store X, Y, Z, type, and name of each tower (separated by comma). The index is assigned automatically by the software, while the name is set the same as the index by default.

Here is an example of part of tower file:

```
Index,X,Y,Z,Type,Name  
11,740662.360000,2688164.090000,79.850000,Straight tower,1  
12,740750.560000,2688525.920000,82.040000,Straight tower,2
```

# ID List of Json Callable Functions for Batch Processing

The following table shows the Plugin ID and Action ID of each Json callable function available in LiDAR360.

Function Name	Plugin ID	Action ID
Remove_Outliers	0	0
Normalize_by_DEM	0	1
Normalize_by_Ground_Points	0	15
Tile_by_Range	0	2
Tile_by_PointNumber	0	16
Merge	0	3
Extract_Point_Cloud_Boundary	0	4
Subsampling	0	5
PCV_Rendering	0	6
Define_Projection	0	7
Reproject	0	8
Extract_Color_from_Image	0	9
Subdivision	0	10
Transformation	0	11
Clip_by_Circle	0	30
Clip_by_Rectangle	0	31
Clip_by_Polygon	0	32
Convert_to_LiData	0	40
Convert_to_Las	0	41
Convert_to_ASCII	0	42
Convert_to_TIFF	0	43
Convert_to_Shape	0	44
Convert_to_DXF	0	48
Extract_by_Class	0	60
Extract_by_Elevation	0	61
Extract_by_Intensity	0	62
Extract_by_Return	0	63
Classify_Ground_Points	1	0
Extract_Median_Ground_Points	1	5
Classify_by_Attribute	1	10



Classify_Low_Points	1	11
Classify_Below_Surface_Points	1	12
Classify_Isolated_Points	1	13
Classify_Air_Points	1	14
Classify_byHeightAboveGround	1	15
Classify_byMinElevationDifference	1	16
Classify_Buildings	1	20
Classify_Powerlines	1	21
Classify_Model_Key_Points	1	17
Classify_by_Machine_Learning	1	25
Classify_by_Trained_ML_Model	1	26
DEM	2	0
DSM	2	1
Point_Cloud_to_Contour	2	20
Generate_TIN	2	23
Elevation_Metrics	4	0
Intensity_Metrics	4	1
Canopy_Cover	4	2
Leaf_Area_Index	4	3
Gap_Fraction	4	4
Linear_Regression	4	5
Support_Vector_Machine	4	6
Fast_Artificial_Neural_Network	4	7
Point_Cloud_Segmentation	4	10
Generate_Seeds_from_Layer_Stacking	4	14
Clear_Tree_ID	4	11

# Shortcut Keys

This section introduces the shortcut keys associated with menus, viewers and point editing in profile windows.

- [Menu Shortcut Keys](#)
- [Viewer Shortcut Keys](#)
- [Point Editing Shortcut Keys in Profile Window](#)

## Menu Shortcut Keys

Shortcut Key	Meaning
Ctrl+N	New LiDAR360 project(*.LiPrj file)
Ctrl+O	Open LiDAR360 project(*.LiPrj file)
Ctrl+Shift+O	Open files supported by LiDAR360
Ctrl+S	Save LiDAR360 project(*LiPrj file)
Alt+F4	Exit LiDAR360
Ctrl+F3	Add New window
Ctrl+F4	Close Current Window
F11	Full Screen
F3	Orthogonal/ Perspective Projection
F1	Help

## Viewer Shortcut Keys

Shortcut Key	Meaning
A	Anticlockwise Rotation
G	Clockwise Rotation
C	Front Rotation
E	Back Rotation
T	Tips
W	Show Model/Triangle/Points
P	Adjust lighting (improve the display effect of LiModel, LiTin, OSGB and other model files)
↑	Up
↓	Down
←	Left
→	Right
+	Zoom in
-	Zoom out
Left Button	Rotation
Right Button	Pan
Middle Wheel	Zoom
Space	Default
Delete	Delete Label/Delete Seed Points

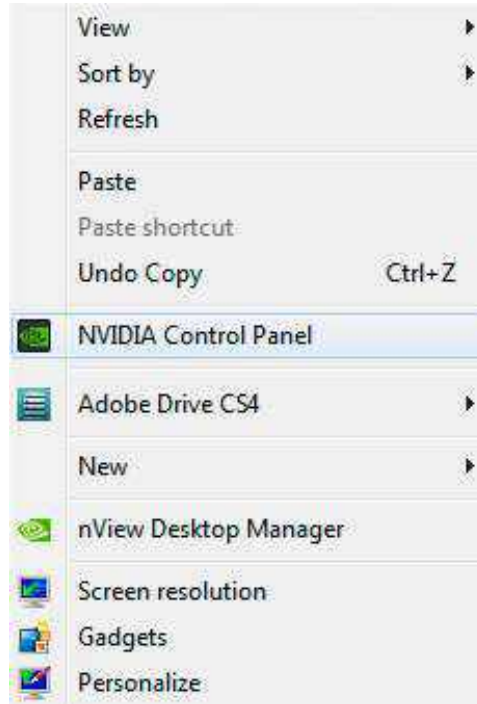
## Shortcut Keys for Profile Editing

Shortcut Key	Meaning
0-9	Modify the currently selected points to the new classification indicated by the number key pressed
L	Activate the "Line Above Selection" tool
Shift+L	Activate the "Line Below Selection" tool
Shift+R	Activate the "Rectangle Selection" tool
Shift+P	Activate the "Polygon Selection" tool
Shift+C	Activate the "Circle Selection" tool
Shift+F	Activate the "Circular Brush Selection" tool
Ctrl+Shift+L	Activate the "Lasso Selection" tool
Ctrl+Shift+D	Activate the "Detect Plane" tool
Shift+Q	Switch between different selection tools in order
Shift+E	Switch between different classification tools in order
Alt+←	Change the selected tile to the left one
Alt+→	Change the selected tile to the right one
Alt+↑	Change the selected tile to the upper one
Alt+↓	Change the selected tile to the lower one
X	Activate/deactivate profile tool rotation tool
Ctrl+Shift+S	Save
↑	Move the cross-section/profiling area forward
↓	Move the cross-section/profiling area backward
→	Rotate the cross-section/profiling area clockwise
←	Rotate the cross-section/profiling area counter-clockwise
R	Activate/deactivate profile scene rotation tool

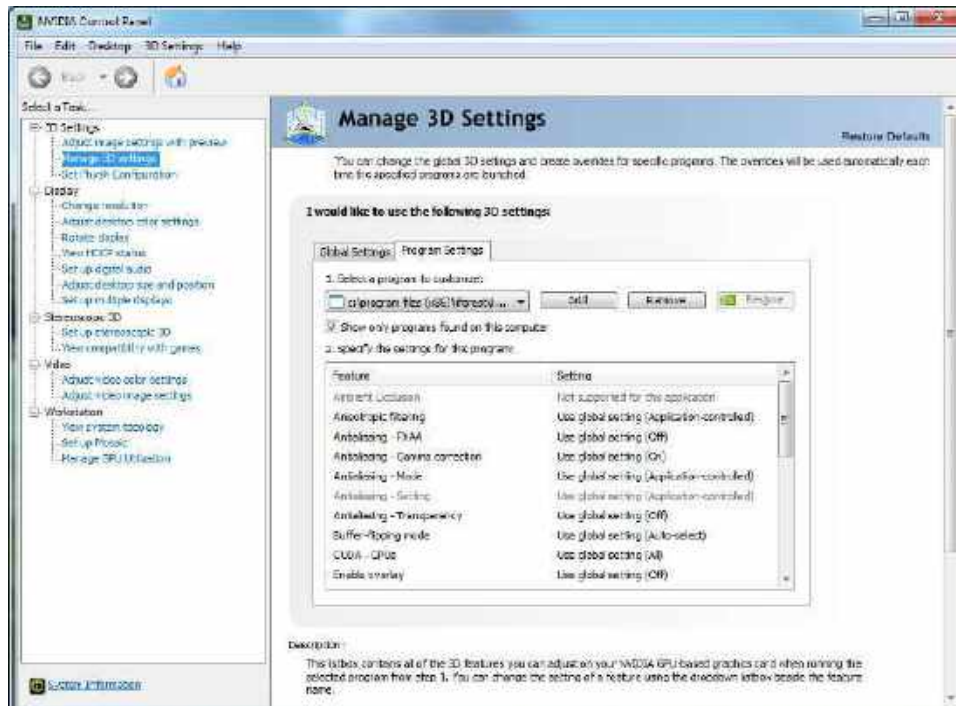
# High-Performance Graphics Mode Adjustment

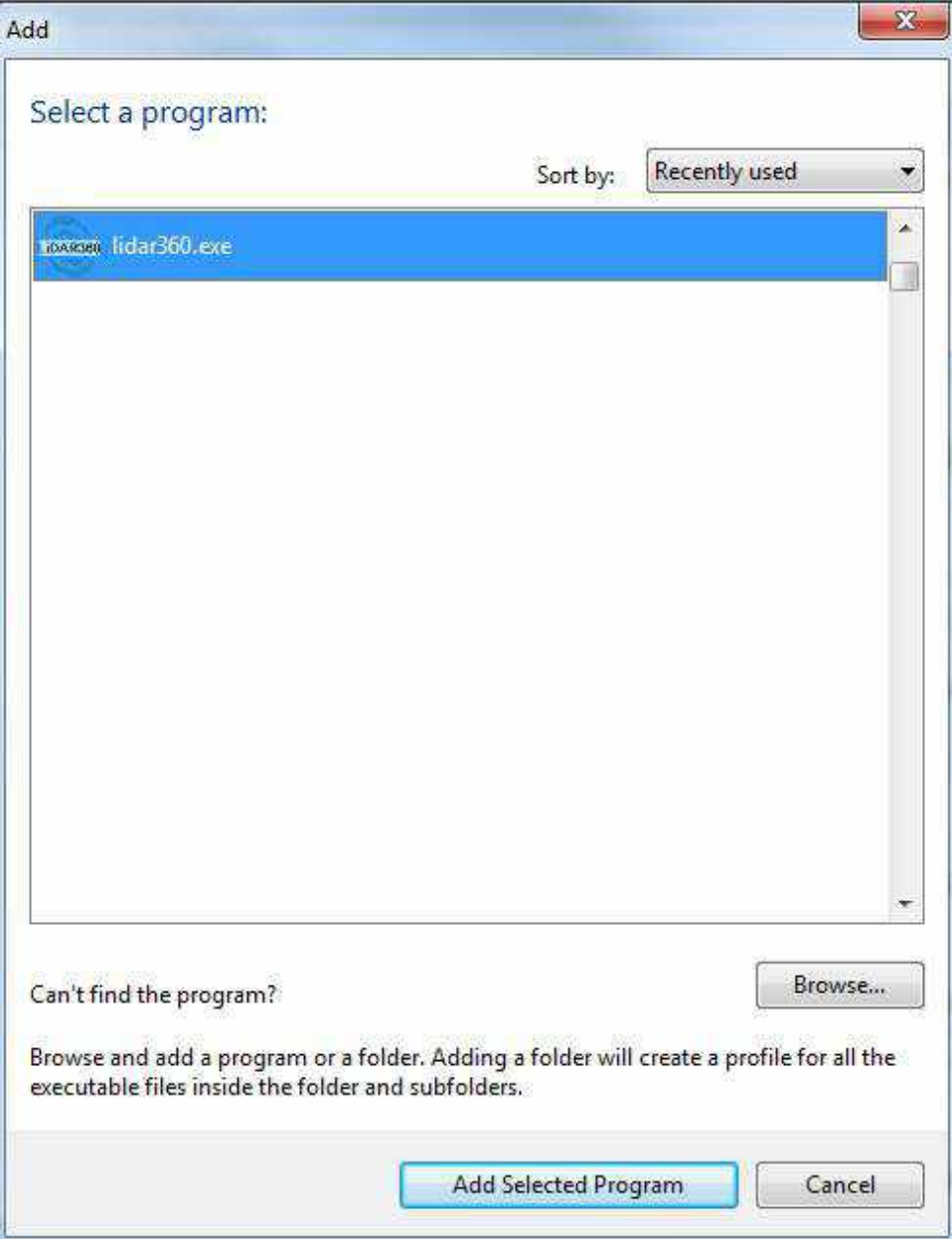
Follow the procedure below to optimize graphics for LiDAR360 (for NVIDIA graphic cards).

1. Right click on desktop and select NVIDIA Control Panel.



2. Select **Manage 3D settings** > **Program Settings** > **Add** to add LiDAR360.exe to high-performance graphics mode list.





# FAQ

This chapter introduces the frequently asked questions and solutions in the use of LiDAR360. It contains Installation and License Activation FAQ, Platform FAQ, Strip Alignment FAQ, Terrain FAQ, Forestry FAQ and Power Line FAQ.

- [Installation and License Activation FAQ](#)
- [Platform FAQ](#)
- [Strip Alignment FAQ](#)
- [Terrain FAQ](#)
- [Forestry FAQ](#)



## Hardware requirements and supported operating systems

- **RAM:** at least 8G or more.
- **CPU:** Intel® Core™ i5/i7; Dual-core processor.
- **Display Adapter:** NVIDIA graphics card recommended, video memory no less than 2GB.
- **Operating Systems:** Windows 7 (64 bit), Windows 8 (64 bit), Windows 10 (64 bit) or Windows Server 2012 or later.

## After successful installation on my computer, why does the software crash when I try to open or load data?

- Please check whether the software installation environment satisfies the recommended hardware configuration. If yes, please check the following two things. (1) Whether the graphic card is working properly. Right click on My Computer, select the device manager, find the corresponding graphic card in the Display Adapter, and view the graphic card properties status. If it shows "this device is working normally", it means that the graphic card device is running properly. (2) Update the graphic card driver to the latest version, and then use the high-performance graphic mode to run the software. For the operating procedure, see [adjust the graphics mode to high performance](#).
- Please contact us by email [info@greenvalleyintl.com](mailto:info@greenvalleyintl.com) to check the reason remotely if you still get an error.

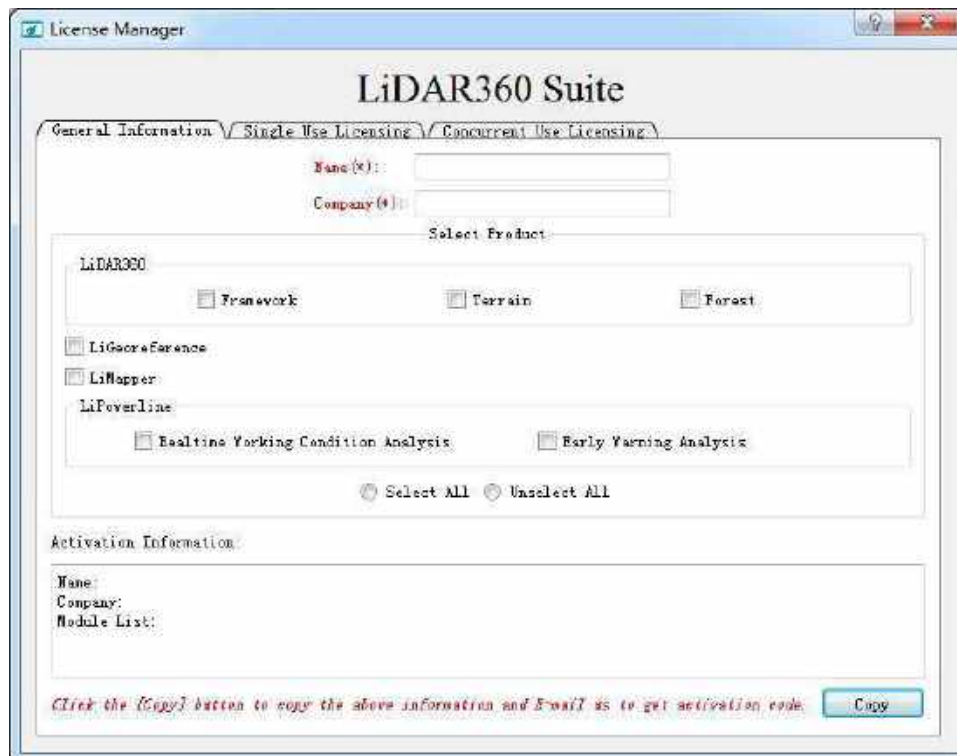
## Why does LiDAR360 pop up the message indicating the trial license expired after installation?



- The LiDAR360 trial license fail might be caused by the following reasons:
  - **System Time Changes:** During the trial period, some reasons that may cause system time change, resulting in expired trials.
  - **Trial Expiration:** LiDAR360 has 30-day trial period for each version. If the same version has been installed for 30 days, the trial has expired.
  - **Other Reasons:** Please contact us by email [info@greenvalleyintl.com](mailto:info@greenvalleyintl.com).

## How to activate LiDAR360?

- **Send Activation Information:** Run the software as administrator, click **Help > Activate License** in the menubar, or double-click the License Manager.exe in the installation directory.



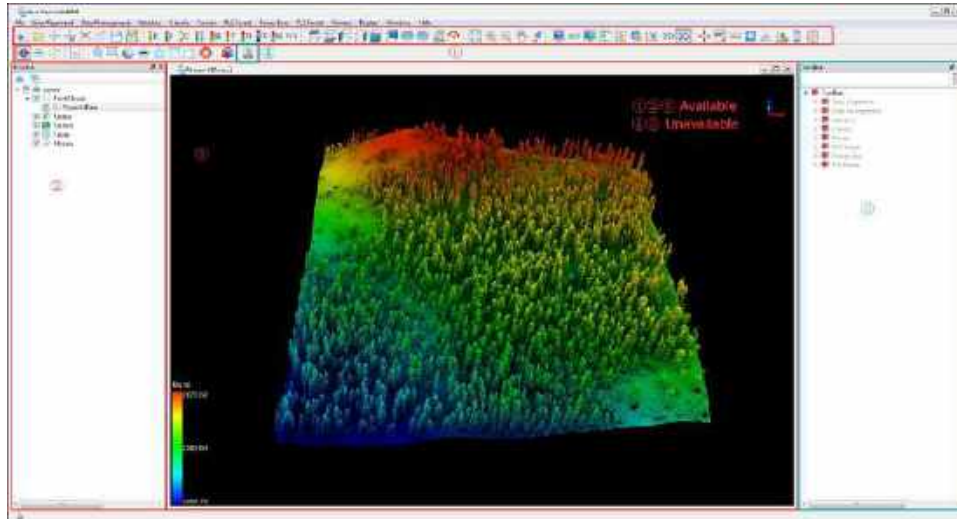
- Fill in Name (Mandatory);
- Fill in Company (Mandatory);
- Select the appropriate module(s);
- Click Copy;
- Send an email with the copied content to [info@greenvalleyintl.com](mailto:info@greenvalleyintl.com).
- **Activate License:**
  - Copy the license code to your local drive. Pleaser refer to the [License Manager](#) for license activation.

## Does LiDAR360 support Windows Server System?

- Windows Server is supported.
  - Please install and activate LiDAR360 using the administrator account. The software must be installed in the folder to which all users have access.

## Can I continue to use LiDAR360 after the trial period ends?

- When the trial period ends, you can still use the LiDAR360 software as a point cloud visualization tool. The major software functions, such as the viewer, measurement tool and selection tool in the toolbar will still be available. If you still need a full license or a license for a specific module, please contact us [info@greenvalleyintl.com](mailto:info@greenvalleyintl.com) for more information on purchasing the software.



## **Why the help document in the License Manager window cannot be opened by clicking the help button?**

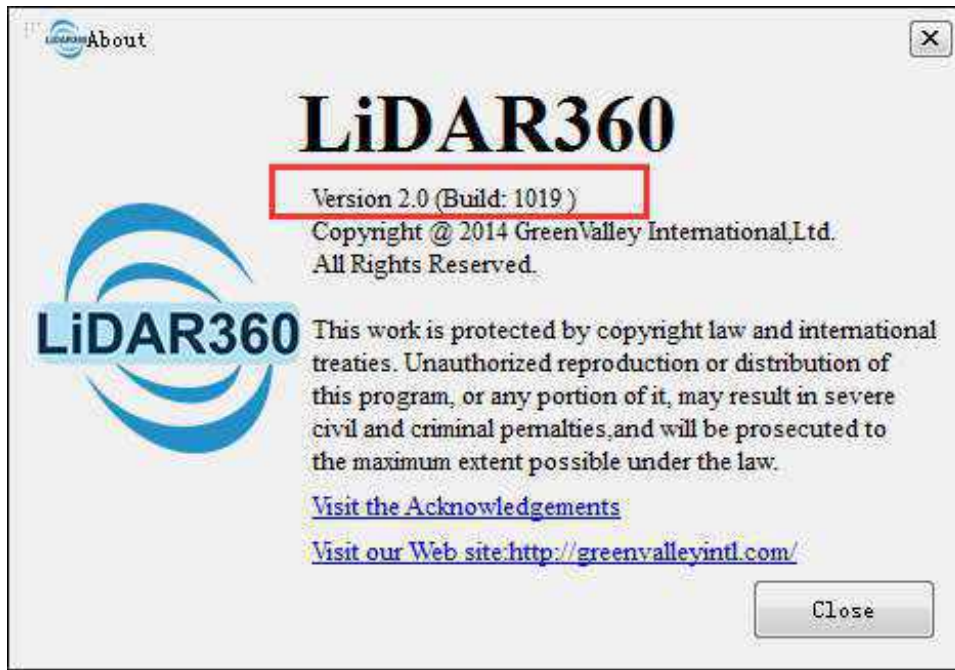
- Please check if you have set the default program for opening PDFs. If not, please choose one.

## **How can I use the authorization code on another computer if it cannot be revoked due to the broken of current computer?**

- Please sent an email to us through [info@greenvalleyintl.com](mailto:info@greenvalleyintl.com) with the corresponding authroization code. We will revoke the code in the activation server for you so that it can be used in another computer.

## How to check the version information of LiDAR360 software?

- You can check the version information of LiDAR360 in **Help > About**, 2.0 is the software version and 1019 is the build date.



## How to change the menu language?

- Click **Display > Language** in the menubar. Currently the supported languages are English, Chinese and French.

## Why does the software exit abnormally?

- Based on our experience, the major two reasons of abnormal exits are the insufficient disk space or memory space in your computer and the existence of opened instance of screen word capturing software. If you meet any other scenarios that lead to abnormal exits, please contact us [info@greenvalleyintl.com](mailto:info@greenvalleyintl.com).

## What are the supported data formats in LiDAR360?

- LiDAR360 can import the following data formats:
  - **Point Cloud:** Proprietary LiData File(\*.LiData), LAS File(\*.las,\*.laz), ASCII File(\*.txt, \*.asc, \*.neu, \*.xyz, \*.pts, \*.csv), PLY File(\*.ply).
  - **Raster:** Image File(\*.tif,\*.jpg).
  - **Vector:** Vector File(\*.shp).
  - **Table:** Table File(\*.csv)
  - **Model:** Proprietary Model File(\*.LiModel), Proprietary TIN File\*.LiTin), OSG Model File(\*.osgb, \*.ive,

\*.desc, \*.obj).

- LiDAR360 can export the following data formats:
  - **Point Cloud:** Proprietary LiData File(\*.LiData), LAS File(\*.las, \*.laz), ASCII File(\*.txt, \*.asc, \*.neu, \*.xyz, \*.pts, \*.csv), PLY File(\*.ply).
  - **Raster:** Image File(\*.tif, \*.jpg).
  - **Vector:** Vector File(\*.shp, \*.dxf)
  - **Table:** Table File(\*.csv)
  - **Model:** Proprietary Model File(\*.LiModel), Proprietary TIN File(\*.LiTin).

## If the color scheme of the data displayed in the viewer window is not correct, how can I correct this?

- First, right click on the desktop. Select NVIDIA Control Panel.
- Second, select *manage 3D settings > program settings > add* to add LiDAR360 software to the list of high-performance graphics mode. Refer to [adjust high-performance graphics mode](#).

## How to fix drag and drop in windows 8 and windows 10?

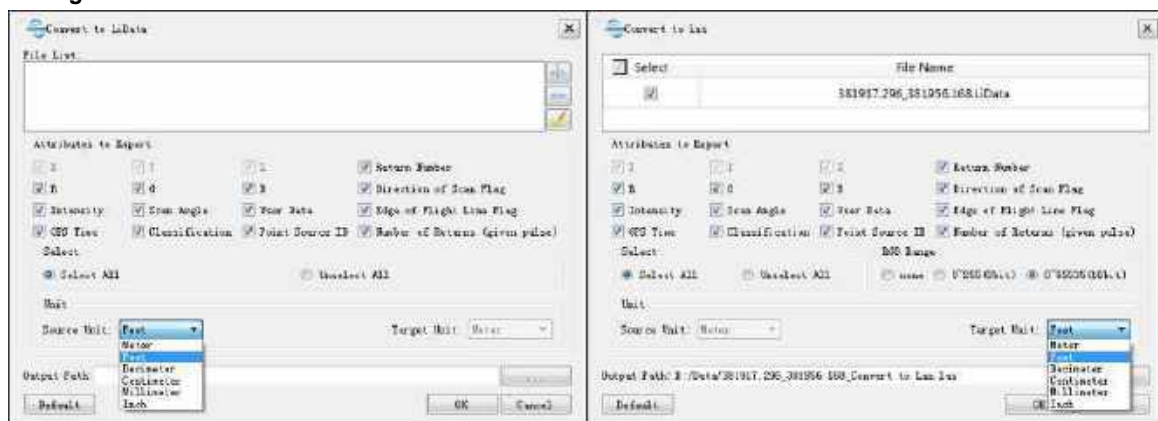
- Go to RUN, or search "regedit.exe" then run as administrator. On Registry Editor go to: HKEY\_LOCAL\_MACHINE\SOFTWARE\Microsoft\Windows\CurrentVersion\Policies\System, double click "EnableLUA", and change the value from 1 to 0. Restart windows, and the problem will be solved.  
[Reference](#).

## Why is the EDL visual effect not obvious if multiple data are added in the same window?

- It's recommended to show distant multiple data in separate windows with EDL effect. Or remove unwanted data in the current window.

## What is the unit of point cloud data in LiDAR360?

- The unit is meter. If users have point clouds with foot or other units, they can be converted by **Data Management > Conversion > Convert to LiData / Convert to Las**.

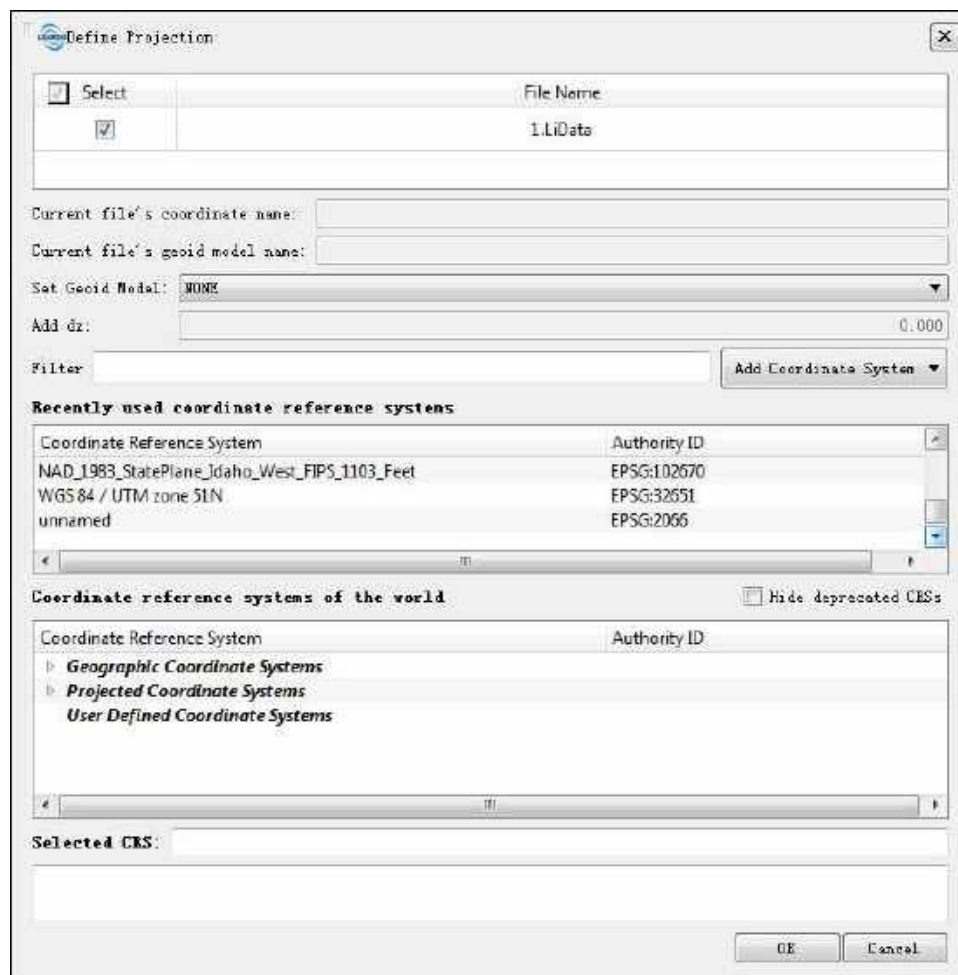


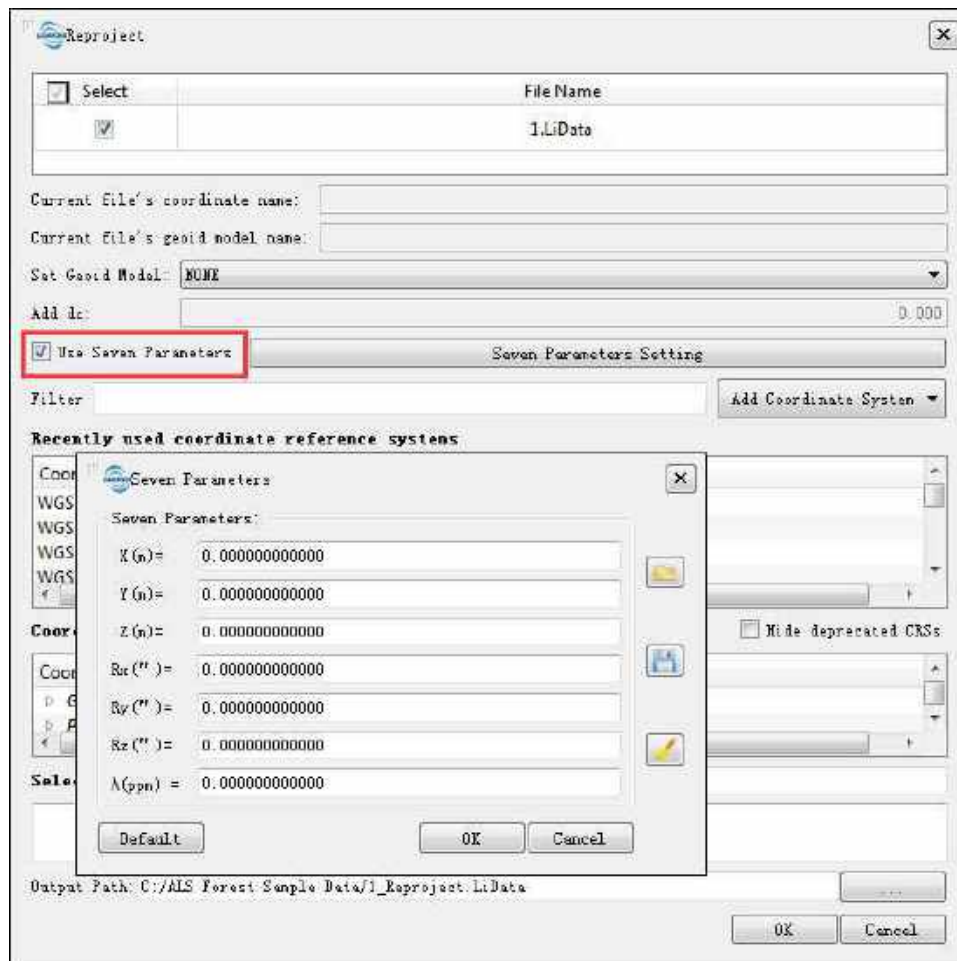
## Is LiDAR360 capable to handle the point cloud generated by photogrammetry software?

- Yes, it is.

## How does LiDAR360 perform seven parameter transformations?

- Click **Data Management > Projections and Transformations > Reproject**.
- Check **Use Seven Parameters**.
- Input seven parameters: translations X, Y, Z; rotations Rx, Ry, Rz; and scale  $\lambda$ .
- Select target coordinate reference system. (You have to *define projection* for the point cloud if it doesn't have source coordinate reference system)





## How to subsample the point cloud uniformly?

- LiDAR360 provides [subsampling methods](#) by *Minimum Points Spacing*, *Sampling Rate*, or *Octree*. The subsampling by *Octree* is an uniform method.
- Click **Data Management > Point Cloud Tools > Subsampling**, then select the sampling type *Octree*.

## How to Pick Rotation Center while using the Pick Multi-Point tool?

- Hold the Ctrl key and pick rotation center by left-click.

## Why are point cloud transformation results incorrect in LiDAR360?

- This is because different units are used in each program. In LiDAR360 degree units are used. In order to carry out a correct transformation, the units must be degrees.

## Can lidar data or software be built into a GIS Platform?

- Yes. Our software can generate shapefiles (.shp) and .tiff files which can be integrated into a GIS system. In our software you can also create new polygons, lines as well as generate contour lines, DEM and other digital models.

## **What memory(RAM) requirement is there to process large datasets in LiDAR360?**

- We recommend at least 16GB of RAM for processing large datasets.

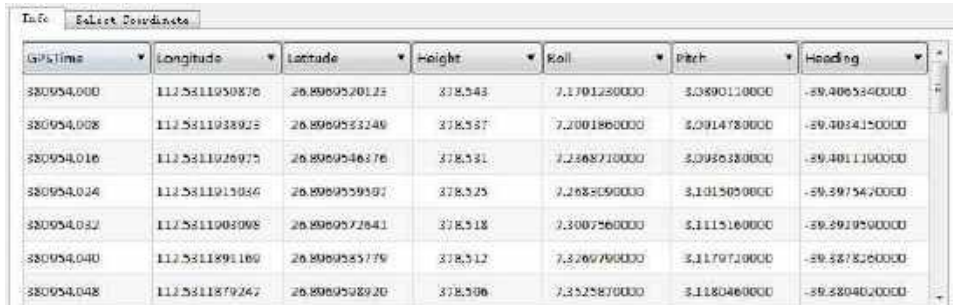
## **Why there are very large error after rectifying? How to solve it?**

- You can view the residuals for all the homologous points pairs and remove the homologous points pairs with large residuals. After that, redo the rectifying process.



## What are the supported POS formats by LiDAR360?

- ASCII format (\*.pos) and binary format (\*.out) are currently supported.
  - \*.pos file contains GPS time, longitude and latitude, flight height, roll, pitch and heading. An example is shown as follows:

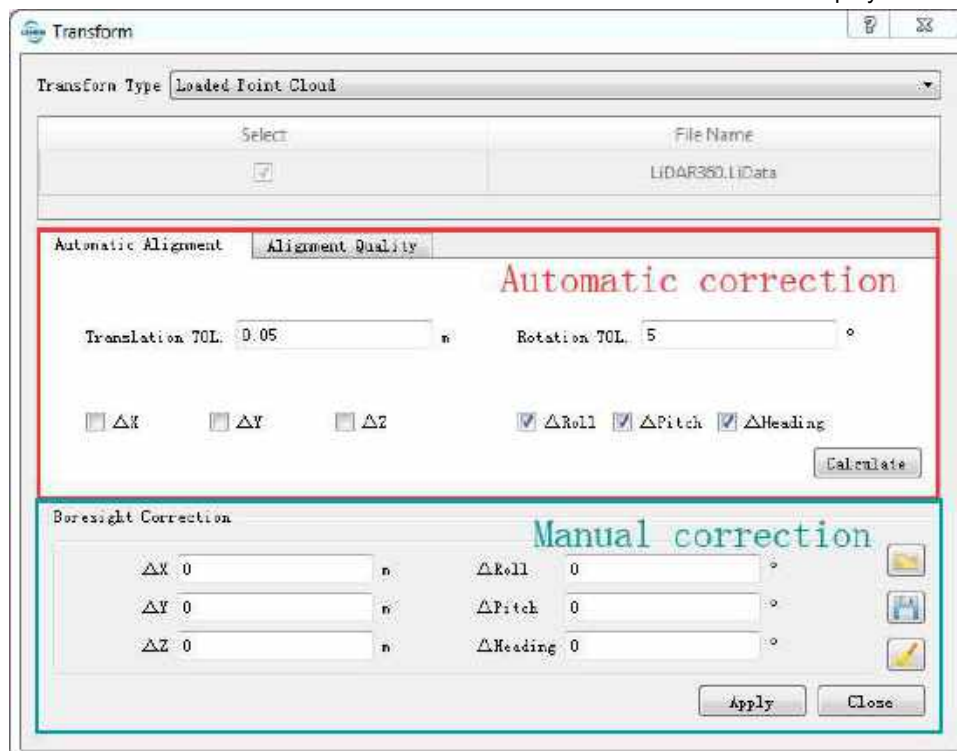


GPS Time	Longitude	Latitude	Height	Roll	Pitch	Heading
320954.000	112.5811950876	26.8969520122	378.543	7.1701250000	3.3890110000	-89.4065340000
320954.008	112.5811938925	26.8969553240	378.537	7.2001860000	3.0914780000	-89.4034150000
320954.016	112.5811926975	26.8969546376	378.531	7.2302710000	3.0936380000	-89.4011100000
320954.024	112.5811915024	26.8969559397	378.525	7.2683590000	3.1315050000	-89.3975670000
320954.032	112.5811903098	26.8969572641	378.518	7.3007260000	3.1115160000	-89.3919590000
320954.040	112.5811891180	26.8969585779	378.512	7.3269790000	3.1179710000	-89.3878260000
320954.048	112.5811879247	26.8969598920	378.506	7.3525870000	3.1180460000	-89.3804020000

- \*.out file is a proprietary format of the company Applanix. Please refer to [OUT File](#).

## Is the strip alignment manual or automatic in LiDAR360?

- There are both manual and automatic methods in LiDAR360. And the results will be displayed in real-time.



## What is the time reference in POS file supported by LiDAR360? Is the GPS time necessary?

- The only requirement is that the time stamps in POS file and point cloud data files have the **same reference** (e.g., GPS Time or UTC Time). If they are not the same, you have to convert one to the other. Generally, time in point cloud counts in SOW(seconds of a week) or SOD(seconds of a day).

## **Sometimes, the point clouds after strip alignment are partially aligned, but partially not, and in some area they are even distorted. Why?**

- This may occur if the POS file is of low accuracy. The principle of the *Strip Alignment* module is to correct **boresight errors** between laser scanner system and GPS/INS system. The precondition is that the POS accuracy for the acquired data meets the standard specifications. Otherwise the resulting point clouds are partially distorted. Boresight correction alone doesn't guarantee the aligned results with high accuracy.

## **Why there is no output when I try to clip the point cloud data with the POS file?**

- Please check the GPS starting and ending time of both the POS file and the point cloud data. And see if there are any overlap between the GPS time of two files.

## What ground points filtering algorithm is used in LiDAR360 software?

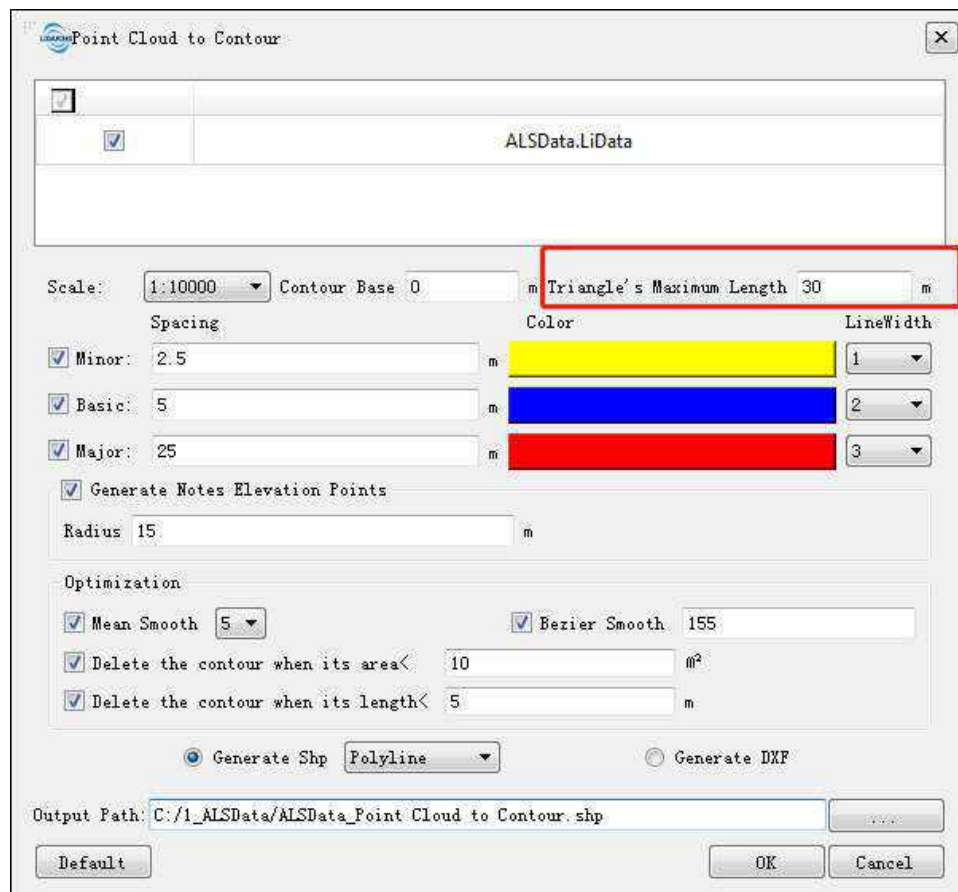
- LiDAR360 uses an Improved Progressive TIN Densification (IPTD ([Zhao et al.,2016](#)) ) filtering algorithm to classify ground points. Specific parameter settings see [Classify Ground Points](#).

## The actually scanned LiDAR point density is much larger than the DEM point density requirement of the production. Can data be subsampled?

- If the actually scanned LiDAR point density is much greater than the production demand, you can use the [Subsampling](#) tool to subsample the point clouds. This function provides three types of subsampling methods: "Minimum Points Spacing", "Sampling Rate" and "Octree".

## Some of the contour lines generated by the function "Point Cloud to Contour" are broken. Why?

- The broken contour lines may be caused by the lack of ground points. The contours can be contiguous by increasing the parameter "Triangle's Maximum Length" on the interface. For example, set 30 meters up to 50 meters or an even larger value.



## During DEM processing, the result of this process has .tiff format. Can I convert this into 3D data?

- You can convert your .tiff DEM into our custom 3D model format (LiModel). Go to **Data Management > Conversion > Convert TIFF to LiModel**(../ToolReference/DataManagement/Conversion/ConvertImagetoLiModel.md).

## How to check and improve the quality of DEM generated by LiDAR360?

- You can first create a hillshade map from the hillshade tool in the terrain module. This tool determines the illumination-enhanced surface visualization by setting each cell in the raster. At the same time, you can use **Data Management > Conversion > Convert TIFF to LiModel** to convert single-band Tiff images to LiModel. The LiModel can be viewed in 3D and is more intuitive. In addition, the model can be edited by using **Terrain > LiModel Editor**, such as "Flatten Height", "Smooth Height", and "Repair Height" to improve the quality of DEM. Similarly, DSM or CHM data can also be operated as above.

## How do you generate a smoother contour for a DEM?

- Perform a smoothing operation using smooth height tool. Save the data. Then Convert the LiModel back to .tiff format, **Data Management > Conversion > Convert LiModel to TIFF**(../ToolReference/DataManagement/Conversion/ConvertLiModeltoImage.md). From here perform a contour operation **Terrain > Raster to Contour**(../ToolReference/Terrain/RastertoContour.md).

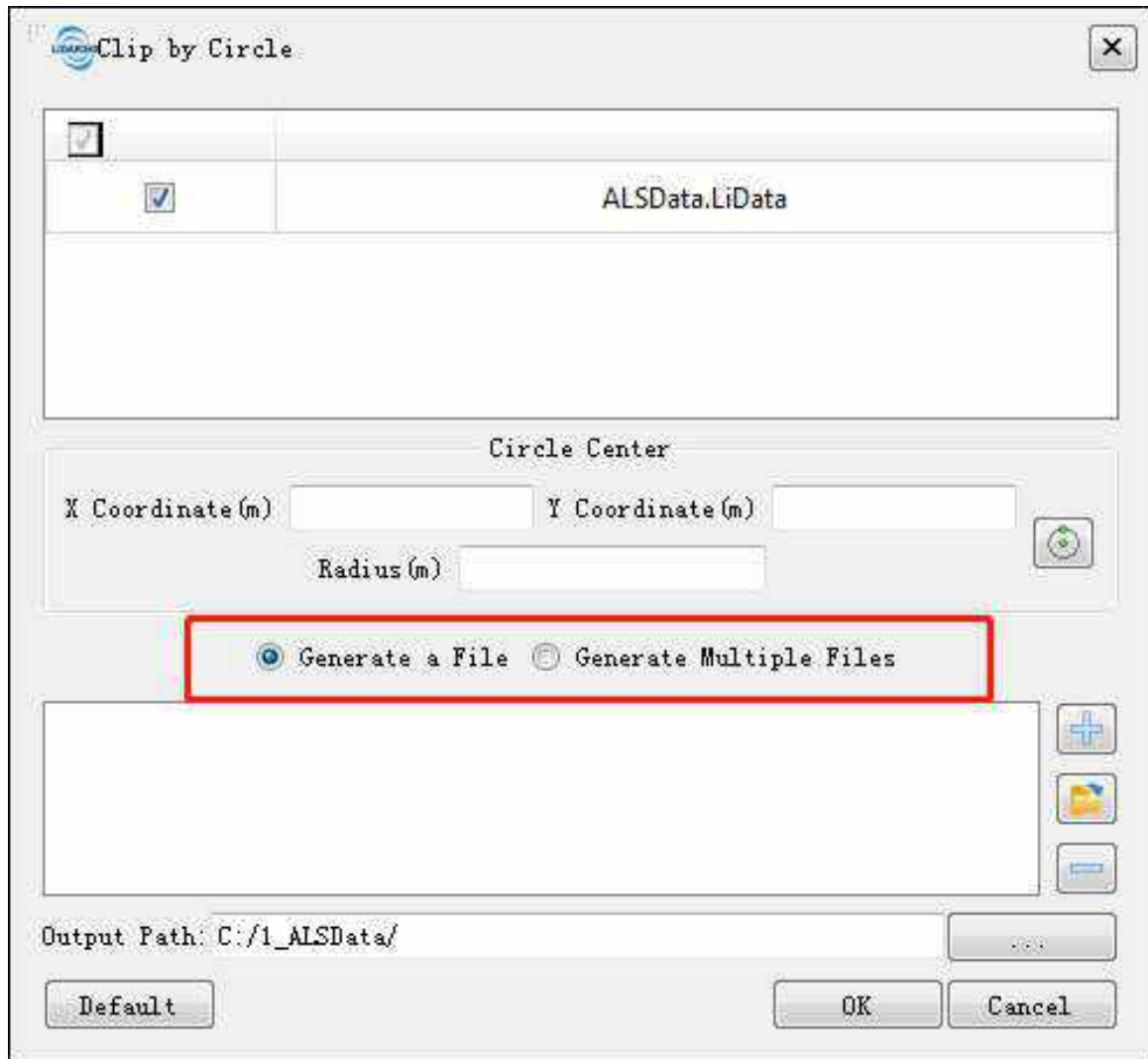
## How to choose the interpolation method for generating DSM?

- It is recommended to choose IDW interpolation for forestry area, and TIN interpolation (Spike Free TIN) for urban area.

```
@inproceedings{
  author={Zhao X Q, Guo Q H, Su Y J and Xue B L},
  title={Improved progressive TIN densification filtering algorithm for airborne LiDAR data in forested areas},
  booktitle={ISPRS Journal of Photogrammetry and Remote Sensing,117:79-91},
  year={2016}
}
```

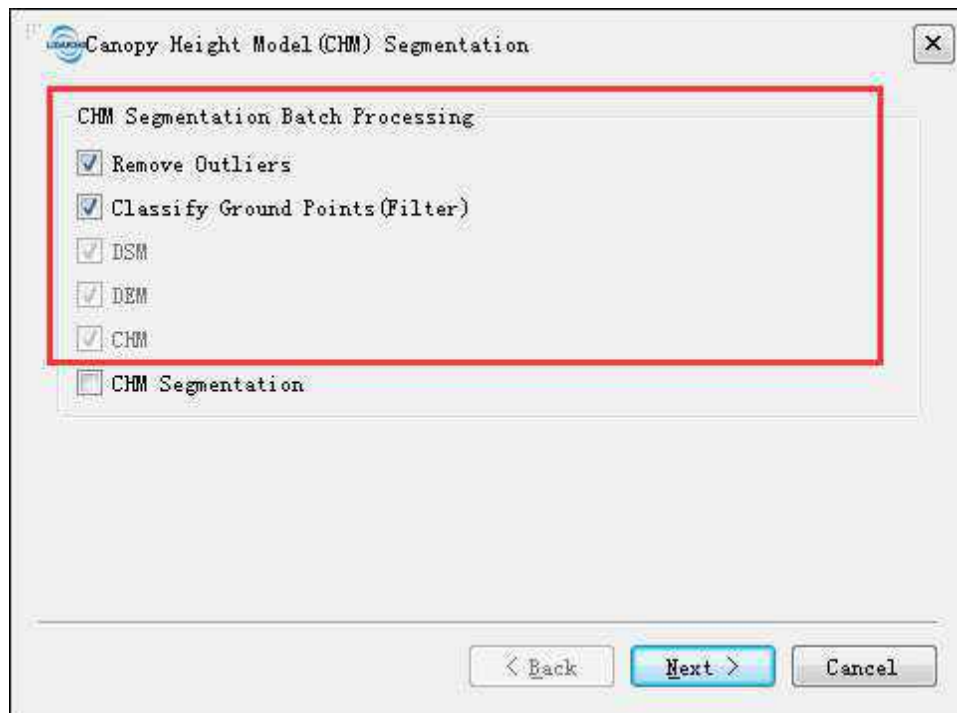
## Is it possible to save each sample as a separate file when cutting the point cloud data by center and radius?

- The results of [Clip by Circle](#) and [Clip by Rectangle](#) can be saved as multiple files or merged into a single file. The user can choose either one as an option.



## Can LiDAR360 generate CHM in batches?

- LiDAR360 can generate CHM in batches (*ALS Forest > Batch Process > Canopy Height Model(CHM) Segmentation*).



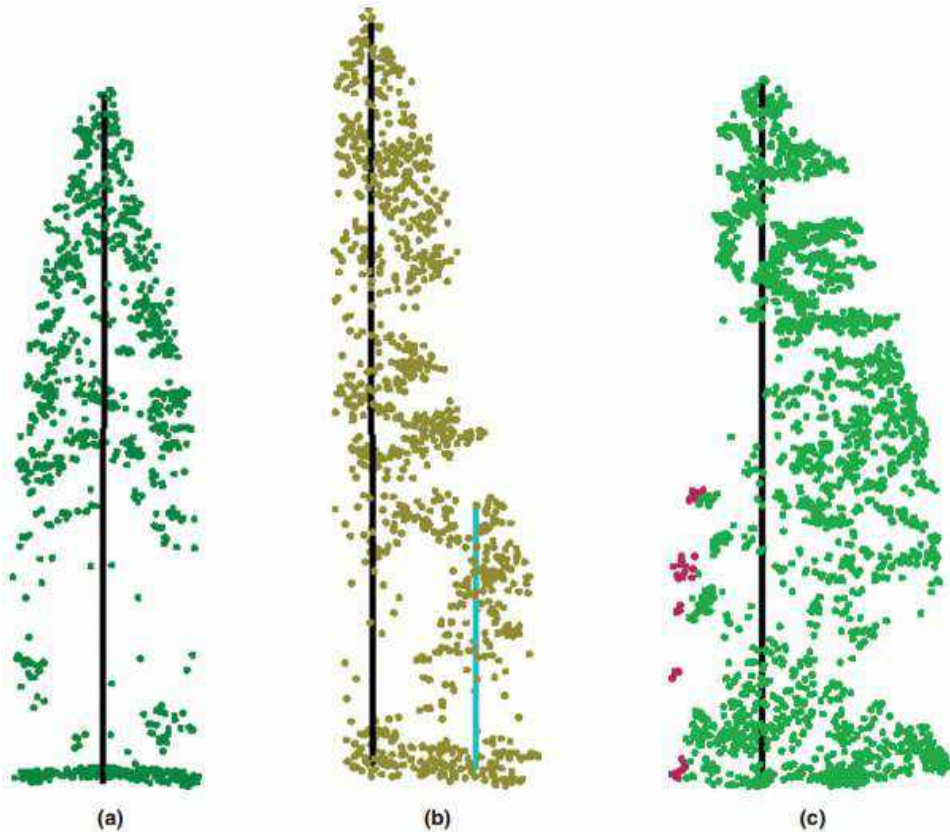
## How to evaluate the accuracy of individual tree segmentation results?

- For evaluation of individual tree segmentation accuracy, please refer to Li et al's article on [\(Li et al., 2012\)](#). By comparing with field measurement, the number of correctly segmented trees, the number of falsely segmented trees, and the number of missed trees are calculated according to the following formulae: recall ( $r$ ), precision ( $p$ ), and F-score ( $F$ ). Recall indicates the tree detection rate, precision indicates the correctness of the detected trees, and F-score is the overall accuracy taking both commission and omission errors into consideration. The values of  $r$ ,  $p$  and  $F$  vary from 0 to 1.

$$r = \frac{TP}{TP + FN}$$

$$p = \frac{TP}{TP + FP}$$

$$F = 2 \times \frac{r \times p}{r + p}$$



(a) Correctly detected tree (True Positive, TP) (b) undetected tree (False Negative, FN) (c) falsely detected tree (False Positive, FP)

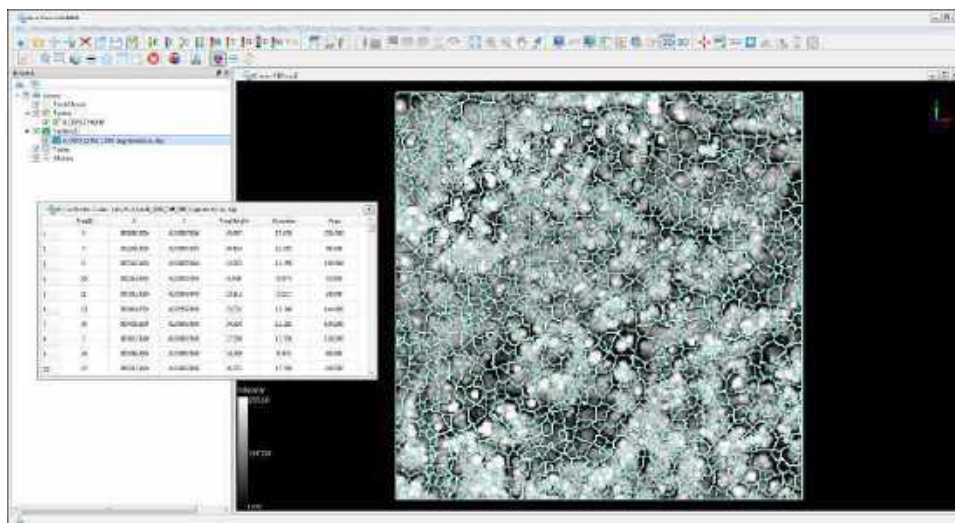
## What parameters affect the CHM segmentation accuracy and how should these parameters be set?

- The accuracy of **CHM segmentation** are affected by CHM resolution and Gaussian smoothing factor.
  - CHM is the difference between DSM and DEM. The CHM resolution is determined by the resolution of DSM and DEM. Generally speaking, this value should not exceed one-third of the crown width, and the range can be set to 0.3-1m. Usually, the resolution of 0.5-0.6m can get a higher segmentation accuracy.
  - Sigma is the Gaussian smoothing factor (default value is "1"). The greater the value is, the smoother the results are. The degree of smoothness can affect the number of trees being segmented. In the case of under-segmentation, it is recommended to reduce this value (e.g. 0.5); and in the case of over-segmentation, it is recommended to increase the value (e.g. 1.5).
- Moreover, beside the algorithm parameters, the CHM segmentation result can also be largely influenced by tree density and tree species. If the algorithm does not work well in a certain study area, users can try to use other segmentation algorithms to get the best segmentation result.

## How to remove some results with small crown area after running CHM segmentation?

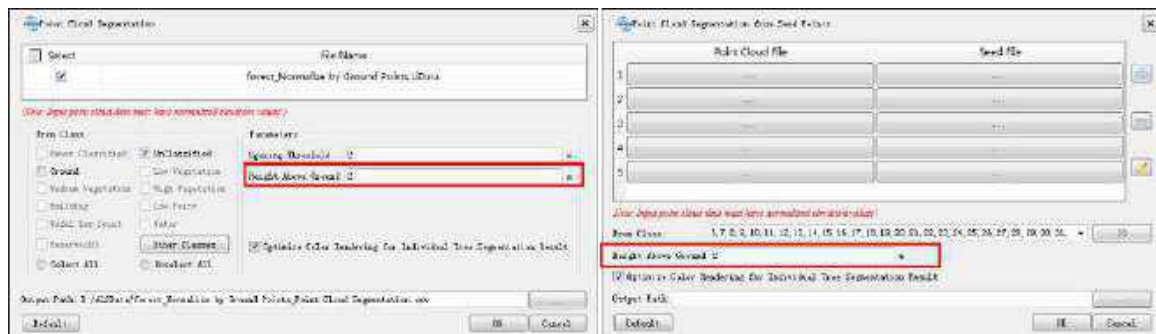
- After running CHM segmentation, a shp file containing the tree boundary is obtained. The attribute table includes the ID, location, height, crown diameter and crown area of each tree. The data can be imported into a third-party software (e.g. ArcGIS), and you can remove the segmentation results with a small crown area

according to the crown area attribute.



## How to make point cloud data below 2m be participated in segmentation?

- The parameter "Height Above Ground" on the [Point Cloud Segmentation](#) and [Point Cloud Segmentation from Seed Points](#) interfaces indicate that points below the value are not considered as part of the tree and will be ignored during the segmentation process. The default value is 2m. If you need to make the point cloud below 2m participate in the segmentation, the value can be reduced appropriately.



## Which kind of segmentation method for coniferous and broad-leaved mixed forest data can be used to obtain higher accuracy?

- For coniferous and broad-leaved mixed forest data, [CHM Segmentation](#) is recommended.

## The growth of trees in the area is not the same, how to achieve higher segmentation accuracy?

- It is recommended to clip the point cloud according to the growth as different data by [Select Tools](#) or [Clip Tools](#) and handle them separately.

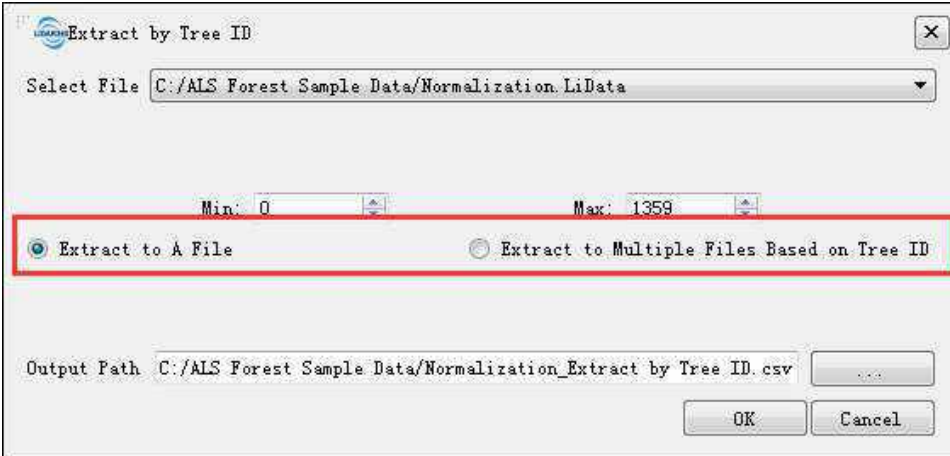


## If the tree canopy is covered in weeds, can tree identification still be performed in LiDAR360?

- Yes, it can.

## How to export individual tree segmentation results to third-party software for analysis?

- Click **ALS Forest > Extract by Tree ID**, the segmented point cloud can be exported to CSV file for subsequent analysis using other software. LiDAR360 supports exporting each tree as a separate CSV file or exporting all points as one file. The exported CSV file is shown in the figure below, which contains X, Y, Z coordinates and tree ID information.



X	Y	Z	Tree ID
322621.07	4102041.99	6.743	46
322622.48	4102043.31	11.736	46
322618.82	4102039.19	9.151	46
322620.57	4102045.13	5.883	46
322619.84	4102038.8	12.972	46
322622.83	4102042.92	14.346	46
322615.72	4102046.2	12.111	46
322616.58	4102039.91	15.035	46
322619.36	4102038.52	13.747	46
322620.84	4102039.26	12.779	46
322621.21	4102040.27	11.625	46
322620.84	4102045.87	10.745	46
322621.85	4102042.73	8.413	46
322622.65	4102044.29	14.441	46
322621.83	4102044.93	13.393	46
322622.24	4102044.99	12.59	46
322622.57	4102045.85	11.602	46
322616.23	4102040.06	15.539	46

## How many sample data files are required for regression analysis?

- The number of sample data used for regression analysis is not clearly defined. In general, under the premise

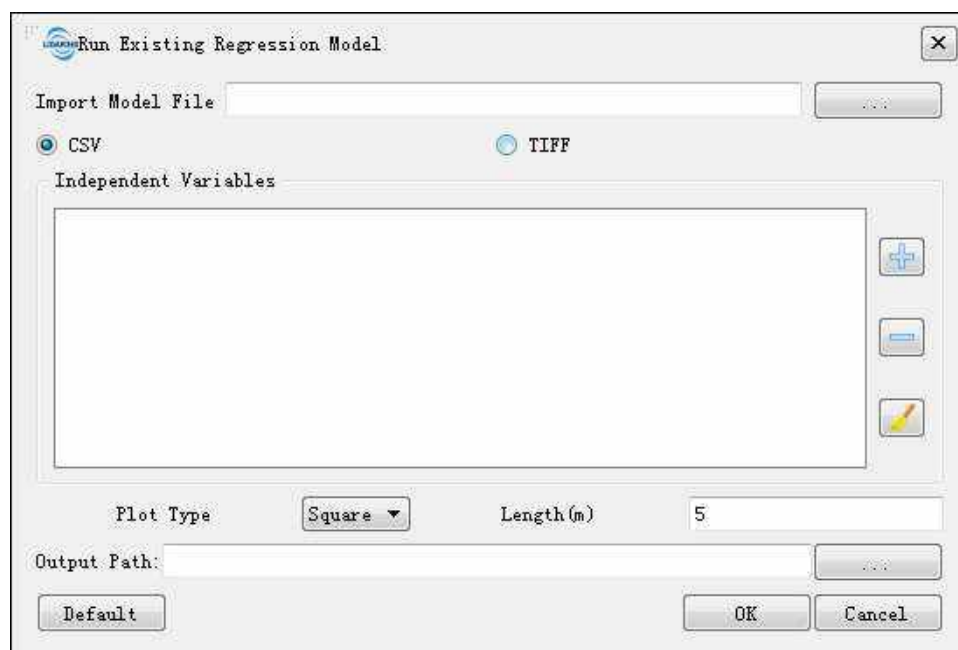
of ensuring the accuracy of plot location and measurement, the greater the number of sample data is, the higher the accuracy of regression analysis can achieve. Sample sites should be randomly selected and representative to cover different forest types within the study area. A sample size less than 30 is referred as a small sample, and a sample size of 30 or greater is referred as a large sample. To ensure regression analysis accuracy, the recommended sample size should be greater than or equal to 30 (you should also consider the size and complexity of the study area).

## How to choose the independent variables involved in the regression analysis?

- The elevation percentiles obtained from LiDAR data are generally the independent variables for regression analysis. However, specific elevation percentiles are not all the same for different study areas.

## Can trained regression models be used for other data?

- Yes. Click **ALS Forest > Regression Analysis > Run Existing Regression Model**. Available regression models (**Linear Regression**, **Support Vector Machine**, **Fast Artificial Neural Network** and **Random Forest Regression**) can be used to estimate forest metrics.



## Can I export the independent variables (e.g. elevation percentiles) generated by LiDAR360 into third-party software (e.g. SPSS, R) for regression analysis?

- Yes. Independent variables provided by LiDAR360 including **Elevation Percentile**, **Elevation Density**, **Intensity Percentile**, **Leaf Area Index**, **Canopy Cover** and **Gap Fraction**. Among them, Elevation Percentile, Elevation Density and Intensity Percentile are in CSV formats, and they can be imported into third-party software such as SPSS directly. Leaf Area Index, Canopy Cover, and Gap Fraction are in TIF formats that can be converted to text format by ArcGIS and imported into third-party software.

```
@inproceedings{
  author={ Li W K, Guo Q H, Jakubowski M K and Kelly M},
  title={A new method for segmentation individual trees from the LiDAR point cloud},
  booktitle={ Photogrammetric Engineering and Remote Sensing,78(1):75-84},
  year={2012}
}
```

## What if the TLS Stem Extraction runs in a flash or there is no change in the classification result?

-The function of TLS Stem Extraction is based on deep learning and needs to use GPU. Make sure the latest driver has been installed on your computer.

-For Windows7 System, the driver need to be installed includes:

- 451.67-desktop-win8-win7-64-international-whql.exe
- GeForce\_Experience\_v3.20.3.63.exe
- Please select the appropriate driver according to your own operating system for your [Nvidia GPU](#) and installation.
- If you still cannot run this function after installing the latest driver, please check whether the required system patches are installed. For example, Windows 7 needs to install the following patches:
- Windows6.1-KB3068708-x64.msu
- Windows6.1-KB3080148-x64.msu
- Please make sure all the required patches are correctly installed on your computer.

# LiDAR360 Version Release Notes

## v5.0 - 29/1/2021

Here is the release note:

- **New Features:**

- Add geology module
- Add flow direction function
- Add fill function
- Add slope/aspect query function
- Add data IO API for software development
- Support creating LiData point cloud file
- Support reading LiData point cloud file
- Support modifying LiData point cloud file
- Add powerline module
- Add deep learning classification of powerline function
- Add danger point detection function
- Add customization of the danger point detection
- Support danger point visualization
- Add point cloud smoothing function
- Add trunk extraction function
- Add elevation annotation points generation based on contour lines function
- Add new format transform tools
- shp to kml
- kml to shp
- Support background grid display in viewers
- Support extracting point cloud by TreeID
- Support clear individual tree record and segmentation by TreeID
- Add calculating forest metrics

- **Enhancement:**

- UI
- Brand new Ribbon user interface style
- Support free dragging of child windows
- Support customization of UI pages
- Supports automatic hiding of docked window
- Support one-click industry application processing
- Strip alignment
- Add strip adjustment function
- Support clipping trajectory by the quality and selecting with a brush on a trajectory
- Directory tree
- More comprehensive point cloud information display
- Support selecting the version of the LAS file when right-clicking to export
- Support right-clicking to add additional attributes of point cloud
- Support right-clicking to rename files

- Support setting the point size of table data
- Expand the projection library to support more projections and geoid
- Optimize PCV efficiency and support more point cloud calculations for PCV
- Optimize ALS automatic individual tree segmentation
- Improve point cloud attribute extension of an individual tree, slope and altitude information is added.
- Optimize individual tree seed point editing
- Improve method of profile selecting
- Improve method of adding and deleting seed points
- Add viewpoint position and direction for easy positioning of trees
- Real-time update of attribute table corresponding to seed point modification
- Support undo and redo
- Support setting profile viewpoint distance
- Optimize individual tree point cloud editing
- Improve method of profile selecting
- Support creating an individual tree by specifying a chosen tree
- Support setting profile viewpoint distance
- Automatically save the configuration
- Optimized profile point cloud editing
- Improve the efficiency of block editing by more than 50%
- Support mouse position tracking in the profile window
- Support data exporting
- Add section comparing analysis function in section analysis
- Upgrade LiModel format to solve the problem of coordinate accuracy loss
- Reduce the GPU usage rate of point cloud display by 20%
- Support multiple calls to the same function in batch processing
- Fix the bug when using cross selection and clipping tool simultaneously
- Improve the efficiency of point cloud conversion to DXF file

## **v4.1 - 8/6/2020**

- **New Features:**

- Add three-point angle measurement
- Add registration of UAV and backpack forestry point cloud data
- Added individual tree attribute information expansion
- Add detection of forest structure changes
- Add DBH measurement
- Help menu
  - Add software usage problems and demand feedback channel
  - Add FAQ, quick start, official website link, etc.

- **Enhancements:**

- Optimize the efficiency of loading multiple files
- Improve color rendering of point cloud attributes
- Additional attribute management
  - Support deleting
  - Support component combination rendering
- Improve profile editing and classifying
  - Support grid scale display in profile window

- Support directory tree to manage point cloud tiles in memory
- Support import boundary of measurement area with SHP file in volume measurement
- Improve the efficiency of filtering function and the density of ground points
- Support directory tree to manage point cloud tiles in memory in individual tree point cloud editing function
- Support combined calculation in forestry metrics
- Support extract point cloud by tree ID, support export the extracted point cloud to LAS and LiData format
- Support attribute filtering in ALS seed point editing
- Improve LiTIN editing, support 3D view editing, and support the setting of starting height of broken line
- Add tunnel cross-section in cross-section analysis
- Window layout supports multiple layout modes
- Newly designed UI icons

## v4.0 - 30/12/2019

### ● New Features:

- Add denormalization tool
- Add classify close points tool
- Add manual rotation and translation tool
- Add convert ASCII to BLH tool
- Add individual tree editor tool. Support to create, merge, and delete tree
- Add statistics individual tree attributes tool
- Add TLS leaf area index tool
- Add ALS forestry metrics calculation in give area tools
- Add deviation analysis tool for two data of the same area collected in different times.
- Add change detection tool
- Add transform GPS time tool. Support to transform GPS time between GPS coordinate time and GPS week second

### ● Enhancements:

- Support online update checking and installing
- Upgrade the version of LiData to 2.0. Support all the features of LAS 1.4 (except the waveform information) and support the additional attribute of the point cloud file
- Support the color rendering for all the attributes of point cloud data
- Support the rotation of 2D view
- Support fast mode and precise mode in volume calculation and providing the information of the measuring area
- Support zooming to the layer by double-clicking the file in the directory tree
- Support recovering the data association in the same path for the project file path
- Support EDL effect in render to file and save to video tools
- Support generating automatic alignment report and clearing the data alignment information
- Improve the profile editor. Support customizing hot keys. Solve the problem of profile buffer settings
- Improve the EDL effects in orthogonal projection
- Improve the cross selection tool. Support data clipping when being used with selection tool, or 2D drawing when being used with vector editor.
- Improve data interaction experience:
  - Improve browsing fluency
  - Support automatically picking the rotation center

- Improve point picking experience
  - Support measuring components in the measurement tools
  - Support measuring points number in the density measurement tool
- Support recording the original Z value in normalization tool
- Improve the data formats supported
  - Support E57 point cloud format
  - Support additional attributes for LAS, PLY, and ASCII format point cloud files
  - Support choosing the version of las file when exporting point cloud in las format (las 1.2, las 1.3, and las 1.4)
  - Support converting version of LiData (LiData 1.9 and LiData 2.0)
  - Support converting point cloud in Geographic Coordinate System to projected LiData
- Improve the calculation method of individual tree crown volume
- Improve the efficiency of the calculation of forestry metrics

## v3.2 - 6/6/2019

- **New Features:**

- Add brightness settings tool
- Add ICP registration function
- Support exporting TIN in DXF format
- Add raster statistics tool

- **Enhancements:**

- Optimize EDL display effect in profile editing mode
- Optimize the ground point filter
- Optimize the efficiency and effect of "Classify Buildings" tool
- Support rectangular/circular interactive area selection tool in clipping function
- Change band calculator to raster calculator; support custom formula
- Support hot keys and right-clicking menu in ALS individual tree segmentation editing tool
- Support position uncertainty optimization mode in regression analysis
- Support corresponding multiple point cloud files to one trajectory in "cut point cloud based on trajectory" tool
- Profile editing and classifying:
  - Add the lasso selection tool
  - Add the plane detection tool
  - Support clearing the triangular network already been built
  - Support setting the size of brush selection tool
  - Support setting the step length of the profile translation
  - Optimize the efficiency of triangular network generating
- TLS individual tree segmentation editing:
  - Support ignoring the Z-values of the input seed file
  - Support right-clicking menu and hot keys
  - Support hot keys in single tree attributes measuring
  - Support display of LiBackpack trajectory file
- Manual registration:
  - Support inputting/outputting coordinate transformation matrix
  - Support the preview of transformation
- Raster and table data:

- Support color settings
  - Support highlighting objects when they are selected
  - Support centralizing the objects when they are double-clicked
- **Bug Fixed:**
  - Fix the bug that the order of the vector and table data's attribute table is wrong.
  - Fix the bug that only the displayed data will be used in "batch extraction DBH" tool
  - Fix the bug that profile selection will disappear in the main window if users edit point cloud in profile window

## v3.1 - 31/12/2018

- **New Features:**
  - Profile edit and classify:
    - Support block editing and classifying
    - Support multiple windows selecting and classifying
    - Add the brush selecting tool
    - Block editing mode supports to undo/redo
    - Add the automatic timing/automatic saving function
    - Add multiple selecting area filter classification/classification setting tools
    - Support hot key switch function
    - Block editing mode supports RAM usage warning
  - Boundary extraction adds convex hull and concave hull mode
  - Add check for updates function
- **Enhancements:**
  - Improve the efficiency of LiData generating
  - Support to recalculate the histogram of point cloud intensity and elevation
  - Move the rectify to reprojection and transformation module
  - Multiple point selecting tool supports to customize the extended attributes
  - Support projected coordinate systems in JGD2011 coordinate system
  - Support POS files in more formats. Now support POS file with projected coordinates.
  - Support converting length units for las and LiData files.

## v3.0.1 - 10/12/2018

- **New Features:**
  - TLS data editing tools:
    - Add circle selection tool
    - Add profile translation tool
    - Add DBH inspector tool
- **Enhancements:**
  - Optimize the color rendering for individual tree segmentation.
  - Optimize the segmentation of the vector boundary of crown in CHM individual tree segmentation.
  - Support the .shp file in section tool.



- **Bugs Fixed:**
  - Fix the bugs already known

## v3.0 - 16/10/2018

- **New Features:**
  - Save users' parameter setting as default, prompt the information about each parameter when putting mouse on it
  - Support the spike-free TIN generation algorithm
  - Add the random forest regression model
  - Add the regression predict analyze
  - Add the Projections and Transformations toolset:
    - Seven parameters solution
    - Four parameters solution
    - Vertical datum transformation
  - Add noise classification function
  - Support to convert raster data to LiData
- **Enhancements:**
  - Improve the ground point filtering algorithm
  - Improve the accuracy and efficiency of the TLS individual tree segmentation tool
  - Upgrade the LiTIN format to support saving the corresponding LiDAR point classes in LiTIN data and display LiTIN data by classes
  - Improve the editing and flattening TIN data in LiTIN format
  - Tile by range supports buffer setting and vector exporting
  - Support subdivisions of Graticules
  - Support to generate multiple files when performing polygon clipping
  - Support to select RGB range when convert data to las format

## v2.2 - 20/06/2018

- **New Features:**
  - Multi-threaded batch processing support
  - Measurement of individual tree attributes (total height, crown base height, stem straightness, diameter at breast height (DBH), etc.) from TLS data
- **Enhancements:**
  - Improved regression analysis which allows for the importation of independent variables from external sources
  - Output elevation and intensity variables as .tif formatted files
  - Individual tree segmentation from a selected point cloud class
  - Improved TLS data editing tools that allow users to (1) batch process data to extract DBH measurements and (2) fit DBHs to point clouds selected in the profile view window
  - Add crown diameters, crown areas, and crown volumes to the outputs of the TLS individual tree segmentation tool
  - Functionality added to the Section Analysis Tool in the Terrain Module allowing users to now: (1) analyze .dxf formatted files, (2) import more than one file at a time and draw multiple section lines. (3)

define a step value to simplify sections. (4) export multiple section files

- Output contour feature as 2D polylines (.shp)
- Edit for vector dataset attributes
- **Bugs Fixed:**
  - Tree heights now updated for tree filtering after tree segmentation tool has been run
  - Projection information of las data can now be read

## **v2.1.2 - 24/04/2018**

- **Enhancements:**
  - Improved batch extraction function for DBH (Diameter at Breast Height)
  - LiData upgrade
  - 30-day trial for power line module
- **Bug Fixed:**
  - Strip alignment function

## **v2.1.1 - 08/04/2018**

- **Enhancements:**
  - Supports LAZ/LAS 1.4 file formats
  - Recognize intensity information with ply data

## **v2.1 - 05/02/2018**

- **New Features:**
  - Automatic calculation of flight strips matching parameters
  - Median ground point clouds classification
  - Supervised classification based on machine learning
  - Support to revise ground point filtering results of a defined region
  - Support cross section analysis
  - Support vector editing
  - Support selected region extends from both end in profile viewer
  - Support point cloud partitioning based on the number of points
  - Support to generate TIF images with projection information
- **Enhancements:**
  - Improved DEM/DSM interpolation algorithm
  - Improved the efficiency of generating contour lines
  - Improved the efficiency of individual tree segmentation algorithm(individual tree segmentation from point cloud and individual tree segmentation based on seed point)
  - Supports richer terrain product formats, including a new ASC format for raster data and a new DXF format for the contour line
- **Bugs Fixed:**
  - De-redundant function

- Multipoint selection
- Classification by attribute

## **v2.0 - 30/10/2017**

- **New Features:**

- New License Key: The software could be activated by month or by module
- Forest Module (divided to ALS module and TLS module):
  - ALS Module:
    - Seeds generation algorithm: generate segmentation seed layer based on CHM, Point Cloud Segmentation and Layer Stacking
    - Seeds edition: add/delete seeds,select seeds and segment individual tree based on seeds
    - Batch-processed segmentation based on input seed layer
  - TLS Module:
    - Ground Classification using TLS data
    - Batch-processed segmentation based on input seed layer
    - Calculate DBH of tree
    - Generate and edit segmentation seed layer
- Classification Module:
  - Improve performance of ground points filter algorithm
  - Classification for key feature points. By identifying the key surface points, this allows the down-sampling of relatively flat areas thus improving processing efficiency without sacrificing quality
  - More user input parameters and options
- Power Line Module:
  - Create vector output for power line and tower classifications
  - Real-time measurement of the distances from any given point to the closest power line and tower
- Set point cloud display point size for individual layers
- Automatically identify point cloud center point and set it as rotation center
- Improved the visual effects of TIN
- Display shapefile layer attribute table
- Identify and locate the corresponding individual tree in the viewer by double-clicking a row in the segmentation result list table
- Cross selection tool supports more accurate adjustment of the boundingbox
- Display parameter in LOG viewer. The LOG file still stays at system's TEMP folder
- Support information collection when the software crashes. You can send crash information in the pop up interface to the mailbox.
- The cut results for multiple data sources can be saved separately or be merged into a file

## **v1.5 - 14/07/2017**

- **New Features:**

- Added power line module. The main functions include marking tower position, cutting the point cloud data based on the tower position, automatic classification of power line and tower, dangerous points detection and report generation
- Added selection toolbar. It includes polygon selection, rectangle selection, sphere selection, in cut, out cut, save cut and cancel selection

- Added editing point cloud classification with real-time TIN
- Support to merge multiple files into one
- Support undo to profile editing and selection function by Ctrl+Z
- **Enhancements:**
  - CHM segmentation algorithm improvement. Users can adjust more parameters and generate the shape file of tree boundary
  - Add the residual report to the registration function. Users can choose the points for coordinate transformation
  - Cross selection result can be export
  - The parameters setting for batch processing for multiple files and multiple functions can be imported and exported
  - Improved profile editing efficiency
  - Users can choose whether to generate minor, basic and major contour when using "point cloud to contour" and "TIN to contour" functions
  - Add seven parameters transformation for reprojection function
  - The results of Clip by Circle and Clip by Rectangle can be exported as one file, or save as individual files according to the extent of circle or rectangle
  - The real-time coordinates in the status bar are more accurate
  - Improved user experience of navigating

## v1.4 - 31/05/2017

- **New Features:**
  - Added "generate TIN", "TIN edit", "TIN to Contour", "TIN to DEM" functions
  - Added Grid Volume Statistics function
  - Added "Camera Roam" and "Save to Video functions"
  - Fix the bug for memory leak when loading .ply data

## v1.3 - 17/04/2017

- **New Features:**
  - PLY data import and export added to I/O module
  - Elevation difference, overlap and density quality reports added to strip adjustment module
  - Add "Subsampling based on octree" and "point cloud convert to DXF" to data management module
  - Power line classification
  - Support for mix and glass coloring modes in rendering
  - Batch process for multi-files and multi-functions
  - Geometric correction (support point cloud registration based on points or sphere targets)
- **Enhancements:**
  - Speed improvements for contour generation based on point cloud
  - Users can set the properties of minor, basic and major contours for "point cloud to contour". The elevation attributes can be read
  - Show the boundary of concave polygon for area measurements
  - The resolution of surface model is not limited to 0.5m
- **Bugs Fixed:**

- Fix the bug of file opening error when there is an invalid file in multiple .csv files
- Fix the bug of window flash caused by EDL effect in windows 10
- Bug fixed for stepwise regression
- Bug fixed for software crash caused by opening old version of LiData
- Bug fixed for software crash when opening the point cloud with unstandardized projection

## **Lite - 04/02/2017**

Free version of LiDAR360, main functions including data visualization and grid statistics

## **v1.1 - 22/12/2016**

- **New Features:**

- Software platform update: 2D&3D integration, multiple window linkage, rolling screen, display order changed by drag, cross selection,etc
- Strip quality check function
- Generate contour lines based on point cloud
- Chinese software version
- Bug fixed for raster image subdivision and LiModel with texture

## **v1.0 - 11/10/2016**

First version release of LiDAR360

# End User License Agreement

PLEASE READ CAREFULLY BEFORE USING THIS SOFTWARE PRODUCT: This **End-User License Agreement ("EULA")** is a contract between (a) you (either an individual or the entity you represent) and (b) **Greenvalley International Inc ("GVI")** that governs your use of the software product ("Software"). This EULA does not apply if there is a separate license agreement between you and GVI or its suppliers for the Software, including a license agreement in online documentation. The term "Software" may include (i) associated media, (ii) a user guide and other printed materials, and (iii) "online" or electronic documentation (collectively "User Documentation").

RIGHTS IN THE SOFTWARE ARE OFFERED ONLY ON THE CONDITION THAT YOU AGREE TO ALL TERMS AND CONDITIONS OF THIS EULA. BY INSTALLING, COPYING, DOWNLOADING, OR OTHERWISE USING THE SOFTWARE, YOU AGREE TO BE BOUND BY THIS EULA. IF YOU DO NOT ACCEPT THIS EULA, DO NOT INSTALL, DOWNLOAD, OR OTHERWISE USE THE SOFTWARE. IF YOU PURCHASED THE SOFTWARE BUT DO NOT AGREE TO THIS EULA, PLEASE RETURN THE SOFTWARE TO YOUR PLACE OF PURCHASE WITHIN FOURTEEN DAYS FOR A REFUND OF THE PURCHASE PRICE; IF THE SOFTWARE IS INSTALLED ON OR MADE AVAILABLE WITH ANOTHER GVI PRODUCT, YOU MAY RETURN THE ENTIRE UNUSED PRODUCT.

1. **THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE.** The Software may include, in addition to GVI proprietary software ("GVI Software"), software under licenses from third parties ("Third Party Software" and "Third Party License"). Any Third-Party Software is licensed to you subject to the terms and conditions of the corresponding Third-Party License. Generally, the Third-Party License is in a file such as "license.txt" or a "readme" file. You should contact GVI support if you cannot find a Third-Party License.
2. **LICENSE RIGHTS.** You will have the following rights provided you comply with all terms and conditions of this EULA:
  - a. **Use.** GVI grants you a license to Use one copy of the GVI Software. "Use" means installing, copying, storing, loading, executing, displaying, or otherwise using the GVI Software. You may not modify the GVI Software or disable any licensing or control feature of the GVI Software. If this Software is provided by GVI for Use with an imaging or printing product (for example, if the Software is a printer driver, firmware, or add-on), the GVI Software may only be used with such product ("GVI Product"). Additional restrictions on Use may appear in the User Documentation. You may not separate component parts of the GVI Software for Use. You do not have the right to distribute the GVI Software.
  - b. **Copying.** Your right to copy means you may make archival or back-up copies of the GVI Software, provided each copy contains all the original GVI Software's proprietary notices and is used only for back-up purposes.
3. **UPGRADES.** To Use GVI Software provided by GVI as an upgrade, update, or supplement (collectively "Upgrade"), you must first be licensed for the original GVI Software identified by GVI as eligible for the Upgrade. To the extent the Upgrade supersedes the original GVI Software, you may no longer use such GVI Software. This EULA applies to each Upgrade unless GVI provides other terms with the Upgrade. In case of a conflict between this EULA and such other terms, the other terms will prevail.
4. **TRANSFER.** You may not rent, lease or lend the GVI Software or Use the GVI Software for commercial timesharing or bureau use. You may not sublicense, assign or otherwise transfer the GVI Software except as expressly provided in this EULA.

5. PROPRIETARY RIGHTS. All intellectual property rights in the Software and User Documentation are owned by GVI or its suppliers and are protected by law, including applicable copyright, trade secret, patent, and trademark laws. You will not remove any product identification, copyright notice, or proprietary restriction from the Software.
6. LIMITATION ON REVERSE ENGINEERING. You may not reverse engineer, decompile, or disassemble the GVI Software, except and only to the extent that the right to do so is allowed under applicable law.
7. CONSENT TO USE OF DATA. GVI and its affiliates may collect and use technical information you provide in relation to (i) your Use of the Software or the GVI Product, or (ii) the provision of support services related to the Software or the GVI Product. All such information will be subject to GVI's privacy policy. GVI will not use such information in a form that personally identifies you except to the extent necessary to enhance your Use or provide support services.
8. LIMITATION OF LIABILITY. Notwithstanding any damages that you might incur, the entire liability of GVI and its suppliers under this EULA and your exclusive remedy under this EULA will be limited to the amount actually paid by you for the Product. TO THE MAXIMUM EXTENT PERMITTED BY APPLICABLE LAW, IN NO EVENT WILL GVI OR ITS SUPPLIERS BE LIABLE FOR ANY SPECIAL, INCIDENTAL, INDIRECT, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES (INCLUDING DAMAGES FOR LOST PROFITS, LOST DATA, BUSINESS INTERRUPTION, PERSONAL INJURY, OR LOSS OF PRIVACY) RELATED IN ANY WAY TO THE USE OF OR INABILITY TO USE THE SOFTWARE, EVEN IF GVI OR ANY SUPPLIER HAS BEEN ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGES AND EVEN IF THE ABOVE REMEDY FAILS OF ITS ESSENTIAL PURPOSE. Some states or other jurisdictions do not allow the exclusion or limitation of incidental or consequential damages, so the above limitation or exclusion may not apply to you.
9. U.S. GOVERNMENT CUSTOMERS. Software was developed entirely at private expense. All Software is commercial computer software within the meaning of the applicable acquisition regulations. Accordingly, pursuant to US FAR 48 CFR 12.212 and DFAR 48 CFR 227.7202, use, duplication and disclosure of the Software by or for the U.S. Government or a U.S. Government subcontractor is subject solely to the terms and conditions set forth in this End User License Agreement, except for provisions which are contrary to applicable mandatory federal laws.
10. COMPLIANCE WITH EXPORT LAWS. You will comply with all laws, rules, and regulations (i) applicable to the export or import of the Software, or (ii) restricting the Use of the Software, including any restrictions on nuclear, chemical, or biological weapons proliferation.
11. RESERVATION OF RIGHTS. GVI and its suppliers reserve all rights not expressly granted to you in this EULA.